



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS

THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE  
LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000  
WEBSITE [www.nyc.gov/buildnyc](http://www.nyc.gov/buildnyc)

**LAW**

VOLUME 1 OF 3

# BID BOOKLET

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS  
NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

## Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

LOCATION: 110 Livingston Street  
BOROUGH: Brooklyn 1120  
CITY OF NEW YORK

CONTRACT NO. 1	GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
CONTRACT NO. 2	PLUMBING WORK
CONTRACT NO. 3	HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK
CONTRACT NO. 4	ELECTRICAL WORK

Department of Cultural Affairs

Work AC



Date: October 31, 2018

19-010



Lorraine Grillo  
Commissioner

Jamie Torres-Springer  
First Deputy Commissioner

Justin Walter  
Chief Administrative Officer  
Administration

Nicholas Mendoza  
Agency Chief Contracting Officer

Lorraine Holley  
Deputy ACCO

November 25, 2019

CERTIFIED MAIL - RETURN RECEIPT REQUEST  
EASTERN PLUMBING & MECHANICAL CONTRACTING, INC.  
1414 65th Street  
Brooklyn, NY 11219

RE: FMS ID: PV028-ISS  
E-PIN: 85019B00017001  
DDC PIN: 8502019PV0002C  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM - INTERIOR FIT  
OUT RE-BID-PLUMBING-BOROUGH OF  
BROOKLYN  
**NOTICE OF AWARD**

Dear Contractor:

You are hereby awarded the above referenced contract based upon your bid in the amount of \$195,000.00 submitted at the bid opening on February 22, 2019. Within ten (10) days of your receipt of this notice of award, you are required to take the actions set forth in Paragraphs (1) through (3) below. For your convenience, attached please find a copy of Schedule A of the General Conditions to the Contract, which sets forth the types and amounts of insurance coverage required for this contract.

- (1) Execute two copies of the Agreement in the Contracts Unit, 30-30 Thomson Avenue, 1<sup>st</sup> Floor, Long Island City, New York (IDCNY Building). A Commissioner of Deeds will be available to witness and notarize your signature. The Agreement must be signed by an officer of the corporation or a partner of the firm.
- (2) Submit to the Contracts Unit two properly executed performance and payment bonds. If required for this contract, copies of performance and payment bonds are attached.
- (3) Submit to the Contracts Unit the following insurance documentation: (a) original certificate of insurance for general liability in the amount required by Schedule A, and (b) original certificates of insurance or other proof of coverage for workers' compensation and disability benefits, as required by New York State Law. The insurance documentation specified in this paragraph is required for registration of the contract with the Comptroller's Office.

On or before the contract commencement date, you are required to submit all other certificates of insurance and/or policies in the types and amounts required by Schedule A. Such certificates of Insurance and/or policies must be submitted to the Agency Chief Contracting Office, Attention: Risk Manager, Fourth Floor at the above indicated department address.

Your attention is directed to the section of the Information for Bidders entitled "Failure to Execute Contract". As indicated in this section, in the event you fail to execute the contract and furnish the required bonds within the (10) days of your receipt of this notice of award, your bid security will be retained by the City and you will be liable for the difference between your bid price and the price for which the contract is subsequently awarded, less the amount of the bid security retained.

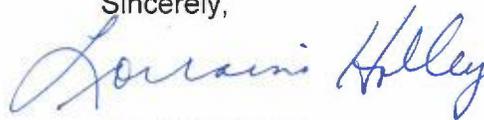
**As of August 16, 2019, please be advised that Contract Site Safety Plans for DDC projects must be submitted through DDC's online Site Safety Plan (SSP) application (available via our Agency Portal – DDC Anywhere).**

To create an account and begin your Site Safety Pan submission using SSP, click on the link below:

**DDC Portal** <https://ddcanywhere.nyc/Registration/Registration>

For questions regarding this web-based application, please contact DDC via email at: [appsupport@ddc.nyc.gov](mailto:appsupport@ddc.nyc.gov).

Sincerely,



Lorraine Holley

## **SPECIAL NOTICE TO BIDDERS**

The New York City Department of Small Business Services (SBS), in conjunction with the New York Business Development Corporation (NYBDC), have established a NYC Construction Loan pilot program to provide prime contractors and subcontractors financing for mobilization costs on certain City construction projects.

Under this initiative, loans are available for early stage mobilization needs such as insurance, labor, supplies and equipment. Bidders are strongly encouraged to visit "Growing Your Business" at [www.nyc.gov/nycbusiness](http://www.nyc.gov/nycbusiness) to learn more about the loan or contact [constructionloan@sbs.nyc.gov](mailto:constructionloan@sbs.nyc.gov) / (212) 513-6444 to obtain details and to determine preliminary eligibility.

A successful loan applicant will be required to make an assignment of its contract (or subcontract) payments to the lender NYBDC until the loan is repaid. If the loan is to a subcontractor, a prime contractor must honor the terms of such an assignment.

A prime contractor may not discriminate against a subcontractor or potential subcontractor by reason of the subcontractor's participation, or nonparticipation, in the NYC Construction Loan program.

**COMPLIANCE WITH HIRENYC AND REPORTING REQUIREMENTS:** The Hiring and Employment Rider located in Volume 2 of the Contract Documents shall apply to contracts valued at \$1 million or more for all goods, services and construction except human services contracts that are subject to the Public Assistance Hiring Commitment Rider. The Rider describes the Hire NYC process and obligations, including reporting requirements throughout the life of the contract. The Hire NYC process requires contractors to enroll with the Hire NYC system within thirty days after the registration of the contract subject to this solicitation, to provide information regarding all entry to mid-level job opportunities arising from this contract and located in New York City, and to agree to interview qualified candidates from HireNYC for those opportunities. The Rider also includes reporting requirements unrelated to HireNYC.

## **PRE BID QUESTIONS (PBQs):**

**Please be advised that PBQs should be submitted to the Agency Contact Person at least five (5) business days (by 5:00 P.M. EST) prior to the bid opening date as indicated in ATTACHMENT 1 – BID INFORMATION, page 22, VOLUME 1 of 3 of this BID PACKAGE.**

**BID BOOKLET  
PART A**

**PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS**

**CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

**BID BOOKLET**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>PART A</b>		<b>page</b>
1.	Special Notice to Bidders.....	2
2.	M/WBE Program: M/WBE Utilization Plan.....	5
3.	Apprenticeship Program Requirements.....	10
4.	Bid Form.....	12
5.	Affirmation.....	17
6.	Bid Bond.....	18
7.	Contractor's Bid Breakdown .....	21
8.	Attachment 1 - Bid Information.....	22
<b>PART B</b>		
9.	Safety Questionnaire.....	23
10.	Pre-award Process .....	26
11.	Project Reference Form.....	28
12.	Contract Certificate.....	31
13.	Confirmation of Vendex Compliance.....	32
14.	Iran Divestment Act Compliance Report.....	33
15.	Construction Employment Report.....	35

**CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

**SPECIAL NOTICE TO BIDDERS**

**BID SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS**

**THE FOLLOWING DOCUMENTS ARE TO BE COMPLETED  
AND SUBMITTED WITH THE BID:**

- Bid Form, including Affirmation
- Bid Security (if required, see page 22)
- Schedule B: M/WBE Utilization Plan (if participation goals have been established)

**FAILURE TO SUBMIT THE THREE ITEMS LISTED ABOVE  
WILL RESULT IN THE DISQUALIFICATION OF THE BID**

- Bid Breakdown (if required, see page 21)
- Safety Questionnaire
- Construction Employment Report (if bid is \$1,000,000 or more)
- Contract Certificate (if bid is less than \$1,000,000)
- Confirmation of Vendex Compliance
- Special Experience Requirements Qualification Form (if required, see pages 3, 4)
- Bidder's Certification of Compliance with Iran Divestment Act
- Apprenticeship Program Requirements (if required, see pages 10, 11)
- Any Addenda issued prior to the receipt of bids.

**FAILURE TO SUBMIT THE NINE ITEMS LISTED ABOVE  
MAY RESULT IN THE DISQUALIFICATION OF THE BID.**

- NOTES:**
- (1) All of the above referred to blank forms to be completed and submitted with the bid are included in the BID BOOKLET.
  - (2) If the bidder has any questions or requires additional information, please contact the Department of Design and Construction by phone (718-391-2601) or by fax (718-391-2627).
  - (3) **VENDEX QUESTIONNAIRES:** Vendex Questionnaires, as well as detailed instructions, may be obtained at [www.nyc.gov/vendex](http://www.nyc.gov/vendex). The bidder may also obtain Vendex forms and instructions by contacting the Agency Chief Contracting Officer or the contact person for this contract.
  - (4) **SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS:** The Bidder is advised that Special Experience Requirements may apply to this contract. Such requirements are set forth on pages 3 and 4 of this Bid Booklet.
  - (5) **SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR ASBESTOS:** The Bidder is advised that this contract contains strict requirements regarding the prior experience and licensing of the subcontractor who will perform any required asbestos abatement work. These special experience requirements are set forth in the section of the specifications which describes any required asbestos abatement work.

## SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS

Special Experience Requirements apply as indicated below.

Bidder:	General Construction Work	<u>  X  </u>	YES	<u>      </u>	NO
	Plumbing Work	<u>      </u>	YES	<u>  X  </u>	NO
	HVAC Work	<u>      </u>	YES	<u>  X  </u>	NO
	Electrical Work	<u>      </u>	YES	<u>  X  </u>	NO
Specific Areas of Work:	General Construction	<u>  X  </u>	YES	<u>      </u>	NO
	Electrical Work	<u>  X  </u>	YES	<u>      </u>	NO
Manufacturers:	General Construction	<u>  X  </u>	YES	<u>      </u>	NO
	Electrical Work	<u>  X  </u>	YES	<u>      </u>	NO

- (A) **EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE BIDDER:** The special experience requirements set forth below apply to the bidder indicated above. Compliance with such special experience requirements will be determined solely by the City prior to an award of contract. Failure to comply with the special experience requirements will result in the rejection of the bid as non-responsive.
- The bidder must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.
- (B) **QUALIFICATION FORM:** For each project submitted to demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements, the bidder must complete the Qualification Form included in the Bid Booklet. The City will only evaluate a project if the following criteria are met: (1) the project is described on the Qualification Form, and (2) all information on the Qualification Form is provided. The City will not evaluate any project which does not comply with the criteria set forth herein, including any project which is referred to only on the resume of an individual.
- (C) **CONDITIONS:** The City may, in determining compliance with the special experience requirements set forth above, consider prior projects completed by principal(s) or other employees of the bidder while affiliated with another entity, subject to the conditions set forth below.
- Any principal or other employee on whose prior experience the bidder is relying to demonstrate compliance with this special experience requirement must have held the following: (a) a significant management role in the prior entity with which he/she was affiliated, and (b) a significant management role in the entity submitting the bid for a period of six months or from the inception of the bidding entity. If the bidder is relying on the prior experience of a principal or employee, it must submit documentation confirming the position held by such principal or employee in the prior entity, as well as in the bidding entity.
  - The bidder may not rely on the experience of its principals or other employees to demonstrate compliance with any other requirements, including without limitation, financial requirements or requirements for a specified minimum amount of annual gross revenues.
- (D) **JOINT VENTURES:** In the event the bidder is a joint venture, at least one firm in the joint venture must meet the above described experience requirements.
- (E) **EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC AREAS OF WORK:** The special experience requirements set forth below apply to the contractor or subcontractor that will perform specific areas of work. Compliance with such experience requirements will be evaluated after an award of contract. Within two (2) weeks of such award, the contractor will be required to submit the qualifications of the contractor or subcontractor that will perform these specific areas of work. If the bidder intends to perform these specific areas of work with its own forces, it must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements. If the bidder intends to subcontract these specific

areas of work, its proposed subcontractor(s) must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements. Once approved, no substitution will be permitted, unless the qualifications of the proposed replacement have been approved in writing in advance by the City. The bidder is advised to carefully review these special experience requirements prior to submitting its bid, as such experience requirements will be strictly enforced.

- (1) Special experience requirements apply to the contractor or subcontractor that will perform specific areas of work specified in the section(s) set forth below.

#### General Construction

- Section 024118: Alteration Project Procedures
- Section 024296: Historic Removal and Dismantling
- Section 040140: Stone Restoration and Cleaning
- Section 050170: Restoration of Decorative Metal
- Section 068200: Glass Fiber Reinforced Fabrications
- Section 071416: Cold-Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System
- Section 081416: Wood Doors
- Section 087100: Hardware
- Section 090320: Historic Treatment of Plaster
- Section 090900: Painting and Finishing
- Section 116133: Performance Rigging

#### Electrical Work

- Section 265113: Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts
- Section 266111: Performance Dimming and Control

- (2) Special experience requirements applicable to the contractor or subcontractor that will perform specific areas of work are summarized below. Such experience requirements are set forth in full in the Addendum to the General Conditions.

- The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of these sections, except for sections 071416, 081416, 087100, 116133, 265113, and 266111, must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.
- For Section 071416 Cold-Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System, the contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must be a company regularly engaged in performing roofing projects with its own workforce and have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) roofing projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work within the last three (3) consecutive years prior to the bid opening. At least one of those projects must have been performed within the last twelve (12) months. The three (3) qualifying projects must have utilized one or more of the roofing systems specified for the project being bid herein, been installed by the contractor's or subcontractor's company utilizing its own workforce and must have qualified for, and have been issued, the warranty provided by the manufacturer of the roofing system. In addition, the contractor or subcontractor must be a certified or authorized installer for at least one of the manufacturer's roofing systems specified herein and shall submit proof of same.
- For sections 081416, 087100, 116133, 265113, and 266111, The contractor or subcontractor performing the work must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope and type to the required work.

- (3) For each project submitted to demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements for specific areas of work, the contractor or proposed subcontractor will be required to complete the Qualification Form included in the Bid Booklet.

a. The City will only evaluate a project if the following criteria are met: (1) the project is described on the Qualification Form, and (2) all information on the Qualification Form is provided. The City will not evaluate any project which does not comply with the criteria set forth herein, including any project which is referred to only on the resume of an individual.

b. For Section 071416 Cold-Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System, the contractor or subcontractor must specify, for each qualifying project submitted, the type of roofing system utilized and provide proof that the manufacturer's warranty for that project was issued. The City will only evaluate a project if the following criteria are met: (1) the project is described on the Qualification Form, and (2) all information required to be provided by the contractor or subcontractor on the Qualification Form is actually provided. The City will not evaluate any project which does not comply with the criteria set forth herein, including any project which is referred to only on the resume of an individual.

- (F) **SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR MANUFACTURER(S)**: The special experience requirements set forth below apply to the manufacturer(s) that will supply or fabricate specific material or equipment. Compliance with such experience requirements will be evaluated after an award of contract. Within two (2) weeks of award, the contractor will be required to submit the qualifications of the proposed manufacturer(s). Once approved, no substitution will be permitted, unless the qualifications of the proposed replacement have been approved in writing in advance by the City.

- (1) Special experience requirements apply to the manufacturer(s) of material and/or equipment specified in the section(s) set forth below.

**General Construction**

- Section 071416: Cold-Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System
- Section 081416: Wood Doors
- Section 116133: Performance Rigging

**Electrical Work**

- Section 265113: Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts

- (2) Special experience requirements applicable to the manufacturer(s) of specified material or equipment are summarized below. Such experience requirements are set forth in full in the Addendum to the General Conditions.

- The manufacturer providing the material or equipment specified in this section must, for the past five (5) years, have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of material or equipment similar in type to that required for this Project. Such similar material or equipment provided by the manufacturer must have been in satisfactory service for not less than five (5) years.

# Qualification Form

Project ID: PV028-ISS

List previous projects completed to meet the special experience requirements for this contract. Please photocopy this form for submission of all required projects.

Name of Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Location of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner or Owner's representative (Architect or Engineer) who is familiar with the work performed:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of work completed: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Was the work performed as a prime or a subcontractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Amount of Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*\*\*\*

Name of Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Location of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner or Owner's representative (Architect or Engineer) who is familiar with the work performed:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of work completed: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Was the work performed as a prime or a subcontractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Amount of Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

# Qualification Form

Project ID: PV028-ISS

List previous projects completed to meet the special experience requirements for this contract. Please photocopy this form for submission of all required projects.

Name of Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Location of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner or Owner's representative (Architect or Engineer) who is familiar with the work performed:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of work completed: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Was the work performed as a prime or a subcontractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Amount of Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*\*\*\*

Name of Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Location of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner or Owner's representative (Architect or Engineer) who is familiar with the work performed:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of work completed: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Was the work performed as a prime or a subcontractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Amount of Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

**Qualification Form**

Project ID: PV028-ISS

List previous projects completed to meet the special experience requirements for this contract. Please photocopy this form for submission of all required projects.

Name of Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Location of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner or Owner's representative (Architect or Engineer) who is familiar with the work performed:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of work completed: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Was the work performed as a prime or a subcontractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Amount of Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*\*\*\*

Name of Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Location of Project: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner or Owner's representative (Architect or Engineer) who is familiar with the work performed:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Brief description of work completed: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Was the work performed as a prime or a subcontractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Amount of Contract: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

## MWBE PROGRAM

### M/WBE UTILIZATION PLAN

**M/WBE Program Requirements:** The requirements for the M/WBE Program are set forth on the following pages of this Bid Booklet, in the section entitled "Notice to All Prospective Contractors".

**Schedule B: M/WBE Utilization Plan:** Schedule B: M/WBE Utilization Plan for this Contract is set forth in this Bid Booklet on the pages following the section entitled "Notice to All Prospective Contractors". The M/WBE Utilization Plan (Part I) indicates whether Participation Goals have been established for this Contract. If Participation Goals have been established for this Contract, the bidder must submit an M/WBE Utilization Plan (Part II) with its bid.

**Waiver:** The bidder may seek a full or partial pre-award waiver of the Participation Goals in accordance with the "Notice to All Prospective Contractors" (See Part A, Section 10). The bidder's request for a waiver must be submitted at least seven (7) calendar days prior to the bid date. Waiver requests submitted after the deadline will not be considered. The form for requesting a waiver of the Participation Goals is set forth in the M/WBE Utilization Plan (Part III).

**Rejection of the Bid:** The bidder must complete Schedule B: M/WBE Utilization Plan (Part II) set forth in this Bid Booklet on the pages following the section entitled "Notice to All Prospective Contractors". A Schedule B submitted by the bidder which does not include the Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations (See Section V of Part II) will be deemed to be non-responsive, unless a full waiver of the Participation Goals is granted (Schedule B, Part III). In the event that the City determines that the bidder has submitted a Schedule B where the Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations are completed but other aspects of the Schedule B are not complete, or contain a copy or computation error that is at odds with the Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations, the bidder will be notified by the Agency and will be given four (4) calendar days from receipt of notification to cure the specified deficiencies and return a completed Schedule B to the Agency. Failure to do so Receipt of notification is defined as the date notice is emailed or faxed (if the bidder has provided an email address or fax number), or no later than five (5) days from the date of mailing or upon delivery, if delivered.

**Impact on LBE Requirements:** If Participation Goals have been established for the participation of M/WBEs, the contractor is not required to comply with the Locally Based Enterprise Program ("LBE"). The LBE Program is set forth in Article 67 of the Contract.

NOTICE TO ALL PROSPECTIVE CONTRACTORS

PARTICIPATION BY MINORITY-OWNED AND WOMEN-OWNED BUSINESS  
ENTERPRISES IN CITY PROCUREMENT

ARTICLE I. M/WBE PROGRAM

Local Law No. 129 of 2005 added and Local Law 1 of 2013 amended Section 6-129 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York (hereinafter "Section 6-129"). Section 6-129 establishes the program for participation in City procurement ("M/WBE Program") by minority-owned business enterprises ("MBEs") and women-owned business enterprises ("WBEs"), certified in accordance with Section 1304 of the New York City Charter. As stated in Section 6-129, the intent of the program is to address the impact of discrimination on the City's procurement process, and to promote the public interest in avoiding fraud and favoritism in the procurement process, increasing competition for City business, and lowering contract costs. The contract provisions contained herein are pursuant to Section 6-129, and the rules of the Department of Small Business Services ("DSBS") promulgated thereunder.

**If this Contract is subject to the M/WBE Program established by Section 6-129, the specific requirements of MBE and/or WBE participation for this Contract are set forth in Schedule B of the Contract (entitled the "M/WBE Utilization Plan"), and are detailed below. The Contractor must comply with all applicable MBE and WBE requirements for this Contract.**

All provisions of Section 6-129 are hereby incorporated in the Contract by reference and all terms used herein that are not defined herein shall have the meanings given such terms in Section 6-129. Article I, Part A, below, sets forth provisions related to the participation goals for construction, standard and professional services contracts. Article I, Part B, below, sets forth miscellaneous provisions related to the M/WBE Program.

PART A

PARTICIPATION GOALS FOR CONSTRUCTION, STANDARD  
AND PROFESSIONAL SERVICES CONTRACTS OR TASK ORDERS

1. The **MBE and/or WBE Participation Goals** established for this Contract or Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, ("Participation Goals"), as applicable, are set forth on Schedule B, Part I to this Contract (see Page 1, line 1 Total Participation Goals) or will be set forth on Schedule B, Part I to Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, as applicable.

The **Participation Goals** represent a percentage of the total dollar value of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, that may be achieved by awarding subcontracts to firms certified with New York City Department of Small Business Services as MBEs and/or WBEs, and/or by crediting the participation of prime contractors and/or qualified joint ventures as provided in Section 3 below, unless the goals have been waived or modified by Agency in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Sections 10 and 11 below, respectively.

2. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, Contractor agrees or shall agree as a material term of the Contract that Contractor shall be subject to the **Participation Goals**, unless the goals are waived or modified by Agency in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Sections 10 and 11 below, respectively.

3. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, a Contractor that is an MBE and/or WBE shall be permitted to count its own participation toward fulfillment of the relevant **Participation Goal**, provided that in accordance with Section 6-129 the value of Contractor's participation shall be determined by subtracting from the total value of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, any amounts that the Contractor pays to direct subcontractors (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(13)), and provided further that a Contractor that is certified as both an MBE and a WBE may count its own participation either toward the goal for MBEs or the goal for WBEs, but not both.

A Contractor that is a qualified joint venture (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(30)) shall be permitted to count a percentage of its own participation toward fulfillment of the relevant **Participation Goal**. In accordance with Section 6-129, the value of Contractor's participation shall be determined by subtracting from the total value of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, any amounts that Contractor pays to direct subcontractors, and then multiplying the remainder by the percentage to be applied to total profit to

determine the amount to which an MBE or WBE is entitled pursuant to the joint venture agreement, provided that where a participant in a joint venture is certified as both an MBE and a WBE, such amount shall be counted either toward the goal for MBEs or the goal for WBEs, but not both.

4. A. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract, a prospective contractor shall be required to submit with its bid or proposal, as applicable, a completed Schedule B, M/WBE Utilization Plan, Part II (see Pages 2-4) indicating: (a) whether the contractor is an MBE or WBE, or qualified joint venture; (b) the percentage of work it intends to award to direct subcontractors; and (c) in cases where the contractor intends to award direct subcontracts, a description of the type and dollar value of work designated for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs, and the time frames in which such work is scheduled to begin and end. In the event that this M/WBE Utilization Plan indicates that the bidder or proposer, as applicable, does not intend to meet the **Participation Goals**, the bid or proposal, as applicable, shall be deemed non-responsive, unless Agency has granted the bidder or proposer, as applicable, a pre-award waiver of the Participation Goals in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Section 10 below.

B. (i) If this Contract is for a master services agreement or other requirements type contract that will result in the issuance of Task Orders that will be individually registered ("Master Services Agreement") and is subject to M/WBE **Participation Goals**, a prospective contractor shall be required to submit with its bid or proposal, as applicable, a completed Schedule B, M/WBE Participation Requirements for Master Services Agreements That Will Require Individually Registered Task Orders, Part II (page 2) indicating the prospective contractor's certification and required affirmations to make all reasonable good faith efforts to meet participation goals established on each individual Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, or if a partial waiver is obtained or such goals are modified by the Agency, to meet the modified **Participation Goals** by soliciting and obtaining the participation of certified MBE and/or WBE firms. In the event that the Schedule B indicates that the bidder or proposer, as applicable, does not intend to meet the **Participation Goals** that may be established on Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, the bid or proposal, as applicable, shall be deemed non-responsive.

(ii) **Participation Goals** on a Master Services Agreement will be established for individual Task Orders issued after the Master Services Agreement is awarded. If **Participation Goals** have been established on a Task Order, a contractor shall be required to submit a Schedule B - M/WBE Utilization Plan For Independently Registered Task Orders That Are Issued Pursuant to Master Services Agreements, Part II (see Pages 2-4) indicating: (a) whether the contractor is an MBE or WBE, or qualified joint venture; (b) the percentage of work it intends to award to direct subcontractors; and (c) in cases where the contractor intends to award direct subcontracts a description of the type and dollar value of work designated for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs, and the time frames in which such work is scheduled to begin and end. The contractor must engage in good faith efforts to meet the **Participation Goals** as established for the Task Order unless Agency has granted the contractor a pre-award waiver of the Participation Goals in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Section 10 below.

**C. THE BIDDER/PROPOSER MUST COMPLETE THE SCHEDULE B INCLUDED HEREIN (SCHEDULE B, PART II). A SCHEDULE B SUBMITTED BY THE BIDDER/PROPOSER WHICH DOES NOT INCLUDE THE VENDOR CERTIFICATION AND REQUIRED AFFIRMATIONS (SEE SECTION V OF PART II) WILL BE DEEMED TO BE NON-RESPONSIVE, UNLESS A FULL WAIVER OF THE PARTICIPATION GOALS IS GRANTED (SCHEDULE B, PART III). IN THE EVENT THAT THE CITY DETERMINES THAT THE BIDDER/PROPOSER HAS SUBMITTED A SCHEDULE B WHERE THE VENDOR CERTIFICATION AND REQUIRED AFFIRMATIONS ARE COMPLETED BUT OTHER ASPECTS OF THE SCHEDULE B ARE NOT COMPLETE, OR CONTAIN A COPY OR COMPUTATION ERROR THAT IS AT ODDS WITH THE VENDOR CERTIFICATION AND AFFIRMATIONS, THE BIDDER/PROPOSER WILL BE NOTIFIED BY THE AGENCY AND WILL BE GIVEN FOUR (4) CALENDAR DAYS FROM RECEIPT OF NOTIFICATION TO CURE THE SPECIFIED DEFICIENCIES AND RETURN A COMPLETED SCHEDULE B TO THE AGENCY. FAILURE TO DO SO WILL RESULT IN A DETERMINATION THAT THE BID/PROPOSAL IS NON-RESPONSIVE. RECEIPT OF NOTIFICATION IS DEFINED AS THE DATE NOTICE IS E-MAILED OR FAXED (IF THE BIDDER/PROPOSER HAS PROVIDED AN E-MAIL ADDRESS OR FAX NUMBER), OR NO LATER THAN FIVE (5) CALENDAR DAYS FROM THE DATE OF MAILING OR UPON DELIVERY, IF DELIVERED.**

5. Where an M/WBE Utilization Plan has been submitted, the Contractor shall, within 30 days of issuance by Agency of a notice to proceed, submit a list of proposed persons or entities to which it intends to award subcontracts within the subsequent 12 months. In the case of multi-year contracts, such list shall also be submitted every year thereafter. The Agency may also require the Contractor to report periodically about the contracts awarded by its direct subcontractors to indirect subcontractors (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(22)). **PLEASE NOTE: If this Contract is a public works project subject to GML §101(5) (i.e., a contract valued at or**

below \$3M for projects in New York City) or if the Contract is subject to a project labor agreement in accordance with Labor Law §222, and the bidder is required to identify at the time of bid submission its intended subcontractors for the Wicks trades (plumbing and gas fitting; steam heating, hot water heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC); and electric wiring), the Contractor must identify all those to which it intends to award construction subcontracts for any portion of the Wicks trade work at the time of bid submission, regardless of what point in the life of the contract such subcontracts will occur. In identifying intended subcontractors in the bid submission, bidders may satisfy any Participation Goals established for this Contract by proposing one or more subcontractors that are MBEs and/or WBEs for any portion of the Wicks trade work. In the event that the Contractor's selection of a subcontractor is disapproved, the Contractor shall have a reasonable time to propose alternate subcontractors.

6. MBE and WBE firms must be certified by DSBS in order for the Contractor to credit such firms' participation toward the attainment of the **Participation Goals**. Such certification must occur prior to the firms' commencement of work. A list of MBE and WBE firms may be obtained from the DSBS website at [www.nyc.gov/buycertified](http://www.nyc.gov/buycertified), by emailing DSBS at [buyer@sbs.nyc.gov](mailto:buyer@sbs.nyc.gov), by calling (212) 513-6356, or by visiting or writing DSBS at 110 William St., New York, New York, 10038, 7th floor. Eligible firms that have not yet been certified may contact DSBS in order to seek certification by visiting [www.nyc.gov/getcertified](http://www.nyc.gov/getcertified), emailing [MWBE@sbs.nyc.gov](mailto:MWBE@sbs.nyc.gov), or calling the DSBS certification helpline at (212) 513-6311. A firm that is certified as both an MBE and a WBE may be counted either toward the goal for MBEs or the goal for WBEs, but not both. No credit shall be given for participation by a graduate MBE or graduate WBE, as defined in Section 6-129(c)(20).

7. Where an M/WBE Utilization Plan has been submitted, the Contractor shall, with each voucher for payment, and/or periodically as Agency may require, submit statements, certified under penalty of perjury, which shall include, but not be limited to, the total amount the Contractor paid to its direct subcontractors, and, where applicable pursuant to Section 6-129(j), the total amount direct subcontractors paid to indirect subcontractors; the names, addresses and contact numbers of each MBE or WBE hired as a subcontractor by the Contractor, and, where applicable, hired by any of the Contractor's direct subcontractors; and the dates and amounts paid to each MBE or WBE. The Contractor shall also submit, along with its voucher for final payment: the total amount it paid to subcontractors, and, where applicable pursuant to Section 6-129(j), the total amount its direct subcontractors paid directly to their indirect subcontractors; and a final list, certified under penalty of perjury, which shall include the name, address and contact information of each subcontractor that is an MBE or WBE, the work performed by, and the dates and amounts paid to each.

8. If payments made to, or work performed by, MBEs or WBEs are less than the amount specified in the Contractor's M/WBE Utilization Plan, Agency shall take appropriate action, in accordance with Section 6-129 and Article II below, unless the Contractor has obtained a modification of its M/WBE Utilization Plan in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Section 11 below.

9. Where an M/WBE Utilization Plan has been submitted, and the Contractor requests a change order the value of which exceeds the greater of 10 percent of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, or \$500,000, Agency shall review the scope of work for the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, and the scale and types of work involved in the change order, and determine whether the **Participation Goals** should be modified.

10. Pre-award waiver of the **Participation Goals**. (a) A bidder or proposer, or contractor with respect to a Task Order, may seek a pre-award full or partial waiver of the **Participation Goals** in accordance with Section 6-129, which requests that Agency change one or more **Participation Goals** on the grounds that the **Participation Goals** are unreasonable in light of the availability of certified firms to perform the services required, or by demonstrating that it has legitimate business reasons for proposing a lower level of subcontracting in its M/WBE Utilization Plan.

(b) To apply for a full or partial waiver of the **Participation Goals**, a bidder, proposer, or contractor, as applicable, must complete Part III (Page 5) of Schedule B and submit such request no later than seven (7) calendar days prior to the date and time the bids proposals, or Task Orders are due, in writing to the Agency by email at [zhangji@ddc.nyc.gov](mailto:zhangji@ddc.nyc.gov) or via facsimile at (718) 391-1886. Bidders, proposers, or contractors, as applicable, who have submitted requests will receive an Agency response by no later than two (2) calendar days prior to the due date for bids, proposals, or Task Orders; provided, however, that if that date would fall on a weekend or holiday, an Agency response will be provided by close-of-business on the business day before such weekend or holiday date.

(c) If the Agency determines that the **Participation Goals** are unreasonable in light of the availability of certified firms to perform the services required, it shall revise the solicitation and extend the deadline for bids and proposals, or revise the Task Order, as applicable.

(d) Agency may grant a full or partial waiver of the Participation Goals to a bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, who demonstrates—before submission of the bid, proposal or Task Order, as applicable—that it has legitimate business reasons for proposing the level of subcontracting in its M/WBE Utilization Plan. In making its determination, Agency shall consider factors that shall include, but not be limited to, whether the bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, has the capacity and the bona fide intention to perform the Contract without any subcontracting, or to perform the Contract without awarding the amount of subcontracts represented by the Participation Goals. In making such determination, Agency may consider whether the M/WBE Utilization Plan is consistent with past subcontracting practices of the bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, whether the bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, has made efforts to form a joint venture with a certified firm, and whether the bidder, proposer, or contractor, as applicable, has made good faith efforts to identify other portions of the Contract that it intends to subcontract.

11. **Modification of M/WBE Utilization Plan.** (a) A Contractor may request a modification of its M/WBE Utilization Plan after award of this Contract. PLEASE NOTE: If this Contract is a public works project subject to GML §101(5) (i.e., a contract valued at or below \$3M for projects in New York City) or if the Contract is subject to a project labor agreement in accordance with Labor Law §222, and the bidder is required to identify at the time of bid submission its intended subcontractors for the Wicks trades (plumbing and gas fitting; steam heating, hot water heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC); and electric wiring), the Contractor may request a Modification of its M/WBE Utilization Plan as part of its bid submission. The Agency may grant a request for Modification of a Contractor's M/WBE Utilization Plan if it determines that the Contractor has established, with appropriate documentary and other evidence, that it made reasonable, good faith efforts to meet the Participation Goals. In making such determination, Agency shall consider evidence of the following efforts, as applicable, along with any other relevant factors:

- (i) The Contractor advertised opportunities to participate in the Contract, where appropriate, in general circulation media, trade and professional association publications and small business media, and publications of minority and women's business organizations;
- (ii) The Contractor provided notice of specific opportunities to participate in the Contract, in a timely manner, to minority and women's business organizations;
- (iii) The Contractor sent written notices, by certified mail or facsimile, in a timely manner, to advise MBEs or WBEs that their interest in the Contract was solicited;
- (iv) The Contractor made efforts to identify portions of the work that could be substituted for portions originally designated for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs in the M/WBE Utilization Plan, and for which the Contractor claims an inability to retain MBEs or WBEs;
- (v) The Contractor held meetings with MBEs and/or WBEs prior to the date their bids or proposals were due, for the purpose of explaining in detail the scope and requirements of the work for which their bids or proposals were solicited;
- (vi) The Contractor made efforts to negotiate with MBEs and/or WBEs as relevant to perform specific subcontracts, or act as suppliers or service providers;
- (vii) Timely written requests for assistance made by the Contractor to Agency's M/WBE liaison officer and to DSBS;
- (viii) Description of how recommendations made by DSBS and Agency were acted upon and an explanation of why action upon such recommendations did not lead to the desired level of participation of MBEs and/or WBEs.

Agency's M/WBE officer shall provide written notice to the Contractor of the determination.

(b) The Agency may modify the Participation Goals when the scope of the work has been changed by the Agency in a manner that affects the scale and types of work that the Contractor indicated in its M/WBE Utilization Plan would be awarded to subcontractors.

12. If this Contract is for an indefinite quantity of construction, standard or professional services or is a requirements type contract and the Contractor has submitted an M/WBE Utilization Plan and has committed to subcontract work to MBEs and/or WBEs in order to meet the Participation Goals, the Contractor will not be deemed in violation of the M/WBE Program requirements for this Contract with regard to any work which was intended to be subcontracted to an MBE and/or WBE to the extent that the Agency has determined that such work is not needed.

13. If Participation Goals have been established for this Contract or a Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, at least once annually during the term of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, Agency shall review the Contractor's progress toward attainment of its M/WBE Utilization Plan, including but not limited to, by reviewing the percentage of work the Contractor has actually awarded to MBE and/or WBE subcontractors and the payments the Contractor made to such subcontractors.

14. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or a Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, Agency shall evaluate and assess the Contractor's performance in meeting those goals, and such evaluation and assessment shall become part of the Contractor's overall contract performance evaluation.

## **PART B: MISCELLANEOUS**

1. The Contractor shall take notice that, if this solicitation requires the establishment of an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, the resulting contract may be audited by DSBS to determine compliance with Section 6-129. See §6-129(e)(10). Furthermore, such resulting contract may also be examined by the City's Comptroller to assess compliance with the **M/WBE** Utilization Plan.
2. Pursuant to DSBS rules, construction contracts that include a requirement for an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan shall not be subject to the law governing Locally Based Enterprises set forth in Section 6-108.1 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York.
3. DSBS is available to assist contractors and potential contractors in determining the availability of MBEs and/or WBEs to participate as subcontractors, and in identifying opportunities that are appropriate for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs in contracts.
4. Prospective contractors are encouraged to enter into qualified joint venture agreements with MBEs and/or WBEs as defined by Section 6-129(c)(30).
5. By submitting a bid or proposal the Contractor hereby acknowledges its understanding of the **M/WBE** Program requirements set forth herein and the pertinent provisions of Section 6-129, and any rules promulgated thereunder, and if awarded this Contract, the Contractor hereby agrees to comply with the **M/WBE** Program requirements of this Contract and pertinent provisions of Section 6-129, and any rules promulgated thereunder, all of which shall be deemed to be material terms of this Contract. The Contractor hereby agrees to make all reasonable, good faith efforts to solicit and obtain the participation of MBEs and/or WBEs to meet the required **Participation Goals**.

## **ARTICLE II. ENFORCEMENT**

1. If Agency determines that a bidder or proposer, as applicable, has, in relation to this procurement, violated Section 6-129 or the DSBS rules promulgated pursuant to Section 6-129, Agency may disqualify such bidder or proposer, as applicable, from competing for this Contract and the Agency may revoke such bidder's or proposer's prequalification status, if applicable.
2. Whenever Agency believes that the Contractor or a subcontractor is not in compliance with Section 6-129 or the DSBS rules promulgated pursuant to Section 6-129, or any provision of this Contract that implements Section 6-129, including, but not limited to any **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, Agency shall send a written notice to the Contractor describing the alleged noncompliance and offering the Contractor an opportunity to be heard. Agency shall then conduct an investigation to determine whether such Contractor or subcontractor is in compliance.
3. In the event that the Contractor has been found to have violated Section 6-129, the DSBS rules promulgated pursuant to Section 6-129, or any provision of this Contract that implements Section 6-129, including, but not limited to, any **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, Agency may determine that one of the following actions should be taken:
  - (a) entering into an agreement with the Contractor allowing the Contractor to cure the violation;
  - (b) revoking the Contractor's pre-qualification to bid or make proposals for future contracts;
  - (c) making a finding that the Contractor is in default of the Contract;
  - (d) terminating the Contract;
  - (e) declaring the Contractor to be in breach of Contract;
  - (f) withholding payment or reimbursement;
  - (g) determining not to renew the Contract;
  - (h) assessing actual and consequential damages;

- (i) assessing liquidated damages or reducing fees, provided that liquidated damages may be based on amounts representing costs of delays in carrying out the purposes of the M/WBE Program, or in meeting the purposes of the Contract, the costs of meeting utilization goals through additional procurements, the administrative costs of investigation and enforcement, or other factors set forth in the Contract;
- (j) exercising rights under the Contract to procure goods, services or construction from another contractor and charge the cost of such contract to the Contractor that has been found to be in noncompliance; or
- (k) taking any other appropriate remedy.

4. If an M/WBE Utilization Plan has been submitted, and pursuant to this Article II, Section 3, the Contractor has been found to have failed to fulfill its **Participation Goals** contained in its M/WBE Utilization Plan or the **Participation Goals** as modified by Agency pursuant to Article I, Part A, Section 11, Agency may assess liquidated damages in the amount of ten percent (10%) of the difference between the dollar amount of work required to be awarded to MBE and/or WBE firms to meet the **Participation Goals** and the dollar amount the Contractor actually awarded and paid, and/or credited, to MBE and/or WBE firms. In view of the difficulty of accurately ascertaining the loss which the City will suffer by reason of Contractor's failure to meet the **Participation Goals**, the foregoing amount is hereby fixed and agreed as the liquidated damages that the City will suffer by reason of such failure, and not as a penalty. Agency may deduct and retain out of any monies which may become due under this Contract the amount of any such liquidated damages; and in case the amount which may become due under this Contract shall be less than the amount of liquidated damages suffered by the City, the Contractor shall be liable to pay the difference.

5. Whenever Agency has reason to believe that an MBE and/or WBE is not qualified for certification, or is participating in a contract in a manner that does not serve a commercially useful function (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(8)), or has violated any provision of Section 6-129, Agency shall notify the Commissioner of DSBS who shall determine whether the certification of such business enterprise should be revoked.

6. Statements made in any instrument submitted to Agency pursuant to Section 6-129 shall be submitted under penalty of perjury and any false or misleading statement or omission shall be grounds for the application of any applicable criminal and/or civil penalties for perjury. The making of a false or fraudulent statement by an MBE and/or WBE in any instrument submitted pursuant to Section 6-129 shall, in addition, be grounds for revocation of its certification.

7. The Contractor's record in implementing its M/WBE Utilization Plan shall be a factor in the evaluation of its performance. Whenever Agency determines that a Contractor's compliance with an M/WBE Utilization Plan has been unsatisfactory, Agency shall, after consultation with the City Chief Procurement Officer, file an advice of caution form for inclusion in VENDEX as caution data.

Tax ID #: 11-2697243

APT E-  
PIN#: 85019B017

Contract # 2 - Plumbing Work

### SCHEDULE B - MWBE Utilization Plan

#### Part I: MWBE Participation Goals

Part I to be completed by contracting agency

#### Contract Overview

APT E-Pin # 85019B017 FMS Project ID#: PV028-ISS

Project Title/Agency Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

PIN # 8502019PV0002C

Bid/Proposal Response Date: February 22, 2019

Contracting Agency Department of Design and Construction

Agency Address 30-30 Thomson Avenue City Long Island City State NY Zip Code 11101

Contact Person Brandon Milliner Title MWBE Liaison & Compliance Analyst

Telephone # (718) 391-1416 Email MillineBr@ddc.nyc.gov

#### Project Description *(attach additional pages if necessary)*

Interior fit out of lobby with performance and ancillary spaces

#### MWBE Participation Goals for Services

*Enter the percentage amount for each group or for an unspecified goal.*

Prime Contract Industry: Construction

Group	Percentage
<u>Unspecified *</u>	<u>0 %</u>
<u>or</u>	
<u>Black American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Hispanic American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Asian American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Women</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<b>Total Participation Goals</b>	<b>0 %</b> <span style="float: right;">Line 1</span>

\* Note: For this procurement, individual ethnicity and gender goals are not specified. The Total Participation Goals for construction contracts may be met by using Black American, Hispanic American, Asian American or Women certified firms or any combination of such firms.

Tax ID #: 11-2697243

APT E-

PIN#: 85017B0096

Contract #2 - Plumbing Work

**SCHEDULE B - Part II: M/WBE Participation Plan**

Part II to be completed by the bidder/proposer:

Please note: For Non-M/WBE Prime Contractors who will NOT subcontract any services and will self-perform the entire contract, you must obtain a FULL waiver by completing the Waiver Application on pages 9 and 9a and timely submitting it to the contracting agency pursuant to the Notice to Prospective Contractors. Once a FULL WAIVER is granted, it must be included with your bid or proposal and you do not have to complete or submit this form with your bid or proposal.

**Section I: Prime Contractor Contact Information**

<b>Tax ID #</b>	11-2697243	<b>FMS Vendor ID #</b>	
<b>Business Name</b>	Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.	<b>Contact Person</b>	Danielle Maglio
<b>Address</b>	1414 65th Street Brooklyn, NY 11219		
<b>Telephone #</b>	718-837-5374	<b>Email</b>	eastemplumbing@optonline.net

**Section II: M/WBE Utilization Goal Calculation: Check the applicable box and complete subsection.**

**PRIME CONTRACTOR ADOPTING AGENCY M/WBE PARTICIPATION GOALS**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> For Prime Contractors (including Qualified Joint Ventures and M/WBE firms) adopting Agency M/WBE Participation Goals.  Calculate the total dollar value of your total bid that you agree will be awarded to M/WBE subcontractors for services and/or credited to an M/WBE prime contractor or Qualified Joint Venture.  Please review the Notice to Prospective Contractors for more information on how to obtain credit for M/WBE participation.	<b>Total Bid/Proposal Value</b>		<b>Agency Total Participation Goals (Line 1, Page 1)</b>		<b>Calculated M/WBE Participation Amount</b>
	\$ 195,000.00	X	-0-	=	\$ Line 2 -0-

**PRIME CONTRACTOR OBTAINED PARTIAL WAIVER APPROVAL: ADOPTING MODIFIED M/WBE PARTICIPATION GOALS**

<input type="checkbox"/> For Prime Contractors (including Qualified Joint Ventures and M/WBE firms) adopting Modified M/WBE Participation Goals.  Calculate the total dollar value of your total bid that you agree will be awarded to M/WBE subcontractors for services and/or credited to an M/WBE prime contractor or Qualified Joint Venture.  Please review the Notice to Prospective Contractors for more information on how to obtain credit for M/WBE participation.	<b>Total Bid/Proposal Value</b>		<b>Adjusted Participation Goal (From Partial Waiver)</b>		<b>Calculated M/WBE Participation Amount</b>
	\$	X		=	\$ Line 3

**Section III: M/WBE Utilization Plan: How Proposer/Bidder Will Fulfill M/WBE Participation Goals. Please review the Notice to Prospective Contractors for more information on how to obtain credit for M/WBE participation. Check applicable box. The Proposer or Bidder will fulfill the M/WBE Participation Goals:**

As an M/WBE Prime Contractor that will self-perform and/or subcontract to other M/WBE firms a portion of the contract the value of which is at least the amount located on Lines 2 or 3 above, as applicable. The value of any work subcontracted to non-M/WBE firms will not be credited towards fulfillment of M/WBE Participation Goals. Please check all that apply to Prime Contractor:

MBE  WBE

As a Qualified Joint Venture with an M/WBE partner, in which the value of the M/WBE partner's participation and/or the value of any work subcontracted to other M/WBE firms is at least the amount located on Lines 2 or 3 above, as applicable. The value of any work subcontracted to non M/WBE firms will not be credited towards fulfillment of M/WBE Participation Goals.

As a non M/WBE Prime Contractor that will enter into subcontracts with M/WBE firms the value of which is at least the amount located on Lines 2 or 3 above, as applicable.

**Section IV: General Contract Information**

What is the expected percentage of the total contract dollar value that you expect to award in subcontracts for services, regardless of M/WBE status? % 19%

*Provide a description of the types and dollar value of subcontracts to be awarded to M/WBE firms in fulfillment of the M/WBE Participation Goals. List the M/WBE firms to which the M/WBE Participation Goals will be awarded and the M/WBE firms to which subcontracts will be awarded and the dollar value if necessary.*

1	INSULATION - * WBEKS - 36,985.00
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	
17	

**Scopes of Subcontract Work**

**Section V: Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations**

hereby:

I acknowledge my understanding of the M/WBE participation requirements as set forth herein and the pertinent provisions of Section 6-129 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York (Section 6-129) and the rules promulgated thereunder.

I affirm that the information supplied in support of this M/WBE Utilization Plan is true and correct.

I agree, if awarded this Contract, to comply with the M/WBE participation requirements of this Contract, the pertinent provisions of Section 6-129 and the rules promulgated thereunder, all of which shall be deemed to be material terms of this Contract.

I agree and affirm that it is a material term of this Contract that the Vendor will award the total dollar value of the M/WBE Participation Goals to certified MBEs and/or WBEs, unless a full waiver is obtained or such goals are modified by the Agency, and

I agree and affirm, if awarded this Contract, to make all reasonable, good faith efforts to meet the M/WBE Participation Goals, or if a partial waiver is obtained or such goals are modified by the Agency, to meet the modified Participation Goals by soliciting and obtaining the participation of certified MBE and/or WBE firms.

Signature Danielle Maglio  
Print Name Danielle Maglio

Date February 22, 2019  
Title President



Small Business  
Services

Division of Economic and Financial Opportunity

# WBE Certificate

## Eastern Plumbing and Mechanical Contracting I

*This certificate acknowledges that this company has met the criteria as established by the WBE Program at the New York City Department of Small Business Services and is therefore certified as a Women-owned Business Enterprise (WBE).*

Certificate Number: MWCERT2015-104

Expires on: 3/30/2020

*Bill de Blasio*

Bill de Blasio, Mayor

Maria Torres-Springer, Commissioner

**SCHEDULE B – PART III – REQUEST FOR WAIVER OF M/WBE PARTICIPATION REQUIREMENT**

**Contract Overview**

Tax ID # \_\_\_\_\_ FMS Vendor ID # \_\_\_\_\_

Business Name \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone # \_\_\_\_\_ Email \_\_\_\_\_

Type of Procurement  Competitive Sealed Bids  Other Bid/Response Due Date \_\_\_\_\_

APTE-PIN # (for this procurement): \_\_\_\_\_ Contracting Agency: \_\_\_\_\_

**M/WBE Participation Goals as described in bid/solicitation documents**

\_\_\_\_\_ % Agency M/WBE Participation Goal

**Proposed M/WBE Participation Goal as anticipated by vendor seeking waiver**

\_\_\_\_\_ % of the total contract value anticipated in good faith by the bidder/proposer to be subcontracted for services and/or credited to an M/WBE Prime Contractor or Qualified Joint Venture.

**Basis for Waiver Request: Check appropriate box & explain in detail below (attach additional pages if needed)**

- Vendor does not subcontract services, and has the capacity and good faith intention to perform all such work itself with its own employees.
- Vendor subcontracts some of this type of work but at a lower % than bid/solicitation describes, and has the capacity and good faith intention to do so on this contract. (Attach subcontracting plan outlining services that the vendor will self-perform and subcontract to other vendors or consultants.)
- Vendor has other legitimate business reasons for proposing the M/WBE Participation Goal above. Explain under separate cover.

**References**  
 List 3 most recent contracts performed for NYC agencies (if any). Include information for each subcontract awarded in performance of such contracts. Add more pages if necessary.

CONTRACT NO.	AGENCY	DATE COMPLETED
Total Contract Amount \$ _____	Total Amount Subcontracted \$ _____	
Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____
CONTRACT NO. _____	AGENCY _____	DATE COMPLETED _____
Total Contract Amount \$ _____	Total Amount Subcontracted \$ _____	
Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____
CONTRACT NO. _____	AGENCY _____	DATE COMPLETED _____
Total Contract Amount \$ _____	Total Amount Subcontracted \$ _____	
Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract _____

List 3 most recent contracts performed for other entities. Include information for each subcontract awarded in performance of such contracts. Add more pages if necessary.

(Complete ONLY if vendor has performed fewer than 3 New York City contracts.)

<b>TYPE OF Contract</b>	<b>ENTITY</b>	<b>DATE COMPLETED</b>
Manager at entity that hired vendor (Name/Phone No./Email)		
Total Contract Amount \$	Total Amount Subcontracted \$	
Type of Work Subcontracted		

<b>TYPE OF Contract</b>	<b>AGENCY/ENTITY</b>	<b>DATE COMPLETED</b>
Manager at agency/entity that hired vendor (Name/Phone No./Email)		
Total Contract Amount \$	Total Amount Subcontracted \$	
Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract

<b>TYPE OF Contract</b>	<b>AGENCY/ENTITY</b>	<b>DATE COMPLETED</b>
Manager at entity that hired vendor (Name/Phone No./Email)		
Total Contract Amount \$	Total Amount Subcontracted \$	
Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract	Item of Work Subcontracted and Value of subcontract

**VENDOR CERTIFICATION:** I hereby affirm that the information supplied in support of this waiver request is true and correct, and that this request is made in good faith.

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_

*Shaded area below is for agency completion only*

**AGENCY CHIEF PROCUREMENT OFFICER APPROVAL**  
 Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**CITY CHIEF PROCUREMENT OFFICER APPROVAL**  
 Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**Waiver Determination**

Full Waiver Approved   
 Waiver Denied   
 Partial Waiver Approved   
 Revised Participation Goal  %

## APPRENTICESHIP PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

Bidders are advised that the Apprenticeship Program Requirements set forth below apply to each contract for which a check mark is indicated before the word "Yes". Compliance with these requirements will be determined solely by the City.

General Construction	_____ YES	_____ <b>X</b> _____	_____ NO
	* Note: Even if Yes is marked, the Exemption set forth below may apply.		
Plumbing Work	_____ YES	_____ <b>X</b> _____	_____ NO
HVAC and Fire Protection Work	_____ YES	_____ <b>X</b> _____	_____ NO
Electrical Work	_____ YES	_____ <b>X</b> _____	_____ NO

**1) Apprenticeship Program Requirements**

**NOTICE TO BIDDERS:** Please be advised that, pursuant to the authority granted to the City under Labor Law Section 816-b, the Department of Design and Construction hereby requires that the contractor awarded a contract as a result of this solicitation, and any of its subcontractors with subcontracts worth two million dollars or over, have, prior to entering into such contract or subcontract, apprenticeship agreements appropriate for the type and scope of work to be performed that have been registered with, and approved by, the New York State Commissioner of Labor. In addition, the contractor and its subcontractors will be required to show that such apprenticeship program/s have successfully passed the two year Probation period following the initial registration date of such program/s with the New York State Department of Labor.

The failure to prove, upon request, that these requirements have been met shall result in the contract not being awarded to the contractor or the subcontractor not being approved.

Please be further advised that, pursuant to Labor Law Section 220, the allowable ratio of apprentices to journeypersons in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to its workforce on any job under the registered apprenticeship program.

All bidders are required to submit the completed Apprenticeship Program Questionnaire with their bids.

**2) Apprenticeship Program Questionnaire**

The bidder must submit a completed and signed Apprenticeship Program Questionnaire, unless it qualifies for the exemption set forth below. The Questionnaire is set forth on the following page of the Bid Booklet.

**3) Exemption**

Bidders for the General Construction Contract are advised that the exemption set forth below applies if an "X" is indicated before the word "Yes".

_____ YES	_____ <b>X</b> _____	_____ NO
-----------	----------------------	----------

**Exemption:** If the bidder intends to subcontract 100% of the construction work, it is not required to demonstrate that it has an Apprenticeship Agreement(s), nor is it required to submit an Apprenticeship Program Questionnaire. If the bidder qualifies for this exemption, it shall submit a letter stating that it intends to subcontract 100% of the construction work. As indicated above, the Apprenticeship Program Requirements apply to subcontracts worth two million dollars or more.

APPRENTICESHIP PROGRAM QUESTIONNAIRE ("APQ")

PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS

The bidder MUST complete, sign and submit this Apprenticeship Program Questionnaire with its bid.

Name of Bidder: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.

1. Does the bidder have any Apprenticeship Program agreement(s) appropriate for the type and scope of work to be performed? (Note: Participation may be by either direct sponsorship or through collective bargaining agreement(s).  
 YES  NO
2. Has/have the bidder's Apprenticeship Program agreement(s) been registered with, and approved by the New York State Commissioner of Labor?  
 YES  NO
3. Has/have the bidder's Apprenticeship Program successfully passed the two-year Probation period following its initial registration with the New York State Department of Labor?  
 YES  NO

If the answers to Questions 1, 2, and 3 are "Yes", the bidder shall, in the space below (and/or attached herewith where applicable), provide the contact information for such Apprenticeship Program(s) as well as information demonstrating that such Apprenticeship Program(s) have passed the two-year Probation period following its initial registration with the New York State Department of Labor. (The bidder may attach additional pages if necessary.)

- Where the bidder directly sponsors any such Apprenticeship Program(s), the bidder shall provide the following:
  - The trade classification(s) covered by such program(s), and the date(s) such program(s) was/were approved by the New York State Commissioner of Labor; and/or
  - A copy of a letter(s) from the New York State Department of Labor ("NYS DOL"), on NYSDOL's letterhead, executed by an official thereof, which verifies/verify the trade classification(s) covered by such program(s), and the date(s) such program(s) was/were approved by the New York State Commissioner of Labor and the Active status of such program(s).
- Where the bidder participates in any such Apprenticeship Program(s) through its membership in an employer organization(s) that directly sponsors such program(s) or where the employer association(s) participates in such program(s) through collective bargaining, the bidder shall provide the following:
  - The contact information for the employer organization(s), and the apprenticeable trade(s) covered pursuant to the bidder's affiliation therewith, and the date such program(s) was/were approved by the New York State Commissioner of Labor; or
  - A letter(s) from such employer organization(s), on letterhead of such organization(s), executed by an officer, delegate or official thereof, which verifies/verify the trade classification(s) covered by such program(s), and the date(s) such program(s) was/were approved by the New York State Commissioner of Labor, and that the bidder is both a member in good standing of the identified employer organization and is subject to the provisions of the Apprenticeship Program agreement(s) sponsored thereby.



#1

**BID FORM**  
**THE CITY OF NEW YORK**  
**DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION**  
**DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

**BID FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND**  
**MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:**

**PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS**

**Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out**  
**110 Livingston Street**  
**Brooklyn 1120**

Name of Bidder: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.

Date of Bid Opening: February 22, 2019

Bidder is: (Check one, whichever applies) Individual ( ) Partnership ( ) Corporation (X)

Place of Business of Bidder: 1414 65th Street Brooklyn, NY 11219

Bidder's Telephone Number: 718-837-5374 Bidder's Fax Number: 718-234-7892

Bidder's Email Address: easternplumbing@optonline.net

Residence of Bidder (If Individual): \_\_\_\_\_

If Bidder is a Partnership, fill in the following blanks:

Names of Partners

Residence of Partners

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

If Bidder is a Corporation, fill in the following blanks:

Organized under the laws of the State of New York

Name and Home Address of President: Danielle Maglio  
13 Grano St., Monroe Twp, NJ 08831

Name and Home Address of Secretary: Vito Maglio  
13 Grano St., Monroe Twp, NJ 08831

Name and Home Address of Treasurer: Danielle Maglio  
13 Grano St., Monroe Twp, NJ 08831

## BID FORM

The above-named Bidder affirms and declares:

1. The said bidder is of lawful age and the only one interested in this bid; and no person, firm or corporation other than hereinbefore named has any interest in this bid, or in the Contract proposed to be taken.
2. By submission of this bid, each bidder and each person signing on behalf of any bidder certifies, and in the case of a joint bid each party thereto certifies as to its own organization, under penalty of perjury, that to the best of its knowledge and belief: (1) the prices in this bid have been arrived at independently without collusion, consultation, communication or agreement, for the purpose of restricting competition, as to any matter relating to such prices with any other bidder or with any competitor; (2) unless otherwise required by law, the prices quoted in this bid have not been knowingly disclosed by the bidder and will not knowingly be disclosed by the bidder prior to opening, directly or indirectly, to any other bidder or to any competitor; and (3) no attempt has been made or will be made by the bidder to induce any other person, partnership or corporation to submit or not to submit a bid for the purpose of restricting competition.
3. No councilman or other officer or employee or person whose salary is payable in whole or in part from the City Treasury is directly or indirectly interested in this bid, or in the supplies, materials, equipment, work or labor to which it relates, or in any of the profits thereof.
4. The bidder is not in arrears to the City of New York upon debt or contract or taxes, and is not a defaulter, as surety or otherwise, upon any obligation of the City of New York, and has not been declared not responsible, or disqualified, by any agency of the City of New York or State of New York, nor is there any proceeding pending relating to the responsibility or qualification of the bidder to receive public contracts except as set forth on the Affirmation included as page 17 of this Bid Booklet.

The bidder hereby affirms that is has paid all applicable City income, excise and other taxes for all years it has conducted business activities in New York City.

5. The bidder, as an individual, or as a member, partner, director or officer of the bidder, if the same be a firm, partnership or corporation, executes this document expressly warranting and representing that should this bid be accepted by the City and the Contract awarded to him, he and his subcontractors engaged in the performance:
  - (1) will comply with the provisions of Section 6-108 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York and the non-discrimination provisions of Section 220a of the New York State Labor Law, as more expressly and in detail set forth in the Agreement; (2) will comply with Section 6-109 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York in relation to minimum wages and other stipulations as more expressly and in detail set forth in the Agreement; (3) have complied with the provisions of the aforesaid laws since their respective effective dates, and (4) will post notices to be furnished by the City, setting forth the requirements of the aforesaid laws in prominent and conspicuous places in each and every plant, factory, building and structure where employees engaged in the performance of the Contract can readily view it, and will continue to keep such notices posted until the supplies, materials and equipment, or work labor and services required to be furnished or rendered by the Contractor have been finally accepted by the City. In the event of any breach or violation of the foregoing, the Contractor may be subject to damages, liquidated or otherwise, cancellation of the Contract and suspension as a bidder for a period of three years. (The words, "the bidder", "he", "his", and "him" where used shall mean the individual bidder, firm, partnership or corporation executing this bid).

6. Compliance Report

The bidder, as an individual, or as a member, partner, director, or officer of the bidder, if the same be a firm, partnership, or corporation, (1) represents that his attention has been specifically drawn to Executive Order No. 50, dated April 25, 1980, on Equal Employment Compliance of the contract, and (2) warrants that he will comply with the provisions of Executive Order No. 50. The Employment Report must be submitted as part of the bid.

The bidder, as an individual, or as a member, partner, director, or officer of the bidder, if the same be a firm, partnership, or corporation, executes this document expressly warranting that he will comply with: (1) the provision of the contract on providing records, Chapter 8.

7. By submission of this bid, the bidder certifies that it now has and will continue to have the financial capability to fully perform the work required for this contract. Any award of this contract will be made in reliance upon such certification. Upon request therefor, the bidder will submit written verification of such financial capability in a form that is acceptable to the department.

8. In accordance with Section 165 of the State Finance Law, the bidder agrees that tropical hardwoods, as defined in Section 165 of the State Finance Law, shall not be utilized in the performance of this Contract, except as the same are permitted by the foregoing provision of law.

9. The bidder has visited and examined the site of the work and has carefully examined the Contract in the form approved by the Corporation Counsel, and will execute the Contract and perform all its items, covenants and conditions, and will provide, furnish and deliver all the work, materials, supplies, tools and appliances for all labor and materials necessary or required for the hereinafter named work, all in strict conformity with the Contract, for the prices set forth in the Bid Schedule:

10. M/WBE UTILIZATION PLAN: By signing its bid, the bidder agrees to the Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations set forth below, unless a full waiver of the Participation Goals is granted. The Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations will be deemed to satisfy the requirement to complete Section V of Part II of Schedule B: M/WBE Utilization Plan.

**Section V: Vendor Certification and Required Affirmations:**

I hereby:

- 1) acknowledge my understanding of the M/WBE participation requirements as set forth in this Contract and the pertinent provisions of Section 6-129 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York and the rules promulgated thereunder;
- 2) affirm that the information supplied in support of the M/WBE Utilization Plan is true and correct;
- 3) agree, if awarded this Contract, to comply with the M/WBE participation requirements of this Contract, the pertinent provisions of Section 6-129, and the rules promulgated thereunder, all of which shall be deemed to be material terms of this Contract;
- 4) agree and affirm that it is a material term of this Contract that the Vendor will award the total dollar value of the M/WBE Participation Goals to certified MBEs and/or WBEs, unless a full waiver is obtained or such goals are modified by the Agency; and
- 5) agree and affirm, if awarded this Contract, to make all reasonable, good faith efforts to meet the M/WBE Participation Goals, or If a partial waiver is obtained or such goals are modified by the Agency, to meet the modified Participation Goals by soliciting and obtaining the participation of certified MBE and/or WBE firms.

**BID FORM**

**PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS**  
**Contract #2 - Plumbing Work**

**TOTAL BID PRICE:** In the space provided below, the Bidder shall indicate the total bid price in figures.

- A. **LUMP SUM PRICE** - Total price for all labor and material for all required work, excluding item (B) set forth below. Total Price shall include all costs and expenses, i.e. labor, material overhead and profit for all the Work, described and shown in the drawings and specifications.

Total Price For  
Labor

Total Price for Material Sold and  
Delivered

\$ 111,500.00 +

\$ 78,500.00

Total Price for Item A = \$ 190,000.00

- B. **ALLOWANCE** for Incidental Asbestos Abatement  
(Section 220013 of the Specifications)

\$5,000.00

**TOTAL BID PRICE (Add A + B)**  
( a/k/a BID PROPOSAL)

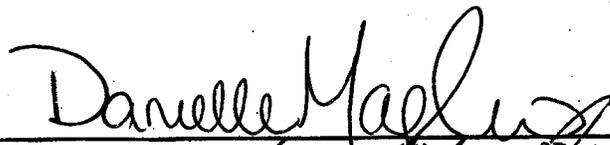
\$ 195,000.00

J.H

**BIDDER'S SIGNATURE AND AFFIDAVIT**

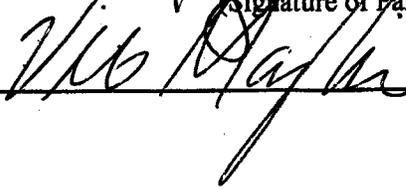
Bidder: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.

By:



(Signature of Partner or corporate officer) Danielle Maglio - President

Attest:  
(Corporate Seal)



Secretary of Corporate Bidder

Affidavit on the following page should be subscribed and sworn to before a Notary Public

**BID FORM (TO BE NOTARIZED)**

\*\*\*\*\*

**AFFIDAVIT WHERE BIDDERS IS AN INDIVIDUAL**

STATE OF NEW YORK, COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_ ss:  
\_\_\_\_\_ being duly sworn says:  
I am the person described in and who executed the foregoing bid, and the several matters therein stated are in all respects true.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of the person who signed the Bid)

Subscribed and sworn to before me this  
\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

\*\*\*\*\*

**AFFIDAVIT WHERE BIDDERS IS A PARTNERSHIP**

STATE OF NEW YORK, COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_ ss:  
\_\_\_\_\_ being duly sworn says:  
I am a member of \_\_\_\_\_ the firm described in and which executed the foregoing bid.  
subscribed the name of the firm thereto on behalf of the firm, and the several matters therein stated are in all respects true.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Partner who signed the Bid)

Subscribed and sworn to before me this  
\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

\*\*\*\*\*

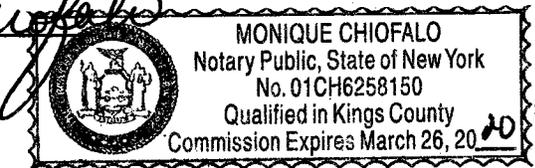
**AFFIDAVIT WHERE BIDDERS IS A CORPORATION**

STATE OF NEW YORK, COUNTY OF Kings ss:  
Danielle Maglio being duly sworn says:  
I am the President of the above named corporation whose name is subscribed to and which executed  
the foregoing bid. I reside at 13 Grano St., Monroe Twp, NJ 08831  
I have knowledge of the several matters therein stated, and they are in all respects true.

*Danielle Maglio*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Corporate Officer who signed the Bid)

Subscribed and sworn to before me this  
22nd day of February 2019

*Monique Chiofalo*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public



**AFFIRMATION**

The undersigned bidder affirms and declares that said bidder is not in arrears to the City of New York upon debt, contract or taxes and is not a defaulter, as surety or otherwise, upon obligation to the City of New York, and has not been declared not responsible, or disqualified, by any agency of the City of New York, nor is there any proceeding pending relating to the responsibility or qualification of the bidder to receive public contracts except NONE.

(If none, the bidder shall insert the word "None" in the space provided above.)

Full Name of Bidder: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.

Address: 1414 65th Street

City: Brooklyn

State: New York

Zip Code: 11219

**CHECK ONE BOX AND INCLUDE APPROPRIATE NUMBER:**

A - Individual or Sole Proprietorship \*  
SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER

-----

B - Partnership, Joint Venture or other unincorporated organization  
EMPLOYER IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

-----

C - Corporation  
EMPLOYER IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

11-2697243  
-----

By: Danielle Maglio  
Signature:

Title: Danielle Maglio, President

If a corporation, place seal here

This affirmation must be signed by an officer or duly authorized representative.

\* Under the Federal Privacy Act the furnishing of Social Security Numbers by bidders on City contracts is voluntary. Failure to provide a Social Security Number will not result in a bidder's disqualification. Social Security Numbers will be used to identify bidders, proposers or vendors to ensure their compliance with laws, to assist the City in enforcement of laws, as well as to provide the City a means of identifying of businesses which seek City contracts.

BID BOND 1  
FORM OF BID BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS. That we, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Principal", and \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Surety" are held and firmly bound to THE CITY OF NEW YORK, hereinafter referred to as the "CITY", or to its successors and assigns in the penal sum of \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), Dollars lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which said sum of money well and truly to be made, we, and each of us, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

Whereas, the Principal is about to submit (or has submitted) to the City the accompanying proposal, hereby made a part hereof, to enter into a contract in writing for \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

NOW, THEREFORE, the conditions of this obligation are such that if the Principal shall not withdraw said Proposal without the consent of the City for a period of forty-five (45) days after the opening of bids and in the event of acceptance of the Principal's Proposal by the City, if the Principal shall:

- (a) Within ten (10) days after notification by the City, execute in quadruplicate and deliver to the City all the executed counterparts of the Contract in the form set forth in the Contract Documents, in accordance with the proposal as accepted, and
- (b) Furnish a performance bond and separate payment bond, as may be required by the City, for the faithful performance and proper fulfillment of such Contract, which bonds shall be satisfactory in all respects to the City and shall be executed by good and sufficient sureties, and
- (c) In all respects perform the agreement created by the acceptance of said Proposal as provided in the Information for Bidders, bound herewith and made a part hereof, or if the City shall reject the aforesaid Proposal, then this obligation shall be null and void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

BID BOND 2

In the event that the Proposal of the Principal shall be accepted and the Contract be awarded to him the Surety hereunder agrees subject only to the payment by the Principal of the premium therefore, if requested by the City, to write the aforementioned performance and payment bonds in the form set forth in the Contract Documents.

It is expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall in no event exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

There shall be no liability under this bond if, in the event of the acceptance of the Principal's Proposal by the City, either a performance bond or payment bond, or both, shall not be required by the City on or before the 30th day after the date on which the City signs the Contract.

The surety, for the value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligations of the Surety and its bond shall in no way be impaired or affected by any postponements of the date upon which the City will receive or open bids, or by any extensions of time within which the City may accept the Principal's Proposal, or by any waiver by the City of any of the requirements of the Information for Bidders, and the Surety hereby waives notice of any such postponements, extensions, or waivers.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Principal (L.S.)

By: \_\_\_\_\_

(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety

By: \_\_\_\_\_

BID BOND 3

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF A CORPORATION

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:  
On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_ to me known, who, being by me duly sworn, did depose and say that he resides at \_\_\_\_\_ that he is the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ the corporation described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; that he knows the seal of said corporation; that one of the seals affixed to said instrument is such seal; that it was so affixed by order of the directors of said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like order.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF A PARTNERSHIP

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:  
On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ to me known and known to me to be one of the members of the firm of \_\_\_\_\_ described in and who executed the foregoing instrument, and he acknowledged to me that he executed the same as and for the act and deed of said firm.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF AN INDIVIDUAL

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:  
On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ to me known and known to me to be the person described in and who executed the foregoing instrument and acknowledged that he executed the same.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

AFFIX ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS AND JUSTIFICATION OF SURETIES

## BID BREAKDOWN

**Submission:** Bidders are advised that the requirement to submit a Bid Breakdown applies to each contract for which an "X" is indicated before the word "Yes". If required, the bidder must submit, with its bid, a completed Bid Breakdown. Failure to provide a completed Bid Breakdown may result in rejection of the bid as non-responsive.

General Construction	<u>  x  </u>	YES		<u>      </u>	NO
Plumbing Work	<u>  x  </u>	YES		<u>      </u>	NO
HVAC and Fire Protection Work	<u>  x  </u>	YES		<u>      </u>	NO
Electrical Work	<u>  x  </u>	YES		<u>      </u>	NO

**Limitations on Use of Bid Breakdown:**

Bidders are advised that the Bid Breakdown shall be used for bid analysis purposes only and shall not be binding for any other purposes under the Contract, including, without limitation, for payment purposes or in connection with a contractor claim for extra work. If the form for the Bid Breakdown does not include an item of work required by the Contract Documents, such omission shall have no effect whatsoever, nor shall it be used by the contractor in connection with a claim for extra work (i.e., work for which the contractor is entitled to a change order).

**Instructions for Preparing Bid Breakdown:**

- (A) The Bid Breakdown is set forth on the following pages of this Bid Booklet and is in accordance with the Construction Specification Institute (CSI) format. For all items of work listed in the Bid Breakdown, the bidder must indicate the price for labor and the price for material, as well as the estimated quantities required.
  
- (B) In preparing its Bid Breakdown, the bidder shall submit prices that include all costs for overhead and profit. Overhead shall include, without limitation, all costs in connection with the following: administration, management, superintendence, small tools, insurance, bonds, and provision of services or items required by the General Conditions [except for Security/Fire Guard Services and Temporary Heat]. If the Project requires Security/Fire Guard Services and/or Temporary Heat, such service(s) will be included as separate line items in the Bid Breakdown.
  
- (C) If an item is set forth in the Bid Breakdown, but is not included in the Contract Documents (Drawings, Specifications, General Conditions, and/or Addenda), the bidder is advised to leave the item blank and exclude the cost of the item from its grand total. In an attachment to its Bid Breakdown, the bidder shall provide a list of all items left blank.
  
- (D) If an item is not set forth in the Bid Breakdown, but is included in the Contract Documents (Drawings, Specifications, General Conditions, and/or Addenda), the bidder is advised to add the item to its Bid Breakdown and include the cost of the item in its grand total. In an attachment to its Bid Breakdown, the bidder shall provide a list of all items added.



Department of  
Design and  
Construction

Project: ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT-OUT  
Location 110 Livingston Street, Brooklyn NY 11201

Bidder:

CONTRACTOR'S BID BREAKDOWN FORM

CONTRACT 2 - PLUMBING WORK

DDC ID: PV028-ISS

Sponsor Agency: DCLA

CSI	DESCRIPTION OF WORK	UNIT		MATERIAL		LABOR		TOTAL COST
		QNTY	UNIT MEAS	UNIT COST	TOTAL	UNIT COST	TOTAL	
<b>CONTRACT 2 - PLUMBING WORK</b>								
22 00 00	PLUMBING							
22077	Insulation		L/S					36,989.00
22 11 16	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING							
	2" DIA	70	LF	62	4340	50	3500	7,840.00
	1 1/2" DIA	50	LF	42	2100	48	2400	4,500.00
	1" DIA	60	LF	32	1920	45	2700	4,620.00
	3/4" DIA	250	LF	20	5000	40	10000	15,000.00
	1/2" DIA	130	LF	19	2470	35	4550	7,020.00
	TIE-IN	3	EA	160	480	1540	4620	5,100.00
	<b>SUBTOTAL</b>							81,069.00
22 11 19	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES							
	SPECIALTIES	1	LS					3,750.00
	<b>SUBTOTAL</b>							3,750.00
22 13 16	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING							
	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPE (CAST IRON NO HUB)							
	4" DIA	70	LF	32	2240	53	3710	5,950.00
	3" DIA	50	LF	30	1500	50	2500	4,000.00
	2" DIA AND SMALLER	390	LF	27	10530	45	17550	28,080
	TIE-IN	3	EA	160	480	1540	4620	5,100.00
	STORM WATER PIPE (CAST IRON NO HUB)							
	4" DIA	50	LF	30	1500	48	2400	4,680.00
	TIE-IN	1	EA	75	75	1340	1340	1,415.00
	<b>SUBTOTAL</b>							49,225.00
22 13 19	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES							
	CLEANOUT	5	EA	100	500	100	500	1,000.00
	<b>SUBTOTAL</b>							1,000.00
22 40 00	PLUMBING FIXTURES							
	WATER CLOSET (WALL MOUNTED) - UNIT PRICE PER CLIENT DIRECTION	5	EA	925	4625	600	3000	7,625.00
	WATER CLOSET (ABBAS, WALL MOUNTED) - UNIT PRICE PER CLIENT DIRECTION	1	EA	925	925	600	600	1,525.00
	LAVATORY (WALL MOUNTED)	5	EA	2150	10750	800	4000	14,750.00
	LAVATORY (ABBAS, WALL MOUNTED)	1	EA	2150	2150	800	800	2,950.00



**ATTACHMENT 1 – BID INFORMATION  
PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS**

**DESCRIPTION AND LOCATION OF WORK:**

**Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out  
110 Livingston Street  
Brooklyn 11201  
City of New York**

**DOCUMENTS AVAILABLE AT:**

Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section  
30-30 Thomson Avenue - First Floor, Long Island City, NY 11101

**SUBMISSION OF BIDS BEFORE BID OPENING:**

**TIME TO SUBMIT:**

**On or Before:** February 12, 2019

**PLACE TO SUBMIT:**

Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section  
30-30 Thomson Avenue - First Floor, Long Island City, NY 11101

**PRE BID QUESTIONS (PBQs):**

Please be advised that PBQs must be submitted to the Agency Contact Person at least five (5) business days (by 5:00 P.M. EST) prior to the bid opening date.

**BID OPENING:**

<b>PLACE OF BID OPENING:</b>	Department of Design and Construction
	Contract Section
	30-30 Thomson Avenue - First Floor
	Long Island City, NY 11101
<b>DATE AND HOUR:</b>	February 12, 2019 @ 2:00pm

**NOTE: Bid documents will not be sold after**

**PRE-BID CONFERENCE:**

<b>PLACE</b>	<b>22 Boerum Place Brooklyn, NY 11201</b>
<b>DATE AND HOUR</b>	<b>Tuesday Jan. 29, 2019 @ 10:00AM</b>
<b>MANDATORY OR OPTIONAL</b>	<b>Optional</b>

**BID SECURITY:**

Bid Security is required in the amount set forth below; provided, however, bid security is not required if the TOTAL BID PRICE set forth on the Bid Form is less than \$1,000,000.00.

- (1) Bond in an amount not less than 10% of the TOTAL BID PRICE set forth on the Bid Form, OR
- (2) Certified Check in an amount not less than 2% of the TOTAL BID PRICE set forth on the Bid Form.

**PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT SECURITY:**

Required for Contracts in the amount of \$1,000,000.00 or more. Performance and Payment Security shall each be in amount equal to 100% of the Contract Price.

**AGENCY CONTACT PERSON:**

Lorraine Holley, 30-30 Thomson Avenue - First Floor, Long Island City, Queens, 11101  
Telephone (718) 391-2601 Fax: (718) 391-2627

**BID BOOKLET  
PART B**

## SAFETY QUESTIONNAIRE

The bidder must include, with its bid, all information requested on this Safety Questionnaire. Failure to provide a completed and signed Safety Questionnaire at the time of bid opening may result in disqualification of the bid as non-responsive.

### 1. Bidder Information:

Company Name: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.

DDC Project Number: PV028-ISS

Company Size:            Ten (10) employees or less  
            Greater than ten (10) employees

Company has previously worked for DDC             YES             NO

### 2. Type(s) of Construction Work

TYPE OF WORK	LAST 3 YEARS	THIS PROJECT
General Building Construction	_____	_____
Residential Building Construction	_____	_____
Nonresidential Building Construction	_____	_____
Heavy Construction, except building	_____	_____
Highway and Street Construction	_____	_____
Heavy Construction, except highways	_____	_____
Plumbing, Heating, HVAC	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Painting and Paper Hanging	_____	_____
Electrical Work	_____	_____
Masonry, Stonework and Plastering	_____	_____
Carpentry and Floor Work	_____	_____
Roofing, Siding, and Sheet Metal	_____	_____
Concrete Work	_____	_____
Specialty Trade Contracting	_____	_____
Asbestos Abatement	_____	_____
Other (specify)	_____	_____

### 3. Experience Modification Rate:

The Experience Modification Rate (EMR) is a rating generated by the National Council of Compensation Insurance (NCCI). This rating is used to determine the contractor's premium for worker's compensation insurance. The contractor may obtain its EMR by contacting its insurance broker or the NCCI. If the contractor cannot obtain its EMR, it must submit a written explanation as to why.

The Contractor must indicate its Intra-state and Inter-state EMR for the past three years. [Note: For contractors with less than three years of experience, the EMR will be considered to be 1.00].

YEAR	INTRASTATE RATE	INTERSTATE RATE
2018	1.41	
2017	1.11	
2016	0.92	

If the Intra-state and/or Inter-state EMR for any of the past three years is greater than 1.00, the contractor must attach, to this questionnaire, a written explanation for the rating and identify what corrective action was taken to correct the situation resulting in that rating.

**4. OSHA Information:**

YES       NO

Contractor has received a willful violation issued by OSHA or New York City Department of Buildings (NYCDOB) within the last three years.

YES       NO

Contractor has had an incident requiring OSHA notification within 8 hours (all work-related fatalities) or an incident requiring OSHA notification within 24 hours (all work-related inpatient hospitalizations, all amputations and all losses of an eye).

The Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA) of 1970 requires employers with ten or more employees, on a yearly basis to complete and maintain on file the form entitled "Log of Work-related Injuries and Illnesses". This form is commonly referred to as the OSHA 300 Log (OSHA 200 Log for 2001 and earlier).

The OSHA 300 Log must be submitted for the last three years for contractors with more than ten employees.

The Contractor must indicate the total number of hours worked by its employees, as reflected in payroll records for the past three years.

The contractor must submit the Incident Rate for Lost Time Injuries (the Incident Rate) for the past three years. The Incident Rate is calculated in accordance with the formula set forth below. For each given year, the total number of incidents is the total number of non-fatal injuries and illnesses reported on the OSHA 300 Log. The 200,000 hours represents the equivalent of 100 employees working forty hours a week, fifty weeks per year.

Incident Rate = 
$$\frac{\text{Total Number of Incidents} \times 200,000}{\text{Total Number of Hours Worked by Employees}}$$

YEAR	TOTAL NUMBERS OF HOURS WORKED BY EMPLOYEES	INCIDENT RATE
2018	24,931	8.02
2017	20,762	-0-
2016	26,501	7.54

If the contractor's Incident Rate for any of the past three years is one point higher than the Incident Rate for the type of construction it performs (listed below), the contractor must attach, to this questionnaire, a written explanation for the relatively high rate.

General Building Construction	8.5
Residential Building Construction	7.0
Nonresidential Building Construction	10.2
Heavy Construction, except building	8.7
Highway and Street Construction	9.7
Heavy Construction, except highways	8.3
Plumbing, Heating, HVAC	11.3
Painting and Paper Hanging	6.9
Electrical Work	9.5
Masonry, Stonework and Plastering	10.5
Carpentry and Floor Work	12.2
Roofing, Siding, and Sheet Metal	10.3
Concrete Work	8.6
Specialty Trade Contracting	8.6

**5. Safety Performance on Previous DDC Project(s)**

YES  NO Contractor previously audited by the DDC Office of Site Safety.

DDC Project Number(s): \_\_\_\_\_

YES  NO Accident on previous DDC Project(s).

DDC Project Number(s): \_\_\_\_\_

YES  NO Fatality or Life-altering Injury on DDC Project(s) within the last three years.  
[Examples of a life-altering injury include loss of limb, loss of a sense (e.g., sight, hearing), or loss of neurological function].

DDC Project Number(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Date: February 22, 2019

By: Danielle Maglio  
(Signature of Owner, Partner, Corporate Officer)

Title: Danielle Maglio, President

## Pre-Award Process

The bidder is advised that as part of the pre-award review of its bid, it may be required to submit the information described in Sections (A) through (D) below. If required, the bidder must submit such information within five (5) business days following receipt of notification from DDC that it is among the low bidders. Such notification from DDC will be by facsimile or in writing and will specify the types of information which must be submitted.

**In the event the bidder fails to submit the required information within the specified time frame, its bid may be rejected as nonresponsive.**

\*\*\*\*\*

- (A) **Project Reference Form:** If required, the bidder must complete and submit the Project Reference Form set forth on pages 28 through 30 of this Bid Booklet. The Project Reference Form consists of 3 parts: (1) Contracts Completed by the Bidder, (2) Contracts Currently Under Construction by the Bidder, and (3) Pending Contracts Not Yet Started by the Bidder.
- (B) **Copy of License:** If required, the bidder must submit a copy of the license under which the bidder will be performing the work. Such license must clearly show the following: (1) Name of the Licensee, (2) License Number, and (3) Expiration date of the License. A copy of the license will be required from bidders for the following contracts: Plumbing Work, Electrical Work and Asbestos Abatement.
- (C) **Financial Information:** If required, the bidder must submit the financial information described below:

- (1) **Audited Financial Statements:** Financial statements (Balance Sheet and Income Statement) of the entity submitting the bid, as audited by an independent auditor licensed to practice as a certified public accountant (CPA). Audited financial statements for the three most recent fiscal years must be submitted. Each such financial statement must include the auditor's standard report.

If the bidder does not have audited financial statements, it must submit an affidavit attesting to the fact that the bidder does not have such statements. In addition, the bidder must submit the following documentation covering the three most recent fiscal years: signed federal tax returns, unaudited financial statements, and a "certified review letter" from a certified public accountant (CPA) verifying the unaudited financial statements.

Unless the most recent audited or unaudited financial statement was issued within ninety (90) days, the bidder must submit interim financial information that includes data on financial position and results of operation (income data) for the current fiscal year. Such information may be summarized on a monthly or quarterly basis or at other intervals.

- (2) **Schedule of Aged Accounts Receivable,** including portion due within ninety (90) days.
- (D) **Project Specific Information:** If required, the bidder must submit the project specific information described below:
- (1) Statement indicating the number of years of experience the bidder has had and in what type of construction.
- (2) Resumes of all key personnel to be involved in the project, including the proposed project superintendent.
- (3) List of significant pieces of equipment expected to be used for the contract, and whether such equipment is owned or leased.

- (4) Description of work expected to be subcontracted, and to what firms, if known.
- (5) List of key material suppliers.
- (6) Preliminary bar chart time schedule
- (7) Contractor's expected means of financing the project. This should be based on the assumption that the contractor is required to finance 2X average monthly billings throughout the contract period.
- (8) Any other issues the contractor sees as impacting his ability to complete the project according to the contract.

In addition to the information described in Sections (A) through (D) above, the bidder shall submit such additional information as the Commissioner may require, including without limitation, an explanation or justification for specific unit price items.

The bidder is further advised that it may be required to attend a pre-award meeting with DDC representatives. If such a meeting is convened, the bidder will be advised as to any additional material to be provided.

**PLEASE SEE ATTACHED**

**A. PROJECT REFERENCES - CONTRACTS COMPLETED BY THE BIDDER**

List all contracts substantially completed within the last 4 years, up to a maximum of 10, in descending order of date of substantial completion.

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount (\$000)	Date Completed	Owner Reference & Tel. No.	Architect/Engineer Reference & Tel. No. if different from owner

**CONTRACTS COMPLETED**

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Heartshare 131 Bay 19th Street Brooklyn, New York	Plumbing, Fire Protection, & Heating Work	\$326,543.00	Heartshare Human Services 12 Metro Tech Center Brooklyn, NY 11211	Nativeo LLC 1560 Bath Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11228 718-259-5178 Vincent Nativeo	100%		October 2012
Chaff Residence 101 Tompkins Avenue Staten Island, New York	Fire Protection & Heating Work	\$137,000	St Josephs Medical Ctr. Residential Services 101 Tompkins Avenue Staten Island, NY 10304	Nativeo LLC 1560 Bath Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11228 718-259-5178 Vincent Nativeo	100%		July 2012
Coney Island Hospital 2601 Ocean Parkway Brooklyn, New York	Plumbing	\$50,000.00	TDX Construction Corp 2601 Ocean Parkway Brooklyn, New York	The Urban Group 7608 Rockaway Blvd. Woodhaven, NY 11421 718-521-1141 Kevin Bharatnail	100%		January 2012
Elmhurst Hospital ED Chest Pain Unit 79-01 Broadway Elmhurst, NY	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$164,255.00	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York David Klung	Fratello Construction 134 Millbar Blvd Farmingdale, NY 11735 631-414-7171 Gullio Cianci	100%	420335275	June 2012
YAI, Inc. 1681 East 52nd Street Brooklyn, New York	Plumbing & Heating Work	\$52,525	Young Adult Institute 460 West 34th Street New York, New York Nadine Wiesel 212-273-6655	Nativeo LLC 1560 Bath Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11228 718-259-5178 Vincent Nativeo	100%		May 2012
Hunter College Thomas Hunter Hall 930 Lexington Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$38,372	CUNY 695 Park Avenue New York, NY, 10065	Manhattan Cont. Group 32 Ave of the Americas New York, NY 212-523-0677	100%	12-100	October 2012
Young Adult Institute 361 83rd Street Brooklyn, NY 11209	Plumbing, Fire Protection & Heating Work	\$60,000	Young Adult Institute 460 West 34th Street New York, New York	Nativeo LLC 1560 Bath Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11228 718-259-5178 Vincent Nativeo	100%		January 2013

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Queens Hospital - 3rd Fl. ICU Renovations Queens, New York	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$344,250	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Nativo LLC 1560 Bath Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11228 718-259-5178 Vincent Nativo	100%		April 2013
Queens Hospital - PACU 82-68 164th Street Jamaica, NY 11432	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$91,570	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Atlas Restoration 35-11 9th Street LIC, NY 11106 Gus Kontogiannis	100%		November 2012
Queens Hospital - Blood Bank 82-68 164th Street Jamaica, NY 11432	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$104,500	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Care Free Improvements 100 Sagamore Drive Syosset, NY 11791 Roger Rowe 631-767-6537	100%		February 2013
Queens Hospital - Geriatric 82-68 164th Street Jamaica, NY 11432	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$164,500	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Vastech Contracting Corp 47-20 28th Avenue Astoria, NY 11103 Vassilos Koutsidis 718-204-4943	100%	16-2012032-002	April 2013
8 Bed IRA Brooklyn DDO 316 Quincy Street Brooklyn, NY 11216	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$143,664	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	Jobco Incorporated 277 Northern Blvd. Great Neck, NY 11021 Spiros Triantafyllou 516-487-0050	100%	2861609999	April 2013
Staten Island Zoo Leopard Exhibit	Plumbing Work	\$90,000	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street, Westbury, NY 11590 Ben Schutzman 516-338-6848	85%		May 2013
Elmhurst - 7th Fl. CCU Renovations 79-01 Broadway E. Elmhurst, NY	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$259,350	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Volmar Construction 4400 Second Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Slezinger	100%		October 2013

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Fort Greene Health Center Basement Renovation 295 Flatbush Ave. Extension Brooklyn, New York	Plumbing Work	\$82,900	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	Nehal Contracting, Inc. 81 Tennyson Drive Nanuet, NY 10954 845-517-0711 Vipul D. Patel	100%	20121401219	June 2013
Choiriciati Cultural Center 64 East 4th Street New York, New York	Plumbing Work	\$177,300	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Jobco Incorporated 277 Northern Blvd. Great Neck, NY 11021 Spiros Triantafyllou 516-487-0050	100%		June 2013
Queens Hospital - Labor & Delivery 82-68 164th Street Jamaica, NY 11432	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$119,207	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Vastech Contracting Corp 47-20 28th Avenue Astoria, NY 11103 Vassilios Koutsidis 718-204-4943	100%	16-2012036-021	August 2013
College of Staten Island Advanced Imaging Facility, Building 6S 2800 Victory Boulevard Staten Island, NY 10314	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$126,790	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	M&J Electrical Cont. Corp 23-24 Steinway Street Astoria, NY 11105 718-726-5701	100%		October 2013
Phase 3 Beachfront Restoration at Rockaway Beach Entry Islands Queens, NY	Plumbing Work	\$847,059	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 Ben Schutzman 516-338-6848	100%	SANDISLAND	June 2013
Brooklyn Historical Society Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$55,201	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Atlas Restoration 35-11 9th Street LIC, NY 11106 Sean Bronson	100%	PVA678HPE	November 2013

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
MTA - Grand Central Station ESA - Future Connection	Plumbing Work	\$50,500	NYC MTA 341 Madison Avenue New York, NY	Urban Group, Ltd. 7608 Rockaway Blvd. Jamaica, NY 718-521-1141 Robin Bharatalal	100%		December 2013
Queens College Conversion of Laboratories Science Building, 2nd Floor 65-30 Kissena Blvd. Queens, NY	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$378,400	CUNY 425 E 25th Street #117 New York, NY	STV Construction, Inc. 225 Park Avenue South New York, NY 10003 Mr. Paul Usurifello 212-505-4915	100%	CITYW-CUCF- 01-09-04-PL	January 2014
Pier 40 353 West Street New York, NY	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$109,690	Hudson River Park Trust 353 West Street New York, NY, 10014	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 Ben Schutzman 516-338-6848	100%		December 2013
Kingsboro Community College T-1 & T-2 Buildings Manhattan Beach, NY	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$460,000	CUNY 425 E 25th Street New York, NY	Deific Construction 521 Markey Street Paterson, NJ 973-427-0058 Robert Ricciardi	100%	Y173.0000	January 2014
Maspeth Town Hall 5337 72nd Street Maspeth, NY	Plumbing Work	\$27,500	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500 Mike Zack	100%	C-48505	April 1, 2014
Department of Education Job Order Contract	Plumbing Work	\$84,250	NYC Board of Education 52 Chambers Street New York, NY	Volmar Construction 4400 Second Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-832-2444 Vladimir Slezinger	100%		August 2014
NYC Health & Hospitals Corp. Job Order Contract	Plumbing Work	\$40,500	NYC Health and Hospitals 160 Waters Street New York, NY 10038	Volmar Construction 4400 Second Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-832-2444 Vladimir Slezinger	100%		August 2014

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
LaGuardia Airport / Delta Terminals Flushing, NY 11371	Plumbing Work	\$201,425	Port Authority of NY / NJ 225 Park Avenue South New York, NY 10003	J. Kokolakis Contracting, Inc. 1500 Ocean Avenue Bohemia, NY 11716 631-744-6147	100%		August 2014
Rochdale Village Library	Plumbing Work	\$59,765	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Northstar Mechanical 370 Cedarhurst Avenue Medford, NY 11763 Janice Monaco	90%	LQD122-RO	August 2014
SUNY Downstate Advanced Biotechnology Incubator	Plumbing Work	\$897,420	State Univ. Construction Fund 353 Broadway Albany, NY 12246	H.M. Hughes 323 E. 65th Street New York, NY 10065 Mr. Thomas Emmons 212-517-3269	100%		August 2014
South Beach Psychiatric Center 777 Seaview Avenue Staten Island, NY	Plumbing Work	\$1,568,419	OGS Coming Tower Empire State Plaza Albany, NY, 12242	Citnaltia Construction 5108 Fort Hamilton Pkwy Brooklyn, NY Steve Pittaresi 718-351-5806	100%	SA065	November 2014
Woodhull Hospital CPEP 760 Borachway Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$85,000	HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Volmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Slezinger	100%		August 2014
Pier 51 Playground Hudson River Greenway New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$31,550	Hudson River Park Trust 353 West Street New York, NY	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 516-338-6848 Sean Walters	100%	C4512	July 2014
Hamilton Avenue Asphalt Plant Control Tower Mod 442-448 Hamilton Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232	Plumbing Work	\$35,637	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	NESCO, Inc. 12-17 38th Avenue LIC, NY 11101 Chuck Donaldson	100%	20121402103	November 2014
Ocean Breeze Athletic Center Building Construction 625 Father Capodanno Staten Island, NY	Plumbing Work	\$1,262,710	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	C&L Contracting Corp. 14-20 128th street College Point, NY 11356 516-326-4460 Joel Pitter	100%		February 2015

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Brooklyn Childrens Museum 145 Brooklyn Avenue Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$131,863	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	UTB-United Technology 141 New Hyde Park Franklin Square, NY 11010 516-326-1160	100%	PV262-RT	September 2014
Baruch College Lexington Avenue New York, NY 10010	Plumbing Work	\$99,122	CUNY 425 E 25th Street New York, NY	XBR Inc. 35-12 19th Avenue Astoria, NY 11105 718-606-0072 Peter Lambrakis	100%		March 2015
Ocean Bay Apartments 434 Beach 54th Street Far Rockaway, NY 11692	Plumbing Work	\$607,200	NYCHA 90 Church Street Risk Finance Department New York, NY 10007	Framan Construction 259 New Brunswick Avenue Fords, NJ 08863 732-661-0001 Domenic Manginelli	100%	HE1127115 Sep-15	July 2015
One Centre Street 1 Centre Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$131,126	NYC DCAS 1 Centre Street, 17th Floor New York, NY, 10007	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500 Mike Zack	100%		October 2015
Gold Street 100 Gold Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$149,386	NYC DCAS 1 Centre Street, 17th Floor New York, NY, 10007	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500 Mike Zack	100%		June 2015
45th Precinct 2877 Barkley Avenue Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$59,995	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	Empire Environmental 12 Bay 49th Street Brooklyn, NY 11214 718-388-5500 Carol Papau	100%		August 2015
Queens Hospital T Building 8268 164th St Jamaica, NY 11432	Plumbing Work	\$94,500	HHC 346 Broadway NY, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY Mike Zack 718-388-5500	100%	34201201	July 2015
Bronx Psychiatric Center Utility Connections @ BLDG 12&13 1500 Waters Place Bronx, NY 10461	Plumbing Work	\$98,988	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207/ 518-257-3000	Nagan Construction 226 Wanser Avenue Inwood, NY Nadir /516-374-6286	100%	308160 CR32	July 2015

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Broadway Junction Van Sinderen Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11233	Plumbing Work	\$48,120	NYC Parks Dept. Olmstead Center @ Flushing Meadows Corona Park, Flushing, NY	Perfetto Contracting 250 6th Street Brooklyn, NY 11215 Mikhail Zygmán 718-858-8600	100%		August 2015
Rehab of Adventure Playground Central Park Central Park West & 67th Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$87,500	Central Park Conservancy 14 East 60th Street New York, NY	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 516-338-6848 Jose Carcamo	100%	CP13007.W67PG	September 2015
Bronx Mental Health Center NYC Children's Center & Central Service Bldg. Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$2,919,474	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	J. Kokolakis Contracting, Inc. 1500 Ocean Avenue Bohemia, NY 11716 Michael Lupo 631-744-6147	100%	2737309999	November 2015
Downtown Art & Alpha Omega Dance Theatre Renovation 70 East 4th Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$304,550	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Jobco Incorporated 277 Northern Blvd. Great Neck, NY 11021 Spiros Triantafyllou 516-487-0050	100%	PVDOWNALP	November 2015
Queensboro Correctional Facility Rehabilitate 5th & 6th Floor Showers Long Island City, NY	Plumbing Work	\$383,978	OGS Coming Tower Empire State Plaza Albany, NY, 12242	Daryl Cousins 646-773-0049	100%	44126P	December 2015
EMS Station 50 159-10 Goethals Avenue Jamaica, NY	Plumbing Work	\$443,785	DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	Calcedo Construction 10 Midland Avenue Port Chester, NY 914-935-0000 Joseph M. Tomei	100%	F175 QUEEN	January 2016
Throggs Neck Houses Boiler Replacement 560 Balcom Avenue, Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$330,000	NYC Housing Authority 90 Church Street Risk Finance Dept. New York, New York	Franan Construction 259 New Brunswick Avenue Fords, NJ 08863 732-661-0001 Domenic Manginelli	100%	HE1331047	January 2016

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
MTA Flood Repairs, Employee Facilities @ Stillwell Avenue Coney Island, NY	Plumbing and Fire Protection Work	\$348,514	NYC Transit Authority 2 Broadway New York, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue, Brooklyn, NY Mike Zack	100%	C-48503 Sep-15	October 2015
Service Building Alterations At Hugh Carey Tunnel	Plumbing Work	\$89,500	Triborough Bridge and Tunnel Authority 2 Broadway NY, NY	Fratello Construction 134 Milbar BLVD Faeringdale, NY Stephen C 631-414-7170	100%		August 2016
59th Street Playground W. 59th street & West End Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$87,500	NYC Parks Department Olmstead Center @ Flushing Meadows Corona Park, Flushing, NY	Padilla Construction 300 Main Street Westbury, NY 11591 Jose Carcamo	100%		June 2016
Staten Island Family Justice Center 126 Stuyvesant Place Staten Island, NY	Plumbing Work	\$207,793	Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY Mike Zack	100%		June 2016
Pier 40 Boiler Room Replacement 353 West Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$172,500	Hudson River Park Trust 353 West Street New York, NY	The Liro Group 353 West Street New York, NY 917-661-3783 Mike Vatrovec	100%		June 2016
Namm Hall Bathroom Renovations with Associated Asbestos Abatement 300 Jay Street Brooklyn, NY 11201	Plumbing Work	\$1,025,947	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	Framan Construction 259 New Brunswick Avenue Fords, NJ 08863 Domenic Manginelli	100%	2880309999/CR12	September 2016
Elmhurst Hospital Boiler Plant 79-01 Broadway Elmhurst, NY 11373	Plumbing Work	\$540,500	NY Power Authority 123 Main Street White Plains, NY 10601	AKS International 37-04 19th Avenue Long Island City, NY Martin Jukic	100%	ES-GSN-0544	December 2016
Prospect Park Wellhouse Prosepect Park Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$298,086	NYC Parks Department Olmstead Center @ Flushing Meadows Corona Park, Flushing, NY	Northstar 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 Sean Walters	100%		October 2016

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Fordham Plaza East Fordham Rd 3rd Ave to Webster Avenue Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$338,234	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 Jose Carcamo	100%	HWXFPPLZA	February 2017
Henry Hudson Triborough Bridge And Tunnel	Plumbing Work	\$460,428	NYC Transit Authority 2 Broadway New York, NY	Paul J. Scatiano Inc. 12 Potter Avenue New Rochelle, NY 10801 Gerrod McDaniel	100%	HH-88A	January 2017
Bushwick Health Center 335 Central Avenue Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$224,490	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Volmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Siazinger	100%		February 2017
Hunter College Chemical Storage Laboratory 695 Park Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$50,000	Domitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207	M&J Electrical Cont. 2324 Steinway Street Long Island City, NY 718-726-7006 Spiros Vangelatos	100%		January 2017
Kew Gardens Library Queens, New York	Plumbing & Fire Protection Work	\$271,761	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	S & N Builders 107 Front Street Hempstead, NY 11550 516-505-7778 Sakander Raja	100%	LQ0122-KE	December 2017
Bronx River Arts Center 1087 East Tremont Avenue Bronx, NY 10460	Plumbing Work	\$424,056	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	S&N Builders 107 Front Street Hempstead, NY 11550 Sakander Raja	100%	PV467BRAC	December 2017
Woodstock Library 761 East 160th Street Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$395,821	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	NEESCO, Inc. 12-17 38th Avenue LIC, NY 11101 Chris Holtz	100%	20141423146	December 2017
Asser Levy Bathhouse 2366 5th Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$100,844	NYC Parks Department Olmstead Center @ Flushing Meadows Corona Park, Flushing, NY	CDE Airconditioning 321 39St Brooklyn, NY Brian Azzaro 718-788-1040	100%		October 2017

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
La Guardia Community College E Building Library Expansion 31-10 Tompson Avenue Long Island City, NY	Plumbing Work	\$215,700	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	Stalco Construction 1316 Motor Parkway Islandia, NY Joe Romuno	100%		June 2017
La Guardia Community College Heating Replacement 31-10 Tompson Avenue Long Island City, NY	Plumbing Work	\$180,000	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway, Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	AKS International 37-04 19th Avenue Long Island City, NY John Banovic/ 718-267-6800	100%		August 2017
Harlem Hospital 506 Lenox Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$250,000	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Vollmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Seizinger	100%		October 2017
Administration Children's Services Brooklyn LSP Facility 1125 Carroll Street Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$137,852	Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500 Umesh Jadhav	100%		August 2017
Brownsville Clinic 259 Bristol Street Brooklyn, NY 11212	Plumbing Work	\$98,500	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Vollmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Seizinger	100%		December 2017
Lehman College Roof Replacement 2921 Paul Avenue Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$38,000	Dormitory Authority State of NY 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	Paul J. Scariano Inc. 12 Potter Avenue New Rochelle, NY 10801 Gerrod McDaniel	100%		October 2017
Energy Conservation Measures @ Manhattan Health Building/ Bronx Court 125 Worth Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$102,000	DCAS 1 Centre Street New York, NY	CDE Airconditioning 321 39St Brooklyn, NY Zubair Syed 718-788-1040	100%		March 2018
Lehman College Central Heating & Cooling Plant 250 Bedford Park Blvd. Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$1,755,000	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	AKS International 37-04 19th Avenue Long Island City, NY John Banovic	100%		May 2017

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Allied Health 259 Adams Street Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$422,511	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	Forte Construction Corp. 926C Lincoln Ave. Holbrook, NY 11741 631-588-8600 George Athanasiadis	100%		February 2018
Bedford Clinic 485 Throop Avenue Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$106,500	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Volmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Slezinger	100%		January 2018
Mammi Hall Atrium- Roof Repl. & Plaza Repair 300 Jay Street Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$88,000	Dormitory Authority State of NY 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	ABCD Construction Corp. 5702 3rd Avenue Brooklyn, BY 11220 718-438-3385 George Bouroudis	100%		April 2018
122 Community Center 150 First Avenue New York, NY 10009	Plumbing Work	\$1,052,314	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, New York	Rockmore Contracting 26 Loft Road Smithtown, NY 11787 Alex Manno 631-366-6200	100%	PV467-122	June 2018
Renovation of Ginsburg Wellness Center No. 5 Bronx Behavioral Center 1500 Waters Place Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$659,953	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207	Fratello Construction 134 Millbar Avenue Farmingdale, NY 631-414-7171 Giulio Cianci	100%		August 2018
Hook & Ladder Co, 8 14 N. Moore Street New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$381,049	Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	JLJ Enterprises, Inc. 213-19 99th Avenue Queens Village, NY Mike Racanelli	100%		August 2018
VA Hospital	Plumbing Work	\$178,510	VA	J. Kokoiakis Contracting, Inc. 1500 Ocean Avenue, Bohemia, NY 11716 631-744-6147	100%		June 2018
Junction Clinic 34-33 Junction Blvd. Jackson Heights, NY 11372	Plumbing Work	\$153,000	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Volmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232 718-832-2444 Vladimir Slezinger	100%		March 2018

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.	Date Completed
Build it Back Program No. 41 Restoration Assoc. w/ Sandy Recovery Program Broad Channel- Queens, NY	Plumbing Work	\$313,000	NYC Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500	100%		January 2018
Jacobi Medical Center Building 4 - 3rd, 11th & 12th Fl. 1400 Pelham Parkway South, Bronx, NY 10461	Plumbing Work	\$173,000	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Volmar Construction 4400 2nd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11232, 718-832-2444	100%	16-017-0277	October 2018
Brooklyn College- Aquatic Lab 2900 Bedford Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11210	Plumbing Work	\$80,000	Dormitory Authority State of NY 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	M&J Electrical Cont. Corp 23-24 Steinway Street Astoria, NY 11105 718-726-5701	100%	3327909999	January 2019
Coney Island Hospital -Interim Parking Lot Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$70,000	TDX/EDC 330 Seventh Avenue New York, NY 10001	Iannelli Construction 9723 3rd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11209	100%	204004	January 2019
Bellevue Hospital Vertical Transportation Mitigation Plan 462 1st Avenue, New York, NY 10016	Plumbing Work	\$157,500	TDX/EDC 330 Seventh Avenue New York, NY 10001	Iannelli Construction 9723 3rd Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11209	100%	1740672P	January 2019
Bellevue Hospital Tunnel 462 1st Avenue, New York, NY 10016	Plumbing Work	\$28,500	TDX/EDC 330 Seventh Avenue New York, NY 10001	Donofrio GC Corp 202 28th Street Brooklyn, NY 11232, 718-832-2444	100%	62510001	January 2019
HPD Build Back 2650 Ocean Parkway Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$150,000	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	S&N Builders 107 Front Street Hempstead, NY 11550 Sakander Raja	0%		

**B. PROJECT REFERENCES – CONTRACTS CURRENTLY UNDER CONSTRUCTION BY THE BIDDER**

List all contracts currently under construction even if they are not similar to the contract being awarded.

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount (\$000)	Subcontracted to Others (\$000)	Uncompleted Portion (\$000)	Date Scheduled to Complete	Owner Reference & Tel. No.	Architect/Engineer Reference & Tel. No. if different from owner

**CONTRACTS CURRENTLY UNDER CONSTRUCTION**

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.
Olmstead Center 117-2 Roosevelt Avenue, Corona, NY 11368	Plumbing Work	\$258,810	NYC Parks Department Olmstead Center @ Flushing Meadows Corona Park, Flushing, NY	Rockmore Contracting 80 Remington Blvd Ronkonkoma, NY 11779	40%	
State Armory Provide Readiness Center 2366 5th Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing and Fire Protection Work	\$3,930,563	OGS Coming Tower Empire State Plaza Albany, NY, 12242	OGS Coming Tower Empire State Plaza Albany, NY, 12242 Prisca Brunson	95%	44573-P
Refurbishment of W. 59th St. Marine Transfer Station W. 59th St. & West End Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$5,005,098	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	C&L Contracting 14-20 128th Street College Point, NY 11356 Tony Massaro	75%	
La Guardia Community College Façade Restoration 31-10 Tompson Avenue Long Island City, NY	Plumbing Work	\$277,263	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	Minelli Construction 300 Corporate Plaza Islandia, NY 11749 Joseph Mell 631-232-0222	75%	
Hunter's Point Library 47-40 Center Boulevard Long Island City, NY	Plumbing Work	\$1,164,643	NYC DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	Triton Structural Concrete 31-00 47th Avenue LIC, NY Jorge Garcia	95%	
Marshak Science Tower HVAC Upgrade Phase II City College 181 Convent Avenue, New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$495,818	Dormitory Authority State of New York 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207	AKS International 37-04 19th Avenue Long Island City, NY Marrn Jukic 718-267-6800	95%	
Manhattan Class Theater Company 231 West 39th Street #303 New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$320,000	Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	DDC 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY 718-391-1000 Lucy Wong	95%	

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.
Coney Island Site 1B 2007 Surf Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11224	Plumbing Work	\$853,000	NYC Housing Authority 250 Broadway, 27th Fl New York, NY 10007	Forte Construction Corp. 926C Lincoln Ave. Holbrook, NY 11741 631-589-8600 Paul Rivera	60%	GR1429251
East Elmhurst Library	Plumbing Work	\$178,000	Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue, LIC, NY	MESCO, Inc. 12-17 38th Avenue LIC, NY 11101 - Felix Aponte	95%	
Carlifon Manor	Plumbing Work	\$563,000	NYC Housing Authority 250 Broadway, 27th Fl New York, NY 10007	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500	5%	
Queens Hospital - Phase III ED Expansion 82-88 164th Street Jamaica, NY	Plumbing Work	\$305,000	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Ashnu International 58-09 28th Avenue Woodside, NY 11377 718-267-7590 Paresh Shah	70%	34201402
Bellevue Hospital 462 1st Avenue New York, NY	Plumbing Work	\$1,670,000	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	Ashnu International 58-09 28th Avenue Woodside, NY 11377 718-267-7590 Paresh Shah	95%	
Engine Co. 293 89-40 87th Street Queens, New York	Plumbing Work	\$440,000	NYC Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	Fratello Construction 134 Milbar Avenue Farmingdale, NY 631-414-7171 - Michael Finnerty	95%	
Jesse Owens Playground 1010 Lafayette Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11221	Plumbing Work	\$195,700	NYC Parks Dept	Paul J. Scariano Inc. 12 Potter Avenue New Rochelle, NY 10801 Gerrod McDaniel	70%	
Two Bridges Houses Restoration Assoc. w/ Sandy Recovery Program 286 South Street New York, NY 10002	Plumbing Work	\$860,000	NYC Housing Authority 250 Broadway, 27th Fl New York, NY 10007	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY -718-388-5500 Hothalfa Alhamayel	65%	GR1429260

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete	Contract No.
Crossroads Juvenile Interim Facility 17 Bristol Street, Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$161,000	NYC Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	Padilla Construction 299 Main Street Westbury, NY 11590 516-338-6848	75%	CJCREN
Haber Houses 3031 3033 West 25th St., Bldg. 3 3018 3020 West 25th St., Bldg. 2 3058 3060 West 25th St., Bldg. 1 Brooklyn, NY 11224	Plumbing Work	\$2,262,500	NYC Housing Authority 250 Broadway, 27th Fl New York, NY 10007	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500 Michael Zack	10%	GR1508595
Brooklyn College Whitman Hall Ramp Reconstruction & Interior Renov. 2900 Bedford Avenue Brooklyn, NY 11210	Plumbing Work	\$235,000	Dormitory Authority State of NY 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	C&L Contracting 1981 Marcus Avenue, Suite E106 Lake Success, NY 11042 Kush Patel	75%	3149809999/CR42
Upgrade Woodside Central Electr. Shop 33-61 54th Street Woodside, NY	Plumbing Work	\$235,000	NYC MTA 341 Madison Avenue New York, NY	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500	10%	C-34843
NYPD 40th Precinct 567 East 149th Street Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$2,000,000	NYC Department of Design and Construction 30-30 Thomson Avenue Long Island City, NY	DOBCO, Inc. 30 Galesi Drive, Suite 202A Wayne, NJ 07470 Lance Babiar	0%	
Louis Armstrong House Museum 34-56 107th Street Corona, NY 11368	Plumbing Work	\$630,000	Dormitory Authority State of NY 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 - 518-257-3000	Paul J. Scariano Inc. 12 Potter Avenue, New Rochelle, NY 10801 John Murphy	10%	2755609999
Hunter College -HVAC & Boiler Plant Upgrades 71 East 94th Street New York, NY 10128	Plumbing Work	\$600,000	Dormitory Authority State of NY 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	CDE Airconditioning 321 38St, Brooklyn, NY Said Zubair 718-788-1040	0%	3157409999
Glenwood Houses -Building No. 16 Replacement of Boilers 5913 Glenwood Road, Brooklyn, NY 11234	Plumbing Work	\$198,000	NYC Housing Authority 250 Broadway, 27th Fl New York, NY 10007	AWL Industries 460 Morgan Avenue, Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500	10%	BL1512195

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount	Owner	Reference & Tel. No.	% Complete
<b>Hartem Hospital -MLK Building</b> 506 Lenox Avenue, New York, NY 10037	Plumbing Work	\$325,000	NYC HHC 346 Broadway New York, New York	<b>Jemco Electrical Contractors</b> 271 42St. Brooklyn, NY 11232 Thomas Rallis - 718-698-9500	35% 4231
<b>Baruch College ADA Upgrade &amp; Asbestos Abatement</b> 135 East 22nd Street, New York, NY 10010	Plumbing Work	\$650,000	<b>Dormitory Authority State of NY</b> 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	<b>AFL Construction Co., Inc.</b> 106-11 Netherm Blvd. Corona, NY 11368	10% 3053209999/CR#19
<b>Lehman College Library</b> Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$28,500	<b>Dormitory Authority State of NY</b> 515 Broadway Albany, NY 12207 518-257-3000	<b>AWL Industries</b> 460 Morgan Avenue Brooklyn, NY 718-388-5500	0% C-34843
<b>Croton Above Ground Structure &amp; Landscaping Construction</b> 3651 Jerome Avenue Bronx, NY	Plumbing Work	\$2,097,322	<b>NYC DDC</b> 30-30 Thomson Avenue LIC, NY	<b>C&amp;L Contracting</b> 14-20 128th Street College Point, NY 11356 Tony Massaro	0% CRO-AGS
<b>HPD Build Back</b> 2650 Ocean Parkway Brooklyn, NY	Plumbing Work	\$150,000	<b>NYC HPD</b>	<b>S&amp;N Builders</b> 107 Front Street Hempstead, NY 11550 Sakander Raja	0%

**PLEASE SEE ATTACHED**

**C. PROJECT REFERENCES – PENDING CONTRACTS NOT YET STARTED BY THE BIDDER**

List all contracts awarded to or won by the bidder but not yet started.

Project & Location	Contract Type	Contract Amount (\$000)	Date Scheduled to Start	Owner Reference & Tel. No.	Architect/Engineer Reference & Tel. No. if different from owner



OFFICE OF THE MAYOR  
BUREAU OF LABOR SERVICES  
CONTRACT CERTIFICATE

To be completed if the contract is less than \$1,000,000

Contractor: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.

Address: 1414 65th Street Brooklyn, NY 11219

Telephone Number: 718-837-5374

Name and Title of Signatory: Danielle Maglio, President

Contracting Agency or Owner: NYC Department of Design and Construction

Project Number: PV028-ISS

Proposed Contract Amount: \_\_\_\_\_

Description and Address of Proposed Contract: Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out - 110 Livingston St., Brooklyn, NY 11201

Names of Subcontractors in the amount of 750,000 or more on this contract (if not known at this time, so state indicating that trades will be subcontracted):  
\_\_\_\_\_

NONE

I, (fill in name of person signing) Danielle Maglio,

hereby affirm that I am authorized by the above-named contractor to certify that said contractor's proposed contract with the above-named owner or city agency is less than \$1,000,000. This affirmation is made in accordance with Executive Order No. 50 (1980) as amended and its implementing regulations.

February 22, 2019

Date

Danielle Maglio  
Signature

**WILLFUL OR FRAUDULENT FALSIFICATION OF ANY DATA OR INFORMATION SUBMITTED HEREWITH MAY RESULT IN THE TERMINATION OF ANY CONTRACT BETWEEN THE CITY AND THE BIDDER OR CONTRACTOR AND BAR THE BIDDER OR CONTRACTOR FROM PARTICIPATION IN ANY CITY CONTRACT FOR A PERIOD OF UP TO THREE YEARS. FURTHER, SUCH FALSIFICATION MAY RESULT IN CRIMINAL PROSECUTION.**

## VENDEX COMPLIANCE

(A) **Vendex Fees:** Pursuant to Procurement Policy Board Rule 2-08(f)(2), the contractor will be charged a fee for the administration of the VENDEX system, including the Vendor Name Check process, if a Vendor Name Check review is required to be conducted by the Department of Investigation. The contractor shall also be required to pay the applicable required fees for any of its subcontractors for which Vendor Name Check reviews are required. The fee(s) will be deducted from payments made to the contractor under the contract. For contracts with an estimated value of less than or equal to \$1,000,000, the fee will be \$175 per Vendor Name Check review. For contracts with an estimated value of greater than \$1,000,000, the fee will be \$350 per Vendor Name Check review.

(B) **Confirmation of Vendex Compliance:** The Bidder shall submit this Confirmation of Vendex Compliance to the Department of Design and Construction, Contracts Section, 30-30 Thomson Avenue – First Floor, Long Island City, NY 11101.

**Bid Information:** The Bidder shall complete the bid information set forth below.

Name of Bidder: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.  
Bidder's Address: 1414 65th Street Brooklyn, NY 11219  
Bidder's Telephone Number: 718-837-5374  
Bidder's Fax Number: 718-234-7892  
Date of Bid Opening: February 22, 2019  
Project ID: PV028-ISS

**Vendex Compliance:** To demonstrate compliance with Vendex requirements, the Bidder shall complete either Section (1) or Section (2) below, whichever applies.

- (1) **Submission of Vendex Questionnaires to MOCS:** By signing in the space provided below, the Bidder certifies that as of the date specified below, the Bidder has submitted Vendex Questionnaires to the Mayor's Office of Contract Services, Attn: VENDEX, 253 Broadway, 9<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10007.

Date of Submission: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Partner or corporate officer)

Print Name: \_\_\_\_\_

- (2) **Submission of Certification of No Change to DDC:** By signing in the space provided below, the Bidder certifies that it has read the instructions in a "Vendor's Guide to Vendex" and that such instructions do not require the Bidder to submit Vendex Questionnaires. The Bidder has completed **TWO ORIGINALS** of the Certification of No Change set forth on the next page of this Bid Booklet.

By: Danielle Maglio  
(Signature of Partner or corporate officer)

Print Name: Danielle Maglio, President

# Certificate of No Change Form

- Please fill in all the fields and DO NOT leave any field blank.
- Please submit two completed forms. Copies will not be accepted.
- Please send both copies to the agency that requested it, unless you are advised to send it directly to the Mayor's Office of Contract Services (MOCS).
- A materially false statement willfully or fraudulently made in connection with this certification, and/or the failure to conduct appropriate due diligence in verifying the information that is the subject of this certification, may result in rendering the submitting entity non-responsible for the purpose of contract award.
- A materially false statement willfully or fraudulently made in connection with this certification may subject the person making the false statement to criminal charges

I, Danielle Maglio, being duly sworn, state that I have read  
*Enter Your Name*

and understand all the items contained in the vendor questionnaire and any submission of change as identified on page one of this form and certify that as of this date, these items have not changed. I further certify that, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, those answers are full, complete, and accurate; and that, to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, those answers continue to be full, complete, and accurate.

In addition, I further certify on behalf of the submitting vendor that the information contained in the principal questionnaire(s) and any submission of change identified on page two of this form have not changed and have been verified and continue, to the best of my knowledge, to be full, complete and accurate.

I understand that the City of New York will rely on the information supplied in this certification as additional inducement to enter into a contract with the submitting entity.

## Vendor Questionnaire *This section is required.*

*This refers to the vendor questionnaire(s) submitted for the vendor doing business with the City.*

Name of Submitting Entity: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Cont., Inc.

Vendor's Address: 1414 65th Street Brooklyn, New York 11219

Vendor's EIN or TIN: 11-2697243 Requesting Agency: NYC DDC

Are you submitting this Certification as a parent? (Please circle one) Yes  No

Signature date on the last full vendor questionnaire signed by the submitting vendor: 3/22/2017

Signature date on changed submission, if applicable, for the submitting vendor: \_\_\_\_\_

# Principal Questionnaire

This section refers to the most recent principal questionnaire submissions.

	Principal Name	Date of signature on last full Principal Questionnaire	Date(s) of signature on Changed Submission (if applicable)
1	Danielle Maglio	3/22/2017	
2	Monique Chiofalo	3/22/2017	
3	Vito Maglio	3/22/2017	
4			
5			
6			

Check if additional changes were submitted and attach a document with the date of additional submissions.

## Certification *This section is required.*

*This form must be signed and notarized. Please complete this twice. Copies will not be accepted.*

### Certified By:

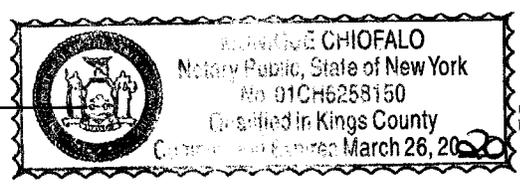
Danielle Maglio  
Name (Print)  
President *Danielle Maglio*  
Title  
Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Cont., Inc.  
Name of Submitting Entity

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date February 22, 2019

### Notarized By:

*Monique Chiofalo*  
Notary Public Kings County License Issued 01CH6258150 License Number

Sworn to before me on: February 22, 2019  
Date



# Certificate of No Change Form

- Please fill in all the fields and DO NOT leave any field blank.
- Please submit two completed forms. Copies will not be accepted.
- Please send both copies to the agency that requested it, unless you are advised to send it directly to the Mayor's Office of Contract Services (MOCS).
- A materially false statement willfully or fraudulently made in connection with this certification, and/or the failure to conduct appropriate due diligence in verifying the information that is the subject of this certification, may result in rendering the submitting entity non-responsible for the purpose of contract award.
- A materially false statement willfully or fraudulently made in connection with this certification may subject the person making the false statement to criminal charges

I, Danielle Maglio, being duly sworn, state that I have read  
*Enter Your Name*

and understand all the items contained in the vendor questionnaire and any submission of change as identified on page one of this form and certify that as of this date, these items have not changed. I further certify that, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, those answers are full, complete, and accurate; and that, to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, those answers continue to be full, complete, and accurate.

In addition, I further certify on behalf of the submitting vendor that the information contained in the principal questionnaire(s) and any submission of change identified on page two of this form have not changed and have been verified and continue, to the best of my knowledge, to be full, complete and accurate.

I understand that the City of New York will rely on the information supplied in this certification as additional inducement to enter into a contract with the submitting entity.

## Vendor Questionnaire *This section is required.*

*This refers to the vendor questionnaire(s) submitted for the vendor doing business with the City.*

Name of Submitting Entity: Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Cont., Inc.

Vendor's Address: 1414 65th Street Brooklyn, New York 11219

Vendor's EIN or TIN: 11-2697243 Requesting Agency: NYC DDC

Are you submitting this Certification as a parent? (Please circle one) Yes  No

Signature date on the last full vendor questionnaire signed by the submitting vendor: 3/22/2017

Signature date on changed submission, if applicable, for the submitting vendor: \_\_\_\_\_

# Principal Questionnaire

This section refers to the most recent principal questionnaire submissions.

	Principal Name	Date of signature on last full Principal Questionnaire	Date(s) of signature on Changed Submission (if applicable)
1	Danielle Maglio	3/22/2017	
2	Monique Chiofalo	3/22/2017	
3	Vito Maglio	3/22/2017	
4			
5			
6			

Check if additional changes were submitted and attach a document with the date of additional submissions.

## Certification *This section is required.*

*This form must be signed and notarized. Please complete this twice. Copies will not be accepted.*

### Certified By:

Danielle Maglio  
Name (Print)  
President  
Title  
Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Cont., Inc.  
Name of Submitting Entity  
Danielle Maglio February 22, 2019  
Signature Date

### Notarized By:

Monique Chiofalo Kings 01CH6258150  
Notary Public County License Issued License Number

Sworn to before me on: February 22, 2019  
Date



**IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT COMPLIANCE RIDER  
FOR NEW YORK CITY CONTRACTORS**

The Iran Divestment Act of 2012, effective as of April 12, 2012, is codified at State Finance Law ("SFL") §165-a and General Municipal Law ("GML") §103-g. The Iran Divestment Act, with certain exceptions, prohibits municipalities, including the City, from entering into contracts with persons engaged in investment activities in the energy sector of Iran. Pursuant to the terms set forth in SFL §165-a and GML §103-g, a person engages in investment activities in the energy sector of Iran if:

- (a) The person provides goods or services of twenty million dollars or more in the energy sector of Iran, including a person that provides oil or liquefied natural gas tankers, or products used to construct or maintain pipelines used to transport oil or liquefied natural gas, for the energy sector of Iran; or
- (b) The person is a financial institution that extends twenty million dollars or more in credit to another person, for forty-five days or more, if that person will use the credit to provide goods or services in the energy sector in Iran and is identified on a list created pursuant to paragraph (b) of subdivision three of Section 165-a of the State Finance Law and maintained by the Commissioner of the Office of General Services.

A bid or proposal shall not be considered for award nor shall any award be made where the bidder or proposer fails to submit a signed and verified bidder's certification.

Each bidder or proposer must certify that it is not on the list of entities engaged in investment activities in Iran created pursuant to paragraph (b) of subdivision 3 of Section 165-a of the State Finance Law. In any case where the bidder or proposer cannot certify that they are not on such list, the bidder or proposer shall so state and shall furnish with the bid or proposal a signed statement which sets forth in detail the reasons why such statement cannot be made. The City of New York may award a bid to a bidder who cannot make the certification on a case by case basis if:

- (1) The investment activities in Iran were made before the effective date of this section (i.e., April 12, 2012), the investment activities in Iran have not been expanded or renewed after the effective date of this section and the person has adopted, publicized and is implementing a formal plan to cease the investment activities in Iran and to refrain from engaging in any new investments in Iran: or
- (2) The City makes a determination that the goods or services are necessary for the City to perform its functions and that, absent such an exemption, the City would be unable to obtain the goods or services for which the contract is offered. Such determination shall be made in writing and shall be a public document.

**BIDDER'S CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE WITH  
IRAN DIVESTMENT ACT**

Pursuant to General Municipal Law §103-g, which generally prohibits the City from entering into contracts with persons engaged in investment activities in the energy sector of Iran, the bidder/proposer submits the following certification:

[Please Check One]

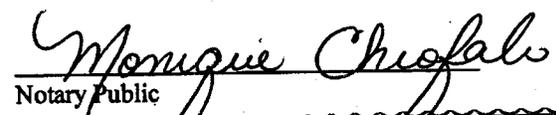
**BIDDER'S CERTIFICATION**

- By submission of this bid or proposal, each bidder/proposer and each person signing on behalf of any bidder/proposer certifies, and in the case of a joint bid each party thereto certifies as to its own organization, under penalty of perjury, that to the best of its knowledge and belief, that each bidder/proposer is not on the list created pursuant to paragraph (b) of subdivision 3 of Section 165-a of the State Finance Law.
  
- I am unable to certify that my name and the name of the bidder/proposer does not appear on the list created pursuant to paragraph (b) of subdivision 3 of Section 165-a of the State Finance Law. I have attached a signed statement setting forth in detail why I cannot so certify.

Dated: Brooklyn, New York  
February 22, 20 19

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE  
  
Danielle Maglio  
\_\_\_\_\_  
PRINTED NAME  
  
President  
\_\_\_\_\_  
TITLE

Sworn to before me this  
22nd day of February, 20 19

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

Dated: February 22, 2019



**CITY OF NEW YORK**

**DIVISION OF LABOR SERVICES**

**CONSTRUCTION EMPLOYMENT REPORT**

The City of New York Department of Small Business Services  
Division of Labor Services Contract Compliance Unit  
110 William Street, New York, New York 10038  
Phone: (212) 513 - 6323  
Fax: (212) 618-8879

**CONSTRUCTION EMPLOYMENT REPORT**

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

1. Your contractual relationship in this contract is: Prime contractor  Subcontractor
- 1a. Are M/WBE goals attached to this project? Yes  No
2. Please check one of the following if your firm would like information on how to certify with the City of New York as a:  
 Minority Owned Business Enterprise  Locally Based Business Enterprise  
 Women Owned Business Enterprise  Emerging Business Enterprise  
 Disadvantaged Business Enterprise
- 2a. If you are certified as an **MBE, WBE, LBE, EBE** or **DBE**, what city/state agency are you certified with? \_\_\_\_\_ Are you DBE certified? Yes  No
3. Please indicate if you would like assistance from SBS in identifying certified M/WBEs for contracting opportunities: Yes  No
4. Is this project subject to a project labor agreement? Yes  No
5. Are you a Union contractor? Yes  No  If yes, please list which local(s) you affiliated with \_\_\_\_\_
6. Are you a Veteran owned company? Yes  No

**PART I: CONTRACTOR/SUBCONTRACTOR INFORMATION**

7. \_\_\_\_\_  
Employer Identification Number or Federal Tax I.D. Email Address
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name
9. \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Address and Zip Code
10. \_\_\_\_\_  
Chief Operating Officer Telephone Number
11. \_\_\_\_\_  
Designated Equal Opportunity Compliance Officer Telephone Number  
(If same as Item #10, write "same")
12. \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Prime Contractor and Contact Person  
(If same as Item #8, write "same")

13. Number of employees in your company: \_\_\_\_\_

14. Contract information:

(a) \_\_\_\_\_ (b) \_\_\_\_\_  
Contracting Agency (City Agency) Contract Amount

(c) \_\_\_\_\_ (d) \_\_\_\_\_  
Procurement Identification Number (PIN) Contract Registration Number (CT#)

(e) \_\_\_\_\_ (f) \_\_\_\_\_  
Projected Commencement Date Projected Completion Date

(g) Description and location of proposed contract:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

15. Has your firm been reviewed by the Division of Labor Services (DLS) within the past 36 months and issued a Certificate of Approval? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, attach a copy of certificate.

16. Has DLS within the past month reviewed an Employment Report submission for your company and issued a Conditional Certificate of Approval? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, attach a copy of certificate.

**NOTE: DLS WILL NOT ISSUE A CONTINUED CERTIFICATE OF APPROVAL IN CONNECTION WITH THIS CONTRACT UNLESS THE REQUIRED CORRECTIVE ACTIONS IN PRIOR CONDITIONAL CERTIFICATES OF APPROVAL HAVE BEEN TAKEN.**

17. Has an Employment Report already been submitted for a different contract (not covered by this Employment Report) for which you have not yet received compliance certificate?  
Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_ If yes,

Date submitted: \_\_\_\_\_  
Agency to which submitted: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Agency Person: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contract No: \_\_\_\_\_  
Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_

18. Has your company in the past 36 months been audited by the United States Department of Labor, Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP)? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes,

(a) Name and address of OFCCP office.

---

---

(b) Was a Certificate of Equal Employment Compliance issued within the past 36 months?  
Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, attach a copy of such certificate.

(c) Were any corrective actions required or agreed to? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, attach a copy of such requirements or agreements.

(d) Were any deficiencies found? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, attach a copy of such findings.

19. Is your company or its affiliates a member or members of an employers' trade association which is responsible for negotiating collective bargaining agreements (CBA) which affect construction site hiring? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, attach a list of such associations and all applicable CBA's.

## PART II: DOCUMENTS REQUIRED

20. For the following policies or practices, attach the relevant documents (e.g., printed booklets, brochures, manuals, memoranda, etc.). If the policy(ies) are unwritten, attach a full explanation of the practices. See instructions.

- \_\_\_ (a) Health benefit coverage/description(s) for all management, nonunion and union employees (whether company or union administered)
- \_\_\_ (b) Disability, life, other insurance coverage/description
- \_\_\_ (c) Employee Policy/Handbook
- \_\_\_ (d) Personnel Policy/Manual
- \_\_\_ (e) Supervisor's Policy/Manual
- \_\_\_ (f) Pension plan or 401k coverage/description for all management, nonunion and union employees, whether company or union administered
- \_\_\_ (g) Collective bargaining agreement(s).
- \_\_\_ (h) Employment Application(s)
- \_\_\_ (i) Employee evaluation policy/form(s).
- \_\_\_ (j) Does your firm have medical and/or non-medical (i.e. education, military, personal, pregnancy, child care) leave policy?

21. To comply with the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986 when and of whom does your firm require the completion of an I-9 Form?

- (a) Prior to job offer Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (b) After a conditional job offer Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (c) After a job offer Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (d) Within the first three days on the job Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (e) To some applicants Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (f) To all applicants Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (g) To some employees Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (h) To all employees Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

22. Explain where and how completed I-9 Forms, with their supportive documentation, are maintained and made accessible.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

23. Does your firm or any of its collective bargaining agreements require job applicants to take a medical examination? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, is the medical examination given:

- (a) Prior to a job offer Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (b) After a conditional job offer Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (c) After a job offer Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (d) To all applicants Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_
- (e) Only to some applicants Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, list for which applicants below and attach copies of all medical examination or questionnaire forms and instructions utilized for these examinations.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

24. Do you have a written equal employment opportunity (EEO) policy? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, list the document(s) and page number(s) where these written policies are located.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

25. Does the company have a current affirmative action plan(s) (AAP)

\_\_\_\_ Minorities and Women

\_\_\_\_ Individuals with handicaps

\_\_\_\_ Other. Please specify \_\_\_\_\_

26. Does your firm or collective bargaining agreement(s) have an internal grievance procedure with respect to EEO complaints? Yes\_\_\_ No\_\_\_

If yes, please attach a copy of this policy.

If no, attach a report detailing your firm's unwritten procedure for handling EEO complaints.

27. Has any employee, within the past three years, filed a complaint pursuant to an internal grievance procedure or with any official of your firm with respect to equal employment opportunity? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If yes, attach an internal complaint log. See instructions.

28. Has your firm, within the past three years, been named as a defendant (or respondent) in any administrative or judicial action where the complainant (plaintiff) alleged violation of any anti-discrimination or affirmative action laws? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If yes, attach a log. See instructions.

29. Are there any jobs for which there are physical qualifications? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If yes, list the job(s), submit a job description and state the reason(s) for the qualification(s).

---

---

30. Are there any jobs for which there are age, race, color, national origin, sex, creed, disability, marital status, sexual orientation, or citizenship qualifications? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If yes, list the job(s), submit a job description and state the reason(s) for the qualification(s).

---

---



**FORM A CONTRACT BID INFORMATION: USE OF SUBCONTRACTORS/TRADES**

1. Do you plan to subcontractor work on this contract? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_
2. If yes, complete the chart below.

**NOTE: All proposed subcontractors with a subcontract in excess of \$750,000 must complete an Employment Report for review and approval before the contract may be awarded and work commences.**

SUBCONTRACTOR'S NAME*	OWNERSHIP (ENTER APPROPRIATE CODE LETTERS BELOW)	WORK TO BE PERFORMED BY SUBCONTRACTOR	TRADE PROJECTED FOR USE BY SUBCONTRACTOR	PROJECTED DOLLAR VALUE OF SUBCONTRACT

**\*if subcontractor is presently unknown, please enter the trade (craft name).**

**OWNERSHIP CODES**

- W: White
- B: Black
- H: Hispanic
- A: Asian
- N: Native American
- F: Female

**TRADE CLASSIFICATION CODES**

- (J) Journeylevel Workers
- (H) Helper
- (TOT) Total by Column
- (A) Apprentice (TRN) Trainee

For each trade to be engaged by your company for this project, enter the projected workforce for Males and Females by trade classification on the charts below.

**MALES**

	(1) White Non Hisp.			(2) Black Non Hisp.		(3) Hisp.		(4) Asian		(5) Native Amer.		(6) White Non Hisp.			(7) Black Non Hisp.		(8) Hisp.		(9) Asian		(10) Native Amer.		
	J																						
H																							
A																							
TRN																							
TOT																							

Grade: \_\_\_\_\_

Union Affiliation, if applicable \_\_\_\_\_

Total (Col. #1-10): \_\_\_\_\_

Total Minority, Male & Female (Col. #2,3,4,5,7,8,9, & 10): \_\_\_\_\_

Total Female (Col. #6 - 10): \_\_\_\_\_

What are the recruitment sources for you projected hires (i.e., unions, government employment office, job tap center, community outreach)?

---



---



---

**FORM B: PROJECTED WORKFORCE**

Trade: \_\_\_\_\_

Union Affiliation, if applicable \_\_\_\_\_

Total (Col. #1-10): \_\_\_\_\_

Total Minority, Male & Female  
(Col. #2,3,4,5,7,8,9, & 10): \_\_\_\_\_

Total Female  
(Col. #6 - 10): \_\_\_\_\_

**MALES**

(1) White Non Hisp.	(2) Black Non Hisp.	(3) Hisp.	(4) Asian	(5) Native Amer.

J

H

A

TRN

TOT

**FEMALES**

(6) White Non Hisp.	(7) Black Non Hisp.	(8) Hisp.	(9) Asian	(10) Native Amer.

What are the recruitment sources for you projected hires (i.e., unions, government employment office, job tap center, community outreach)?

---



---

**TRADE CLASSIFICATION CODES**

- (J) Journeylevel Workers
- (H) Helper
- (TOT) Total by Column
- (A) Apprentice
- (TRN) Trainee

For each trade currently engaged by your company for all work performed in New York City, enter the current workforce for Males and Females by trade classification on the charts below.

**MALES**

	(1)			(2)			(3)			(4)			(5)		
	White Non Hisp.	Black Non Hisp.	Native Amer.												
J															
H															
A															
TRN															
TOT															

Trade:

Union Affiliation, if applicable

Total (Col. #1-10):

Total Minority, Male & Female  
(Col. #2,3,4,5,7,8,9, & 10):

Total Female  
(Col. #6 - 10):

What are the recruitment sources for you projected hires (i.e., unions, government employment office, job tap center, community outreach)?

**FORM C: CURRENT WORKFORCE**

Trade: \_\_\_\_\_

Union Affiliation, if applicable \_\_\_\_\_

Total (Col. #1-10): \_\_\_\_\_

Total Minority, Male & Female  
(Col. #2,3,4,5,7,8,9, & 10): \_\_\_\_\_

Total Female  
(Col. #6 - 10): \_\_\_\_\_

**MALES**

(1) White Non Hisp.	(2) Black Non Hisp.	(3) Hisp.	(4) Asian	(5) Native Amer.

J

H

A

TRN

TOT

**FEMALES**

(6) White Non Hisp.	(7) Black Non Hisp.	(8) Hisp.	(9) Asian	(10) Native Amer.

What are the recruitment sources for you projected hires (i.e., unions, government employment office, job tap center, community outreach)?

---



---



THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

FEBRUARY 11, 2019

**ADDENDUM NO. # 1**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

**PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT OUT**

This addendum is issued for the purpose of amending the requirements of the Bid and Contract Documents and is hereby made a part of said Bid and Contract Documents to the same extent as though it were originally included therein.

---

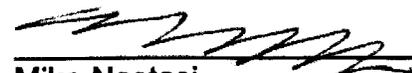
The bidder is advised that the items listed below apply to the project:

1. **The Bid Opening for the contracts described below scheduled for February 12, 2019, at 2:00 pm is rescheduled to February 15, 2019, at 2:00 pm:**
  - Contract #1 – General Construction Work
  - Contract #2 – Plumbing Work
  - Contract #3 – HVAC and Fire Safety Work
  - Contract #4 – Electrical Work
2. **Questions from Bidders and Responses to Questions:**  
See Attachment A
3. **Revisions to the Specifications:**  
See Attachment B
4. **Revisions to the Drawings:**  
See Attachment C

---

THIS ADDENDUM MUST BE SIGNED BY ALL BIDDERS AND ATTACHED TO THEIR BIDS.

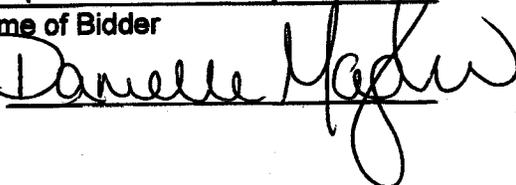
If additional information is required, please contact the Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section at (718) 391-1016, or by fax at (718) 391-2615.



Mike Nastasi  
Assistant Commissioner  
Culturals/Parks Program

*Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Cont. Inc.*

Name of Bidder

By: 

THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

FEBRUARY 13, 2019

**ADDENDUM NO. # 2**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

**PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT OUT**

This addendum is issued for the purpose of amending the requirements of the Bid and Contract Documents and is hereby made a part of said Bid and Contract Documents to the same extent as though it were originally included therein.

---

The bidder is advised that the items listed below apply to the project:

- 1. Questions from Bidders and Responses to Questions:**  
See Attachment A.

---

THIS ADDENDUM MUST BE SIGNED BY ALL BIDDERS AND ATTACHED TO THEIR BIDS.

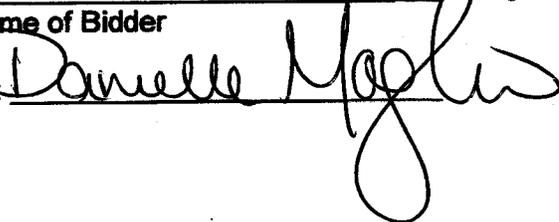
If additional information is required, please contact the Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section at (718) 391-1016, or by fax at (718) 391-2615.

  
Mike Nastasi  
Assistant Commissioner  
Culturals/Parks Program

*Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Cont. Inc.*

Name of Bidder

By:



THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

FEBRUARY 15, 2019

**ADDENDUM NO. # 3**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

PV028-ISS

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT OUT

This addendum is issued for the purpose of amending the requirements of the Bid and Contract Documents and is hereby made a part of said Bid and Contract Documents to the same extent as though it were originally included therein.

The bidder is advised that the items listed below apply to the project:

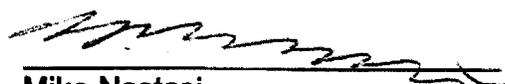
1. **The Bid Opening for the contracts described below scheduled for February 15, 2019, at 2:00 pm is rescheduled to February 22, 2019, at 2:00 pm:**

Contract #1 – General Construction Work  
Contract #2 – Plumbing Work  
Contract #3 – HVAC and Fire Safety Work  
Contract #4 – Electrical Work

2. **Revisions to the Bid Booklet:**  
See Attachment A.

THIS ADDENDUM MUST BE SIGNED BY ALL BIDDERS AND ATTACHED TO THEIR BIDS.

If additional information is required, please contact the Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section at (718) 391-1016, or by fax at (718) 391-2615.



**Mike Nastasi**  
Assistant Commissioner  
Culturals/Parks Program

*Eastern Plumbing & Mech Cont Inc.*

Name of Bidder

By:

*Danielle Maglio*



**NOTICE TO BIDDERS**  
**POSTPONEMENT MEMO**

**PROJECT : PV028-ISS**

**DESCRIPTION: Issue Project Room (Rebid1) - Interior Fit Out Re-Bid-(All Trades)-Borough Of Brooklyn**

THE BID OPENING FOR THE ABOVE-REFERENCED PROJECT  
ORIGINALLY SCHEDULED FOR TUESDAY, FEBRUARY 12, 2019 AT  
2:00PM IS POSTPONED UNTIL FURTHER NOTICE. AN ADDENDUM  
WILL BE ISSUED SHORTLY.

THANK YOU.

Company Name: Castro Plumbing & Med Cnt. Inc.

Company Officer: Danielle Maglio  
Signature

**Please email this acknowledgement receipt to: [csb\\_projectinquiries@ddc.nyc.gov](mailto:csb_projectinquiries@ddc.nyc.gov) If you have any questions, please call Bid Operations at 718-391-1041**



THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

FEBRUARY 11, 2019

**ADDENDUM NO. # 1**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

**PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT OUT**

This addendum is issued for the purpose of amending the requirements of the Bid and Contract Documents and is hereby made a part of said Bid and Contract Documents to the same extent as though it were originally included therein.

---

The bidder is advised that the items listed below apply to the project:

1. **The Bid Opening for the contracts described below scheduled for February 12, 2019, at 2:00 pm is rescheduled to February 15, 2019, at 2:00 pm:**

Contract #1 – General Construction Work  
Contract #2 – Plumbing Work  
Contract #3 – HVAC and Fire Safety Work  
Contract #4 – Electrical Work

2. **Questions from Bidders and Responses to Questions:**

See Attachment A

3. **Revisions to the Specifications:**

See Attachment B

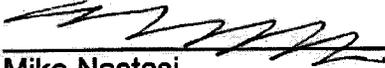
4. **Revisions to the Drawings:**

See Attachment C

---

THIS ADDENDUM MUST BE SIGNED BY ALL BIDDERS AND ATTACHED TO THEIR BIDS.

If additional information is required, please contact the Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section at (718) 391-1016, or by fax at (718) 391-2615.

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Mike Nastasi  
Assistant Commissioner  
Culturals/Parks Program

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Bidder

By: \_\_\_\_\_

**PROJECT #:** PV028-ISS

**PROJECT NAME:** ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out Rebid

**ATTACHMENT A - BIDDERS QUESTIONS AND DDC RESPONSES**

No.	Bidders Questions	DDC Responses
1	Please provide the name of the current building Fire Alarm System Vendor	AFA protective Systems, Inc.
2	Drawing A-600 does not show any doors that would correspond with Specification Section 084228 – All Glass Doors. Please advise which door this Specification pertains to.	The Doors on drawing A-600 correspond with specifications sections 081113, 081416. Specification Section 084228 – All Glass doors refer to Doors #E101, E102, E103, E104 in the Entry Lobby and Front lobby Areas
3	Please provide a Specification for the new Bronze door #104. Product listed in Specification Section 084228 – All glass doors will not match what is shown on the Elevations.	See specification section 081113 Steel Doors and Frames. These items should be provided in a bronze finish. See Attachment B, Revisions to the Specifications.
4	Please advise where window frame "W-7" is located as it cannot be found on any interior Elevations	This window type frame is deleted. See Attachment C.
5	Drawing M101 talks about Painting & color coding Ductwork the Addendum to General Conditions page 29 indicates all painting by contract #1 we assume this painting will be by contract#1 please confirm	Yes, this work will be part of contract #1.
6	Specification 233113-11 Paragraph 3.6B Duct Cleanliness. we assume if we are following 3.6 Paragraphs A&B IAQ procedures there will be no need for doing any duct cleaning please confirm.	Yes, if paragraph 3.6 A & B are followed as part of IAQ procedures, duct cleaning will not be required.
7	Drawing M501 Detail 16 Note 2 calls for a Welded Angle iron bracket on the Plate and Frame Heat Exchanger. There is no detail on this. Please provide if this is required	The heat exchanger will be floor mounted with the manufacturer furnished mounting plate.
8	Specification section does not make mention about a front end (PC work station) for this job. We assume panel mounted interface modules which will allow the operator to monitor and control the system at each panel using the mounted display will be acceptable please confirm or clarify.	A PC work station is not required.
9	Spec section 265200 calls for providing electrical power, ground system and raceways for AV system. Spec section 274112 which is also part of contract #4 calls for turn key AV system including cabling, plates, etc.  Please clarify what work is part of contract #4 in relation to the AV system.	All work in sections 265200 and 274112 are part of contract #4.  AV system and cabling is work under section 274116 by a contractor/subcontractor experienced in installing AV systems part of Contract #4.  The electrical contractor is responsible for providing certain provisions to the AV contractor, including but not

PV028-ISS  
 Issue Project Room  
 Theater Fit-Out Rebid  
 Addendum #1  
 Attachment A

		<p>limited to empty cable pathways with pull ties and power at locations AV equipment will be installed.</p> <p>The AV drawing set notes have further clarification about scope division if needed.</p> <p>Please refer to the Table of Contents for the specifications listed under each Contract.</p>
10	Are there any work restrictions that will be enforced on this job pertaining to noise restrictions, working in the parking garage or construction start time?	Work hours permitted by the building are between 8:00am and 5:00pm. Refer the Addendum to General Conditions, Additional Sections/Sub-Sections, Article 1.4 (K).
11	The contract calls for a new fire alarm system being installed in the renovated areas. Will the new fire alarm panel need to be tied into the existing building fire alarm panel?	Yes, the new fire alarm system for the renovated area needs to be tied to the existing building fire alarm panel, as indicated in the drawing FA-001.
12	If the two fire alarms are interconnected with each other, please provide the make and model # and the name of the in-house service company that maintains this panel.	<p>The existing fire alarm panel model number is MIRC0M(FX-2000).</p> <p>The service company that maintains this panel is National Fire and Security System Corps.</p> <p>The contact number is 212-580-8141 or 212-982-3451.</p>
13	In regard to the new electrical conduit raceway systems being installed to feed the new lighting, power outlets, sound systems and theatrical lighting within the performance space, can any of these raceways be installed exposed?	Exposed conduit is permitted only in mechanical, utility and storage spaces.
14	If all wiring runs in the performance space must be concealed within walls and ceilings, who will be responsible to cut open the walls/ceilings and repair them after raceways are installed?	Contract #1, General Contractor, will be responsible for opening and repairing the walls and ceiling in historical finish areas.
15	For the sound systems, lighting ring and theatrical lighting, who will be responsible to support them into the existing building structures?	Structural support for the Lighting Ring and Theatrical Lighting is the responsibility of Contract #1, General Contractor.

**DDC PROJECT #: PV028-ISS**

**PROJECT NAME: ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out**

**ATTACHMENT B – REVISIONS TO THE SPECIFICATIONS**

The following Sections have been modified:

- Specification Section 081113 – Steel Doors and Frames

Addition: Article 2.3.C.2: Where bronze doors are specified, the doors shall have a bronze finish.

PV028-ISS  
Issue Project Room  
Theater Fit-Out Rebid  
Addendum #1  
Attachment C

**DDC PROJECT #: PV028-ISS**

**PROJECT NAME: ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out**

**ATTACHMENT C- REVISIONS TO THE DRAWINGS**

**Reference Window Type W-7:**

References to window type W-7 is deleted. This window type is removed from the scope.

**DDC PROJECT #: PV028-ISS**

**PROJECT NAME: ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out**

**ATTACHMENT B – REVISIONS TO THE SPECIFICATIONS**

**The following Sections have been modified:**

- **Specification Section 081113 – Steel Doors and Frames**

Addition: Article 2.3.C.2: Where bronze doors are specified, the doors shall have a bronze finish.

PV028-ISS  
Issue Project Room  
Theater Fit-Out Rebid  
Addendum #1  
Attachment C

**DDC PROJECT #: PV028-ISS**

**PROJECT NAME: ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out**

**ATTACHMENT C- REVISIONS TO THE DRAWINGS**

**Reference Window Type W-7:**

References to window type W-7 is deleted. This window type is removed from the scope.



THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

FEBRUARY 13, 2019

**ADDENDUM NO. # 2**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

**PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT OUT**

This addendum is issued for the purpose of amending the requirements of the Bid and Contract Documents and is hereby made a part of said Bid and Contract Documents to the same extent as though it were originally included therein.

---

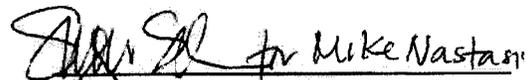
The bidder is advised that the items listed below apply to the project:

- 1. Questions from Bidders and Responses to Questions:**  
See Attachment A.

---

THIS ADDENDUM MUST BE SIGNED BY ALL BIDDERS AND ATTACHED TO THEIR BIDS.

If additional information is required, please contact the Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section at (718) 391-1016, or by fax at (718) 391-2615.

  
**Mike Nastasi**  
Assistant Commissioner  
Culturals/Parks Program

---

Name of Bidder

By: \_\_\_\_\_

**PROJECT #: PV028-ISS**

**PROJECT NAME: ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out Rebid**

**ATTACHMENT A - BIDDERS QUESTIONS AND DDC RESPONSES**

No.	Bidders Questions	DDC Responses
1	Please consider revising the subcontracting limit from 60% to 75%. If the subcontracting limit remains at 60%, it will be difficult for a general contractor to: a. self-perform 60% of the project, b. meet the Minority Business Enterprise and Women's Business Enterprise Goal of 30%.	The Subcontracting limits cannot be changed. The percentage limits refer to the amount sub-contracted. a. The contractor would self-perform 40% of the project, not 60%. b. Please refer to MWBE Program requirements on pages 5-5f of the Bid Booklet.
2	Please clarify the type of acoustic wall panels that are needed for this project. Based on the specifications, our distributor cannot price out the panels, as written	Refer to drawing Detail 3/A-503, and drawings A-403 and A-404 for dimensions of panels.



THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS

FEBRUARY 15, 2019

**ADDENDUM NO. # 3**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIAL NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

**PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INTERIOR FIT OUT**

This addendum is issued for the purpose of amending the requirements of the Bid and Contract Documents and is hereby made a part of said Bid and Contract Documents to the same extent as though it were originally included therein.

---

The bidder is advised that the items listed below apply to the project:

1. **The Bid Opening for the contracts described below scheduled for February 15, 2019, at 2:00 pm is rescheduled to February 22, 2019, at 2:00 pm:**

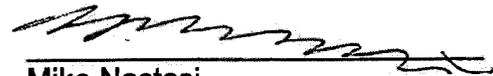
Contract #1 – General Construction Work  
Contract #2 – Plumbing Work  
Contract #3 – HVAC and Fire Safety Work  
Contract #4 – Electrical Work

2. **Revisions to the Bid Booklet:**  
See Attachment A.

---

THIS ADDENDUM MUST BE SIGNED BY ALL BIDDERS AND ATTACHED TO THEIR BIDS.

If additional information is required, please contact the Department of Design and Construction, Contract Section at (718) 391-1016, or by fax at (718) 391-2615.



**Mike Nastasi**  
Assistant Commissioner  
Culturals/Parks Program

---

Name of Bidder

By: \_\_\_\_\_

PV028-ISS  
Issue Project Room  
Theater Fit-Out Rebid  
Addendum #3  
Attachment A

**PROJECT #: PV028-ISS**

**PROJECT NAME: ISSUE Project Room Theater Fit-Out Rebid**

**ATTACHMENT A – REVISIONS TO THE BID BOOKLET**

The MWBE percentages for the project are revised.

Delete pages 6-a, 6-b, 6-c, 6-d of the Bid Booklet and replace with pages 6-a-R, 6-b-R, 6-c-R, and 6-d-R, included with this Addendum.

Tax ID #: \_\_\_\_\_

APT E-  
PIN#: 85019B016

Contract # 1 - General Construction Work

### SCHEDULE B - M/WBE Utilization Plan

#### Part I: M/WBE Participation Goals

Part I to be completed by contracting agency

#### Contract Overview

APT E-Pin # 85019B016 FMS Project ID#: PV028-ISS

Project Title/Agency Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

PIN # 8502019PV0001C

Bid/Proposal  
Response Date: February 22, 2019

Contracting Agency Department of Design and Construction

Agency Address 30-30 Thomson Avenue City Long Island City State NY Zip Code 11101

Contact Person Brandon Milliner Title MWBE Liaison & Compliance Analyst

Telephone # (718) 391-1416 Email MillineBr@ddc.nyc.gov

#### Project Description (attach additional pages if necessary)

Interior fit out of lobby with performance and ancillary spaces

#### M/WBE Participation Goals for Services

Enter the percentage amount for each group or for an unspecified goal.

Prime Contract Industry: Construction

Group	Percentage
<u>Unspecified *</u>	<u>22 %</u>
<u>or</u>	
<u>Black American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Hispanic American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Asian American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Women</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<b>Total Participation Goals</b>	<b>22 %</b>

Line 1

\* Note: For this procurement, individual ethnicity and gender goals are not specified. The Total Participation Goals for construction contracts may be met by using Black American, Hispanic American, Asian American or Women certified firms or any combination of such firms.

Tax ID #: \_\_\_\_\_

APT E-  
PIN#: 85019B017

Contract # 2 - Plumbing Work

### SCHEDULE B - M/WBE Utilization Plan

#### Part I: M/WBE Participation Goals

Part I to be completed by contracting agency

#### Contract Overview

APT E-Pin # 85019B017 FMS Project ID#: PV028-ISS

Project Title/Agency Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

PIN # 8502019PV0002C

Bld/Proposal \_\_\_\_\_

Response Date: February 22, 2019

Contracting Agency Department of Design and Construction

Agency Address 30-30 Thomson Avenue City Long Island City State NY Zip Code 11101

Contact Person Brandon Milliner Title MWBE Liaison & Compliance Analyst

Telephone # (718) 391-1416 Email MillineBr@ddc.nyc.gov

#### Project Description *(attach additional pages if necessary)*

Interior fit out of lobby with performance and ancillary spaces

#### M/WBE Participation Goals for Services

*Enter the percentage amount for each group or for an unspecified goal.*

Prime Contract Industry: Construction

Group	Percentage
<u>Unspecified *</u>	<u>0 %</u>
or	
<u>Black American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Hispanic American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Asian American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Women</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<b>Total Participation Goals</b>	<b>0 %</b>

Line 1

\* Note: For this procurement, individual ethnicity and gender goals are not specified. The Total Participation Goals for construction contracts may be met by using Black American, Hispanic American, Asian American or Women certified firms or any combination of such firms.

Tax ID #: \_\_\_\_\_

APT E-  
PIN#: 85019B018

Contract # 3 - HVAC and Fire Protection Work

### SCHEDULE B - M/WBE Utilization Plan

#### Part I: M/WBE Participation Goals

Part I to be completed by contracting agency

#### Contract Overview

APT E-Pin # 85019B018 FMS Project ID#: PV028-ISS

Project Title/Agency Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

PIN # 8502019PV0003C

Bid/Proposal  
Response Date: February 22, 2019

Contracting Agency Department of Design and Construction

Agency Address 30-30 Thomson Avenue City Long Island City State NY Zip Code 11101

Contact Person Brandon Millner Title MWBE Liaison & Compliance Analyst

Telephone # (718) 391-1416 Email MillineBr@ddc.nyc.gov

#### Project Description (attach additional pages if necessary)

Interior fit out of lobby with performance and ancillary spaces

#### M/WBE Participation Goals for Services

Enter the percentage amount for each group or for an unspecified goal.

Prime Contract Industry: Construction

Group	Percentage
<u>Unspecified *</u>	<u>15 %</u>
<u>OR</u>	
<u>Black American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Hispanic American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Asian American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Women</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<b>Total Participation Goals</b>	<b>15 %</b>

Line 1

\* Note: For this procurement, individual ethnicity and gender goals are not specified. The Total Participation Goals for construction contracts may be met by using Black American, Hispanic American, Asian American or Women certified firms or any combination of such firms.

Tax ID #: \_\_\_\_\_

APT E-  
PIN#: 85019B019

Contract # 4 - Electrical Work

### SCHEDULE B - M/WBE Utilization Plan

#### Part I: M/WBE Participation Goals

Part I to be completed by contracting agency

#### Contract Overview

APT E-Pin # 85019B019 FMS Project ID#: PV028-ISS

Project Title/Agency Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

PIN # 8502019PV0004C

Bid/Proposal Response Date: February 22, 2019

Contracting Agency Department of Design and Construction

Agency Address 30-30 Thomson Avenue City Long Island City State NY Zip Code 11101

Contact Person Brandon Milliner Title MWBE Liaison & Compliance Analyst

Telephone # (718) 391-1416 Email MillineBr@ddc.nyc.gov

#### Project Description *(attach additional pages if necessary)*

Interior fit out of lobby with performance and ancillary spaces

#### M/WBE Participation Goals for Services

*Enter the percentage amount for each group or for an unspecified goal.*

Prime Contract Industry: Construction

Group	Percentage
<u>Unspecified *</u>	<u>9 %</u>
<u>or</u>	
<u>Black American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Hispanic American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Asian American</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<u>Women</u>	<u>Unspecified %</u>
<b>Total Participation Goals</b>	<b>9 %</b>

Line 1

\* Note: For this procurement, individual ethnicity and gender goals are not specified. The Total Participation Goals for construction contracts may be met by using Black American, Hispanic American, Asian American or Women certified firms or any combination of such firms.

FMS ID: PV028-ISS



**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE                      LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000                  WEBSITE [www.nyc.gov/buildnyc](http://www.nyc.gov/buildnyc)

**Contract for Furnishing all Labor and Material Necessary and Required for:**

- CONTRACT NO. 1            GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 2            PLUMBING WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 3            HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 4            ELECTRICAL WORK

# Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

LOCATION:                      110 Livingston Street  
BOROUGH:                    Brooklyn 1120  
CITY OF NEW YORK

Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

Dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

Entered in the Comptroller's Office

First Assistant Bookkeeper \_\_\_\_\_

Dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_





**PROJECT ID:**

**PV028-ISS**

**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE  
LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000  
WEBSITE [www.nyc.gov/buildnyc](http://www.nyc.gov/buildnyc)

**VOLUME 2 OF 3**

**INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS  
CONTRACT  
PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS  
SCHEDULE OF PREVAILING WAGES  
GENERAL CONDITIONS**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS  
NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR THE PROJECT

**Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out  
Rebid**

**LOCATION:  
BOROUGH:  
CITY OF NEW YORK**

**110 Livingston Street  
Brooklyn 1120**

**CONTRACT NO. 1  
CONTRACT NO. 2  
CONTRACT NO. 3  
CONTRACT NO. 4**

**GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK  
PLUMBING WORK  
HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK  
ELECTRICAL WORK**

**Department of Cultural Affairs**

**Work AC**



**Date: October 31, 2018**

**19-020**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE  
LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000  
WEBSITE [www.nyc.gov/buildnyc](http://www.nyc.gov/buildnyc)

**VOLUME 2 OF 3**

**INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS  
CONTRACT  
PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS  
SCHEDULE OF PREVAILING WAGES  
GENERAL CONDITIONS**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS  
NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR THE PROJECT



**CITY OF NEW YORK**

**DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF INFRASTRUCTURES**

**INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS**

**JUNE 2015**

**CITY OF NEW YORK CITY  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

SECTION 1.	DESCRIPTION AND LOCATION OF WORK	1
SECTION 2.	TIME AND PLACE FOR RECEIPT OF BIDS	1
SECTION 3.	DEFINITIONS	1
SECTION 4.	INVITATION FOR BIDS AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS	1
SECTION 5.	PRE-BID CONFERENCE	2
SECTION 6.	AGENCY CONTACT	2
SECTION 7.	BIDDER'S OATH	2
SECTION 8.	EXAMINATION AND VIEWING OF SITE, CONSIDERATION OF OTHER SOURCES OF INFORMATION AND CHANGED CONDITIONS	2
SECTION 9.	EXAMINATION OF PROPOSED CONTRACT	3
SECTION 10.	FORM OF BID	3
SECTION 11.	IRREVOCABILITY OF BID	3
SECTION 12.	ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF AMENDMENTS	4
SECTION 13.	BID SAMPLES AND DESCRIPTIVE LITERATURE	4
SECTION 14.	PROPRIETARY INFORMATION/TRADE SECRETS	4
SECTION 15.	PRE-OPENING MODIFICATION OR WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS	4
SECTION 16.	BID EVALUATION AND AWARD	4
SECTION 17.	LATE BIDS, LATE WITHDRAWALS AND LATE MODIFICATIONS	5
SECTION 18.	WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS.	5
SECTION 19.	MISTAKE IN BIDS	5
SECTION 20.	LOW TIE BIDS	6
SECTION 21.	REJECTION OF BIDS	6
SECTION 22.	RIGHT TO APPEAL DETERMINATIONS OF NON-RESPONSIVENESS OR NON-RESPONSIBILITY AND RIGHT TO PROTEST SOLICITATIONS AND AWARD	7
SECTION 23.	AFFIRMATIVE ACTION AND EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY	7
SECTION 24.	VENDEX QUESTIONNAIRES	7
SECTION 25.	COMPLAINTS ABOUT THE BID PROCESS	8
SECTION 26.	BID, PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT SECURITY	8
SECTION 27.	FAILURE TO EXECUTE CONTRACT	9
SECTION 28.	BIDDER RESPONSIBILITIES AND QUALIFICATIONS	9
SECTION 29.	EMPLOYMENT REPORT	10
SECTION 30.	LABOR LAW REQUIREMENTS	10
SECTION 31.	INSURANCE	10
SECTION 32.	LUMP SUM CONTRACTS	11
SECTION 33.	UNIT PRICE CONTRACTS	11
SECTION 34.	EXCISE TAX	11
SECTION 35.	LICENSES AND PERMITS	11
SECTION 36.	MULTIPLE PRIME CONTRACTORS	11
SECTION 37.	LOCALLY BASED ENTERPRISE REQUIREMENTS (LBE)	12
SECTION 38.	BID SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS	13
SECTION 39.	COMPTROLLER'S CERTIFICATE	14
SECTION 40.	PROCUREMENT POLICY BOARD RULES	14
SECTION 41.	DDC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS	14

## INFORMATION FOR BIDDERS

### 1. Description and Location of Work

The description and location of the work for which bids are requested are specified in Attachment 1, "Bid Information". Attachment 1 is included as page A-1 of the Bid Booklet.

### 2. Time and Place for Receipt of Bids

Sealed bids shall be received on or before the date and hour specified in Attachment 1, at which time they will be publicly opened and read aloud in the presence of the Commissioner or his or her representative, and any bidders who may desire to be present.

### 3. Definitions

The definitions set forth in the Procurement Policy Board Rules shall apply to this Invitation For Bids.

### 4. Invitation For Bids and Contract Documents

(A) Except for titles, sub-titles, headings, running headlines, tables of contents and indices (all of which are printed herein merely for convenience) the following, except for such portions thereof as may be specifically excluded, shall be deemed to be part of the Contract and the Invitation for Bids.

- (1) All provisions required by law to be inserted in this Contract, whether actually inserted or not
- (2) The Contract Drawings and Specifications
- (3) The General Conditions, the General Requirements and the Special Conditions, if any
- (4) The Contract
- (5) The Information for Bidders; Request for Proposals; Notice of Solicitation and Proposal For Bids; Bid or Proposal, and, if used, the Bid Booklet
- (6) The Budget Director's Certificate; all Addenda issued prior to the receipt of the bids; the Notice of Award; Performance and Payment Bonds, if required; and the Notice to Proceed with the Work.

(B) For particulars as to this procurement, including quantity and quality of the purchase, extent of the work or labor to be performed, delivery and performance schedule, and any other special instructions, prospective bidders are referred to the Invitation For Bids Documents. A copy of such documents can be obtained at the location set forth in Attachment 1.

(C) Deposit for Copy of Invitation For Bids Documents: Prospective bidders may obtain a copy of the Invitation For Bids Documents by complying with the conditions set forth in the Notice of Solicitation. The deposit must be in the form of a check or money order made payable to the City of New York, and drawn upon a state or national bank or trust company, or a check of such bank or trust company signed by a duly authorized officer thereof.

(D) Return of Invitation For Bids Documents: All Invitation For Bids Documents must be returned to the Department upon request. If the bidder elects not to submit a bid thereunder, the

Invitation For Bids Documents shall be returned to the Department, along with a statement that no bid will be submitted.

(E) Return of Deposit: Such deposit will be returned within 30 days after the award of the contract or the rejection of all bids as set forth in the advertisement, provided the Invitation For Bids Documents are returned to the location specified in Attachment 1, in physical condition satisfactory to the Commissioner.

(F) Additional Copies: Additional copies of the Invitation For Bids Documents may be obtained, subject to the conditions set forth in the advertisement for bids.

5. Pre-Bid Conference

A pre-bid conference shall be held as set forth in Attachment 1. Nothing stated at the pre-bid conference shall change the terms or conditions of the Invitation For Bids Documents, unless a change is made by written amendment as provided in Section 9 below. Failure to attend a mandatory pre-bid conference shall constitute grounds for the rejection of the bid.

6. Agency Contact

Any questions or correspondence relating to this bid solicitation shall be addressed to the Agency Contact person specified in Attachment 1.

7. Bidder's Oath

(A) The bid shall be properly signed by an authorized representative of the bidder and the bid shall be verified by the written oath of the authorized representative who signed the bid, that the several matters stated and information furnished therein are in all aspects true.

(B) A materially false statement willfully or fraudulently made in connection with the bid or any of the forms completed and submitted with the bid may result in the termination of any Contract between the City and the Bidder. As a result, the Bidder may be barred from participating in future City contracts as well as be subject to possible criminal prosecution.

8. Examination and Viewing of Site

(A) Pre-Bidding (Investigation) Viewing of Site -Bidders must carefully view and examine the site of the proposed work, as well as its adjacent area, and seek other usual sources of information, for they will be conclusively presumed to have full knowledge of any and all conditions on, about or above the site relating to or affecting in any way the performance of the work to be done under the Contract which were or should have been indicated to a reasonably prudent bidder. To arrange a date for visiting the work site, bidders are to contact the Agency Contact person specified in Attachment 1.

(B) Should the contractor encounter during the progress of the work subsurface conditions at the site materially differing from any shown on the Contract Drawings or indicated in the Specifications or such subsurface conditions as could not reasonably have been anticipated by the contractor and were not anticipated by the City, which conditions will materially affect the cost of the work to be done under the

Contract, the attention of the Commissioner must be called immediately to such conditions before they are disturbed. The Commissioner shall thereupon promptly investigate the conditions. If he finds that they do so materially differ, or that they could not have been reasonably anticipated by the contractor and were not anticipated by the City, the Contract may be modified with his written approval.

9. Examination of Proposed Contract

(A) Request for Interpretation or Correction: Prospective bidders must examine the Contract Documents carefully and before bidding must request the Commissioner in writing for an interpretation or correction of every patent ambiguity, inconsistency or error therein which should have been discovered by a reasonably prudent bidder. Such interpretation or correction, as well as any additional contract provisions the Commissioner may decide to include, will be issued in writing by the Commissioner as an addendum to the Contract, which will be transmitted to each person recorded as having received a copy of the Contract Documents from the Department. Transmission of such addendum will be by mail, e-mail, facsimile or hand delivery. Such addendum will also be posted at the place where the Contract Documents are available for the inspection of prospective bidders. Upon transmission as provided for herein, such addendum shall become a part of the Contract Documents, and binding on all bidders, whether or not actual notice of such addendum is shown.

(B) Only Commissioner's Interpretation or Correction Binding: Only the written interpretation or correction so given by the Commissioner shall be binding, and prospective bidders are warned that no other officer, agent or employee of the City is authorized to give information concerning, or to explain or interpret, the Contract.

(C) Documents given to a subcontractor for the purpose of soliciting the subcontractor's bid shall include either a copy of the bid cover sheet or a separate information sheet setting forth the project name, the Contract number (if available), the contracting agency and the Project's location.

10. Form of Bid

Each bid must be submitted upon the prescribed form and must contain: a) the name, residence and place of business of the person or persons making the same; b) the names of all persons interested therein, and if no other person is so interested, such fact must be distinctly stated; c) a statement to the effect that it is made without any connection with any other person making a bid for the same purpose and that it is in all respects fair and without collusion or fraud; d) a statement that no Council member or other officer or employee or person whose salary is payable in whole or part from the City Treasury is directly or indirectly interested therein or in the supplies, materials or equipment and work or labor to which it relates, or in any portion of the profits thereof; e) a statement that the bidder is not in arrears to the City or to any agency upon a debt or contract or taxes, and is not a defaulter as surety or otherwise upon any obligation to the City to any agency thereof, except as set forth in the bid.

THE BID SHALL BE TYPEWRITTEN OR WRITTEN LEGIBLY IN INK. THE BID SHALL BE SIGNED IN INK. ERASURES OR ALTERATIONS SHALL BE INITIALED BY THE SIGNER IN INK. FAILURE TO CONFORM TO THE REQUIREMENTS OF THIS SECTION 10 SHALL RESULT IN THE REJECTION OF THE BID.

11. Irrevocability of Bid

The prices set forth in the bid cannot be revoked and shall be effective until the award of the Contract, unless the bid is withdrawn as provided for in Sections 15 and 18 below.

12. Acknowledgment of Amendments

The receipt of any amendment to the Contract Documents shall be acknowledged by the bidder in its bid submission.

13. Bid Samples and Descriptive Literature

Bid samples and descriptive literature shall not be submitted by the bidder, unless expressly requested elsewhere in the Contract or Contract Documents. Any unsolicited bid samples or descriptive literature which are submitted shall not be examined or tested and shall not be deemed to vary any of the provisions of this Contract.

14. Proprietary Information/Trade Secrets

(A) The bidder shall identify those portions of the bid which it deems to be confidential, proprietary information or trade secrets, and provide justification why such materials shall not be disclosed by the City. All such materials shall be clearly indicated by stamping the pages on which such information appears, at the top and bottom thereof with the word "Confidential". Such materials stamped "Confidential" must be easily separable from the non-confidential sections of the bid.

(B) All such materials so indicated shall be reviewed by the Agency and any decision not to honor a request for confidentiality shall be communicated in writing to the bidder. For those bids which are unsuccessful, all such confidential materials shall be returned to the bidder. Prices, makes and model or catalog numbers of the items offered, deliveries, and terms of payment shall be publicly available after bid opening, regardless of any designation of confidentiality made by the bidder.

15. Pre-Opening Modification or Withdrawal of Bids

Bids may be modified or withdrawn by written notice received in the office designated in Attachment 1, before the time and date set for the bid opening. If a bid is withdrawn in accordance with this Section, the bid security, if any, shall be returned to the bidder.

16. Bid Evaluation and Award

In accordance with the New York City Charter, the Procurement Policy Board Rules and the terms and conditions of this Invitation For Bids, this Contract shall be awarded, if at all, to the responsible bidder whose bid meets the requirements and evaluation criteria set forth in the Invitation For Bids, and whose bid price is either the most favorable bid price or, if the Invitation For Bids so states, the most favorable evaluated bid price. A bid may not be evaluated for any requirement or criterion that is not disclosed in the Invitation For Bids.

Restriction: No negotiations with any bidder shall be allowed to take place except under the circumstances and in the manner set forth in Section 21. Nothing in this Section shall be deemed to permit a contract award to a bidder submitting a higher quality item than that designated in the Invitation For Bids, if that bid is not also the most favorable bid.

17. Late Bids, Late Withdrawals and Late Modifications

Any bid received at the place designated in the solicitation after the time and date set for receipt of bids is late and shall not be considered. Any request for withdrawal or modification received at the place designated in the solicitation after the time and date set for receipt of bids is late and shall not be considered. The exception to this provision is that a late modification of a successful bid that makes the bid terms more favorable to the City shall be considered at any time it is received.

18. Withdrawal of Bids.

Except as provided for in Section 15, above, a bidder may not withdraw its bid before the expiration of forty-five (45) days after the date of the opening of bids; thereafter, a bidder may withdraw its bid only in writing and in advance of an actual award. If within sixty (60) days after the execution of the Contract, the Commissioner fails to fix the date for commencement of work by written notice to the bidder, the bidder, at his option, may ask to be relieved of his obligation to perform the work called for by written notice to the Commissioner. If such notice is given to the Commissioner, and the request to withdraw is granted, the bidder waives all claims in connection with this Contract.

19. Mistake in Bids

(A) Mistake Discovered Before Bid Opening: A bidder may correct mistakes discovered before the time and date set for bid opening by withdrawing or correcting the bid as provided in Section 15 above.

(B) Mistakes Discovered Before Award

(1) In accordance with General Municipal Law (Section 103, subdivision 11), where a unilateral error or mistake is discovered in a bid, such bid may be withdrawn upon written approval of the Agency Chief Contracting Officer if the following conditions are met:

- (a) The mistake is known or made known to the agency prior to the awarding of the Contract or within 3 days after the opening of the bid, whichever period is shorter; and
- (b) The price bid was based upon an error of such magnitude that enforcement would be unconscionable; and
- (c) The bid was submitted in good faith and the bidder submits credible evidence that the mistake was a clerical error as opposed to a judgment error; and
- (d) The error in the bid is actually due to an unintentional and substantial arithmetic error or an unintentional omission of a substantial quantity of work, labor, material or services made directly in the compilation of the bid, which unintentional arithmetic error or unintentional omission can be clearly shown by objective evidence drawn from inspection of the original work paper, documents, or materials used in the preparation of the bid sought to be withdrawn; and
- (e) It is possible to place the agency in the same position as existed prior to the bid.

(2) Unless otherwise required by law, the sole remedy for a bid mistake in accordance with this Article shall be withdrawal of the bid, and the return of the bid bond, or other security, if any, to the bidder. Thereafter, the agency may, in its discretion, award the Contract to the next lowest bidder or rebid the Contract. Any amendment to or reformation of a bid or a Contract to rectify such an error or mistake

therein is strictly prohibited.

(3) If the mistake and the intended correct bid are clearly evident on the face of the bid document, the bid shall be corrected to the intended correct bid and may not be withdrawn. Examples of mistakes that may be corrected are typographical errors, errors in extending unit prices, transposition errors and arithmetical errors.

## 20. Low Tie Bids

(A) When two or more low responsive bids from responsible bidders are identical in price, meeting all the requirements and criteria set forth in the Invitation For Bids, the Agency Chief Contracting Officer will break the tie in the following manner and order of priority:

- (1) Award to a certified New York City small, minority or woman-owned business entity bidder;
- (2) Award to a New York City bidder;
- (3) Award to a certified New York State small, minority or woman-owned business bidder;
- (4) Award to a New York State bidder.

(B) If two or more bidders still remain equally eligible after application of paragraph (A) above, award shall be made by a drawing by lot limited to those bidders. The bidders involved shall be invited to attend the drawing. A witness shall be present to verify the drawing and shall certify the results on the bid tabulation sheet.

## 21. Rejection of Bids

(A) Rejection of Individual Bids: The Agency may reject a bid if:

- (1) The bidder fails to furnish any of the information required pursuant to Section 24 or 28 hereof; or if
- (2) The bidder is determined to be not responsible pursuant to the Procurement Policy Board Rules; or if
- (3) The bid is determined to be non-responsive pursuant to the Procurement Policy Board Rules; or if
- (4) The bid, in the opinion of the Agency Chief Contracting Officer, contains unbalanced bid prices and is thus non-responsive, unless the bidder can show that the prices are not unbalanced for the probable required quantity of items, or if the imbalance is corrected pursuant to Section 15.

(B) Rejection of All Bids: The Agency, upon written approval by the Agency Chief Contracting Officer, may reject all bids and may elect to resolicit bids if in its sole opinion it shall deem it in the best interest of the City so to do.

(C) Rejection of All Bids and Negotiation With All Responsible Bidders: The Agency Head may determine that it is appropriate to cancel the Invitation For Bids after bid opening and before award and to complete the acquisition by negotiation. This determination shall be based on one of the following reasons:

- (1) All otherwise acceptable bids received are at unreasonable prices, or only one bid is received and the Agency Chief Contracting Officer cannot determine the reasonableness of the bid price, or no responsive bid has been received from a responsible bidder; or
- (2) In the judgment of the Agency Chief Contracting Officer, the bids were not independently arrived at in open competition, were collusive, or were submitted in bad faith.

(D) When the Agency has determined that the Invitation for Bids is to be canceled and that use of negotiation is appropriate to complete the acquisition, the contracting officer may negotiate and award the Contract without issuing a new solicitation, subject to the following conditions:

- (1) prior notice of the intention to negotiate and a reasonable opportunity to negotiate have been given by the contracting officer to each responsible bidder that submitted a bid in response to the Invitation for Bids;
- (2) the negotiated price is the lowest negotiated price offered by a responsible bidder; and
- (3) the negotiated price is lower than the lowest rejected bid price of a responsible bidder that submitted a bid in response to the Invitation for Bids.

**22. Right to Appeal Determinations of Non-Responsiveness or Non-Responsibility and Right to Protest Solicitations and Award**

The bidder has the right to appeal a determination of non-responsiveness or non-responsibility and has the right to protest a solicitation and award. For further information concerning these rights, the bidder is directed to the Procurement Policy Board Rules.

**23. Affirmative Action and Equal Employment Opportunity**

This Invitation For Bids is subject to applicable provisions of Federal, State and Local Laws and executive orders requiring affirmative action and equal employment opportunity.

**24. VENDEX Questionnaires**

(A) **Requirement:** Pursuant to Administrative Code Section 6-116.2 and the PPB Rules, bidders may be obligated to complete and submit VENDEX Questionnaires. Generally, if this bid is \$100,000 or more, or if this bid when added to the sum total of all contracts, concessions and franchises the bidder has received from the City and any subcontracts received from City contractors over the past twelve months, equals or exceeds \$100,000, Vendex Questionnaires must be completed. If required, Vendex Questionnaires must be completed and submitted before any award of contract may be made or before approval is given for a proposed subcontractor. Non-compliance with these submission requirements may result in the disqualification of the bid, disapproval of a subcontractor, subsequent withdrawal of approval for the use of an approved subcontractor, or the cancellation of the contract after its award.

(B) **Submission:** Vendex Questionnaires must be submitted directly to the Mayor's Office of Contract Services, ATTN: Vendex, 253 Broadway, 9th Floor, New York, New York 10007. In addition, the bidder must submit a Confirmation of Vendex Compliance to the agency. A form for this confirmation is set forth in the Bid Booklet.

(C) **Obtaining Forms:** Vendex Questionnaires, as well as detailed instructions, may be obtained at [www.nyc.gov/vendex](http://www.nyc.gov/vendex). The bidder may also obtain Vendex forms and instructions by contacting the

Agency Chief Contracting Office or the contract person for this contract.

25. Complaints About the Bid Process

The New York City Comptroller is charged with the audit of contracts in New York City. Any vendor who believes that there has been unfairness, favoritism or impropriety in the bid process should inform the Comptroller, Office of Contract Administration, One Centre Street, Room 835, New York, New York; telephone number (212)669-2797.

26. Bid, Performance and Payment Security

(A) Bid Security: Each bid must be accompanied by bid security in an amount and type specified in Attachment 1 (page A-1 of the Bid Booklet). The bid security shall assure the City of New York of the adherence of the bidder to its proposal, the execution of the Contract, and the furnishing of Performance and Payment Bonds by the bidder, if required in Attachment 1. Bid security shall be returned to the bidder as follows:

- (1) Within ten (10) days after the bid opening, the Comptroller will be notified to return the deposits of all but the three (3) lowest bidders. Within five (5) days after the award, the Comptroller will be notified to return the deposits of the remaining two unsuccessful bidders.
- (2) Within five (5) days after the execution of the Contract and acceptance of the Contractor's bonds, the Comptroller will be notified to return the bid security of the successful bidder or, if performance and payment bonds are not required, only after the sum retained under Article 21 of the Contract equals the amount of the bid security.
- (3) Where all bids are rejected, the Comptroller will be notified to return the deposit of the three (3) lowest bidders at the time of rejection.

(B) Performance and Payment Security: Performance and Payment Security must be provided in an amount and type specified in Attachment 1 (page A-1 of the Bid Booklet). The performance and payment security shall be delivered by the contractor prior to or at the time of execution of the Contract. If a contractor fails to deliver the required performance and payment security, its bid security shall be enforced, and an award of Contract may be made to the next lowest responsible and responsive bidder, or the contract may be rebid.

(C) Acceptable Types of Security: Acceptable types of security for bids, performance, and payment shall be limited to the following:

- (1) a one-time bond in a form satisfactory to the City;
- (2) a bank certified check or money order;
- (3) obligations of the City of New York; or
- (4) other financial instruments as determined by the Office of Construction in consultation with the Comptroller.

Whenever the successful bidder deposits obligations of the City of New York as performance and payment security, the Comptroller may sell and use the proceeds thereof for any purpose for which the principal or surety on such bond would be liable under the terms of the Contract. If the money is deposited with the Comptroller, the successful bidder shall not be entitled to receive interest on such money from the City.

(D) Form of Bonds: Security provided in the form of bonds must be prepared on the form of bonds authorized by the City of New York. Forms for bid, performance, and payment bonds are included in the Invitation for Bids Documents. Such bonds must have as surety thereunder such surety company or companies as are: (1) approved by the City of New York; (2) authorized to do business in the State of New York, and (3) approved by the Department of the Treasury of the United States. Premiums for any required bonds must be included in the base bid.

The bidder is advised that submission of a bid bond where the surety on such bond fails to meet the criteria set forth herein, shall result in the rejection of the bid as non-responsive.

The Department of the Treasury of the United States advises that information concerning approved surety companies may be obtained as follows: (1) from the Government Printing Office at 202-512-1800; (2) through the Internet at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/c570/index.html>, and (3) through a computerized public bulletin board, which can be accessed by using your computer modem and dialing 202-874-6887.

(E) Power of Attorney: Attorneys in fact who sign bid, performance, or payment bonds must file with each bond a certified copy of their power of attorney to sign said bonds.

27. Failure to Execute Contract

In the event of failure of the successful bidder to execute the Contract and furnish the required security within ten (10) days after notice of the award of the Contract, the deposit of the successful bidder or so much thereof as shall be applicable to the amount of the award made shall be retained by the City, and the successful bidder shall be liable for and hereby agrees to pay on demand the difference between the price bid and the price for which such Contract shall be subsequently awarded, including the cost of any required reletting and less the amount of such deposit. No plea of mistake in such accepted bid shall be available to the bidder for the recovery of the deposit or as a defense to any action based upon such accepted bid. Further, should the bidder's failure to comply with this Section cause any funding agency, body or group (Federal, State, City, Public, Private, etc.) to terminate, cancel or reduce the funding on this project, the bidder in such event shall be liable also to the City for the amount of actual funding withdrawn by such agency on this project, less the amount of the forfeited deposit.

28. Bidder Responsibilities and Qualifications

(A) Bidders must include with their bids all information necessary for a determination of bidder responsibility, as set forth in the Specifications.

(B) The Agency may require any bidder or prospective bidder to furnish all books of account, records, vouchers, statements or other information concerning the bidder's financial status for examination as may be required by the Agency to ascertain the bidder's responsibility and capability to perform the Contract. If required, a bidder must also submit a sworn statement setting forth such information as the Agency may require concerning present and proposed plant and equipment, the personnel and qualifications of his working organizations, prior experience and performance record.

(C) Oral Examination on Qualifications: In addition thereto, and when directed by the Agency, the bidder, or a responsible officer, agent or employee of the bidder, must submit to an oral examination to be conducted by the Agency in relation to his proposed tentative plan and schedule of

operations, and such other matters as the Agency may deem necessary in order to determine the bidder's ability and responsibility to perform the work in accordance with the Contract. Each person so examined must sign and verify a stenographic transcript of such examination noting thereon such corrections as such person may desire to make.

(D) If the bidder fails or refuses to supply any of the documents or information set forth in paragraph (B) hereof or fails to comply with any of the requirements thereof, the Agency may reject the bid.

29. Employment Report

In accordance with Executive Order No. 50 (1980) as modified by Executive Order 108 (1986), the filing of a completed Employment Report (ER) is a requirement of doing business with the City of New York for construction contractors with contracts of \$1,000,000 or more and subcontractors with construction subcontracts of \$750,000 or more. The required forms and information are included in the Bid Booklet.

30. Labor Law Requirements

(A) General: The successful bidder will be required to comply strictly with all Federal, State and local labor laws and regulations.

(B) New York State Labor Law: This Contract is subject to New York State Labor Law Section 220, which requires that construction workers on the site be paid prevailing wages and supplements. The Contractor is reminded that all wage provisions of this Contract will be enforced strictly and failure to comply will be considered when evaluating performance. Noncompliance may result in the contractor being debarred by the City from future contracts. Complaints filed with the Comptroller may result in decisions which may debar a contractor from bidding contracts with any state governmental entity and other political subdivisions.

(C) Records: The Contractor is expected to submit accurate payroll reports and other required documents and verify attendance and job classifications being utilized in compliance with the law, Contract provisions and agency procedures.

31. Insurance

(A) Bidders are advised that the insurance requirements contained herein are regarded as material terms of the Contract. As required by Article 22 of the Contract, the contractor must effect and maintain with companies licensed and authorized to do business in the State of New York, the types of insurance set forth therein, when required by and in the amounts set forth in Schedule A of the General Conditions. Such required insurance must be provided from the date the contractor is ordered to commence work and up to the date of final acceptance of all required work.

(B) The contractor must, within ten days of receipt of the notice of award, submit the following insurance documentation: (a) original certificate of insurance for general liability in the amount required by Schedule A of the General Conditions, and (b) original certificates of insurance or other proof of coverage for workers' compensation and disability benefits, as required by Section 57 of the New York State Workers' Compensation Law and Section 220 of the Disability Benefits Law.

32. Lump Sum Contracts

(A) Comparison of Bids: Bids on Lump Sum Contracts will be compared on the basis of the lump sum price bid, adjusted for alternate prices bid, if any.

(B) Lump Sum Bids for "General Construction Work" which include excavation shall include all necessary excavation work defined in the Specifications as being included in the lump sum bid. The bidder shall also bid a unit price for the additional cost of excavating material which is defined in the Specifications as excavation for which additional payment will be made. The total estimated additional cost of removing such material will be taken as the quantity set forth in the Engineer's Estimate multiplied by the unit price bid. This total estimated cost of additional excavation shall be added to the lump sum bid for the General Construction Work for the purpose of comparing bids to determine the low bidder.

(C) Variations from Engineer's Estimate: The Engineer's Estimate of the quantity of excavation for which additional payment will be made is approximate only and is given solely to be used as a uniform basis for the comparison of bids and such estimate is not to be considered as part of this contract. The quantities actually required to complete the contract work may be more or less than the quantities in the Engineer's Estimate and, if so, no action for damages or for loss of profits shall accrue to the contractor by reason thereof.

33. Unit Price Contracts

(A) Comparison of Bids: Bids on Unit Price Contracts will be compared on the basis of a total estimated price, arrived at by taking the sum of the estimated quantities of such items, in accordance with the Engineer's Estimate of Quantities set forth in the Bid Schedule, multiplied by the corresponding unit prices, and including any lump sum bids on individual items.

(B) Variations from Engineer's Estimate: Bidders are warned that the Engineer's Estimate of Quantities on the various items of work and materials is approximate only, given solely to be used as a uniform basis for the comparison of bids, and is not to be considered part of this contract. The quantities actually required to complete the contract work may be less or more than so estimated, and if so, no action for damages or for loss of profits shall accrue to the contractor by reason thereof.

(C) Overruns: The terms and conditions applicable to overruns of unit price items are set forth in Article 26 of the Contract.

34. Excise Tax

Bidders are referred to the Specifications for information on Federal Excise Tax exemptions.

35. Licenses and Permits

The successful bidder will be required to obtain all necessary licenses and permits necessary to perform the work.

36. Multiple Prime Contractors

If more than one prime contractor will be involved on this project, all contractors are required to examine the Invitation for Bid packages for all other parts of the project.

37. Locally Based Enterprise Requirements (LBE)

This Contract is subject to the requirements of Administrative Code, Section 6-108.1, and the regulations promulgated thereunder. No construction contract will be awarded unless and until these requirements have been complied with in their entirety. The bidder is advised of the provisions set forth below, as well as the provisions with respect to the Locally Based Enterprise Program contained in Article 67 of the Contract. The contractor is advised that:

(A) If any portion of the Contract is subcontracted, not less than ten percent of the total dollar amount of the contract shall be awarded to locally based enterprises ("LBEs"); except, where less than ten percent of the total dollar amount of the Contract is subcontracted, such lesser percentage shall be so awarded.

(B) No contractor shall require performance and payment bonds from LBE subcontractors.

(C) No Contract shall be awarded unless the contractor first identifies in its bid:

- (1) the percentage, dollar amount and type of work to be subcontracted; and
- (2) the percentage, dollar amount and type of work to be subcontracted to LBEs.

(D) Within ten calendar days after notification of low bid, the apparent low bidder shall submit an "LBE Participation Schedule" to the contracting agency. If such schedule does not identify sufficient LBE subcontractors to meet the requirements of Administrative Code Section 6-108.1, the apparent low bidder shall submit documentation of its good faith efforts to meet such requirements.

(1) The "LBE Participation Schedule" shall include:

- (a) the name and address of each LBE that will be given a subcontract,
- (b) the percentage, dollar amount and type of work to be subcontracted to the LBE, and
- (c) the dates when the LBE subcontract work will commence and end.

(2) The following documents shall be attached to the "LBE Participation Schedule":

- (a) verification letters from each subcontractor listed in the "LBE Participation Schedule" stating that the LBE will enter into a formal agreement for work,
- (b) certification documents of any proposed LBE subcontractor which is not on the LBE certified list, and
- (c) copies of the certification letter of any proposed subcontractor which is an LBE.

(3) Documentation of good faith efforts to achieve the required LBE percentage shall include as appropriate but not limited to the following:

- (a) attendance at prebid meetings, when scheduled by the agency, to advise bidders of contract requirements;

- (b) advertisement where appropriate in general circulation media, trade association publications and small business media of the specific subcontracts that would be at least equal to the percentage goal for LBE utilization specified by the contractor;
- (c) written notification to association of small, minority and women contractors soliciting specific subcontractors;
- (d) written notification by certified mail to LBE firms that their interest in the contract is solicited for specific work items and their estimated values;
- (e) demonstration of efforts made to select portions of the work for performance by LBE firms in order to increase the likelihood of achieving the stated goal;
- (f) documented efforts to negotiate with LBE firms for specific subcontracts, including at a minimum:
  - (i) The names, address and telephone numbers of LBE firms that are contacted;
  - (ii) A description of the information provided to LBE firms regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed;
  - (iii) Documentation showing that no reasonable price can be obtained from LBE firms;
  - (iv) A statement of why agreements with LBE firms were not reached;
- (g) a statement of the reason for rejecting any LBE firm which the contractor deemed to be unqualified; and
- (h) documentation of efforts made to assist the LBE firms contacted that needed assistance in obtaining required insurance.

(E) Unless otherwise waived by the Commissioner with the approval of the Office of Economic and Financial Opportunity, failure of a proposed contractor to provide the information required by paragraphs (C) and (D) above may render the bid non-responsive and the Contract may not be awarded to the bidder. If the contractor states that it will subcontract a specific portion of the work, but can demonstrate despite good faith efforts it cannot achieve its required LBE percentage for subcontracted work until after award of Contract, the Contract may be awarded, subject to a letter of compliance from the contractor stating that it will comply with Administrative Code Section 6-108.1 and subject to approval by the Commissioner. If the contractor has not met its required LBE percentage prior to award, the contractor shall demonstrate that a good faith effort has been made subsequent to award to obtain LBEs on each subcontract until it meets the required percentage.

(F) When a bidder indicates prior to award that no work will be subcontracted, no work may be subcontracted without the prior written approval of the Commissioner, which shall be granted only if the contractor in good faith seeks LBE subcontractors at least six weeks prior to the start of work.

(G) The contractor may not substitute or change any LBE which was identified prior to award of the contract without the written permission of the Commissioner. The contractor shall make a written application to the Commissioner for permission to make such substitution or change, explaining why the contractor needs to change its LBE subcontractor and how the contractor will meet its LBE subcontracting requirement. Copies of such application must be served on the originally identified LBE by certified mail return receipt requested, as well as the proposed substitute LBE. The Commissioner shall determine whether or not to grant the contractor's request for substitution.

### 38. Bid Submission Requirements

The following forms, all of which are contained in the Bid Booklet, are to be completed and submitted with the bid:

- (1) Bid Schedule and Bid Form, including Affirmation
- (2) Bid Security (if required, see Attachment 1 on Page A-1)
- (3) M/WBE Subcontractor Utilization Plan (if participation goals have been established)

**FAILURE TO SUBMIT ITEMS (1), (2) AND (3)  
WILL RESULT IN THE DISQUALIFICATION OF THE BID.**

- (4) Safety Questionnaire
- (5) Construction Employment Report (if bid is \$1,000,000 or more)
- (6) Contract Certificate (if bid is less than \$1,000,000)
- (7) Confirmation of Vendex Compliance
- (8) Special Experience Requirements (if applicable to this contract)
- (9) Apprenticeship Program Questionnaire (if applicable)

**FAILURE TO SUBMIT ITEMS (4) THROUGH (9)  
MAY RESULT IN THE DISQUALIFICATION OF THE BID.**

39. Comptroller's Certificate

This Contract shall not be binding or of any force unless it is registered by the Comptroller in accordance with Section 328 of the City Charter and the Procurement Policy Board Rules. This Contract shall continue in force only after annual appropriation of funds by the City of New York and certification as hereinabove set forth.

40. Procurement Policy Board Rules

This Invitation For Bids is subject to the Rules of the Procurement Policy Board of the City of New York. In the event of a conflict between said Rules and a provision of this Invitation For Bids, the Rules shall take precedence.

41. DDC Safety Requirements

The DDC Safety Requirements apply to the work to be performed pursuant to the Contract. The DDC Safety Requirements are set forth on the following pages.

**CITY OF NEW YORK**  
**DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION**  
**SAFETY REQUIREMENTS**

June 2015

---

***THE DDC SAFETY REQUIREMENTS INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING SECTIONS:***

- I. POLICY ON SITE SAFETY**
- II. PURPOSE**
- III. DEFINITIONS**
- IV. RESPONSIBILITIES**
- V. SAFETY QUESTIONNAIRE**
- VI. SAFETY PROGRAM AND SITE SAFETY PLAN**
- VII. KICK-OFF/PRE-CONSTRUCTION MEETINGS AND SAFETY REVIEW**
- VIII. EVALUATION DURING WORK IN PROGRESS**
- IX. SAFETY PERFORMANCE EVALUATION**

City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety

## I. POLICY ON SITE SAFETY

The City of New York Department of Design and Construction (DDC) is committed to a policy of injury and illness prevention and risk management for construction work that will ensure the safety and health of the workers engaged in the projects and the protection of the general public. Therefore, it is DDC's policy that work carried out by Contractors on DDC jobsites must, at a minimum, comply with applicable federal, state and city laws, rules and regulations, including without limitation:

- U. S. Department of Labor 29 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 1926 and applicable Sub-parts of Part 1910 – U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA); New York State Department of Labor Industrial Code Rule 23 – Protection in Construction, Demolition and Excavation;
- New York City Construction Codes, Title 28
- NYC Department of Transportation Title 34 Chapter 2 – Highway Rules
- New York State Department of Labor Industrial Code Rule 16 NYCRR Part 753
- Title 15 of the Rules of the City of New York, Chapter 13 Citywide Construction Dust Mitigation
- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)
- Title 15 of the Rules of the City of New York, Chapter 28 Citywide Construction Noise Mitigation

## II. PURPOSE

The purpose of this policy is to ensure that Contractors perform their work and supervise their employees in accordance with all applicable federal, state and city rules and regulations. Further, Contractors will be expected to minimize or eliminate jobsite and public hazards, through a planning, inspection, auditing and corrective action process. The goal is to control risks so that injuries, illnesses and accidents to contractors' employees, DDC employees and the general public, as well as damage to city-owned and private property, are reduced to the lowest level feasible.

## III. DEFINITIONS

**Agency Chief Contracting Officer (ACCO):** The ACCO shall mean the person delegated authority by the Commissioner to organize and supervise the procurement activity of subordinate Agency staff in conjunction with the CCPO.

**Competent Person:** As defined by OSHA, an individual who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings or working conditions that are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees or the general public, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

**Construction Safety Auditor:** A representative of the QA&CS Construction Safety Unit who provides inspection and assessment services to enhance health and safety on all DDC construction projects. The activities of the Construction Safety Auditor include performing site surveys, reviewing health and safety plans, reviewing construction permits, and rendering technical advice and assistance to DDC Resident Engineers and Project Managers.

**Construction Safety Unit:** A part of QA&CS within the Division of Program Management/ Safety & Site Support that assesses contractor safety on DDC jobsites and advises responsible parties of needed corrective actions.

**City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety**

**Construction Superintendent:** A representative of the contractor responsible for overseeing performance of the required construction work. This individual must engage in sound construction practices, and is responsible to maintain a safe work site. In the case of a project involving the demolition, alteration or new construction of buildings, the Construction Superintendent must be licensed by the NYC Department of Buildings.

**Contractor:** For purposes of these Safety Requirements, the term "Contractor" shall mean any person or entity that enters into a contract for the performance of construction work on a DDC project. The term "Contractor" shall include any person or entity which enters into any of the following types of contracts: (1) a prime construction contract for a specific project, (2) a prime construction contract using the Job Order Contracting System ("JOCS Contract"), and (3) a subcontract with a CM/Builder ("First Tier Subcontract").

**Daily Safety Job Briefing:** Daily jobsite safety meetings, giving to all jobsite personnel by contractor, with the purpose of discussing project specific safety procedures for the scheduled construction work.

**Director - Quality Assurance and Construction Safety (QA&CS):** Responsible for the operations of the QACS Construction Safety Unit and the DDC Site Safety management programs.

**Job Hazard Analysis (JHA):** A process of identifying the major job steps and any potential site-specific hazards that may be present during construction and establishing the means and methods to eliminate or control those hazards.

**Qualified Person:** As defined by OSHA, an individual who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, license or professional standing, or who by extensive knowledge, training, and experience, has successfully demonstrated his or her ability to solve problems relating to the subject matter, the work, or the project. Qualified Persons are required under regulation to address issues pertaining, but without limit, to fall protection, scaffold design and trenching and shoring, among others.

**Project Site:** Those areas indicated in the Contract Documents where the Work is to be performed.

**Project Safety Representative:** The designated project safety representative shall have completed an authorized 30 hour OSHA Construction Safety Course and other safety training applicable to Contractor's/subcontractor's project work. Except in instances where a dedicated Project Safety Manager is required, a Project Safety Representative may also function as a superintendent, foreman or crew leader on the Project, but must have sufficient experience and authority to undertake corrective actions and must qualify to be a competent person. No work is to be performed on site when a Project Safety Representative is not present.

**Project Safety Manager:** A dedicated, full-time project safety manager may be a contractual requirement on large projects or projects deemed by DDC to be particularly high risk. This would be in addition or in lieu of a Contractor's Project Safety Representative. This individual shall not have any other assigned duties. This individual shall have received, at a minimum an authorized 30-hour OSHA Construction Safety Course. Other examples of acceptable training are OSHA Safety and Health Standards for the Construction Industry training program (OSHA 510), Certified Safety Professional (CSP), Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH) or a degree/certificate in a safety and health from a college-level curriculum.

A Project Safety Manager shall possess the additional training, years of experience, and skills necessary to thoroughly understand the health and safety hazards and controls for large construction projects, including the full scope of the specific Work.

**QA&CS - Quality Assurance and Construction Safety of the New York City Department of Design and Construction.**

City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety

**Resident Engineer (RE) / Construction Project Manager (CPM):** Representative of the Commissioner duly designated by the Commissioner to be his/her representative at the site of the work. (The RE/CPM may be a third-party consultant, including a Construction Management firm, retained by DDC)

**Safety Program:** Established by the Contractor that covers all operations of that Contractor and establishes the Contractor's overall safety policy, regulatory compliance plan and minimum safety standards. The Safety Program must be submitted prior to the commencement of work at the site and is subject to review and acceptance by the Construction Safety Unit.

**Safety Questionnaire:** Used by DDC to evaluate Contractor's current and past safety performance. It is required to be completed by all Contractors initially when submitting bids for Construction work, or when being pre-qualified and updated annually or as requested by the DDC.

**Site Safety Manager:** For certain projects, as defined in NYC Construction Codes - Title 28, the Contractor shall provide a Site Safety Manager with a Site Safety Manager License issued by the NYC Department of Building.

**Site Safety Plan:** A site-specific safety plan developed by the Contractor for a specific project. The Site Safety Plan must identify hazards associated with the project, and include specific safety procedures and training appropriate and necessary to complete the work. The Site Safety Plan must be submitted prior to the commencement of work at the site and is subject to review and acceptance by the Construction Safety Unit.

**Unsafe or Unhealthy Condition:** A condition that could be potentially hazardous to the health and safety of personnel or the public, and/or damaging to equipment, machinery, property or the environment.

**Weekly Safety Meetings:** Weekly documented jobsite safety meetings, given to all jobsite personnel by contractor, with the purpose of discussing general safety topics and job specific requirements encountered at the DDC work site.

**Work:** The construction required by the Contract Documents whether completed or partially completed, performed by the Contractor/ subcontractors. Work refers to the furnishing of labor, furnishing and incorporating materials and equipment into the construction and providing any service required by the Contract Documents to fulfill the Contractor's obligation to complete the Project.

#### IV. RESPONSIBILITIES

All persons who manage, perform, and provide support for construction projects shall conduct operations in compliance with the requirements identified in this Policy and all applicable governing regulatory agency requirements and guidelines pertaining to safety in construction.

##### A. DDC or CM Resident Engineer / Construction Project Manager

- Monitors the issuance of safety-related permits, approvals and drawings and maintains copies on site.
- Monitors construction-related work activities to confirm that they are conducted in accordance with DDC policies and all applicable regulations that pertain to construction safety.
- Maintains documentation and periodically attends weekly safety meetings and daily safety job briefings.
- Notifies the Construction Safety Unit and the ACCO's Insurance and Risk Management Unit of project-related accidents and emergencies, as per DDC's Construction Safety Emergency and Accident Notification and Response Protocol.
- Gathers facts related to all accidents and prepares DDC Construction Accident Report.

City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety

- Notifies the Construction Safety Unit within two (2) hours of the start of an inspection by any outside regulatory agency personnel, including OSHA, NYC DOB or others and forwards a copy of the inspection report within three days of its receipt.
- Monitors the conditions at the site for conformance with the contractor's Site Safety Plan and DDC construction documents.
- Notifies the contractor and DDC in the event that any condition or activity exists that is not in compliance with the contractor's Site Safety Plan, applicable federal, state or local codes or any condition that presents a potential risk of injury to the public or workers or possible damage to property.
- Notifies DDC of any unsafe or unhealthy condition and directs the contractor to provide such labor, materials, equipment and supervision to abate such conditions.
- Escort and assist QA&CS Construction Safety Auditors during the field and record inspections.
- Reports emergency conditions to the Construction Safety Unit immediately.

**B. Contractors**

- Submit a completed Safety Questionnaire and other safety performance related documentation with its bid or as part of a pre-qualification package.
- Complete a written Job Hazard Analysis (JHA) that identifies safety hazards for project specific work tasks and hazard control methods. A written JHA shall be available at the site for reference and included in the Site Safety Plan submitted by the contractor.
- Submit a Site Safety Plan and Safety Program within 30 days from the Award Date or as otherwise directed. The Site Safety Plan and Safety Program are subject to review and acceptance by the Construction Safety Unit prior to the commencement of work at the site. The Site Safety Plan shall be revised and updated as necessary.
- Develop project specific safety procedures to protect general public during all construction activities for the duration of the project.
- Ensure that all employees are aware of the hazards associated with the project through documented formal and informal training and/or other communications. Conduct and document weekly safety meetings and daily job briefing sessions for the duration of the project. Documentation to be provided to the RE/CPM on a monthly basis.
- Name the Project Safety Representative and Project Safety Manager, if required. The Contractor will be required to identify the Project Safety Representative and Project Safety Manager in the Site Safety Plan. Resumes, outlining the qualification and experience for the Project Safety Representative and Project Safety Manager, shall be available upon request. DDC reserves the right to request that the Contractor replace any Project Safety Representative or Project Safety Manager for any reason at any time during the project.
- Name a Competent Person(s), The Contractor will be required to identify a Competent Person(s) in the Site Safety Plan.
- Comply with all mandated federal, state and local safety and health rules and regulations.
- Comply with all provisions of the Site Safety Plan.
- Conduct applicable safety training prior to the commencement of work at the site. All training records (OSHA 10-hour, flagger, scaffold, fall protection, confined space entry, etc.) shall be provided to the RE/CPM prior to mobilization, included in the Site Safety Plan, kept current during the course of the project, and available for review. Prior to performing any work on DDC project all employees shall have successfully completed, within the previous five calendar years, a 10 Hour OSHA construction safety course.
- As part of the Site Safety Plan, prepare a site specific programs and plans, such as MPT plan, steel erection plan, confined space program, fall protection plan, demolition plan, etc. (if not otherwise provided in the contract documents) and comply with all of its provisions.
- Conduct and document site-specific safety orientation for Contractor personnel to review the hazards associated with the project as identified in the Site Safety Plan and the specific safety procedures and

City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety

controls that will be used to protect workers, the general public and property. The Project Safety Representative and/or Project Safety Manager will conduct this training prior to mobilization and provide documentation to the RE/CPM.

- Provide, replace and adequately maintain at or around the project site, suitable and sufficient signage, lights, barricades and enclosures (fences, sidewalk sheds, netting, bracing, etc.).
- Report unsafe or unhealthy conditions to the RE/CPM as soon as practical, but no more than 24 hours after discovery, and take prompt actions to remove or abate such conditions.
- Report any accidents involving injuries to workers or the general public, as well as property damage, to the RE/CPM within one (1) hour.
- Following an accident, the Contractor shall not remove or alter any equipment, structure, material, or evidence related to the accident. Exception: Immediate emergency procedures taken to secure structures, temporary construction, operations, or equipment that pose a continued imminent danger or facilitate assistance for persons who are trapped or who have sustained bodily injury.
- Notify the RE/CPM within one (1) hour of the start of an inspection by any outside regulatory agency personnel, including OSHA, NYC DOB or others.
- Maintain all records pertaining to all required compliance documents and accident and injury reports.
- Address DDC recommendations on safety, which shall in no way relieve the Contractor of its responsibilities for safety on the project. The Contractor has sole responsibility for safety.

#### V. SAFETY QUESTIONNAIRE

DDC requires that all Contractors provide information regarding their current and past safety performance and programs. This will be accomplished by the use of the DDC Safety Questionnaire. As a part of the bid submittal package, the contractor must submit a completed DDC Safety Questionnaire listing company workers' compensation experience modification rating and OSHA Incident Rates for the three (3) years prior to the date of the bid opening. DDC may request a Contractor to update its Questionnaire at any time or to provide more detailed information. The Contractor must provide the requested information within 15 days.

The following criteria will be used by DDC in reviewing the Contractor's responsibility, which will be based on the information provided on the questionnaire:

- Criteria 1: OSHA Injury and Illness Rates (I&IR) are no greater than the average for the industry (based on the most current Bureau of Labor Statistics data for the Contractors SIC code); and
- Criteria 2: Insurance workers compensation Experience Modification Rate (EMR) equal to or less than 1.0; and
- Criteria 3: Any willful violations issued by OSHA or NYC DOB within the last three (3) years; and
- Criteria 4: A fatality (worker or member of public) and injuries, requiring OSHA notification, experienced on or near Contractor's worksite within the last three (3) years; and
- Criteria 5: Past safety performance on DDC projects (accidents; status of safety program and site safety plan submittals; etc.)
- Criteria 6: OSHA violation history for the last three (3) years;
- Criteria 7: Contractor shall provide OSHA Injury and Illness Records (currently OSHA 300 and 300A Logs) for the last three (3) years.

If the Contractor fails to meet the basic criteria listed above, the Construction Safety Unit may request, through the ACCO, more details concerning the Contractor's safety experience. DDC may request the Contractor to provide copies of, among other things, accident investigation reports, OSHA records, OSHA and NYC DOB citations, EPA citations and written corrective action plan.

City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety

**VI. SAFETY PROGRAM AND SITE SAFETY PLAN**

Within thirty (30) days from the Award Date, or as otherwise directed, the Contractor shall submit the following: (1) Safety Program, and (2) Site Safety Plan. The Safety Program shall set forth the Contractor's overall safety policy, regulatory compliance plan and minimum safety standards. The Site Safety Plan shall identify project work scope, safety hazards associated with the project tasks, and include specific safety procedures and training appropriate and necessary to complete the work. The Safety Program and the Site Safety Plan are subject to review and acceptance by the Construction Safety Unit prior to the commencement of work at the site. Failure by the Contractor to submit an acceptable Site Safety Plan and Safety Program shall be grounds for default.

**Safety Program:** Corporate Safety Program established by the Contractor that includes the Contractor's overall safety policy, regulatory compliance plan and basic safety procedures covering all aspects of construction operations, performed by the Contractor. The Safety Program shall be a written document with a separate section describing each element of the Safety Program. The Safety Program shall have at minimum the following elements applicable to the Contractor's operations:

- Responsibility and Organization - Contractor's company organization chart, including titles, names, contact information, roles and responsibilities for key personnel, etc.
- Safety Training Program - Contractor's corporate training program.
- Hazard Corrective Actions - Criteria for safety inspections, identification of safety non-compliances, implementation and verification of corrective actions, forms to document safety inspections results, etc.
- Accident/Exposure Investigation
- Recordkeeping and Reporting Injuries - Responsible staff; reporting and recording criteria; OSHA 300 and 300A form completion, etc.
- Fire Protection and Prevention Program
- Housekeeping
- Illumination
- Sanitation
- Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) - Company policy for the use of head protection, foot protection, hearing protection, eye and face protection, protective clothing, and any additional protective equipment based on work tasks; PPE inspection and replacement policy.
- Hazard Communication Program
- Employee Emergency Action Plan
- Protection of Underground Facilities and Utilities
- Ionizing/Nonionizing Radiation
- Material Handling, Storage, Use and Disposal
- Tools - Hand and Power
- Signs, Signals, and Barricades
- Scaffold - Local Law 52 requirements, installation, use, inspection, dismantling, training and general safety requirements.
- Welding and Cutting
- Electrical Safety
- Fall Protection
- Cranes, Derrick, Hoists, Elevators, Conveyors
- Excavation Safety
- Concrete and Masonry Construction
- Maintenance and Protection of Traffic
- Steel Erection
- Demolition
- Blasting and the Use of Explosives
- Stairways and Ladders

**City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support— Quality Assurance and Construction Safety**

- Toxic and Hazardous Substances
- Alcohol and Drug Abuse Policy
- Rodents and Vermin
- Occupational Noise Exposure
- Confined Space Program – General confined Space Program: training requirements, confined space hazard evaluation procedure, atmospheric testing procedure, confined space classification, permit-required procedure, communication procedure, rescue procedure, forms, etc.
- Construction Vehicles/Heavy Equipment
- Dust Control Procedures

**Site Safety Plan:** The Site Safety Plan shall be a written document and shall apply to all project specific Contractor and subcontractor operations, and shall have at a minimum, the following elements with each element described in a separate section (It may be necessary to modify the basic format for certain unique or high-risk projects, such as tunnels or high-rise construction):

- Project Work Scope – Detailed information regarding work tasks that will be performed by contractor and subcontractors under the project.
- Responsibility and Organization – Contractor's organization chart with responsible staff for the project, including titles, names, contact information, roles and responsibilities.
- Safety Training and Education – OSHA 10 Hours training, requirements for daily safety briefings and weekly safety meetings, any work task specific training, responsible staff for implementation of training program for the project.
- Job Hazard Analysis (JHA) – Project specific Job Hazard Analysis including work tasks, identified hazards, hazard control methods (administrative, engineering, PPE), contractor's name, project id, location, name and signature of a certifying person, hazard assessment date.
- Protection of Public
- Hazard Corrective Actions – Responsible staff, forms, frequency of safety inspections and implementation of corrective actions.
- Accident/Exposure Investigation – Accident/incident notification procedure of DDC project staff. Project specific procedures for accident investigation and implementation of corrective actions.
- First Aid and Medical Attention – Responsible staff, location and inspection of First Aid kit, directions to local hospitals; emergency telephone numbers.
- Project Specific Fire Protection and Prevention Program.
- Project Specific Illumination Procedure.
- Project Specific Sanitation Procedure.
- Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)
- Hazard Communication Program – Responsible staff; training; SDS records, project specific list of chemical; location of the program and SDS records.
- Means of Egress – Information regarding free and unobstructed egress from all parts of the building or structure; exit marking; maintenance of means of egress, etc.
- Employee Emergency Action Plan – Project specific: responsible staff, emergency alarm system, evacuation procedure, procedure to account for employees after evacuation, etc.
- Evacuation Plan – Project specific evacuation plan (drawing/scheme) with exists and evacuation routes.
- Protection of Underground Facilities and Utilities, including responsible staff.
- Ionizing/Nonionizing Radiation – Competent person, license and qualification requirements, type of radiation, employees exposure and protection, etc.
- Material Handling, Storage, Use and Disposal – Project specific information regarding material storage and disposal.
- Signs, Signals, and Barricades – Use of danger/warning signs, sidewalk closure, safety instruction signs, pedestrian fencing and barricades, etc.
- Scaffold – Project specific scaffold types, training, scaffold drawings, competent person, criteria for project specific scaffold, falling object protection.

City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety

- Welding and Cutting – project specific procedure for welding and cutting, including all necessary safety requirements such as fire prevention, personal protective equipment, hot work permits, FDNY certificate requirements.
- Fall Protection – Project specific information regarding selected fall protection systems, fall protection plan.
- Cranes, Derrick, Hoists, Elevators, Conveyors – project specific equipment information including type, rated load capacity, manufacture specification requirements, competent person, exposure to falling load, inspection, recordkeeping, clearance requirements, communication procedure, ground lines, permits.
- Excavation Safety – Competent person, project specific protective system.
- Maintenance and Protection of Traffic Plan – Project specific MPT plan, flagmen training.
- Steel Erection – Site specific erection plan, requirements for applicable written notifications, competent person.
- Demolition – Engineering survey, including written evidence, disconnection of all effected utilities, identification of all hazardous chemicals, materials, gases, etc., floor openings, chutes, inspection and maintenance of all stairs/passageways, removal of materials/debris/structural elements, lock out/tag out, competent person.
- Blasting and the Use of Explosives – Project specific safety procedures, warning signs, training/qualification, transportation, storage and use of explosives, inspection.
- Toxic and Hazardous Substances – Safety procedures for substances to be used on project.
- Noise Mitigation Plan – Completed project specific Noise Mitigation Plan.
- Confined Space Program – Project specific Confined Space Program, responsible staff, training records, equipment information, rescue procedure, list of project specific confined spaces, forms.
- Construction Vehicles/Heavy Equipment – Type of construction vehicles/heavy equipment to be used on site.
- Dust Mitigation Plan – Completed project specific Dust Mitigation Plan.

The most critical component of the Site Safety Plan is the Job Hazard Analysis (JHA) section. The JHA form is a written document prepared by the contractor. The contractor must conduct a site and task assessment JHA to identify the major job steps and any potential safety or environmental hazards related to performance of the work, eliminate or implement controls for the potential hazards, and identify proper personal protective equipment for the task. The JHA shall be communicated to all contractor/subcontractor personnel on site.

The initial Job Hazard Assessment form shall be included in the contractor's Site Safety Plan and the current form shall be available at the construction site for reference.

Certain DDC programs, such as Job Order Contracting System (JOCS), may not necessarily require Site Safety Plans. The JOCS contractor shall submit a Safety Program. The Site Safety Plan requirement for the JOCS contractor will be determined by QA&CS based on a project work scope, construction activities and project location. In addition, certain DDC Operating Units may establish client-specific program or safety requirements. The contractor's Site Safety Plan must address such client-specific program or safety requirements.

## VII. KICK-OFF MEETINGS/PRE-CONSTRUCTION AND SAFETY REVIEW

RE/CPM shall invite QA&CS Construction Safety Unit to the construction kick-off meeting. A QA&CS representative will participate in this meeting with the Contractor and RE/CPM prior to the start of the project for the purpose of:

- A. Reviewing the safety issues detailed in the contract.
- B. Reviewing the Site Safety Plan.
- C. Reviewing any new issues or information that was not previously addressed.
- D. Discussing planned inspections and audits of the site by QA&CS personnel.

**City of New York Department of Design and Construction: Safety Requirements  
Safety and Site Support- Quality Assurance and Construction Safety**

**VIII. EVALUATION DURING WORK IN PROGRESS**

The Contractor's adherence to these Safety Requirements will be monitored throughout the project. This will be accomplished by the following:

- A. Use of a safety checklist by a representative of the Construction Safety Unit or other designated DDC representative or Consultant during regular, unannounced inspections of the job site. Field Exit Conferences will be held with the RE/CPM, Contractor Project Safety Representatives.
- B. The RE/CPM will continually monitor the safety and environmental performance of the contractor's employees and work methods. Deficiencies shall be brought to the attention of the contractor's representative on site for immediate correction. The DDC representative will maintain a written record of these deficiencies and have these records available upon request. Any critical deficiencies shall be immediately reported to QA&CS phone# (718) 391-1624 or (718) 391-1911.
- C. If the Contractor's safety performance during the project is not up to DDC standards (safety performance measure, accident/incident rate, etc.) the Director - QA&CS, or his/her designee will meet with the Contractor's Project Safety Representative and or Project Safety Manager, the DDC Project Manager, the RE/CPM, and the DDC Environmental Specialist (if environmental issues are involved). The purpose of this meeting is to 1) determine the level of non-compliance; 2) explain and clarify the safety/environmental provisions; 3) agree on a future course of action to correct the deficiencies.
- D. If the deficiencies continue to occur with inadequate attention by the contractor, this shall, among other remedies available, be grounds for default.
- E. The contractor shall within 1 hour inform the RE/CPM/CM of all accidents/incidents including all fatalities, any injuries to employees or members of the general public, and property damage (e.g., structural damage, equipment rollovers, utility damage, loads dropped from crane). The RE/CPM shall notify the Construction Safety Unit as per DDC's Construction Safety Emergency and Accident Notification and Response Protocol and shall maintain a record of all contractor accidents/incidents for the project.
- F. The Construction Safety Unit shall be notified within two (2) hours of the start of any NYS-DOL/ NYC-COSH/ OSHA/ EPA inspections.

**IX. SAFETY PERFORMANCE EVALUATION**

The contractor's safety record, including accident/incident history and DDC safety inspection results, will be considered as part of the Contractor's performance evaluation at the conclusion of the project. Poor safety performance during the course of the project shall be a reason to rate a Contractor unsatisfactory which may be reflected in the City's Vendex system and will be considered for future procurement actions as set forth in the City's Procurement Policy Board Rules.

**CITY OF NEW YORK**  
**STANDARD CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

**March 2017**

**CITY OF NEW YORK  
STANDARD CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

CHAPTER I: THE CONTRACT AND DEFINITIONS .....	1
ARTICLE 1. THE CONTRACT .....	1
ARTICLE 2. DEFINITIONS.....	1
CHAPTER II: THE WORK AND ITS PERFORMANCE.....	4
ARTICLE 3. CHARACTER OF THE WORK.....	4
ARTICLE 4. MEANS AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION.....	4
ARTICLE 5. COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS.....	5
ARTICLE 6. INSPECTION .....	10
ARTICLE 7. PROTECTION OF WORK AND OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY; NOTICES AND INDEMNIFICATION .....	11
CHAPTER III: TIME PROVISIONS .....	12
ARTICLE 8. COMMENCEMENT AND PROSECUTION OF THE WORK.....	12
ARTICLE 9. PROGRESS SCHEDULES.....	13
ARTICLE 10. REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION OR APPROVAL .....	13
ARTICLE 11. NOTICE OF CONDITIONS CAUSING DELAY AND DOCUMENTATION OF DAMAGES CAUSED BY DELAY .....	14
ARTICLE 12. COORDINATION WITH OTHER CONTRACTORS.....	18
ARTICLE 13. EXTENSION OF TIME FOR PERFORMANCE .....	19
ARTICLE 14. COMPLETION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE OF THE WORK .....	21
ARTICLE 15. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES .....	23
ARTICLE 16. OCCUPATION OR USE PRIOR TO COMPLETION .....	23
CHAPTER IV: SUBCONTRACTS AND ASSIGNMENTS .....	24
ARTICLE 17. SUBCONTRACTS.....	24
ARTICLE 18. ASSIGNMENTS .....	26
CHAPTER V: CONTRACTOR'S SECURITY AND GUARANTEE .....	26
ARTICLE 19. SECURITY DEPOSIT .....	26
ARTICLE 20. PAYMENT GUARANTEE.....	27
ARTICLE 21. RETAINED PERCENTAGE.....	29
ARTICLE 22. INSURANCE.....	30
ARTICLE 23. MONEY RETAINED AGAINST CLAIMS .....	36
ARTICLE 24. MAINTENANCE AND GUARANTY .....	37
CHAPTER VI: CHANGES, EXTRA WORK, AND DOCUMENTATION OF CLAIM .....	38
ARTICLE 25. CHANGES.....	38
ARTICLE 26. METHODS OF PAYMENT FOR OVERRUNS AND EXTRA WORK .....	38
ARTICLE 27. RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES.....	41
ARTICLE 28. RECORD KEEPING FOR EXTRA OR DISPUTED WORK OR WORK ON A TIME & MATERIALS BASIS.....	45
ARTICLE 29. OMITTED WORK.....	46
ARTICLE 30. NOTICE AND DOCUMENTATION OF COSTS AND DAMAGES; PRODUCTION OF FINANCIAL RECORDS .....	46
CHAPTER VII: POWERS OF THE RESIDENT ENGINEER, THE ENGINEER OR ARCHITECT AND THE COMMISSIONER .....	48
ARTICLE 31. THE RESIDENT ENGINEER.....	48
ARTICLE 32. THE ENGINEER OR ARCHITECT OR PROJECT MANAGER.....	48
ARTICLE 33. THE COMMISSIONER .....	48
ARTICLE 34. NO ESTOPPEL .....	49
CHAPTER VIII: LABOR PROVISIONS.....	49
ARTICLE 35. EMPLOYEES .....	49
ARTICLE 36. NO DISCRIMINATION .....	57
ARTICLE 37. LABOR LAW REQUIREMENTS.....	59

ARTICLE 38. PAYROLL REPORTS.....	64
ARTICLE 39. DUST HAZARDS .....	64
CHAPTER IX: PARTIAL AND FINAL PAYMENTS .....	65
ARTICLE 40. CONTRACT PRICE .....	65
ARTICLE 41. BID BREAKDOWN ON LUMP SUM.....	65
ARTICLE 42. PARTIAL PAYMENTS.....	65
ARTICLE 43. PROMPT PAYMENT.....	66
ARTICLE 44. SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PAYMENT.....	66
ARTICLE 45. FINAL PAYMENT.....	67
ARTICLE 46. ACCEPTANCE OF FINAL PAYMENT.....	68
ARTICLE 47. APPROVAL BY PUBLIC DESIGN COMMISSION.....	69
CHAPTER X: CONTRACTOR'S DEFAULT .....	69
ARTICLE 48. COMMISSIONER'S RIGHT TO DECLARE CONTRACTOR IN DEFAULT .....	69
ARTICLE 49. EXERCISE OF THE RIGHT TO DECLARE DEFAULT .....	71
ARTICLE 50. QUITTING THE SITE.....	71
ARTICLE 51. COMPLETION OF THE WORK.....	71
ARTICLE 52. PARTIAL DEFAULT .....	71
ARTICLE 53. PERFORMANCE OF UNCOMPLETED WORK.....	72
ARTICLE 54. OTHER REMEDIES.....	72
CHAPTER XI: MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS .....	72
ARTICLE 55. CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTIES.....	72
ARTICLE 56. CLAIMS AND ACTIONS THEREON.....	73
ARTICLE 57. INFRINGEMENT .....	73
ARTICLE 58. NO CLAIM AGAINST OFFICIALS, AGENTS OR EMPLOYEES.....	74
ARTICLE 59. SERVICE OF NOTICES.....	74
ARTICLE 60. UNLAWFUL PROVISIONS DEEMED STRICKEN FROM CONTRACT.....	74
ARTICLE 61. ALL LEGAL PROVISIONS DEEMED INCLUDED .....	74
ARTICLE 62. TAX EXEMPTION .....	74
ARTICLE 63. INVESTIGATION(S) CLAUSE.....	76
ARTICLE 64. TERMINATION BY THE CITY .....	78
ARTICLE 65. CHOICE OF LAW, CONSENT TO JURISDICTION AND VENUE .....	80
ARTICLE 66. PARTICIPATION IN AN INTERNATIONAL BOYCOTT .....	81
ARTICLE 67. LOCALLY BASED ENTERPRISE PROGRAM .....	82
ARTICLE 68. ANTITRUST .....	82
ARTICLE 69. MACBRIDE PRINCIPLES PROVISIONS .....	83
ARTICLE 70. ELECTRONIC FILING/NYC DEVELOPMENT HUB .....	85
ARTICLE 71. PROHIBITION OF TROPICAL HARDWOODS.....	85
ARTICLE 72. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST.....	85
ARTICLE 73. MERGER CLAUSE .....	85
ARTICLE 74. STATEMENT OF WORK.....	85
ARTICLE 75. COMPENSATION TO BE PAID TO CONTRACTOR .....	85
ARTICLE 76. ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFER.....	85
ARTICLE 77. RECORDS RETENTION.....	86
ARTICLE 78. EXAMINATION AND VIEWING OF SITE, CONSIDERATION OF OTHER SOURCES OF INFORMATION AND CHANGED SITE CONDITIONS.....	86

**ARTICLE 79: PARTICIPATION BY MINORITY-OWNED AND WOMEN-OWNED  
BUSINESS ENTERPRISES IN CITY PROCUREMENT .....87**

**SIGNATURES .....95**

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT BY CORPORATION .....96**

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT BY PARTNERSHIP.....96**

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT BY INDIVIDUAL .....96**

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT BY COMMISSIONER .....97**

**AUTHORITY.....98**

**COMPTROLLER’S CERTIFICATE .....98**

**MAYOR’S CERTIFICATE .....99**

**PERFORMANCE BOND #1 .....100**

**PERFORMANCE BOND #2.....104**

**PAYMENT BOND .....108**

---

**WITNESSETH:**

The parties, in consideration of the mutual agreements contained herein, agree as follows:

**CHAPTER I: THE CONTRACT AND DEFINITIONS**

**ARTICLE 1. THE CONTRACT**

1.1 Except for titles, subtitles, headings, running headlines, tables of contents and indices (all of which are printed herein merely for convenience), the following, except for such portions thereof as may be specifically excluded, shall be deemed to be part of this **Contract**:

1.1.1 All provisions required by law to be inserted in this **Contract**, whether actually inserted or not;

1.1.2 The Contract Drawings and Specifications;

1.1.3 The General Conditions and Special Conditions, if any;

1.1.4 The **Contract**;

1.1.5 The Information for Bidders; Request for Proposals; Notice of Solicitation and Proposal For Bids; Bid or Proposal, and, if used, the Bid Booklet;

1.1.6 All Addenda issued prior to the receipt of the bids; the Notice of Award; Performance and Payment Bonds, if required; and the Notice to Proceed or the Order to Work.

1.2 Should any conflict occur in or between the Drawings and Specifications, the **Contractor** shall be deemed to have estimated the most expensive way of doing the **Work**, unless the **Contractor** shall have asked for and obtained a decision in writing from the **Commissioner** of the **Agency** that is entering into this **Contract**, before the submission of its bid, as to what shall govern.

**ARTICLE 2. DEFINITIONS**

2.1 The following words and expressions, or pronouns used in their stead, shall, wherever they appear in this **Contract**, be construed as follows, unless a different meaning is clear from the context:

2.1.1 "**Addendum**" or "**Addenda**" shall mean the additional **Contract** provisions and/or technical clarifications issued in writing by the **Commissioner** prior to the receipt of bids.

2.1.2 "**Agency**" shall mean a city, county, borough or other office, position, department, division, bureau, board or commission, or a corporation, institution or agency of government, the expenses of which are paid in whole or in part from the **City** treasury.

2.1.3 "**Agency Chief Contracting Officer**" (**ACCO**) shall mean a person delegated authority by the **Commissioner** to organize and supervise the procurement activity of subordinate **Agency** staff in conjunction with the **CCPO**, or his/her duly authorized representative.

2.1.4 **“Allowance”** shall mean a sum of money which the Agency may include in the total amount of the Contract for such specific contingencies as the Agency believes may be necessary to complete the Work, e.g., lead or asbestos remediation, and for which the Contractor will be paid on the basis of stipulated unit prices or a formula set forth in the Contract or negotiated between the parties provided, however, that if the Contractor is not directed to use the Allowance, the Contractor shall have no right to such money and it shall be deducted from the total amount of the Contract.

2.1.5 **“City”** shall mean the City of New York.

2.1.6 **“City Chief Procurement Officer” (CCPO)** shall mean a person delegated authority by the Mayor to coordinate and oversee the procurement activity of Mayoral agency staff, including the ACCO and any offices which have oversight responsibility for the procurement of construction, or his/her duly authorized representative.

2.1.7 **“Commissioner”** shall mean the head of the Agency that has entered into this Contract, or his/her duly authorized representative.

2.1.8 **“Comptroller”** shall mean the Comptroller of the City of New York.

2.1.9 **“Contract”** or **“Contract Documents”** shall mean each of the various parts of the contract referred to in Article I hereof, both as a whole and severally.

2.1.10 **“Contract Drawings”** shall mean only those drawings specifically entitled as such and listed in the Specifications or in any Addendum, or any drawings furnished by the Commissioner, pertaining or supplemental thereto.

2.1.11 **“Contract Work”** shall mean everything required to be furnished and done by the Contractor by any one or more of the parts of the Contract referred to in Article I, except Extra Work as hereinafter defined.

2.1.12 **“Contractor”** shall mean the entity which executed this Contract, whether a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual, or any combination thereof, and its, their, his/her successors, personal representatives, executors, administrators, and assigns, and any person, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual, or corporation which shall at any time be substituted in the place of the Contractor under this Contract.

2.1.13 **“Days”** shall mean calendar days, except where otherwise specified.

2.1.14 **“Engineer”** or **“Architect”** or **“Project Manager”** shall mean the person so designated in writing by the Commissioner in the Notice to Proceed or the Order to Work to act as such in relation to this Contract, including a private Architect or Engineer or Project Manager, as the case may be. Subject to written approval by the Commissioner, the Engineer, Architect or Project Manager may designate an authorized representative.

2.1.15 **“Engineering Audit Officer” (EAO)** shall mean the person so designated by the Commissioner to perform responsible auditing functions hereunder.

2.1.16 **“Extra Work”** shall mean Work other than that required by the Contract at the time of award which is authorized by the Commissioner pursuant to Chapter VI of this Contract.

2.1.17 **"Federal-Aid Contract"** shall mean a contract in which the United States (federal) Government provides financial funding as so designated in the Information for Bidders.

2.1.18 **"Final Acceptance"** shall mean final written acceptance of all the Work by the Commissioner, a copy of which shall be sent to the Contractor.

2.1.19 **"Final Approved Punch List"** shall mean a list, approved pursuant to Article 14.2.2, specifying those items of Work to be completed by the Contractor after Substantial Completion and dates for the completion of each item of Work.

2.1.20 **"Law"** or **"Laws"** shall mean the Constitution of the State of New York, the New York City Charter, the New York City Administrative Code, a statute of the United States or of the State of New York, a local law of the City of New York, any ordinance, rule or regulation having the force of law, or common law.

2.1.21 **"Materialman"** shall mean any corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, or individual, other than employees of the Contractor, who or which contracts with the Contractor or any Subcontractor, to fabricate or deliver, or who actually fabricates or delivers, plant, materials or equipment to be incorporated in the Work.

2.1.22 **"Means and Methods of Construction"** shall mean the labor, materials, temporary structures, tools, plant, and construction equipment, and the manner and time of their use, necessary to accomplish the result intended by this Contract.

2.1.23 **"Notice to Proceed"** or **"Order to Work"** shall mean the written notice issued by the Commissioner specifying the time for commencement of the Work and the Engineer, Architect or Project Manager.

2.1.24 **"Other Contractor(s)"** shall mean any contractor (other than the entity which executed this Contract or its Subcontractors) who or which has a contract with the City for work on or adjacent to the building or Site of the Work.

2.1.25 **"Payroll Taxes"** shall mean State Unemployment Insurance (SUI), Federal Unemployment Insurance (FUI), and payments pursuant to the Federal Insurance Contributions Act (FICA).

2.1.26 **"Project"** shall mean the public improvement to which this Contract relates.

2.1.27 **"Procurement Policy Board"** (PPB) shall mean the Agency of the City of New York whose function is to establish comprehensive and consistent procurement policies and rules which shall have broad application throughout the City.

2.1.28 **"Required Quantity"** in a unit price Contract shall mean the actual quantity of any item of Work or materials which is required to be performed or furnished in order to comply with the Contract.

2.1.29 **"Resident Engineer"** shall mean the representative of the Commissioner duly designated by the Commissioner to be his/her representative at the site of the Work.

2.1.30 **"Site"** shall mean the area upon or in which the Contractor's operations are carried on, and such other areas adjacent thereto as may be designated as such by the Engineer.

2.1.31 “**Small Tools**” shall mean items that are ordinarily required for a worker’s job function, including but not limited to, equipment that ordinarily has no licensing, insurance or substantive storage costs associated with it; such as circular and chain saws, impact drills, threaders, benders, wrenches, socket tools, etc.

2.1.32 “**Specifications**” shall mean all of the directions, requirements, and standards of performance applying to the Work as hereinafter detailed and designated under the Specifications.

2.1.33 “**Subcontractor**” shall mean any person, firm or corporation, other than employees of the Contractor, who or which contracts with the Contractor or with its subcontractors to furnish, or actually furnishes labor, or labor and materials, or labor and equipment, or superintendence, supervision and/or management at the Site. Wherever the word Subcontractor appears, it shall also mean sub-Subcontractor.

2.1.34 “**Substantial Completion**” shall mean the written determination by the Engineer that the Work required under this Contract is substantially, but not entirely, complete and the approval of the **Final Approved Punch List**.

2.1.35 “**Work**” shall mean all services required to complete the Project in accordance with the Contract Documents, including without limitation, labor, material, superintendence, management, administration, equipment, and incidentals, and obtaining any and all permits, certifications and licenses as may be necessary and required to complete the Work, and shall include both Contract Work and Extra Work.

## CHAPTER II: THE WORK AND ITS PERFORMANCE

### ARTICLE 3. CHARACTER OF THE WORK

3.1 Unless otherwise expressly provided in the **Contract Drawings, Specifications, and Addenda**, the **Work** shall be performed in accordance with the best modern practice, utilizing, unless otherwise specified in writing, new and unused materials of standard first grade quality and workmanship and design of the highest quality, to the satisfaction of the **Commissioner**.

### ARTICLE 4. MEANS AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION

4.1 Unless otherwise expressly provided in the **Contract Drawings, Specifications, and Addenda**, the **Means and Methods of Construction** shall be such as the **Contractor** may choose; subject, however, to the **Engineer’s** right to reject the **Means and Methods of Construction** proposed by the **Contractor** which in the opinion of the **Engineer**:

4.1.1 Will constitute or create a hazard to the **Work**, or to persons or property; or

4.1.2 Will not produce finished **Work** in accordance with the terms of the **Contract**; or

4.1.3 Will be detrimental to the overall progress of the **Project**.

4.2 The **Engineer’s** approval of the **Contractor’s Means and Methods of Construction**, or his/her failure to exercise his/her right to reject such means or methods, shall not relieve the **Contractor**

of its obligation to complete the **Work** as provided in this **Contract**; nor shall the exercise of such right to reject create a cause of action for damages.

#### **ARTICLE 5. COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS**

5.1 The **Contractor** shall comply with all **Laws** applicable to this **Contract** and to the **Work** to be done hereunder.

5.2 Procurement Policy Board Rules: This **Contract** is subject to the Rules of the **PPB** (“**PPB Rules**”) in effect at the time of the bid opening for this **Contract**. In the event of a conflict between the **PPB Rules** and a provision of this **Contract**, the **PPB Rules** shall take precedence.

5.3 Noise Control Code provisions.

5.3.1 In accordance with the provisions of Section 24-216(b) of the Administrative Code of the **City** (“**Administrative Code**”), Noise Abatement Contract Compliance, devices and activities which will be operated, conducted, constructed or manufactured pursuant to this **Contract** and which are subject to the provisions of the **City Noise Control Code** shall be operated, conducted, constructed, or manufactured without causing a violation of the **Administrative Code**. Such devices and activities shall incorporate advances in the art of noise control development for the kind and level of noise emitted or produced by such devices and activities, in accordance with regulations issued by the **Commissioner** of the **City Department of Environmental Protection**.

5.3.2 The **Contractor** agrees to comply with Section 24-219 of the Administrative Code and implementing rules codified at 15 Rules of the City of New York (“**RCNY**”) Section 28-100 *et seq.* In accordance with such provisions, the **Contractor**, if the **Contractor** is the responsible party under such regulations, shall prepare and post a Construction Noise Mitigation Plan at each **Site**, in which the **Contractor** shall certify that all construction tools and equipment have been maintained so that they operate at normal manufacturers operating specifications. If the **Contractor** cannot make this certification, it must have in place an Alternative Noise Mitigation Plan approved by the **City Department of Environmental Protection**. In addition, the **Contractor’s** certified Construction Noise Mitigation Plan is subject inspection by the **City Department of Environmental Protection** in accordance with Section 28-101 of Title 15 of **RCNY**. No **Contract Work** may take place at a **Site** unless there is a Construction Noise Mitigation Plan or approved Alternative Noise Mitigation Plan in place. In addition, the **Contractor** shall create and implement a noise mitigation training program. Failure to comply with these requirements may result in fines and other penalties pursuant to the applicable provisions of the **Administrative Code** and **RCNY**.

5.4 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel: In accordance with the provisions of Section 24-163.3 of the **Administrative Code**, the **Contractor** specifically agrees as follows:

5.4.1 Definitions. For purposes of this Article 5.4, the following definitions apply:

5.4.1(a) “**Contractor**” means any person or entity that enters into a Public Works Contract with a **City Agency**, or any person or entity that enters into an agreement with such person or entity, to perform work or provide labor or services related to such Public Works Contract.

5.4.1(b) "Motor Vehicle" means any self-propelled vehicle designed for transporting persons or property on a street or highway.

5.4.1(c) "Nonroad Engine" means an internal combustion engine (including the fuel system) that is not used in a Motor Vehicle or a vehicle used solely for competition, or that is not subject to standards promulgated under Section 7411 or Section 7521 of Title 42 of the United States Code, except that this term shall apply to internal combustion engines used to power generators, compressors or similar equipment used in any construction program or project.

5.4.1(d) "Nonroad Vehicle" means a vehicle that is powered by a Nonroad Engine, fifty (50) horsepower and greater, and that is not a Motor Vehicle or a vehicle used solely for competition, which shall include, but not be limited to, excavators, backhoes, cranes, compressors, generators, bulldozers, and similar equipment, except that this term shall not apply to horticultural maintenance vehicles used for landscaping purposes that are powered by a Nonroad Engine of sixty-five (65) horsepower or less and that are not used in any construction program or project.

5.4.1(e) "Public Works Contract" means a contract with a **City Agency** for a construction program or project involving the construction, demolition, restoration, rehabilitation, repair, renovation, or abatement of any building, structure, tunnel, excavation, roadway, park or bridge; a contract with a **City Agency** for the preparation for any construction program or project involving the construction, demolition, restoration, rehabilitation, repair, renovation, or abatement of any building, structure, tunnel, excavation, roadway, park or bridge; or a contract with a **City Agency** for any final work involved in the completion of any construction program or project involving the construction, demolition, restoration, rehabilitation, repair, renovation, or abatement of any building, structure, tunnel, excavation, roadway, park or bridge.

5.4.1(f) "Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel" means diesel fuel that has a sulfur content of no more than fifteen parts per million (15 ppm).

#### 5.4.2 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel

5.4.2(a) All **Contractors** shall use Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel in diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicles in the performance of this **Contract**.

5.4.2(b) Notwithstanding the requirements of Article 5.4.2(a), **Contractors** may use diesel fuel that has a sulfur content of no more than thirty parts per million (30 ppm) to fulfill the requirements of this Article 5.4.2, where the Commissioner of the **City** Department of Environmental Protection ("DEP Commissioner") has issued a determination that a sufficient quantity of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel is not available to meet the needs of **Agencies** and **Contractors**. Any such determination shall expire after six (6) months unless renewed.

5.4.2(c) **Contractors** shall not be required to comply with this Article 5.4.2 where the **City Agency** letting this **Contract** makes a written finding, which is approved, in writing, by the DEP Commissioner, that a sufficient quantity of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel, or diesel fuel that has a sulfur content of no more than thirty parts per million (30 ppm) is not available to meet the requirements of Section 24-163.3 of the Administrative Code, provided that such **Contractor** in its fulfillment of the

requirements of this **Contract**, to the extent practicable, shall use whatever quantity of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel or diesel fuel that has a sulfur content of no more than thirty parts per million (30 ppm) is available. Any finding made pursuant to this Article 5.4.2(c) shall expire after sixty (60) **Days**, at which time the requirements of this Article 5.4.2 shall be in full force and effect unless the **City Agency** renews the finding in writing and such renewal is approved by the DEP Commissioner.

5.4.2(d) **Contractors** may check on determinations and approvals issued by the DEP Commissioner pursuant to Section 24-163.3 of the Administrative Code, if any, at [www.dep.nyc.gov](http://www.dep.nyc.gov) or by contacting the **City Agency** letting this **Contract**.

5.4.2(e) The requirements of this Article 5.4.2 do not apply where they are precluded by federal or State funding requirements or where the **Contract** is an emergency procurement.

#### 5.4.3 Best Available Technology

5.4.3(a) All **Contractors** shall utilize the best available technology for reducing the emission of pollutants for diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicles in the performance of this **Contract**. For determinations of best available technology for each type of diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicle, **Contractors** shall comply with the regulations of the **City Department of Environmental Protection**, as and when adopted, Chapter 14 of Title 15 of the Rules of the City of New York (RCNY). The **Contractor** shall fully document all steps in the best available technology selection process and shall furnish such documentation to the **City Agency** or the DEP Commissioner upon request. The **Contractor** shall retain all documentation generated in the best available technology selection process for as long as the selected best available technology is in use.

5.4.3(b) No **Contractor** shall be required to replace best available technology for reducing the emission of pollutants or other authorized technology utilized for a diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicle in accordance with the provisions of this Article 5.4.3 within three (3) years of having first utilized such technology for such vehicle.

5.4.3(c) This Article 5.4.3 shall not apply to any vehicle used to satisfy the requirements of a specific Public Works Contract for fewer than twenty (20) **Days**.

5.4.3(d) The **Contractor** shall not be required to comply with this Article 5.4.3 with respect to a diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicle under the following circumstances:

5.4.3(d)(i) Where the **City Agency** makes a written finding, which is approved, in writing, by the DEP Commissioner, that the best available technology for reducing the emission of pollutants as required by this Article 5.4.3 is unavailable for such vehicle, the **Contractor** shall use whatever technology for reducing the emission of pollutants, if any, is available and appropriate for such vehicle.

5.4.3(d)(ii) Where the DEP Commissioner has issued a written waiver based upon the **Contractor** having demonstrated to the DEP Commissioner that the use of the best available technology for reducing the emission of pollutants might endanger the operator of such vehicle or those working near such vehicle, due to engine malfunction, the **Contractor** shall use whatever technology for

reducing the emission of pollutants, if any, is available and appropriate for such vehicle, which would not endanger the operator of such vehicle or those working near such vehicle.

5.4.3(d)(iii) In determining which technology to use for the purposes of Articles 5.4.3(d)(i) and 5.4.3(d)(ii) above, the **Contractor** shall primarily consider the reduction in emissions of particulate matter and secondarily consider the reduction in emissions of nitrogen oxides associated with the use of such technology, which shall in no event result in an increase in the emissions of either such pollutant.

5.4.3(d)(iv) The **Contractor** shall submit requests for a finding or a waiver pursuant to this Article 5.4.3(d) in writing to the DEP Commissioner, with a copy to the **ACCO** of the **City Agency** letting this **Contract**. Any finding or waiver made or issued pursuant to Articles 5.4.3(d)(i) and 5.4.3(d)(ii) above shall expire after one hundred eighty (180) **Days**, at which time the requirements of Article 5.4.3(a) shall be in full force and effect unless the **City Agency** renews the finding, in writing, and the DEP Commissioner approves such finding, in writing, or the DEP Commissioner renews the waiver, in writing.

5.4.3(e) The requirements of this Article 5.4.3 do not apply where they are precluded by federal or State funding requirements or where the **Contract** is an emergency procurement.

5.4.4 Section 24-163 of the Administrative Code. The **Contractor** shall comply with Section 24-163 of the Administrative Code related to the idling of the engines of motor vehicles while parking.

#### 5.4.5 Compliance

5.4.5(a) The **Contractor's** compliance with Article 5.4 may be independently monitored. If it is determined that the **Contractor** has failed to comply with any provision of Article 5.4, any costs associated with any independent monitoring incurred by the **City** shall be reimbursed by the **Contractor**.

5.4.5(b) Any **Contractor** who violates any provision of Article 5.4, except as provided in Article 5.4.5(c) below, shall be liable for a civil penalty between the amounts of one thousand (\$1,000) and ten thousand (\$10,000) dollars, in addition to twice the amount of money saved by such **Contractor** for failure to comply with Article 5.4.

5.4.5(c) No **Contractor** shall make a false claim with respect to the provisions of Article 5.4 to a **City Agency**. Where a **Contractor** has been found to have done so, such **Contractor** shall be liable for a civil penalty of twenty thousand (\$20,000) dollars, in addition to twice the amount of money saved by such **Contractor** in association with having made such false claim.

#### 5.4.6 Reporting

5.4.6(a) For all Public Works Contracts covered by this Article 5.4, the **Contractor** shall report to the **City Agency** the following information:

5.4.6(a)(i) The total number of diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicles used to fulfill the requirements of this Public Works Contract;

5.4.6(a)(ii) The number of such Nonroad Vehicles that were powered by Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel;

5.4.6(a)(iii) The number of such Nonroad Vehicles that utilized the best available technology for reducing the emission of pollutants, including a breakdown by vehicle model and the type of technology;

5.4.6(a)(iv) The number of such Nonroad Vehicles that utilized such other authorized technology in accordance with Article 5.4.3, including a breakdown by vehicle model and the type of technology used for each such vehicle;

5.4.6(a)(v) The locations where such Nonroad Vehicles were used; and

5.4.6(a)(vi) Where a determination is in effect pursuant to Article 5.4.2(b) or 5.4.2(c), detailed information concerning the **Contractor's** efforts to obtain Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel or diesel fuel that has a sulfur content of no more than thirty parts per million (30 ppm).

5.4.6(b) The **Contractor** shall submit the information required by Article 5.4.6(a) at the completion of **Work** under the Public Works Contract and on a yearly basis no later than August 1 throughout the term of the Public Works Contract. The yearly report shall cover **Work** performed during the preceding fiscal year (July 1 - June 30).

5.5 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel. In accordance with the Coordinated Construction Act for Lower Manhattan, as amended:

5.5.1 Definitions. For purposes of this Article 5.5, the following definitions apply:

5.5.1(a) "Lower Manhattan" means the area to the south of and within the following lines: a line beginning at a point where the United States pierhead line in the Hudson River as it exists now or may be extended would intersect with the southerly line of West Houston Street in the Borough of Manhattan extended, thence easterly along the southerly side of West Houston Street to the southerly side of Houston Street, thence easterly along the southerly side of Houston Street to the southerly side of East Houston Street, thence northeasterly along the southerly side of East Houston Street to the point where it would intersect with the United States pierhead line in the East River as it exists now or may be extended, including tax lots within or immediately adjacent thereto.

5.5.1(b) "Lower Manhattan Redevelopment Project" means any project in Lower Manhattan that is funded in whole or in part with federal or State funding, or any project intended to improve transportation between Lower Manhattan and the two air terminals in the City known as LaGuardia Airport and John F. Kennedy International Airport, or between Lower Manhattan and the air terminal in Newark known as Newark Liberty International Airport, and that is funded in whole or in part with federal funding.

5.5.1(c) "Nonroad Engine" means an internal combustion engine (including the fuel system) that is not used in a Motor Vehicle or a vehicle used solely for competition, or that is not subject to standards promulgated under Section 7411 or Section 7521 of Title 42 of the United States Code, except that this term shall apply to internal combustion engines used to power generators, compressors or similar equipment used in any construction program or project.

5.5.1(d) "Nonroad Vehicle" means a vehicle that is powered by a Nonroad Engine, fifty (50) horsepower (HP) and greater, and that is not a Motor Vehicle or a vehicle used solely for competition, which shall include, but not be limited to, excavators, backhoes, cranes, compressors, generators, bulldozers, and similar equipment, except that this terms shall not apply to horticultural maintenance vehicles used for landscaping purposes that are powered by a Nonroad Engine of sixty-five (65) HP or less and that are not used in any construction program or project.

5.5.1(e) "Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel" means diesel fuel that has a sulfur content of no more than fifteen parts per million (15 ppm).

5.5.2 Requirements. **Contractors** and **Subcontractors** are required to use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel to power the diesel-powered Nonroad Vehicles with engine HP rating of fifty (50) HP and above used on a Lower Manhattan Redevelopment Project and, where practicable, to reduce the emission of pollutants by retrofitting such Nonroad Vehicles with oxidation catalysts, particulate filters, or technology that achieves lowest particulate matter emissions.

5.6 Pesticides. In accordance with Section 17-1209 of the Administrative Code, to the extent that the **Contractor** or any **Subcontractor** applies pesticides to any property owned or leased by the **City**, the **Contractor**, and any **Subcontractor** shall comply with Chapter 12 of the Administrative Code.

5.7 Waste Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facilities and Transporters. In connection with the **Work**, the **Contractor** and any **Subcontractor** shall use only those waste treatment, storage, and disposal facilities and waste transporters that possess the requisite license, permit or other governmental approval necessary to treat, store, dispose, or transport the waste, materials or hazardous substances.

5.8 Environmentally Preferable Purchasing. The **Contractor** shall ensure that products purchased or leased by the **Contractor** or any **Subcontractor** for the **Work** that are not specified by the **City** or are submitted as equivalents to a product specified by the **City** comply with the requirements of the New York City Environmentally Preferable Purchasing Program contained in Chapter 11 of Title 43 of the RCNY, pursuant to Chapter 3 of Title 6 of the Administrative Code.

## ARTICLE 6. INSPECTION

6.1 During the progress of the **Work** and up to the date of **Final Acceptance**, the **Contractor** shall at all times afford the representatives of the **City** every reasonable, safe, and proper facility for inspecting all **Work** done or being done at the **Site** and also for inspecting the manufacture or preparation of materials and equipment at the place of such manufacture or preparation.

6.2 The **Contractor's** obligation hereunder shall include the uncovering or taking down of finished **Work** and its restoration thereafter; provided, however, that the order to uncover, take down and restore shall be in writing, and further provided that if **Work** thus exposed proves satisfactory, and if the **Contractor** has complied with Article 6.1, such uncovering or taking down and restoration shall be

considered an item of **Extra Work** to be paid for in accordance with the provisions of Article 26. If the **Work** thus exposed proves unsatisfactory, the **City** has no obligation to compensate the **Contractor** for the uncovering, taking down or restoration.

6.3 Inspection and approval by the **Commissioner**, the **Engineer**, **Project Manager**, or **Resident Engineer**, of finished **Work** or of **Work** being performed, or of materials and equipment at the place of manufacture or preparation, shall not relieve the **Contractor** of its obligation to perform the **Work** in strict accordance with the **Contract**. Finished or unfinished **Work** not found to be in strict accordance with the **Contract** shall be replaced as directed by the **Engineer**, even though such **Work** may have been previously approved and paid for. Such corrective **Work** is **Contract Work** and shall not be deemed **Extra Work**.

6.4 Rejected **Work** and materials shall be promptly taken down and removed from the **Site**, which must at all times be kept in a reasonably clean and neat condition.

#### **ARTICLE 7. PROTECTION OF WORK AND OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY; NOTICES AND INDEMNIFICATION**

7.1 During the performance of the **Work** and up to the date of **Final Acceptance**, the **Contractor** shall be under an absolute obligation to protect the finished and unfinished **Work** against any damage, loss, injury, theft and/or vandalism and in the event of such damage, loss, injury, theft and/or vandalism, it shall promptly replace and/or repair such **Work** at the **Contractor's** sole cost and expense, as directed by the **Resident Engineer**. The obligation to deliver finished **Work** in strict accordance with the **Contract** prior to **Final Acceptance** shall be absolute and shall not be affected by the **Resident Engineer's** approval of, or failure to prohibit, the **Means and Methods of Construction** used by the **Contractor**.

7.2 During the performance of the **Work** and up to the date of **Final Acceptance**, the **Contractor** shall take all reasonable precautions to protect all persons and the property of the **City** and of others from damage, loss or injury resulting from the **Contractor's**, and/or its **Subcontractors'** operations under this **Contract**. The **Contractor's** obligation to protect shall include the duty to provide, place or replace, and adequately maintain at or about the **Site** suitable and sufficient protection such as lights, barricades, and enclosures.

7.3 The **Contractor** shall comply with the notification requirements set forth below in the event of any loss, damage or injury to **Work**, persons or property, or any accidents arising out of the operations of the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractors** under this **Contract**.

7.3.1 The **Contractor** shall make a full and complete report in writing to the **Resident Engineer** within three (3) **Days** after the occurrence.

7.3.2 The **Contractor** shall also send written notice of any such event to all insurance carriers that issued potentially responsive policies (including commercial general liability insurance carriers for events relating to the **Contractor's** own employees) no later than twenty (20) days after such event and again no later than twenty (20) days after the initiation of any claim and/or action resulting therefrom. Such notice shall contain the following information: the number of the insurance policy, the name of the Named Insured, the date and location of the incident, and the identity of the persons injured or property damaged. For any policy on which the **City** and/or the **Engineer**, **Architect**, or **Project Manager** are Additional Insureds, such notice shall expressly specify that "this notice is

being given on behalf of the City of New York as Additional Insured, such other Additional Insureds, as well as the Named Insured.”

7.3.2(a) Whenever such notice is sent under a policy on which the **City** is an Additional Insured, the **Contractor** shall provide copies of the notice to the **Comptroller**, the **Commissioner** and the **City Corporation Counsel**. The copy to the **Comptroller** shall be sent to the Insurance Unit, NYC Comptroller’s Office, 1 Centre Street – Room 1222, New York, New York, 10007. The copy to the **Commissioner** shall be sent to the address set forth in Schedule A of the General Conditions. The copy to the **City Corporation Counsel** shall be sent to Insurance Claims Specialist, Affirmative Litigation Division, New York City Law Department, 100 Church Street, New York, New York 10007.

7.3.2(b) If the **Contractor** fails to provide any of the foregoing notices to any appropriate insurance carrier(s) in a timely and complete manner, the **Contractor** shall indemnify the **City** for all losses, judgments, settlements, and expenses, including reasonable attorneys’ fees, arising from an insurer’s disclaimer of coverage citing late notice by or on behalf of the **City**.

7.4 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the **Contractor** shall defend, indemnify, and hold the **City**, its employees, and officials (the “Indemnitees”) harmless against any and all claims (including but not limited to claims asserted by any employee of the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractors**) and costs and expenses of whatever kind (including but not limited to payment or reimbursement of attorneys’ fees and disbursements) allegedly arising out of or in any way related to the operations of the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractors** in the performance of this **Contract** or from the **Contractor’s** and/or its **Subcontractors’** failure to comply with any of the provisions of this **Contract** or of the **Law**. Such costs and expenses shall include all those incurred in defending the underlying claim and those incurred in connection with the enforcement of this Article 7.4 by way of cross-claim, third-party claim, declaratory action or otherwise. The parties expressly agree that the indemnification obligation hereunder contemplates (1) full indemnity in the event of liability imposed against the Indemnitees without negligence and solely by reason of statute, operation of **Law** or otherwise; and (2) partial indemnity in the event of any actual negligence on the part of the Indemnitees either causing or contributing to the underlying claim (in which case, indemnification will be limited to any liability imposed over and above that percentage attributable to actual fault whether by statute, by operation of **Law**, or otherwise). Where partial indemnity is provided hereunder, all costs and expenses shall be indemnified on a pro rata basis.

7.4.1 Indemnification under Article 7.4 or any other provision of the **Contract** shall operate whether or not **Contractor** or its **Subcontractors** have placed and maintained the insurance specified under Article 22.

7.5 The provisions of this Article 7 shall not be deemed to create any new right of action in favor of third parties against the **Contractor** or the **City**.

### CHAPTER III: TIME PROVISIONS

#### ARTICLE 8. COMMENCEMENT AND PROSECUTION OF THE WORK

8.1 The **Contractor** shall commence the **Work** on the date specified in the **Notice to Proceed** or the **Order to Work**. The time for performance of the **Work** under the **Contract** shall be computed from

the date specified in the **Notice to Proceed** or the **Order to Work**. **TIME BEING OF THE ESSENCE** to the **City**, the **Contractor** shall thereafter prosecute the **Work** diligently, using such **Means and Methods of Construction** as are in accord with Article 4 herein and as will assure its completion not later than the date specified in this Contract, or on the date to which the time for completion may be extended.

#### **ARTICLE 9. PROGRESS SCHEDULES**

9.1 To enable the **Work** to be performed in an orderly and expeditious manner, the **Contractor**, within fifteen (15) **Days** after the **Notice to Proceed** or **Order to Work**, unless otherwise directed by the **Engineer**, shall submit to the **Engineer** a proposed progress schedule based on the Critical Path Method in the form of a bar graph or in such other form as specified by the **Engineer**, and monthly cash flow requirements, showing:

9.1.1 The anticipated time of commencement and completion of each of the various operations to be performed under this **Contract**; and

9.1.2 The sequence and interrelation of each of these operations with the others and with those of other related contracts; and

9.1.3 The estimated time required for fabrication or delivery, or both, of all materials and equipment required for the **Work**, including the anticipated time for obtaining required approvals pursuant to Article 10; and

9.1.4 The estimated amount in dollars the **Contractor** will claim on a monthly basis.

9.2 The proposed schedule shall be revised as directed by the **Engineer**, until finally approved by the **Engineer**, and after such approval, subject to the provisions of Article 11, shall be strictly adhered to by the **Contractor**.

9.3 If the **Contractor** shall fail to adhere to the approved progress schedule, or to the schedule as revised pursuant to Article 11, it shall promptly adopt such other or additional **Means and Methods of Construction**, at its sole cost and expense, as will make up for the time lost and will assure completion in accordance with the approved progress schedule. The approval by the **City** of a progress schedule which is shorter than the time allotted under the **Contract** shall not create any liability for the **City** if the approved progress schedule is not met.

9.4 The **Contractor** will not receive any payments until the proposed progress schedule is submitted.

#### **ARTICLE 10. REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION OR APPROVAL**

10.1 From time to time as the **Work** progresses and in the sequence indicated by the approved progress schedule, the **Contractor** shall submit to the **Engineer** a specific request in writing for each item of information or approval required by the **Contractor**. These requests shall state the latest date upon which the information or approval is actually required by the **Contractor**, and shall be submitted in a reasonable time in advance thereof to provide the **Engineer** a sufficient time to act upon such submissions, or any necessary re-submissions thereof.

10.2 The **Contractor** shall not have any right to an extension of time on account of delays due to the **Contractor's** failure to submit requests for the required information or the required approval in accordance with the above requirements.

**ARTICLE 11. NOTICE OF CONDITIONS CAUSING DELAY AND DOCUMENTATION OF DAMAGES CAUSED BY DELAY**

11.1 After the commencement of any condition which is causing or may cause a delay in completion of the **Work**, including conditions for which the **Contractor** may be entitled to an extension of time, the following notifications and submittals are required:

11.1.1 Within fifteen (15) **Days** after the **Contractor** becomes aware or reasonably should be aware of each such condition, the **Contractor** must notify the **Resident Engineer** or **Engineer**, as directed by the **Commissioner**, in writing of the existence, nature and effect of such condition upon the approved progress schedule and the **Work**, and must state why and in what respects, if any, the condition is causing or may cause a delay. Such notice shall include a description of the construction activities that are or could be affected by the condition and may include any recommendations the **Contractor** may have to address the delay condition and any activities the **Contractor** may take to avoid or minimize the delay.

11.1.2 If the **Contractor** shall claim to be sustaining damages for delay as provided for in this Article 11, within forty-five (45) **Days** from the time such damages are first incurred for each such condition, the **Contractor** shall submit to the **Commissioner** a verified written statement of the details and estimates of the amounts of such damages, including categories of expected damages and projected monthly costs, together with documentary evidence of such damages as the **Contractor** may have at the time of submission ("statement of delay damages"), as further detailed in Article 11.6. The **Contractor** may submit the above statement within such additional time as may be granted by the **Commissioner** in writing upon written request therefor.

11.1.3 Articles 11.1.1 and 11.1.2 do not relieve the **Contractor** of its obligation to comply with the provisions of Article 44.

11.2 Failure of the **Contractor** to strictly comply with the requirements of Article 11.1.1 may, in the discretion of the **Commissioner**, be deemed sufficient cause to deny any extension of time on account of delay arising out of such condition. Failure of the **Contractor** to strictly comply with the requirements of both Articles 11.1.1 and 11.1.2 shall be deemed a conclusive waiver by the **Contractor** of any and all claims for damages for delay arising from such condition and no right to recover on such claims shall exist.

11.3 When appropriate and directed by the **Engineer**, the progress schedule shall be revised by the **Contractor** until finally approved by the **Engineer**. The revised progress schedule must be strictly adhered to by the **Contractor**.

11.4 Compensable Delays

11.4.1 The **Contractor** agrees to make claim only for additional costs attributable to delay in the performance of this **Contract** necessarily extending the time for completion of the **Work** or resulting from acceleration directed by the **Commissioner** and required to maintain the progress schedule, occasioned solely by any act or omission to act of the **City** listed below. The **Contractor** also agrees that delay from any other cause shall be

compensated, if at all, solely by an extension of time to complete the performance of the **Work**.

- 11.4.1.1 The failure of the **City** to take reasonable measures to coordinate and progress the **Work** to the extent required by the **Contract**, except that the **City** shall not be responsible for the **Contractor's** obligation to coordinate and progress the **Work** of its **Subcontractors**.
- 11.4.1.2 Unreasonable delays attributable to the review of shop drawings, the issuance of change orders, or the cumulative impact of change orders that were not brought about by any act or omission of the **Contractor**.
- 11.4.1.3 The unavailability of the **Site** caused by acts or omissions of the **City**.
- 11.4.1.4 The issuance by the **Engineer** of a stop work order that was not brought about through any act or omission of the **Contractor**.
- 11.4.1.5 Differing site conditions or environmental hazards that were neither known nor reasonably ascertainable on a pre-bid inspection of the **Site** or review of the bid documents or other publicly available sources, and that are not ordinarily encountered in the **Project's** geographical area or neighborhood or in the type of **Work** to be performed.
- 11.4.1.6 Delays caused by the **City's** bad faith or its willful, malicious, or grossly negligent conduct;
- 11.4.1.7 Delays not contemplated by the parties;
- 11.4.1.8 Delays so unreasonable that they constitute an intentional abandonment of the **Contract** by the **City**; and
- 11.4.1.9 Delays resulting from the **City's** breach of a fundamental obligation of the **Contract**.

11.4.2 No claim may be made for any alleged delay in **Substantial Completion** of the **Work** if the **Work** will be or is substantially completed by the date of **Substantial Completion** provided for in Schedule A unless acceleration has been directed by the **Commissioner** to meet the date of **Substantial Completion** set forth in Schedule A, or unless there is a provision in the **Contract** providing for additional compensation for early completion.

11.4.3 The provisions of this Article 11 apply only to claims for additional costs attributable to delay and do not preclude determinations by the **Commissioner** allowing reimbursements for additional costs for **Extra Work** pursuant to Articles 25 and 26 of this **Contract**. To the extent that any cost attributable to delay is reimbursed as part of a change order, no additional claim for compensation under this Article 11 shall be allowed.

11.5 **Non-Compensable Delays.** The **Contractor** agrees to make no claim for, and is deemed to have included in its bid prices for the various items of the **Contract**, the extra/additional costs attributable to any delays caused by or attributable to the items set forth below. For such items, the **Contractor** shall be compensated, if at all, solely by an extension of time to complete the performance of the **Work**, in accordance with the provisions of Article 13. Such extensions of time will be granted, if at all, pursuant to the grounds set forth in Article 13.3.

11.5.1 The acts or omissions of any third parties, including but not limited to **Other Contractors**, public/ governmental bodies (other than **City Agencies**), utilities or private enterprises, who are disclosed in the **Contract Documents** or are ordinarily encountered or generally recognized as related to the **Work**;

11.5.2 Any situation which was within the contemplation of the parties at the time of entering into the **Contract**, including any delay indicated or disclosed in the **Contract Documents** or that would be generally recognized by a reasonably prudent contractor as related to the nature of the **Work**, and/or the existence of any facility or appurtenance owned, operated or maintained by any third party, as indicated or disclosed in the **Contract Documents** or ordinarily encountered or generally recognized as related to the nature of the **Work**;

11.5.3 Restraining orders, injunctions or judgments issued by a court which were caused by a Contractor's submission, action or inaction or by a Contractor's **Means and Methods of Construction**, or by third parties, unless such order, injunction or judgment was the result of an act or omission by the **City**;

11.5.4 Any labor boycott, strike, picketing, lockout or similar situation;

11.5.5 Any shortages of supplies or materials, or unavailability of equipment, required by the **Contract Work**;

11.5.6 Climatic conditions, storms, floods, droughts, tidal waves, fires, hurricanes, earthquakes, landslides or other catastrophes or acts of God, or acts of war or of the public enemy or terrorist acts, including the **City's** reasonable responses thereto; and

11.5.7 **Extra Work** which does not significantly affect the overall completion of the **Contract**, reasonable delays in the review or issuance of change orders or field orders and/or in shop drawing reviews or approvals.

#### 11.6 Required Content of Submission of Statement of Delay Damages

11.6.1 In the verified written statement of delay damages required by Article 11.1.2, the following information shall be provided by the **Contractor**:

11.6.1.1 For each delay, the start and end dates of the claimed periods of delay and, in addition, a description of the operations that were delayed, an explanation of how they were delayed, and the reasons for the delay, including identifying the applicable act or omission of the **City** listed in Article 11.4.

11.6.1.2 A detailed factual statement of the claim providing all necessary dates, locations and items of **Work** affected by the claim.

11.6.1.3 The estimated amount of additional compensation sought and a breakdown of that amount into categories as described in Article 11.7.

11.6.1.4 Any additional information requested by the **Commissioner**.

#### 11.7 Recoverable Costs

11.7.1 Delay damages may be recoverable for the following costs actually and necessarily incurred in the performance of the **Work**:

11.7.1.1 Direct labor, including payroll taxes (subject to statutory wage caps) and supplemental benefits, based on time and materials records;

11.7.1.2 Necessary materials (including transportation to the **Site**), based on time and material records;

- 11.7.1.3 Reasonable rental value of necessary plant and equipment other than small tools, plus fuel/energy costs according to the applicable formula set forth in Articles 26.2.4 and/or 26.2.8, based on time and material records;
- 11.7.1.4 Additional insurance and bond costs;
- 11.7.1.5 Extended **Site** overhead, field office rental, salaries of field office staff, on-site project managers and superintendents, field office staff vehicles, **Project**-specific storage, field office utilities and telephone, and field office consumables;
- 11.7.1.6 Labor escalation costs based on actual costs;
- 11.7.1.7 Materials and equipment escalation costs based on applicable industry indices unless documentation of actual increased cost is provided;
- 11.7.1.8 Additional material and equipment storage costs based on actual documented costs and additional costs necessitated by extended manufacturer warranty periods; and
- 11.7.1.9 Extended home office overhead calculated based on the following formula:
  - (1) Subtract from the original **Contract** amount the amount earned by original contractual **Substantial Completion** date (not including change orders);
  - (2) Remove 15% overhead and profit from the calculation in item (1) by dividing the results of item (1) by 1.15;
  - (3) Multiply the result of item (2) by 7.25% for the total home office overhead;
  - (4) Multiply the result of item (3) by 7.25% for the total profit; and
  - (5) The total extended home office overhead will be the total of items (3) and (4).

11.7.2 Recoverable Subcontractor Costs. When the **Work** is performed by a **Subcontractor**, the **Contractor** may be paid the actual and necessary costs of such subcontracted **Work** as outlined above in Articles 11.7.1.1 through 11.7.1.8, and an additional overhead of 5% of the costs outlined in Articles 11.7.1.1 through 11.7.1.3.

11.7.3 Non-Recoverable Costs. The parties agree that the **City** will have no liability for the following items and the **Contractor** agrees it shall make no claim for the following items:

- 11.7.3.1 Profit, or loss of anticipated or unanticipated profit, except as provided in Article 11.7.1.9;
- 11.7.3.2 Consequential damages, including, but not limited to, construction or bridge loans or interest paid on such loans, loss of bonding capacity, bidding opportunities, or interest in investment, or any resulting insolvency;
- 11.7.3.3 Indirect costs or expenses of any nature except those included in Article 11.7.1;
- 11.7.3.4 Direct or indirect costs attributable to performance of **Work** where the **Contractor**, because of situations or conditions within its control, has not progressed the **Work** in a satisfactory manner; and
- 11.7.3.5 Attorneys' fees and dispute and claims preparation expenses.

- 11.8 Any claims for delay under this Article 11 are not subject to the jurisdiction of the Contract Dispute Resolution Board pursuant to the dispute resolution process set forth in Article 27.
- 11.9 Any compensation provided to the **Contractor** in accordance with this Article 11 will be made pursuant to a claim filed with the **Comptroller**. Nothing in this Article 11 extends the time for the **Contractor** to file an action with respect to a claim within six months after **Substantial Completion** pursuant to Article 56.

## **ARTICLE 12. COORDINATION WITH OTHER CONTRACTORS**

12.1 During the progress of the **Work**, **Other Contractors** may be engaged in performing other work or may be awarded other contracts for additional work on this **Project**. In that event, the **Contractor** shall coordinate the **Work** to be done hereunder with the work of such **Other Contractors** and the **Contractor** shall fully cooperate with such **Other Contractors** and carefully fit its own **Work** to that provided under other contracts as may be directed by the **Engineer**. The **Contractor** shall not commit or permit any act which will interfere with the performance of work by any **Other Contractors**.

12.2 If the **Engineer** determines that the **Contractor** is failing to coordinate its **Work** with the work of **Other Contractors** as the **Engineer** has directed, then the **Commissioner** shall have the right to withhold any payments otherwise due hereunder until the **Contractor** completely complies with the **Engineer's** directions.

12.3 The **Contractor** shall notify the **Engineer** in writing if any **Other Contractor** on this **Project** is failing to coordinate its work with the **Work** of this **Contract**. If the **Engineer** finds such charges to be true, the **Engineer** shall promptly issue such directions to the **Other Contractor** with respect thereto as the situation may require. The **City** shall not, however, be liable for any damages suffered by any **Other Contractor's** failure to coordinate its work with the **Work** of this **Contract** or by reason of the **Other Contractor's** failure to promptly comply with the directions so issued by the **Engineer**, or by reason of any **Other Contractor's** default in performance, it being understood that the **City** does not guarantee the responsibility or continued efficiency of any contractor. The **Contractor** agrees to make no claim against the **City** for any damages relating to or arising out of any directions issued by the **Engineer** pursuant to this Article 12 (including but not limited to the failure of any **Other Contractor** to comply or promptly comply with such directions), or the failure of any **Other Contractor** to coordinate its work, or the default in performance of any **Other Contractor**.

12.4 The **Contractor** shall indemnify and hold the **City** harmless from any and all claims or judgments for damages and from costs and expenses to which the **City** may be subjected or which it may suffer or incur by reason of the **Contractor's** failure to comply with the **Engineer's** directions promptly; and the **Comptroller** shall have the right to exercise the powers reserved in Article 23 with respect to any claims which may be made for damages due to the **Contractor's** failure to comply with the **Engineer's** directions promptly. Insofar as the facts and **Law** relating to any claim would preclude the **City** from being completely indemnified by the **Contractor**, the **City** shall be partially indemnified by the **Contractor** to the fullest extent provided by **Law**.

12.5 Should the **Contractor** sustain any damage through any act or omission of any **Other Contractor** having a contract with the **City** for the performance of work upon the **Site** or of work which may be necessary to be performed for the proper prosecution of the **Work** to be performed hereunder, or through any act or omission of a subcontractor of such **Other Contractor**, the **Contractor** shall have no claim against the **City** for such damage, but shall have a right to recover such damage from the **Other**

**Contractor** under the provision similar to the following provisions which apply to this **Contract** and have been or will be inserted in the contracts with such **Other Contractors**:

12.5.1 Should any **Other Contractor** having or who shall hereafter have a contract with the **City** for the performance of work upon the **Site** sustain any damage through any act or omission of the **Contractor** hereunder or through any act or omission of any **Subcontractor** of the **Contractor**, the **Contractor** agrees to reimburse such **Other Contractor** for all such damages and to defend at its own expense any action based upon such claim and if any judgment or claim (even if the allegations of the action are without merit) against the **City** shall be allowed the **Contractor** shall pay or satisfy such judgment or claim and pay all costs and expenses in connection therewith and agrees to indemnify and hold the **City** harmless from all such claims. Insofar as the facts and **Law** relating to any claim would preclude the **City** from being completely indemnified by the **Contractor**, the **City** shall be partially indemnified by the **Contractor** to the fullest extent provided by **Law**.

12.6 The **City's** right to indemnification hereunder shall in no way be diminished, waived or discharged by its recourse to assessment of liquidated damages as provided in Article 15, or by the exercise of any other remedy provided for by **Contract** or by **Law**.

### ARTICLE 13. EXTENSION OF TIME FOR PERFORMANCE

13.1 If performance by the **Contractor** is delayed for a reason set forth in Article 13.3, the **Contractor** may be allowed a reasonable extension of time in conformance with this Article 13 and the **PPB Rules**.

13.2 Any extension of time may be granted only by the **ACCO** or by the Board for the Extension of Time (hereafter "Board") (as set forth below) upon written application by the **Contractor**.

13.3 Grounds for Extension: If such application is made, the **Contractor** shall be entitled to an extension of time for delay in completion of the **Work** caused solely:

13.3.1 By the acts or omissions of the **City**, its officials, agents or employees; or

13.3.2 By the act or omissions of **Other Contractors** on this **Project**; or

13.3.3 By supervening conditions entirely beyond the control of either party hereto (such as, but not limited to, acts of God or the public enemy, excessive inclement weather, war or other national emergency making performance temporarily impossible or illegal, or strikes or labor disputes not brought about by any act or omission of the **Contractor**).

13.3.4 The **Contractor** shall, however, be entitled to an extension of time for such causes only for the number of **Days** of delay which the **ACCO** or the Board may determine to be due solely to such causes, and then only if the **Contractor** shall have strictly complied with all of the requirements of Articles 9 and 10.

13.4 The **Contractor** shall not be entitled to receive a separate extension of time for each of several causes of delay operating concurrently, but, if at all, only for the actual period of delay in completion of the **Work** as determined by the **ACCO** or the Board, irrespective of the number of causes contributing to produce such delay. If one of several causes of delay operating concurrently results from any act, fault or omission of the **Contractor** or of its **Subcontractors** or **Materialmen**, and would of itself (irrespective

of the concurrent causes) have delayed the **Work**, no extension of time will be allowed for the period of delay resulting from such act, fault or omission.

13.5 The determination made by the **ACCO** or the Board on an application for an extension of time shall be binding and conclusive on the **Contractor**.

13.6 The **ACCO** or the Board acting entirely within their discretion may grant an application for an extension of time for causes of delay other than those herein referred.

13.7 Permitting the **Contractor** to continue with the **Work** after the time fixed for its completion has expired, or after the time to which such completion may have been extended has expired, or the making of any payment to the **Contractor** after such time, shall in no way operate as a waiver on the part of the **City** of any of its rights under this **Contract**.

#### 13.8 Application for Extension of Time:

13.8.1 Before the **Contractor's** time extension request will be considered, the **Contractor** shall notify the **ACCO** of the condition which allegedly has caused or is causing the delay, and shall submit a written application to the **ACCO** identifying:

13.8.1(a) The **Contractor**; the registration number; and **Project** description;

13.8.1(b) Liquidated damage assessment rate, as specified in the **Contract**;

13.8.1(c) Original total bid price;

13.8.1(d) The original **Contract** start date and completion date;

13.8.1(e) Any previous time extensions granted (number and duration); and

13.8.1(f) The extension of time requested.

13.8.2 In addition, the application for extension of time shall set forth in detail:

13.8.2(a) The nature of each alleged cause of delay in completing the **Work**;

13.8.2(b) The date upon which each such cause of delay began and ended and the number of **Days** attributable to each such cause;

13.8.2(c) A statement that the **Contractor** waives all claims except for those delineated in the application, and the particulars of any claims which the **Contractor** does not agree to waive. For time extensions for **Substantial Completion** and final completion payments, the application shall include a detailed statement of the dollar amounts of each element of claim item reserved; and

13.8.2(d) A statement indicating the **Contractor's** understanding that the time extension is granted only for purposes of permitting continuation of **Contract** performance and payment for **Work** performed and that the **City** retains its right to conduct an investigation and assess liquidated damages as appropriate in the future.

#### 13.9 Analysis and Approval of Time Extensions:

13.9.1 For time extensions for partial payments, a written determination shall be made by the **ACCO** who may, for good and sufficient cause, extend the time for the performance of the **Contract** as follows:

13.9.1(a) If the **Work** is to be completed within six (6) months, the time for performance may be extended for sixty (60) **Days**;

13.9.1(b) If the **Work** is to be completed within less than one (1) year but more than six (6) months, an extension of ninety (90) **Days** may be granted;

13.9.1(c) If the **Contract** period exceeds one (1) year, besides the extension granted in Article 13.9.1(b), an additional thirty (30) **Days** may be granted for each multiple of six (6) months involved beyond the one (1) year period; or

13.9.1(d) If exceptional circumstances exist, the **ACCO** may extend the time for performance beyond the extensions in Articles 13.9.1(a), 13.9.1(b), and 13.9.1(c). In that event, the **ACCO** shall file with the Mayor's Office of Contract Services a written explanation of the exceptional circumstances.

13.9.2 For extensions of time for **Substantial Completion** and final completion payments, the **Engineer**, in consultation with the **ACCO**, shall prepare a written analysis of the delay (including a preliminary determination of the causes of delay, the beginning and end dates for each such cause of delay, and whether the delays are excusable under the terms of this **Contract**). The report shall be subject to review by and approval of the Board, which shall have authority to question its analysis and determinations and request additional facts or documentation. The report as reviewed and made final by the Board shall be made a part of the **Agency** contract file. Neither the report itself nor anything contained therein shall operate as a waiver or release of any claim the **City** may have against the **Contractor** for either actual or liquidated damages.

13.9.3 Approval Mechanism for Time Extensions for **Substantial Completion** or Final Completion Payments: An extension shall be granted only with the approval of the Board which is comprised of the **ACCO** of the **Agency**, the **City** Corporation Counsel, and the **Comptroller**, or their authorized representatives.

13.9.4 Neither the granting of any application for an extension of time to the **Contractor** or any **Other Contractor** on this **Project** nor the papers, records or reports related to any application for or grant of an extension of time or determination related thereto shall be referred to or offered in evidence by the **Contractor** or its attorneys in any action or proceeding.

13.10 No Damage for Delay: The **Contractor** agrees to make no claim for damages for delay in the performance of this **Contract** occasioned by any act or omission to act of the **City** or any of its representatives, except as provided for in Article 11.

#### **ARTICLE 14. COMPLETION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE OF THE WORK**

14.1 Date for **Substantial Completion**: The **Contractor** shall substantially complete the **Work** within the time fixed in Schedule A of the General Conditions, or within the time to which such **Substantial Completion** may be extended.

14.2 Determining the Date of **Substantial Completion**: The **Work** will be deemed to be substantially complete when the two conditions set forth below have been met.

14.2.1 Inspection: The **Engineer** or **Resident Engineer**, as applicable, has inspected the **Work** and has made a written determination that it is substantially complete.

14.2.2 Approval of **Final Approved Punch List** and Date for **Final Acceptance**: Following inspection of the **Work**, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** shall furnish the **Contractor** with a final punch list, specifying all items of **Work** to be completed and proposing dates for the completion of each specified item of **Work**. The **Contractor** shall then submit in writing to the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** within ten (10) **Days** of the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** furnishing the final punch list either acceptance of the dates or proposed alternative dates for the completion of each specified item of **Work**. If the **Contractor** neither accepts the dates nor proposes alternative dates within ten (10) **Days**, the schedule proposed by the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** shall be deemed accepted. If the **Contractor** proposes alternative dates, then, within a reasonable time after receipt, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer**, in a written notification to the **Contractor**, shall approve the **Contractor's** completion dates or, if they are unable to agree, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** shall establish dates for the completion of each item of **Work**. The latest completion date specified shall be the date for **Final Acceptance** of the **Work**.

14.3 Date of **Substantial Completion**. The date of approval of the **Final Approved Punch List**, shall be the date of **Substantial Completion**. The date of approval of the **Final Approved Punch List** shall be either (a) if the **Contractor** approves the final punch list and proposed dates for completion furnished by the **Engineer/Resident Engineer**, the date of the **Contractor's** approval; or (b) if the **Contractor** neither accepts the dates nor proposes alternative dates, ten (10) **Days** after the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** furnishes the **Contractor** with a final punch list and proposed dates for completion; or (c) if the **Contractor** proposes alternative dates, the date that the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** sends written notification to the **Contractor** either approving the **Contractor's** proposed alternative dates or establishing dates for the completion for each item of **Work**.

14.4 Determining the Date of **Final Acceptance**: The **Work** will be accepted as final and complete as of the date of the **Engineer's/Resident Engineer's** inspection if, upon such inspection, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** finds that all items on the **Final Approved Punch List** are complete and no further **Work** remains to be done. The **Commissioner** will then issue a written determination of **Final Acceptance**.

14.5 Request for Inspection: Inspection of the **Work** by the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** for the purpose of **Substantial Completion** or **Final Acceptance** shall be made within fourteen (14) **Days** after receipt of the **Contractor's** written request therefor.

14.6 Request for Re-inspection: If upon inspection for the purpose of **Substantial Completion** or **Final Acceptance**, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** determines that there are items of **Work** still to be performed, the **Contractor** shall promptly perform them and then request a re-inspection. If upon re-inspection, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** determines that the **Work** is substantially complete or finally accepted, the date of such re-inspection shall be the date of **Substantial Completion** or **Final Acceptance**. Re-inspection by the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** shall be made within ten (10) **Days** after receipt of the **Contractor's** written request therefor.

14.7 Initiation of Inspection by the **Engineer/Resident Engineer**: If the **Contractor** does not request inspection or re-inspection of the **Work** for the purpose of **Substantial Completion** or **Final Acceptance**, the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** may initiate such inspection or re-inspection.

#### ARTICLE 15. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

15.1 In the event the **Contractor** fails to substantially complete the **Work** within the time fixed for such **Substantial Completion** in Schedule A of the General Conditions, plus authorized time extensions, or if the **Contractor**, in the sole determination of the **Commissioner**, has abandoned the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall pay to the **City** the sum fixed in Schedule A of the General Conditions, for each and every **Day** that the time consumed in substantially completing the **Work** exceeds the time allowed therefor; which said sum, in view of the difficulty of accurately ascertaining the loss which the **City** will suffer by reason of delay in the **Substantial Completion** of the **Work** hereunder, is hereby fixed and agreed as the liquidated damages that the **City** will suffer by reason of such delay, and not as a penalty. This Article 15 shall also apply to the **Contractor** whether or not the **Contractor** is defaulted pursuant to Chapter X of this **Contract**. Neither the failure to assess liquidated damages nor the granting of any time extension shall operate as a waiver or release of any claim the **City** may have against the **Contractor** for either actual or liquidated damages.

15.2 Liquidated damages received hereunder are not intended to be nor shall they be treated as either a partial or full waiver or discharge of the **City's** right to indemnification, or the **Contractor's** obligation to indemnify the **City**, or to any other remedy provided for in this **Contract** or by **Law**.

15.3 The **Commissioner** may deduct and retain out of the monies which may become due hereunder, the amount of any such liquidated damages; and in case the amount which may become due hereunder shall be less than the amount of liquidated damages suffered by the **City**, the **Contractor** shall be liable to pay the difference.

#### ARTICLE 16. OCCUPATION OR USE PRIOR TO COMPLETION

16.1 Unless otherwise provided for in the **Specifications**, the **Commissioner** may take over, use, occupy or operate any part of the **Work** at any time prior to **Final Acceptance**, upon written notification to the **Contractor**. The **Engineer** or **Resident Engineer**, as applicable, shall inspect the part of the **Work** to be taken over, used, occupied, or operated, and will furnish the **Contractor** with a written statement of the **Work**, if any, which remains to be performed on such part. The **Contractor** shall not object to, nor interfere with, the **Commissioner's** decision to exercise the rights granted by Article 16. In the event the **Commissioner** takes over, uses, occupies, or operates any part of the **Work**:

16.1.1 the **Engineer/Resident Engineer** shall issue a written determination of **Substantial Completion** with respect to such part of the **Work**;

16.1.2 the **Contractor** shall be relieved of its absolute obligation to protect such part of the unfinished **Work** in accordance with Article 7;

16.1.3 the **Contractor's** guarantee on such part of the **Work** shall begin on the date of such use by the **City**; and;

16.1.4 the **Contractor** shall be entitled to a return of so much of the amount retained in accordance with Article 21 as it relates to such part of the **Work**, except so much thereof as may be retained under Articles 24 and 44.

## CHAPTER IV: SUBCONTRACTS AND ASSIGNMENTS

### ARTICLE 17. SUBCONTRACTS

17.1 The **Contractor** shall not make subcontracts totaling an amount more than the percentage of the total **Contract** price fixed in Schedule A of the General Conditions, without prior written permission from the **Commissioner**. All subcontracts made by the **Contractor** shall be in writing. No **Work** may be performed by a **Subcontractor** prior to the **Contractor** entering into a written subcontract with the **Subcontractor** and complying with the provisions of this Article 17.

17.2 Before making any subcontracts, the **Contractor** shall submit a written statement to the **Commissioner** giving the name and address of the proposed **Subcontractor**; the portion of the **Work** and materials which it is to perform and furnish; the cost of the subcontract; the VENDEX questionnaire if required; the proposed subcontract if requested by the **Commissioner**; and any other information tending to prove that the proposed **Subcontractor** has the necessary facilities, skill, integrity, past experience, and financial resources to perform the **Work** in accordance with the terms and conditions of this **Contract**.

17.3 In addition to the requirements in Article 17.2, **Contractor** is required to list the **Subcontractor** in the web based Subcontractor Reporting System through the City's Payee Information Portal (PIP), available at [www.nyc.gov/pip](http://www.nyc.gov/pip).<sup>1</sup> For each **Subcontractor** listed, **Contractor** is required to provide the following information: maximum contract value, description of **Subcontractor's** Work, start and end date of the subcontract and identification of the **Subcontractor's** industry. Thereafter, **Contractor** will be required to report in the system the payments made to each **Subcontractor** within 30 days of making the payment. If any of the required information changes throughout the Term of the **Contract**, **Contractor** will be required to revise the information in the system.

Failure of the **Contractor** to list a **Subcontractor** and/or to report **Subcontractor** payments in a timely fashion may result in the **Commissioner** declaring the **Contractor** in default of the **Contract** and will subject **Contractor** to liquidated damages in the amount of \$100 per day for each day that the **Contractor** fails to identify a **Subcontractor** along with the required information about the **Subcontractor** and/or fails to report payments to a **Subcontractor**, beyond the time frames set forth herein or in the notice from the **City**. Article 15 shall govern the issue of liquidated damages.

17.4 If an approved **Subcontractor** elects to subcontract any portion of its subcontract, the proposed sub-subcontract shall be submitted in the same manner as directed above.

17.5 The **Commissioner** will notify the **Contractor** in writing whether the proposed **Subcontractor** is approved. If the proposed **Subcontractor** is not approved, the **Contractor** may submit another proposed **Subcontractor** unless the **Contractor** decides to do the **Work**. No **Subcontractor** shall be permitted to enter or perform any work on the **Site** unless approved.

17.6 Before entering into any subcontract hereunder, the **Contractor** shall provide the proposed **Subcontractor** with a complete copy of this document and inform the proposed **Subcontractor** fully and completely of all provisions and requirements of this **Contract** relating either directly or indirectly to the **Work** to be performed and the materials to be furnished under such subcontract, and every such

<sup>1</sup> In order to use the new system, a PIP account will be required. Detailed instructions on creating a PIP account and using the new system are also available at [www.nyc.gov/pip](http://www.nyc.gov/pip). Additional assistance with PIP may be obtained by emailing the Financial Information Services Agency Help Desk at [pip@fisa.nyc.gov](mailto:pip@fisa.nyc.gov).

**Subcontractor** shall expressly stipulate that all labor performed and materials furnished by the **Subcontractor** shall strictly comply with the requirements of this **Contract**.

17.7 Documents given to a prospective **Subcontractor** for the purpose of soliciting the **Subcontractor's** bid shall include either a copy of the bid cover or a separate information sheet setting forth the **Project** name, the **Contract** number (if available), the **Agency** (as noted in Article 2.1.6), and the **Project's** location.

17.8 The **Commissioner's** approval of a **Subcontractor** shall not relieve the **Contractor** of any of its responsibilities, duties, and liabilities hereunder. The **Contractor** shall be solely responsible to the **City** for the acts or defaults of its **Subcontractor** and of such **Subcontractor's** officers, agents, and employees, each of whom shall, for this purpose, be deemed to be the agent or employee of the **Contractor** to the extent of its subcontract.

17.9 If the **Subcontractor** fails to maintain the necessary facilities, skill, integrity, past experience, and financial resources (other than due to the **Contractor's** failure to make payments where required) to perform the **Work** in accordance with the terms and conditions of this **Contract**, the **Contractor** shall promptly notify the **Commissioner** and replace such **Subcontractor** with a newly approved **Subcontractor** in accordance with this Article 17.

17.10 The **Contractor** shall be responsible for ensuring that all **Subcontractors** performing **Work** at the **Site** maintain all insurance required by **Law**.

17.11 The **Contractor** shall promptly, upon request, file with the **Engineer** a conformed copy of the subcontract and its cost. The subcontract shall provide the following:

17.11.1 **Payment to Subcontractors:** The agreement between the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractor** shall contain the same terms and conditions as to method of payment for **Work**, labor, and materials, and as to retained percentages, as are contained in this **Contract**.

17.11.2 **Prevailing Rate of Wages:** The agreement between the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractor** shall include the prevailing wage rates and supplemental benefits to be paid in accordance with Labor Law Section 220.

17.11.3 **Section 6-123 of the Administrative Code:** Pursuant to the requirements of Section 6-123 of the Administrative Code, every agreement between the **Contractor** and a **Subcontractor** in excess of fifty thousand (\$50,000) dollars shall include a provision that the **Subcontractor** shall not engage in any unlawful discriminatory practice as defined in Title VIII of the Administrative Code (Section 8-101 *et seq.*).

17.11.4 All requirements required pursuant to federal and/or state grant agreement(s), if applicable to the **Work**.

17.12 The **Commissioner** may deduct from the amounts certified under this **Contract** to be due to the **Contractor**, the sum or sums due and owing from the **Contractor** to the **Subcontractors** according to the terms of the said subcontracts, and in case of dispute between the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractor**, or **Subcontractors**, as to the amount due and owing, the **Commissioner** may deduct and withhold from the amounts certified under this **Contract** to be due to the **Contractor** such sum or sums as may be claimed by such **Subcontractor**, or **Subcontractors**, in a sworn affidavit, to be due and owing until such time as such claim or claims shall have been finally resolved.

17.13 On contracts where performance bonds and payment bonds are executed, the **Contractor** shall include on each requisition for payment the following data: **Subcontractor's** name, value of the subcontract, total amount previously paid to **Subcontractor** for **Work** previously requisitioned, and the amount, including retainage, to be paid to the **Subcontractor** for **Work** included in the requisition.

17.14 On **Contracts** where performance bonds and payment bonds are not executed, the **Contractor** shall include with each requisition for payment submitted hereunder, a signed statement from each and every **Subcontractor** and/or **Materialman** for whom payment is requested in such requisition. Such signed statement shall be on the letterhead of the **Subcontractor** and/or **Materialman** for whom payment is requested and shall (i) verify that such **Subcontractor** and/or **Materialman** has been paid in full for all **Work** performed and/or material supplied to date, exclusive of any amount retained and any amount included on the current requisition, and (ii) state the total amount of retainage to date, exclusive of any amount retained on the current requisition.

### ARTICLE 18. ASSIGNMENTS

18.1 The **Contractor** shall not assign, transfer, convey or otherwise dispose of this **Contract**, or the right to execute it, or the right, title or interest in or to it or any part thereof, or assign, by power of attorney or otherwise any of the monies due or to become due under this **Contract**, unless the previous written consent of the **Commissioner** shall first be obtained thereto, and the giving of any such consent to a particular assignment shall not dispense with the necessity of such consent to any further or other assignments.

18.2 Such assignment, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of this **Contract** shall not be valid until filed in the office of the **Commissioner** and the **Comptroller**, with the written consent of the **Commissioner** endorsed thereon or attached thereto.

18.3 Failure to obtain the previous written consent of the **Commissioner** to such an assignment, transfer, conveyance or other disposition, may result in the revocation and annulment of this **Contract**. The **City** shall thereupon be relieved and discharged from any further liability to the **Contractor**, its assignees, transferees or sublessees, who shall forfeit and lose all monies therefor earned under the **Contract**, except so much as may be required to pay the **Contractor's** employees.

18.4 The provisions of this clause shall not hinder, prevent, or affect an assignment by the **Contractor** for the benefit of its creditors made pursuant to the **Laws** of the State of New York.

18.5 This **Contract** may be assigned by the **City** to any corporation, agency or instrumentality having authority to accept such assignment.

## **CHAPTER V: CONTRACTOR'S SECURITY AND GUARANTEE**

### ARTICLE 19. SECURITY DEPOSIT

19.1 If performance and payment bonds are required, the **City** shall retain the bid security to ensure that the successful bidder executes the **Contract** and furnishes the required payment and performance security within ten (10) **Days** after notice of the award of the **Contract**. If the successful bidder fails to execute the **Contract** and furnish the required payment and performance security, the **City** shall retain such bid security as set forth in the Information for Bidders. If the successful bidder executes the

**Contract** and furnishes the required payment and performance security, the **City** shall return the bid security within a reasonable time after the furnishing of such bonds and execution of the **Contract** by the **City**.

19.2 If performance and payment bonds are not required, the bid security shall be retained by the **City** as security for the **Contractor's** faithful performance of the **Contract**. If partial payments are provided, the bid security will be returned to the **Contractor** after the sum retained under Article 21 equals the amount of the bid security, subject to other provisions of this **Contract**. If partial payments are not provided, the bid security will be released when final payment is certified by the **City** for payment.

19.3 If the **Contractor** is declared in default under Article 48 prior to the return of the deposit, or if any claim is made such as referred to in Article 23, the amount of such deposit, or so much thereof as the **Comptroller** may deem necessary, may be retained and then applied by the **Comptroller**:

19.3.1 To compensate the **City** for any expense, loss or damage suffered or incurred by reason of or resulting from such default, including the cost of re-letting and liquidated damages; or

19.3.2 To indemnify the **City** against any and all claims.

#### **ARTICLE 20. PAYMENT GUARANTEE**

20.1 On **Contracts** where one hundred (100%) percent performance bonds and payment bonds are executed, this Article 20 does not apply.

20.2 In the event the terms of this **Contract** do not require the **Contractor** to provide a payment bond or where the **Contract** does not require a payment bond for one hundred (100%) percent of the **Contract** price, the **City** shall, in accordance with the terms of this Article 20, guarantee payment of all lawful claims for:

20.2.1 Wages and compensation for labor performed and/or services rendered; and

20.2.2 Materials, equipment, and supplies provided, whether incorporated into the **Work** or not, when demands have been filed with the **City** as provided hereinafter by any person, firm, or corporation which furnished labor, material, equipment, supplies, or any combination thereof, in connection with the **Work** performed hereunder (hereinafter referred to as the "beneficiary") at the direction of the **City** or the **Contractor**.

20.3 The provisions of Article 20.2 are subject to the following limitations and conditions:

20.3.1 If the **Contractor** provides a payment bond for a value that is less than one hundred (100%) percent of the value of the **Contract Work**, the payment bond provided by the **Contractor** shall be primary (and non-contributing) to the payment guarantee provided under this Article 20.

20.3.2 The guarantee is made for the benefit of all beneficiaries as defined in Article 20.2 provided that those beneficiaries strictly adhere to the terms and conditions of Article 20.3.4 and 20.3.5.

20.3.3 Nothing in this Article 20 shall prevent a beneficiary providing labor, services or material for the **Work** from suing the **Contractor** for any amounts due and owing the beneficiary by the **Contractor**.

20.3.4 Every person who has furnished labor or material, to the **Contractor** or to a **Subcontractor** of the **Contractor**; in the prosecution of the **Work** and who has not been paid in full therefor before the expiration of a period of ninety (90) **Days** after the date on which the last of the labor was performed or material was furnished by him/her for which the claim is made, shall have the right to sue on this payment guarantee in his/her own name for the amount, or the balance thereof, unpaid at the time of commencement of the action; provided, however, that a person having a direct contractual relationship with a **Subcontractor** of the **Contractor** but no contractual relationship express or implied with the **Contractor** shall not have a right of action upon the guarantee unless he/she shall have given written notice to the **Contractor** within one hundred twenty (120) **Days** from the date on which the last of the labor was performed or the last of the material was furnished, for which his/her claim is made, stating with substantial accuracy the amount claimed and the name of the party to whom the material was furnished or for whom the labor was performed. The notice shall be served by delivering the same personally to the **Contractor** or by mailing the same by registered mail, postage prepaid, in an envelope addressed to the **Contractor** at any place where it maintains an office or conducts its business; provided, however, that where such notice is actually received by the **Contractor** by other means, such notice shall be deemed sufficient.

20.3.5 Except as provided in Labor Law Section 220-g, no action on this payment guarantee shall be commenced after the expiration of the one-year limitations period set forth in Section 137(4)(b) of the State Finance Law.

20.3.6 The **Contractor** shall promptly forward to the **City** any notice or demand received pursuant to Article 20.3.4. The **Contractor** shall inform the **City** of any defenses to the notice or demand and shall forward to the **City** any documents the **City** requests concerning the notice or demand.

20.3.7 All demands made against the **City** by a beneficiary of this payment guarantee shall be presented to the **Engineer** along with all written documentation concerning the demand which the **Engineer** deems reasonably appropriate or necessary, which may include, but shall not be limited to: the subcontract; any invoices presented to the **Contractor** for payment; the notarized statement of the beneficiary that the demand is due and payable, that a request for payment has been made of the **Contractor** and that the demand has not been paid by the **Contractor** within the time allowed for such payment by the subcontract; and copies of any correspondence between the beneficiary and the **Contractor** concerning such demand. The **City** shall notify the **Contractor** that a demand has been made. The **Contractor** shall inform the **City** of any defenses to the demand and shall forward to the **City** any documents the **City** requests concerning the demand.

20.3.8 The **City** shall make payment only if, after considering all defenses presented by the **Contractor**, it determines that the payment is due and owing to the beneficiary making the demand.

20.3.9 No beneficiary shall be entitled to interest from the **City**, or to any other costs, including, but not limited to, attorneys' fees, except to the extent required by State Finance Law Section 137.

20.4 Upon the receipt by the **City** of a demand pursuant to this Article 20, the **City** may withhold from any payment otherwise due and owing to the **Contractor** under this **Contract** an amount sufficient to satisfy the demand.

20.4.1 In the event the **City** determines that the demand is valid, the **City** shall notify the **Contractor** of such determination and the amount thereof and direct the **Contractor** to immediately pay such amount to the beneficiary. In the event the **Contractor**, within seven (7) **Days** of receipt of such notification from the **City**, fails to pay the beneficiary, such failure shall constitute an automatic and irrevocable assignment of payment by the **Contractor** to the beneficiary for the amount of the demand determined by the **City** to be valid. The **Contractor**, without further notification or other process, hereby gives its unconditional consent to such assignment of payment to the beneficiary and authorizes the **City**, on its behalf, to take all necessary actions to implement such assignment of payment, including without limitation the execution of any instrument or documentation necessary to effectuate such assignment.

20.4.2 In the event that the amount otherwise due and owing to the **Contractor** by the **City** is insufficient to satisfy such demand, the **City** may, at its option, require payment from the **Contractor** of an amount sufficient to cover such demand and exercise any other right to require or recover payment which the **City** may have under **Law** or **Contract**.

20.4.3 In the event the **City** determines that the demand is invalid, any amount withheld pending the **City's** review of such demand shall be paid to the **Contractor**; provided, however, no lien has been filed. In the event a claim or an action has been filed, the terms and conditions set forth in Article 23 shall apply. In the event a lien has been filed, the parties will be governed by the provisions of the Lien Law of the State of New York.

20.5 The provisions of this Article 20 shall not prevent the **City** and the **Contractor** from resolving disputes in accordance with the **PPB** Rules, where applicable.

20.6 In the event the **City** determines that the beneficiary is entitled to payment pursuant to this Article 20, such determination and any defenses and counterclaims raised by the **Contractor** shall be taken into account in evaluating the **Contractor's** performance.

20.7 Nothing in this Article 20 shall relieve the **Contractor** of the obligation to pay the claims of all persons with valid and lawful claims against the **Contractor** relating to the **Work**.

20.8 The **Contractor** shall not require any performance, payment or other bonds of any **Subcontractor** if this **Contract** does not require such bonds of the **Contractor**.

20.9 The payment guarantee made pursuant to this Article 20 shall be construed in a manner consistent with Section 137 of the State Finance Law and shall afford to persons furnishing labor or materials to the **Contractor** or its **Subcontractors** in the prosecution of the **Work** under this **Contract** all of the rights and remedies afforded to such persons by such section, including but not limited to, the right to commence an action against the **City** on the payment guarantee provided by this Article 20 within the one-year limitations period set forth in Section 137(4)(b).

## **ARTICLE 21. RETAINED PERCENTAGE**

21.1 If this **Contract** requires one hundred (100%) percent performance and payment security, then as further security for the faithful performance of this **Contract**, the **Commissioner** shall deduct, and

retain until the substantial completion of the **Work**, five (5%) percent of the value of **Work** certified for payment in each partial payment voucher.

21.2 If this **Contract** does not require one hundred (100%) percent performance and payment security and if the price for which this **Contract** was awarded does not exceed one million (\$1,000,000) dollars, then as further security for the faithful performance of this **Contract**, the **Commissioner** shall deduct, and retain until the substantial completion of the **Work**, five (5%) percent of the value of **Work** certified for payment in each partial payment voucher.

21.3 If this **Contract** does not require one hundred (100%) percent performance and payment security and if the price for which this **Contract** was awarded exceeds one million (\$1,000,000) dollars, then as further security for the faithful performance of this **Contract**, the **Commissioner** shall deduct, and retain until the substantial completion of the **Work**, up to ten (10%) percent of the value of **Work** certified for payment in each partial payment voucher. The percentage to be retained is set forth in Schedule A of the General Conditions.

## ARTICLE 22. INSURANCE

22.1 Types of Insurance: The **Contractor** shall procure and maintain the following types of insurance if, and as indicated, in Schedule A of the General Conditions (with the minimum limits and special conditions specified in Schedule A). Such insurance shall be maintained from the date the **Contractor** is required to provide Proof of Insurance pursuant to Article 22.3.1 through the date of completion of all required **Work** (including punch list work as certified in writing by the **Resident Engineer**), except for insurance required pursuant to Article 22.1.4, which may terminate upon **Substantial Completion** of the **Contract**. All insurance shall meet the requirements set forth in this Article 22. Wherever this Article requires that insurance coverage be "at least as broad" as a specified form (including all ISO forms), there is no obligation that the form itself be used, provided that the **Contractor** can demonstrate that the alternative form or endorsement contained in its policy provides coverage at least as broad as the specified form.

22.1.1 Commercial General Liability Insurance: The **Contractor** shall provide Commercial General Liability Insurance covering claims for property damage and/or bodily injury, including death, which may arise from any of the operations under this **Contract**. Coverage under this insurance shall be at least as broad as that provided by the latest edition of Insurance Services Office ("ISO") Form CG 0001. Such insurance shall be "occurrence" based rather than "claims-made" and include, without limitation, the following types of coverage: premises operations; products and completed operations; contractual liability (including the tort liability of another assumed in a contract); broad form property damage; independent contractors; explosion, collapse and underground (XCU); construction means and methods; and incidental malpractice. Such insurance shall contain a "per project" aggregate limit, as specified in Schedule A, that applies separately to operations under this **Contract**.

22.1.1(a) Such Commercial General Liability Insurance shall name the **City** as an Additional Insured. Coverage for the **City** shall specifically include the **City's** officials and employees, be at least as broad as the latest edition of ISO Form CG 20 10 and provide completed operations coverage at least as broad as the latest edition of ISO Form CG 20 37.

22.1.1(b) Such Commercial General Liability Insurance shall name all other entities designated as additional insureds in Schedule A but only for claims arising from the

**Contractor's** operations under this **Contract**, with coverage at least as broad as the latest edition of ISO Form CG 20 26.

22.1.1(c) If the **Work** requires a permit from the Department of Buildings pursuant to 1 RCNY Section 101-08, the **Contractor** shall provide Commercial General Liability Insurance with limits of at least those required by 1 RCNY section 101-08 or greater limits required by the Agency in accordance with Schedule A. If the **Work** does not require such a permit, the minimum limits shall be those provided for in Schedule A.

22.1.1(d) If any of the **Work** includes repair of a waterborne vessel owned by or to be delivered to the **City**, such Commercial General Liability shall include, or be endorsed to include, Ship Repairer's Legal Liability Coverage to protect against, without limitation, liability arising from navigation of such vessels prior to delivery to and acceptance by the **City**.

22.1.2 Workers' Compensation Insurance, Employers' Liability Insurance, and Disability Benefits Insurance: The **Contractor** shall provide, and shall cause its **Subcontractors** to provide, Workers Compensation Insurance, Employers' Liability Insurance, and Disability Benefits Insurance in accordance with the **Laws** of the State of New York on behalf of all employees providing services under this **Contract** (except for those employees, if any, for which the **Laws** require insurance only pursuant to Article 22.1.3).

22.1.3 United States Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers Act and/or Jones Act Insurance: If specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions or if required by **Law**, the **Contractor** shall provide insurance in accordance with the United States Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers Act and/or the Jones Act, on behalf of all qualifying employees providing services under this **Contract**.

22.1.4 Builders Risk Insurance: If specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions, the **Contractor** shall provide Builders Risk Insurance on a completed value form for the total value of the **Work** through **Substantial Completion** of the **Work** in its entirety. Such insurance shall be provided on an All Risk basis and include coverage, without limitation, for windstorm (including named windstorm), storm surge, flood and earth movement. Unless waived by the **Commissioner**, it shall include coverage for ordinance and law, demolition and increased costs of construction, debris removal, pollutant clean up and removal, and expediting costs. Such insurance shall cover, without limitation, (a) all buildings and/or structures involved in the **Work**, as well as temporary structures at the **Site**, and (b) any property that is intended to become a permanent part of such building or structure, whether such property is on the **Site**, in transit or in temporary storage. Policies shall name the **Contractor** as Named Insured and list the **City** as both an Additional Insured and a Loss Payee as its interest may appear.

22.1.4(a) Policies of such insurance shall specify that, in the event a loss occurs at an occupied facility, occupancy of such facility is permitted without the consent of the issuing insurance company.

22.1.4(b) Such insurance may be provided through an Installation Floater, at the **Contractor's** option, if it otherwise conforms with the requirements of this Article 22.1.4.

22.1.5 Commercial Automobile Liability Insurance: The **Contractor** shall provide Commercial Automobile Liability Insurance for liability arising out of ownership,

maintenance or use of any owned (if any), non-owned and hired vehicles to be used in connection with this **Contract**. Coverage shall be at least as broad as the latest edition of ISO Form CA0001. If vehicles are used for transporting hazardous materials, the Automobile Liability Insurance shall be endorsed to provide pollution liability broadened coverage for covered vehicles (endorsement CA 99 48) as well as proof of MCS 90.

22.1.6 **Contractors Pollution Liability Insurance:** If specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions, the **Contractor** shall maintain, or cause the **Subcontractor** doing such **Work** to maintain, Contractors Pollution Liability Insurance covering bodily injury and property damage. Such insurance shall provide coverage for actual, alleged or threatened emission, discharge, dispersal, seepage, release or escape of pollutants (including asbestos), including any loss, cost or expense incurred as a result of any cleanup of pollutants (including asbestos) or in the investigation, settlement or defense of any claim, action, or proceedings arising from the operations under this **Contract**. Such insurance shall be in the **Contractor's** name and list the **City** as an Additional Insured and any other entity specified in Schedule A. Coverage shall include, without limitation, (a) loss of use of damaged property or of property that has not been physically injured, (b) transportation, and (c) non-owned disposal sites.

22.1.6(a) Coverage for the **City** as Additional Insured shall specifically include the **City's** officials and employees and be at least as broad as provided to the **Contractor** for this **Project**.

22.1.6(b) If such insurance is written on a claims-made policy, such policy shall have a retroactive date on or before the effective date of this **Contract**, and continuous coverage shall be maintained, or an extended discovery period exercised, for a period of not less than three (3) years from the time the **Work** under this **Contract** is completed.

22.1.7 **Marine Insurance:**

22.1.7(a) **Marine Protection and Indemnity Insurance:** If specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions or if the **Contractor** engages in marine operations in the execution of any part of the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall maintain, or cause the **Subcontractor** doing such **Work** to maintain, Marine Protection and Indemnity Insurance with coverage at least as broad as Form SP-23. The insurance shall provide coverage for the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** (whichever is doing this **Work**) and for the **City** (together with its officials and employees) and any other entity specified in Schedule A as an Additional Insured for bodily injury and property damage arising from marine operations under this **Contract**. Coverage shall include, without limitation, injury or death of crew members (if not fully provided through other insurance), removal of wreck, damage to piers, wharves and other fixed or floating objects and loss of or damage to any other vessel or craft, or to property on such other vessel or craft.

22.1.7(b) **Hull and Machinery Insurance:** If specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions or if the **Contractor** engages in marine operations in the execution of any part of the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall maintain, or cause the **Subcontractor** doing such **Work** to maintain, Hull and Machinery Insurance with coverage for the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** (whichever is doing this **Work**) and for the **City** (together with its officials and employees) as Additional Insured at least as broad as the latest edition of American Institute Tug Form for all tugs used under this

**Contract** and Collision Liability at least as broad as the latest edition of American Institute Hull Clauses.

22.1.7(c) Marine Pollution Liability Insurance: If specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions or if the **Contractor** engages in marine operations in the execution of any part of the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall maintain, or cause the **Subcontractor** doing such **Work** to maintain, Marine Pollution Liability Insurance covering itself (or the Subcontractor doing such **Work**) as Named Insured and the **City** (together with its officials and employees) and any other entity specified in Schedule A as an Additional Insured. Coverage shall be at least as broad as that provided by the latest edition of Water Quality Insurance Syndicate Form and include, without limitation, liability arising from the discharge or substantial threat of a discharge of oil, or from the release or threatened release of a hazardous substance including injury to, or economic losses resulting from, the destruction of or damage to real property, personal property or natural resources.

22.1.8 The **Contractor** shall provide such other types of insurance, at such minimum limits and with such conditions, as are specified in Schedule A of the General Conditions.

## 22.2 General Requirements for Insurance Coverage and Policies:

22.2.1 All required insurance policies shall be maintained with companies that may lawfully issue the required policy and have an A.M. Best rating of at least A-/VII or a Standard and Poor's rating of at least A, unless prior written approval is obtained from the **City** Corporation Counsel.

22.2.2 The **Contractor** shall be solely responsible for the payment of all premiums for all required policies and all deductibles and self-insured retentions to which such policies are subject, whether or not the **City** is an insured under the policy.

22.2.3 In his/her sole discretion, the **Commissioner** may, subject to the approval of the **Comptroller** and the **City** Corporation Counsel, accept Letters of Credit and/or custodial accounts in lieu of required insurance.

22.2.4 The **City's** limits of coverage for all types of insurance required pursuant to Schedule A of the General Conditions shall be the greater of (i) the minimum limits set forth in Schedule A or (ii) the limits provided to the **Contractor** as Named Insured under all primary, excess, and umbrella policies of that type of coverage.

22.2.5 The **Contractor** may satisfy its insurance obligations under this Article 22 through primary policies or a combination of primary and excess/umbrella policies, so long as all policies provide the scope of coverage required herein.

22.2.6 Policies of insurance provided pursuant to this Article 22 shall be primary and non-contributing to any insurance or self-insurance maintained by the **City**.

## 22.3 Proof of Insurance:

22.3.1 For all types of insurance required by Article 22.1 and Schedule A, except for insurance required by Articles 22.1.4 and 22.1.7, the **Contractor** shall file proof of insurance in accordance with this Article 22.3 within ten (10) **Days** of award. For insurance

provided pursuant to Articles 22.1.4 and 22.1.7, proof shall be filed by a date specified by the **Commissioner** or ten (10) **Days** prior to the commencement of the portion of the **Work** covered by such policy, whichever is earlier.

22.3.2 For Workers' Compensation Insurance provided pursuant to Article 22.1.2, the **Contractor** shall submit one of the following forms: C-105.2 Certificate of Workers' Compensation Insurance; U-26.3 - State Insurance Fund Certificate of Workers' Compensation Insurance; Request for WC/DB Exemption (Form CE-200); equivalent or successor forms used by the New York State Workers' Compensation Board; or other proof of insurance in a form acceptable to the **Commissioner**. For Disability Benefits Insurance provided pursuant to Article 22.1.2, the Contractor shall submit DB-120.1 - Certificate Of Insurance Coverage Under The NYS Disability Benefits Law, Request for WC/DB Exemption (Form CE-200); equivalent or successor forms used by the New York State Workers' Compensation Board; or other proof of insurance in a form acceptable to the **Commissioner**. ACORD forms are not acceptable.

22.3.3 For policies provided pursuant to all of Article 22.1 other than Article 22.1.2, the **Contractor** shall submit one or more Certificates of Insurance on forms acceptable to the **Commissioner**. All such Certificates of Insurance shall certify (a) the issuance and effectiveness of such policies of insurance, each with the specified minimum limits (b) for insurance secured pursuant to Article 22.1.1 that the **City** and any other entity specified in Schedule A is an Additional Insured thereunder; (c) in the event insurance is required pursuant to Article 22.1.6 and/or Article 22.1.7, that the **City** is an Additional Insured thereunder; (d) the company code issued to the insurance company by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners (the NAIC number); and (e) the number assigned to the **Contract** by the **City**. All such Certificates of Insurance shall be accompanied by either a duly executed "Certification by Insurance Broker or Agent" in the form contained in Part III of Schedule A or copies of all policies referenced in such Certificate of Insurance as certified by an authorized representative of the issuing insurance carrier. If any policy is not available at the time of submission, certified binders may be submitted until such time as the policy is available, at which time a certified copy of the policy shall be submitted.

22.3.4 Documentation confirming renewals of insurance shall be submitted to the **Commissioner** prior to the expiration date of coverage of policies required under this **Contract**. Such proofs of insurance shall comply with the requirements of Articles 22.3.2 and 22.3.3.

22.3.5 The **Contractor** shall be obligated to provide the **City** with a copy of any policy of insurance provided pursuant to this Article 22 upon the demand for such policy by the **Commissioner** or the **City** Corporation Counsel.

#### 22.4 Operations of the **Contractor**:

22.4.1 The **Contractor** shall not commence the **Work** unless and until all required certificates have been submitted to and accepted by the **Commissioner**. Acceptance by the **Commissioner** of a certificate does not excuse the **Contractor** from securing insurance consistent with all provisions of this Article 22 or of any liability arising from its failure to do so.

22.4.2 The **Contractor** shall be responsible for providing continuous insurance coverage in the manner, form, and limits required by this **Contract** and shall be authorized to perform **Work** only during the effective period of all required coverage.

22.4.3 In the event that any of the required insurance policies lapse, are revoked, suspended or otherwise terminated, for whatever cause, the **Contractor** shall immediately stop all **Work**, and shall not recommence **Work** until authorized in writing to do so by the **Commissioner**. Upon quitting the **Site**, except as otherwise directed by the **Commissioner**, the **Contractor** shall leave all plant, materials, equipment, tools, and supplies on the **Site**. **Contract** time shall continue to run during such periods and no extensions of time will be granted. The **Commissioner** may also declare the **Contractor** in default for failure to maintain required insurance.

22.4.4 In the event the **Contractor** receives notice, from an insurance company or other person, that any insurance policy required under this Article 22 shall be cancelled or terminated (or has been cancelled or terminated) for any reason, the **Contractor** shall immediately forward a copy of such notice to both the **Commissioner** and the New York City Comptroller, attn: Office of Contract Administration, Municipal Building, One Centre Street, room 1005, New York, New York 10007. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the **Contractor** shall ensure that there is no interruption in any of the insurance coverage required under this Article 22.

22.4.5 Where notice of loss, damage, occurrence, accident, claim or suit is required under an insurance policy maintained in accordance with this Article 22, the **Contractor** shall notify in writing all insurance carriers that issued potentially responsive policies of any such event relating to any operations under this **Contract** (including notice to Commercial General Liability insurance carriers for events relating to the **Contractor's** own employees) no later than 20 days after such event. For any policy where the **City** is an Additional Insured, such notice shall expressly specify that "this notice is being given on behalf of the City of New York as Insured as well as the Named Insured." Such notice shall also contain the following information: the number of the insurance policy, the name of the named insured, the date and location of the damage, occurrence, or accident, and the identity of the persons or things injured, damaged or lost. The **Contractor** shall simultaneously send a copy of such notice to the City of New York c/o Insurance Claims Specialist, Affirmative Litigation Division, New York City Law Department, 100 Church Street, New York, New York 10007.

22.4.6 In the event of any loss, accident, claim, action, or other event that does or can give rise to a claim under any insurance policy required under this Article 22, the **Contractor** shall at all times fully cooperate with the **City** with regard to such potential or actual claim.

22.5 **Subcontractor Insurance:** In the event the **Contractor** requires any **Subcontractor** to procure insurance with regard to any operations under this **Contract** and requires such **Subcontractor** to name the **Contractor** as an **Additional Insured** thereunder, the **Contractor** shall ensure that the **Subcontractor** name the **City**, including its officials and employees, as an Additional Insured with coverage at least as broad as the most recent edition of ISO Form CG 20 26.

22.6 Wherever reference is made in Article 7 or this Article 22 to documents to be sent to the **Commissioner** (e.g., notices, filings, or submissions), such documents shall be sent to the address set forth in Schedule A of the General Conditions. In the event no address is set forth in Schedule A, such documents are to be sent to the **Commissioner's** address as provided elsewhere in this **Contract**.

22.7 Apart from damages or losses covered by insurance provided pursuant to Articles 22.1.2, 22.1.3, or 22.1.5, the **Contractor** waives all rights against the **City**, including its officials and employees, for any damages or losses that are covered under any insurance required under this Article 22 (whether or

not such insurance is actually procured or claims are paid thereunder) or any other insurance applicable to the operations of the **Contractor** and/or its employees, agents, or **Subcontractors**.

22.8 In the event the **Contractor** utilizes a self-insurance program to satisfy any of the requirements of this Article 22, the **Contractor** shall ensure that any such self-insurance program provides the **City** with all rights that would be provided by traditional insurance under this Article 22, including but not limited to the defense and indemnification obligations that insurers are required to undertake in liability policies.

22.9 Materiality/Non-Waiver: The **Contractor's** failure to secure policies in complete conformity with this Article 22, or to give an insurance company timely notice of any sort required in this **Contract** or to do anything else required by this Article 22 shall constitute a material breach of this **Contract**. Such breach shall not be waived or otherwise excused by any action or inaction by the **City** at any time.

22.10 Pursuant to General Municipal Law Section 108, this **Contract** shall be void and of no effect unless **Contractor** maintains Workers' Compensation Insurance for the term of this **Contract** to the extent required and in compliance with the New York State Workers' Compensation Law.

22.11 Other Remedies: Insurance coverage provided pursuant to this Article 22 or otherwise shall not relieve the **Contractor** of any liability under this **Contract**, nor shall it preclude the **City** from exercising any rights or taking such other actions available to it under any other provisions of this **Contract** or **Law**.

### **ARTICLE 23. MONEY RETAINED AGAINST CLAIMS**

23.1 If any claim shall be made by any person or entity (including **Other Contractors** with the **City** on this **Project**) against the **City** or against the **Contractor** and the **City** for any of the following:

- (a) An alleged loss, damage, injury, theft or vandalism of any of the kinds referred to in Articles 7 and 12, plus the reasonable costs of defending the **City**, which in the opinion of the **Comptroller** may not be paid by an insurance company (for any reason whatsoever); or
- (b) An infringement of copyrights, patents or use of patented articles, tools, etc., as referred to in Article 57; or
- (c) Damage claimed to have been caused directly or indirectly by the failure of the **Contractor** to perform the **Work** in strict accordance with this **Contract**,

the amount of such claim, or so much thereof as the **Comptroller** may deem necessary, may be withheld by the **Comptroller**, as security against such claim, from any money due hereunder. The **Comptroller**, in his/her discretion, may permit the **Contractor** to substitute other satisfactory security in lieu of the monies so withheld.

23.2 If an action on such claim is timely commenced and the liability of the **City**, or the **Contractor**, or both, shall have been established therein by a final judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction, or if such claim shall have been admitted by the **Contractor** to be valid, the **Comptroller** shall pay such judgment or admitted claim out of the monies retained by the **Comptroller** under the provisions of this Article 23, and return the balance, if any, without interest, to the **Contractor**.

## ARTICLE 24. MAINTENANCE AND GUARANTY

24.1 The **Contractor** shall promptly repair, replace, restore or rebuild, as the **Commissioner** may determine, any finished **Work** in which defects of materials or workmanship may appear or to which damage may occur because of such defects, during the one (1) year period subsequent to the date of **Substantial Completion** (or use and occupancy in accordance with Article 16), except where other periods of maintenance and guaranty are provided for in Schedule A.

24.2 As security for the faithful performance of its obligations hereunder, the **Contractor**, upon filing its requisition for payment on **Substantial Completion**, shall deposit with the **Commissioner** a sum equal to one (1%) percent of the price (or the amount fixed in Schedule A of the General Conditions) in cash or certified check upon a state or national bank and trust company or a check of such bank and trust company signed by a duly authorized officer thereof and drawn to the order of the **Comptroller**, or obligations of the **City**, which the **Comptroller** may approve as of equal value with the sum so required.

24.3 In lieu of the above, the **Contractor** may make such security payment to the **City** by authorizing the **Commissioner** in writing to deduct the amount from the **Substantial Completion** payment which shall be deemed the deposit required above.

24.4 If the **Contractor** has faithfully performed all of its obligations hereunder the **Commissioner** shall so certify to the **Comptroller** within five (5) **Days** after the expiration of one (1) year from the date of **Substantial Completion** and acceptance of the **Work** or within thirty (30) **Days** after the expiration of the guarantee period fixed in the **Specifications**. The security payment shall be repaid to the **Contractor** without interest within thirty (30) **Days** after certification by the **Commissioner** to the **Comptroller** that the **Contractor** has faithfully performed all of its obligations hereunder.

24.5 Notice by the **Commissioner** to the **Contractor** to repair, replace, rebuild or restore such defective or damaged **Work** shall be timely, pursuant to this article, if given not later than ten (10) **Days** subsequent to the expiration of the one (1) year period or other periods provided for herein.

24.6 If the **Contractor** shall fail to repair, replace, rebuild or restore such defective or damaged **Work** promptly after receiving such notice, the **Commissioner** shall have the right to have the **Work** done by others in the same manner as provided for in the completion of a defaulted **Contract**, under Article 51.

24.7 If the security payment so deposited is insufficient to cover the cost of such **Work**, the **Contractor** shall be liable to pay such deficiency on demand by the **Commissioner**.

24.8 The **Engineer's** certificate setting forth the fair and reasonable cost of repairing, replacing, rebuilding or restoring any damaged or defective **Work** when performed by one other than the **Contractor**, shall be binding and conclusive upon the **Contractor** as to the amount thereof.

24.9 The **Contractor** shall obtain all manufacturers' warranties and guaranties of all equipment and materials required by this **Contract** in the name of the **City** and shall deliver same to the **Commissioner**. All of the **City's** rights and title and interest in and to said manufacturers' warranties and guaranties may be assigned by the **City** to any subsequent purchasers of such equipment and materials or lessees of the premises into which the equipment and materials have been installed.

## CHAPTER VI: CHANGES, EXTRA WORK, AND DOCUMENTATION OF CLAIM

### ARTICLE 25. CHANGES

25.1 Changes may be made to this **Contract** only as duly authorized in writing by the **Commissioner** in accordance with the **Law** and this **Contract**. All such changes, modifications, and amendments will become a part of the **Contract**. **Work** so ordered shall be performed by the **Contractor**.

25.2 **Contract** changes will be made only for **Work** necessary to complete the **Work** included in the original scope of the **Contract** and/or for non-material changes to the scope of the **Contract**. Changes are not permitted for any material alteration in the scope of **Work** in the **Contract**.

25.3 The **Contractor** shall be entitled to a price adjustment for **Extra Work** performed pursuant to a written change order. Adjustments to price shall be computed in one or more of the following ways:

25.3.1 By applicable unit prices specified in the **Contract**; and/or

25.3.2 By agreement of a fixed price; and/or

25.3.3 By time and material records; and/or

25.3.4 In any other manner approved by the **CCPO**.

25.4 All payments for change orders are subject to pre-audit by the **Engineering Audit Officer** and may be post-audited by the **Comptroller** and/or the **Agency**.

### ARTICLE 26. METHODS OF PAYMENT FOR OVERRUNS AND EXTRA WORK

26.1 **Overrun of Unit Price Item**: An overrun is any quantity of a unit price item which the **Contractor** is directed to provide which is in excess of one hundred twenty-five (125%) percent of the estimated quantity for that item set forth in the bid schedule.

26.1.1 For any unit price item, the **Contractor** will be paid at the unit price bid for any quantity up to one hundred twenty-five (125%) percent of the estimated quantity for that item set forth in the bid schedule. If during the progress of the **Work**, the actual quantity of any unit price item required to complete the **Work** approaches the estimated quantity for that item, and for any reason it appears that the actual quantity of any unit price item necessary to complete the **Work** will exceed the estimated quantity for that item by twenty-five (25%) percent, the **Contractor** shall immediately notify the **Engineer** of such anticipated overrun. The **Contractor** shall not be compensated for any quantity of a unit price item provided which is in excess of one hundred twenty-five (125%) percent of the estimated quantity for that item set forth in the bid schedule without written authorization from the **Engineer**.

26.1.2 If the actual quantity of any unit price item necessary to complete the **Work** will exceed one hundred twenty five (125%) percent of the estimated quantity for that item set forth in the bid schedule, the **City** reserves the right and the **Contractor** agrees to negotiate a new unit price for such item. In no event shall such negotiated new unit price exceed the unit bid price. If the **City** and **Contractor** cannot agree on a new unit price, then the **City** shall order the **Contractor** and the **Contractor** agrees to provide additional quantities of

the item on the basis of time and material records for the actual and reasonable cost as determined under Article 26.2, but in no event at a unit price exceeding the unit price bid.

**26.2 Extra Work:** For **Extra Work** where payment is by agreement on a fixed price in accordance with Article 25.3.2, the price to be paid for such **Extra Work** shall be based on the fair and reasonable estimated cost of the items set forth below. For **Extra Work** where payment is based on time and material records in accordance with Article 25.3.3, the price to be paid for such **Extra Work** shall be the actual and reasonable cost of the items set forth below, calculated in accordance with the formula specified therein, if any.

26.2.1 Necessary materials (including transportation to the **Site**); plus

26.2.2 Necessary direct labor, including payroll taxes (subject to statutory wage caps) and supplemental benefits; plus

26.2.3 Sales and personal property taxes, if any, required to be paid on materials not incorporated into such **Extra Work**; plus

26.2.4 Reasonable rental value of **Contractor**-owned (or **Subcontractor**-owned, as applicable), necessary plant and equipment other than **Small Tools**, plus fuel/energy costs. Except for fuel costs for pick-up trucks which shall be reimbursed based on a consumption of five (5) gallons per shift, fuel costs shall be reimbursed based on actual costs or, in the absence of auditable documentation, the following fuel consumption formula per operating hour:  $(.035) \times (\text{HP rating}) \times (\text{Fuel cost/gallon})$ . Reasonable rental value is defined as the lower of either seventy-five percent of the monthly prorated rental rates established in "The AED Green Book, Rental Rates and Specifications for Construction Equipment" published by Equipment Watch (the "Green Book"), or seventy-five percent of the monthly prorated rental rates established in the "Rental Rate Blue Book for Construction Equipment" published by Equipment Watch (the "Blue Book") (the applicable Blue Book rate being for rental only without the addition of any operational costs listed in the Blue Book). The reasonable rental value is deemed to be inclusive of all operating costs except for fuel/energy consumption and equipment operator's wages/costs. For multiple shift utilization, reimbursement shall be calculated as follows: first shift shall be seventy-five (75%) percent of such rental rates; second shift shall be sixty (60%) percent of the first shift rate; and third shift shall be forty (40%) percent of the first shift rate. Equipment on standby shall be reimbursed at one-third (1/3) the prorated monthly rental rate. **Contractor**-owned (or **Subcontractor**-owned, as applicable) equipment includes equipment from rental companies affiliated with or controlled by the **Contractor** (or **Subcontractor**, as applicable), as determined by the **Commissioner**. In establishing cost reimbursement for non-operating **Contractor**-owned (or **Subcontractor**-owned, as applicable) equipment (scaffolding, sheeting systems, road plates, etc.), the **City** may restrict reimbursement to a purchase-salvage/life cycle basis if less than the computed rental costs; plus

26.2.5 Necessary installation and dismantling of such plant and equipment, including transportation to and from the **Site**, if any, provided that, in the case of non-**Contractor**-owned (or non-**Subcontractor**-owned, as applicable) equipment rented from a third party, the cost of installation and dismantling are not allowable if such costs are included in the rental rate; plus

26.2.6 Necessary fees charged by governmental entities; plus

26.2.7 Necessary construction-related service fees charged by non-governmental entities, such as landfill tipping fees; plus

26.2.8 Reasonable rental costs of non-**Contractor**-owned (or non-**Subcontractor**-owned, as applicable) necessary plant and equipment other than **Small Tools**, plus fuel/energy costs. Except for fuel costs for pick-up trucks which shall be reimbursed based on a consumption of five (5) gallons per shift, fuel costs shall be reimbursed based on actual costs or, in the absence of auditable documentation, the following fuel consumption formula per hour of operation:  $(.035) \times (\text{HP rating}) \times (\text{Fuel cost/gallon})$ . In lieu of renting, the **City** reserves the right to direct the purchase of non-operating equipment (scaffolding, sheeting systems, road plates, etc.), with payment on a purchase-salvage/life cycle basis, if less than the projected rental costs; plus

26.2.9 Workers' Compensation Insurance, and any insurance coverage expressly required by the **City** for the performance of the **Extra Work** which is different than the types of insurance required by Article 22 and Schedule A of the General Conditions. The cost of Workers' Compensation Insurance is subject to applicable payroll limitation caps and shall be based upon the carrier's Manual Rate for such insurance derived from the applicable class Loss Cost ("LC") and carrier's Lost Cost Multiplier ("LCM") approved by the New York State Department of Financial Services, and with the exception of experience rating, rate modifiers as promulgated by the New York Compensation Insurance Rating Board ("NYCIRB"); plus

26.2.10 Additional costs incurred as a result of the **Extra Work** for performance and payment bonds; plus

26.2.11 Twelve percent (12%) percent of the total of items in Articles 26.2.1 through 26.2.5 as compensation for overhead, except that no percentage for overhead will be allowed on **Payroll Taxes** or on the premium portion of overtime pay or on sales and personal property taxes. Overhead shall include without limitation, all costs and expenses in connection with administration, management superintendence, small tools, and insurance required by Schedule A of the General Conditions other than Workers' Compensation Insurance; plus

26.2.12 Ten (10%) percent of the total of items in Articles 26.2.1 through 26.2.5, plus the items in Article 26.2.11, as compensation for profit, except that no percentage for profit will be allowed on **Payroll Taxes** or on the premium portion of overtime pay or on sales and personal property taxes; plus

26.2.13 Five (5%) percent of the total of items in Articles 26.2.6 through 26.2.10 as compensation for overhead and profit.

26.3 Where the **Extra Work** is performed in whole or in part by other than the **Contractor's** own forces pursuant to Article 26.2, the **Contractor** shall be paid, subject to pre-audit by the **Engineering Audit Officer**, the cost of such **Work** computed in accordance with Article 26.2 above, plus an additional allowance of five (5%) percent to cover the **Contractor's** overhead and profit.

26.4 Where a change is ordered, involving both **Extra Work** and omitted or reduced **Contract Work**, the **Contract** price shall be adjusted, subject to pre-audit by the **EAO**, in an amount based on the difference between the cost of such **Extra Work** and of the omitted or reduced **Work**.

26.5 Where the **Contractor** and the **Commissioner** can agree upon a fixed price for **Extra Work** in accordance with Article 25.3.2 or another method of payment for **Extra Work** in accordance with

Article 25.3.4, or for **Extra Work** ordered in connection with omitted **Work**, such method, subject to pre-audit by the **EAO**, may, at the option of the **Commissioner**, be substituted for the cost plus a percentage method provided in Article 26.2; provided, however, that if the **Extra Work** is performed by a **Subcontractor**, the **Contractor** shall not be entitled to receive more than an additional allowance of five (5%) percent for overhead and profit over the cost of such **Subcontractor's Work** as computed in accordance with Article 26.2.

## **ARTICLE 27. RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES**

27.1 All disputes between the **City** and the **Contractor** of the kind delineated in this Article 27.1 that arise under, or by virtue of, this **Contract** shall be finally resolved in accordance with the provisions of this Article 27 and the **PPB** Rules. This procedure for resolving all disputes of the kind delineated herein shall be the exclusive means of resolving any such disputes.

27.1.1 This Article 27 shall not apply to disputes concerning matters dealt with in other sections of the **PPB** Rules, or to disputes involving patents, copyrights, trademarks, or trade secrets (as interpreted by the courts of New York State) relating to proprietary rights in computer software.

27.1.2 This Article 27 shall apply only to disputes about the scope of **Work** delineated by the **Contract**, the interpretation of **Contract** documents, the amount to be paid for **Extra Work** or disputed work performed in connection with the **Contract**, the conformity of the **Contractor's Work** to the **Contract**, and the acceptability and quality of the **Contractor's Work**; such disputes arise when the **Engineer, Resident Engineer, Engineering Audit Officer**, or other designee of the **Commissioner** makes a determination with which the **Contractor** disagrees.

27.2 All determinations required by this Article 27 shall be made in writing clearly stated, with a reasoned explanation for the determination based on the information and evidence presented to the party making the determination. Failure to make such determination within the time required by this Article 27 shall be deemed a non-determination without prejudice that will allow application to the next level.

27.3 During such time as any dispute is being presented, heard, and considered pursuant to this Article 27, the **Contract** terms shall remain in force and the **Contractor** shall continue to perform **Work** as directed by the **ACCO** or the **Engineer**. Failure of the **Contractor** to continue **Work** as directed shall constitute a waiver by the **Contractor** of its claim.

### **27.4 Presentation of Disputes to Commissioner.**

Notice of Dispute and Agency Response. The **Contractor** shall present its dispute in writing ("Notice of Dispute") to the **Commissioner** within thirty (30) Days of receiving written notice of the determination or action that is the subject of the dispute. This notice requirement shall not be read to replace any other notice requirements contained in the **Contract**. The Notice of Dispute shall include all the facts, evidence, documents, or other basis upon which the **Contractor** relies in support of its position, as well as a detailed computation demonstrating how any amount of money claimed by the **Contractor** in the dispute was arrived at. Within thirty (30) Days after receipt of the detailed written submission comprising the complete Notice of Dispute, the **Engineer, Resident Engineer, Engineering Audit Officer**, or other designee of the **Commissioner** shall submit to the **Commissioner** all materials he or she deems pertinent to the dispute. Following initial submissions to the **Commissioner**, either party may demand of the other the production of any document or other material the demanding party believes may be relevant to the dispute. The requested party shall produce all relevant materials that are not otherwise

protected by a legal privilege recognized by the courts of New York State. Any question of relevancy shall be determined by the **Commissioner** whose decision shall be final. Willful failure of the **Contractor** to produce any requested material whose relevancy the **Contractor** has not disputed, or whose relevancy has been affirmatively determined, shall constitute a waiver by the **Contractor** of its claim.

27.4.1 **Commissioner Inquiry.** The **Commissioner** shall examine the material and may, in his or her discretion, convene an informal conference with the **Contractor**, the **ACCO**, and the **Engineer, Resident Engineer, Engineering Audit Officer**, or other designee of the **Commissioner** to resolve the issue by mutual consent prior to reaching a determination. The **Commissioner** may seek such technical or other expertise as he or she shall deem appropriate, including the use of neutral mediators, and require any such additional material from either or both parties as he or she deems fit. The **Commissioner's** ability to render, and the effect of, a decision hereunder shall not be impaired by any negotiations in connection with the dispute presented, whether or not the **Commissioner** participated therein. The **Commissioner** may or, at the request of any party to the dispute, shall compel the participation of any **Other Contractor** with a contract related to the **Work** of this **Contract**, and that **Contractor** shall be bound by the decision of the **Commissioner**. Any **Other Contractor** thus brought into the dispute resolution proceeding shall have the same rights and obligations under this Article 27 as the **Contractor** initiating the dispute.

27.4.2 **Commissioner Determination.** Within thirty (30) **Days** after the receipt of all materials and information, or such longer time as may be agreed to by the parties, the **Commissioner** shall make his or her determination and shall deliver or send a copy of such determination to the **Contractor**, the **ACCO**, and **Engineer, Resident Engineer, Engineering Audit Officer**, or other designee of the **Commissioner**, as applicable, together with a statement concerning how the decision may be appealed.

27.4.3 **Finality of Commissioner's Decision.** The **Commissioner's** decision shall be final and binding on all parties, unless presented to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board pursuant to this Article 27. The **City** may not take a petition to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board. However, should the **Contractor** take such a petition, the **City** may seek, and the Contract Dispute Resolution Board may render, a determination less favorable to the **Contractor** and more favorable to the **City** than the decision of the **Commissioner**.

27.5 **Presentation of Dispute to the Comptroller.** Before any dispute may be brought by the **Contractor** to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board, the **Contractor** must first present its claim to the **Comptroller** for his or her review, investigation, and possible adjustment.

27.5.1 **Time, Form, and Content of Notice.** Within thirty (30) **Days** of its receipt of a decision by the **Commissioner**, the **Contractor** shall submit to the **Comptroller** and to the **Commissioner** a Notice of Claim regarding its dispute with the **Agency**. The Notice of Claim shall consist of (i) a brief written statement of the substance of the dispute, the amount of money, if any, claimed and the reason(s) the **Contractor** contends the dispute was wrongly decided by the **Commissioner**; (ii) a copy of the written decision of the **Commissioner**; and (iii) a copy of all materials submitted by the **Contractor** to the **Agency**, including the Notice of Dispute. The **Contractor** may not present to the **Comptroller** any material not presented to the **Commissioner**, except at the request of the **Comptroller**.

27.5.2 Response. Within thirty (30) **Days** of receipt of the Notice of Claim, the **Agency** shall make available to the **Comptroller** a copy of all material submitted by the **Agency** to the **Commissioner** in connection with the dispute. The **Agency** may not present to the **Comptroller** any material not presented to the **Commissioner** except at the request of the **Comptroller**.

27.5.3 **Comptroller Investigation.** The **Comptroller** may investigate the claim in dispute and, in the course of such investigation, may exercise all powers provided in Sections 7-201 and 7-203 of the Administrative Code. In addition, the **Comptroller** may demand of either party, and such party shall provide, whatever additional material the **Comptroller** deems pertinent to the claim, including original business records of the **Contractor**. Willful failure of the **Contractor** to produce within fifteen (15) **Days** any material requested by the **Comptroller** shall constitute a waiver by the **Contractor** of its claim. The **Comptroller** may also schedule an informal conference to be attended by the **Contractor**, **Agency** representatives, and any other personnel desired by the **Comptroller**.

27.5.4 Opportunity of **Comptroller** to Compromise or Adjust Claim. The **Comptroller** shall have forty-five (45) **Days** from his or her receipt of all materials referred to in Article 27.5.3 to investigate the disputed claim. The period for investigation and compromise may be further extended by agreement between the **Contractor** and the **Comptroller**, to a maximum of ninety (90) **Days** from the **Comptroller's** receipt of all materials. The **Contractor** may not present its petition to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board until the period for investigation and compromise delineated in this Article 27.5.4 has expired. In compromising or adjusting any claim hereunder, the **Comptroller** may not revise or disregard the terms of the **Contract** between the parties.

27.6 Contract Dispute Resolution Board. There shall be a Contract Dispute Resolution Board composed of:

27.6.1 The chief administrative law judge of the Office of Administrative Trials and Hearings (OATH) or his/her designated OATH administrative law judge, who shall act as chairperson, and may adopt operational procedures and issue such orders consistent with this Article 27 as may be necessary in the execution of the Contract Dispute Resolution Board's functions, including, but not limited to, granting extensions of time to present or respond to submissions;

27.6.2 The **CCPO** or his/her designee; any designee shall have the requisite background to consider and resolve the merits of the dispute and shall not have participated personally and substantially in the particular matter that is the subject of the dispute or report to anyone who so participated; and

27.6.3 A person with appropriate expertise who is not an employee of the **City**. This person shall be selected by the presiding administrative law judge from a prequalified panel of individuals, established and administered by OATH with appropriate background to act as decision-makers in a dispute. Such individual may not have a contract or dispute with the **City** or be an officer or employee of any company or organization that does, or regularly represents persons, companies, or organizations having disputes with the **City**.

27.7 Petition to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board. In the event the claim has not been settled or adjusted by the **Comptroller** within the period provided in this Article 27, the **Contractor**,

within thirty (30) **Days** thereafter, may petition the Contract Dispute Resolution Board to review the **Commissioner's** determination.

27.7.1 **Form and Content of Petition by Contractor.** The **Contractor** shall present its dispute to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board in the form of a petition, which shall include (i) a brief written statement of the substance of the dispute, the amount of money, if any, claimed, and the reason(s) the **Contractor** contends the dispute was wrongly decided by the **Commissioner**; (ii) a copy of the written Decision of the **Commissioner**, (iii) copies of all materials submitted by the **Contractor** to the Agency; (iv) a copy of the written decision of the **Comptroller**, if any, and (v) copies of all correspondence with, or written material submitted by the **Contractor**, to the **Comptroller**. The **Contractor** shall concurrently submit four (4) complete sets of the Petition: one set to the City Corporation Counsel (Attn: Commercial and Real Estate Litigation Division) and three (3) sets to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board at OATH's offices with proof of service on the City Corporation Counsel. In addition, the **Contractor** shall submit a copy of the written statement of the substance of the dispute, cited in (i) above, to both the **Commissioner** and the **Comptroller**.

27.7.2 **Agency Response.** Within thirty (30) **Days** of its receipt of the Petition by the City Corporation Counsel, the **Agency** shall respond to the brief written statement of the **Contractor** and make available to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board all material it submitted to the **Commissioner** and **Comptroller**. Three (3) complete copies of the **Agency** response shall be provided to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board and one to the **Contractor**. Extensions of time for submittal of the **Agency** response shall be given as necessary upon a showing of good cause or, upon consent of the parties, for an initial period of up to thirty (30) **Days**.

27.7.3 **Further Proceedings.** The Contract Dispute Resolution Board shall permit the **Contractor** to present its case by submission of memoranda, briefs, and oral argument. The Contract Dispute Resolution Board shall also permit the **Agency** to present its case in response to the **Contractor** by submission of memoranda, briefs, and oral argument. If requested by the City Corporation Counsel, the **Comptroller** shall provide reasonable assistance in the preparation of the **Agency's** case. Neither the **Contractor** nor the **Agency** may support its case with any documentation or other material that was not considered by the **Comptroller**, unless requested by the Contract Dispute Resolution Board. The Contract Dispute Resolution Board, in its discretion, may seek such technical or other expert advice as it shall deem appropriate and may seek, on its own or upon application of a party, any such additional material from any party as it deems fit. The Contract Dispute Resolution Board, in its discretion, may combine more than one dispute between the parties for concurrent resolution.

27.7.4 **Contract Dispute Resolution Board Determination.** Within forty-five (45) **Days** of the conclusion of all written submissions and oral arguments, the Contract Dispute Resolution Board shall render a written decision resolving the dispute. In an unusually complex case, the Contract Dispute Resolution Board may render its decision in a longer period, not to exceed ninety (90) **Days**, and shall so advise the parties at the commencement of this period. The Contract Dispute Resolution Board's decision must be consistent with the terms of the **Contract**. Decisions of the Contract Dispute Resolution Board shall only resolve matters before the Contract Dispute Resolution Board and shall not have precedential effect with respect to matters not before the Contract Dispute Resolution Board.

27.7.5 Notification of Contract Dispute Resolution Board Decision. The Contract Dispute Resolution Board shall send a copy of its decision to the **Contractor**, the **ACCO**, the Engineer, the **Comptroller**, the **City Corporation Counsel**, the **CCPO**, and the **PPB**. A decision in favor of the **Contractor** shall be subject to the prompt payment provisions of the **PPB Rules**. The Required Payment Date shall be thirty (30) Days after the date the parties are formally notified of the Contract Dispute Resolution Board's decision.

27.7.6 Finality of Contract Dispute Resolution Board Decision. The Contract Dispute Resolution Board's decision shall be final and binding on all parties. Any party may seek review of the Contract Dispute Resolution Board's decision solely in the form of a challenge, filed within four (4) months of the date of the Contract Dispute Resolution Board's decision, in a court of competent jurisdiction of the State of New York, County of New York pursuant to Article 78 of the Civil Practice Law and Rules. Such review by the court shall be limited to the question of whether or not the Contract Dispute Resolution Board's decision was made in violation of lawful procedure, was affected by an error of **Law**, or was arbitrary and capricious or an abuse of discretion. No evidence or information shall be introduced or relied upon in such proceeding that was not presented to the Contract Dispute Resolution Board in accordance with this Article 27.

27.8 Any termination, cancellation, or alleged breach of the **Contract** prior to or during the pendency of any proceedings pursuant to this Article 27 shall not affect or impair the ability of the **Commissioner** or Contract Dispute Resolution Board to make a binding and final decision pursuant to this Article 27.

#### **ARTICLE 28. RECORD KEEPING FOR EXTRA OR DISPUTED WORK OR WORK ON A TIME & MATERIALS BASIS**

28.1 While the **Contractor** or any of its **Subcontractors** is performing **Work** on a time and material basis or **Extra Work** on a time and material basis ordered by the **Commissioner** under Article 25, or where the **Contractor** believes that it or any of its **Subcontractors** is performing **Extra Work** but a final determination by **Agency** has not been made, or the **Contractor** or any of its **Subcontractors** is performing disputed **Work** (whether on or off the **Site**), or complying with a determination or order under protest in accordance with Articles 11, 27, and 30, in each such case the **Contractor** shall furnish the **Resident Engineer** daily with three (3) copies of written statements signed by the **Contractor's** representative at the **Site** showing:

28.1.1 The name, trade, and number of each worker employed on such **Work** or engaged in complying with such determination or order, the number of hours employed, and the character of the **Work** each is doing; and

28.1.2 The nature and quantity of any materials, plant and equipment furnished or used in connection with the performance of such **Work** or compliance with such determination or order, and from whom purchased or rented.

28.2 A copy of such statement will be countersigned by the **Resident Engineer**, noting thereon any items not agreed to or questioned, and will be returned to the **Contractor** within two (2) **Days** after submission.

28.3 The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors**, when required by the **Commissioner**, or the **Comptroller**, shall also produce for inspection, at the office of the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor**, any and all of its books, bid documents, financial statements, vouchers, records, daily job diaries and reports,

and cancelled checks, and any other documents relating to showing the nature and quantity of the labor, materials, plant and equipment actually used in the performance of such **Work**, or in complying with such determination or order, and the amounts expended therefor, and shall permit the **Commissioner** and the **Comptroller** to make such extracts therefrom, or copies thereof, as they or either of them may desire.

28.4 In connection with the examination provided for herein, the **Commissioner**, upon demand therefor, will produce for inspection by the **Contractor** such records as the **Agency** may have with respect to such **Extra Work** or disputed **Work** performed under protest pursuant to order of the **Commissioner**, except those records and reports which may have been prepared for the purpose of determining the accuracy and validity of the **Contractor's** claim.

28.5 Failure to comply strictly with these requirements shall constitute a waiver of any claim for extra compensation or damages on account of the performance of such **Work** or compliance with such determination or order.

#### **ARTICLE 29. OMITTED WORK**

29.1 If any **Contract Work** in a lump sum **Contract**, or if any part of a lump sum item in a unit price, lump sum, or percentage-bid **Contract** is omitted by the **Commissioner** pursuant to Article 33, the **Contract** price, subject to audit by the EAO, shall be reduced by a pro rata portion of the lump sum bid amount based upon the percent of **Work** omitted subject to Article 29.4. For the purpose of determining the pro rata portion of the lump sum bid amount, the bid breakdown submitted in accordance with Article 41 shall be considered, but shall not be the determining factor.

29.2 If the whole of a lump sum item or units of any other item is so omitted by the **Commissioner** in a unit price, lump sum, or percentage-bid **Contract**, then no payment will be made therefor except as provided in Article 29.4.

29.3 For units that have been ordered but are only partially completed, the unit price shall be reduced by a pro rata portion of the unit price bid based upon the percentage of **Work** omitted subject to Article 29.4.

29.4 In the event the **Contractor**, with respect to any omitted **Work**, has purchased any non-cancelable material and/or equipment that is not capable of use except in the performance of this **Contract** and has been specifically fabricated for the sole purpose of this **Contract**, but not yet incorporated into the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall be paid for such material and/or equipment in accordance with Article 64.2.1(b); provided, however, such payment is contingent upon the **Contractor's** delivery of such material and/or equipment in acceptable condition to a location designated by the **City**.

29.5 The **Contractor** agrees to make no claim for damages or for loss of overhead and profit with regard to any omitted **Work**.

#### **ARTICLE 30. NOTICE AND DOCUMENTATION OF COSTS AND DAMAGES; PRODUCTION OF FINANCIAL RECORDS**

30.1 If the **Contractor** shall claim to be sustaining damages by reason of any act or omission of the **City** or its agents, it shall submit to the **Commissioner** within forty-five (45) **Days** from the time such damages are first incurred, and every thirty (30) **Days** thereafter to the extent additional damages are being incurred for the same condition, verified statements of the details and the amounts of such

damages, together with documentary evidence of such damages. The **Contractor** may submit any of the above statements within such additional time as may be granted by the **Commissioner** in writing upon written request therefor. Failure of the **Commissioner** to respond in writing to a written request for additional time within thirty (30) **Days** shall be deemed a denial of the request. On failure of the **Contractor** to strictly comply with the foregoing provisions, such claims shall be deemed waived and no right to recover on such claims shall exist. Damages that the **Contractor** may claim in any action or dispute resolution procedure arising under or by reason of this **Contract** shall not be different from or in excess of the statements and documentation made pursuant to this Article 30. This Article 30.1 does not apply to claims submitted to the **Commissioner** pursuant to Article 11 or to claims disputing a determination under Article 27.

30.2 In addition to the foregoing statements, the **Contractor** shall, upon notice from the **Commissioner**, produce for examination at the **Contractor's** office, by the **Engineer, Architect or Project Manager**, all of its books of account, bills, invoices, payrolls, subcontracts, time books, daily reports, bank deposit books, bank statements, check books, and cancelled checks, showing all of its acts and transactions in connection with or relating to or arising by reason of this **Contract**, and submit itself and persons in its employment, for examination under oath by any person designated by the **Commissioner** or **Comptroller** to investigate claims made or disputes against the **City** under this **Contract**. At such examination, a duly authorized representative of the **Contractor** may be present.

30.3 In addition to the statements required under Article 28 and this Article 30, the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractor** shall, within thirty (30) **Days** upon notice from the **Commissioner** or **Comptroller**, produce for examination at the **Contractor's** and/or **Subcontractor's** office, by a representative of either the **Commissioner** or **Comptroller**, all of its books of account, bid documents, financial statements, accountant workpapers, bills, invoices, payrolls, subcontracts, time books, daily reports, bank deposit books, bank statements, check books, and cancelled checks, showing all of its acts and transactions in connection with or relating to or arising by reason of this **Contract**. Further, the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractor** shall submit any person in its employment, for examination under oath by any person designated by the **Commissioner** or **Comptroller** to investigate claims made or disputes against the **City** under this **Contract**. At such examination, a duly authorized representative of the **Contractor** may be present.

30.4 Unless the information and examination required under Article 30.3 is provided by the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractor** upon thirty (30) **Days'** notice from the **Commissioner** or **Comptroller**, or upon the **Commissioner's** or **Comptroller's** written authorization to extend the time to comply, the **City** shall be released from all claims arising under, relating to or by reason of this **Contract**, except for sums certified by the **Commissioner** to be due under the provisions of this **Contract**. It is further stipulated and agreed that no person has the power to waive any of the foregoing provisions and that in any action or dispute resolution procedure against the **City** to recover any sum in excess of the sums certified by the **Commissioner** to be due under or by reason of this **Contract**, the **Contractor** must allege in its complaint and prove, at trial or during such dispute resolution procedure, compliance with the provisions of this Article 30.

30.5 In addition, after the commencement of any action or dispute resolution procedure by the **Contractor** arising under or by reason of this **Contract**, the **City** shall have the right to require the **Contractor** to produce for examination under oath, up until the trial of the action or hearing before the Contract Dispute Resolution Board, the books and documents described in Article 30.3 and submit itself and all persons in its employ for examination under oath. If this Article 30 is not complied with as required, then the **Contractor** hereby consents to the dismissal of the action or dispute resolution procedure.

**CHAPTER VII: POWERS OF THE RESIDENT ENGINEER, THE ENGINEER OR ARCHITECT AND THE COMMISSIONER**

**ARTICLE 31. THE RESIDENT ENGINEER**

31.1 The **Resident Engineer** shall have the power to inspect, supervise, and control the performance of the **Work**, subject to review by the **Commissioner**. The **Resident Engineer** shall not, however, have the power to issue an **Extra Work** order, except as specifically designated in writing by the **Commissioner**.

**ARTICLE 32. THE ENGINEER OR ARCHITECT OR PROJECT MANAGER**

32.1 The **Engineer** or **Architect** or **Project Manager**, in addition to those matters elsewhere herein delegated to the **Engineer** and expressly made subject to his/her determination, direction or approval, shall have the power, subject to review by the **Commissioner**:

32.1.1 To determine the amount, quality, and location of the **Work** to be paid for hereunder; and

32.1.2 To determine all questions in relation to the **Work**, to interpret the **Contract Drawings, Specifications, and Addenda**, and to resolve all patent inconsistencies or ambiguities therein; and

32.1.3 To determine how the **Work** of this **Contract** shall be coordinated with **Work** of **Other Contractors** engaged simultaneously on this **Project**, including the power to suspend any part of the **Work**, but not the whole thereof; and

32.1.4 To make minor changes in the **Work** as he/she deems necessary, provided such changes do not result in a net change in the cost to the **City** or to the **Contractor** of the **Work** to be done under the **Contract**; and

32.1.5 To amplify the **Contract Drawings**, add explanatory information and furnish additional **Specifications** and drawings, consistent with this **Contract**.

32.2 The foregoing enumeration shall not imply any limitation upon the power of the **Engineer** or **Architect** or **Project Manager**, for it is the intent of this **Contract** that all of the **Work** shall generally be subject to his/her determination, direction, and approval, except where the determination, direction or approval of someone other than the **Engineer** or **Architect** or **Project Manager** is expressly called for herein.

32.3 The **Engineer** or **Architect** or **Project Manager** shall not, however, have the power to issue an **Extra Work** order, except as specifically designated in writing by the **Commissioner**.

**ARTICLE 33. THE COMMISSIONER**

33.1 The **Commissioner**, in addition to those matters elsewhere herein expressly made subject to his/her determination, direction or approval, shall have the power:

33.1.1 To review and make determinations on any and all questions in relation to this **Contract** and its performance; and

33.1.2 To modify or change this **Contract** so as to require the performance of **Extra Work** (subject, however, to the limitations specified in Article 25) or the omission of **Contract Work**; and

33.1.3 To suspend the whole or any part of the **Work** whenever in his/her judgment such suspension is required:

33.1.3(a) In the interest of the **City** generally; or

33.1.3(b) To coordinate the **Work** of the various contractors engaged on this **Project** pursuant to the provisions of Article 12; or

33.1.3(c) To expedite the completion of the entire **Project** even though the completion of this particular **Contract** may thereby be delayed.

#### **ARTICLE 34. NO ESTOPPEL**

34.1 Neither the **City** nor any **Agency**, official, agent or employee thereof, shall be bound, precluded or estopped by any determination, decision, approval, order, letter, payment or certificate made or given under or in connection with this **Contract** by the **City**, the **Commissioner**, the **Engineer**, the **Resident Engineer**, or any other official, agent or employee of the **City**, either before or after the final completion and acceptance of the **Work** and payment therefor:

34.1.1 From showing the true and correct classification, amount, quality or character of the **Work** actually done; or that any such determination, decision, order, letter, payment or certificate was untrue, incorrect or improperly made in any particular, or that the **Work**, or any part thereof, does not in fact conform to the requirements of this **Contract**; and

34.1.2 From demanding and recovering from the **Contractor** any overpayment made to it, or such damages as the **City** may sustain by reason of the **Contractor's** failure to perform each and every part of its **Contract**.

### **CHAPTER VIII: LABOR PROVISIONS**

#### **ARTICLE 35. EMPLOYEES**

35.1 The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** shall not employ on the **Work**:

35.1.1 Anyone who is not competent, faithful and skilled in the **Work** for which he/she shall be employed; and whenever the **Commissioner** shall inform the **Contractor**, in writing, that any employee is, in his/her opinion, incompetent, unfaithful or disobedient, that employee shall be discharged from the **Work** forthwith, and shall not again be employed upon it; or

35.1.2 Any labor, materials or means whose employment, or utilization during the course of this **Contract**, may tend to or in any way cause or result in strikes, work stoppages, delays, suspension of **Work** or similar troubles by workers employed by the **Contractor** or its **Subcontractors**, or by any of the trades working in or about the buildings and premises where **Work** is being performed under this **Contract**, or by **Other Contractors** or their **Subcontractors** pursuant to other contracts, or on any other building or premises owned or operated by the **City**, its **Agencies**, departments, boards or authorities. Any violation by the **Contractor** of this requirement may, upon certification of the **Commissioner**, be considered as proper and sufficient cause for declaring the **Contractor** to be in default, and for the **City** to take action against it as set forth in Chapter X of this **Contract**, or such other article of this **Contract** as the **Commissioner** may deem proper; or

35.1.3 In accordance with Section 220.3-e of the Labor Law of the State of New York (hereinafter "Labor Law"), the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** shall not employ on the **Work** any apprentice, unless he/she is a registered individual, under a bona fide program registered with the New York State Department of Labor. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journey-level workers in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the **Contractor** as to its work force on any job under the registered program. Any employee listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered as above, shall be paid the wage rate determined by the **Comptroller** of the **City** for the classification of **Work** actually performed. The **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** will be required to furnish written evidence of the registration of its program and apprentices as well as all the appropriate ratios and wage rates, for the area of the construction prior to using any apprentices on the **Contract Work**.

35.2 If the total cost of the **Work** under this **Contract** is at least two hundred fifty thousand (\$250,000) dollars, all laborers, workers, and mechanics employed in the performance of the **Contract** on the public work site, either by the **Contractor**, **Subcontractor** or other person doing or contracting to do the whole or a part of the **Work** contemplated by the **Contract**, shall be certified prior to performing any **Work** as having successfully completed a course in construction safety and health approved by the United States Department of Labor's Occupational Safety and Health Administration that is at least ten (10) hours in duration.

35.3 In accordance with Local Law Nos. 30-2012 and 33-2012, codified at sections 6-132 and 12-113 of the Administrative Code, respectively,

35.3.1 The **Contractor** shall not take an adverse personnel action with respect to an officer or employee in retaliation for such officer or employee making a report of information concerning conduct which such officer or employee knows or reasonably believes to involve corruption, criminal activity, conflict of interest, gross mismanagement or abuse of authority by any officer or employee relating to this **Contract** to (a) the **Commissioner** of the Department of Investigation, (b) a member of the New York City Council, the Public Advocate, or the **Comptroller**, or (c) the **CCPO**, **ACCO**, **Agency head**, or **Commissioner**.

35.3.2 If any of the **Contractor's** officers or employees believes that he or she has been the subject of an adverse personnel action in violation of Article 35.3.1, he or she shall be entitled to bring a cause of action against the **Contractor** to recover all relief necessary to make him or her whole. Such relief may include but is not limited to: (a) an injunction to restrain continued retaliation, (b) reinstatement to the position such employee would have had but for the retaliation or to an equivalent position, (c) reinstatement of full fringe benefits and seniority rights, (d) payment of two times back

pay, plus interest, and (e) compensation for any special damages sustained as a result of the retaliation, including litigation costs and reasonable attorney's fees.

35.3.3 The **Contractor** shall post a notice provided by the **City** in a prominent and accessible place on any site where work pursuant to the **Contract** is performed that contains information about:

35.3.3(a) how its employees can report to the New York City Department of Investigation allegations of fraud, false claims, criminality or corruption arising out of or in connection with the **Contract**; and

35.3.3(b) the rights and remedies afforded to its employees under Administrative Code sections 7-805 (the New York City False Claims Act) and 12-113 (the Whistleblower Protection Expansion Act) for lawful acts taken in connection with the reporting of allegations of fraud, false claims, criminality or corruption in connection with the **Contract**.

35.3.4 For the purposes of this Article 35.3, "adverse personnel action" includes dismissal, demotion, suspension, disciplinary action, negative performance evaluation, any action resulting in loss of staff, office space, equipment or other benefit, failure to appoint, failure to promote, or any transfer or assignment or failure to transfer or assign against the wishes of the affected officer or employee.

35.3.5 This Article 35.3 is applicable to all of the **Contractor's Subcontractors** having subcontracts with a value in excess of \$100,000; accordingly, the **Contractor** shall include this rider in all subcontracts with a value a value in excess of \$100,000.

35.4 Article 35.3 is not applicable to this **Contract** if it is valued at \$100,000 or less. Articles 35.3.1, 35.3.2, 35.3.4, and 35.3.5 are not applicable to this **Contract** if it was solicited pursuant to a finding of an emergency.

35.5 Paid Sick Leave Law.

35.5.1 Introduction and General Provisions.

35.5.1(a) The Earned Sick Time Act, also known as the Paid Sick Leave Law ("PSLL"), requires covered employees who annually perform more than 80 hours of work in New York City to be provided with paid sick time.<sup>2</sup> Contractors of the **City** or of other governmental entities may be required to provide sick time pursuant to the PSLL.

35.5.1(b) The PSLL became effective on April 1, 2014, and is codified at Title 20, Chapter 8, of the New York City Administrative Code. It is administered by the City's Department of Consumer Affairs ("DCA"); DCA's rules promulgated under the PSLL are codified at Chapter 7 of Title 6 of the Rules of the City of New York ("Rules").

<sup>2</sup> Pursuant to the PSLL, if fewer than five employees work for the same employer, as determined pursuant to New York City Administrative Code § 20-912(g), such employer has the option of providing such employees uncompensated sick time.

35.5.1(c) The **Contractor** agrees to comply in all respects with the PSL and the Rules, and as amended, if applicable, in the performance of this **Contract**. The **Contractor** further acknowledges that such compliance is a material term of this **Contract** and that failure to comply with the PSL in performance of this **Contract** may result in its termination.

35.5.1(d) The **Contractor** must notify the **Agency Chief Contracting Officer** of the **Agency** with whom it is contracting in writing within ten (10) days of receipt of a complaint (whether oral or written) regarding the PSL involving the performance of this **Contract**. Additionally, the **Contractor** must cooperate with DCA's education efforts and must comply with DCA's subpoenas and other document demands as set forth in the PSL and Rules.

35.5.1(e) The PSL is summarized below for the convenience of the **Contractor**. The **Contractor** is advised to review the PSL and Rules in their entirety. On the website [www.nyc.gov/PaidSickLeave](http://www.nyc.gov/PaidSickLeave) there are links to the PSL and the associated Rules as well as additional resources for employers, such as Frequently Asked Questions, timekeeping tools and model forms, and an event calendar of upcoming presentations and webinars at which the **Contractor** can get more information about how to comply with the PSL. The **Contractor** acknowledges that it is responsible for compliance with the PSL notwithstanding any inconsistent language contained herein.

#### 35.5.2 Pursuant to the PSL and the Rules: Applicability, Accrual, and Use.

35.5.2(a) An employee who works within the City of New York for more than eighty hours in any consecutive 12-month period designated by the employer as its "calendar year" pursuant to the PSL ("Year") must be provided sick time. Employers must provide a minimum of one hour of sick time for every 30 hours worked by an employee and compensation for such sick time must be provided at the greater of the employee's regular hourly rate or the minimum wage. Employers are not required to provide more than 40 hours of sick time to an employee in any Year.

35.5.2(b) An employee has the right to determine how much sick time he or she will use, provided that employers may set a reasonable minimum increment for the use of sick time not to exceed four hours per **Day**. In addition, an employee may carry over up to 40 hours of unused sick time to the following Year, provided that no employer is required to allow the use of more than forty hours of sick time in a Year or carry over unused paid sick time if the employee is paid for such unused sick time and the employer provides the employee with at least the legally required amount of paid sick time for such employee for the immediately subsequent Year on the first **Day** of such Year.

35.5.2(c) An employee entitled to sick time pursuant to the PSL may use sick time for any of the following:

- i. such employee's mental illness, physical illness, injury, or health condition or the care of such illness, injury, or condition or such employee's need for medical diagnosis or preventive medical care;
- ii. such employee's care of a family member (an employee's child, spouse, domestic partner, parent, sibling, grandchild or grandparent, or the child or parent of an employee's spouse or domestic partner) who has a mental

- illness, physical illness, injury or health condition or who has a need for medical diagnosis or preventive medical care;
- iii. closure of such employee's place of business by order of a public official due to a public health emergency; or
  - iv. such employee's need to care for a child whose school or childcare provider has been closed due to a public health emergency.

35.5.2(d) An employer must not require an employee, as a condition of taking sick time, to search for a replacement. However, an employer may require an employee to provide: reasonable notice of the need to use sick time; reasonable documentation that the use of sick time was needed for a reason above if for an absence of more than three consecutive work days; and/or written confirmation that an employee used sick time pursuant to the PSSL. However, an employer may not require documentation specifying the nature of a medical condition or otherwise require disclosure of the details of a medical condition as a condition of providing sick time and health information obtained solely due to an employee's use of sick time pursuant to the PSSL must be treated by the employer as confidential.

35.5.2(e) If an employer chooses to impose any permissible discretionary requirement as a condition of using sick time, it must provide to all employees a written policy containing those requirements, using a delivery method that reasonably ensures that employees receive the policy. If such employer has not provided its written policy, it may not deny sick time to an employee because of non-compliance with such a policy.

35.5.2(f) Sick time to which an employee is entitled must be paid no later than the payday for the next regular payroll period beginning after the sick time was used.

35.5.3 Exemptions and Exceptions. Notwithstanding the above, the PSSL does not apply to any of the following:

35.5.3(a) an independent contractor who does not meet the definition of employee under section 190(2) of the New York State Labor Law;

35.5.3(b) an employee covered by a valid collective bargaining agreement in effect on April 1, 2014, until the termination of such agreement;

35.5.3(c) an employee in the construction or grocery industry covered by a valid collective bargaining agreement if the provisions of the PSSL are expressly waived in such collective bargaining agreement;

35.5.3(d) an employee covered by another valid collective bargaining agreement if such provisions are expressly waived in such agreement and such agreement provides a benefit comparable to that provided by the PSSL for such employee;

35.5.3(e) an audiologist, occupational therapist, physical therapist, or speech language pathologist who is licensed by the New York State Department of Education and who calls in for work assignments at will, determines his or her own schedule, has the ability to reject or accept any assignment referred to him or her, and is paid an average hourly wage that is at least four times the federal minimum wage;

35.5.3(f) an employee in a work study program under Section 2753 of Chapter 42 of the United States Code;

35.5.3(g) an employee whose work is compensated by a qualified scholarship program as that term is defined in the Internal Revenue Code, Section 117 of Chapter 20 of the United States Code; or

35.5.3(h) a participant in a Work Experience Program (WEP) under section 336-c of the New York State Social Services Law.

35.5.4 Retaliation Prohibited. An employer may not threaten or engage in retaliation against an employee for exercising or attempting in good faith to exercise any right provided by the PSL. In addition, an employer may not interfere with any investigation, proceeding, or hearing pursuant to the PSL.

35.5.5 Notice of Rights.

35.5.5(a) An employer must provide its employees with written notice of their rights pursuant to the PSL. Such notice must be in English and the primary language spoken by an employee, provided that DCA has made available a translation into such language. Downloadable notices are available on DCA's website at <http://www.nyc.gov/html/dca/html/law/PaidSickLeave.shtml>.

35.5.5(b) Any person or entity that willfully violates these notice requirements is subject to a civil penalty in an amount not to exceed fifty dollars for each employee who was not given appropriate notice.

35.5.6 Records. An employer must retain records documenting its compliance with the PSL for a period of at least three years, and must allow DCA to access such records in furtherance of an investigation related to an alleged violation of the PSL.

35.5.7 Enforcement and Penalties.

35.5.7(a) Upon receiving a complaint alleging a violation of the PSL, DCA has the right to investigate such complaint and attempt to resolve it through mediation. Within 30 Days of written notification of a complaint by DCA, or sooner in certain circumstances, the employer must provide DCA with a written response and such other information as DCA may request. If DCA believes that a violation of the PSL has occurred, it has the right to issue a notice of violation to the employer.

35.5.7(b) DCA has the power to grant an employee or former employee all appropriate relief as set forth in New York City Administrative Code § 20-924(d). Such relief may include, among other remedies, treble damages for the wages that should have been paid, damages for unlawful retaliation, and damages and reinstatement for unlawful discharge. In addition, DCA may impose on an employer found to have violated the PSL civil penalties not to exceed \$500 for a first violation, \$750 for a second violation within two years of the first violation, and \$1,000 for each succeeding violation within two years of the previous violation.

35.5.8 More Generous Policies and Other Legal Requirements. Nothing in the PSL is intended to discourage, prohibit, diminish, or impair the adoption or retention of a more generous sick time policy, or the obligation of an employer to comply with any contract,

collective bargaining agreement, employment benefit plan or other agreement providing more generous sick time. The PSLL provides minimum requirements pertaining to sick time and does not preempt, limit or otherwise affect the applicability of any other law, regulation, rule, requirement, policy or standard that provides for greater accrual or use by employees of sick leave or time, whether paid or unpaid, or that extends other protections to employees. The PSLL may not be construed as creating or imposing any requirement in conflict with any federal or state law, rule or regulation.

35.6 HireNYC: Hiring and Reporting Requirements. This Article 35.6 applies to construction contracts of \$1,000,000 or more. The **Contractor** shall comply with the requirements of Articles 35.6.1-35.6.5 for all non-trades jobs (e.g., for an administrative position arising out of **Work** and located in New York City). The **Contractor** shall reasonably cooperate with SBS and the **City** on specific outreach events, including "Hire-on-the-Spot" events, for the hiring of trades workers in connection with the **Work**. If provided elsewhere in this **Contract**, this **Contract** is subject to a project labor agreement.

35.6.1 Enrollment. The **Contractor** shall enroll with the HireNYC system, found at [www.nyc.gov/sbs](http://www.nyc.gov/sbs), within thirty (30) days after the registration of this **Contract** pursuant to Section 328 of the New York City Charter. The **Contractor** shall provide information about the business, designate a primary contact and say whether it intends to hire for any entry to mid-level job opportunities arising from this **Contract** and located in New York City, and, if so, the approximate start date of the first hire.

#### 35.6.2 Job Posting Requirements.

35.6.2(a) Once enrolled in HireNYC, the **Contractor** agrees to update the HireNYC portal with all entry to mid-level job opportunities arising from this **Contract** and located in New York City, if any, which shall be defined as jobs requiring no more than an associate degree, as provided by the New York State Department of Labor (see Column F of <https://labor.ny.gov/stats/2012-2022-NYS-Employment-Prospects.xls>). The information to be updated includes the types of entry and mid-level positions made available from the work arising from the **Contract** and located in New York City, the number of positions, the anticipated schedule of initiating the hiring process for these positions, and the contact information for the **Contractor's** representative charged with overseeing hiring. The **Contractor** must update the HireNYC portal with any hiring needs arising from the contract and located in New York City, and the requirements of the jobs to be filled, no less than three weeks prior to the intended first day of employment for each new position, except with the permission of SBS, not to be unreasonably withheld, and must also update the HireNYC portal as set forth below.

35.6.2(b) After enrollment through HireNYC and submission of relevant information, SBS will work with the **Contractor** to develop a recruitment plan which will outline the candidate screening process, and will provide clear instructions as to when, where, and how interviews will take place. HireNYC will screen applicants based on employer requirements and refer applicants whom it believes are qualified to the **Contractor** for interviews. The **Contractor** must interview referred applicants whom it believes are qualified.

35.6.2(c) After completing an interview of a candidate referred by HireNYC, the **Contractor** must provide feedback via the portal within twenty (20) business days to indicate which candidates were interviewed and hired, if any. In addition, the **Contractor** shall provide the start date of new hires, and additional information

reasonably related to such hires, within twenty (20) business days after the start date. In the event the **Contractor** does not have any job openings covered by this Rider in any given year, the **Contractor** shall be required to provide an annual update to HireNYC to that effect. For this purpose, the reporting year shall run from the date of the registration of the **Contract** pursuant to Charter section 328 and each anniversary date.

35.6.2(d) These requirements do not limit the **Contractor's** ability to assess the qualifications of prospective workers, and to make final hiring and retention decisions. No provision of this Article 35.6 shall be interpreted so as to require the **Contractor** to employ any particular worker.

35.6.2(e) In addition, the provisions of this Article 35.6 shall not apply to positions that the **Contractor** intends to fill with employees employed pursuant to the job retention provision of Section 22-505 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York. The **Contractor** shall not be required to report such openings with HireNYC. However, the **Contractor** shall enroll with the HireNYC system pursuant to Article 35.6.1, above, and, if such positions subsequently become open, then the remaining provisions of this Article 35.6 will apply.

35.6.3 Breach and Liquidated Damages. If the **Contractor** fails to comply with the terms of the **Contract** and this Article 35.6 (1) by not enrolling its business with HireNYC; (2) by not informing HireNYC, as required, of open positions; or (3) by failing to interview a qualified candidate, the **Agency** may assess liquidated damages in the amount of two-thousand five hundred dollars (\$2,500) per breach. For all other events of noncompliance with the terms of this Article 35.6, the **Agency** may assess liquidated damages in the amount of five hundred dollars (\$500) per breach. Furthermore, in the event the **Contractor** breaches the requirements of this Article 35.6 during the term of the **Contract**, the **City** may hold the **Contractor** in default of this **Contract**.

35.6.4 Audit Compliance. In addition to the auditing requirements set forth in other parts of the **Contract**, the **Contractor** shall permit SBS and the **City** to inspect any and all records concerning or relating to job openings or the hiring of individuals for work arising from the **Contract** and located in New York City. The **Contractor** shall permit an inspection within seven (7) business days of the request.

35.6.5 Other Reporting Requirements. The **Contractor** shall report to the **City**, on a monthly basis, all information reasonably requested by the **City** that is necessary for the **City** to comply with any reporting requirements imposed by **Law**, including any requirement that the **City** maintain a publicly accessible database. In addition, the **Contractor** agrees to comply with all reporting requirements imposed by **Law**, or as otherwise requested by the **City**.

35.6.6 Federal Hiring Requirements. If this **Contract** is federally funded (as indicated elsewhere in this **Contract**), the **Contractor** shall comply with all federal hiring requirements as may be set forth in this **Contract**, including, as applicable: (a) Section 3 of the HUD Act of 1968, which requires, to the greatest extent feasible, economic opportunities for 30 percent of new hires be given to low- and very low-income persons, particularly persons who are recipients of HUD assistance for housing and Executive Order 11246, which prohibits discrimination in employment due to race, color, religion, sex or national origin, and requires the implementation of goals for minority and female participation for work involving any construction trade.

**ARTICLE 36. NO DISCRIMINATION**

36.1 The **Contractor** specifically agrees, as required by Labor Law Section 220-e, as amended, that:

36.1.1 In the hiring of employees for the performance of **Work** under this **Contract** or any subcontract hereunder, neither the **Contractor**, **Subcontractor**, nor any person acting on behalf of such **Contractor** or **Subcontractor**, shall by reason of race, creed, color or national origin discriminate against any citizen of the State of New York who is qualified and available to perform the **Work** to which the employment relates;

36.1.2 Neither the **Contractor**, **Subcontractor**, nor any person on its behalf shall, in any manner, discriminate against or intimidate any employee hired for the performance of **Work** under this **Contract** on account of race, creed, color or national origin;

36.1.3 There may be deducted from the amount payable to the **Contractor** by the **City** under this **Contract** a penalty of fifty (\$50.00) dollars for each person for each **Day** during which such person was discriminated against or intimidated in violation of the provisions of this **Contract**; and

36.1.4 This **Contract** may be cancelled or terminated by the **City** and all moneys due or to become due hereunder may be forfeited, for a second or any subsequent violation of the terms or conditions of this Article 36.

36.1.5 This Article 36 covers all construction, alteration and repair of any public building or public work occurring in the State of New York and the manufacture, sale, and distribution of materials, equipment, and supplies to the extent that such operations are performed within the State of New York pursuant to this **Contract**.

36.2 The **Contractor** specifically agrees, as required by Section 6-108 of the Administrative Code, as amended, that:

36.2.1 It shall be unlawful for any person engaged in the construction, alteration or repair of buildings or engaged in the construction or repair of streets or highways pursuant to a **Contract** with the **City** or engaged in the manufacture, sale or distribution of materials, equipment or supplies pursuant to a **Contract** with the **City** to refuse to employ or to refuse to continue in any employment any person on account of the race, color or creed of such person.

36.2.2 It shall be unlawful for any person or any servant, agent or employee of any person, described in Article 36.1.2, to ask, indicate or transmit, orally or in writing, directly or indirectly, the race, color or creed or religious affiliation of any person employed or seeking employment from such person, firm or corporation.

36.2.3 Breach of the foregoing provisions shall be deemed a violation of a material provision of this **Contract**.

36.2.4 Any person, or the employee, manager or owner of or officer of such firm or corporation who shall violate any of the provisions of this Article 36.2 shall, upon

conviction thereof, be punished by a fine of not more than one hundred (\$100.00) dollars or by imprisonment for not more than thirty (30) **Days**, or both.

36.3 This **Contract** is subject to the requirements of Executive Order No. 50 (1980) ("E.O. 50"), as revised, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. No contract will be awarded unless and until these requirements have been complied with in their entirety. By signing this **Contract**, the **Contractor** agrees that it:

36.3.1 Will not engage in any unlawful discrimination against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, creed, color, national origin, sex, age, disability, marital status or sexual orientation with respect to all employment decisions including, but not limited to, recruitment, hiring, upgrading, demotion, downgrading, transfer, training, rates of pay or other forms of compensation, layoff, termination, and all other terms and conditions of employment; and

36.3.2 Will not engage in any unlawful discrimination in the selection of **Subcontractors** on the basis of the owner's race, color, creed, national origin, sex, age, disability, marital status or sexual orientation; and

36.3.3 Will state in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the **Contractor** that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without unlawful discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, sex, age, citizens status, disability, marital status, sexual orientation, or that it is an equal employment opportunity employer; and

36.3.4 Will send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or memorandum of understanding, written notification of its equal employment opportunity commitments under E.O. 50 and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder; and

36.3.5 Will furnish, before the award of the **Contract**, all information and reports, including an employment report, that are required by E.O. 50, the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, and orders of the **City Department of Business Services, Division of Labor Services (DLS)** and will permit access to its books, records, and accounts by the **DLS** for the purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations, and orders.

36.4 The **Contractor** understands that in the event of its noncompliance with the nondiscrimination clauses of this **Contract** or with any of such rules, regulations, or orders, such noncompliance shall constitute a material breach of this **Contract** and noncompliance with E.O. 50 and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. After a hearing held pursuant to the rules of the **DLS**, the Director of the **DLS** may direct the **Commissioner** to impose any or all of the following sanctions:

36.4.1 Disapproval of the **Contractor**; and/or

36.4.2 Suspension or termination of the **Contract**; and/or

36.4.3 Declaring the **Contractor** in default; and/or

36.4.4 In lieu of any of the foregoing sanctions, the Director of the **DLS** may impose an employment program.

In addition to any actions taken under this **Contract**, failure to comply with E.O. 50 and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, in one or more instances, may result in a **City Agency** declaring the **Contractor** to be non-responsible in future procurements. The **Contractor** further agrees that it will refrain from entering into any **Contract** or **Contract** modification subject to E.O. 50 and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder with a **Subcontractor** who is not in compliance with the requirements of E.O. 50 and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

36.5 The **Contractor** specifically agrees, as required by Section 6-123 of the Administrative Code, that:

36.5.1 The **Contractor** will not engage in any unlawful discriminatory practice in violation of Title 8 of the Administrative Code; and

36.5.2 Any failure to comply with this Article 36.5 may subject the **Contractor** to the remedies set forth in Section 6-123 of the Administrative Code, including, where appropriate, sanctions such as withholding of payment, imposition of an employment program, finding the **Contractor** to be in default, cancellation of the **Contract**, or any other sanction or remedy provided by **Law** or **Contract**.

#### ARTICLE 37. LABOR LAW REQUIREMENTS

37.1 The **Contractor** shall strictly comply with all applicable provisions of the Labor Law, as amended. Such compliance is a material term of this **Contract**.

37.2 The **Contractor** specifically agrees, as required by Labor Law Sections 220 and 220-d, as amended, that:

37.2.1 **Hours of Work:** No laborer, worker, or mechanic in the employ of the **Contractor**, **Subcontractor** or other person doing or contracting to do the whole or a part of the **Work** contemplated by this **Contract** shall be permitted or required to work more than eight (8) hours in any one (1) **Day**, or more than five (5) **Days** in any one (1) week, except as provided in the Labor Law and in cases of extraordinary emergency including fire, flood, or danger to life or property, or in the case of national emergency when so proclaimed by the President of the United States of America.

37.2.2 In situations in which there are not sufficient laborers, workers, and mechanics who may be employed to carry on expeditiously the **Work** contemplated by this **Contract** as a result of such restrictions upon the number of hours and **Days** of labor, and the immediate commencement or prosecution or completion without undue delay of the **Work** is necessary for the preservation of the **Site** and/or for the protection of the life and limb of the persons using the same, such laborers, workers, and mechanics shall be permitted or required to work more than eight (8) hours in any one (1) **Day**; or five (5) **Days** in any one (1) week; provided, however, that upon application of any **Contractor**, the **Commissioner** shall have first certified to the Commissioner of Labor of the State of New York (hereinafter "Commissioner of Labor") that such public **Work** is of an important nature and that a delay in carrying it to completion would result in serious disadvantage to the public; and provided, further, that such Commissioner of Labor shall have determined that such an emergency does in fact exist as provided in Labor Law Section 220.2.

37.2.3 Failure of the **Commissioner** to make such a certification to the Commissioner of Labor shall not entitle the **Contractor** to damages for delay or for any cause whatsoever.

37.2.4 Prevailing Rate of Wages: The wages to be paid for a legal day's **Work** to laborers, workers, or mechanics employed upon the **Work** contemplated by this **Contract** or upon any materials to be used thereon shall not be less than the "prevailing rate of wage" as defined in Labor Law Section 220, and as fixed by the **Comptroller** in the attached Schedule of Wage Rates and in updated schedules thereof. The prevailing wage rates and supplemental benefits to be paid are those in effect at the time the **Work** is being performed.

37.2.5 Requests for interpretation or correction in the Information for Bidders includes all requests for clarification of the classification of trades to be employed in the performance of the **Work** under this **Contract**. In the event that a trade not listed in the **Contract** is in fact employed during the performance of this **Contract**, the **Contractor** shall be required to obtain from the **Agency** the prevailing wage rates and supplementary benefits for the trades used and to complete the performance of this **Contract** at the price at which the **Contract** was awarded.

37.2.6 Minimum Wages: Except for employees whose wage is required to be fixed pursuant to Labor Law Section 220, all persons employed by the **Contractor** and any **Subcontractor** in the manufacture or furnishing of the supplies, materials, or equipment, or the furnishing of work, labor, or services, used in the performance of this **Contract**, shall be paid, without subsequent deduction or rebate unless expressly authorized by **Law**, not less than the sum mandated by **Law**.

37.3 Working Conditions: No part of the **Work**, labor or services shall be performed or rendered by the **Contractor** in any plants, factories, buildings or surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary or hazardous or dangerous to the health and safety of employees engaged in the performance of this **Contract**. Compliance with the safety, sanitary, and factory inspection **Laws** of the state in which the **Work** is to be performed shall be prima facie evidence of compliance with this Article 37.3.

37.4 Prevailing Wage Enforcement: The **Contractor** agrees to pay for all costs incurred by the **City** in enforcing prevailing wage requirements, including the cost of any investigation conducted by or on behalf of the **Agency** or the **Comptroller**, where the **City** discovers a failure to comply with any of the requirements of this Article 37 by the **Contractor** or its **Subcontractor(s)**. The **Contractor** also agrees that, should it fail or refuse to pay for any such investigation, the **Agency** is hereby authorized to deduct from a **Contractor's** account an amount equal to the cost of such investigation.

37.4.1 The Labor Law Section 220 and Section 220-d, as amended, provide that this **Contract** shall be forfeited and no sum paid for any **Work** done hereunder on a second conviction for willfully paying less than:

37.4.1(a) The stipulated prevailing wage scale as provided in Labor Law section 220, as amended, or

37.4.1(b) The stipulated minimum hourly wage scale as provided in Labor Law section 220-d, as amended.

37.4.2 For any breach or violation of either working conditions (Article 37.3) or minimum wages (Article 37.2.6) provisions, the party responsible therefor shall be liable to the **City** for liquidated damages, which may be withheld from any amounts due on any contracts with the **City** of such party responsible, or may be recovered in actions brought by the **City**

Corporation Counsel in the name of the **City**, in addition to damages for any other breach of this **Contract**, for a sum equal to the amount of any underpayment of wages due to any employee engaged in the performance of this **Contract**. In addition, the **Commissioner** shall have the right to cancel contracts and enter into other contracts for the completion of the original contract, with or without public letting, and the original **Contractor** shall be liable for any additional cost. All sums withheld or recovered as deductions, rebates, refunds, or underpayment of wages hereunder, shall be held in a special deposit account and shall be paid without interest, on order of the **Comptroller**, directly to the employees who have been paid less than minimum rates of pay as set forth herein and on whose account such sums were withheld or recovered, provided that no claims by employees for such payments shall be entertained unless made within two (2) years from the date of actual notice to the **Contractor** of the withholding or recovery of such sums by the **City**.

37.4.3 A determination by the **Comptroller** that a **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractor** willfully violated Labor Law Section 220 will be forwarded to the **City's** five District Attorneys for review.

37.4.4 The **Contractor's** or **Subcontractor's** noncompliance with this Article 37.4 and Labor Law Section 220 may result in an unsatisfactory performance evaluation and the **Comptroller** may also find and determine that the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** willfully violated the New York Labor Law.

37.4.4(a) An unsatisfactory performance evaluation for noncompliance with this Article 37.4 may result in a determination that the **Contractor** is a non-responsible bidder on subsequent procurements with the **City** and thus a rejection of a future award of a contract with the **City**, as well as any other sanctions provided for by Law.

37.4.4(b) Labor Law Section 220-b, as amended, provides that when two (2) final determinations have been rendered against a **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** within any consecutive six (6) year period determining that such **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** has willfully failed to pay the prevailing rate of wages or to provide supplements in accordance with the Labor Law and this Article 37.4, whether such failures were concurrent or consecutive and whether or not such final determinations concerning separate public works projects are rendered simultaneously, such **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** shall be ineligible to submit a bid on or be awarded any public works contract with the **City** for a period of five (5) years from the second final determination. If the final determination involves the falsification of payroll records or the kickback of wages or supplements, the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** shall be ineligible to submit a bid on or be awarded any public works contract with the **City** for a period of five (5) years from the first final determination.

37.4.4(c) Labor Law Section 220, as amended, provides that the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** found to have violated this Article 37.4 may be directed to make payment of wages or supplements including interest found to be due, and the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor** may be directed to make payment of a further sum as a civil penalty in an amount not exceeding twenty-five (25%) percent of the total amount found to be due.

37.5 The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** shall within ten (10) **Days** after mailing of a Notice of Award or written order, post in prominent and conspicuous places in each and every plant, factory, building, and structure where employees of the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** engaged in the

performance of this **Contract** are employed, notices furnished by the **City**, in relation to prevailing wages and supplements, minimum wages, and other stipulations contained in Sections 220 and 220-h of the Labor Law, and the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** shall continue to keep such notices posted in such prominent and conspicuous places until **Final Acceptance** of the supplies, materials, equipment, or **Work**, labor, or services required to be furnished or rendered under this **Contract**.

37.6 The **Contractor** shall strictly comply with all of the provisions of Articles 37.6.1 through 37.6.5, and provide for all workers, laborers or mechanics in its employ, the following:

37.6.1 **Notices Posted At Site:** Post, in a location designated by the **City**, schedules of prevailing wages and supplements for this **Project**, a copy of all re-determinations of such schedules for the **Project**, the Workers' Compensation Law Section 51 notice, all other notices required by Law to be posted at the **Site**, the **City** notice that this **Project** is a public works project on which each worker is entitled to receive the prevailing wages and supplements for the occupation at which he or she is working, and all other notices which the **City** directs the **Contractor** to post. The **Contractor** shall provide a surface for such notices which is satisfactory to the **City**. The **Contractor** shall maintain and keep current such notices in a legible manner and shall replace any notice or schedule which is damaged, defaced, illegible or removed for any reason. The **Contractor** shall post such notices before commencing any **Work** on the **Site** and shall maintain such notices until all **Work** on the **Site** is complete; and

37.6.2 **Daily Site Sign-in Sheets:** Maintain daily **Site** sign-in sheets, and require that **Subcontractors** maintain daily **Site** sign-in sheets for its employees, which include blank spaces for an employee's name to be both printed and signed, job title, date started and Social Security number, the time the employee began work and the time the employee left work, until **Final Acceptance** of the supplies, materials, equipment, or **Work**, labor, or services to be furnished or rendered under this **Contract** unless exception is granted by the **Comptroller** upon application by the **Agency**. In the alternative, subject to the approval of the **CCPO**, the **Contractor** and **Subcontractor** may maintain an electronic or biometric sign-in system, which provides the information required by this Article 37.6.2; and

37.6.3 **Individual Employee Information Notices:** Distribute a notice to each worker, laborer or mechanic employed under this **Contract**, in a form provided by the **Agency**, that this **Project** is a public works project on which each worker, laborer or mechanic is entitled to receive the prevailing rate of wages and supplements for the occupation at which he or she is working. If the total cost of the **Work** under this **Contract** is at least two hundred fifty thousand (\$250,000) dollars, such notice shall also include a statement that each worker, laborer or mechanic must be certified prior to performing any **Work** as having successfully completed a course in construction safety and health approved by the United States Department of Labor's Occupational Safety and Health Administration that is at least ten (10) hours in duration. Such notice shall be distributed to each worker before he or she starts performing any **Work** of this **Contract** and with the first paycheck after July first of each year. "Worker, laborer or mechanic" includes employees of the **Contractor** and all **Subcontractors** and all employees of suppliers entering the **Site**. At the time of distribution, the **Contractor** shall have each worker, laborer or mechanic sign a statement, in a form provided by the **Agency**, certifying that the worker has received the notice required by this Article 37.6.3, which signed statement shall be maintained with the payroll records required by this **Contract**; and

37.6.3(a) The **Contractor** and each **Subcontractor** shall notify each worker, laborer or mechanic employed under this **Contract** in writing of the prevailing rate of

wages for their particular job classification. Such notification shall be given to every worker, laborer, and mechanic on their first pay stub and with every pay stub thereafter; and

37.6.4 **Site Laminated Identification Badges:** The **Contractor** shall provide laminated identification badges which include a photograph of the worker's, laborer's or mechanic's face and indicate the worker's, laborer's or mechanic's name, trade, employer's name, and employment starting date (month/day/year). Further, the **Contractor** shall require as a condition of employment on the **Site**, that each and every worker, laborer or mechanic wear the laminated identification badge at all times and that it may be seen by any representative of the **City**. The **Commissioner** may grant a written waiver from the requirement that the laminated identification badge include a photograph if the **Contractor** demonstrates that the identity of an individual wearing a laminated identification badge can be easily verified by another method; and

37.6.5 **Language Other Than English Used On Site:** Provide the **ACCO** notice when three (3) or more employees (worker and/or laborer and/or mechanic) on the **Site**, at any time, speak a language other than English. The **ACCO** will then provide the **Contractor** the notices described in Article 37.6.1 in that language or languages as may be required. The **Contractor** is responsible for all distributions under this Article 37; and

37.6.6 **Provision of Records:** The **Contractor** and **Subcontractor(s)** shall produce within five (5) **Days** on the **Site** of the **Work** and upon a written order of the **Engineer**, the **Commissioner**, the **ACCO**, the **Agency EAO**, or the **Comptroller**, such records as are required to be kept by this Article 37.6; and

37.6.7 The **Contractor** and **Subcontractor(s)** shall pay employees by check or direct deposit. If this **Contract** is for an amount greater than one million (\$1,000,000) dollars, checks issued by the **Contractor** to covered employees shall be generated by a payroll service or automated payroll system (an in-house system may be used if approved by the **Agency**). For any subcontract for an amount greater than seven hundred fifty thousand (\$750,000) dollars, checks issued by a **Subcontractor** to covered employees shall be generated by a payroll service or automated payroll system (an in-house system may be used if approved by the **Agency**); and

37.6.8 The failure of the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor(s)** to comply with the provisions of Articles 37.6.1 through 37.6.7 may result in the **Commissioner** declaring the **Contractor** in default and/or the withholding of payments otherwise due under the **Contract**.

37.7 The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** shall keep such employment and payroll records as are required by Section 220 of the Labor Law. The failure of the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor(s)** to comply with the provisions of this Article 37.7 may result in the **Commissioner** declaring the **Contractor** in default and/or the withholding of payments otherwise due under the **Contract**.

37.8 At the time the **Contractor** makes application for each partial payment and for final payment, the **Contractor** shall submit to the **Commissioner** a written payroll certification, in the form provided by this **Contract**, of compliance with the prevailing wage, minimum wage, and other provisions and stipulations required by Labor Law Section 220 and of compliance with the training requirements of Labor Law Section 220-h set forth in Article 35.2. This certification of compliance shall be a condition precedent to payment and no payment shall be made to the **Contractor** unless and until each such certification shall have been submitted to and received by the **Commissioner**.

37.9 This **Contract** is executed by the **Contractor** with the express warranty and representation that the **Contractor** is not disqualified under the provisions of Section 220 of the Labor Law from the award of the **Contract**.

37.10 Any breach or violation of any of the foregoing shall be deemed a breach or violation of a material provision of this **Contract**, and grounds for cancellation thereof by the **City**.

### ARTICLE 38. PAYROLL REPORTS

38.1 The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractor(s)** shall maintain on the **Site** during the performance of the **Work** the original payrolls or transcripts thereof which the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractor(s)** are required to maintain and shall submit such original payrolls or transcripts, subscribed and affirmed by it as true, within thirty (30) **Days** after issuance of its first payroll, and every thirty (30) **Days** thereafter, pursuant to Labor Law Section 220(3-a)(a)(iii). The **Contractor** and **Subcontractor(s)** shall submit such original payrolls or transcripts along with each and every payment requisition. If payment requisitions are not submitted at least once a month, the **Contractor** and its **Subcontractor(s)** shall submit original payrolls and transcripts both along with its payment requisitions and independently of its payment requisitions.

38.2 The **Contractor** shall maintain payrolls or transcripts thereof for six (6) years from the date of completion of the **Work** on this **Contract**. If such payrolls and transcripts are maintained outside of New York City after the completion of the **Work** and their production is required pursuant to this Article 38, the **Contractor** shall produce such records in New York City upon request by the **City**.

38.3 The **Contractor** and **Subcontractor(s)** shall comply with any written order, direction, or request made by the **Engineer**, the **Commissioner**, the **ACCO**, the **Agency EAO**, the **Agency Labor Law Investigator(s)**, or the **Comptroller**, to provide to the requesting party any of the following information and/or records within five (5) **Days** of such written order, direction, or request:

38.3.1 Such original payrolls or transcripts thereof subscribed and affirmed by it as true and the statements signed by each worker pursuant to this Chapter VIII; and/or

38.3.2 Attendance sheets for each **Day** on which any employee of the **Contractor** and/or any of the **Subcontractor(s)** performed **Work** on the **Site**, which attendance sheet shall be in a form acceptable to the **Agency** and shall provide information acceptable to the **Agency** to identify each such employee; and/or

38.3.3 Any other information to satisfy the **Engineer**, the **Commissioner**, the **ACCO**, the **Agency EAO**, the **Agency Labor Law Investigator(s)** or the **Comptroller**, that this Chapter VIII and the Labor Law, as to the hours of employment and prevailing rates of wages and/or supplemental benefits, are being observed.

38.4 The failure of the **Contractor** or **Subcontractor(s)** to comply with the provisions of Articles 38.1 and/or 38.2 may result in the **Commissioner** declaring the **Contractor** in default and/or the withholding of payments otherwise due under the **Contract**.

### ARTICLE 39. DUST HAZARDS

39.1 Should a harmful dust hazard be created in performing the **Work** of this **Contract**, for the elimination of which appliances or methods have been approved by the Board of Standards and Appeals

of the City of New York, such appliances and methods shall be installed, maintained, and effectively operated during the continuance of such harmful dust hazard. Failure to comply with this provision after notice shall make this **Contract** voidable at the sole discretion of the **City**.

## **CHAPTER IX: PARTIAL AND FINAL PAYMENTS**

### **ARTICLE 40. CONTRACT PRICE**

40.1 The **City** shall pay, and the **Contractor** agrees to accept, in full consideration for the **Contractor's** performance of the **Work** subject to the terms and conditions hereof, the lump sum price or unit prices for which this **Contract** was awarded, plus the amount required to be paid for any **Extra Work** ordered by the **Commissioner** under Article 25, less credit for any **Work** omitted pursuant to Article 29.

### **ARTICLE 41. BID BREAKDOWN ON LUMP SUM**

41.1 Within fifteen (15) **Days** after the commencement date specified in the **Notice to Proceed** or **Order to Work**, unless otherwise directed by the **Resident Engineer**, the **Contractor** shall submit to the **Resident Engineer** a breakdown of its bid price, or of lump sums bid for items of the **Contract**, showing the various operations to be performed under the **Contract**, as directed in the progress schedule required under Article 9, and the value of each of such operations, the total of such items to equal the lump sum price bid. Said breakdown must be approved in writing by the **Resident Engineer**.

41.2 No partial payment will be approved until the **Contractor** submits a bid breakdown that is acceptable to the **Resident Engineer**.

41.3 The **Contractor** shall also submit such other information relating to the bid breakdown as directed by the **Resident Engineer**. Thereafter, the breakdown may be used only for checking the **Contractor's** applications for partial payments hereunder, but shall not be binding upon the **City**, the **Commissioner**, or the **Engineer** for any purpose whatsoever.

### **ARTICLE 42. PARTIAL PAYMENTS**

42.1 From time to time as the **Work** progresses satisfactorily, but not more often than once each calendar month (except where the **Commissioner** approves in writing the submission of invoices on a more frequent basis and for invoices relating to **Work** performed pursuant to a change order), the **Contractor** may submit to the **Engineer** a requisition for a partial payment in the prescribed form, which shall contain an estimate of the quantity and the fair value of the **Work** done during the payment period.

42.2 Partial payments may be made for materials, fixtures, and equipment in advance of their actual incorporation in the **Work**, as the **Commissioner** may approve, and upon the terms and conditions set forth in the General Conditions.

42.3 The **Contractor** shall also submit to the **Commissioner** in connection with every application for partial payment a verified statement in the form prescribed by the **Comptroller** setting forth the information required under Labor Law Section 220-a.

42.4 Within thirty (30) **Days** after receipt of a satisfactory payment application, and within sixty (60) **Days** after receipt of a satisfactory payment application in relation to **Work** performed pursuant to a change order, the **Engineer** will prepare and certify, and the **Commissioner** will approve, a voucher for a partial payment in the amount of such approved estimate, less any and all deductions authorized to be made by the **Commissioner** under the terms of this **Contract** or by **Law**.

#### **ARTICLE 43. PROMPT PAYMENT**

43.1 The Prompt Payment provisions of the **PPB** Rules in effect at the time of the bid will be applicable to payments made under this **Contract**. The provisions require the payment to the **Contractor** of interest on payments made after the required payment date, except as set forth in the **PPB** Rules.

43.2 The **Contractor** shall submit a proper invoice to receive payment, except where the **Contract** provides that the **Contractor** will be paid at predetermined intervals without having to submit an invoice for each scheduled payment.

43.3 Determination of interest due will be made in accordance with the **PPB** Rules.

43.4 If the **Contractor** is paid interest, the proportionate share(s) of that interest shall be forwarded by the **Contractor** to its **Subcontractor(s)**.

43.5 The **Contractor** shall pay each **Subcontractor** or **Materialman** not later than seven (7) **Days** after receipt of payment out of amounts paid to the **Contractor** by the **City** for **Work** performed by the **Subcontractor** or **Materialman** under this **Contract**.

43.5.1 If **Contractor** fails to make any payment to any **Subcontractor** or **Materialman** within seven (7) **Days** after receipt of payment by the **City** pursuant to this Article 43.5, then the **Contractor** shall pay interest on amounts due to such **Subcontractor** or **Materialman** at the rate of interest in effect on the date such payment is made by the **Contractor** computed in accordance with Section 756-b (1)(b) of the New York General Business Law. Accrual of interest shall commence on the **Day** immediately following the expiration of the seventh **Day** following receipt of payment by the **Contractor** from the **City** and shall end on the date on which payment is made.

43.6 The **Contractor** shall include in each of its subcontracts a provision requiring each **Subcontractor** to make payment to each of its **Subcontractors** or **Materialmen** for **Work** performed under this **Contract** in the same manner and within the same time period set forth above.

#### **ARTICLE 44. SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PAYMENT**

44.1 The **Contractor** shall submit with the **Substantial Completion** requisition:

44.1.1 A final verified statement of any pending Article 27 disputes in accordance with the **PPB** Rules and this **Contract** and any and all alleged claims against the **City**, in any way connected with or arising out of this **Contract** (including those as to which details may have been furnished pursuant to Articles 11, 27, 28, and 30) setting forth with respect to each such claim the total amount thereof, the various items of labor and materials included therein, and the alleged value of each item; and if the alleged claim be one for delay, the alleged cause of each such delay, the period or periods of time, giving the dates when the

**Contractor** claims the performance of the **Work** or a particular part thereof was delayed, and an itemized statement and breakdown of the amount claimed for each such delay.

44.1.1(a) With respect to each such claim, the **Commissioner**, the **Comptroller** and, in the event of litigation, the **City Corporation Counsel** shall have the same right to inspect, and to make extracts or copies of, the **Contractor's** books, vouchers, records, etc., as is referred to in Articles 11, 27, 28, and 30. Nothing contained in this Article 44.1.1(a) is intended to or shall relieve the **Contractor** from the obligation of complying strictly with Articles 11, 27, 28, and 30. The **Contractor** is warned that unless such claims are completely set forth as herein required, the **Contractor** upon acceptance of the **Substantial Completion** payment pursuant to this Article 44, will have waived any such claims.

44.1.2 A **Final Approved Punch List**.

44.1.3 Where required, a request for an extension of time to achieve **Substantial Completion** or final extension of time.

44.2 The **Commissioner** shall issue a voucher calling for payment of any part or all of the balance due for **Work** performed under the **Contract**, including monies retained under Article 21, less any and all deductions authorized to be made by the **Commissioner**, under this **Contract** or by **Law**, and less twice the amount the **Commissioner** considers necessary to ensure the completion of the balance of the **Work** by the **Contractor**. Such a payment shall be considered a partial and not a final payment. No **Substantial Completion** payment shall be made under this Article 44 where the **Contractor** failed to complete the **Work** within the time fixed for such completion in the Schedule A of the General Conditions, or within the time to which completion may have been extended, until an extension or extensions of time for the completion of **Work** have been acted upon pursuant to Article 13.

44.3 No further partial payments shall be made to the **Contractor** after **Substantial Completion**, except the **Substantial Completion** payment and payment pursuant to any **Contractor's** requisition that were properly filed with the **Commissioner** prior to the date of **Substantial Completion**; however, the **Commissioner** may grant a waiver for further partial payments after the date of **Substantial Completion** to permit payments for change order **Work** and/or release of retainage and deposits pursuant to Articles 21 and 24. Such waiver shall be in writing.

44.4 The **Contractor** acknowledges that nothing contained in this Article 44 is intended to or shall in any way diminish the force and effect of Article 13.

#### ARTICLE 45. FINAL PAYMENT

45.1 After completion and **Final Acceptance** of the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall submit all required certificates and documents, together with a requisition for the balance claimed to be due under the **Contract**, less the amount authorized to be retained for maintenance under Article 24. Such submission shall be within 90 days of the date of the **Commissioner's** written determination of **Final Acceptance**, or within such additional time as may be granted by the **Commissioner** in writing. If the **Contractor** fails to submit all required certificates and documents within the time allowed, no payment of the balance claimed shall be made to the **Contractor** and the **Contractor** shall be deemed to have forfeited its right to payment of any balance claimed. A verified statement similar to that required in connection with applications for partial payments shall also be submitted to the **Commissioner**.

45.2 Amended Verified Statement of Claims: The **Contractor** shall also submit with the final requisition any amendments to the final verified statement of any pending dispute resolution procedures in accordance with the **PPB** Rules and this **Contract** and any and all alleged claims against the **City**, in any way connected with or arising out of this **Contract** (including those as to which details may have been furnished pursuant to Articles 11, 27, 28, and 30) that have occurred subsequent to **Substantial Completion**, setting forth with respect to each such claim the total amount thereof, the various items of labor and materials included therein, and the alleged value of each such item; and if the alleged claim be one for delay, the alleged cause of each such delay, the period or periods of time, giving the dates when the **Contractor** claims the performance of the **Work** or a particular part thereof was delayed, and an itemized statement and breakdown of the amount claimed for each such delay. With reference to each such claim, the **Commissioner**, the **Comptroller** and, in the event of litigation, the **City** Corporation Counsel shall have the same right to inspect, and to make extracts or copies of, the **Contractor's** books, vouchers, records, etc., as is referred to in Articles 11, 27, 28, and 30. Nothing contained in this Article 45.2, is intended to or shall relieve the **Contractor** from the obligation of complying strictly with Articles 11, 27, 28, and 30. The **Contractor** is warned that unless such claims are completely set forth as herein required, the **Contractor**, upon acceptance of the Final Payment pursuant to Article 46, will have waived any such claims.

45.3 Preparation of Final Voucher: Upon determining the balance due hereunder other than on account of claims, the **Engineer** will prepare and certify, for the Commissioner's approval, a voucher for final payment in that amount less any and all deductions authorized to be made by the **Commissioner** under this **Contract** or by **Law**. In the case of a lump sum **Contract**, the **Commissioner** shall certify the voucher for final payment within thirty (30) **Days** from the date of completion and acceptance of the **Work**, provided all requests for extensions of time have been acted upon.

45.3.1 All prior certificates and vouchers upon which partial payments were made, being merely estimates made to enable the **Contractor** to prosecute the **Work** more advantageously, shall be subject to correction in the final voucher, and the certification of the **Engineer** thereon and the approval of the **Commissioner** thereof, shall be conditions precedent to the right of the **Contractor** to receive any money hereunder. Such final voucher shall be binding and conclusive upon the **Contractor**.

45.3.2 Payment pursuant to such final voucher, less any deductions authorized to be made by the **Commissioner** under this **Contract** or by **Law**, shall constitute the final payment, and shall be made by the **Comptroller** within thirty (30) **Days** after the filing of such voucher in his/her office.

45.4 The **Contractor** acknowledges that nothing contained in this Article 45 is intended to or shall in any way diminish the force and effect of Article 13.

#### **ARTICLE 46. ACCEPTANCE OF FINAL PAYMENT**

46.1 The acceptance by the **Contractor**, or by anyone claiming by or through it, of the final payment, whether such payment be made pursuant to any judgment of any court, or otherwise, shall constitute and operate as a release of the **City** from any and all claims of and liability to the **Contractor** for anything heretofore done or furnished for the **Contractor** relating to or arising out of this **Contract** and the **Work** done hereunder, and for any prior act, neglect or default on the part of the **City** or any of its officials, agents or employees, excepting only a claim against the **City** for the amounts deducted or retained in accordance with the terms and provisions of this **Contract** or by **Law**, and excepting any claims, not otherwise waived, or any pending dispute resolution procedures which are contained in the

verified statement filed with the **Contractor's** substantial and final requisitions pursuant to Articles 44 and 45.

46.2 The **Contractor** is warned that the execution by it of a release, in connection with the acceptance of the final payment, containing language purporting to reserve claims other than those herein specifically excepted from the operation of this Article 46, or those for amounts deducted by the **Commissioner** from the final requisition or from the final payment as certified by the **Engineer** and approved by the **Commissioner**, shall not be effective to reserve such claims, anything stated to the **Contractor** orally or in writing by any official, agent or employee of the **City** to the contrary notwithstanding.

46.3 Should the **Contractor** refuse to accept the final payment as tendered by the **Comptroller**, it shall constitute a waiver of any right to interest thereon.

46.4 The **Contractor**, however, shall not be barred by this Article 46 from commencing an action for breach of **Contract** to the extent permitted by **Law** and by the terms of the **Contract** for any claims that are contained in the verified statement filed with the **Contractor's** substantial and final requisitions pursuant to Articles 44 and 45 or that arose after submission of the final payment requisition, provided that a detailed and verified statement of claim is served upon the contracting **Agency** and **Comptroller** not later than forty (40) **Days** after the making of such final payment by electronic funds transfer (EFT) or the mailing of such final payment. The statement shall specify the items upon which the claim will be based and any such claim shall be limited to such items.

#### **ARTICLE 47. APPROVAL BY PUBLIC DESIGN COMMISSION**

47.1 All works of art, including paintings, mural decorations, stained glass, statues, bas-reliefs, and other sculptures, monuments, fountains, arches, and other structures of a permanent character intended for ornament or commemoration, and every design of the same to be used in the performance of this **Contract**, and the design of all bridges, approaches, buildings, gates, fences, lamps, or structures to be erected, pursuant to the terms of this **Contract**, shall be submitted to the Art Commission, d/b/a the Public Design Commission of the City of New York, and shall be approved by the Public Design Commission prior to the erection or placing in position of the same. The final payment shall not become due or payable under this **Contract** unless and until the Public Design Commission shall certify that the design for the **Work** herein contracted for has been approved by the said Public Design Commission, and that the same has been executed in substantial accordance with the design so approved, pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 37, Section 854 of the **City** Charter, as amended.

### **CHAPTER X: CONTRACTOR'S DEFAULT**

#### **ARTICLE 48. COMMISSIONER'S RIGHT TO DECLARE CONTRACTOR IN DEFAULT**

48.1 In addition to those instances specifically referred to in other Articles herein, the **Commissioner** shall have the right to declare the **Contractor** in default of this **Contract** if:

48.1.1 The **Contractor** fails to commence **Work** when notified to do so by the **Commissioner**; or if

48.1.2 The **Contractor** shall abandon the **Work**; or if

48.1.3 The **Contractor** shall refuse to proceed with the **Work** when and as directed by the **Commissioner**; or if

48.1.4 The **Contractor** shall, without just cause, reduce its working force to a number which, if maintained, would be insufficient, in the opinion of the **Commissioner**, to complete the **Work** in accordance with the progress schedule; or if

48.1.5 The **Contractor** shall fail or refuse to increase sufficiently such working force when ordered to do so by the **Commissioner**; or if

48.1.6 The **Contractor** shall sublet, assign, transfer, convert or otherwise dispose of this **Contract** other than as herein specified; or sell or assign a majority interest in the **Contractor**; or if

48.1.7 The **Contractor** fails to secure and maintain all required insurance; or if

48.1.8 A receiver or receivers are appointed to take charge of the **Contractor's** property or affairs; or if

48.1.9 The **Commissioner** shall be of the opinion that the **Contractor** is or has been unnecessarily or unreasonably or willfully delaying the performance and completion of the **Work**, or the award of necessary subcontracts, or the placing of necessary material and equipment orders; or if

48.1.10 The **Commissioner** shall be of the opinion that the **Contractor** is or has been willfully or in bad faith violating any of the provisions of this **Contract**; or if

48.1.11 The **Commissioner** shall be of the opinion that the **Work** cannot be completed within the time herein provided therefor or within the time to which such completion may have been extended; provided, however, that the impossibility of timely completion is, in the **Commissioner's** opinion, attributable to conditions within the **Contractor's** control; or if

48.1.12 The **Work** is not completed within the time herein provided therefor or within the time to which the **Contractor** may be entitled to have such completion extended; or if

48.1.13 Any statement or representation of the **Contractor** in the **Contract** or in any document submitted by the **Contractor** with respect to the **Work**, the **Project**, or the **Contract** (or for purposes of securing the **Contract**) was untrue or incorrect when made; or if

48.1.14 The **Contractor** or any of its officers, directors, partners, five (5%) percent shareholders, principals, or other persons substantially involved in its activities, commits any of the acts or omissions specified as the grounds for debarment in the **PPB Rules**.

48.2 Before the **Commissioner** shall exercise his/her right to declare the **Contractor** in default, the **Commissioner** shall give the **Contractor** an opportunity to be heard, upon not less than two (2) **Days'** notice.

#### **ARTICLE 49. EXERCISE OF THE RIGHT TO DECLARE DEFAULT**

49.1 The right to declare the **Contractor** in default for any of the grounds specified or referred to in Article 48 shall be exercised by sending the **Contractor** a notice, signed by the **Commissioner**, setting forth the ground or grounds upon which such default is declared (hereinafter referred to as a "Notice of Default").

49.2 The **Commissioner's** determination that the **Contractor** is in default shall be conclusive, final, and binding on the parties and such a finding shall preclude the **Contractor** from commencing a plenary action for any damages relating to the **Contract**. If the **Contractor** protests the determination of the **Commissioner**, the **Contractor** may commence an action in a court of competent jurisdiction of the State of New York under Article 78 of the New York Civil Practice Law and Rules.

#### **ARTICLE 50. QUITTING THE SITE**

50.1 Upon receipt of such notice the **Contractor** shall immediately discontinue all further operations under this **Contract** and shall immediately quit the **Site**, leaving untouched all plant, materials, equipment, tools, and supplies then on the **Site**.

#### **ARTICLE 51. COMPLETION OF THE WORK**

51.1 The **Commissioner**, after declaring the **Contractor** in default, may then have the **Work** completed by such means and in such manner, by contract with or without public letting, or otherwise, as he/she may deem advisable, utilizing for such purpose such of the **Contractor's** plant, materials, equipment, tools, and supplies remaining on the **Site**, and also such **Subcontractors**, as he/she may deem advisable.

51.2 After such completion, the **Commissioner** shall make a certificate stating the expense incurred in such completion, which shall include the cost of re-letting and also the total amount of liquidated damages (at the rate provided for in the **Contract**) from the date when the **Work** should have been completed by the **Contractor** in accordance with the terms hereof to the date of actual completion of the **Work**. Such certificate shall be binding and conclusive upon the **Contractor**, its sureties, and any person claiming under the **Contractor**, as to the amount thereof.

51.3 The expense of such completion, including any and all related and incidental costs, as so certified by the **Commissioner**, and any liquidated damages assessed against the **Contractor**, shall be charged against and deducted out of monies which are earned by the **Contractor** prior to the date of default. Should the expense of such completion, as certified by the **Commissioner**, exceed the total sum which would have been payable under the **Contract** if it had been completed by the **Contractor**, any excess shall be paid by the **Contractor**.

#### **ARTICLE 52. PARTIAL DEFAULT**

52.1 In case the **Commissioner** shall declare the **Contractor** in default as to a part of the **Work** only, the **Contractor** shall discontinue such part, shall continue performing the remainder of the **Work** in strict conformity with the terms of this **Contract**, and shall in no way hinder or interfere with any **Other Contractor(s)** or persons whom the **Commissioner** may engage to complete the **Work** as to which the **Contractor** was declared in default.

52.2 The provisions of this Chapter relating to declaring the **Contractor** in default as to the entire **Work** shall be equally applicable to a declaration of partial default, except that the **Commissioner** shall be entitled to utilize for completion of the part of the **Work** as to which the **Contractor** was declared in default only such plant, materials, equipment, tools, and supplies as had been previously used by the **Contractor** on such part.

#### **ARTICLE 53. PERFORMANCE OF UNCOMPLETED WORK**

53.1 In completing the whole or any part of the **Work** under the provisions of this Chapter X, the **Commissioner** shall have the power to depart from or change or vary the terms and provisions of this **Contract**, provided, however, that such departure, change or variation is made for the purpose of reducing the time or expense of such completion. Such departure, change or variation, even to the extent of accepting a lesser or different performance, shall not affect the conclusiveness of the **Commissioner's** certificate of the cost of completion referred to in Article 51, nor shall it constitute a defense to an action to recover the amount by which such certificate exceeds the amount which would have been payable to the **Contractor** hereunder but for its default.

#### **ARTICLE 54. OTHER REMEDIES**

54.1 In addition to the right to declare the **Contractor** in default pursuant to this Chapter X, the **Commissioner** shall have the absolute right, in his/her sole discretion and without a hearing, to complete or cause to be completed in the same manner as described in Articles 51 and 53, any or all unsatisfactory or uncompleted punch list **Work** that remains after the completion date specified in the **Final Approved Punch List**. A written notice of the exercise of this right shall be sent to the **Contractor** who shall immediately quit the **Site** in accordance with the provisions of Article 50.

54.2 The expense of completion permitted under Article 54.1, including any and all related and incidental costs, as so certified by the **Commissioner**, shall be charged against and deducted out of monies which have been earned by the **Contractor** prior to the date of the exercise of the right set forth in Article 54.1; the balance of such monies, if any, subject to the other provisions of this **Contract**, to be paid to the **Contractor** without interest after such completion. Should the expense of such completion, as certified by the **Commissioner**, exceed the total sum which would have been payable under the **Contract** if it had been completed by the **Contractor**, any excess shall be paid by the **Contractor**.

54.3 The previous provisions of this Chapter X shall be in addition to any and all other remedies available under **Law** or in equity.

54.4 The exercise by the **City** of any remedy set forth herein shall not be deemed a waiver by the **City** of any other legal or equitable remedy contained in this **Contract** or provided under **Law**.

### **CHAPTER XI: MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

#### **ARTICLE 55. CONTRACTOR'S WARRANTIES**

55.1 In consideration of, and to induce, the award of this **Contract** to the **Contractor**, the **Contractor** represents and warrants:

55.1.1 That it is financially solvent, sufficiently experienced and competent to perform the **Work**; and

55.1.2 That the facts stated in its bid and the information given by it pursuant to the Information for Bidders is true and correct in all respects; and

55.1.3 That it has read and complied with all requirements set forth in the **Contract**.

#### **ARTICLE 56. CLAIMS AND ACTIONS THEREON**

56.1 Any claim, that is not subject to dispute resolution under the **PPB Rules** or this **Contract**, against the **City** for damages for breach of **Contract** shall not be made or asserted in any action, unless the **Contractor** shall have strictly complied with all requirements relating to the giving of notice and of information with respect to such claims, as herein before provided.

56.2 Nor shall any action be instituted or maintained on any such claims unless such action is commenced within six (6) months after **Substantial Completion**; except that:

56.2.1 Any claims arising out of events occurring after **Substantial Completion** and before **Final Acceptance** of the **Work** shall be asserted within six (6) months of **Final Acceptance** of the **Work**;

56.2.2 If the **Commissioner** exercises his/her right to complete or cause to complete any or all unsatisfactory or uncompleted punch list **Work** that remains after the completion date specified in the **Final Approved Punch List** pursuant to Article 54, any such action shall be commenced within six (6) months from the date the **Commissioner** notifies the **Contractor** in writing that he/she has exercised such right. Any claims for monies deducted, retained or withheld under the provisions of this **Contract** shall be asserted within six (6) months after the date when such monies otherwise become due and payable hereunder; and

56.2.3 If the **Commissioner** exercises his/her right to terminate the **Contract** pursuant to Article 64, any such action shall be commenced within six (6) months of the date the **Commissioner** exercises said right.

#### **ARTICLE 57. INFRINGEMENT**

57.1 The **Contractor** shall be solely responsible for and shall defend, indemnify, and hold the **City** harmless from any and all claims (even if the allegations of the lawsuit are without merit) and judgments for damages and from costs and expenses to which the **City** may be subject to or which it may suffer or incur allegedly arising out of or in connection with any infringement by the **Contractor** of any copyright, trade secrets, trademark or patent rights or any other property or personal right of any third party by the **Contractor** and/or its **Subcontractors** in the performance or completion of the **Work**. Insofar as the facts or **Law** relating to any claim would preclude the **City** from being completely indemnified by the **Contractor**, the **City** shall be partially indemnified by the **Contractor** to the fullest extent permitted by **Law**.

## **ARTICLE 58. NO CLAIM AGAINST OFFICIALS, AGENTS OR EMPLOYEES**

58.1 No claim whatsoever shall be made by the **Contractor** against any official, agent or employee of the **City** for, or on account of, anything done or omitted to be done in connection with this **Contract**.

## **ARTICLE 59. SERVICE OF NOTICES**

59.1 The **Contractor** hereby designates the business address, fax number, and email address specified in its bid, as the place where all notices, directions or other communications to the **Contractor** may be delivered, or to which they may be mailed. Any notice, direction, or communication from either party to the other shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been given when (i) delivered personally; (ii) sent by certified mail, return receipt requested; (iii) delivered by overnight or same day courier service in a properly addressed envelope with confirmation; or (iv) sent by fax or email and, unless receipt of the fax or e-mail is acknowledged by the recipient by fax or e-mail, deposited in a post office box regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service in a properly addressed, postage pre-paid envelope.

59.2 **Contractor's** notice address, email address, or fax number may be changed at any time by an instrument in writing, executed and acknowledged by the **Contractor**, and delivered to the **Commissioner**.

59.3 Nothing herein contained shall, however, be deemed to preclude or render inoperative the service of any notice, direction or other communication upon the **Contractor** personally, or, if the **Contractor** is a corporation, upon any officer thereof.

## **ARTICLE 60. UNLAWFUL PROVISIONS DEEMED STRICKEN FROM CONTRACT**

60.1 If this **Contract** contains any unlawful provision not an essential part of the **Contract** and which shall not appear to have been a controlling or material inducement to the making thereof, the same shall be deemed of no effect and shall, upon notice by either party, be deemed stricken from the **Contract** without affecting the binding force of the remainder.

## **ARTICLE 61. ALL LEGAL PROVISIONS DEEMED INCLUDED**

61.1 It is the intent and understanding of the parties to this **Contract** that each and every provision of **Law** required to be inserted in this **Contract** shall be and is inserted herein. Furthermore, it is hereby stipulated that every such provision is to be deemed to be inserted herein, and if, through mistake or otherwise, any such provision is not inserted, or is not inserted in correct form, then this **Contract** shall forthwith upon the application of either party be amended by such insertion so as to comply strictly with the **Law** and without prejudice to the rights of either party hereunder.

## **ARTICLE 62. TAX EXEMPTION**

62.1 The **City** is exempt from payment of Federal, State, and local taxes, including sales and compensating use taxes of the State of New York and its cities and counties on all tangible personal property sold to the **City** pursuant to the provisions of this **Contract**. These taxes are not to be included in bids. However, this exemption does not apply to tools, machinery, equipment or other property leased by or to the **Contractor**, **Subcontractor** or **Materialman** or to tangible personal property which, even

though it is consumed, is not incorporated into the completed **Work** (consumable supplies) and tangible personal property that the **Contractor** is required to remove from the **Site** during or upon completion of the **Work**. The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** and **Materialmen** shall be responsible for and pay any and all applicable taxes, including sales and compensating use taxes, on such leased tools, machinery, equipment or other property and upon all such consumable supplies and tangible personal property that the **Contractor** is required to remove from the **Site** during or upon completion of the **Work**.

62.2 The **Contractor** agrees to sell and the **City** agrees to purchase all tangible personal property, other than consumable supplies and other tangible personal property that the **Contractor** is required to remove from the **Site** during or upon completion of the **Work**, that is required, necessary or proper for or incidental to the construction of the **Project** covered by this **Contract**. The sum paid under this **Contract** for such tangible personal property shall be in full payment and consideration for the sale of such tangible personal property.

62.2.1 The **Contractor** agrees to construct the **Project** and to perform all **Work**, labor and services rendered, necessary, proper or incidental thereto for the sum shown in the bid for the performance of such **Work**, labor, and services, and the sum so paid pursuant to this **Contract** for such **Work**, labor, and services, shall be in full consideration for the performance by the **Contractor** of all its duties and obligations under this **Contract** in connection with said **Work**, labor, and services.

62.3 20 NYCRR Section 541.3(d) provides that a **Contractor's** purchases of tangible personal property that is either incorporated into real property owned by a governmental entity or purchased for and sold to a governmental entity are exempt from sales and use tax. The **City** shall not pay sales tax for any such tangible personal property that it purchases from the **Contractor** pursuant to the **Contract**. With respect to such tangible personal property, the **Contractor**, at the request of the **City**, shall furnish to the **City** such bills of sale and other instruments as may be required by the **City**, properly executed, acknowledged and delivered assuring to the **City** title to such tangible personal property, free of liens and/or encumbrances, and the **Contractor** shall mark or otherwise identify all such tangible personal property as the property of the **City**.

62.4 Title to all tangible personal property to be sold by the **Contractor** to the **City** pursuant to the provisions of the **Contract** shall immediately vest in and become the sole property of the **City** upon delivery of such tangible personal property to the **Site**. Notwithstanding such transfer of title, the **Contractor** shall have the full and continuing responsibility to install such tangible personal property in accordance with the provisions of this **Contract**, protect it, maintain it in a proper condition and forthwith repair, replace and make good any damage thereto, theft or disappearance thereof, and furnish additional tangible personal property in place of any that may be lost, stolen or rendered unusable, without cost to the **City**, until such time as the **Work** covered by the **Contract** is fully accepted by the **City**. Such transfer of title shall in no way affect any of the **Contractor's** obligations hereunder. In the event that, after title has passed to the **City**, any of the tangible personal property is rejected as being defective or otherwise unsatisfactory, title to all such tangible personal property shall be deemed to have been transferred back to the **Contractor**.

62.5 The purchase by **Subcontractors** or **Materialmen** of tangible personal property to be sold hereunder shall be a purchase or procurement for resale to the **Contractor** (either directly or through other **Subcontractors**) and therefore not subject to the aforesaid sales and compensating use taxes, provided that the subcontracts and purchase agreements provide for the resale of such tangible personal property and that such subcontracts and purchase agreements are in a form similar to this **Contract** with respect to the separation of the sale of consumable supplies and tangible personal property that the

**Contractor** is required to remove from the **Site** during or upon completion of the **Work** from the **Work** and labor, services, and any other matters to be provided, and provided further that the subcontracts and purchase agreements provide separate prices for tangible personal property and all other services and matters. Such separation shall actually be followed in practice, including the separation of payments for tangible personal property from the payments for other **Work** and labor and other things to be provided.

62.6 The **Contractor** and its **Subcontractors** and **Materialmen** shall furnish a **Contractor Exempt Purchase Certificate** to all persons, firms or corporations from which they purchase tangible personal property for the performance of the **Work** covered by this **Contract**.

62.7 In the event any of the provisions of this Article 62 shall be deemed to be in conflict with any other provisions of this **Contract** or create any ambiguity, then the provisions of this Article 62 shall control.

### ARTICLE 63. INVESTIGATION(S) CLAUSE

63.1 The parties to this **Contract** agree to cooperate fully and faithfully with any investigation, audit or inquiry conducted by a United States, a State of New York (State) or a **City** governmental agency or authority that is empowered directly or by designation to compel the attendance of witnesses and to examine witnesses under oath, or conducted by the Inspector General of a governmental agency that is a party in interest to the transaction, submitted bid, submitted proposal, contract, lease, permit or license that is the subject of the investigation, audit or inquiry.

63.2 If any person who has been advised that his/her statement, and any information from such statement, will not be used against him/her in any subsequent criminal proceeding refuses to testify before a grand jury or other governmental agency or authority empowered directly or by designation to compel the attendance of witnesses and to examine witnesses under oath concerning the award of or performance under any transaction, agreement, lease, permit, contract, or license entered into with the **City**, the State, or any political subdivision or public authority thereof, or the Port Authority of New York and New Jersey, or any local development corporation within the **City**, or any public benefit corporation organized under the **Laws** of the State of New York, or;

63.3 If any person refuses to testify for a reason other than the assertion of his/her privilege against self incrimination in an investigation, audit or inquiry conducted by a **City** or State governmental agency or authority empowered directly or by designation to compel the attendance of witnesses and to take testimony under oath, or by the Inspector General of the governmental agency that is a party in interest in, and is seeking testimony concerning the award of, or performance under any transaction, agreement, lease, permit, contract, or license entered into with the **City**, the State, or any political subdivision thereof or any local development corporation within the **City**, then;

63.4 The **Commissioner** whose **Agency** is a party in interest to the transaction, submitted bid, submitted proposal, contract, lease, permit, or license shall convene a hearing, upon not less than five (5) **Days'** written notice to the parties involved to determine if any penalties should attach for the failure of a person to testify.

63.5 If any non-governmental party to the hearing requests an adjournment, the **Commissioner** who convened the hearing may, upon granting the adjournment, suspend any contract, lease, permit, or license, pending the final determination pursuant to Article 63.7 without the **City** incurring any penalty or damages for delay or otherwise.

63.6 The penalties which may attach after a final determination by the **Commissioner** may include but shall not exceed:

63.6.1 The disqualification for a period not to exceed five (5) years from the date of an adverse determination for any person, or any entity of which such person was a member at the time the testimony was sought, from submitting bids for, or transacting business with, or entering into or obtaining any contract, lease, permit or license with or from the **City**; and/or

63.6.2 The cancellation or termination of any and all such existing **City** contracts, leases, permits or licenses that the refusal to testify concerns and that have not been assigned as permitted under this **Contract**, nor the proceeds of which pledged, to an unaffiliated and unrelated institutional lender for fair value prior to the issuance of the notice scheduling the hearing, without the **City** incurring any penalty or damages on account of such cancellation or termination; monies lawfully due for goods delivered, work done, rentals, or fees accrued prior to the cancellation or termination shall be paid by the **City**.

63.7 The **Commissioner** shall consider and address in reaching his/her determination and in assessing an appropriate penalty the factors in Articles 63.7.1 and 63.7.2. The **Commissioner** may also consider, if relevant and appropriate, the criteria established in Articles 63.7.3 and 63.7.4, in addition to any other information which may be relevant and appropriate:

63.7.1 The party's good faith endeavors or lack thereof to cooperate fully and faithfully with any governmental investigation or audit, including but not limited to the discipline, discharge, or disassociation of any person failing to testify, the production of accurate and complete books and records, and the forthcoming testimony of all other members, agents, assignees or fiduciaries whose testimony is sought.

63.7.2 The relationship of the person who refused to testify to any entity that is a party to the hearing, including but not limited to, whether the person whose testimony is sought has an ownership interest in the entity and/or the degree of authority and responsibility the person has within the entity.

63.7.3 The nexus of the testimony sought to the subject entity and its contracts, leases, permits or licenses with the **City**.

63.7.4 The effect a penalty may have on an unaffiliated and unrelated party or entity that has a significant interest in an entity subject to penalties under Article 63.6, provided that the party or entity has given actual notice to the **Commissioner** upon the acquisition of the interest, or at the hearing called for in Article 63.4, gives notice and proves that such interest was previously acquired. Under either circumstance the party or entity shall present evidence at the hearing demonstrating the potential adverse impact a penalty will have on such person or entity.

63.8 Definitions:

63.8.1 The term "license" or "permit" as used in this Article 63 shall be defined as a license, permit, franchise or concession not granted as a matter of right.

63.8.2 The term "person" as used in this Article 63 shall be defined as any natural person doing business alone or associated with another person or entity as a partner, director, officer, principal or employee.

63.8.3 The term "entity" as used in this Article 63 shall be defined as any firm, partnership, corporation, association, joint venture, or person that receives monies, benefits, licenses, leases, or permits from or through the **City** or otherwise transacts business with the **City**.

63.8.4 The term "member" as used in this Article 63 shall be defined as any person associated with another person or entity as a partner, director, officer, principal or employee.

63.9 In addition to and notwithstanding any other provision of this **Contract**, the **Commissioner** may in his/her sole discretion terminate this **Contract** upon not less than three (3) **Days**' written notice in the event the **Contractor** fails to promptly report in writing to the **Commissioner** of the Department of Investigations ("DOI") of the **City** any solicitation of money, goods, requests for future employment or other benefit or thing of value, by or on behalf of any employee of the **City** or other person, firm, corporation or entity for any purpose which may be related to the procurement or obtaining of this **Contract** by the **Contractor**, or affecting the performance of this **Contract**.

#### **ARTICLE 64. TERMINATION BY THE CITY**

64.1 In addition to termination pursuant to any other article of this **Contract**, the **Commissioner** may, at any time, terminate this **Contract** by written notice to the **Contractor**. In the event of termination, the **Contractor** shall, upon receipt of such notice, unless otherwise directed by the **Commissioner**:

64.1.1 Stop **Work** on the date specified in the notice;

64.1.2 Take such action as may be necessary for the protection and preservation of the **City's** materials and property;

64.1.3 Cancel all cancelable orders for material and equipment;

64.1.4 Assign to the **City** and deliver to the **Site** or another location designated by the **Commissioner**, any non-cancelable orders for material and equipment that is not capable of use except in the performance of this **Contract** and has been specifically fabricated for the sole purpose of this **Contract** and not incorporated in the **Work**;

64.1.5 Take no action which will increase the amounts payable by the **City** under this **Contract**.

64.2 In the event of termination by the **City** pursuant to this Article 64, payment to the **Contractor** shall be in accordance with Articles 64.2.1, 64.2.2 or 64.2.3, to the extent that each respective article applies.

64.2.1 Lump Sum Contracts or Items: On all lump sum **Contracts**, or on lump sum items in a **Contract**, the **City** will pay the **Contractor** the sum of the amounts described in Articles 64.2.1(a) and 64.2.1(b), less all payments previously made pursuant to this **Contract**. On lump sum **Contracts** only, the **City** will also pay the **Contractor** an additional sum as provided in Article 64.2.1(c).

64.2.1(a) For **Work** completed prior to the notice of termination, the **Contractor** shall be paid a pro rata portion of the lump sum bid amount, plus approved change orders, based upon the percent completion of the **Work**, as determined by the

**Commissioner.** For the purpose of determining the pro rata portion of the lump sum bid amount to which the **Contractor** is entitled, the bid breakdown submitted in accordance with Article 41 shall be considered, but shall not be dispositive. The **Commissioner's** determination hereunder shall be final, binding, and conclusive.

64.2.1(b) For non-cancelable material and equipment that is not capable of use except in the performance of this **Contract** and has been specifically fabricated for the sole purpose of this **Contract**, but not yet incorporated in the **Work**, the **Contractor** shall be paid the lesser of the following, less salvage value:

64.2.1(b)(i) The Direct Cost, as defined in Article 64.2.4; or

64.2.1(b)(ii) The fair and reasonable value, if less than Direct Cost, of such material and equipment, plus necessary and reasonable delivery costs.

64.2.1(b)(iii) In addition, the **Contractor** shall be paid five (5%) percent of the amount described in Article 64.2.1(b)(i) or Article 64.2.1(b)(ii), whichever applies.

64.2.1(c) Except as otherwise provided in Article 64.2.1(d), on all lump sum **Contracts**, the **Contractor** shall be paid the percentage indicated below applied to the difference between the total lump sum bid amount and the total of all payments made prior to the notice of termination plus all payments allowed pursuant to Articles 64.2.1(a) and 64.2.1(b):

64.2.1(c)(i) Five (5%) percent of the first five million (\$5,000,000) dollars; and

64.2.1(c)(ii) Three (3%) percent of any amount between five million (\$5,000,000) dollars and fifteen million (\$15,000,000) dollars; plus

64.2.1(c)(iii) One (1%) percent of any amount over fifteen million (\$15,000,000) dollars.

64.2.1(d) In the event the **City** terminates a lump sum **Contract** pursuant to this Article 64 within ninety (90) **Days** after registration of the **Contract** with the **Comptroller**, the **Contractor** shall be paid one (1%) percent of the difference between the lump sum bid amount and the total of all payments made pursuant to this Article 64.2.

64.2.2 Unit Price Contracts or Items: On all unit price **Contracts**, or on unit price items in a **Contract**, the **City** will pay the **Contractor** the sum of the amounts described in Articles 64.2.2(a) and 64.2.2(b), less all payments previously made pursuant to this **Contract**:

64.2.2(a) For all completed units, the unit price stated in the **Contract**, and

64.2.2(b) For units that have been ordered but are only partially completed, the **Contractor** will be paid:

64.2.2(b)(i) A pro rata portion of the unit price stated in the **Contract** based upon the percent completion of the unit and

64.2.2(b)(ii) For non-cancelable material and equipment, payment will be made pursuant to Article 64.2.1(b).

64.2.3 Time and Materials Contracts or Items Based on Time and Material Records: On all **Contracts** or items in a **Contract** where payment for the **Work** is based on time and material records, the **Contractor** shall be paid in accordance with Article 26, less all payments previously made pursuant to this **Contract**.

64.2.4 Direct Costs: Direct Costs as used in this Article 64.2 shall mean:

64.2.4(a) The actual purchase price of material and equipment, plus necessary and reasonable delivery costs,

64.2.4(b) The actual cost of labor involved in construction and installation at the **Site**, and

64.2.4(c) The actual cost of necessary bonds and insurance purchased pursuant to requirements of this **Contract** less any amounts that have been or should be refunded by the **Contractor's** sureties or insurance carriers.

64.2.4(d) Direct Costs shall not include overhead.

64.3 In no event shall any payments under this Article 64 exceed the **Contract** price for such items.

64.4 All payments pursuant to Article 64 shall be in the nature of liquidated damages and shall be accepted by the **Contractor** in full satisfaction of all claims against the **City**.

64.5 The **City** may deduct or set off against any sums due and payable pursuant to this Article 64, any deductions authorized by this **Contract** or by **Law** (including but not limited to liquidated damages) and any claims it may have against the **Contractor**. The **City's** exercise of the right to terminate the **Contract** pursuant to this Article 64 shall not impair or otherwise effect the **City's** right to assert any claims it may have against the **Contractor** in a plenary action.

64.6 Where the **Work** covered by the **Contract** has been substantially completed, as determined in writing by the **Commissioner**, termination of the **Work** shall be handled as an omission of **Work** pursuant to Articles 29 and 33, in which case a change order will be issued to reflect an appropriate reduction in the **Contract** sum, or if the amount is determined after final payment, such amount shall be paid by the **Contractor**.

#### **ARTICLE 65. CHOICE OF LAW, CONSENT TO JURISDICTION AND VENUE**

65.1 This **Contract** shall be deemed to be executed in the **City** regardless of the domicile of the **Contractor**, and shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the **Laws** of the State of New York and the **Laws** of the United States, where applicable.

65.2 The parties agree that any and all claims asserted against the **City** arising under this **Contract** or related thereto shall be heard and determined in the courts of the State of New York ("New York State Courts") located in the **City** and County of New York. To effect this **Contract** and intent, the **Contractor** agrees:

65.2.1 If the **City** initiates any action against the **Contractor** in Federal court or in a New York State Court, service of process may be made on the **Contractor** either in person, wherever such **Contractor** may be found, or by registered mail addressed to the **Contractor** at its address as set forth in this **Contract**, or to such other address as the **Contractor** may provide to the **City** in writing; and

65.2.2 With respect to any action between the **City** and the **Contractor** in a New York State Court, the **Contractor** hereby expressly waives and relinquishes any rights it might otherwise have:

65.2.2(a) To move to dismiss on grounds of forum non conveniens;

65.2.2(b) To remove to Federal Court; and

65.2.2(c) To move for a change of venue to a New York State Court outside New York County.

65.2.3 With respect to any action brought by the **City** against the **Contractor** in a Federal Court located in the **City**, the **Contractor** expressly waives and relinquishes any right it might otherwise have to move to transfer the action to a Federal Court outside the **City**.

65.2.4 If the **Contractor** commences any action against the **City** in a court located other than in the **City** and County of New York, upon request of the **City**, the **Contractor** shall either consent to a transfer of the action to a New York State Court of competent jurisdiction located in the **City** and County of New York or, if the Court where the action is initially brought will not or cannot transfer the action, the **Contractor** shall consent to dismiss such action without prejudice and may thereafter reinstate the action in a New York State Court of competent jurisdiction in New York County.

65.3 If any provision(s) of this Article 65 is held unenforceable for any reason, each and all other provision(s) shall nevertheless remain in full force and effect.

#### **ARTICLE 66. PARTICIPATION IN AN INTERNATIONAL BOYCOTT**

66.1 The **Contractor** agrees that neither the **Contractor** nor any substantially owned affiliated company is participating or shall participate in an international boycott in violation of the provisions of the Federal Export Administration Act of 1979, as amended, or the regulations of the United States Department of Commerce (Commerce Department) promulgated thereunder.

66.2 Upon the final determination by the Commerce Department or any other agency of the United States as to, or conviction of the **Contractor** or a substantially-owned affiliated company thereof for participation in an international boycott in violation of the provisions of the Export Administration Act of 1979, as amended, or the regulations promulgated thereunder, the **Comptroller** may, at his/her option, render forfeit and void this **Contract**.

66.3 The **Contractor** shall comply in all respects, with the provisions of Section 6-114 of the Administrative Code and the rules and regulations issued by the **Comptroller** thereunder.

## ARTICLE 67. LOCALLY BASED ENTERPRISE PROGRAM

67.1 This **Contract** is subject to the requirements of Section 6-108.1 of the Administrative Code and regulations promulgated thereunder. No construction contract shall be awarded unless and until these requirements have been complied with in their entirety; however, compliance with this Article 67 is not required if the Agency sets Subcontractor Participation Goals for Minority- and Women-Owned Business Enterprises (M/WBEs).

67.2 Unless specifically waived by the **Commissioner** with the approval of the Division of Economic and Financial Opportunity of the **City** Department of Business Services, if any portion of the **Contract** is subcontracted, not less than ten (10%) percent of the total dollar amount of the **Contract** shall be awarded to locally based enterprises (LBEs); except that where less than ten (10%) percent of the total dollar amount of the **Contract** is subcontracted, such lesser percentage shall be so awarded.

67.3 The **Contractor** shall not require performance and payment bonds from LBE **Subcontractors**.

67.4 If the **Contractor** has indicated prior to award that no **Work** will be subcontracted, no **Work** shall be subcontracted without the prior approval of the **Commissioner**, which shall be granted only if the **Contractor** makes a good faith effort beginning at least six (6) weeks before the **Work** is to be performed to obtain LBE **Subcontractors** to perform the **Work**.

67.5 If the **Contractor** has not identified sufficient LBE **Subcontractors** prior to award, it shall sign a letter of compliance stating that it complies with Section 6-108.1 of the Administrative Code, recognizes that achieving the LBE requirement is a condition of its **Contract**, and shall submit documentation demonstrating its good faith efforts to obtain LBEs. After award, the **Contractor** shall begin to solicit LBE's to perform subcontracted **Work** at least six (6) weeks before the date such **Work** is to be performed and shall demonstrate that a good faith effort has been made to obtain LBEs on each subcontract until it meets the required percentage.

67.6 Failure of the **Contractor** to comply with the requirements of Section 6-108.1 of the Administrative Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder shall constitute a material breach of this **Contract**. Remedy for such breach may include the imposition of any or all of the following sanctions:

67.6.1 Reducing the **Contractor's** compensation by an amount equal to the dollar value of the percentage of the LBE subcontracting requirement not complied with;

67.6.2 Declaring the **Contractor** in default;

67.6.3 If the **Contractor** is an LBE, de-certifying and declaring the **Contractor** ineligible to participate in the LBE program for a period of up to three (3) years.

## ARTICLE 68. ANTITRUST

68.1 The **Contractor** hereby assigns, sells, and transfers to the **City** all right, title, and interest in and to any claims and causes of action arising under the antitrust **Laws** of New York State or of the United States relating to the particular goods or services purchased or procured by the **City** under this **Contract**.

## ARTICLE 69. MacBRIDE PRINCIPLES PROVISIONS

### 69.1 Notice To All Prospective Contractors:

69.1.1 Local Law No. 34 of 1991 became effective on September 10, 1991 and added Section 6-115.1 of the Administrative Code. The local Law provides for certain restrictions on **City Contracts** to express the opposition of the people of the City to employment discrimination practices in Northern Ireland to promote freedom of work-place opportunity.

69.1.2 Pursuant to Section 6-115.1, prospective **Contractors** for **Contracts** to provide goods or services involving an expenditure of an amount greater than ten thousand (\$10,000.) dollars, or for construction involving an amount greater than fifteen thousand (\$15,000.) dollars, are asked to sign a rider in which they covenant and represent, as a material condition of their **Contract**, that any business operations in Northern Ireland conducted by the **Contractor** and any individual or legal entity in which the **Contractor** holds a ten (10%) percent or greater ownership interest in the **Contractor** will be conducted in accordance with the MacBride Principles of nondiscrimination in employment.

69.1.3 Prospective **Contractors** are not required to agree to these conditions. However, in the case of **Contracts** let by competitive sealed bidding, whenever the lowest responsible bidder has not agreed to stipulate to the conditions set forth in this notice and another bidder who has agreed to stipulate to such conditions has submitted a bid within five (5%) percent of the lowest responsible bid for a **Contract** to supply goods, services or construction of comparable quality, the **Agency** shall refer such bids to the Mayor, the Speaker or other officials, as appropriate, who may determine, in accordance with applicable Law, that it is in the best interest of the City that the **Contract** be awarded to other than the lowest responsible pursuant to Section 313(b)(2) of the City Charter.

69.1.4 In the case of **Contracts** let by other than competitive sealed bidding, if a prospective **Contractor** does not agree to these conditions, no **Agency**, elected official or the **City Council** shall award the **Contract** to that bidder unless the **Agency** seeking to use the goods, services or construction certifies in writing that the **Contract** is necessary for the **Agency** to perform its functions and there is no other responsible **Contractor** who will supply goods, services or construction of comparable quality at a comparable price.

69.2 In accordance with Section 6-115.1 of the Administrative Code, the **Contractor** stipulates that such **Contractor** and any individual or legal entity in which the **Contractor** holds a ten (10%) percent or greater ownership interest in the **Contractor** either:

69.2.1 Have no business operations in Northern Ireland, or

69.2.2 Shall take lawful steps in good faith to conduct any business operations they have in Northern Ireland in accordance with the MacBride Principles, and shall permit independent monitoring of their compliance with such principles.

69.3 For purposes of this Article, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

69.3.1 "MacBride Principles" shall mean those principles relating to nondiscrimination in employment and freedom of work-place opportunity which require employers doing business in Northern Ireland to:

- 69.3.1(a) increase the representation of individuals from under-represented religious groups in the workforce, including managerial, supervisory, administrative, clerical and technical jobs;
- 69.3.1(b) take steps to promote adequate security for the protection of employees from under-represented religious groups both at the work-place and while traveling to and from **Work**;
- 69.3.1(c) ban provocative religious or political emblems from the workplace;
- 69.3.1(d) publicly advertise all job openings and make special recruitment efforts to attract applicants from under-represented religious groups;
- 69.3.1(e) establish layoff, recall, and termination procedures which do not in practice favor a particular religious group;
- 69.3.1(f) abolish all job reservations, apprenticeship restrictions and different employment criteria which discriminate on the basis of religion;
- 69.3.1(g) develop training programs that will prepare substantial numbers of current employees from under-represented religious groups for skilled jobs, including the expansion of existing programs and the creation of new programs to train, upgrade, and improve the skills of workers from under-represented religious groups;
- 69.3.1(h) establish procedures to assess, identify, and actively recruit employees from under-represented religious groups with potential for further advancement; and
- 69.3.1(i) appoint a senior management staff member to oversee affirmative action efforts and develop a timetable to ensure their full implementation.

69.4 The **Contractor** agrees that the covenants and representations in Article 69.2 are material conditions to this **Contract**. In the event the **Agency** receives information that the **Contractor** who made the stipulation required by this Article 69 is in violation thereof, the **Agency** shall review such information and give the **Contractor** an opportunity to respond. If the **Agency** finds that a violation has occurred, the **Agency** shall have the right to declare the **Contractor** in default and/or terminate this **Contract** for cause and procure supplies, services or **Work** from another source in the manner the **Agency** deems proper. In the event of such termination, the **Contractor** shall pay to the **Agency**, or the **Agency** in its sole discretion may withhold from any amounts otherwise payable to the **Contractor**, the difference between the **Contract** price for the uncompleted portion of this **Contract** and the cost to the **Agency** of completing performance of this **Contract** either itself or by engaging another **Contractor** or **Contractors**. In the case of a requirement **Contract**, the **Contractor** shall be liable for such difference in price for the entire amount of supplies required by the **Agency** for the uncompleted term of **Contractor's Contract**. In the case of a construction **Contract**, the **Agency** shall also have the right to hold the **Contractor** in partial or total default in accordance with the default provisions of this **Contract**, and/or may seek debarment or suspension of the **Contractor**. The rights and remedies of the **Agency** hereunder shall be in addition to, and not in lieu of, any rights and remedies the **Agency** has pursuant to this **Contract** or by operation of Law.

## **ARTICLE 70. ELECTRONIC FILING/NYC DEVELOPMENT HUB**

70.1 The **Contractor** shall electronically file all alteration type-2 and alteration type-3 applications via the New York City Development Hub Web site, except applications for the following types of minor alterations: enlargements, curb cuts, legalizations, fire alarms, builders pavement plans, and jobs filed on Landmark Preservation Commission calendared properties. All such filings must be professionally certified. Information about electronic filing via the New York City Development Hub is available on the **City** Department of Buildings Web site at [www.nyc.gov/buildings](http://www.nyc.gov/buildings).

## **ARTICLE 71. PROHIBITION OF TROPICAL HARDWOODS**

71.1 Tropical hardwoods, as defined in Section 165 of the New York State Finance Law (Finance Law), shall not be utilized in the performance of this **Contract** except as expressly permitted by Section 165 of the Finance Law.

## **ARTICLE 72. CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

72.1 Section 2604 of the **City** Charter and other related provisions of the **City** Charter, the Administrative Code, and the Penal Law are applicable under the terms of this **Contract** in relation to conflicts of interest and shall be extended to **Subcontractors** authorized to perform **Work**, labor and services pursuant to this **Contract** and further, it shall be the duty and responsibility of the **Contractor** to so inform its respective **Subcontractors**. Notice is hereby given that, under certain circumstances, penalties may be invoked against the donor as well as the recipient of any form of valuable gift.

## **ARTICLE 73. MERGER CLAUSE**

73.1 The written **Contract** herein, contains all the terms and conditions agreed upon by the parties hereto, and no other agreement, oral or otherwise, regarding the subject matter of this **Contract** shall be deemed to exist or to bind any of the parties hereto, or to vary any of the terms contained herein.

## **ARTICLE 74. STATEMENT OF WORK**

74.1 The **Contractor** shall furnish all labor and materials and perform all **Work** in strict accordance with the **Specifications** and **Addenda** thereto, numbered as shown in Schedule A.

## **ARTICLE 75. COMPENSATION TO BE PAID TO CONTRACTOR**

75.1 The **City** will pay and the **Contractor** will accept in full consideration for the performance of the **Contract**, subject to additions and deductions as provided herein, the total sum shown in Schedule A, this said sum being the amount at which the **Contract** was awarded to the **Contractor** at a public letting thereof, based upon the **Contractor's** bid for the **Contract**.

## **ARTICLE 76. ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFER**

76.1 In accordance with Section 6-107.1 of the Administrative Code, the **Contractor** agrees to accept payments under this **Contract** from the **City** by electronic funds transfer (EFT). An EFT is any

transfer of funds, other than a transaction originated by check, draft or similar paper instrument, which is initiated through an electronic terminal, telephonic instrument or computer or magnetic tape so as to order, instruct or authorize a financial institution to debit or credit an account. Prior to the first payment made under this **Contract**, the **Contractor** shall designate one financial institution or other authorized payment agent and shall complete the attached "EFT Vendor Payment Enrollment Form" in order to provide the Commissioner of the **City** Department of Finance with information necessary for the **Contractor** to receive electronic funds transfer payments through a designated financial institution or authorized payment agent. The crediting of the amount of a payment to the appropriate account on the books of a financial institution or other authorized payment agent designated by the **Contractor** shall constitute full satisfaction by the **City** for the amount of the payment under this **Contract**. The account information supplied by the **Contractor** to facilitate the electronic funds transfer shall remain confidential to the fullest extent provided by **Law**.

76.2 The **Commissioner** may waive the application of the requirements of this Article 76 to payments on contracts entered into pursuant to Section 315 of the **City** Charter. In addition, the Commissioner of the Department of Finance and the Comptroller may jointly issue standards pursuant to which the **Agency** may waive the requirements of this Article 76 for payments in the following circumstances: (i) for individuals or classes of individuals for whom compliance imposes a hardship; (ii) for classifications or types of checks; or (iii) in other circumstances as may be necessary in the interest of the **City**.

#### **ARTICLE 77. RECORDS RETENTION**

77.1 The **Contractor** agrees to retain all books, records, and other documents relevant to this **Contract** for six years after the final payment or termination of this **Contract**, whichever is later. **City**, state, and federal auditors and any other persons duly authorized by the **City** shall have full access to and the right to examine any such books, records, and other documents during the retention period.

#### **ARTICLE 78. EXAMINATION AND VIEWING OF SITE, CONSIDERATION OF OTHER SOURCES OF INFORMATION AND CHANGED SITE CONDITIONS**

78.1 Pre-Bidding (Investigation) Viewing of Site – Bidders must carefully view and examine the **Site** of the proposed **Work**, as well as its adjacent area, and seek other usual sources of information, for they will be conclusively presumed to have full knowledge of any and all conditions and hazards on, about or above the **Site** relating to or affecting in any way the performance of the **Work** to be done under the **Contract** that were or should have been known by a reasonably prudent bidder. To arrange a date for visiting the **Site**, bidders are to contact the **Agency** contact person specified in the bid documents.

78.2 Should the **Contractor** encounter during the progress of the **Work** site conditions or environmental hazards at the **Site** materially differing from any shown on the **Contract Drawings** or indicated in the **Specifications** or such conditions or environmental hazards as could not reasonably have been anticipated by the **Contractor**, which conditions or hazards will materially affect the cost of the **Work** to be done under the **Contract**, the attention of the **Commissioner** must be called immediately to such conditions or hazards before they are disturbed. The **Commissioner** shall thereupon promptly investigate the conditions or hazards. If the **Commissioner** finds that they do so materially differ, and that they could not have been reasonably anticipated by the **Contractor**, the **Contract** may be modified with the **Commissioner's** written approval.

**ARTICLE 79. PARTICIPATION BY MINORITY-OWNED AND WOMEN-OWNED  
BUSINESS ENTERPRISES IN CITY PROCUREMENT**

**NOTICE TO ALL PROSPECTIVE CONTRACTORS**

**ARTICLE I. M/WBE PROGRAM**

Local Law No. 129 of 2005 added and Local Law 1 of 2013 amended Section 6-129 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York (hereinafter "Section 6-129"). Section 6-129 establishes the program for participation in City procurement ("M/WBE Program") by minority-owned business enterprises ("MBEs") and women-owned business enterprises ("WBEs"), certified in accordance with Section 1304 of the New York City Charter. As stated in Section 6-129, the intent of the program is to address the impact of discrimination on the City's procurement process, and to promote the public interest in avoiding fraud and favoritism in the procurement process, increasing competition for City business, and lowering contract costs. The contract provisions contained herein are pursuant to Section 6-129, and the rules of the Department of Small Business Services ("DSBS") promulgated thereunder.

**If this Contract is subject to the M/WBE Program established by Section 6-129, the specific requirements of MBE and/or WBE participation for this Contract are set forth in Schedule B of the Contract (entitled the "M/WBE Utilization Plan"), and are detailed below. The Contractor must comply with all applicable MBE and WBE requirements for this Contract.**

All provisions of Section 6-129 are hereby incorporated in the Contract by reference and all terms used herein that are not defined herein shall have the meanings given such terms in Section 6-129. Article I, Part A, below, sets forth provisions related to the participation goals for construction, standard and professional services contracts. Article I, Part B, below, sets forth miscellaneous provisions related to the M/WBE Program.

**PART A**

**PARTICIPATION GOALS FOR CONSTRUCTION, STANDARD  
AND PROFESSIONAL SERVICES CONTRACTS OR TASK ORDERS**

1. The MBE and/or WBE Participation Goals established for this Contract or Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, ("Participation Goals"), as applicable, are set forth on Schedule B, Part I to this Contract (see Page 1, line 1 Total Participation Goals) or will be set forth on Schedule B, Part I to Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, as applicable.

The **Participation Goals** represent a percentage of the total dollar value of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, that may be achieved by awarding subcontracts to firms certified with New York City Department of Small Business Services as MBEs and/or WBEs, and/or by crediting the participation of prime contractors and/or qualified joint ventures as provided in Section 3 below, unless the goals have been waived or modified by Agency in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Sections 10 and 11 below, respectively.

2. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, Contractor agrees or shall agree as a material term of the Contract that Contractor shall be subject to the **Participation Goals**, unless the goals are waived or modified by Agency in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Sections 10 and 11 below, respectively.

3. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, a Contractor that is an MBE and/or WBE shall be permitted to count its own participation toward fulfillment of the relevant **Participation Goal**, provided that in accordance with Section 6-129 the value of Contractor's participation shall be determined by subtracting from the total value of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, any amounts that the Contractor pays to direct subcontractors (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(13)), and provided further that a Contractor that is certified as both an MBE and a WBE may count its own participation either toward the goal for MBEs or the goal for WBEs, but not both.

A Contractor that is a qualified joint venture (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(30)) shall be permitted to count a percentage of its own participation toward fulfillment of the relevant **Participation Goal**. In accordance with Section 6-129, the value of Contractor's participation shall be determined by subtracting from the total value of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, any amounts that Contractor pays to direct subcontractors, and then multiplying the remainder by the percentage to be applied to total profit to determine the amount to which an MBE or WBE is entitled pursuant to the joint venture agreement, provided that where a participant in a joint venture is certified as both an MBE and a WBE, such amount shall be counted either toward the goal for MBEs or the goal for WBEs, but not both.

4. A. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract, a prospective contractor shall be required to submit with its bid or proposal, as applicable, a completed Schedule B, M/WBE Utilization Plan, Part II (see Pages 2-4) indicating: (a) whether the contractor is an MBE or WBE, or qualified joint venture; (b) the percentage of work it intends to award to direct subcontractors; and (c) in cases where the contractor intends to award direct subcontracts, a description of the type and dollar value of work designated for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs, and the time frames in which such work is scheduled to begin and end. In the event that this M/WBE Utilization Plan indicates that the bidder or proposer, as applicable, does not intend to meet the **Participation Goals**, the bid or proposal, as applicable, shall be deemed non-responsive, unless Agency has granted the bidder or proposer, as applicable, a pre-award waiver of the Participation Goals in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Section 10 below.

B. (i) If this Contract is for a master services agreement or other requirements type contract that will result in the issuance of Task Orders that will be individually registered ("Master Services Agreement") and is subject to M/WBE **Participation Goals**, a prospective contractor shall be required to submit with its bid or proposal, as applicable, a completed Schedule B, M/WBE Participation Requirements for Master Services Agreements That Will Require Individually Registered Task Orders, Part II (page 2) indicating the prospective contractor's certification and required affirmations to make all reasonable good faith efforts to meet participation goals established on each individual Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, or if a partial waiver is obtained or such goals are modified by the Agency, to meet the modified **Participation Goals** by soliciting and obtaining the participation of certified MBE and/or WBE firms. In the event that the Schedule B indicates that the bidder or proposer, as applicable, does not intend to meet the **Participation Goals** that may be established on Task Orders issued pursuant to this Contract, the bid or proposal, as applicable, shall be deemed nonresponsive.

(ii) **Participation Goals** on a Master Services Agreement will be established for individual Task Orders issued after the Master Services Agreement is awarded. If **Participation Goals** have been established on a Task Order, a contractor shall be required to submit a Schedule B – M/WBE Utilization Plan For Independently Registered Task Orders That Are Issued Pursuant to Master Services Agreements, Part II (see Pages 2-4) indicating: (a) whether the contractor is an MBE or WBE, or qualified joint venture; (b) the percentage of work it intends to award to direct subcontractors; and (c) in cases where the contractor intends to award direct subcontracts, a description of the type and dollar value of work designated for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs, and the time frames in which such work is scheduled to begin and end. The contractor must engage in good faith efforts to meet the **Participation Goals** as established for the Task Order unless Agency has granted the contractor a pre-award waiver of the Participation Goals in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Section 10 below.

**C. THE BIDDER/PROPOSER MUST COMPLETE THE SCHEDULE B INCLUDED HEREIN (SCHEDULE B, PART II). A SCHEDULE B SUBMITTED BY THE BIDDER/PROPOSER WHICH DOES NOT INCLUDE THE VENDOR CERTIFICATION AND REQUIRED AFFIRMATIONS (SEE SECTION V OF PART II) WILL BE DEEMED TO BE NON-RESPONSIVE, UNLESS A FULL WAIVER OF THE PARTICIPATION GOALS IS GRANTED (SCHEDULE B, PART III). IN THE EVENT THAT THE CITY DETERMINES THAT THE BIDDER/PROPOSER HAS SUBMITTED A SCHEDULE B WHERE THE VENDOR CERTIFICATION AND REQUIRED AFFIRMATIONS ARE COMPLETED BUT OTHER ASPECTS OF THE SCHEDULE B ARE NOT COMPLETE, OR CONTAIN A COPY OR COMPUTATION ERROR THAT IS AT ODDS WITH THE VENDOR CERTIFICATION AND AFFIRMATIONS, THE BIDDER/PROPOSER WILL BE NOTIFIED BY THE AGENCY AND WILL BE GIVEN FOUR (4) CALENDAR DAYS FROM RECEIPT OF NOTIFICATION TO CURE THE SPECIFIED DEFICIENCIES AND RETURN A COMPLETED SCHEDULE B TO THE AGENCY. FAILURE TO DO SO WILL RESULT IN A DETERMINATION THAT THE BID/PROPOSAL IS NON-RESPONSIVE. RECEIPT OF NOTIFICATION IS DEFINED AS THE DATE NOTICE IS E-MAILED OR FAXED (IF THE BIDDER/PROPOSER HAS PROVIDED AN E-MAIL ADDRESS OR FAX NUMBER), OR NO LATER THAN FIVE (5) CALENDAR DAYS FROM THE DATE OF MAILING OR UPON DELIVERY, IF DELIVERED.**

5. Where an M/WBE Utilization Plan has been submitted, the Contractor shall, within 30 days of issuance by Agency of a notice to proceed, submit a list of proposed persons or entities to which it intends to award subcontracts within the subsequent 12 months. In the case of multiyear contracts, such list shall also be submitted every year thereafter. The Agency may also require the Contractor to report periodically about the contracts awarded by its direct subcontractors to indirect subcontractors (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(22)). **PLEASE NOTE: If this Contract is a public works project subject to GML §101(5) (i.e., a contract valued at or below \$3M for projects in New York City) or if the Contract is subject to a project labor agreement in accordance with Labor Law §222, and the bidder is required to identify at the time of bid submission its intended subcontractors for the Wicks trades (plumbing and gas fitting; steam heating, hot water heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC); and electric wiring), the Contractor must identify all those to which it intends to award construction subcontracts for any portion of the Wicks trade work at the time of bid submission, regardless of what point in the life of the contract such subcontracts will occur. In identifying intended subcontractors in the bid submission, bidders may satisfy any Participation Goals established for this Contract by proposing one or more subcontractors that are MBEs and/or WBEs for any portion of the Wicks trade work. In the event that the Contractor's selection of a subcontractor is disapproved, the Contractor shall have a reasonable time to propose alternate subcontractors.**

6. MBE and WBE firms must be certified by DSBS in order for the Contractor to credit such firms' participation toward the attainment of the **Participation Goals**. Such certification must occur prior to the

firms' commencement of work. A list of MBE and WBE firms may be obtained from the DSBS website at [www.nyc.gov/buycertified](http://www.nyc.gov/buycertified), by emailing DSBS at [buyer@sbs.nyc.gov](mailto:buyer@sbs.nyc.gov), by calling (212) 513-6356, or by visiting or writing DSBS at 110 William St., New York, New York, 10038, 7th floor. Eligible firms that have not yet been certified may contact DSBS in order to seek certification by visiting [www.nyc.gov/getcertified](http://www.nyc.gov/getcertified), emailing [MWBE@sbs.nyc.gov](mailto:MWBE@sbs.nyc.gov), or calling the DSBS certification helpline at (212) 513-6311. A firm that is certified as both an MBE and a WBE may be counted either toward the goal for MBEs or the goal for WBEs, but not both. No credit shall be given for participation by a graduate MBE or graduate WBE, as defined in Section 6-129(c)(20).

7. Where an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan has been submitted, the Contractor shall, with each voucher for payment, and/or periodically as Agency may require, submit statements, certified under penalty of perjury, which shall include, but not be limited to, the total amount the Contractor paid to its direct subcontractors, and, where applicable pursuant to Section 6-129(j), the total amount direct subcontractors paid to indirect subcontractors; the names, addresses and contact numbers of each MBE or WBE hired as a subcontractor by the Contractor, and, where applicable, hired by any of the Contractor's direct subcontractors; and the dates and amounts paid to each MBE or WBE. The Contractor shall also submit, along with its voucher for final payment: the total amount it paid to subcontractors, and, where applicable pursuant to Section 6-129(j), the total amount its direct subcontractors paid directly to their indirect subcontractors; and a final list, certified under penalty of perjury, which shall include the name, address and contact information of each subcontractor that is an MBE or WBE, the work performed by, and the dates and amounts paid to each.

8. If payments made to, or work performed by, MBEs or WBEs are less than the amount specified in the Contractor's **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, Agency shall take appropriate action, in accordance with Section 6-129 and Article II below, unless the Contractor has obtained a modification of its **M/WBE** Utilization Plan in accordance with Section 6-129 and Part A, Section 11 below.

9. Where an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan has been submitted, and the Contractor requests a change order the value of which exceeds the greater of 10 percent of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, or \$500,000, Agency shall review the scope of work for the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, and the scale and types of work involved in the change order, and determine whether the **Participation Goals** should be modified.

10. Pre-award waiver of the **Participation Goals**. (a) A bidder or proposer, or contractor with respect to a Task Order, may seek a pre-award full or partial waiver of the **Participation Goals** in accordance with Section 6-129, which requests that Agency change one or more **Participation Goals** on the grounds that the **Participation Goals** are unreasonable in light of the availability of certified firms to perform the services required, or by demonstrating that it has legitimate business reasons for proposing a lower level of subcontracting in its **M/WBE** Utilization Plan.

(b) To apply for a full or partial waiver of the **Participation Goals**, a bidder, proposer, or contractor, as applicable, must complete Part III (Page 5) of Schedule B and submit such request no later than seven (7) calendar days prior to the date and time the bids, proposals, or Task Orders are due, in writing to the Agency by email at [poped@ddc.nyc.gov](mailto:poped@ddc.nyc.gov) or via facsimile at (718) 391-1886. Bidders, proposers, or contractors, as applicable, who have submitted requests will receive an Agency response by no later than two (2) calendar days prior to the due date for bids, proposals, or Task Orders; provided, however, that if that date would fall on a weekend or holiday, an Agency response will be provided by close-of-business on the business day before such weekend or holiday date.

(c) If the Agency determines that the **Participation Goals** are unreasonable in light of the availability of certified firms to perform the services required, it shall revise the solicitation and extend the deadline for bids and proposals, or revise the Task Order, as applicable.

(d) Agency may grant a full or partial waiver of the **Participation Goals** to a bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, who demonstrates—before submission of the bid, proposal or Task Order, as applicable—that it has legitimate business reasons for proposing the level of subcontracting in its **M/WBE Utilization Plan**. In making its determination, Agency shall consider factors that shall include, but not be limited to, whether the bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, has the capacity and the bona fide intention to perform the Contract without any subcontracting, or to perform the Contract without awarding the amount of subcontracts represented by the **Participation Goals**. In making such determination, Agency may consider whether the **M/WBE Utilization Plan** is consistent with past subcontracting practices of the bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, whether the bidder, proposer or contractor, as applicable, has made efforts to form a joint venture with a certified firm, and whether the bidder, proposer, or contractor, as applicable, has made good faith efforts to identify other portions of the Contract that it intends to subcontract.

11. **Modification of M/WBE Utilization Plan.** (a) A Contractor may request a modification of its **M/WBE Utilization Plan** after award of this Contract. **PLEASE NOTE: If this Contract is a public works project subject to GML §101(5) (i.e., a contract valued at or below \$3M for projects in New York City) or if the Contract is subject to a project labor agreement in accordance with Labor Law §222, and the bidder is required to identify at the time of bid submission its intended subcontractors for the Wicks trades (plumbing and gas fitting; steam heating, hot water heating, ventilating and air conditioning (HVAC); and electric wiring), the Contractor may request a Modification of its M/WBE Utilization Plan as part of its bid submission.** The Agency may grant a request for Modification of a Contractor's **M/WBE Utilization Plan** if it determines that the Contractor has established, with appropriate documentary and other evidence, that it made reasonable, good faith efforts to meet the **Participation Goals**. In making such determination, Agency shall consider evidence of the following efforts, as applicable, along with any other relevant factors:

- (i) The Contractor advertised opportunities to participate in the Contract, where appropriate, in general circulation media, trade and professional association publications and small business media, and publications of minority and women's business organizations;
- (ii) The Contractor provided notice of specific opportunities to participate in the Contract, in a timely manner, to minority and women's business organizations;
- (iii) The Contractor sent written notices, by certified mail or facsimile, in a timely manner, to advise MBEs or WBEs that their interest in the Contract was solicited;
- (iv) The Contractor made efforts to identify portions of the work that could be substituted for portions originally designated for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs in the **M/WBE Utilization Plan**, and for which the Contractor claims an inability to retain MBEs or WBEs;
- (v) The Contractor held meetings with MBEs and/or WBEs prior to the date their bids or proposals were due, for the purpose of explaining in detail the scope and requirements of the work for which their bids or proposals were solicited;
- (vi) The Contractor made efforts to negotiate with MBEs and/or WBEs as relevant to perform specific subcontracts, or act as suppliers or service providers;
- (vii) Timely written requests for assistance made by the Contractor to Agency's **M/WBE liaison officer** and to **DSBS**;
- (viii) Description of how recommendations made by **DSBS** and Agency were acted upon and an explanation of why action upon such recommendations did not lead to the desired level of participation of MBEs and/or WBEs.

Agency's **M/WBE officer** shall provide written notice to the Contractor of the determination.

(b) The Agency may modify the **Participation Goals** when the scope of the work has been changed by the Agency in a manner that affects the scale and types of work that the Contractor indicated in its **M/WBE Utilization Plan** would be awarded to subcontractors.

12. If this Contract is for an indefinite quantity of construction, standard or professional services or is a requirements type contract and the Contractor has submitted an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan and has committed to subcontract work to MBEs and/or WBEs in order to meet the **Participation Goals**, the Contractor will not be deemed in violation of the M/WBE Program requirements for this Contract with regard to any work which was intended to be subcontracted to an MBE and/or WBE to the extent that the Agency has determined that such work is not needed.

13. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or a Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, at least once annually during the term of the Contract or Task Order, as applicable, Agency shall review the Contractor's progress toward attainment of its M/WBE Utilization Plan, including but not limited to, by reviewing the percentage of work the Contractor has actually awarded to MBE and/or WBE subcontractors and the payments the Contractor made to such subcontractors.

14. If **Participation Goals** have been established for this Contract or a Task Order issued pursuant to this Contract, Agency shall evaluate and assess the Contractor's performance in meeting those goals, and such evaluation and assessment shall become part of the Contractor's overall contract performance evaluation.

### **PART B: MISCELLANEOUS**

1. The Contractor shall take notice that, if this solicitation requires the establishment of an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, the resulting contract may be audited by DSBS to determine compliance with Section 6-129. See §6-129(e)(10). Furthermore, such resulting contract may also be examined by the City's Comptroller to assess compliance with the **M/WBE** Utilization Plan.

2. Pursuant to DSBS rules, construction contracts that include a requirement for an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan shall not be subject to the law governing Locally Based Enterprises set forth in Section 6-108.1 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York.

3. DSBS is available to assist contractors and potential contractors in determining the availability of MBEs and/or WBEs to participate as subcontractors, and in identifying opportunities that are appropriate for participation by MBEs and/or WBEs in contracts.

4. Prospective contractors are encouraged to enter into qualified joint venture agreements with MBEs and/or WBEs as defined by Section 6-129(c)(30).

5. By submitting a bid or proposal the Contractor hereby acknowledges its understanding of the M/WBE Program requirements set forth herein and the pertinent provisions of Section 6-129, and any rules promulgated thereunder, and if awarded this Contract, the Contractor hereby agrees to comply with the M/WBE Program requirements of this Contract and pertinent provisions of Section 6-129, and any rules promulgated thereunder, all of which shall be deemed to be material terms of this Contract. The Contractor hereby agrees to make all reasonable, good faith efforts to solicit and obtain the participation of MBEs and/or WBEs to meet the required **Participation Goals**.

### **ARTICLE II. ENFORCEMENT**

1. If Agency determines that a bidder or proposer, as applicable, has, in relation to this procurement, violated Section 6-129 or the DSBS rules promulgated pursuant to Section 6-129, Agency may disqualify such bidder or proposer, as applicable, from competing for this Contract and the Agency may revoke such bidder's or proposer's prequalification status, if applicable.

2. Whenever Agency believes that the Contractor or a subcontractor is not in compliance with Section 6-129 or the DSBS rules promulgated pursuant to Section 6-129, or any provision of this Contract that implements Section 6-129, including, but not limited to any **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, Agency shall send a written notice to the Contractor describing the alleged noncompliance and offering the Contractor an opportunity to be heard. Agency shall then conduct an investigation to determine whether such Contractor or subcontractor is in compliance.

3. In the event that the Contractor has been found to have violated Section 6-129, the DSBS rules promulgated pursuant to Section 6-129, or any provision of this Contract that implements Section 6-129, including, but not limited to, any **M/WBE** Utilization Plan, Agency may determine that one of the following actions should be taken:

- (a) entering into an agreement with the Contractor allowing the Contractor to cure the violation;
- (b) revoking the Contractor's pre-qualification to bid or make proposals for future contracts;
- (c) making a finding that the Contractor is in default of the Contract;
- (d) terminating the Contract;
- (e) declaring the Contractor to be in breach of Contract;
- (f) withholding payment or reimbursement;
- (g) determining not to renew the Contract;
- (h) assessing actual and consequential damages;
- (i) assessing liquidated damages or reducing fees, provided that liquidated damages may be based on amounts representing costs of delays in carrying out the purposes of the **M/WBE** Program, or in meeting the purposes of the Contract, the costs of meeting utilization goals through additional procurements, the administrative costs of investigation and enforcement, or other factors set forth in the Contract;
- (j) exercising rights under the Contract to procure goods, services or construction from another contractor and charge the cost of such contract to the Contractor that has been found to be in noncompliance; or
- (k) taking any other appropriate remedy.

4. If an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan has been submitted, and pursuant to this Article II, Section 3, the Contractor has been found to have failed to fulfill its **Participation Goals** contained in its **M/WBE** Utilization Plan or the **Participation Goals** as modified by Agency pursuant to Article I, Part A, Section 11, Agency may assess liquidated damages in the amount of ten percent (10%) of the difference between the dollar amount of work required to be awarded to MBE and/or WBE firms to meet the **Participation Goals** and the dollar amount the Contractor actually awarded and paid, and/or credited, to MBE and/or WBE firms. In view of the difficulty of accurately ascertaining the loss which the City will suffer by reason of Contractor's failure to meet the **Participation Goals**, the foregoing amount is hereby fixed and agreed as the liquidated damages that the City will suffer by reason of such failure, and not as a penalty. Agency may deduct and retain out of any monies which may become due under this Contract the amount of any such liquidated damages; and in case the amount which may become due under this Contract shall be less than the amount of liquidated damages suffered by the City, the Contractor shall be liable to pay the difference.

5. Whenever Agency has reason to believe that an MBE and/or WBE is not qualified for certification, or is participating in a contract in a manner that does not serve a commercially useful function (as defined in Section 6-129(c)(8)), or has violated any provision of Section 6-129, Agency shall notify the Commissioner of DSBS who shall determine whether the certification of such business enterprise should be revoked.

6. Statements made in any instrument submitted to Agency pursuant to Section 6-129 shall be submitted under penalty of perjury and any false or misleading statement or omission shall be grounds for the application of any applicable criminal and/or civil penalties for perjury. The making of a false or fraudulent statement by an MBE and/or WBE in any instrument submitted pursuant to Section 6-129 shall, in addition, be grounds for revocation of its certification.

7. The Contractor's record in implementing its **M/WBE** Utilization Plan shall be a factor in the evaluation of its performance. Whenever Agency determines that a Contractor's compliance with an **M/WBE** Utilization Plan has been unsatisfactory, Agency shall, after consultation with the City Chief Procurement Officer, file an advice of caution form for inclusion in VENDEX as caution data.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Commissioner, on behalf of the City of New York, and the Contractor, have executed this agreement in quadruplicate, two parts of which are to remain with the Commissioner, another to be filed with the Comptroller of the City, and the fourth to be delivered to the Contractor.

THE CITY OF NEW YORK

By: *Lynne Gills*  
Commissioner

MARIA GONZALEZ  
Notary Public, State of New York  
No. 0120221081  
Qualified in Queens County  
Commission Expires Nov. 28, 20

CONTRACTOR:

By: *Mouque Chiofalo*  
(Member of Firm or Officer of Corporation)

Title: *VP*

(Where Contractor is a Corporation, add):  
Attest:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary

(Seal)



ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF A CORPORATION

State of New York County of Queens ss:

On this 5<sup>th</sup> day of Dec, 2019, before me personally came MONIQUE CHIOFALO to me known who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he resides at MONROE TWP, MIDDLESEX COUNTY, NJ that he is the VICE PRESIDENT of the corporation described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; that he knows the seal of said corporation; that one of the seals affixed to said instrument is such seal; that it was so affixed by order of the directors of said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like order.

MARIA JOHNSTON  
Notary Public, State of New York  
No. 01JO6351081  
Qualified in Queens County  
Commission Expires Nov. 28, 2020

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF A PARTNERSHIP

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ to me known, and known to me to be one of the members of the firm of \_\_\_\_\_ described in and who executed the foregoing instrument; and he acknowledged to me that he executed the same as and for the act and deed of said firm.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF AN INDIVIDUAL

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ to me known, and known to me to be the person described in and who executed the foregoing instrument; and acknowledged that he executed the same.

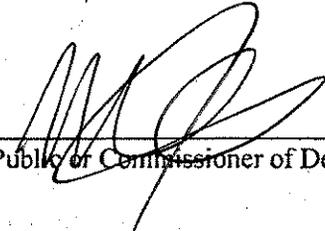
\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds



ACKNOWLEDGEMENT BY COMMISSIONER

State of New York County of Queens ss:

On this 11th day of Dec., 2019, before me personally came Lorraine Grillo to me known, and known to be the ~~Deputy~~ Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction of The City of New York, the person described as such in and who as such executed the foregoing instrument and acknowledged to me that he executed the same as ~~Deputy~~ Commissioner for the purposes therein mentioned.

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

**MARIA JOHNSTON**  
Notary Public, State of New York  
No. 01JO6351081  
Qualified in Queens County  
Commission Expires Nov. 28, 2020

AUTHORITY

MAYOR'S CERTIFICATE NO. CBX  
BUDGET DIRECTOR'S CERTIFICATE NO.

DATED  
DATED

APPROPRIATION  
COMMISSIONER'S CERTIFICATE

In conformity with the provisions of Section 6-101 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York, it is hereby certified that the estimated cost of the work, materials and supplies required by the within Contract, amounting to

one hundred ninety-five thousand

Dollars (\$ 195,000.00 )

is chargeable to the fund of the Department of Design and Construction entitled Code

PV028-155

Notary Public, State of New York  
No. 01108321081  
Qualified in Queens County  
Commission Expires Nov 20, 2011

Department of Design and Construction

I hereby certify that the specifications contained herein comply with the terms and conditions of the BUDGET.

  
Commissioner

COMPTROLLER'S CERTIFICATE

The City of New York \_\_\_\_\_

Pursuant to the provisions of Section 6-101 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York, I hereby certify that there remains unapplied and unexpended a balance of the above mentioned fund applicable to this Contract sufficient to pay the estimated expense of executing the same viz:

\$ \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Comptroller

MAYOR'S CERTIFICATE OR  
CERTIFICATE OF THE DIRECTOR  
OF THE BUDGET

**Performance Bond #1 (Pages 100 to 103): Use if the total contract price is \$5 Million Or Less. Performance Bond #1 has been approved by the U.S. Small Business Administration ("SBA") for participation in its Bond Guarantee Program.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #1 (Page 1)

**PERFORMANCE BOND #1**

**KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS:**

That we, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Principal,"  
and, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Surety" ("Sureties") are held and firmly bound to THE CITY OF NEW YORK, hereinafter referred to as the "City" or to its successors and assigns in the penal sum of \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_) Dollars, lawful money of the United States for the payment of which said sum of money well and truly to be made, we, and each of us, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

**WHEREAS**, the Principal is about to enter, or has entered, into a Contract in writing with the City for  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

a copy of which Contract is annexed to and hereby made a part of this bond as though herein set forth in full;

**NOW, THEREFORE**, the conditions of this obligation are such that if the Principal, his or its representatives or assigns, shall well and faithfully perform the said Contract and all modifications, amendments, additions and alterations thereto that may hereafter be made, according to its terms and its true intent and meaning, including repair and or replacement of defective work and guarantees of maintenance for the periods stated in the Contract, and shall fully indemnify and save harmless the City from all cost and damage which it may suffer by reason of the Principal's default of the Contract, and shall fully reimburse and repay the City for all outlay and expense which the City may incur in making

**Performance Bond #1 (Pages 100 to 103): Use if the total contract price is \$5 Million Or Less.**  
**Performance Bond #1 has been approved by the U.S. Small Business Administration ("SBA") for participation in its Bond Guarantee Program.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #1 (Page 2)

good any such default and shall protect the said City of New York against, and pay any and all amounts, damages, cost and judgments which may or shall be recovered against said City or its officers or agents or which the said City of New York may be called upon to pay any person or corporation by reason of any damages arising or growing out of the Principal's default of the Contract, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

The Surety (Sureties), for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees, upon written notice from the City that the City has determined that the Principal is in default of the Contract, to (1) pay the City the cost to complete the contract as determined by the City in excess of the balance of the Contract held by the City, plus any damages or costs to which the City is entitled, up to the full amount of the above penal sum, (2) fully perform and complete the Work to be performed under the Contract, pursuant to the terms, conditions, and covenants thereof, or (3) tender a completion Contractor that is acceptable to the City. The Surety (Sureties) further agrees, at its option, either to notify the City that it elects to pay the city the cost of completion plus any applicable damages and costs under option (1) above, or to commence and diligently perform the Work specified in the Contract, including physical site work, within twenty-five (25) business days after written notice thereof from the City and, if the Surety elects to fully perform and complete the Work, then to complete all Work within the time set forth in the Contract or such other time as agreed to between the City and Surety in accordance with the Contract. If the Surety elects to tender payment pursuant to (1) above, then the Surety shall tender such amount within fifteen (15) business days notification from the City of the cost of completion. The Surety and the City reserve all rights and defenses each may have against the other; provided, however, that the Surety expressly agrees that its reservation of rights shall not provide a basis for non-performance of its obligation to pay the City the cost of completion, to commence and complete all Work as provided herein, or to tender a completion contractor.

The Surety (Sureties), for value received, for itself and its successors and assigns, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety (Sureties) and its bond shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of time, modification, omission, addition, or change in or to the said Contract or the Work to be performed thereunder, or by any payment thereunder before the time required therein, or by any waiver of any provisions thereof, or any moneys due or to become due thereunder; and said Surety (Sureties) does hereby waive notice of any and all of such extensions, modifications, omissions, additions, changes, payments, and waivers, and hereby expressly stipulates and agrees that any and all things done and omitted to be done by and in relation to subcontractors shall have the same effect as to said Surety (Sureties) as though done or omitted to be done by or in relation to said Principal. Notwithstanding the above, if the City makes payments to the Principal before the time required by the contract that in the aggregate exceed \$100,000 or 10% of the Contract price, whichever is less, and that have not become earned prior to the Principal being found to be in default, then all payments made to the Principal before the time required by the Contract shall be added to the remaining contract value available to be paid for the completion of the Contract as if such sums had not been paid to the Principal, but shall not provide a basis for non-performance of its obligation to pay the City the cost of completion, to commence and to complete all Work as provided herein, or to tender a completion contractor.

**Performance Bond #1 (Pages 100 to 103): Use if the total contract price is \$5 Million Or Less. Performance Bond #1 has been approved by the U.S. Small Business Administration ("SBA") for participation in its Bond Guarantee Program.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #1 (Page 3)

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, The Principal and the Surety (Sureties) have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereunto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, this

\_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Principal (L.S.)

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal) Surety

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Premium Rate \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Premium Cost \_\_\_\_\_

If the Contractor (Principal) is a partnership, the bond should be signed by each of the individuals who are partners.

If the Contractor (Principal) is a corporation, the bond should be signed in its correct corporate name by a duly authorized officer, agent, or attorney-in-fact.

There should be executed an appropriate number of counterparts of the bond corresponding to the number of counterparts of the Contract.

**Performance Bond #1 (Pages 100 to 103): Use if the total contract price is \$5 Million Or Less. Performance Bond #1 has been approved by the U.S. Small Business Administration ("SBA") for participation in its Bond Guarantee Program.m.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #1 (Page 4)

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL IF A CORPORATION**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_ before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_, to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he/she resides at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ ; that he/she is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; and that he/she signed his/her name to the foregoing instrument by order of the directors of said corporation as the duly authorized and binding act thereof.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL IF A PARTNERSHIP**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_ before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_, to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did dispose and say that he/she resides at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ ; that he/she is \_\_\_\_\_ partner of \_\_\_\_\_, a limited/general partnership existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, the partnership described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; and that he/she signed his/her name to the foregoing instrument as the duly authorized and binding act of said partnership.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL IF AN INDIVIDUAL**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_ before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_, to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he/she resides at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ , and that he/she is the individual whose name is subscribed to the within instrument and acknowledged to me that by his/her signature on the instrument, said individual executed the instrument.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

Each executed bond should be accompanied by: (a) appropriate acknowledgments of the respective parties; (b) appropriate duly certified copy of Power of Attorney or other certificate of authority where bond is executed by agent, officer or other representative of Principal or Surety; (c) a duly certified extract from By-Laws or resolutions of Surety under which Power of Attorney or other certificate of authority of its agent, officer or representative was issued. and (d) certified copy of latest published financial statement of assets and liabilities of Surety.

\*\*\*\*\*

Affix Acknowledgments and Justification of Sureties.

**Performance Bond #2 (Pages 104 to 107): Use if the total contract price is more than \$5 Million.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #2 (Page 1)

**PERFORMANCE BOND #2**

**KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS:**

That we, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Principal,"  
and, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Surety" ("Sureties") are held and firmly bound to THE CITY OF NEW YORK, hereinafter referred to as the "City" or to its successors and assigns in the penal sum of \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_) Dollars, lawful money of the United States for the payment of which said sum of money well and truly to be made, we, and each of us, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

**WHEREAS**, the Principal is about to enter, or has entered, into a Contract in writing with the City for \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

a copy of which Contract is annexed to and hereby made a part of this bond as though herein set forth in full;

**NOW, THEREFORE**, the conditions of this obligation are such that if the Principal, his or its representatives or assigns, shall well and faithfully perform the said Contract and all modifications, amendments, additions and alterations thereto that may hereafter be made, according to its terms and its true intent and meaning, including repair and or replacement of defective work and guarantees of maintenance for the periods stated in the Contract, and shall fully indemnify and save harmless the City from all cost and damage which it may suffer by reason of the Principal's default of the Contract, and shall fully reimburse and repay the City for all outlay and expense which the City may incur in making

**Performance Bond #2 (Pages 104 to 107): Use if the total contract price is more than \$5 Million.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #2 (Page 2)

good any such default and shall protect the said City of New York against, and pay any and all amounts, damages, cost and judgments which may or shall be recovered against said City or its officers or agents or which the said City of New York may be called upon to pay any person or corporation by reason of any damages arising or growing out of the Principal's default of the Contract, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

The Surety (Sureties), for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees, upon written notice from the City that the City has determined that the Principal is in default of the Contract, to either (1) pay the full amount of the above penal sum in complete discharge and exoneration of this bond and of all the liabilities of the Surety relating to this bond, or (2) fully perform and complete the Work to be performed under the Contract, pursuant to the terms, conditions, and covenants thereof. The Surety (Sureties) further agrees, at its option, either to tender the penal sum or to commence and diligently perform the Work specified in the Contract, including physical site work, within twenty-five (25) business days after written notice thereof from the City and to complete all Work within the time set forth in the Contract or such other time as agreed to between the City and Surety in accordance with the Contract. The Surety and the City reserve all rights and defenses each may have against the other; provided, however, that the Surety expressly agrees that its reservation of rights shall not provide a basis for non-performance of its obligation to commence and to complete all Work as provided herein.

The Surety (Sureties), for value received, for itself and its successors and assigns, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety (Sureties) and its bond shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of time, modification, omission, addition, or change in or to the said Contract or the Work to be performed thereunder, or by any payment thereunder before the time required therein, or by any waiver of any provisions thereof, or by any assignment, subletting or other transfer thereof or of any Work to be performed or any moneys due or to become due thereunder; and said Surety (Sureties) does hereby waive notice of any and all of such extensions, modifications, omissions, additions, changes, payments, waivers, assignments, subcontracts and transfers, and hereby expressly stipulates and agrees that any and all things done and omitted to be done by and in relation to assignees, subcontractors, and other transferees shall have the same effect as to said Surety (Sureties) as though done or omitted to be done by or in relation to said Principal.

**Performance Bond #2 (Pages 104 to 107): Use if the total contract price is more than \$5 Million.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #2 (Page 3)

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, The Principal and the Surety (Sureties) have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereunto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, this

\_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_\_\_\_\_ .  
(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Principal (L.S.)

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Seal) Surety

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Premium Rate \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Premium Cost \_\_\_\_\_

If the Contractor (Principal) is a partnership, the bond should be signed by each of the individuals who are partners.

If the Contractor (Principal) is a corporation, the bond should be signed in its correct corporate name by a duly authorized officer, agent, or attorney-in-fact.

There should be executed an appropriate number of counterparts of the bond corresponding to the number of counterparts of the Contract.

**Performance Bond #2 (Pages 104 to 107): Use if the total contract price is more than \$5 Million.**

PERFORMANCE BOND #2 (Page 4)

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL IF A CORPORATION**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_ before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_, to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he resides at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ : that he/she is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; that he/she signed his/her name to the foregoing instrument by order of the directors of said corporation as the duly authorized and binding act thereof.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds.

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL IF A PARTNERSHIP**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_ before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_, to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he/she resides at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ ; that he/she is \_\_\_\_\_ partner of \_\_\_\_\_, a limited/general partnership existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, the partnership described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; and that he/she signed his/her name to the foregoing instrument as the duly authorized and binding act of said partnership.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL IF AN INDIVIDUAL**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_ before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_, to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he/she resides at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ , and that he/she is the individual whose name is subscribed to the within instrument and acknowledged to me that by his/her signature on the instrument, said individual executed the instrument.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

Each executed bond should be accompanied by: (a) appropriate acknowledgments of the respective parties; (b) appropriate duly certified copy of Power of Attorney or other certificate of authority where bond is executed by agent, officer or other representative of Principal or Surety; (c) a duly certified extract from By-Laws or resolutions of Surety under which Power of Attorney or other certificate of authority of its agent, officer or representative was issued, and (d) certified copy of latest published financial statement of assets and liabilities of Surety.

\*\*\*\*\*

Affix Acknowledgments and Justification of Sureties.

**Payment Bond (Pages 108 to 111): Use for any contract for which a Payment Bond is required.**

PAYMENT BOND (Page 1)

PAYMENT BOND

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, That we, \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Principal", and \_\_\_\_\_

hereinafter referred to as the "Surety" ("Sureties") are held and firmly bound to THE CITY OF NEW YORK, hereinafter referred to as the "City" or to its successors and assigns, in the penal sum of

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_) Dollars, lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which said sum of money well and truly to be made, we, and each of us, bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal is about to enter, or has entered, into a Contract in writing with the City for

a copy of which Contract is annexed to and hereby made a part of this bond as though herein set forth in full;

NOW, THEREFORE, the conditions of this obligation are such that if the Principal, his or its representatives or assigns and other Subcontractors to whom Work under this Contract is sublet and his or their successors and assigns shall promptly pay or cause to be paid all lawful claims for

(a) Wages and compensation for labor performed and services rendered by all persons engaged in the prosecution of the Work under said Contract, and any amendment or extension thereof or addition thereto, whether such persons be agents servants or employees of the Principal or any such Subcontractor, including all persons so engaged who perform the work of laborers or mechanics at or in the vicinity of the site

**Payment Bond (Pages 108 to 111): Use for any contract for which a Payment Bond is required.**

PAYMENT BOND (Page 2)

of the Project regardless of any contractual relationship between the Principal or such Subcontractors, or his or their successors or assigns, on the one hand and such laborers or mechanics on the other, but not including office employees not regularly stationed at the site of the project; and

(b) Materials and supplies (whether incorporated in the permanent structure or not), as well as teams, fuels, oils, implements or machinery furnished, used or consumed by said Principal or any subcontractor at or in the vicinity of the site of the Project in the prosecution of the Work under said Contract and any amendment or extension thereof or addition thereto; then this obligation shall be void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

This bond is subject to the following additional conditions, limitations and agreements:

(a) The Principal and Surety (Sureties) agree that this bond shall be for the benefit of any materialmen or laborer having a just claim, as well as the City itself.

(b) All persons who have performed labor, rendered services or furnished materials and supplies, as aforesaid, shall have a direct right of action against the Principal and his, its or their successors and assigns, and the Surety (Sureties) herein, or against either or both or any of them and their successors and assigns. Such persons may sue in their own name, and may prosecute the suit to judgment and execution without the necessity of joining with any other persons as party plaintiff.

(c) The Principal and Surety (Sureties) agree that neither of them will hold the City liable for any judgment for costs of otherwise, obtained by either or both of them against a laborer or materialman in a suit brought by either a laborer or materialman under this bond for moneys allegedly due for performing work or furnishing material.

(d) The Surety (Sureties) or its successors and assigns shall not be liable for any compensation recoverable by an employee or laborer under the Workmen's Compensation Law.

(e) In no event shall the Surety (Sureties), or its successors or assigns, be liable for a greater sum than the penalty of this bond or be subject to any suit, action or proceeding hereon that is instituted by any person, firm, or corporation hereunder later than two years after the complete performance of said Contract and final settlement thereof.

The Principal, for himself and his successors and assigns, and the Surety (Sureties), for itself and its successors and assigns, do hereby expressly waive any objection that might be interposed as to the right of the City to require a bond containing the foregoing provisions, and they do hereby further expressly waive any defense which they or either of them might interpose to an action brought hereon by any person, firm or corporation, including subcontractors, materialmen and third persons, for work, labor, services, supplies or material performed rendered, or furnished as aforesaid upon the ground that there is no law authorizing the City to require the foregoing provisions to be place in this bond.

And the Surety (Sureties), for value received, for itself and its successors and assigns, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety (Sureties), and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of time, modification, omission, addition, or change in or of the said Contract or the work to be performed thereunder, or by any payment thereunder before the time required therein, or by any waiver of any provisions thereof, or by any assignment, subletting or other transfer thereof or of any part thereof, or of any Work to be performed, or any moneys due to become due thereunder and said Surety (Sureties) does hereby waive notice of any and all of such extensions, modifications, omissions, additions, changes, payments, waivers, assignments, subcontracts and transfers, and hereby expressly stipulates and agrees that any and all things done and omitted to be done by and in relation to assignees, Subcontractors, and other transferees shall have the same effect as to said Surety (Sureties) as though done or omitted to be done or in relation to said Principal.

**Payment Bond (Pages 108 to 111): Use for any contract for which a Payment Bond is required.**

PAYMENT BOND (Page 3)

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Principal and the Surety (Sureties) have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereunto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

(Seal) \_\_\_\_\_ (L.S.)  
Principal

By: \_\_\_\_\_

(Seal) \_\_\_\_\_  
Surety

By: \_\_\_\_\_

If the Contractor (Principal) is a partnership, the bond should be signed by each of the individuals who are partners.

If the Contractor (Principal) is a corporation, the bond should be signed in its correct corporate name by a duly authorized officer, agent, or attorney-in-fact.

There should be executed an appropriate number of counterparts of the bond corresponding to the number of counterparts of the Contract.

**Payment Bond (Pages 108 to 111): Use for any contract for which a Payment Bond is required.**

PAYMENT BOND (Page 4)

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF A CORPORATION**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally came \_\_\_\_\_ to me known, who, being by me duly sworn did depose and say that he resides at \_\_\_\_\_ that he is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation described in and which executed the foregoing instrument; that he knows the seal of said corporation; that one of the seals affixed to said instrument is such seal; that it was so affixed by order of the directors of said corporation, and that he signed his name thereto by like order.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF A PARTNERSHIP**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ to me known, and known to me to be one of the members of the firm of \_\_\_\_\_ described in and who executed the foregoing instrument; and he acknowledged to me that he executed the same as and for the act and deed of said firm.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT OF PRINCIPAL, IF AN INDIVIDUAL**

State of \_\_\_\_\_ County of \_\_\_\_\_ ss:

On this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, before me personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_ to me known, and known to me to be the person described in and who executed the foregoing instrument; and acknowledged that he executed the same.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public or Commissioner of Deeds

Each executed bond should be accompanied by: (a) appropriate acknowledgments of the respective parties; (b) appropriate duly certified copy of Power of Attorney or other certificate of authority where bond is executed by agent, officer or other representative of Principal or Surety; (c) a duly certified extract from By-Laws or resolutions of Surety under which Power of Attorney or other certificate of authority of its agent, officer or representative was issued, and (d) certified copy of latest published financial statement of assets and liabilities of Surety.

\*\*\*\*\*

Affix Acknowledgments and Justification of Sureties.



# CERTIFICATE OF LIABILITY INSURANCE

DATE (MM/DD/YYYY)

11/26/2019

THIS CERTIFICATE IS ISSUED AS A MATTER OF INFORMATION ONLY AND CONFERS NO RIGHTS UPON THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER. THIS CERTIFICATE DOES NOT AFFIRMATIVELY OR NEGATIVELY AMEND, EXTEND OR ALTER THE COVERAGE AFFORDED BY THE POLICIES BELOW. THIS CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A CONTRACT BETWEEN THE ISSUING INSURER(S), AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OR PRODUCER, AND THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER.

**IMPORTANT:** If the certificate holder is an **ADDITIONAL INSURED**, the policy(ies) must have **ADDITIONAL INSURED** provisions or be endorsed. If **SUBROGATION IS WAIVED**, subject to the terms and conditions of the policy, certain policies may require an endorsement. A statement on this certificate does not confer rights to the certificate holder in lieu of such endorsement(s).

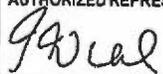
<b>PRODUCER</b> New York Risk Solutions, Inc. 150 Broad Hollow Rd. Suite 355 Melville NY 11747	<b>CONTACT NAME:</b> PHONE (A/C, No, Ext): 631-673-1800      FAX (A/C, No): 631-673-1801 E-MAIL ADDRESS: certificates@nyrisksolutions.com	
	<b>INSURER(S) AFFORDING COVERAGE</b>	
<b>INSURED</b> Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting Inc. 1414 65th Street Brooklyn NY 11219	<b>INSURER A:</b> Travelers Indemnity Co of Amer      25666	
	<b>INSURER B:</b> ACE American Insurance Co      22667	
	<b>INSURER C:</b> The Phoenix Insurance Company      25623	
	<b>INSURER D:</b>	
	<b>INSURER E:</b>	
	<b>INSURER F:</b>	

**COVERAGES**      **CERTIFICATE NUMBER:** 1287613138      **REVISION NUMBER:**

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT THE POLICIES OF INSURANCE LISTED BELOW HAVE BEEN ISSUED TO THE INSURED NAMED ABOVE FOR THE POLICY PERIOD INDICATED. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY REQUIREMENT, TERM OR CONDITION OF ANY CONTRACT OR OTHER DOCUMENT WITH RESPECT TO WHICH THIS CERTIFICATE MAY BE ISSUED OR MAY PERTAIN, THE INSURANCE AFFORDED BY THE POLICIES DESCRIBED HEREIN IS SUBJECT TO ALL THE TERMS, EXCLUSIONS AND CONDITIONS OF SUCH POLICIES. LIMITS SHOWN MAY HAVE BEEN REDUCED BY PAID CLAIMS.

INSR LTR	TYPE OF INSURANCE	ADDL INSD	SUBR WVD	POLICY NUMBER	POLICY EFF (MM/DD/YYYY)	POLICY EXP (MM/DD/YYYY)	LIMITS
A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> COMMERCIAL GENERAL LIABILITY <input type="checkbox"/> CLAIMS-MADE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCCUR <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CONTRACTUAL GEN'L AGGREGATE LIMIT APPLIES PER: <input type="checkbox"/> POLICY <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PROJECT <input type="checkbox"/> LOC OTHER:			DT1N-CO-4F633615-IND-19	1/25/2019	1/25/2020	EACH OCCURRENCE \$ 2,000,000 DAMAGE TO RENTED PREMISES (Ea occurrence) \$ 300,000 MED EXP (Any one person) \$ 5,000 PERSONAL & ADV INJURY \$ 2,000,000 GENERAL AGGREGATE \$ 4,000,000 PRODUCTS - COMP/OP AGG \$ 4,000,000
C	<b>AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ANY AUTO <input type="checkbox"/> OWNED AUTOS ONLY <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SCHEDULED AUTOS <input type="checkbox"/> HIRED AUTOS ONLY <input type="checkbox"/> NON-OWNED AUTOS ONLY <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HIRED AUTO <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NON-OWNED			BA 3L21859A 19 CNS	1/25/2019	1/25/2020	COMBINED SINGLE LIMIT (Ea accident) \$ 1,000,000 BODILY INJURY (Per person) \$ BODILY INJURY (Per accident) \$ PROPERTY DAMAGE (Per accident) \$
B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> UMBRELLA LIAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OCCUR <input type="checkbox"/> EXCESS LIAB <input type="checkbox"/> CLAIMS-MADE DED      RETENTION \$			N1088097A 005	1/25/2019	1/25/2020	EACH OCCURRENCE \$ 4,000,000 AGGREGATE \$ 4,000,000
	<b>WORKERS COMPENSATION AND EMPLOYERS' LIABILITY</b> ANY PROPRIETOR/PARTNER/EXECUTIVE OFFICER/MEMBER EXCLUDED? (Mandatory In NH) If yes, describe under DESCRIPTION OF OPERATIONS below		Y/N N/A				PER STATUTE      OTH-ER E.L. EACH ACCIDENT \$ E.L. DISEASE - EA EMPLOYEE \$ E.L. DISEASE - POLICY LIMIT \$

DESCRIPTION OF OPERATIONS / LOCATIONS / VEHICLES (ACORD 101, Additional Remarks Schedule, may be attached if more space is required)  
 THE FOLLOWING ARE INCLUDED AS ADDITIONAL INSUREDS ON A PRIMARY AND NON-CONTRIBUTORY BASIS AND WAIVER OF SUBROGATION APPLIES PROVIDED SUCH STATUS IS REQUIRED UNDER A WRITTEN AND EXECUTED CONTRACT WITH RESPECTS TO FMS ID PV028-ISS: CITY OF NEW YORK, INCLUDING ITS OFFICIALS AND EMPLOYEES, 110 CULTURAL SPACE LLC; TWO TREES MANAGEMENT CO, LLC; ISSUE PROJECT ROOM INC.

<b>CERTIFICATE HOLDER</b> CITY OF NEW YORK DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN & CONSTRUCTION 30-30 THOMSON AVENUE ATTN: RISK MANAGER -4TH FLOOR LONG ISLAND CITY NY 11101	<b>CANCELLATION</b> SHOULD ANY OF THE ABOVE DESCRIBED POLICIES BE CANCELLED BEFORE THE EXPIRATION DATE THEREOF, NOTICE WILL BE DELIVERED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE POLICY PROVISIONS. AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE 
---	---



CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE COVERAGE
DISABILITY AND PAID FAMILY LEAVE BENEFITS LAW

PART 1. To be completed by Disability and Paid Family Leave Benefits Carrier or Licensed Insurance Agent of that Carrier

1a. Legal Name & Address of Insured (use street address only)
EASTERN PLUMBING AND MECHANICAL CONTRACTING INC.
1414 65TH STREET
BROOKLYN, NY 11219
1b. Business Telephone Number of Insured
7188375374
1c. Federal Employer Identification Number of Insured or Social Security Number
11-2697243
2. Name and Address of Entity Requesting Proof of Coverage
CITY OF NEW YORK DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN & CONSTRUCTION
30-30 THOMSON AVENUE
LONG ISLAND CITY, NY 11101
3a. Name of Insurance Carrier
Standard Security Life Insurance Company of New York
3b. Policy Number of Entity Listed in Box "1a"
R73145-000
3c. Policy effective period
1/1/2014 to 11/24/2020

4. Policy provides the following benefits:
A. Both disability and paid family leave benefits.
B. Disability benefits only.
C. Paid family leave benefits only.
5. Policy covers:
A. All of the employer's employees eligible under the NYS Disability and Paid Family Leave Benefits Law.
B. Only the following class or classes of employer's employees:

Under penalty of perjury, I certify that I am an authorized representative or licensed agent of the insurance carrier referenced above and that the named insured has NYS Disability and/or Paid Family Leave Benefits insurance coverage as described above.

Date Signed 11/26/2019 By [Signature]
(Signature of insurance carrier's authorized representative or NYS Licensed Insurance Agent of that insurance carrier)

Telephone Number (212) 355-4141 Name and Title SUPERVISOR-DBL/POLICY SERVICES

IMPORTANT: If Boxes 4A and 5A are checked, and this form is signed by the insurance carrier's authorized representative or NYS Licensed Insurance Agent of that carrier, this certificate is COMPLETE. Mail it directly to the certificate holder.
If Box 4B, 4C or 5B is checked, this certificate is NOT COMPLETE for purposes of Section 220, Subd. 8 of the NYS Disability and Paid Family Leave Benefits Law. It must be mailed for completion to the Workers' Compensation Board, Plans Acceptance Unit, PO Box 5200, Binghamton, NY 13902-5200.

PART 2. To be completed by the NYS Workers' Compensation Board (Only if Box 4C or 5B of Part 1 has been checked)

State of New York
Workers' Compensation Board
According to information maintained by the NYS Workers' Compensation Board, the above-named employer has complied with the NYS Disability and Paid Family Leave Benefits Law with respect to all of his/her employees.
Date Signed By
(Signature of Authorized NYS Workers' Compensation Board Employee)
Telephone Number Name and Title

Please Note: Only insurance carriers licensed to write NYS disability and paid family leave benefits insurance policies and NYS licensed insurance agents of those insurance carriers are authorized to issue Form DB-120.1. Insurance brokers are NOT authorized to issue this form.



## Additional Instructions for Form DB-120.1

By signing this form, the insurance carrier identified in Box 3 on this form is certifying that it is insuring the business referenced in box "1a" for disability and/or paid family leave benefits under the New York State Disability and Paid Family Leave Benefits Law. The Insurance Carrier or its licensed agent will send this Certificate of Insurance to the entity listed as the certificate holder in Box 2.

The insurance carrier must notify the above certificate holder and the Workers' Compensation Board within 10 days IF a policy is cancelled due to nonpayment of premiums or within 30 days IF there are reasons other than nonpayment of premiums that cancel the policy or eliminate the insured from coverage indicated on this Certificate. (These notices may be sent by regular mail.) Otherwise, this Certificate is valid for one year after this form is approved by the insurance carrier or its licensed agent, or until the policy expiration date listed in Box 3c, whichever is earlier

This certificate is issued as a matter of information only and confers no rights upon the certificate holder. This certificate does not amend, extend or alter the coverage afforded by the policy listed, nor does it confer any rights or responsibilities beyond those contained in the referenced policy.

This certificate may be used as evidence of a Disability and/or Paid Family Leave Benefits contract of insurance only while the underlying policy is in effect.

**Please Note: Upon the cancellation of the disability and/or paid family leave benefits policy indicated on this form, if the business continues to be named on a permit, license or contract issued by a certificate holder, the business must provide that certificate holder with a new Certificate of NYS Disability and/or Paid Family Leave Benefits Coverage or other authorized proof that the business is complying with the mandatory coverage requirements of the New York State Disability and Paid Family Leave Benefits Law.**

## DISABILITY AND PAID FAMILY LEAVE BENEFITS LAW

### §220. Subd. 8

(a) The head of a state or municipal department, board, commission or office authorized or required by law to issue any permit for or in connection with any work involving the employment of employees in employment as defined in this article, and notwithstanding any general or special statute requiring or authorizing the issue of such permits, shall not issue such permit unless proof duly subscribed by an insurance carrier is produced in a form satisfactory to the chair, that the payment of disability benefits and after January first, two thousand and twenty-one, the payment of family leave benefits for all employees has been secured as provided by this article. Nothing herein, however, shall be construed as creating any liability on the part of such state or municipal department, board, commission or office to pay any disability benefits to any such employee if so employed.

(b) The head of a state or municipal department, board, commission or office authorized or required by law to enter into any contract for or in connection with any work involving the employment of employees in employment as defined in this article and notwithstanding any general or special statute requiring or authorizing any such contract, shall not enter into any such contract unless proof duly subscribed by an insurance carrier is produced in a form satisfactory to the chair, that the payment of disability benefits and after January first, two thousand eighteen, the payment of family leave benefits for all employees has been secured as provided by this article.

**CERTIFICATE OF WORKERS' COMPENSATION INSURANCE**

\*\*\*\*\* 112697243  
HAMOND SAFETY MANAGEMENT LLC  
6800 JERICHO TURNPIKE #105W  
SYOSSET NY 11791



SCAN TO VALIDATE  
AND SUBSCRIBE

<b>POLICYHOLDER</b> EASTERN PLUMBING & MECHANICAL CONTRACTING INC 1414 65TH STREET BROOKLYN NY 11219		<b>CERTIFICATE HOLDER</b> THE CITY OF NEW YORK DEPT OF DESIGN & CONSTRUCTION 30-30 THOMSON AVENUE LONG ISLAND CITY NY 11101	
<b>POLICY NUMBER</b> Z1023 662-8	<b>CERTIFICATE NUMBER</b> 596192	<b>POLICY PERIOD</b> 07/01/2019 TO 07/01/2020	<b>DATE</b> 11/26/2019

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT THE POLICYHOLDER NAMED ABOVE IS INSURED WITH THE NEW YORK STATE INSURANCE FUND UNDER POLICY NO. 1023 662-8, COVERING THE ENTIRE OBLIGATION OF THIS POLICYHOLDER FOR WORKERS' COMPENSATION UNDER THE NEW YORK WORKERS' COMPENSATION LAW WITH RESPECT TO ALL OPERATIONS IN THE STATE OF NEW YORK, EXCEPT AS INDICATED BELOW.

IF YOU WISH TO RECEIVE NOTIFICATIONS REGARDING SAID POLICY, INCLUDING ANY NOTIFICATION OF CANCELLATIONS, OR TO VALIDATE THIS CERTIFICATE, VISIT OUR WEBSITE AT [HTTPS://WWW.NYSIF.COM/CERT/CERTVAL.ASP](https://www.nysif.com/cert/certval.asp). THE NEW YORK STATE INSURANCE FUND IS NOT LIABLE IN THE EVENT OF FAILURE TO GIVE SUCH NOTIFICATIONS.

THE POLICY INCLUDES A WAIVER OF SUBROGATION ENDORSEMENT UNDER WHICH NYSIF AGREES TO WAIVE ITS RIGHT OF SUBROGATION TO BRING AN ACTION AGAINST THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER TO RECOVER AMOUNTS WE PAID IN WORKERS' COMPENSATION AND/OR MEDICAL BENEFITS TO OR ON BEHALF OF AN EMPLOYEE OF OUR INSURED IN THE EVENT THAT, PRIOR TO THE DATE OF THE ACCIDENT, THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER HAS ENTERED INTO A WRITTEN CONTRACT WITH OUR INSURED THAT REQUIRES THAT SUCH RIGHT OF SUBROGATION BE WAIVED.

THIS CERTIFICATE IS ISSUED AS A MATTER OF INFORMATION ONLY AND CONFERS NO RIGHTS NOR INSURANCE COVERAGE UPON THE CERTIFICATE HOLDER. THIS CERTIFICATE DOES NOT AMEND, EXTEND OR ALTER THE COVERAGE AFFORDED BY THE POLICY.

NEW YORK STATE INSURANCE FUND

DIRECTOR, INSURANCE FUND UNDERWRITING

VALIDATION NUMBER: 215915023

**CITY OF NEW YORK**  
**CERTIFICATION BY INSURANCE BROKER OR AGENT**

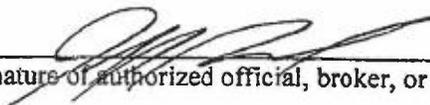
The undersigned insurance broker or agent represents to the City of New York that the attached Certificate of Insurance is accurate in all material respects.

New York Risk Solutions  
[Name of broker or agent (typewritten)]

900 Walt Whitman Rd, Ste 203, Melville, NY 11747  
[Address of broker or agent (typewritten)]

jwalsh@nyrisksolutions.com  
[Email address of broker or agent (typewritten)]

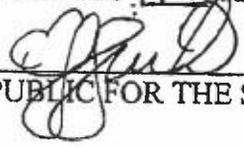
631-673-1800/631-673-1801  
[Phone number/Fax number of broker or agent (typewritten)]

  
[Signature of authorized official, broker, or agent]

Jeffrey Walsh, President  
[Name and title of authorized official, broker, or agent (typewritten)]

State of New York )  
County of Suffolk ) ss.:

Sworn to before me this Nov day of 26, 2019

  
NOTARY PUBLIC FOR THE STATE OF New York



OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

ARTICLE 8 – NYC PUBLIC WORKS

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER  
CITY OF NEW YORK

CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE  
PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Pursuant to Labor Law § 220 (3-e), only apprentices who are individually registered in a bona fide program to which the employer contractor is a participant and registered with the New York State Department of Labor, may be paid at the apprentice rates in this schedule. Apprentices who are not so registered must be paid as journey persons in accordance with the trade classification of the work they actually performed.

Apprentice ratios are established to ensure the proper safety, training and supervision of apprentices. A ratio establishes the number of journey workers required for each apprentice in a program and on a job site. Ratios are interpreted as follows: in the case of a 1:1, 1:4 ratio, there must be one journey worker for the first apprentice, and four additional journey workers for each subsequent apprentice.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b><u>CLASSIFICATION</u></b>	<b><u>PAGE</u></b>
BOILERMAKER.....	3
BRICKLAYER.....	4
CARPENTER.....	5
CARPENTER - HIGH RISE CONCRETE FORMS .....	5
CEMENT MASON.....	6
CEMENT AND CONCRETE WORKER.....	7
DERRICKPERSON & RIGGER (STONE).....	7
DOCKBUILDER/PILE DRIVER.....	8
ELECTRICIAN .....	9
ELEVATOR CONSTRUCTOR .....	11
ELEVATOR REPAIR & MAINTENANCE.....	11
ENGINEER .....	12
ENGINEER - OPERATING .....	13
FLOOR COVERER.....	13
GLAZIER .....	14
HAZARDOUS MATERIAL HANDLER.....	15
HEAT & FROST INSULATOR .....	15
HOUSE WRECKER.....	16
IRON WORKER - ORNAMENTAL.....	17
IRON WORKER - STRUCTURAL.....	17
LABORER (FOUNDATION, CONCRETE, EXCAVATING, STREET PIPE LAYER & COMMON).....	18
MARBLE MECHANICS .....	19
MASON TENDER .....	20
METALLIC LATHER.....	21
MILLWRIGHT .....	22
PAINTER .....	22
PAINTER - METAL POLISHER.....	23
PAINTER - STRUCTURAL STEEL.....	24
PAVER AND ROADBUILDER.....	24
PLASTERER .....	25
PLASTERER - TENDER.....	26
PLUMBER .....	27
POINTER, WATERPROOFER, CAULKER, SANDBLASTER, STEAMBLASTER .....	28
ROOFER.....	29
SHEET METAL WORKER.....	29
SIGN ERECTOR.....	30
STEAMFITTER .....	32
STONE MASON - SETTER.....	32
TAPER.....	33
TILE LAYER - SETTER .....	34
TIMBERPERSON .....	35

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**BOILERMAKER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Boilermaker (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$31.26

**Boilermaker (Second Year: 1st Six Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$33.02

**Boilermaker (Second Year: 2nd Six Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$34.78

**Boilermaker (Third Year: 1st Six Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$36.56

**Boilermaker (Third Year: 2nd Six Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 85% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$38.32

**Boilermaker (Fourth Year: 1st Six Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 90% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$40.09

**Boilermaker (Fourth Year: 2nd Six Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 95% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$41.84

(Local #5)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

---

**BRICKLAYER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Bricklayer (First 750 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$18.80

**Bricklayer (Second 750 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$18.80

**Bricklayer (Third 750 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$18.80

**Bricklayer (Fourth 750 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$18.80

**Bricklayer (Fifth 750 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 90% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$18.80

**Bricklayer (Sixth 750 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 95% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$18.80

(Bricklayer District Council)

---

## **CARPENTER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

### **Carpenter (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyperson's rate

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Building Apprentice: \$31.34

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Heavy Apprentice: \$33.54

### **Carpenter (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Building Apprentice: \$31.34

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Heavy Apprentice: \$33.54

### **Carpenter (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyperson's rate

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Building Apprentice: \$31.34

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Heavy Apprentice: \$33.54

### **Carpenter (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Building Apprentice: \$31.34

Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour For Heavy Apprentice: \$33.54

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

## **CARPENTER - HIGH RISE CONCRETE FORMS**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 2 to 5)

### **Carpenter - High Rise (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$17.52

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.20

### **Carpenter - High Rise (Second Year)**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$23.95  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.33

**Carpenter - High Rise (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$30.53  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.46

**Carpenter - High Rise (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$38.15  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.61

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

**CEMENT MASON**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Cement Mason (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's Rate

**Cement Mason (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyperson's Rate

**Cement Mason (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyperson's Rate

(Local #780)

---

---

## **CEMENT AND CONCRETE WORKER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

### **Cement & Concrete Worker (First 1333 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$17.75

### **Cement & Concrete Worker (Second 1333 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$23.03

### **Cement & Concrete Worker (Last 1334 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$24.30

### **Cement & Concrete Worker (Hired after 2/6/2016 - First 1334 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: \$16.96  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$11.80

### **Cement & Concrete Worker (Hired after 2/6/2016 - Second 1334 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: \$22.08  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$16.49

### **Cement & Concrete Worker (Hired after 2/6/2016 - Last 1334 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: \$27.20  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$17.33

(Cement Concrete Workers District Council)

---

---

## **DERRICKPERSON & RIGGER (STONE)**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Derrickperson & Rigger (stone) - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate

**Derrickperson & Rigger (stone) - Second Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate

**Derrickperson & Rigger (stone) - Second Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate

**Derrickperson & Rigger (stone) - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 90% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate

(Local #197)

---

---

**DOCKBUILDER/PILE DRIVER**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 6)

**Dockbuilder/Pile Driver (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$33.54

**Dockbuilder/Pile Driver (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$33.54

**Dockbuilder/Pile Driver (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$33.54

**Dockbuilder/Pile Driver (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$33.54

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

**ELECTRICIAN**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Electrician (First Term: 0-6 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$14.50  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$12.63  
Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$13.58

**Electrician (First Term: 7-12 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$15.50  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$13.14  
Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$14.16

**Electrician (Second Term: 0-6 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$16.50  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$13.64  
Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$14.73

**Electrician (Second Term: 7-12 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$17.50  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$14.15  
Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$15.31

**Electrician (Third Term: 0-6 Months)**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$18.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$14.66

Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$15.88

**Electrician (Third Term: 7-12 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$19.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$15.17

Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$16.45

**Electrician (Fourth Term: 0-6 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$20.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$15.68

Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$17.03

**Electrician (Fourth Term: 7-12 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$22.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.70

Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$18.18

**Electrician (Fifth Term: 0-12 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$24.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$20.30

Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$21.84

**Electrician (Fifth Term: 13-18 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$29.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$22.65

Overtime Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$24.47

**Overtime Description**

Overtime Wage paid at time and one half the regular rate

Local #3)

## **ELEVATOR CONSTRUCTOR**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 2)

### **Elevator (Constructor) - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$30.89

### **Elevator (Constructor) - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$31.38

### **Elevator (Constructor) - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$32.36

### **Elevator (Constructor) - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$33.34

(Local #1)

---

---

## **ELEVATOR REPAIR & MAINTENANCE**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 2)

### **Elevator Service/Modernization Mechanic (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$30.82

### **Elevator Service/Modernization Mechanic (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$31.30

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Elevator Service/Modernization Mechanic (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$32.26

**Elevator Service/Modernization Mechanic (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$33.23

(Local #1)

---

**ENGINEER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 5)

**Engineer - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$25.38  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.53

**Engineer - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$31.72  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.53

**Engineer - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$34.89  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.53

**Engineer - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$38.06  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.53

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Local #15)

---

---

**ENGINEER - OPERATING**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 5)

**Operating Engineer - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour 40% of Journeyman's Rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$21.60

**Operating Engineer - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's Rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$21.60

**Operating Engineer - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's Rate  
Supplemental Benefit Per Hour: \$21.60

(Local #14)

---

---

**FLOOR COVERER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Floor Coverer (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$31.14

**Floor Coverer (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$31.14

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Floor Coverer (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$31.14

**Floor Coverer (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$31.14

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

**GLAZIER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Glazier (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$15.66

**Glazier (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$25.76

**Glazier (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$29.02

**Glazier (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$35.07

(Local #1281)

---

**HAZARDOUS MATERIAL HANDLER**  
(Ratio of Apprentice Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Handler (First 1000 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 78% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$14.25

**Handler (Second 1000 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$14.25

**Handler (Third 1000 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 83% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$14.25

**Handler (Fourth 1000 Hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 89% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Benefit Rate Per Hour: \$14.25

(Local #78)

---

**HEAT & FROST INSULATOR**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Heat & Frost Insulator (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyperson's rate

**Heat & Frost Insulator (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyperson's rate

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Heat & Frost Insulator (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate

**Heat & Frost Insulator (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate

(Local #12)

---

**HOUSE WRECKER  
(TOTAL DEMOLITION)  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)**

**House Wrecker - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$21.17  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.79

**House Wrecker - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$22.32  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.79

**House Wrecker - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$23.97  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.79

**House Wrecker - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.53  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.79

(Mason Tenders District Council)

**IRON WORKER - ORNAMENTAL**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Iron Worker (Ornamental) - 1st Ten Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$40.20

**Iron Worker (Ornamental) - 11 -16 Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$41.44

**Iron Worker (Ornamental) - 17 - 22 Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$42.68

**Iron Worker (Ornamental) - 23 - 28 Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$45.17

**Iron Worker (Ornamental) - 29 - 36 Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$47.65

(Local #580)

---

---

**IRON WORKER - STRUCTURAL**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 6)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Iron Worker (Structural) - 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.27  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$51.18

**Iron Worker (Structural) - 7- 18 Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.87  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$51.18

**Iron Worker (Structural) - 19 - 36 months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$27.47  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$51.18

(Local #40 and #361)

---

**LABORER (FOUNDATION, CONCRETE, EXCAVATING, STREET PIPE  
LAYER & COMMON)**

(Ratio Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Laborer (Foundation, Concrete, Excavating, Street Pipe Layer & Common) - First  
1000 hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$42.63

**Laborer (Foundation, Concrete, Excavating, Street Pipe Layer & Common) -  
Second 1000 hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$42.63

**Laborer (Foundation, Concrete, Excavating, Street Pipe Layer & Common) -  
Third 1000 hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$42.63

**Laborer (Foundation, Concrete, Excavating, Street Pipe Layer & Common) -  
Fourth 1000 hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 90% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$42.63

(Local #731)

---

---

**MARBLE MECHANICS**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Cutters & Setters - First 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

NO BENEFITS PAID DURING THE FIRST TWO MONTHS (PROBATIONARY PERIOD)

**Cutters & Setters - Second 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate

**Cutters & Setters - Third 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate

**Cutters & Setters - Fourth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's rate

**Cutters & Setters - Fifth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 85% of Journeyman's rate

**Cutters & Setters - Sixth 750 Hours**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 95% of Journeyperson's rate

**Polishers & Finishers - First 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate

NO BENEFITS PAID DURING THE FIRST TWO MONTHS (PROBATIONARY PERIOD)

**Polishers & Finishers - Second 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyperson's rate

**Polishers & Finishers - Third 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate

**Polishers & Finishers - Fourth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 90% of Journeyperson's rate

(Local #7)

---

---

**MASON TENDER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Mason Tender - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$21.39

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$19.90

**Mason Tender - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$22.54

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$19.90

**Mason Tender - Third Year**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$24.29**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$19.95**

**Mason Tender - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$26.95**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$19.95**

(Local #79)

---

**METALLIC LATHER**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Metallic Lather (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$26.38**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$14.96**

**Metallic Lather (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$30.38**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$16.96**

**Metallic Lather (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$35.38**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$18.92**

**Metallic Lather (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$37.38**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$19.92**

(Local #46)

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

---

**MILLWRIGHT**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Millwright (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$28.33

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$34.28

**Millwright (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$33.48

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$37.88

**Millwright (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$38.63

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.13

**Millwright (Fourth Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$48.93

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$48.69

(Local #740)

---

**PAINTER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Painter - Brush & Roller - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$17.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$14.46

**Painter - Brush & Roller - Second Year**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$21.25**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$18.63**

**Painter - Brush & Roller - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$25.50**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$21.86**

**Painter - Brush & Roller - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$34.00**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$27.88**

(District Council of Painters)

---

---

**PAINTER - METAL POLISHER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Metal Polisher (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$13.00**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$5.13**

**Metal Polisher (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$13.00**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$5.13**

**Metal Polisher (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$15.75**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$5.13**

(Local 8A-28)

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

---

**PAINTER - STRUCTURAL STEEL**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Painters - Structural Steel (First Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate

**Painters - Structural Steel (Second Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate

**Painters - Structural Steel (Third Year)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate

(Local #806)

---

**PAVER AND ROADBUILDER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Paver and Roadbuilder - First Year (Minimum 1000 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$28.36

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$20.30

**Paver and Roadbuilder - Second Year (Minimum 1000 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$30.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$20.30

(Local #1010)

---

## **PLASTERER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

### **Plasterer - First Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$13.43

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$13.88

### **Plasterer - First Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 45% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$13.91

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 45% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$14.36

### **Plasterer - Second Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$15.88

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$16.44

### **Plasterer - Second Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$16.96

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$17.53

### **Plasterer - Third Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$19.13

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$19.72

**Plasterer - Third Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$20.21

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$20.81

(Local #530)

---

**PLASTERER - TENDER**  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

**Plasterer Tender - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$21.39  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$19.90

**Plasterer Tender - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$22.54  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$19.90

**Plasterer Tender - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$24.29  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$19.95

**Plasterer Tender - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.95  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$19.95

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Local #79)

---

---

## **PLUMBER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

### **Plumber - First Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$16.28**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$5.43**

### **Plumber - First Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$19.28**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$6.43**

### **Plumber - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$26.93**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$18.10**

### **Plumber - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$29.03**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$18.10**

### **Plumber - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$31.88**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$18.10**

### **Plumber - Fifth Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$33.28**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$18.10**

### **Plumber - Fifth Year: 2nd Six Months**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.35  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.10

(Plumbers Local #1)

---

**POINTER, WATERPROOFER, CAULKER, SANDBLASTER,  
STEAMBLASTER**  
(Exterior Building Renovation)  
(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Pointer, Waterproofer, Caulker, Sandblaster, Steamblaster - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$25.89  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$13.64

**Pointer, Waterproofer, Caulker, Sandblaster, Steamblaster - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$28.97  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.15

**Pointer, Waterproofer, Caulker, Sandblaster, Steamblaster - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$34.12  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$20.90

**Pointer, Waterproofer, Caulker, Sandblaster, Steamblaster - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$41.33  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$21.60

(Bricklayer District Council)

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Sign Erector - First Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$17.33

**Sign Erector - Second Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 45% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$19.38

**Sign Erector - Second Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$21.45

**Sign Erector - Third Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$28.98

**Sign Erector - Third Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$31.53

**Sign Erector - Fourth Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$34.80

**Sign Erector - Fourth Year: 2nd Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$37.43

**Sign Erector - Fifth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$40.03

**Sign Erector - Sixth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$42.63

(Local #137)

---

## **STEAMFITTER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

### **Steamfitter - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate and Supplemental Per Hour: 40% of Journeyperson's rate

### **Steamfitter - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate.

### **Steamfitter - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate and Supplemental Rate per Hour: 65% of Journeyperson's rate.

### **Steamfitter - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate.

### **Steamfitter - Fifth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 85% of Journeyperson's rate.

(Local #638)

---

## **STONE MASON - SETTER**

(Ratio Apprentice of Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 2)

## **ROOFER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 2)

### **Roofer - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 35% of Journeyman's Rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 20% of Journeyman's Rate

### **Roofer - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's Rate

### **Roofer - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's Rate

### **Roofer - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's Rate

(Local #8)

---

---

## **SHEET METAL WORKER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 3)

### **Sheet Metal Worker (0-6 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 25% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$6.45

### **Sheet Metal Worker (7-18 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 35% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$18.07

### **Sheet Metal Worker (19-30 Months)**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 45% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$24.76

**Sheet Metal Worker (31-36 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$29.17

**Sheet Metal Worker (37-42 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$29.17

**Sheet Metal Worker (43-48 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$35.85

**Sheet Metal Worker (49-54 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$35.85

**Sheet Metal Worker (55-60 Months)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$40.30

(Local #28)

---

---

**SIGN ERECTOR**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Sign Erector - First Year: 1st Six Months**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 35% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$15.28

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Stone Mason - Setters - First 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

**Stone Mason - Setters - Second 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

**Stone Mason - Setters - Third 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 70% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

**Stone Mason - Setters - Fourth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

**Stone Mason - Setters - Fifth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 90% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

**Stone Mason - Setters - Sixth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate Per Hour: 100% of Journeyman's rate

Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

(Bricklayers District Council)

---

---

**TAPER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Drywall Taper - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyman's rate

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Drywall Taper - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 60% of Journeyman's rate

**Drywall Taper - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyman's rate

(Local #1974)

---

---

**TILE LAYER - SETTER**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyman: 1 to 1, 1 to 4)

**Tile Layer - Setter - First 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyman's rate

**Tile Layer - Setter - Second 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 55% of Journeyman's rate

**Tile Layer - Setter - Third 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyman's rate

**Tile Layer - Setter - Fourth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 75% of Journeyman's rate

**Tile Layer - Setter - Fifth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 85% of Journeyman's rate

**Tile Layer - Setter - Sixth 750 Hours**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage and Supplemental Rate Per Hour: 95% of Journeyman's rate

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION APPRENTICE PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Local #7)

---

---

**TIMBERPERSON**

(Ratio of Apprentice to Journeyperson: 1 to 1, 1 to 6)

**Timberperson - First Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 40% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$33.19

**Timberperson - Second Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 50% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$33.19

**Timberperson - Third Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 65% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$33.19

**Timberperson - Fourth Year**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate Per Hour: 80% of Journeyperson's rate  
Supplemental Rate Per Hour: \$33.19

(Local #1536)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**LABOR LAW ARTICLE 8 - NYC PUBLIC WORKS**

Workers, Laborers and Mechanics employed on a public work project must receive not less than the prevailing rate of wage and benefits for the classification of work performed by each upon such public work. Pursuant to Labor Law Article 8 the Comptroller of the City of New York has promulgated this schedule solely for Workers, Laborers and Mechanics engaged by private contractors on New York City public work projects. Prevailing rates are required to be annexed to and form part of the public work contract pursuant to § 220 (3).

This schedule is a compilation of separate determinations of the prevailing rate of wage and supplements made by the Comptroller for each trade classification listed herein pursuant to New York State Labor Law section § 220 (5). The source of the wage and supplement rates, whether a collective bargaining agreement, survey data or other, is listed at the end of each classification.

Agency Chief Contracting Officers should contact the Bureau of Labor Law's Classification Unit with any questions concerning trade classifications, prevailing rates or prevailing practices with respect to procurement on New York City public work contracts. Contractors are advised to review the Comptroller's Prevailing Wage Schedule before bidding on public work contracts. Contractors with questions concerning trade classifications, prevailing rates or prevailing practices with respect to public work contracts in the procurement stage must contact the contracting agency responsible for the procurement.

Any error as to compensation under the prevailing wage law or other information as to trade classification, made by the contracting agency in the contract documents or in any other communication, will not preclude a finding against the contractor of prevailing wage violation.

Any questions concerning trade classifications, prevailing rates or prevailing practices on New York City public work contracts that have already been awarded may be directed to the Bureau of Labor Law's Classification Unit by calling (212) 669-4443. All callers must have the agency name and contract registration number available when calling with questions on public work contracts. Please direct all other compliance issues to: Bureau of Labor Law, Attn: Wasyl Kinach, P.E., Office of the Comptroller, 1 Centre Street, Room 651, New York, N.Y. 10007; Fax (212) 669-4002.

The appropriate schedule of prevailing wages and benefits must be posted at all public work sites pursuant to Labor Law § 220 (3-a) (a).

This schedule is applicable to work performed during the effective period, unless otherwise noted. Changes to this schedule are published on our web site [comptroller.nyc.gov/wages](http://comptroller.nyc.gov/wages). Contractors must pay the wages and supplements in effect when the worker, laborer, mechanic performs the work. Preliminary schedules for future one-year periods appear in the City Record on or about June 1 each succeeding year. Final schedules appear on or about July 1 in the City Record and on our web site [comptroller.nyc.gov/wages](http://comptroller.nyc.gov/wages).

The Comptroller's Office has attempted to include all overtime, shift and night differential, Holiday, Saturday, Sunday or other premium time work. However, this schedule does not set forth every prevailing practice with respect to such rates with which employers must comply. All such practices are nevertheless part of the employer's prevailing wage obligation and contained in the collective bargaining agreements of the prevailing wage unions. These collective bargaining agreements are available for inspection by appointment. Requests for appointments may be made by calling (212) 669-4443, Monday through Friday between the hours of 9 a.m. and 5 p.m.

**OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE**

Prevailing rates and ratios for apprentices are published in the Construction Apprentice Prevailing Wage Schedule. Pursuant to Labor Law § 220 (3-e), only apprentices who are individually registered in a bona fide program to which the employer contractor is a participant, registered with the New York State Department of Labor, may be paid at the apprentice rates. Apprentices who are not so registered must be paid as journey persons.

New York City public work projects awarded pursuant to a Project Labor Agreement ("PLA") in accordance with Labor Law section 222 may have different labor standards for shift, premium and overtime work. Please refer to the PLA's pre-negotiated labor agreements for wage and benefit rates applicable to work performed outside of the regular workday. More information is available at the Mayor's Office of Contract Services (MOCS) web page at:

<https://www1.nyc.gov/site/mocs/contract/project-labor-agreements.page>

All the provisions of Labor Law Article 8 remain applicable to PLA work including, but not limited to, the enforcement of prevailing wage requirements by the Comptroller in accordance with the trade classifications in this schedule; however, we will enforce shift, premium, overtime and other non-standard rates as they appear in a project's pre-negotiated labor agreement.

In order to meet their obligation to provide prevailing supplemental benefits to each covered employee, employers must either:

- 1) Provide bona fide fringe benefits which cost the employer no less than the prevailing supplemental benefits rate; or
- 2) Supplement the employee's hourly wage by an amount no less than the prevailing supplemental benefits rate; or
- 3) Provide a combination of bona fide fringe benefits and wage supplements which cost the employer no less than the prevailing supplemental benefits rate in total.

Although prevailing wage laws do not require employers to provide bona fide fringe benefits (as opposed to wage supplements) to their employees, other laws may. For example, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act, 29 U.S.C. § 1001 et seq., the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, 42 U.S.C. § 18001 et seq., and the New York City Paid Sick Leave Law, N.Y.C. Admin. Code § 20-911 et seq., require certain employers to provide certain benefits to their employees. Labor agreements to which employers are a party may also require certain benefits. The Comptroller's Office does not enforce these laws or agreements.

**Employers must provide prevailing supplemental benefits at the straight time rate for each hour worked unless otherwise noted in the classification.**

**Paid Holidays, Vacation and Sick Leave when listed must be paid or provided in addition to the prevailing hourly supplemental benefit rate.**

For more information, please refer to the Comptroller's Prevailing Wage Law Regulations in Title 44 of the Rules of the City of New York, Chapter 2, available at [comptroller.nyc.gov/wages](http://comptroller.nyc.gov/wages).

**Wasył Kinach, P.E.  
Director of Classifications  
Bureau of Labor Law**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<u>CLASSIFICATION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
ASBESTOS HANDLER .....	5
BLASTER .....	5
BOILERMAKER.....	6
BRICKLAYER.....	7
CARPENTER - BUILDING COMMERCIAL .....	8
CARPENTER - HEAVY CONSTRUCTION WORK.....	9
CARPENTER - HIGH RISE CONCRETE FORMS .....	10
CARPENTER - SIDEWALK SHED, SCAFFOLD AND HOIST.....	11
CEMENT & CONCRETE WORKER.....	11
CEMENT MASON.....	13
CORE DRILLER .....	13
DERRICKPERSON AND RIGGER .....	15
DIVER .....	16
DOCKBUILDER - PILE DRIVER.....	16
DRIVER: TRUCK (TEAMSTER) .....	17
ELECTRICIAN .....	19
ELECTRICIAN - ALARM TECHNICIAN.....	22
ELECTRICIAN-STREET LIGHTING WORKER .....	23
ELEVATOR CONSTRUCTOR .....	24
ELEVATOR REPAIR & MAINTENANCE.....	25
ENGINEER .....	26
ENGINEER - CITY SURVEYOR AND CONSULTANT.....	31
ENGINEER - FIELD (BUILDING CONSTRUCTION) .....	32
ENGINEER - FIELD (HEAVY CONSTRUCTION) .....	33
ENGINEER - FIELD (STEEL ERECTION) .....	34
ENGINEER - OPERATING .....	35
FLOOR COVERER .....	43
GLAZIER .....	44
GLAZIER - REPAIR & MAINTENANCE .....	44
HAZARDOUS MATERIAL HANDLER.....	45
HEAT AND FROST INSULATOR .....	46
HOUSE WRECKER.....	47
IRON WORKER - ORNAMENTAL.....	48
IRON WORKER - STRUCTURAL.....	49
LABORER .....	50
LANDSCAPING.....	51
MARBLE MECHANIC.....	52

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

MASON TENDER .....	53
MASON TENDER (INTERIOR DEMOLITION WORKER).....	54
METALLIC LATHER.....	55
MILLWRIGHT .....	56
MOSAIC MECHANIC.....	57
PAINTER .....	58
PAINTER - METAL POLISHER.....	58
PAINTER - SIGN.....	60
PAINTER - STRIPER.....	60
PAINTER - STRUCTURAL STEEL.....	61
PAPERHANGER .....	62
PAVER AND ROADBUILDER.....	63
PLASTERER .....	65
PLASTERER - TENDER.....	66
PLUMBER .....	67
PLUMBER (MECHNICAL EQUIPMENT AND SERVICE).....	68
PLUMBER (RESIDENTIAL RATES FOR 1, 2 AND 3 FAMILY HOME CONSTRUCTION).....	68
PLUMBER: PUMP & TANK.....	69
POINTER, WATERPROOFER, CAULKER, SANDBLASTER, STEAMBLASTER.....	70
ROOFER.....	71
SHEET METAL WORKER.....	72
SHEET METAL WORKER - SPECIALTY.....	73
SHIPYARD WORKER.....	74
SIGN ERECTOR.....	75
STEAMFITTER.....	76
STEAMFITTER - REFRIGERATION AND AIR CONDITIONER.....	78
STONE MASON - SETTER.....	80
TAPER.....	80
TELECOMMUNICATION WORKER.....	81
TILE FINISHER.....	82
TILE LAYER - SETTER.....	83
TIMBERPERSON .....	84
TUNNEL WORKER .....	85
WELDER.....	87

**ASBESTOS HANDLER**  
**SEE HAZARDOUS MATERIAL HANDLER**

---

---

**BLASTER**

**Blaster**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$55.21  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.53

**Blaster- Hydraulic Trac Drill**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$49.35  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.53

**Blaster - Wagon: Air Trac: Quarry Bar: Drillrunners**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$48.52  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.53

**Blaster - Journeyperson**

(Laborer, Chipper/Jackhammer including Walk Behind Self Propelled Hydraulic Asphalt and Concrete Breakers and Hydro (Water) Demolition, Powder Carrier, Hydraulic Chuck Tender, Chuck Tender and Nipper)

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.00  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.53

**Blaster - Magazine Keepers: (Watch Person)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$21.00  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.53

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day

### Shift Rates

When two shifts are employed, single time rate shall be paid for each shift. When three shifts are found necessary, each shift shall work seven and one half hours (7 ½), but shall be paid for eight (8) hours of labor, and be permitted one half hour for lunch.

(Local #731)

---

## BOILERMAKER

### Boilermaker

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$57.17

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.62

Supplemental Note: For time and one half overtime - \$64.81 For double overtime - \$86.00

### Overtime Description

For Repair and Maintenance work:

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

For New Construction work:

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Columbus Day  
Election Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

Quadruple time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).  
Labor Day

### **Paid Holidays**

Good Friday  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Day before Christmas  
Day before New Year's Day

### **Shift Rates**

When shifts are required, the first shift shall work eight (8) hours at the regular straight-time hourly rate. The second shift shall work seven and one-half (7 ½) hours and receive eight hours at the regular straight time hourly rate plus twenty-five cents (\$0.25) per hour. The third shift shall work seven (7) hours and receive eight hours at the regular straight time hourly rate plus fifty cents (\$0.50) per hour. A thirty (30) minute lunch period shall not be considered as time worked. Work in excess of the above shall be paid overtime at the appropriate new construction work or repair work overtime wage and supplemental benefit hourly rate.

(Local #5)

---

## **BRICKLAYER**

### **Bricklayer**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$55.10**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.20**

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.  
Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).  
New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**  
None

**Shift Rates**  
Overtime rates to be paid outside the regular scheduled work day.

(Bricklayer District Council)

---

---

## **CARPENTER - BUILDING COMMERCIAL**

### **Building Commercial**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$52.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$46.28

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Washington's Birthday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

### **Shift Rates**

The employer may work two (2) shifts with the first shift at the straight time wage rate starting at the established time between 7 a.m. and 9 a.m. The second shift will receive one hour at the double time rate of pay for the last hour of the shift; eight (8) hours pay for seven (7) hours of work, nine (9) hours pay for eight (8) hours of work.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

When it is not possible to conduct alteration work during regular working hours in a building occupied by tenants, the rule for the second shift will apply.

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

**CARPENTER - HEAVY CONSTRUCTION WORK**  
**(Construction of Engineering Structures and Building Foundations)**

**Heavy Construction Work**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$53.63

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$50.67

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Off shift work commencing between 5:00 P.M. and 11:00 P.M. shall work eight and one half hours allowing for one half hour for lunch. The wage rate shall be 113% of the straight time hourly wage rate.

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**CARPENTER - HIGH RISE CONCRETE FORMS**  
(Excludes Engineering Structures and Building Foundations)

**Carpenter High Rise A**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$50.78

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.34

**Carpenter High Rise B**

Carpenter High Rise B worker is excluded from high risk operations such as erection decking, perimeter debris netting, leading edge work, self-climbing form systems, and the installation of cocoon systems unless directly supervised by a Carpenter High Rise A worker.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$40.19

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.65

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Good Friday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

The second shift wage rate shall be 113% of the straight time hourly wage rate. There must be a first shift in order to work a second shift.

(Carpenters District Council)

## **CARPENTER - SIDEWALK SHED, SCAFFOLD AND HOIST**

### **Carpenter - Hod Hoist**

(Assisted by Mason Tender)

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$50.50**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$39.46**

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

### **Shift Rates**

The second shift will receive one hour at the double time rate of pay for the last hour of the shift; eight hours pay for seven hours of work, nine hours pay for eight hours of work. There must be a first shift in order to work a second shift.

(Carpenters District Council)

---

## **CEMENT & CONCRETE WORKER**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Cement & Concrete Worker**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.48

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$26.00

Supplemental Note: \$29.50 on Saturdays; \$33.00 on Sundays & Holidays

**Cement & Concrete Worker - (Hired after 2/6/2016)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$32.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.00

Supplemental Note: \$19.50 on Saturdays; \$21.00 on Sundays & Holidays

**Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate after 7 hour day (time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day when working with Dockbuilders on pile cap forms and for work below street level to the top of the foundation wall, not to exceed 2 feet or 3 feet above the sidewalk-brick shelf, when working on the foundation and structure.)

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Good Friday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

1/2 day before Christmas Day

1/2 day before New Year's Day

**Shift Rates**

On shift work extending over a twenty-four hour period, all shifts are paid at straight time.

(Cement Concrete Workers District Council)

## **CEMENT MASON**

### **Cement Mason**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.97

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$39.71

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefit contributions are to be made at the applicable overtime rates.

### **Overtime Description**

Time and one-half the regular rate after an 8 hour day, double time the regular rate after 10 hours. Time and one-half the regular rate on Saturday, double time the regular rate after 10 hours. Double time the regular rate on Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Good Friday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

Any worker who reports to work on Christmas Eve or New Year's Eve pursuant to his employer's instruction shall be entitled to three (3) hours afternoon pay without working.

### **Shift Rates**

For an off shift day, (work at times other than the regular 7:00 A.M. to 3:30 P.M. work day) a cement mason shall be paid at the regular hourly rate plus a 25% per hour differential. Four Days a week at Ten (10)hour day.

(Local #780) (BCA)

---

---

## **CORE DRILLER**

### **Core Driller**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$39.69

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.45

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Core Driller Helper**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$31.62**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$25.45**

**Core Driller Helper(Third year in the industry)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$28.46**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$25.45**

**Core Driller Helper (Second year in the industry)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$25.30**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$25.45**

**Core Driller Helper (First year in the industry)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$22.13**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$25.45**

**Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on a holiday plus Holiday pay when worked.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.  
Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

The shift day shall be the continuous eight and one-half (8½) hours from 6:00 A.M. to 2:30 P.M. and from 2:30 P.M. to 11:00 P.M., including one-half (½) hour of employees regular rate of pay for lunch. When two (2) or more shifts are employed, single time shall be paid for each shift, but those employees employed on a shift other than from 8:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M. shall, in addition, receive seventy-five cents (\$0.75) per hour differential for each hour worked. When three (3) shifts are needed, each shift shall work seven and one-half (7 ½) hours paid for eight (8) hours of labor and be permitted one-half (½) hour for mealtime.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Carpenters District Council)

---

## **DERRICKPERSON AND RIGGER**

### **Derrick Person & Rigger**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$46.86

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$51.40

Supplemental Note: The above supplemental rate applies for work performed in Manhattan, Bronx, Brooklyn and Queens. \$52.82 - For work performed in Staten Island.

### **Derrick Person & Rigger - Site Work**

Assists the Stone Mason-Setter in the setting of stone

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$40.29

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$39.23

### **Overtime Description**

The first two hours of overtime on weekdays and the first seven hours of work on Saturdays are paid at time and one half for wages and supplemental benefits. All additional overtimes is paid at double time for wages and supplemental benefits. Deduct \$1.42 from the Staten Island hourly benefits rate before computing overtime.

### **Overtime**

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Washington's Birthday  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

1/2 day on Christmas Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

(Local #197)

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

## DIVER

### Diver (Marine)

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$67.94

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$50.67

### Diver Tender (Marine)

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$48.24

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$50.67

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Thanksgiving Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

None

### Shift Rates

When three shifts are utilized each shift shall work seven and one half-hours (7 1/2 hours) and paid for 8 hours, allowing for one half hour for lunch.

(Carpenters District Council)

---

## DOCKBUILDER - PILE DRIVER

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Dockbuilder - Pile Driver**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$53.63

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$50.67

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Off shift work commencing between 5:00 P.M. and 11:00 P.M. shall work eight and one half hours allowing for one half hour for lunch. The wage rate shall be 113% of the straight time hourly wage rate.

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

**DRIVER: TRUCK (TEAMSTER)**

**Driver - Dump Truck**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$41.18

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$47.22

Supplemental Note: Over 40 hours worked: at time and one half rate - \$20.58; at double time rate - \$27.44

**Driver - Tractor Trailer**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.97

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$47.15

Supplemental Note: Over 40 hours worked: at time and one half rate - \$18.30; at double time rate - \$24.41

**Driver - Euclid & Turnapull Operator**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.53

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$47.15

Supplemental Note: Over 40 hours worked: at time and one half rate - \$18.30 at double time rate - \$24.41

**Overtime Description**

For Paid Holidays: Holiday pay for all holidays shall be prorated based two hours per day for each day worked in the holiday week, not to exceed 8 hours of holiday pay. For Thanksgiving week, the prorated share shall be 5 1/3 hours of holiday pay for each day worked in Thanksgiving week.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

Off single shift work commencing between 6:00 P.M. and 5:00 A.M. shall work eight and one half (8 1/2) hours allowing for one half hour for lunch and be paid 117.3% of the straight time hourly wage rate.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Driver Redi-Mix (Sand & Gravel)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$38.40

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$44.12

Supplemental Note: Over 40 hours worked: time and one half rate \$15.99, double time rate \$21.33

**Overtime Description**

For Paid Holidays: Employees working two (2) days in the calendar week in which the holiday falls are to paid for these holidays, provided they shape each remaining workday during that calendar week.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

President's Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Triple time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

(Local #282)

---

**ELECTRICIAN**

(Including installation of low voltage cabling carrying data, video and/or voice on building construction/alteration/renovation projects.)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Electrician "A" (Regular Day / Day Shift)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$56.00  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$55.72

**Electrician "A" (Regular Day Overtime after 7 hrs / Day Shift Overtime after 8 hrs)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$84.00  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$59.23

**Electrician "A" (Swing Shift)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$65.71  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$63.52

**Electrician "A" (Swing Shift Overtime After 7.5 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$98.57  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$67.64

**Electrician "A" (Graveyard Shift)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$73.60  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$70.09

**Electrician "A" (Graveyard Shift Overtime After 7 hours)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$110.40  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$74.70

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on a holiday.  
New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

When so elected by the Employer, one or more shifts of at least five days duration may be scheduled as follows:  
Day Shift: 8:00 am to 4:30 pm, Swing Shift 4:30 pm to 12:30 am, Graveyard Shift: 12:30 am to 8:00 am.

For multiple shifts of temporary light and/or power, the temporary light and/or power employee shall be paid for 8 hours at the straight time rate. For three or less workers performing 8 hours temporary light and/or power the supplemental benefit rate is \$25.92.

---

**Electrician "M" (First 8 hours)**

"M" rated work shall be defined as jobbing: electrical work of limited duration and scope, also consisting of repairs and/or replacement of electrical and tele-data equipment. Includes all work necessary to retrofit, service, maintain and repair all kinds of lighting fixtures and local lighting controls and washing and cleaning of foregoing fixtures.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$29.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$22.65

First and Second Year "M" Wage Rate Per Hour: \$24.50

First and Second Year "M" Supplemental Rate: \$20.30

**Electrician "M" (Overtime After First 8 hours)**

"M" rated work shall be defined as jobbing: electrical work of limited duration and scope, also consisting of repairs and/or replacement of electrical and tele-data equipment. Includes all work necessary to retrofit, service, maintain and repair all kinds of lighting fixtures and local lighting controls and washing and cleaning of foregoing fixtures.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$24.47

First and Second Year "M" Wage Rate Per Hour: \$36.75

First and Second Year "M" Supplemental Rate: \$21.84

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

(Local #3)

---

**ELECTRICIAN - ALARM TECHNICIAN**

(Scope of Work - Inspect, test, repair, and replace defective, malfunctioning, or broken devices, components and controls of Fire, Burglar and Security Systems)

**Alarm Technician**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 3/9/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$32.90**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$16.82**

Supplemental Note: **\$15.32** only after 8 hours worked in a day

Effective Period: 3/10/2019 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$33.40**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$17.68**

Supplemental Note: **\$16.06** only after 8 hours worked in a day

**Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holidays: Columbus Day, Veterans Day, Day after Thanksgiving.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holidays: New Year's day, Martin Luther King Jr. Day, President's Day, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Paid Holidays**

- New Year's Day
- Martin Luther King Jr. Day
- President's Day
- Memorial Day
- Independence Day
- Labor Day
- Columbus Day
- Veteran's Day
- Thanksgiving Day
- Day after Thanksgiving
- Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

Night Differential is based upon a ten percent (10%) differential between the hours of 4:00 P.M. and 12:30 A.M. and a fifteen percent (15%) differential for the hours 12:00 A.M. to 8:00 A.M.

**Vacation**

- At least 1 year of employment.....ten (10) days
- 5 years or more of employment.....fifteen (15) days
- 10 years of employment.....twenty (20) days
- Plus one Personal Day per year

**Sick Days:**

One day per Year. Up to 4 vacation days may be used as sick days.

(Local #3)

---

---

**ELECTRICIAN-STREET LIGHTING WORKER**

**Electrician - Electro Pole Electrician**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$56.00  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$57.63

**Electrician - Electro Pole Foundation Installer**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.16  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.19

**Electrician - Electro Pole Maintainer**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$36.11

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$37.93

### Overtime Description

Electrician - Electro Pole Electrician: Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day and after 5 consecutive days worked per week.

Electrician - Electro Pole Foundation Installer: Time and one half the regular rate after 8 hours within a 24 hour period and Saturday and Sunday.

Electrician - Electro Pole Maintainer: Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day and after 5 consecutive days worked per week. Saturdays and Sundays may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during the week to inclement weather.

### Overtime Holidays

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Martin Luther King Jr. Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

None

(Local #3)

---

## ELEVATOR CONSTRUCTOR

### Elevator Constructor

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$64.48

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$35.80

### Overtime Description

For New Construction: work performed after 7 or 8 hour day, Saturday, Sunday or between 4:30pm and 7:00am shall be paid at double time rate.

Existing buildings: work performed after an 8 hour day, Saturday, Sunday or between 5:30pm and 7:00 am shall be paid time and one half.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Vacation**

Employer contributes 8% of regular basic hourly rate as vacation pay for employees with more than 15 years of service, and 6% for employees with 5 to 15 years of service, and 4% for employees with less than 5 years of service.

(Local #1)

---

**ELEVATOR REPAIR & MAINTENANCE**

**Elevator Service/Modernization Mechanic**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$50.49

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$35.65

**Overtime Description**

For Scheduled Service Work: Double time - work scheduled in advance by two or more workers performed on Sundays, Holidays, and between midnight and 7:00am.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

Time and one half the regular rate for work on a holiday plus the day's pay.

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

Afternoon shift - regularly hourly rate plus a (15%) fifteen percent differential. Graveyard shift - time and one half the regular rate.

**Vacation**

Employer contributes 8% of regular basic hourly rate as vacation pay for employees with more than 15 years of service, and 6% for employees with 5 to 15 years of service, and 4% for employees with less than 5 years of service.

(Local #1)

---

**ENGINEER**

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Operating Engineer I**

Cherry pickers 20 tons and over and Loaders (rubber tired and/or tractor type with a manufacturer's minimum rated capacity of six cubic yards and over).

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$68.99

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

Shift Wage Rate: \$110.38

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Operating Engineer II**

Backhoes, Basin Machines, Groover, Mechanical Sweepers, Bobcat, Boom Truck, Barrier Transport (Barrier Mover) & machines of similar nature. Operation of Churn Drills and machines of a similar nature, Stetco Silent Hoist and machines of similar nature, Vac-A-alls, Meyers Machines, John Beam and machines of a similar nature, Ross Carriers and Travel Lifts and machines of a similar nature, Bulldozers, Scrapers and Turn-a-Pulls: Tugger Hoists (Used exclusively for handling excavated material); Tractors with attachments, Hyster and Roustabout Cranes, Cherry pickers. Austin Western, Grove and machines of a similar nature, Scoopmobiles, Monorails, Conveyors, Trenchers: Loaders-Rubber Tired and Tractor: Barber Greene and Eimco Loaders and Eimco Backhoes; Mighty Midget and similar breakers and Tampers, Curb and Gutter Pavers and Motor Patrol, Motor Graders and all machines of a similar nature. Locomotives 10 Tons or under. Mini-Max, Break-Tech and machines of a similar nature; Milling machines, robotic and demolition machines and machines of a similar nature, shot blaster, skid steer machines and machines of a similar nature including bobcat, pile rig rubber-tired excavator (37,000 lbs. and under), 2 man auger.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$66.92

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: \$107.07

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Operating Engineer III**

Minor Equipment such as Tractors, Post Hole Diggers, Ditch Witch (Walk Behind), Road Finishing Machines, Rollers five tons and under, Tugger Hoists, Dual Purpose Trucks, Fork Lifts, and Dempsey Dumpers, Fireperson.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$63.44  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: \$101.50

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Maintenance Engineer I**

Installing, Repairing, Maintaining, Dismantling and Manning of all equipment including Steel Cutting, Bending and Heat Sealing Machines, Mechanical Heaters, Grout Pumps, Bentonite Pumps & Plants, Screening Machines, Fusion Coupling Machines, Tunnel Boring Machines Moles and Machines of a similar nature, Power Packs, Mechanical Hydraulic Jacks; all drill rigs including but not limited to Churn, Rotary Caisson, Raised Bore & Drills of a similar nature; Personnel, Inspection & Safety Boats or any boats used to perform functions of same, Mine Hoists, Whirlies, all Climbing Cranes, all Tower Cranes, including but not limited to Truck Mounted and Crawler Type and machines of similar nature; Maintaining Hydraulic Drills and machines of a similar nature; Well Point System-Installation and dismantling; Burning, Welding, all Pumps regardless of size and/or motor power, except River Cofferdam Pumps and Wells Point Pumps; Motorized Buggies (three or more); equipment used in the cleaning and televising of sewers, but not limited to jet-rodder/vacuum truck, vacall/vactor, closed circuit television inspection equipment; high powered water pumps, jet pumps; screed machines and concrete finishing machines of a similar nature; vermeers.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$66.60  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: \$106.56

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Maintenance Engineer II**

On Base Mounted Tower Cranes

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$87.74  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: \$140.38

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Maintenance Engineer III**

On Generators, Light Towers

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.66

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$38.28**  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$69.86**

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Maintenance Engineer IV**

On Pumps and Mixers including mud sucking

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$44.82**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$38.28**  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$71.71**

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Oilers I**

Gradalls, Cold Planer Grader, Concrete Pumps, Driving Truck Cranes, Driving and Operating Fuel and Grease Trucks.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$59.97**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$38.28**  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$95.95**

**Engineer - Heavy Construction Oilers II**

All gasoline, electric, diesel or air operated Shovels, Draglines, Backhoes, Keystones, Pavers, Gunite Machines, Battery of Compressors, Crawler Cranes, two-person Trenching Machines.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$41.22**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$38.28**  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$65.95**

**Engineer - Steel Erection Maintenance Engineers**

Derrick, Travelers, Tower, Crawler Tower and Climbing Cranes

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$63.75**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$38.28**  
Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$102.00**

**Engineer - Steel Erection Oiler I**

On a Truck Crane

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$59.61

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

Shift Wage Rate: \$95.38

### Engineer - Steel Erection Oiler II

On a Crawler Crane

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.16

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

Shift Wage Rate: \$72.26

### **Overtime Description**

On jobs of more than one shift, if the next shift employee fails to report for work through any cause over which the employer has no control, the employee on duty who works the next shift continues to work at the single time rate.

### **Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

### **Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

Lincoln's Birthday

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

---

### Engineer - Building Work Maintenance Engineers I

Installing, repairing, maintaining, dismantling (of all equipment including: Steel Cutting and Bending Machines, Mechanical Heaters, Mine Hoists, Climbing Cranes, Tower Cranes, Linden Peine, Lorain, Liebherr, Mannes, or machines of a similar nature, Well Point Systems, Deep Well Pumps, Concrete Mixers with loading Device, Concrete Plants, Motor Generators when used for temporary power and lights), skid steer machines of a similar nature including bobcat.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$61.05

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

**Engineer - Building Work Maintenance Engineers II**

On Pumps, Generators, Mixers and Heaters

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$47.25

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

**Engineer - Building Work Oilers I**

All gasoline, electric, diesel or air operated Gradealls: Concrete Pumps, Overhead Cranes in Power Houses: Their duties shall be to assist the Engineer in oiling, greasing and repairing of all machines; Driving Truck Cranes: Driving and Operating Fuel and Grease Trucks, Cherrypickers (hydraulic cranes) over 70,000 GVW, and machines of a similar nature.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$58.01

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

**Engineer - Building Work Oilers II**

Oilers on Crawler Cranes, Backhoes, Trenching Machines, Gunite Machines, Compressors (three or more in Battery).

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.89

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.28

Supplemental Note: \$69.16 on overtime

**Overtime Description**

On jobs of more than one shift, if an Employee fails to report for work through any cause over which the Employer has no control, the Employee on duty will continue to work at the rate of single time.

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

Lincoln's Birthday

President's Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

### Shift Rates

Off Shift: double time the regular hourly rate.

(Local #15)

---

---

## ENGINEER - CITY SURVEYOR AND CONSULTANT

### Party Chief

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$39.90**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$21.60**

Supplemental Note: Overtime Benefit Rate - \$29.83 per hour (time & one half) \$38.05 per hour (double time).

### Instrument Person

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$32.81**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$21.60**

Supplemental Note: Overtime Benefit Rate - \$29.83 per hour (time & one half) \$38.05 per hour (double time).

### Rodperson

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$28.34**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$21.60**

Supplemental Note: Overtime Benefit Rate - \$29.83 per hour (time & one half) \$38.05 per hour (double time).

### Overtime Description

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day, Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday for the first eight hours worked, Double time the regular time rate for Saturday for work performed in excess of eight hours, Double time the regular rate for Sunday and Double time the regular rate for work on a holiday.

### Paid Holidays

New Year's Day  
Lincoln's Birthday  
President's Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

(Operating Engineer Local #15-D)

---

**ENGINEER - FIELD (BUILDING CONSTRUCTION)**  
(Construction of Building Projects, Concrete Superstructures, etc.)

**Field Engineer - BC Party Chief**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$63.81**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$33.93**

Supplemental Note: Overtime Benefit Rate - \$47.57 per hour (time & one half) \$61.21 per hour (double time).

**Field Engineer - BC Instrument Person**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$49.60**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$33.93**

Supplemental Note: Overtime Benefit Rate - \$47.57 per hour (time & one half) \$61.21 per hour (double time).

**Field Engineer - BC Rodperson**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$32.11**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$33.93**

Supplemental Note: Overtime Benefit Rate - \$47.57 per hour (time & one half) \$61.21 per hour (double time).

**Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour work and time and one half the regular rate for Saturday for the first seven hours worked, Double time the regular time rate for Saturday for work performed in excess of seven hours, Double time the regular rate for Sunday and Double time the regular rate for work on a holiday.

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

(Operating Engineer Local #15-D)

---

---

**ENGINEER - FIELD (HEAVY CONSTRUCTION)**  
(Construction of Roads, Tunnels, Bridges, Sewers, Building Foundations,  
Engineering Structures etc.)

**Field Engineer - HC Party Chief**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$72.19

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$35.32

Supplemental Note: Overtime benefit rate - \$49.53 per hour (time & one half), \$63.74 per hour (double time).

**Field Engineer - HC Instrument Person**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$53.03

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$35.32

Supplemental Note: Overtime benefit rate - \$49.53 per hour (time & one half), \$63.74 per hour (double time).

**Field Engineer - HC Rodperson**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$44.51

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$35.32

Supplemental Note: Overtime benefit rate - \$49.53 per hour (time & one half), \$63.74 per hour (double time).

**Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day, Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday for the first eight hours worked, Double time the regular time rate for Saturday for work performed in excess of eight hours, Double time the regular rate for Sunday and Double time the regular rate for work on a holiday.

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
Lincoln's Birthday

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

(Operating Engineer Local #15-D)

---

---

## **ENGINEER - FIELD (STEEL ERECTION)**

### **Field Engineer - Steel Erection Party Chief**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$67.31**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$34.82**

Supplemental Note: Overtime benefit rate - \$48.78 per hour (time & one half), \$62.74 per hour (double time).

### **Field Engineer - Steel Erection Instrument Person**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$52.47**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$34.82**

Supplemental Note: Overtime benefit rate - \$48.78 per hour (time & one half), \$62.74 per hour (double time).

### **Field Engineer - Steel Erection Rodperson**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$35.14**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$34.82**

Supplemental Note: Overtime benefit rate - \$48.78 per hour (time & one half), \$62.74 per hour (double time).

## **Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday for the first eight hours worked.

Double time the regular rate for Saturday for work performed in excess of eight hours.

## **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

## **Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Lincoln's Birthday  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

(Operating Engineer Local #15-D)

---

---

## **ENGINEER - OPERATING**

### **Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction I**

Back Filling Machines, Cranes, Mucking Machines and Dual Drum Paver.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$79.03

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$126.45

### **Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction II**

Backhoes, Power Shovels, Hydraulic Clam Shells, Steel Erection, Moles and machines of a similar nature.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$81.79

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$130.86

### **Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction III**

Mine Hoists, Cranes, etc. (Used as Mine Hoists)

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$84.39

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$135.02

### **Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction IV**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Gradealls, Keystones, Cranes on land or water (with digging buckets), Bridge Cranes, Vermeer Cutter and machines of a similar nature, Trenching Machines.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$82.38

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$131.81

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction V**

Pile Drivers & Rigs (employing Dock Builder foreperson): Derrick Boats, Tunnel Shovels.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$80.77

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$129.23

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction VI**

Mixers (Concrete with loading attachment), Concrete Pavers, Cableways, Land Derricks, Power Houses (Low Air Pressure Units).

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$76.78

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$122.85

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction VII**

Barrier Movers , Barrier Transport and Machines of a Similar Nature.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$62.16

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$99.46

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction VIII**

Utility Compressors

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$48.42

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$60.82

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction IX**

Horizontal Boring Rig

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$73.05

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$116.88

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction X**

Elevators (manually operated as personnel hoist).

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$67.21

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$107.54

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XI**

Compressors (Portable 3 or more in battery), Driving of Truck Mounted Compressors, Well-point Pumps, Tugger Machines Well Point Pumps, Churn Drill.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$52.38

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$83.81

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XII**

All Drills and Machines of a similar nature.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$77.58

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$124.13

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XIII**

Concrete Pumps, Concrete Plant, Stone Crushers, Double Drum Hoist, Power Houses (other than above).

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$75.16

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Shift Wage Rate: \$120.26

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XIV**

Concrete Mixer

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$71.89

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$115.02

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XV**

Compressors (Portable Single or two in Battery, not over 100 feet apart), Pumps (River Cofferdam) and Welding Machines, Push Button Machines, All Engines Irrespective of Power (Power-Pac) used to drive auxiliary equipment, Air, Hydraulic, etc.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$48.73

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$77.97

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XVI**

Concrete Breaking Machines, Hoists (Single Drum), Load Masters, Locomotives (over ten tons) and Dinkies over ten tons, Hydraulic Crane-Second Engineer.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$68.69

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$109.90

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XVII**

On-Site concrete plant engineer, On-site Asphalt Plant Engineer, and Vibratory console.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$69.21

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

Shift Wage Rate: \$110.74

**Operating Engineer - Road & Heavy Construction XVIII**

Tower Crane

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: \$98.99  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85  
Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: \$158.38

**Operating Engineer - Paving I**

Asphalt Spreaders, Autogrades (C.M.I.), Roto/Mil

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$76.78  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85  
Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: \$122.85

**Operating Engineer - Paving II**

Asphalt Roller

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$74.81  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85  
Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: \$119.70

**Operating Engineer - Paving III**

Asphalt Plants

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$63.40  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85  
Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: \$101.44

**Operating Engineer - Concrete I**

Cranes

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$82.02  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.85  
Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Concrete II**

Compressors

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$49.10**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Concrete III**

Micro-traps (Negative Air Machines), Vac-All Remediation System.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$65.70**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Steel Erection I**

Three Drum Derricks

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$84.83**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$135.73**

**Operating Engineer - Steel Erection II**

Cranes, 2 Drum Derricks, Hydraulic Cranes, Fork Lifts and Boom Trucks.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$81.54**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$130.46**

**Operating Engineer - Steel Erection III**

Compressors, Welding Machines.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$48.69**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$77.90**

**Operating Engineer - Steel Erection IV**

Compressors - Not Combined with Welding Machine.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$46.39**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours  
Shift Wage Rate: **\$74.22**

**Operating Engineer - Building Work I**

Forklifts, Plaster (Platform machine), Plaster Bucket, Concrete Pump and all other equipment used for hoisting material.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$67.78**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Building Work II**

Compressors, Welding Machines (Cutting Concrete-Tank Work), Paint Spraying, Sandblasting, Pumps (with the exclusion of Concrete Pumps), All Engines irrespective of Power (Power-Pac) used to drive Auxiliary Equipment, Air, Hydraulic, Jacking System, etc.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$50.96**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Building Work III**

Double Drum

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$77.03**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Building Work IV**

Stone Derrick, Cranes, Hydraulic Cranes Boom Trucks.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$81.56**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**  
Supplemental Note: **\$57.75** overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Building Work V**

Dismantling and Erection of Cranes, Relief Engineer.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$75.21**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Building Work VI**

4 Pole Hoist, Single Drum Hoists.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$74.43**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

**Operating Engineer - Building Work VII**

Rack & Pinion and House Cars

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$59.35**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$31.85**

Supplemental Note: \$57.75 overtime hours

For New House Car projects Wage Rate per Hour **\$47.54**

**Overtime Description**

On jobs of more than one shift, if an Employee fails to report for work through any cause over which the Employer has no control, the Employee on duty will continue to work at the rate of single time.

For House Cars and Rack & Pinion only: Overtime paid at time and one-half for all hours in excess of eight hours in a day, Saturday, Sunday and Holidays worked.

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

Lincoln's Birthday

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

Employees must work at least one day in the payroll week in which the holiday occurs to receive the paid holiday

**Shift Rates**

For Steel Erection Only: Shifts may be worked at the single time rate at other than the regular working hours (8:00 A.M. to 4:30 P.M.) on the following work ONLY: Heavy construction jobs on work below the street level, over railroad tracks and on building jobs.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Operating Engineer Local #14)

---

---

## **FLOOR COVERER**

(Interior vinyl composition tile, sheath vinyl linoleum and wood parquet tile including site preparation and synthetic turf not including site preparation)

### **Floor Coverer**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$50.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$45.88

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

1/2 day on Christmas Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

1/2 day on New Year's Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

### **Shift Rates**

Two shifts may be utilized with the first shift working 8:00 A.M. to the end of the shift at the straight time of pay. The second shift will receive one hour at double time rate for the last hour of the shift. (eight for seven, nine for eight).

(Carpenters District Council)

---

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**GLAZIER**  
(New Construction, Remodeling, and Alteration)

**Glazier**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$45.55**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$41.39**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental Benefit Overtime Rate: **\$62.10**

**Overtime Description**

An optional 8th hour can be worked at straight time rate. If 9th hour is worked, then both hours or more (8th & 9th or more) will be at the double time rate of pay.

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Shifts shall be any 7 hours beyond 4:00 P.M. for which the glazier shall receive 8 hours pay for 7 hours worked.

(Local #1281)

---

**GLAZIER - REPAIR & MAINTENANCE**

(For the Installation of Glass - All repair and maintenance work on a particular building, whenever performed, where the total cumulative contract value is

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

under \$141,750. Except where enumerated (i.e. plate glass windows) does not apply to non-residential buildings.)

**Craft Jurisdiction for repair, maintenance and fabrication**

Plate glass replacement, Residential glass replacement, Residential mirrors and shower doors, Storm windows and storm doors, Residential replacement windows, Herculite door repairs, Door closer repairs, Retrofit apartment house (non commercial buildings), Glass tinting.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$25.06**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$21.54**

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

Time and one half the regular hourly rate after 40 hours in any work week.

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

(Local #1281)

---

**HAZARDOUS MATERIAL HANDLER**

(Removal, abatement, encapsulation or decontamination of asbestos, lead, mold, or other toxic or hazardous waste/materials)

**Handler**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$36.00**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$16.45**

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.  
Time and one half the regular hourly rate after 40 hours in any work week.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day  
Easter

**Paid Holidays**

None

(Local #78 and Local #12A)

---

---

**HEAT AND FROST INSULATOR**

**Heat & Frost Insulator**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$61.21

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$39.46

**Overtime Description**

Double time shall be paid for supplemental benefits during overtime work.  
8th hour paid at time and one half.

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Christmas Day

Triple time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).  
Labor Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

### **Shift Rates**

The first shift shall work seven hours at the regular straight time rate. The second and third shift shall work seven hours the regular straight time hourly rate plus a fourteen percent wage and benefit premium. Off hour work in occupied or retail buildings may be worked on weekdays with an increment of \$1.00 per hour and eight hours pay for seven (7) hours worked. Double time will apply for over seven (7) hours worked on weekdays, weekends or holidays.

(Local #12) (BCA)

---

---

## **HOUSE WRECKER (TOTAL DEMOLITION)**

### **House Wrecker - Tier A**

On all work sites the first, second, eleventh and every third House Wrecker thereafter will be Tier A House Wreckers (i.e. 1st, 2nd, 11th, 14th etc). Other House Wreckers may be Tier B House Wreckers.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$36.88

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$29.47

### **House Wrecker - Tier B**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.11

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$21.88

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**  
None

(Mason Tenders District Council)

---

---

## **IRON WORKER - ORNAMENTAL**

### **Iron Worker - Ornamental**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$44.40**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$52.62**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits are to be paid at the applicable overtime rate when overtime is in effect.

### **Overtime Description**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day for a maximum of two hours on any regular work day (the 8th and 9th hour) and double time shall be paid for all work on a regular work day thereafter, time and one half the regular rate for Saturday for the first seven hours of work and double time shall be paid for all work on a Saturday thereafter.

### **Overtime**

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

### **Shift Rates**

For off shift work - 8 hours pay for 7 hours of work. When two or three shifts are employed on a job, Monday through Friday, the workday for each shift shall be seven hours and paid for ten and one-half hours at the single

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

time rate. When two or three shifts are worked on Saturday, Sunday or holidays, each shift shall be seven hours and paid fifteen and three-quarters hours.

(Local #580)

---

---

## IRON WORKER - STRUCTURAL

### Iron Worker - Structural

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$50.35

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$73.95

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits are to be paid at the applicable overtime rate when overtime is in effect.

### Overtime Description

Monday through Friday- the first eight hours are paid at straight time, the 9th and 10th hours are paid at time and one-half the regular rate, all additional weekday overtime is paid at double the regular rate. Saturdays- the first eight hours are paid at time and one-half the regular rate, double time thereafter. Sunday-all shifts are paid at double time.

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

1/2 day on Christmas Eve if work is performed in the A.M.  
1/2 day on New Year's Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

### Shift Rates

Monday through Friday - First Shift: First eight hours are paid at straight time, the 9th & 10th hours are paid at time and a half, double time paid thereafter. Second and third Shifts: First eight hours are paid at time and one-half, double time thereafter. Saturdays: All shifts, first eight hours paid at time and one-half, double time thereafter: Sunday all shifts are paid at double time.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Local #40 & #361)

---

---

## LABORER

(Foundation, Concrete, Excavating, Street Pipe Layer and Common)

### Laborer

Excavation and foundation work for buildings, heavy construction, engineering work, and hazardous waste removal in connection with the above work. Landscaping tasks in connection with heavy construction work, engineering work and building projects. Projects include, but are not limited to pollution plants, sewers, parks, subways, bridges, highways, etc.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$42.63

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

Labor Day

Thanksgiving Day

### Shift Rates

When two shifts are employed, single time rate shall be paid for each shift. When three shifts are found necessary, each shift shall work seven and one half hours (7 ½), but shall be paid for eight (8) hours of labor, and be permitted one half hour for lunch.

(Local #731)

---

---

## **LANDSCAPING**

(Landscaping tasks, as well as tree pruning, tree removing, spraying and maintenance in connection with the planting of street trees and the planting of trees in city parks but not when such activities are performed as part of, or in connection with, other construction or reconstruction projects.)

### **Landscaper (Above 6 years experience)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$30.25  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### **Landscaper (3 - 6 years experience)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$29.25  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### **Landscaper (up to 3 years experience)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.75  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### **Groundperson**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$26.75  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### **Tree Remover / Pruner**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$35.25  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### **Landscaper Sprayer (Pesticide Applicator)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$25.25  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### **Watering - Plant Maintainer**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$20.22

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.05

### Overtime Description

For all overtime work performed, supplemental benefits shall include an additional seventy-five (\$0.75) cents per hour.

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Time and one half the regular rate for work on a holiday plus the day's pay.

### Paid Holidays

New Year's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### Shift Rates

Work performed on a 4pm to 12am shift has a 15% differential. Work performed on a 12am to 8am shift has a 20% differential.

(Local #175)

---

## MARBLE MECHANIC

### Marble Setter

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$53.63

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$40.35

### Marble Finisher

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.21

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$37.71

### Marble Polisher

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$37.99

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$29.48

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Overtime Description**

Supplemental Benefit contributions are to be made at the applicable overtime rates. Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day or time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day - chosen by Employer at the start of the project and then would last for the full duration of the project.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

- New Year's Day
- President's Day
- Good Friday
- Memorial Day
- Independence Day
- Labor Day
- Columbus Day
- Veteran's Day
- Thanksgiving Day
- Day after Thanksgiving
- Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

(Local #7)

---

---

**MASON TENDER**

**Mason Tender**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$38.40  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.04

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.  
Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

The employer may work two (2) shifts with the first shift at the straight time wage rate and the second shift receiving eight (8) hours paid for seven (7) hours work at the straight time wage rate. When it is not possible to conduct alteration work during regular working hours in a building occupied by tenants, the rule for the second shift will apply.

(Local #79)

---

**MASON TENDER (INTERIOR DEMOLITION WORKER)**

**Mason Tender Tier A**

Tier A Interior Demolition Worker performs all burning, chopping, and other technically skilled tasks related to interior demolition work.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$36.44

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$24.50

**Mason Tender Tier B**

Tier B Interior Demolition Worker performs manual work and work incidental to demolition work, such as loading and carting of debris from the work site to an area where it can be loaded in to bins/trucks for removal. Also performs clean-up of the site when demolition is completed.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$25.63

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$18.82

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**  
None

(Local #79)

---

---

## METALLIC LATHER

### Metallic Lather

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$46.28**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$44.92**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits for overtime are paid at the appropriate overtime rate.

### Overtime Description

Overtime would be time and one half the regular rate after a seven (7) or eight (8) hours workday, which would be set at the start of the job.

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Washington's Birthday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

1/2 day on Christmas Eve if work is performed in the A.M.  
1/2 day on New Year's Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

### Shift Rates

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

There will be no shift differential paid on the first shift if more than one shift is employed. The shift differential will remain \$12/hour on the second and third shift for the first eight (8) hours if worked. There will be no pyramiding on overtime worked on second and third shifts. The time and one half (1.5x) rate will be against the base wage rate, not the shift differential

(Local #46)

---

---

## MILLWRIGHT

### Millwright

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$52.70

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$53.21

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Good Friday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

1/2 day on Christmas Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

1/2 day on New Year's Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

### Shift Rates

The first shift shall receive the straight time rate of pay. The second shift receives the straight time rate of pay plus fifteen (15%) per cent. Members of the second shift shall be allowed one half hour to eat, with this time being included in the hours of the workday established. There must be a first shift to work a second shift. All additional hours worked shall be paid at the time and one-half rate of pay plus fifteen (15%) per cent for weekday hours.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Local #740)

---

---

## **MOSAIC MECHANIC**

### **Mosaic Mechanic - Mosaic & Terrazzo Mechanic**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$48.85**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$41.33**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits for overtime to be paid at the rate of \$52.35 per hour.

### **Mosaic Mechanic - Mosaic & Terrazzo Finisher**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$47.25**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$41.31**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits for overtime to be paid at the rate of \$52.33 per hour.

### **Mosaic Mechanic - Machine Operator Grinder**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$47.25**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$41.33**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits for overtime to be paid at the rate of \$52.33 per hour.

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Washington's Birthday

Good Friday

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

(Local #7)

---

---

**PAINTER**

**Painter - Brush & Roller**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$30.87

Supplemental Note: \$ 35.50 on overtime

**Spray & Scaffold / Decorative / Sandblast**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$30.87

Supplemental Note: \$ 35.50 on overtime

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

(District Council of Painters #9)

---

---

**PAINTER - METAL POLISHER**

**METAL POLISHER**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$30.58  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$7.16

**METAL POLISHER - NEW CONSTRUCTION**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$31.53  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$7.16

**METAL POLISHER - SCAFFOLD OVER 34 FEET**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$34.08  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$7.16

**Overtime Description**

All work performed on Saturdays shall be paid at time-in-a half. The exception being; for suspended scaffold work and work deemed as a construction project; an eight (8) hour shift lost during the week due to circumstances beyond the control of the employer, up to a maximum of eight (8) hours per week, may be worked on Saturday at the straight time rate.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.  
Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.  
Triple time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

Four Days a week at Ten (10) hours straight a day.

Local 8A-28A

## **PAINTER - SIGN**

### **Sign Painter**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$41.16

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.04

### **Assistant Sign Painter**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$34.97

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$14.92

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

### **Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### **Vacation**

At least 1 year of employment.....1 week

2 years or more of employment.....2 weeks

8 years or more of employment.....3 weeks

(Local #8A-28A)

---

## **PAINTER - STRIPER**

### **Striper (paint)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: \$35.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$12.37

Supplemental Note: Overtime Supplemental Benefit rate - \$8.02; New Hire Rate (0-3 months) - \$0.00

**Lineperson (thermoplastic)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$39.00

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$12.37

Supplemental Note: Overtime Supplemental Benefit rate - \$8.02; New Hire Rate (0-3 months) - \$0.00

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

Good Friday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

Employees hired before April 1, 2003: 15% night shift premium differential for work commenced at 9:00 PM or later.

**Vacation**

Employees with one to two years service shall accrue vacation based on hours worked: 250 hours worked - 1 day vacation; 500 hours worked - 2 days vacation; 750 hours worked - 3 days vacation; 900 hours worked - 4 days vacation; 1,000 hours worked - 5 days vacation. Employees with two to five years service receive two weeks vacation. Employees with five to twenty years service receive three weeks vacation. Employees with twenty to twenty-five years service receive four weeks vacation. Employees with 25 or more years service receive five weeks vacation. Vacation must be taken during winter months. 2 Personal Days except employees hired after 4/1/12 who do not have 2 years of service.

(Local #917)

---

---

**PAINTER - STRUCTURAL STEEL**

**Painters on Structural Steel**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$49.50  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.83

**Painter - Power Tool**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$55.50  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.83  
Overtime Wage Rate: \$6.00 above the "Painters on Structural Steel" overtime rate.

**Overtime Description**

Supplemental Benefits shall be paid for each hour worked, up to forty (40) hours per week for the period of May 1st to November 15th or up to fifty (50) hours per week for the period of November 16th to April 30th.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).  
New Year's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Regular hourly rates plus a ten per cent (10%) differential

(Local #806)

---

**PAPERHANGER**

**Paperhanger**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$44.89  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$33.13

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefits are to be paid at the appropriate straight time and overtime rate.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Evening shift - 4:30 P.M. to 12:00 Midnight (regular rate of pay); any work performed before 7:00 A.M. shall be at time and one half the regular base rate of pay.

(District Council of Painters #9)

---

---

**PAVER AND ROADBUILDER**

**Paver & Roadbuilder - Formsetter**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$46.35

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.01

Supplemental Note: For time and one half overtime - \$46.89 For double overtime - \$50.76

**Paver & Roadbuilder - Laborer**

Paving and road construction work, regardless of material used, including but not limited to preparation of job sites, removal of old surfaces, asphalt and/or concrete, by whatever method, including but not limited to milling; laying of concrete; laying of asphalt for temporary, patchwork, and utility paving (but not production paving); site preparation and incidental work before the installation of rubberized materials and similar surfaces; installation and repair of temporary construction fencing; slurry seal coating, maintenance of safety surfaces; play equipment installation, and other related work.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.48

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.01

Supplemental Note: For time and one half overtime - \$46.89 For double overtime - \$50.76

**Production Paver & Roadbuilder - Screed Person**

(Production paving is asphalt paving when using a paving machine or on a project where a paving machine is traditionally used)

Adjustment of paving machinery on production paving jobs.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$46.95

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.01

Supplemental Note: For time and one half overtime - \$46.89 For double overtime - \$50.76

**Production Paver & Roadbuilder - Raker**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$46.35

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.01

Supplemental Note: For time and one half overtime - \$46.89 For double overtime - \$50.76

**Production Paver & Roadbuilder - Shoveler**

General laborer (except removal of surfaces - see Paver and Roadbuilder-Laborer) including but not limited to tamper, AC paint and liquid tar work.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.48

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$43.01

Supplemental Note: For time and one half overtime - \$46.89 For double overtime - \$50.76

**Overtime Description**

If an employee works New Year's Day or Christmas Day, they receive the single time rate plus 25%.

For Paid Holidays: Holiday pay for all holidays shall be prorated based two hours per day for each day worked in the holiday week, not to exceed 8 hours of holiday pay.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Thanksgiving Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Paid Holidays**

Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day

**Shift Rates**

When two shifts are employed, the work period for each shift shall be a continuous eight (8) hours. When three shifts are employed, each shift will work seven and one half (7 ½) hours but will be paid for eight (8) hours since only one half (1/2) hour is allowed for meal time.  
When two or more shifts are employed, single time will be paid for each shift.

Night Work - On night work, the first eight (8) hours of work will be paid for at the single time rate, except that production paving work shall be paid at 10% over the single time rate for the screed person, rakers and shovelers directly involved only. This differential is to be paid when there is only one shift and the shift works at night. All other workers will be exempt. Hours worked over eight (8) hours during said shift shall be paid for at the time and one-half rate.

(Local #1010)

---

---

**PLASTERER**

**Plasterer**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 7/31/2018  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.58  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.87

Effective Period: 8/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.93  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$26.52

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.  
Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).  
New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**  
None

**Shift Rates**

When it is not possible to conduct work during regular working hours (between 6:30am and 4:30pm), a shift differential shall be paid at the regular hourly rate plus a twelve per cent (12%) per hour differential. Workers on shift work shall be allowed a paid one-half hour meal break.

(Local #262)

---

**PLASTERER - TENDER**

**Plasterer - Tender**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$38.40

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$31.04

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Washington's Birthday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

When work commences outside regular work hours, workers receive an hour additional (differential) wage and supplement payment. Eight hours pay for seven hours work or nine hours pay for eight hours work.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Mason Tenders District Council)

---

---

## PLUMBER

### Plumber

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$68.40**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$33.80**

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefit contributions are to be made at the applicable overtime rates.

### Plumber - Temporary Services

Temporary Services - When there are no Plumbers on the job site, there may be three shifts designed to cover the entire twenty-four hour period, including weekends if necessary, at the following rate straight time.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$54.80**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$26.96**

### Overtime Description

Double time the regular rate after a 7 hour day - unless for new construction site work where the plumbing contract price is \$1.5 million or less, the hours of labor can be 8 hours per day at the employers option. On Alteration jobs when other mechanical trades at the site are working an eighth hour at straight time, then the plumber shall also work an eighth hour at straight time.

### Overtime

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### Shift Rates

Shift work, when directly specified in public agency or authority documents where plumbing contract is \$8 million or less, will be permitted. 30% shift premium shall be paid for wages and fringe benefits for 4:00 pm and

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

midnight shifts Monday to Friday. 50% shift premium shall be paid for wages and fringe benefits for 4:00 pm and midnight shift work performed on weekends. For shift work on holidays, double time wages and fringe benefits shall be paid.

(Plumbers Local #1)

---

---

**PLUMBER (MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT AND SERVICE)**

(Mechanical Equipment and Service work shall include any repair and/or replacement of the present plumbing system.)

**Plumber**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$41.55

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.61

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

(Plumbers Local # 1)

---

---

**PLUMBER (RESIDENTIAL RATES FOR 1, 2 AND 3 FAMILY HOME CONSTRUCTION)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$47.47**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$24.36**

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

30% shift premium shall be paid for wages and fringe benefits for 4:00 pm and midnight shifts Monday to Friday.

50% shift premium shall be paid for wages and fringe benefits for 4:00 pm and midnight shift work performed on weekends. For shift work on holidays, double time wages and fringe benefits shall be paid.

(Plumbers Local #1)

---

---

**PLUMBER: PUMP & TANK**  
**Oil Trades (Installation and Maintenance)**

**Plumber - Pump & Tank**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$65.65**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$25.06**

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

All work outside the regular workday (8:00 A.M. to 3:30 P.M.) is to be paid at time and one half the regular hourly rate

(Plumbers Local #1)

---

**POINTER, WATERPROOFER, CAULKER, SANDBLASTER,  
STEAMBLASTER  
(Exterior Building Renovation)**

**Journey person**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$52.57**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$25.80**

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

All work outside the regular work day (an eight hour workday between the hours of 6:00 A.M. and 4:30 P.M.) is to be paid at time and one half the regular rate.

(Bricklayer District Council)

---

---

**ROOFER**

Roofer

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$42.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$33.37

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Second shift - Regular hourly rate plus a 10% differential. Third shift - Regular hourly rate plus a 15% differential.

(Local #8)

---

---

## **SHEET METAL WORKER**

### **Sheet Metal Worker**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$49.65

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$49.15

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefit contributions are to be made at the applicable overtime rates.

### **Sheet Metal Worker - Fan Maintenance**

(The temporary operation of fans or blowers in new or existing buildings for heating and/or ventilation, and/or air conditioning prior to the completion of the project.)

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$39.72

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$49.15

### **Sheet Metal Worker - Duct Cleaner**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$12.90

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$8.07

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Martin Luther King Jr. Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

### **Shift Rates**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Work that can only be performed outside regular working hours (eight hours of work between 7:30 A.M. and 3:30 P.M.) - First shift (work between 3:30 P.M. and 11:30 P.M.) - 10% differential above the established hourly rate.  
Second shift (work between 11:30 P.M. and 7:30 A.M.) - 15% differential above the established hourly rate.

For Fan Maintenance: On all full shifts of fan maintenance work the straight time hourly rate of pay will be paid for each shift, including nights, Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays.

(Local #28)

---

---

## **SHEET METAL WORKER - SPECIALTY** **(Decking & Siding)**

### **Sheet Metal Specialty Worker**

The first worker to perform this work must be paid at the rate of the Sheet Metal Worker. The second and third workers shall be paid the Specialty Worker Rate. The ratio of One Sheet Metal Worker, then Two Specialty Workers shall be utilized thereafter.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.26

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.66

Supplemental Note: Supplemental benefit contributions are to be made at the applicable overtime rates.

### **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### **Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Martin Luther King Jr. Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### **Paid Holidays**

None

(Local #28)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

---

---

## **SHIPYARD WORKER**

### **Shipyard Mechanic - First Class**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$28.19**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$3.03**

### **Shipyard Mechanic - Second Class**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$20.87**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$2.75**

### **Shipyard Laborer - First Class**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$21.89**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$2.79**

### **Shipyard Laborer - Second Class**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$15.71**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$2.55**

### **Shipyard Dockhand - First Class**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$21.57**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$2.78**

### **Shipyard Dockhand - Second Class**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$16.96**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$2.60**

## **Overtime Description**

Work performed on holiday is paid double time the regular hourly wage rate plus holiday pay.

## **Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Time and one half the regular hourly rate after 40 hours in any work week.

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

Based on Survey Data

---

---

**SIGN ERECTOR**  
(Sheet Metal, Plastic, Electric, and Neon)

**Sign Erector**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$48.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$52.89

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Election Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Shift Rates**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Time and one half the regular hourly rate is to be paid for all hours worked outside the regular workday either (7:00 A.M. through 2:30 P.M.) or (8:00 A.M. through 3:30 P.M.)

(Local #137)

---

---

## STEAMFITTER

### Steamfitter I

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$57.25

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$55.79

Supplemental Note: Overtime supplemental benefit rate: \$110.84

### Steamfitter -Temporary Services

The steamfitters shall not do any other work and shall not be permitted to work more than one shift in a twenty-four hour day. When steamfitters are present during the regular working day, no temporary services steamfitter will be required

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.51

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$45.22

### Overtime

Double time the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Day after Thanksgiving

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

None

### Shift Rates

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Work performed between 3:30 P.M. and 7:00 A.M. and on Saturdays, Sundays and Holidays shall be at double time the regular hourly rate and paid at the overtime supplemental benefit rate above.

---

## Steamfitter II

For heating, ventilation, air conditioning and mechanical public work contracts with a dollar value not to exceed \$15,000,000 and for fire protection/sprinkler public work contracts not to exceed \$1,500,000.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$57.25

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$55.79

Supplemental Note: Overtime supplemental benefit rate: \$110.84

## Steamfitter -Temporary Services

The steamfitters shall not do any other work and shall not be permitted to work more than one shift in a twenty-four hour day. When steamfitters are present during the regular working day, no temporary services steamfitter will be required.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.51

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$45.22

## Overtime

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.  
Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.  
Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

## Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

## Paid Holidays

None

## Shift Rates

May be performed outside of the regular workday except Saturday, Sunday and Holidays. A shift shall consist of eight working hours. All work performed in excess of eight hours shall be paid at double time. No shift shall commence after 7:00 P.M. on Friday or 7:00 P.M. the day before holidays. All work performed after 12:01 A.M.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Saturday or 12:01 A.M. the day before a Holiday will be paid at double time. When shift work is performed the wage rate for regular time worked is a thirty percent premium together with fringe benefits.

On Transit Authority projects, where work is performed in the vicinity of tracks all shift work on weekends and holidays may be performed at the regular shift rates.

Local #638

---

---

**STEAMFITTER - REFRIGERATION AND AIR CONDITIONER**  
**(Maintenance and Installation Service Person)**

**Refrigeration and Air Conditioner Mechanic**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$41.50

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$16.56

**Refrigeration and Air Conditioner Service Person V**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$34.10

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$14.80

**Refrigeration and Air Conditioner Service Person IV**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$28.25

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$13.36

**Refrigeration and Air Conditioner Service Person III**

Filter changing and maintenance thereof, oil and greasing, tower and coil cleaning, scraping and painting, general housekeeping, taking of water samples.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$24.24

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$12.29

**Refrigeration and Air Conditioner Service Person II**

Filter changing and maintenance thereof, oil and greasing, tower and coil cleaning, scraping and painting, general housekeeping, taking of water samples.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$20.10**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$11.29**

**Refrigeration and Air Conditioner Service Person I**

Filter changing and maintenance thereof, oil and greasing, tower and coil cleaning, scraping and painting, general housekeeping, taking of water samples.

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: **\$14.71**

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$10.12**

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

Double time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

Martin Luther King Jr. Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Columbus Day

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

Martin Luther King Jr. Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

(Local #638B)

---

---

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

## STONE MASON - SETTER

### Stone Mason - Setter

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$53.62

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$41.65

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

Washington's Birthday

Good Friday

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

1/2 day on Christmas Eve if work is performed in the A.M.

### Shift Rates

For all work outside the regular workday (8:00 A.M. to 3:30 P.M. Monday through Friday), the pay shall be straight time plus a ten percent (10%) differential.

(Bricklayers District Council)

---

---

## TAPER

### Drywall Taper

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$47.82

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$25.61

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Martin Luther King Jr. Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

Any worker who reports to work on Christmas Eve or New Year's Eve pursuant to his employer's instruction shall be entitled to three (3) hours afternoon pay without working.

(Local #1974)

---

---

**TELECOMMUNICATION WORKER**

(Install/maintain/repair telecommunications cables carrying data, video, and/or voice except for installation on building construction/alteration/renovation projects. Locate & mark underground telecommunications cables and utilities for street excavation.)

**Telecommunication Worker**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$43.66

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$23.15

Supplemental Note: The above rate applies for Manhattan, Bronx, Brooklyn, Queens. \$22.84 for Staten Island only.

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Time and one half the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Time and one half the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
Lincoln's Birthday  
Washington's Birthday  
Memorial Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Election Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day  
Lincoln's Birthday  
Washington's Birthday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Election Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Christmas Day

Employees have the option of observing either Martin Luther King's Birthday or the day after Thanksgiving instead of Lincoln's Birthday

**Shift Rates**

For any workday that starts before 8A.M. or ends after 6P.M. there is a 10% differential for the applicable worker's hourly rate.

**Vacation**

After 6 months.....one week.  
After 12 months but less than 7 years.....two weeks.  
After 7 or more but less than 15 years.....three weeks.  
After 15 years or more but less than 25 years.....four weeks.

(C.W.A.)

---

---

**TILE FINISHER**

**Tile Finisher**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$41.77

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$30.87

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day  
Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

**Paid Holidays**

None

**Shift Rates**

Off shift work day (work performed outside the regular 8:00 A.M. to 3:30 P.M. workday): shift differential of one and one quarter (1¼) times the regular straight time rate of pay for the seven hours of actual off-shift work.

(Local #7)

---

**TILE LAYER - SETTER**

**Tile Layer - Setter**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$53.98

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$35.38

**Overtime**

Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

**Overtime Holidays**

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day  
President's Day  
Good Friday  
Memorial Day  
Independence Day  
Labor Day  
Columbus Day  
Veteran's Day  
Thanksgiving Day

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Day after Thanksgiving  
Christmas Day

### Shift Rates

Off shift work day (work performed outside the regular 8:00 A.M. to 3:30 P.M. workday): shift differential of one and one quarter (1¼) times the regular straight time rate of pay for the seven hours of actual off-shift work.

(Local #7)

---

---

## TIMBERPERSON

### Timberperson

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$49.10

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$49.97

### Overtime

Time and one half the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Time and one half the regular rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Saturday may be used as a make-up day at straight time when a day is lost during that week to inclement weather.

Time and one half the regular hourly rate after 40 hours in any work week.

### Overtime Holidays

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

New Year's Day

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Presidential Election Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

### Paid Holidays

None

### Shift Rates

Off shift work commencing between 5:00 P.M. and 11:00 P.M. shall work eight and one half hours allowing for one half hour for lunch. The wage rate shall be 113% of the straight time hourly wage rate.

(Local #1536)

## **TUNNEL WORKER**

### **Blasters, Mucking Machine Operators (Compressed Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$62.37**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$52.39**

### **Tunnel Workers (Compressed Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$60.21**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$50.65**

### **Top Nipper (Compressed Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$59.11**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$49.74**

### **Outside Lock Tender, Outside Gauge Tender, Muck Lock Tender (Compressed Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$58.04**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$48.81**

### **Bottom Bell & Top Bell Signal Person: Shaft Person (Compressed Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$58.04**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$48.81**

### **Changehouse Attendant: Powder Watchperson (Compressed Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$50.87**  
Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: **\$46.11**

### **Blasters (Free Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019  
Wage Rate per Hour: **\$59.52**

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$50.03

**Tunnel Workers (Free Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$56.97

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$47.89

**All Others (Free Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$52.63

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$44.29

**Microtunneling (Free Air Rates)**

Effective Period: 7/1/2018 - 6/30/2019

Wage Rate per Hour: \$45.58

Supplemental Benefit Rate per Hour: \$38.31

**Overtime Description**

For Repair-Maintenance Work on Existing Equipment and Facilities - Time and one half the regular rate after a 7 hour day, or for Saturday, or for Sunday. Double time the regular rate for work on a holiday.

For Small-Bore Micro Tunneling Machines - Time and one-half the regular rate shall be paid for all overtime.

**Overtime**

Double time the regular rate after an 8 hour day.

Double time the regular time rate for Saturday.

Double time the regular rate for Sunday.

Double time the regular rate for work on the following holiday(s).

**Paid Holidays**

New Year's Day

Lincoln's Birthday

President's Day

Memorial Day

Independence Day

Labor Day

Columbus Day

Election Day

Veteran's Day

Thanksgiving Day

Christmas Day

(Local #147)

OFFICE OF THE COMPTROLLER, CITY OF NEW YORK  
CONSTRUCTION WORKER PREVAILING WAGE SCHEDULE

**WELDER**

**TO BE PAID AT THE RATE OF THE JOURNEYPERSON IN THE TRADE  
PERFORMING THE WORK.**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
FOR MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Issue Date - January 15, 2015

**DIVISION 01 – DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>SECTION NO.</b>	<b>SECTION TITLE</b>
01 10 00	SUMMARY
01 31 00	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
01 32 00	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
01 32 33	PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
01 33 00	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
01 35 03	GENERAL MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS
01 35 06	GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS
01 35 26	SAFETY REQUIREMENTS PROCEDURES
01 35 91	HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES
01 40 00	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
01 42 00	REFERENCES
01 50 00	TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES AND CONTROLS
01 54 11	TEMPORARY ELEVATORS AND HOISTS
01 54 23	TEMPORARY SCAFFOLDING AND PLATFORMS
01 73 00	EXECUTION
01 74 19	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
01 77 00	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
01 78 39	CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS
01 79 00	DEMONSTRATION AND OWNERS PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION
01 81 13	SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS
01 81 13.13	VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND (VOC) LIMITS FOR ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS FOR LEED BUILDINGS
01 81 19	INDOOR AIR QUALITY REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS
01 91 13	GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS



**SECTION 01 10 00  
SUMMARY**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].
- B. Addendum to the General Conditions: These General Conditions include and are supplemented by the Addendum to the General Conditions (the "Addendum"). The Addendum includes the following: (1) schedules referred to in these General Conditions (Schedule A through F), (2) information regarding the applicability of various articles, and (3) amended articles, if any.
- C. **MULTIPLE CONTRACTS:** The Project involves multiple separate Contracts: (1) Contract for General Construction Work ("GC Contract"), (2) Contract for Plumbing Work ("Plumbing Contract"), (3) Heating/Ventilating/Air-Conditioning/Fire Protection Work ("HVAC and Fire Protection Contract"), and (4) Electrical Work ("Electrical Contract"). The Contracts pertaining to the Project are set forth in the Addendum. These Division 01 Standard General Conditions are applicable to all Contracts for the Project and shall constitute an integral part of each separate Contract to the same extent as though repeated in full therein.

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This section includes the following:
  - 1. Scope and Intent
  - 2. Provisions Referenced in the Contract
  - 3. Performance of Work During Non-Regular Work Hours (Pursuant to a Change Order)
  - 4. Interruption of Services at Existing Facilities
- B. This section includes a summary of each Contract, including responsibilities for coordination and temporary facilities and controls.
- C. Specific requirements of each Contract are also indicated in individual Specification Sections and on Drawings.
- D. Throughout these General Conditions, various responsibilities and obligations are assigned to each of the following four Contractors for:
  - 1) General Construction Work ("GC Contractor")
  - 2) Plumbing Work ("Plumbing Contractor")
  - 3) Heating/ Ventilating/ Air-Conditioning/ Fire Protection Work ("HVAC and Fire Protection Contractor"), and
  - 4) Electrical Work ("Electrical Contractor")

In the event the Project does not involve all four Contracts, the responsibilities and obligations of each omitted Contract shall be assigned to one of the Contracts included in the Project. The Addendum specifies which Contractor shall perform the responsibilities and obligations of each omitted Contract, as set forth in the General Conditions.



### 1.3 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

### 1.4 SCOPE AND INTENT:

- A. Description of Project: Refer to the Addendum for a description of this project.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 1.4 B**

- B. LEED: Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design (LEED) Rating System, as specified in Section 01 81 13, "SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS."

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 1.4 C**

- C. COMMISSIONING: This project will be commissioned by an independent third party under separate contract with the City of New York. Commissioning shall be in accordance with ASHRAE and USGBC LEED-NC procedures, as described in Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS. Each Contractor shall cooperate with the commissioning agent and provide whatever assistance is required.
- D. PROGRESS SCHEDULE: Refer to Section 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION for requirements of this project.
- E. COMPLETION OF WORK – Work to be done under each separate Contract comprises the furnishing of all labor, materials, equipment and other appurtenances, and obtaining all regulatory agency approvals necessary and required to complete the construction work in accordance with the Contract.
- F. OMISSION OF DETAILS – All work called for in the Specifications applicable to each separate Contract but not shown on the Contract Drawings in their present form, or vice versa, is required, and shall be performed by each Contractor as though it were originally delineated or described. The cost of such work shall be deemed included in the total Contract Price.
- G. WORK NOT IN SPECIFICATIONS OR CONTRACT DRAWINGS – Work not particularly specified in the Specifications nor detailed on the Contract Drawings but involved in carrying out their intent or in the complete and proper execution of the work, is required, and shall be performed by each Contractor. The cost of such work shall be deemed included in the total Contract Price.
- H. SILENCE OF THE SPECIFICATIONS – The apparent silence of the Specifications as to any detail, or the apparent omission from them of a detailed description concerning any work to be done and materials to be furnished, shall be regarded as meaning that only the best practice is to prevail and



that only the best material and workmanship is to be used and interpretation of the Specifications shall be made upon that basis.

- I. **CONFLICT BETWEEN CONTRACT DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS** – Should any conflict occur in or between the Drawings and Specifications, each Contractor shall be deemed to have estimated the most expensive way of doing the work unless each Contractor shall have asked for and obtained a decision in writing from the Commissioner before the submission of the bid as to what shall govern.
- J. **COOPERATION BETWEEN CONTRACTORS** – Inasmuch as the completion of the Project within the prescribed limit of time is dependent largely upon the close and active cooperation of all those engaged herein, it is therefore expressly understood and agreed that the Contractor shall lay out and install all work at such time or times and in such manner as not to delay or interfere with the carrying forward of the work of other Contractors. In the event of any dispute regarding possible or alleged interference between the various Contractors which may retard the progress of the work, the Contractor shall file a dispute in accordance with the Article of the Contract entitled “Dispute Resolution”.

**1.5 CONTRACT DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS:**

- A. **SCHEDULE C** - The Contract Drawings are listed in Schedule C, which is set forth in the Addendum. Such drawings referred to in the Contract, and in the applicable Specifications for the Contract, bear the general title:

City of New York  
Department of Design and Construction  
Division of Public Buildings
- B. **DOCUMENTS FURNISHED TO THE CONTRACTOR** - After the award of the Contract, the GC Contractor will be furnished with five (5) complete sets of paper prints of all Contract Drawings mentioned in Paragraph A above, as well as a copy of the Specifications.
- C. **PRINTS**: Each Contractor, other than GC Contractor referred to in Paragraph B, will receive three (3) complete sets of paper prints of all Drawings listed in Paragraph A and specifications.
- D. **ADDITIONAL COPIES** of Drawings and Specifications, when requested, will be furnished to each Contractor if available.
- E. **SUPPLEMENTARY DRAWINGS** - When, in the opinion of the Commissioner, it becomes necessary to more fully explain the work to be done, or to illustrate the work further, or to show any changes which may be required, drawings known as Supplementary Drawings will be prepared by the Commissioner.
- F. **COMPENSATION** - Where Supplementary Drawings entail extra work, compensation therefore to the affected Contractor shall be subject to the terms of the Contract. The Supplementary Drawings shall be binding upon such Contractor with the same force as the Contract Drawings.
- G. **SUPPLEMENTARY DRAWING PRINTS** - Three (3) copies of prints of these Supplementary Drawings will be furnished to the affected Contractor(s).
- H. **COPIES TO SUBCONTRACTORS** - Each Contractor shall furnish to its subcontractors and material suppliers such copies of Contract Drawings, Supplementary Drawings, or copies of the Specifications as may be required for its work.



**1.6 SEPARATION OF WORK BETWEEN TRADES:**

- A. SCHEDULE E – Requirements for various items of work are included in the Specifications for the separate contracts for the Project and in the General Conditions. Schedule E delineates the responsibilities of each separate contractor for various items of work, as well as the extent to which certain items involve coordination between trades. Schedule E is included in the Addendum. The delineation set forth in Schedule E shall be taken as specific instruction to each Contractor that is responsible for the listed items of work. Schedule E is not intended to limit the Contractor's responsibility for supervision and coordination as set forth in Paragraph B below. In the event of any conflict between the Specifications, the General Conditions and Schedule E, Schedule E shall take precedence; provided, however, in the event of an omission from Schedule E (i.e., Schedule E omits either a reference to or information concerning an item of work which is set forth in the Specifications or the General Conditions), such omission from Schedule E shall have no effect and the Contractor's obligation to perform the work, as set forth in the Specifications or the General Conditions, shall remain in full force and effect.
- B. SUPERVISION AND COORDINATION – Each Contractor is required to supply all necessary supervision and coordination information to other Contractors who are to supply work to accommodate their installation.

**1.7 COORDINATION:**

- A. COORDINATION AND COOPERATION - Each Contractor shall consult and study the requirements of the Contract Drawings and Specifications of all Contracts furnished to the Contractor, including all work to be performed by trade subcontractors, so that the Contractor may become acquainted with the work of the project as a whole in order to achieve the proper coordination and cooperation necessary for the efficient and timely performance of the work.
- B. CONTRACTOR TO CHECK DRAWINGS: - Each Contractor shall verify all dimensions, quantities and details shown on the Contract Drawings, Schedules, or other data received from the Commissioner, and shall notify the Commissioner of all errors, omissions, conflicts and discrepancies found therein. Notice of such errors shall be given before each Contractor proceeds with any work. Figures shall be used in preference to scale dimensions and large-scale drawings in preference to small-scale drawings.

**1.8 SHOP DRAWINGS AND RECORD DRAWINGS:**

- A. Refer to Division I Section 01 33 00 – SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES and Section 01 78 39 – PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS for requirements applicable to shop drawings and record drawings.

**1.9 INTEGRATED DRAWINGS:**

- A. Refer to Division I Section 01 33 00 – SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES for requirements of each Contractor.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**1.10 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES AND CONTROLS:**

- A. Refer to Division I Section 01 50 00 – TEMPORARY FACILITIES SERVICES AND CONTROLS and SCHEDULE E which is set forth in the Addendum for the responsibilities of each separate Contractor.

**1.11 DUST CONTROL:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall prepare, execute and manage a "Dust Control Plan" for the prevention of the emission of dust from construction related activities in compliance with 15 RCNY 13-01 et. seq.

**1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS:**

- A. Each Contractor shall cooperate with other Contractors involved to coordinate approved substitutions with remainder of the Work.

**1.13 PROVISIONS REFERENCED IN THE CONTRACT:**

- A. SCHEDULE A - Various Articles of the Contract refer to requirements set forth in Schedule A of the General Conditions. Schedule A, which is included in the Addendum, sets forth (1) the referenced Articles of the Contract, and (2) the specific requirements applicable to the Contract.
- B. EXTENSION OF TIME - Applications for Extensions of Time, as indicated in Article 13 of the Contract, shall be made in accordance with the Rules of the Procurement Policy Board.
- C. PARTIAL PAYMENTS FOR MATERIALS IN ADVANCE OF THEIR INCORPORATION IN THE WORK PURSUANT TO ARTICLE 42 OF THE CONTRACT – In order to better insure the availability of materials, fixtures and equipment when needed for the work, the Commissioner may authorize partial payment for certain materials, fixtures and equipment, prior to their incorporation in the work, but only in strict accordance with, and subject to, all the terms and conditions set forth in the Specifications, unless an alternate method of payment is elsewhere provided in the Specifications for specified materials, fixtures or equipment.
1. Each Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner a written request, in quadruplicate, for payment for materials purchased or to be purchased which need to be paid prior to their actual incorporation in the work. The request shall be accompanied by a schedule of the types and quantities of materials, and shall state whether such materials are to be stored on or off the site.
  2. Where the materials are to be stored off the site, they shall be stored at a place other than the Contractor's premises (except with the written consent of the Commissioner) and under the conditions prescribed or approved by the Commissioner. The Contractor shall set apart and separately store at the place or places of storage all materials and shall clearly mark same "PROPERTY OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK", and further, shall not at any time move any of said materials to another off-site place of storage without the prior written consent of the Commissioner. Materials may be removed from their place of storage off the site for incorporation in the work upon approval of the Resident Engineer.
  3. Where the materials are to be stored at the site, they shall be stored at such locations as shall be designated by the Resident Engineer and only in such quantities as, in the opinion of the Resident Engineer, will not interfere with the proper performance of the work by the Contractor or by other Contractors then engaged in performing work on the site. Such materials shall not be removed from their place of storage on the site except for incorporation in the work, without the approval of the Resident Engineer.



4. INSURANCE

- a. STORAGE OFF-SITE – Where the materials are stored off the site and until such time as they are incorporated in the work, the Contractor shall fully insure such materials against any and all risks of destruction, damage or loss including but not limited to fire, theft, and any other casualty or happening. The policy of insurance shall be payable to the City of New York. It shall be in such terms and amounts as shall be approved by the Commissioner and shall be placed with a company duly licensed to do business in the State of New York. The Contractor shall deliver the original and one (1) copy of such policy or policies marked "Fully Paid" to the Commissioner.
  - b. STORAGE ON THE SITE – Where the materials are stored at the site, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence to the Commissioner that they are properly insured against loss, by endorsements or otherwise, under the policy or policies of insurance obtained by the Contractor to cover losses to materials owned or installed by the Contractor. The policy of insurance shall cover fire and extended coverage against windstorm, hail, explosion and riot attending a strike, civil commotion, aircraft, vehicles and smoke.
5. All costs, charges and expenses arising out of the storage of such materials, shall be paid by the Contractor and the City hereby reserves the right to retain out of any partial or final payment made under the Contract an amount sufficient to cover such costs, charges and expenses with the understanding that the City shall have and may exercise any and all other remedies at law for the recovery of such cost, charges and expenses. There shall be no increase in the Contract price for such costs, charges and expenses and the Contractor shall not make any claim or demand for compensation therefore.
  6. The Contractor shall pay any and all costs of handling and delivery of materials, to the place of storage and from the place of storage to the site of the work; and the City shall have the right to retain from any partial or final payment an amount sufficient to cover the cost of such handling and delivery.
  7. In the event that the whole or any part of these materials are lost, damaged or destroyed in advance of their satisfactory incorporation in the work, the Contractor, at the Contractor's own cost, shall replace such lost, damaged or destroyed materials of the same character and quality. The City will reimburse the Contractor for the cost of the replaced materials to the extent, and only to the extent, of the funds actually received by the City under the policies of insurance hereinbefore referred to. Until such time as the materials are replaced, the City will deduct from the value of the stored materials or from any other money due under the Contract, the amount paid to the Contractor for such lost, damaged or destroyed materials.
  8. Should any of the materials paid for the City hereunder be subsequently rejected or incorporated in the work in a manner or by a method not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall remove and replace, at Contractor's own cost, such defective or improperly incorporated material with materials complying with the Contract Documents. Until such materials are replaced, the City will deduct from the value of the stored materials or from any other money due the Contractor, the amount paid by the City for such rejected or improperly incorporated materials.
  9. Payments for the cost of materials made hereunder shall not be deemed to be an acceptance of such materials as being in accordance with the Contract Documents, and the Contractor always retains and must comply with the Contractor's duty to deliver to the site and properly incorporate in the work only materials which comply with the Contract Documents.
  10. The Contractor shall retain any and all risks in connection with the damage, destruction or loss of the materials paid for hereunder to the time of delivery of the same to the site of the work and their proper incorporation in the work in accordance with the Contract Documents.



11. The Contractor shall comply with all laws and the regulations of any governmental body or agency pertaining to the priority purchase, allocation and use of the materials.
12. When requesting payment for such materials, the Contractor shall submit with the partial estimate duly authenticated documents of title, such as bills of sale, invoices or warehouse receipts, all in quadruplicate. The executed bills of sale shall transfer title to the materials from the Contractor to the City. (In the event that the invoices state that the material has been purchased by a subcontractor, bills of sale in quadruplicate will also be required transferring title to the materials from subcontractor to the Contractor).
13. Where the Contractor, with the approval of the Commissioner, has purchased unusually large quantities of materials in order to assure their availability for the work, the Commissioner, at the Commissioner's option, may waive the requirements of Paragraph 12 provided the Contractor furnishes evidence in the form of an affidavit from the Contractor in quadruplicate, and such other proof as the Commissioner may require, that the Contractor is the sole owner of such materials and has purchased them free and clear of all liens and other encumbrances. In such event, the Contractor shall pay for such materials and submit proof thereof, in the same manner as provided in Paragraph 12 hereof, within seven (7) days after receipt of payment therefore from the Comptroller. Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit satisfactory evidence that all such materials have been paid for in full, shall preclude the Contractor from payments under the Contract.
14. The Contractor shall include in each succeeding partial estimate requisition a summary of materials stored which shall set forth the quantity and value of materials in storage, on or off the site, at the end of each preceding estimate period; the amount removed for incorporation in the work; the quantity and value of materials delivered during the current period and the total value of materials on hand for which payment thereof will be included in the current payment estimate.
15. Upon proof to the satisfaction of the Commissioner of the actual cost of such materials and upon submission of proper proof of title as required under Paragraph 12 or Paragraph 13 hereof, payment will be made therefore to the extent of 85%, provided however, that the cost so verified, established and approved shall not exceed the estimated cost of such materials included in the approved detailed breakdown estimate submitted in accordance with Article 41 of the Contract; if it does, the City will pay only 85% approved estimated cost.
16. Upon the incorporation in the work of any such materials, which have been paid for in advance of such incorporation in accordance with the foregoing provisions, payment will be made for such materials incorporated in the work pursuant to Article 42 of the Contract, less any sums paid pursuant to Paragraph 15 herein.

D. **MOBILIZATION PAYMENT** – A line item for mobilization shall be allowed on each Contractor's Detailed Bid Breakdown submitted in accordance with Article 41 of the Contract. The Mobilization Payment is intended to include the cost of required bonds, insurance coverage and/or any other expenses required for the initiation of the Contract Work. All costs for mobilization shall be deemed included in the total Contract Price. The Detailed Bid Breakdown shall reflect, and the Mobilization Payment shall be made, in accordance with the following schedule:

Contract Amount	Percent	Mobilization
Less than - \$ 50,000	x 0	= 0
\$ 50,000 - \$ 100,000	x	= \$ 6,000
\$ 100,001 - \$ 500,000	x 6	= \$ 6,000 (min) - \$ 30,000 (max)



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

\$ 500,000 - \$ 2,500,000	x	5	=	\$ 30,000 (min) - \$ 125,000 (max)
Over - \$ 2,500,000	x	4	=	\$ 125,000 (min) - \$ 300,000 (max)

Each Contractor may requisition for one-half (1/2) of the Mobilization Payment upon satisfactory completion of the following as applicable:

1. Installation of any required field office(s).
2. Submission of all required insurance certificates and bonds.
3. Approval by the Department of Design and Construction of the coordinated progress schedule for the project and the Contractor's Shop Drawing schedule.

The remaining balance of the Mobilization Payment may be requisitioned only after 10 percent (10%) of the Contract price, exclusive of the total amount of Mobilization Payments made or to be made hereunder, shall have been approved for payment.

- E. **ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL AND BEST AVAILABLE TECHNOLOGY REPORTING:** Each Contractor shall submit reports to the Commissioner regarding the use of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel in Non-Road Vehicles, and the implementation of Best Available Technology (BAT), as set forth in Article 5.4 of the Contract. Such reports shall be submitted in accordance with the schedule, format, directions and procedures established by the Commissioner.

#### 1.14 PERFORMANCE OF WORK DURING NON-REGULAR WORK HOURS:

- A. **NON-REGULAR WORK HOURS:** The Commissioner may issue a change order in accordance with Article 25 of the Contract which (1) directs the Contractor to perform the Work, or specific components thereof, during other than regular work hours (i.e., evenings, weekends and holidays), and (2) provides compensation to the Contractor for costs in connection with the performance of Work during other than regular work hours. The Commissioner may issue a change order if a delay has occurred and such delay is not the fault of the Contractor, or if the work is of such an important nature that delay in completing such work would result in serious disadvantage to the public.
- B. **PROCEDURE:** The affected Contractor shall (1) obtain whatever permits may be required for performance of the work during other than regular business hours, and (2) pay all necessary fees in connection with such permits. In addition, if directed by the Commissioner, the Contractor shall make immediate application to the Commissioner of the Department of Labor, State of New York, for dispensation in accordance with Subdivision 2 of Section 220 of the Labor Law.

#### 1.15 INTERRUPTION OF SERVICES AT EXISTING FACILITIES:

- A. **EVENING AND WEEKEND WORK** - Where performance of the Work requires the temporary shutdown(s) of services, such shutdown(s) shall be made at night or on weekends or at such times that will cause no interference with the established routines and operations of the facility in question.
1. Where weekend or evening work is required due to unavoidable service shutdowns, such work shall be performed at no extra cost to the City. Components of the Work that must be performed during other than regular work hours are indicated in the Drawings and/or the Specifications.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**B. INTERRUPTION OF EXISTING FACILITIES:**

1. Each Contractor shall not interrupt any of the services of the facility nor interfere with such services in any way without the permission of the Commissioner. Such interruption or interferences shall be made as brief as possible, and only at such time stated.
2. Under no circumstances shall the Contractor, its subcontractors, or its workers, be permitted to use any part of the project as a shop, without the permission of the Commissioner.
3. Unnecessary noise shall be avoided at all times and necessary noise shall be reduced to a minimum.
4. Toilet facilities, water and electricity must be operational at all times (i.e. 24/7). No services of the facility can be interrupted in any way without the permission of the Commissioner. Careful coordination of all work with the Resident Engineer must be done to maintain the operational level of the project personnel at the facility.
5. The Contractor shall schedule the work to avoid noise interference that will affect the normal functions of the facility. In particular, construction operations producing noises that are objectionable to the functions of the facility must be scheduled at times of day or night, day of the week, or weekend, which will not interfere with personnel at the facility. Any additional cost resulting from this scheduling shall be borne by the Contractor.
6. The Contractor shall arrange to work continuously, including evening and weekend hours, if required, to assure that services will be shut down only during the time actually required to make the necessary connections to the existing facility.
7. The Contractor shall give ample written notice in advance to the Commissioner and personnel at the facility of any required shutdown.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 10 00**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**SECTION 01 31 00**  
**PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].
- B. LEED: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project is designed to comply with a Certification Level according to the U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design (LEED) Rating System, as specified in Section 01 81 13, "SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS."
- C. COMMISSIONING: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project will be commissioned by an independent third party under separate contract with the City of New York. Commissioning shall be in accordance with ASHRAE and USGBC LEED-NC procedures, as described in Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS. Each Contractor shall cooperate with the commissioning agent and provide whatever assistance is required.

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on the Project including without limitation the following.
  - 1. Coordination Drawings.
  - 2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
  - 3. Project meetings.
  - 4. Requests for Interpretation (RFIs).
- B. This section includes the following:
  - 1. Definitions
  - 2. Coordination
  - 3. Submittals
  - 4. Administrative and Supervisory Personnel
  - 5. Project Meetings
  - 6. Requests for Interpretation (RFI's)
  - 7. Correspondence
  - 8. Contractor's Daily Reports
  - 9. Alternate and Substitute Equipment
- C. RELATED SECTIONS: include without limitation the following:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
  - 2. Section 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
  - 3. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTALS
  - 4. Section 01 35 26 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
  - 5. Section 01 73 00 EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS
  - 6. Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

7. Section 01 77 00

PROJECT CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

1.3 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

1.4 COORDINATION:

- A. Coordination: Each Contractor shall coordinate its construction operations, including those of its subcontractors, with other entities to ensure the efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each Contractor shall coordinate the various operations required by different Sections of the Specifications that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence in order to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
  - 4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair of all components, including mechanical and electrical.
- B. Each Contractor shall prepare memoranda for distribution to its subcontractors and other involved entities, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Such memoranda shall include required notices, reports, and meeting minutes as applicable.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Each Contractor shall coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of its subcontractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include without limitation the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 3. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 4. Progress meetings.
  - 5. Pre-installation conferences..
  - 6. Startup and adjustment of systems.
  - 7. Project closeout activities.
- D. Conservation: Each Contractor shall coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials.
- E. Salvaged Items, Material and/or Equipment: The Specifications may identify certain items, materials or equipment which must be salvaged by each Contractor and handled or disposed of as directed. Each



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Contractor shall comply with all directions in the Specifications regarding the salvaging and handling of identified items, material or equipment.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Submit shop drawings, product data, samples etc. in compliance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Each Contractor shall prepare applicable Coordination Drawings in compliance with the requirements for Integrated Drawings in Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- C. Safety Plan in compliance with Section 01 35 26, SAFETY REQUIREMENTS PROCEDURES.
- D. Waste Management Plan in compliance with Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
- E. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days after the Notice to Proceed, each Contractor shall submit a list of key personnel assignments of the Contractor and its subcontractors, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in case of the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.
  - 2. In addition to Project superintendent, provide other administrative and supervisory personnel as required for proper performance of the Work. Include special personnel required for coordinating all operations by its subcontractors.

**1.6 PROJECT MEETINGS:**

- A. General: The Resident Engineer will hold regularly scheduled construction progress meetings at the site, at which time each Contractor and appropriate subcontractors shall have their representatives present to discuss all details relative to the execution of the work. The Resident Engineer shall preside over these meetings.
  - 1. Agenda: Prior to each meeting, the Resident Engineer will consult with the Contractors and will prepare an agenda of items to be discussed. In general, after informal discussion of any item on the agenda, the Resident Engineer will summarize the discussion in a brief written statement, and each Contractor will then dictate a brief statement for the record.
  - 2. Coordination: In addition to construction progress meetings called by the Resident Engineer, the GC Contractor shall hold regularly scheduled meetings for the purpose of coordinating; expediting and scheduling the work of all Contracts in accordance with the master coordinated Job Progress Chart. All Contractors and their subcontractors, material suppliers or vendors whose presence is necessary, are required to attend. These meetings may, at the discretion of the GC Contractor, be held at the same place and immediately following the project meetings held by the Resident Engineer. Minutes of these meetings shall be recorded, typed and printed by the GC Contractor and distributed to all parties concerned.
- B. PRECONSTRUCTION KICK-OFF MEETING:
  - 1. The Resident Engineer will schedule a preconstruction kick-off meeting either at DDC's main office or at the Project site to review responsibilities and personnel assignments and clarify the role of each participant. Unless otherwise directed the Design Consultant will record and distribute meeting minutes.



2. Attendees: Authorized representative of the Client Agency; Design Consultant; each Contractor and their superintendents, subcontractor(s) and their superintendent(s); LEED sub-consultant and Commissioning Authority /Agent (CxA) as applicable and other concerned parties. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Contract Work.
3. Agenda: Includes without limitation the following as applicable:
  - a. Establishing construction schedule
  - b. Schedule for regular construction meetings
  - c. Phasing
  - d. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items
  - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties
  - f. Reviewing Application for Payment and Change Order Procedures
  - g. Procedures for Requests for Information (RFIs.)
  - h. Review Permits and Approval requirements
  - i. Review all recent Administrative Code reporting requirements relating to the project, (i.e. LL 77, LL86 etc.)
  - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting
  - k. Reviewing special conditions at the Project site
  - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents
  - m. Submittal procedures
  - n. Safety Procedures
  - o. LEED requirements
  - p. Commissioning Requirements
  - q. Preparation of Record Documents
  - r. Historic Treatment requirements
  - s. Use of the premises
  - t. Work restrictions
  - u. Client Agency occupancy requirements
  - v. Responsibility for temporary facilities services and controls
  - w. Construction Waste Management and Disposal
  - x. Indoor Air Quality Management Plan
  - y. Dust Mitigation Plan
  - z. Office, work, and storage areas
  - aa. Equipment deliveries and priorities
  - bb. Security
  - cc. Progress cleaning
  - dd. Working hours

**C. CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS MEETINGS:**

1. The Resident Engineer will schedule and conduct construction progress meetings at bi-weekly intervals or as otherwise determined. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work. Unless otherwise directed, the Design Consultant will record and distribute meeting minutes.



2. Attendees:
  - a. Design Consultant and applicable sub-consultants
  - b. Client Agency Representative
  - c. Representatives from each Contractor, sub-contractor(s), suppliers or other entities involved in the current progress, planning, coordination or future activities of the Work
  - d. Other appropriate DDC personnel, DDC consultants and concerned parties
3. Agenda: Includes without limitation the following:
  - a. Review the Construction Schedule and progress of the Work. Determine if the Work is on time, ahead of schedule or behind schedule. Determine actions to be taken to maintain or accelerate the schedule
  - b. Review and approve prior meeting minutes and follow up open issues
  - c. Coordinate work between each subcontractor
  - d. Sequence of Operations
  - e. Status of submittals, deliveries and off-site fabrication
  - f. Status of inspections and approvals by governing agencies
  - g. Temporary facilities and controls
  - h. Review Site Safety
  - i. Quality and work standards
  - j. Field observations
  - k. Status of correction of deficient items
  - l. RFI's
  - m. Pending changes
  - n. Status of outstanding Payments and Change Orders
  - o. LEED requirements including Construction Waste Management, Indoor Air Quality Plan and Commissioning
  - p. Status of Administrative Code reporting requirements related to the project.

**1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFI):**

- A. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, and if not possible to request interpretation at Project meeting, the Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified by the Resident Engineer.
  1. RFI shall originate with each Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than the Contractor will be returned with no response.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFI in a prompt manner to the Resident Engineer so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of its subcontractors.
  3. RFI Log: Each Contractor shall prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number monthly to the Resident Engineer.
  4. On receipt of responses and action to the RFI, the Contractor shall update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response(s) and notify the Resident Engineer immediately if the Contractor disagrees with response(s).

**1.8 CORRESPONDENCE:**

- A. Copies of all correspondence to DDC shall be sent directly to the Resident Engineer at the job site.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Division 01 – DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS  
Issue Date - January 15, 2015

**1.9 CONTRACTOR'S DAILY REPORTS:**

- A. Each Contractor shall prepare and submit Daily Construction Progress Reports as outlined in Section 01 32 00, CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 31 00**



**SECTION 01 32 00**  
**CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for establishing an effective base line schedule for the project and documenting the progress of construction during performance of the work by developing, revising as necessary, various documents including but not limited to the following:

1. Baseline Construction Schedule.
2. Composite Schedule for entire project.
3. Recovery Composite Schedule.
4. Revised and/or updated Composite Schedule.
5. Submittals Schedule.
6. Daily construction reports.
7. Material location reports.
8. Field condition reports.
9. Special reports.

- B. RELATED SECTIONS: include without limitation the following:

1. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
2. Section 01 32 22 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
3. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
4. Section 01 40 00 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

**1.3 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.



- C. **Baseline Construction Schedule:**  
A horizontal bar chart type schedule (Microsoft Project OR similar program) listing all the activities and their duration for entire contract duration OR construction period, including logical ties and interrelations between the activities necessary for the timely and successful completion of the project. Critical path activities shall be clearly marked. The Baseline construction schedule is a preliminary schedule that must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.
- D. **Composite Schedule:**  
A composite horizontal bar chart type schedule (Microsoft Project OR similar program) listing all activities to be performed by the Contractor and its subcontractors, the duration of each activity including logical ties and interrelations between activities, and the sequence of each of necessary activities for the timely and successful completion of the project within the stipulated contract duration. Critical path activities shall be clearly marked. The Composite schedule must be signed and submitted by the Contractor within thirty (30) calendar days after the date established for commencement of the Contract, unless otherwise directed. The Composite Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.
- E. **Recovery Composite Schedule:** A Recovery Composite Schedule is not required unless the City issues an Acceleration Change Order.  
  
A Composite Schedule outlining and incorporating extraordinary efforts required to recover lost time with the aim of achieving completion of the project within the stipulated contract duration, plus authorized time extensions. In such case special attention must be given to keep the delays as minimum as possible and must establish the nature of efforts such as extended hours of work, weekend work, accelerated fabrication, required action(s) or effort(s) by the Contractor, its subcontractors, consultants, clients, end users and/or other concerned parties.  
  
Such schedule must be prepared and submitted within Five (5) calendar days of request by the Resident Engineer. The Recovery Composite Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.
- F. **Revised and/or Updated Composite Schedule:**  
  
A Baseline construction schedule OR Composite Schedule OR Recovery Composite Schedule for the project that shows the actual duration of all the completed activities, including duration of and the reasons for delays, if any has occurred, AND revisions to all remaining activities of the Contractor and its subcontractors, including changes, if any, to logical ties, interrelations and the sequence of each of the outlined activities. Any such revisions should be shown on the row just below the approved schedule of the respective activity so that revisions can be compared.  
  
The Revised and/or updated Composite Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.
- G. **Activity:** A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
- H. **Event:** The starting or ending point of an activity.
- I. **Fragment:** A part of the activity that breaks down activities into smaller activities for greater detail.
- J. **Milestone:** A key or critical point in time for reference or measurement.
- K. **Network Diagram:** A graphic diagram of a network schedule, showing activities and activity relationships.



## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BASELINE CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE:

- A. Each Contractor shall prepare a preliminary horizontal bar-chart-type construction schedule for the project. Submit the Baseline Construction Schedule to the Resident Engineer within (15) fifteen calendar days after the date established for commencement of the Contract, unless directed otherwise. The Baseline Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.
1. Provide a separate time bar for each significant construction activity. Coordinate each activity on the schedule with other construction activities for proper interrelationship & sequence.
  2. Duration: The duration of each activity on the schedule besides installation must clearly show required duration of filing for permits, inspections, testing, approvals, shop drawings and materials submittals and approvals, fabrication, delivery, phasing for each construction activity.
  3. Schedule shall be time-scaled in not more than weekly increments, with the dates of the first day (Monday) of each week indicated.
  4. Completion of all the project activities shall be indicated in advance of the date established for completion of the Contract, allowing time for required inspection and punch list work.
  5. Clearly show time bar for all the tasks, to be completed before start of physical work of scheduled activities, including but not limited to obtaining required permit, subcontractor approval, submission and approval of shop drawings, field verification, time for fabrication and delivery, testing of materials and/or samples, preparation and approval of mock-up sample, curing, pre-testing of soil, pre-testing of equipment - including start up, testing & adjusting, filing for inspection by regulatory agencies, training, final use, etc. required to maintain orderly progress of the activity. A special consideration must be given to those activities requiring early approvals because of long lead-time for manufacture or fabrication.
  6. Phasing: Arrange all activities in proper sequence to reflect requirements for phased completion, work by other entities, work by the City, City furnished items, coordination with existing work, limitations arising due to continued occupancies, non-interruptible services, partial completion for occupancy, site restrictions, provisions for future work, seasonal variations, environmental control, and similar conditions of the project.
  7. Arrange all activities and/or show interrelationship and logical sequence of all activities, determine and mark all critical path activities including any phasing reflecting actual project condition.
  8. Keep at least two blank horizontal bars between all activities for recording actual progress and submitting Revised Schedule as defined in Sub-Section 1.3 G
  9. If necessary a new revised schedule shall be prepared in the same manner as outlined above.

### 2.2 COMPOSITE SCHEDULE FOR THE PROJECT:

- A. The GC Contractor shall prepare a Composite Schedule based on the approved Baseline Schedule. Such schedule shall indicate graphically and chronologically the start and completion of each and every activity, including all the pre-activity and post activity tasks. Keep at least two blank horizontal bars between all activities for recording actual progress and/or revisions.
1. If necessary the Contractors shall meet with each subcontractor and with the Resident Engineer to review and make warranted adjustments and finalize the Composite Schedule. Once the schedule is finalized, each Contractor shall sign and date a reproducible form of the Composite Schedule. The Composite Schedule must be finalized and signed by each Contractor within (30) thirty calendar days after the date established for commencement of the Contract, unless directed otherwise. The Composite Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.



**2.3 RECOVERY COMPOSITE SCHEDULE:**

- A. A Recovery Composite Schedule is not required unless the City issues an Acceleration Change Order. A Recovery Composite Schedule outlining and incorporating extraordinary efforts required to recover lost time with the aim of achieving completion of the project within the stipulated contract duration, plus authorized time extensions, must be developed and submitted within (5) five calendar days of the request by the Resident Engineer. Such Recovery Composite Schedule shall include all information as defined in Sub-Section 1.3 F and shall be prepared in the same manner as outlined in Sub-Sections 2.1 and 2.2. The Recovery Composite Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.

**2.4 REVISED AND/OR UPDATED COMPOSITE SCHEDULE:**

- A. Each Contractor shall revise and/or update the approved Composite Schedule as directed. The Revised schedule shall be prepared in the same manner as outlined above in Sub-Sections 2.1 and 2.2.
- B. Each Contractor shall mark actual progress, delays, work stoppage etc. in the row just below the approved schedule for the respective activity so that revisions can be compared.
- C. Such schedule also shall indicate graphically and chronologically any revisions to the start and completion of the remaining activities including revisions to all the pre-activity and post activity tasks for all subcontractors.
- D. If necessary, the Contractors shall meet with each subcontractor and with the Resident Engineer to review and make warranted adjustments and finalize the Revised Composite Schedule. Once the schedule is finalized, each Contractor shall sign and date a reproducible form of the Schedule. Such schedule must be prepared and submitted by each Contractor within Five (5) calendar days of request by the Resident Engineer. The Revised Composite Schedule must be reviewed and approved by the Resident Engineer.

**2.5 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE:**

- A. Preparation: Each Contractor shall submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by the construction schedule. Include time required for review, re-submittal, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.
- B. SCHEDULE F: Schedule F sets forth all submittal requirements for shop drawings and material samples. Schedule F is included in the Addendum. At the kick-off meeting, each Contractor must review this Schedule with the Resident Engineer and the Design Consultant. Within 10 days after the kick-off meeting, each Contractor must complete information on Schedule F concerning the submission date, the required delivery date and the fabrication time. For all required submittals of shop drawings and material samples, the Schedule F provided by each Contractor must indicate a submission date which is at least 20 business days prior to the date of the manufacture of the item or materials to be installed. In addition, if so directed by the Commissioner, the Schedule F provided by each Contractor must indicate a submission date for shop drawings and/or material samples of specified items or materials which is within 60 business days after the kick-off meeting. In the event of any conflict between the Specifications and Schedule F, Schedule F shall take precedence; provided, however, in the event of an omission from Schedule F (i.e., Schedule F omits either a reference to or information concerning a submittal requirement which is set forth in the Specifications), such omission from Schedule F shall have no effect and each Contractor's submittal obligation, as set forth in the Specifications, shall remain in full force and effect.
- C. Review: The Resident Engineer will review the Schedule F submitted by each Contractor. Upon acceptance, the Resident Engineer will date and sign the schedule as approved and transmit it to the Design Consultant, Contractors and others within DDC as he/she deems appropriate.



**2.6 REPORTS:**

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Each Contractor shall submit to the Resident Engineer written Daily Construction Reports at the end of each work day, recording basic information such as the date, day, weather conditions, and contract days passed, remaining contract duration/days and the following information concerning the Project:

Information: The reports shall be prepared by each Contractor's Superintendent and shall bear the Contractor's Superintendent's signature. Each report shall contain the following information:

1. List of name of Contractor, subcontractors, their work force in each category, and details of activities performed.
2. The type of materials and/or major equipment being installed by the Contractor and/or by each subcontractor.
3. The major construction equipment being used by the Contractor and/or subcontractors.
4. Material and Equipment deliveries.
5. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions.
6. Accidents.
7. Meetings and significant decisions.
8. Unusual events.
9. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
10. Meter readings and similar recordings
11. Emergency procedures.
12. Orders and/or requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
13. Approved Change Orders received and implemented.
14. Field Orders and Directives received and implemented.
15. Services connected and disconnected.
16. Equipment or system tests and startups.
17. Partial Completions and occupancies.
18. Substantial Completions authorized.

NOTE: If there is NO ACTIVITY at site, a daily report indicating so and the reason for no activity at the site must be submitted.

- B. Material Location Reports: Each Contractor shall submit a Material Location Report at weekly OR monthly intervals as determined and established by the Resident Engineer. Such report shall include a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site.
- C. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit a Request For Information (RFI) form with a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

**2.7 SPECIAL REPORTS:**

- A. Accident report, incident report, special condition report for the conditions out of control of any party involved with the project effecting project progress, explaining impact on the project schedule and cost if any.

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 32 00**



**SECTION 01 32 33**  
**PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SECTION 01 32 33**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.12 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Photographic Media
  2. Construction Photographs
  3. Pre-construction Photographs
  4. Periodic Construction Progress Photographs
  5. Special Photographs
  6. DVD Recordings
  7. Final Completion Construction Photographs
- B. RELATED SECTIONS: include without limitation the following:
1. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
  2. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
  3. Section 01 35 91 HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES
  4. Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS
  5. Section 01 81 19 INDOOR AIR QUALITY REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS
- C. PHOTOGRAPHER - The GC Contractor shall employ and pay for the services of a professional photographer who shall take photographs showing the progress of the work for all Contracts.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Qualification Data: For photographer.



- B. Key Plan: With each Progress Photograph Submittal include a key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each image. Indicate location, elevation or story of construction. Include same label information as corresponding set of photographs.
- C. Construction Progress Photograph Prints: Take Progress Photographs bi-weekly and submit four color prints of each photographic view for each trade to the Resident Engineer. Such photographs shall be included in each monthly progress report or as otherwise directed by the Resident Engineer.
- D. Construction Photograph Negatives: Submit a complete set of photographic negatives in individually protected negative sleeves with each submittal of prints. Identify negatives with label matching photographic prints.
- E. Digital Images: If Digital Media is used, submit a complete set of digital color image electronic files on CD-ROM with each submittal of prints. Identify electronic media with date photographs were taken. Submit images that have same aspect ratio as the sensor, un-cropped.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

**1.6 COORDINATION:**

- A. Each Contractor and its subcontractor(s) shall cooperate with the photographer and provide auxiliary services requested, including access to Project site and use of temporary facilities, including temporary lighting required to produce clear, well-lit photographs without obscuring shadows.

**1.7 COPYRIGHT:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall include the provisions set forth below in its agreement with the Photographer who will provide the construction photographs described in this section. The GC Contractor shall submit to the Resident Engineer a copy of its agreement with the Photographer.
- B. Any photographs, images and/or other materials produced pursuant to this Agreement, and any and all drafts and/or other preliminary materials in any format related to such items produced pursuant to this Agreement, shall upon their creation become the exclusive property of the City.
- C. Any photographs, images and/or other materials provided pursuant to this Agreement ("Copyrightable Materials") shall be considered "work-made-for-hire" within the meaning and purview of Section 101 of the United States Copyright Act, 17 U.S.C. § 101, and the City shall be the copyright owner thereof and of all aspects, elements and components thereof in which copyright protection might exist. To the extent that the Copyrightable Materials do not qualify as "work-made-for-hire," the Photographer hereby irrevocably transfers, assigns and conveys exclusive copyright ownership in and to the Copyrightable Materials to the City, free and clear of any liens, claims, or other encumbrances. The Photographer shall retain no copyright or intellectual property interest in the Copyrightable Materials. The Copyrightable Materials shall be used by the Photographer for no purpose other than in the performance of this Agreement without the prior written permission of the City. The Department may grant the Photographer a license to use the Copyrightable Materials on such terms as determined by the Department and set forth in the license.
- D. The Photographer acknowledges that the City may, in its sole discretion, register copyright in the Copyrightable Materials with the United States Copyright Office or any other government agency authorized to grant copyright registrations. The Photographer shall fully cooperate in this effort, and agrees to provide any and all documentation necessary to accomplish this.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- E. The Photographer represents and warrants that the Copyrightable Materials: (i) are wholly original material not published elsewhere (except for material that is in the public domain); (ii) do not violate any copyright Law; (iii) do not constitute defamation or invasion of the right of privacy or publicity; and (iv) are not an infringement, of any kind, of the rights of any third party. To the extent that the Copyrightable Materials incorporate any non-original material, the Photographer has obtained all necessary permissions and clearances, in writing, for the use of such non-original material under this Agreement, copies of which shall be provided to the City.

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA:

- A. Photographic Film: Medium format, 2-1/4 by 2-1/4 inches (60 by 60 mm).
- B. Digital Images:
1. Construction Progress Images: Color images in JPEG format with minimum sensor size of 1.3 megapixels.
  2. Presentation Quality Images: Provide Color images in uncompressed TIFF format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 4.0 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 1024 by 768 with 8"x10" original capture at 300 dpi or greater.
- C. Prints:
1. Format: 8-by-10-inch (203-by-254-mm) smooth-surface matte color prints on single-weight commercial-grade stock paper, with 1inch wide margins and punched for standard 3-ring binder.
  2. Identification: On the front of each photograph affix a label in the margin with Project name and date photograph was taken. On the back of each print, provide an applied label or rubber-stamped impression with the following information:
    - a. Project Contract I.D. Number.
    - b. Project Contract Name.
    - c. Name of Contractor. (and Subcontractor Trade Represented)
    - d. Subject of Image Taken.
    - e. Date and time photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction and other pertinent information.
    - g. Unique sequential identifier.
    - h. Name and address of photographer.

## PART III – EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS:

- A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location and direction of view.
- B. Film Images:



1. Date Stamp: Unless otherwise indicated, date and time stamp each photograph as it is being taken so stamp is integral to photograph.
  2. Field Office Prints: Retain one set of prints of progress photographs in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify photographs same as for those submitted to Commissioner.
- C. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
1. Date and Time: Include date and time in filename for each image.
  2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images on CD-ROM in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images same as for those submitted to Commissioner.

### 3.2 PRE-CONSTRUCTION & PRE-DEMOLITION PHOTOGRAPHS:

- A. Before commencement of Contract work at the site, take color photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing structures or items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by the Resident Engineer.
1. Flag applicable excavation areas and construction limits before taking construction photographs.
  2. Take photographs of minimum eight (8) views to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  3. Take applicable photographs of minimum eight (8) views of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  4. Take additional photographs as required or directed by the Resident Engineer to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- B. Demolition Operations: Take photographs as directed by the Resident Engineer of minimum of eight (8) views each before commencement of demolition operations, at mid-point of operations and at completion of operations.
- C. Pre-Demolition Photographs: Take archival quality color photographs, to include all exterior building facades, of all structures at the Project site designated to be fully demolished or removed in compliance with NYC Building Code requirements. Submit four (4) complete sets of pre-demolition photographs, in the format specified herein, to the Resident Engineer for submission to the Department of Buildings.

### 3.3 PERIODIC CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS:

- A. Take photographs of minimum eight (8) views bi-weekly as directed by the Resident Engineer of construction progress for each contract trade. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

### 3.4 SPECIAL PHOTOGRAPHS:

- A. The photographer shall take special photographs of subject matter or events as specified in other sections of the Project Specifications from vantage points specified or as otherwise directed by the Resident Engineer.
- B. Historical Elements: As required in Section 01 35 91, HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES, for Contract work at designated landmark structures the photographer, as specified and required by individual sections of the Contract documents or at the direction of the Commissioner, shall take



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

images of existing elements scheduled to be removed for replacement, repair or replication in quantities as directed, including post-construction photographs of completed work as directed by the Commissioner.

1. Take Presentation Quality Photographs of designated landmark structures as directed by the Commissioner for submission to the New York City Landmarks Preservation Commission. Provide a minimum of four color photographic prints of each view as directed.

**3.5 DVD RECORDING:**

- A. When DVD Recording of Demonstration and Orientation sessions is required the GC Contractor shall provide the services of a Videographer as indicated in Section 01 79 00, DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION, and Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

**3.6 FINAL COMPLETION CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS:**

- A. Take color photographs of minimum eight (8) unobstructed views of the completed project or project and site, as directed by the Commissioner and after all scaffolding, hoists, shanties, field offices or other temporary work has been removed and final cleaning is done after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Submit four (4) sets of each view of Presentation Quality photographic prints including negatives and/or digital images electronic file

**END OF SECTION 01 32 33**



**SECTION 01 33 00**  
**SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

**PART I – GENERAL:**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract]]

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Coordination Drawings, Catalogue Cuts, Material Samples and other submittals required by the Contract Documents.
- B. Review of submittals does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for any Contractor's errors or omissions in such submittals, nor from responsibility for complying with the requirements of the Contract.
- C. Responsibility of the Contractor: The approval of Shop Drawings will be general and shall not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for the accuracy of such Shop Drawings, nor for the proper fitting and construction of the work, nor of the furnishing of materials or work required by the Contract and not indicated on the Shop Drawings. Approval of Shop Drawings shall not be construed as approving departures from the Contract Drawings, Supplementary Drawings or Specifications.
- D. This Section includes the following:
1. Definitions
  2. Submission Procedures
  3. Coordination Drawings
  4. LEED Submittals
  5. Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel Reporting
  6. Construction Photographs and DVD Recordings
  7. As-Built Documents

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |  |
|----|------------------|--|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY  |
| B. | Section 01 31 00 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION                |
| C. | Section 01 32 00 | CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION                |
| D. | Section 01 32 33 | PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION                         |
| E. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES                                |
| F. | Section 01 78 39 | CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS                          |
| G. | Section 01 81 13 | SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.



- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.
- C. Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires responsive actions and includes without limitation all shop drawings, product data, letters of certification, tests and other information required for quality control and as required by the Contract Documents.
- D. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for non-compliance with the Contract.
- E. Shop Drawings: Include drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules, performance charts, brochures, and other data, except for coordination drawings, specifically prepared for the project by the Contractor or any subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier or distributor, which illustrates how specific portions of the work shall be fabricated and/or installed.
- F. Coordination Drawings: As required in Section 01 31 00 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION.
- G. Product Data and Quality Assurance Submittals: Includes manufacturer's standard catalogs, pamphlets and other printed materials including without limitation the following:
  - 1. Catalogue and Product specifications
  - 2. Installation instructions
  - 3. Color charts
  - 4. Catalog cuts
  - 5. Rough-in diagrams and templates
  - 6. Wiring diagrams
  - 7. Performance curves
  - 8. Operational range diagrams
  - 9. Mill reports
  - 10. Design data and calculations
  - 11. Certification of compliance or conformance
  - 12. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports

#### 1.5 INTEGRATED DRAWINGS:

- A. The GC Contractor shall provide to the HVAC Contractor reflected ceiling starting points or plans, showing beam soffits elevations, ceiling heights, roof openings, etc.
- B. The HVAC Contractor shall prepare a 3/8 inch scale drawing or drawings showing ductwork, heating and sprinkler piping. This drawing shall include location of grilles, registers, etc. and access doors in hung ceilings. Location shall be fixed by elevations and dimensions from column center lines and/or walls.
- C. The HVAC Contractor shall prepare and issue a 3/8 inch scale original reproducible drawing or drawings of the above to the GC Contractor and a print of same to the Resident Engineer.
- D. The GC Contractor shall lay out on the original reproducible drawing, the reflected ceiling plan, beam soffit elevations, ceiling heights, roof opening, etc. and issue the original reproducible drawing to the Plumbing Contractor, and a print of same to the Resident Engineer.



- E. The Plumbing Contractor shall lay out on the original reproducible drawing its piping, valves, cleanouts, etc., indicating locations and elevations and shall indicate the necessary access doors, and issue the original reproducible drawing to the Electrical Contractor and print of same to the Resident Engineer.
- F. The Electrical Contractor shall indicate on the original reproducible drawing its fixtures, large conduit runs, clearances, pull boxes, junction boxes, sound system speakers, etc., and issue the original reproducible drawing to the Resident Engineer.
- G. The Resident Engineer will call as many meetings with each Contractor as are necessary to resolve any conflicts that become apparent. The Resident Engineer will call on the services of the Design Consultant where necessary.
- H. Upon resolution of the conflicts, the HVAC Contractor shall provide a reproducible drawing of the coordinated drawing or drawings, which will become the Master Integrated Drawing. The Master Integrated Drawing shall be signed by each Contractor to indicate its acceptance of the arrangement of the work.
- I. A reproducible copy of the Master Integrated Drawing or Drawings will be provided by the HVAC Contractor to each Contractor, the Resident Engineer and to the Design Consultant for information.
- J. Each Contractor shall prepare its Shop Drawings in accordance with the Master Integrated Drawings. No work will be permitted without approved Shop Drawings. It is therefore essential that this procedure be instituted as quickly as possible.
- K. Each Contractor shall be held strictly accountable for cooperation in preparing the Integrated Drawing or Drawings.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

- A. Refer to Section 01 35 03 GENERAL MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS and Section 01 35 06 GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS for additional submittal requirements involving electrical and mechanical work or equipment of any nature called for the project.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activities, with the Submittal Schedule specified in Section 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION.
  - 2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
  - 3. The Commissioner reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Submittals Schedule: The Submittals Schedule is set forth in Schedule F, which is included in the Addendum.
- D. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
  - 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  - 2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Design Consultant.
  - 3. Include the following minimum information on label for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name, DDC Project Number and Contract Number
    - b. Date.



- c. Name and address of Design Consultant.
- d. Name and address of Contractor.
- e. Name and address of subcontractor.
- f. Name and address of supplier.
- g. Name of manufacturer.
- h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
- i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
- j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
- k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
- l. Other necessary identification.

E. Transmittal:

1. Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form in triplicate. Transmittals received from sources other than the Contractor will be returned without review. Re-submission of the same drawings or product data shall bear the original number of the prior submission and the original titles.
2. Transmittal Form: Provide locations on form for the following information:
  - a. Project name, DDC Project number and Contract Number
  - b. Date
  - c. Destination (To:).
  - d. Source (From:)
  - e. Names of Contractor, subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier
  - f. Category and type of submittal.
  - g. Submittal purpose and description.
  - h. Specification Section number and title.
  - i. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - j. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
  - k. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
  - l. Remarks.
  - m. Signature of transmitter.

F. Shop Drawings:

1. Procedures for Preparing, Forwarding, Checking and Returning all Shop Drawings shall be, generally, as follows:
  - a. Each Contractor shall make available to its subcontractors the necessary Contract Documents and shall instruct such subcontractors to determine dimensions and conditions in the field, particularly with reference to coordination between the trade subcontractors. The Contractor shall direct its subcontractors to prepare Shop Drawings for submission to the Design Consultant in accordance with the requirements of these General Conditions. The Contractor shall also direct its subcontractors to "Ring Up" corrections made on all re-submissions for approval, so as to be readily seen, and that the symbol "sub" be used to identify the source of the correction or information that has been added.

The Contractor shall:

1. Review and be responsible to the Commissioner, for information shown on its subcontractor's Shop and Installation drawings and manufacturers' data, and also for conformity to Contract Documents.
2. "Ring Up" corrections made on all submissions for approval, so as to be readily seen, and that the symbol "GC", "PL", "HVAC" or "EL" be used to indicate that the correction and/or information added was made by the Contractor and/or its subcontractor(s).



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

3. Clearly designate which entity is to perform the work when the term, "work by others" or other similar phrases are indicated on the Contract Drawings before submission to the Design Consultant.
    4. Stamp submissions "Recommended for Acceptance", date and forward to the Design Consultant.
  2. Each Contractor shall promptly prepare and submit project specific layout detail and Shop Drawings of such parts of the work as are indicated in the Specifications, Schedule F of the Addendum or as required. These Shop Drawings shall be made in accordance with the Contract Drawings, Specifications and Supplementary Drawings, if any. The Shop Drawings shall be accurate and distinct and give all the dimensions required for the fabrication, erection and installation of the work.
  3. Size of Drawings: The Shop Drawings, unless otherwise directed, shall be on sheets of the same size as the Contract Drawings, drawn accurately and of sufficient scale to be legible, with a one half (1/2) inch marginal space on each side and a two (2) inch marginal space for binding on the left side.
  4. Scope of Drawings: Shop Drawings shall be numbered consecutively and shall accurately and distinctly represent all aspects of the work, including without limitation the following:
    - a. All working and erection dimensions.
    - b. Arrangements and sectional views.
    - c. Necessary details, including performance characteristics, and complete information for making necessary connections with other work.
    - d. Kinds of materials including thickness and finishes.
    - e. Identification of products.
    - f. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - g. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - h. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    - i. Shop work manufacturing instructions.
    - j. Templates and patterns.
    - k. Schedules.
    - l. Design calculations.
    - m. Compliance with specified standards.
    - n. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - o. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - p. Relationship to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - q. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
    - r. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
    - s. All other information necessary for the work and/or required by the Commissioner.
  5. Titles and Reference: Shop Drawings shall be dated and contain:
    - a. Name of the Project, DDC Project Number and Contract Number.
    - b. The descriptive names of equipment, or materials covered by the Contract Drawings and the classified item number or numbers, if any, under which it is, or they are required.
    - c. The locations or points and sequence at which materials, or equipment, are to be installed in the work.
    - d. Cross references to the section number, detail number and paragraph number of the Contract Specifications.
    - e. Cross references to the sheet number, detail number, etc., of the Contract Drawings.
  6. Field Measurements: In addition to the above requirements, the Shop Drawings shall be signed by the Contractor responsible for preparation of the shop drawings and, if applicable, the subcontractor responsible for preparation of the Shop Drawings. Each Shop Drawing shall be stamped with the following wording:



**FIELD MEASUREMENTS:** The Contractor certifies that it has verified and supplemented the Contract Drawings by taking all required field measurements, which said measurements correctly reflect all field conditions and that this Shop Drawing incorporates said measurements.

7. **Contractor's Statement with Submittal:** Any Submittal by the Contractor for acceptance, including without limitation, all dimensional drawings of equipment, blueprints, catalogues, models, samples and other data relative to the equipment, the materials, the work or any part thereof, must be accompanied by a statement that the Submittal has been examined by the Contractor and that everything shown in the Submittal is in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Drawings and Specifications. If there is any discrepancy between what is shown in the Submittal and the requirements of the Contract Drawings and Specifications, the Contractor shall, in its statement, list and clearly describe each such discrepancy.

Acceptance will be given based upon the Contractor's representation that what is shown in the Submittal is in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Drawings and Specifications. If the Contractor's statement indicates any discrepancy between what is shown in the Submittal and the requirements of the Contract Drawings and Specifications, such change is subject to review and prior written acceptance by the Design Consultant. In addition, such change may require a change order in accordance with Article 25 of the Contract. In the event any such change is approved, any additional expense or increased cost in connection with the change is the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

8. **Submission of Shop Drawings:**
- a. **Initial Submission:** Each Contractor shall submit seven (7) copies of each Shop Drawing to the Design Consultant for his/her review and acceptance. The Design Consultant will transmit Shop Drawings to appropriate sub-consultants for review and acceptance, including Commissioning Authority/Agent as applicable. A satisfactory Shop Drawing will be stamped "No Exceptions Taken", be dated and distributed by the Design Consultant as follows:
- 1) Two (2) copies thereof will be returned to the Contractor by letter.
  - 2) Three (3) copies of the approved Shop Drawing and copy of the transmittal letter to the Contractor will be forwarded to DDC.
  - 3) One copy will be retained by the Design Consultant.
  - 4) One copy will be forwarded / retained by sub-consultant(s) as appropriate.
- Should the Shop Drawing(s) be "Rejected" or noted "Revise and Resubmit" by the Design Consultant, the Design Consultant will return the Shop Drawings to the Contractor with the necessary corrections and changes to be made as indicated thereon.
- b. **Revisions:** Each Contractor must make such corrections and changes and again submit seven (7) copies of each shop drawing to the Design Consultant. The Contractor shall revise and resubmit the Shop Drawing as required by the Design Consultant until the Shop Drawings are stamped "No Exceptions Taken". However, Shop Drawings which have been stamped "Make Corrections Noted" shall be considered an "Acceptable" Shop Drawing and NEED NOT be resubmitted.
- c. **Commencement of Work:** No work or fabrication called for by the Shop Drawings shall be done until the acceptance of the said drawings by the Design Consultant is given. In addition to the foregoing Shop Drawing transmissions, a copy of any Shop Drawing prepared by any of the Contractors or the Contractor's subcontractors which Shop Drawing indicated work related to, adjacent to, impinging upon, or affecting work to be done by other subcontractors shall be transmitted to the Contractor and subcontractors so affected. [These accepted Shop Drawings shall be distributed to the affected Contractor and subcontractors when required with a copy of the transmittal to the Resident Engineer.]



- d. Variations: If the Shop Drawings show variations from the Contract requirements because of standard shop practice or other reasons, the Contractor shall make specific mention of such variations in its letter of submittal. Acceptance of the Shop Drawings shall constitute acceptance of the subject matter thereof only and not of any structural apparatus shown or indicated.

G. Product Data:

1. General: Except as otherwise prescribed herein, the submission, review and acceptance of Product Data and Catalogue cuts shall conform to the procedures specified in Sub-Section 1.6 F, Shop Drawings.
2. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
3. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
4. Include the following information, as applicable:
  - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
  - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
  - d. Standard color charts.
  - e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
  - f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
  - g. Printed performance curves.
  - h. Operational range diagrams.
  - i. Mill reports.
  - j. Standard product operation and maintenance manuals.
  - k. Compliance with specified referenced standards.
  - l. Testing by recognized testing agency.
  - m. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
  - n. Notation of coordination requirements.
5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
6. Submission of Product Data:
  - a. Initial Submission: Each Contractor shall submit seven (7) sets of Product Data to the Design Consultant for his/her review and acceptance. The Design Consultant will transmit Product Data to appropriate sub-consultants for review and acceptance, including Commissioning Authority/Agent as applicable. A satisfactory catalogue cut will be stamped "No Exception Taken", be dated and distributed as follows:
    - 1) Two (2) copies thereof will be returned to the Contractor by letter.
    - 2) Three (3) copies of the Product Data and copy of the transmittal letter to the Contractor will be forwarded to DDC
    - 3) One copy will be retained by the Design Consultant.
    - 4) One copy will be forwarded / retained by sub-consultant(s) as appropriate.Should the Product Data be "Rejected" or noted "Revise and Resubmit" by the Design Consultant, the Design Consultant will return one (1) set of such Product Data to the Contractor with the necessary corrections and changes to be made indicated and one (1) set to DDC.
7. Revisions: Each Contractor must make such corrections and changes and again submit seven (7) copies of each Product Data for the review of the Design Consultant. The Contractor shall revise and resubmit the Product Data as required by the Design Consultant until the submission is



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

stamped "No Exceptions Taken" by the Design Consultant. However, Product Data which has been stamped "Make Corrections Noted" shall be considered an "Accepted" Product Data and NEED NOT be resubmitted.

H. Samples of Materials:

1. For samples of materials involving electrical work of any nature, refer to Section 00 35 06 - General Electrical Requirements.
2. Samples shall be in triplicate, of sufficient size to show the quality, type, range of color, finish and texture of the material.
3. Each of the samples shall be labeled as follows:
  - a. Name of the Project, DDC Project Number and Contract Number.
  - b. Name and quality of the material.
  - c. Date.
  - d. Name of Contractor, subcontractor, manufacturer and supplier.
  - e. Related Specification or Contract Drawing reference to the samples submitted.
4. A letter of transmittal, in triplicate, from the Contractor requesting acceptance must accompany all such samples.
5. Transportation charges to the Design Consultant's office must be prepaid on all samples forwarded.
6. Samples for testing purposes shall be as required in the Specifications.
7. Samples on Display: When samples are specified to be equal to approved product, they shall be carefully examined by the Contractor and by those whom the Contractor expects to employ for the furnishing of such materials.
8. Timely Submissions Log/Schedule: Samples shall be submitted in accordance with approved Shop Drawing log so as to permit proper consideration without delaying any operation under the project. Materials should not be ordered until acceptance is received, in writing, from the Design Consultant. All materials shall be furnished equal in every respect to the accepted samples.
9. The Acceptance of any samples will be given as promptly as possible, and shall be only for the characteristic color, texture, strength, or other feature of the material named in such approval, and no other. When this approval is issued by the Design Consultant, it is done with the distinct understanding that the materials to be furnished will fully and completely comply with the Specifications, the determination of which may be made at some later date by a laboratory test or by other procedure. Use of materials will be permitted only so long as the quality remains equal to the approved samples and complies in every respect with the Specifications, and the colors and textures of the samples on file in the office of the Design Consultant, for the project.
10. Acceptability of test Data: The Commissioner will be the final judge as to acceptability of laboratory test data and performance in service of materials submitted.
11. Valuable Samples: Valuable samples, such as hardware, plumbing and electrical fixtures, etc., not destroyed by inspection or test, will be returned to the Contractor and may be incorporated into the work after all questions of acceptability have been settled, providing suitable permanent records are made as to the location of the samples, their properties, etc.
12. Equivalent Quality: Any material, article and/or equipment which is designated in the Drawings and/or Specifications by a number in the catalogue of any manufacturer or by a manufacturer's grade or trade name is designated for the purpose of describing the material, article and/or equipment and fixing the standard of performance and/or function, as well as the quality and/or finish. Any material, article and/or equipment which is other than what is specified in the Drawings



and/or Specifications will only be accepted if the Commissioner makes a written determination that such material, article and/or equipment is equivalent to that which is specified in the Drawings and/or Specifications.

13. The submission of any material, article and/or equipment as the equal of any material, article and/or equipment set forth in the Drawings and/or Specifications as a standard shall be accompanied by any and all information essential for determining whether such proposed material, article and/or equipment is equivalent to that which is specified. Such information shall include, without limitation, illustrations, drawings, descriptions, catalogues, records of tests, samples, as well as information regarding the finish, durability and satisfactory use of such proposed material, article and/or equipment under similar operating conditions.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 1.7**

**1.7 LEED SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Comply with submittal requirements specified in Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL; Section 01 81 13, SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS; Section 01 81 13.13, VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND (VOC) LIMITS FOR ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS FOR LEED BUILDINGS; Section 01 81 19, INDOOR AIR QUALITY REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS and Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.
- B. LEED Building submittal information shall be assembled into one package per each applicable specification section, separate from all other non-LEED submittals. Each submittal package shall have a separate transmittal and identification as described in Sub-Section 1.6 herein.
- C. Number of Copies: Submit FOUR (4) copies of LEED submittals, in accordance with procedure described in Sub-Section 1.6 herein, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs) for LEED Certification: Submit information necessary to show compliance with LEED certification requirements, which will be the limit of the Design Consultant's review for LEED compliance.
  1. Designated LEED submittals that include non-LEED MSDS data will not be reviewed. The entire submittal will be returned for re-submission.

**1.8 ULTRA LOW SULFUR DIESEL FUEL AND BEST AVAILABLE TECHNOLOGY REPORTING:**

- A. In accordance with Section 01 10 00 Summary, Sub-Section 1.13E, each Contractor shall submit reports to the Commissioner regarding the use of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel and Best Available Technology (BAT) in Non road Vehicles. Submission of such reports shall be in accordance with the schedule, format, directions and procedures established by the Commissioner.

**1.9 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS AND DVD RECORDINGS:**

- A. Submit construction progress photographs and DVD recordings in accordance with requirements of Section 01 32 33, PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**1.10 AS-BUILT DOCUMENTS:**

- A. Submit all as-built documents in accordance with Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 33 00**



**SECTION 01 35 03**

**GENERAL MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SECTION 01 35 03**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract]

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. The General Mechanical Requirements contained herein shall be followed by all Contractors furnishing mechanical equipment under their respective contracts. This Section sets forth the General Requirements applicable to mechanical work for the Project. Such requirements are intended to be read in conjunction with the Specifications and Contract Drawings for the Project. In the event of any conflict between the requirements set forth in this Section and the requirements of the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings, whichever requirement is the most stringent, as determined by the Commissioner, shall take precedence.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |                                 |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY                         |
| B. | Section 01 33 00 | SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES            |
| C. | Section 01 35 06 | GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS |
| D. | Section 01 42 00 | REFERENCES                      |
| E. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES             |
| F. | Section 01 78 39 | CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS       |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. **CONCEALED PIPING AND DUCTS** - shall mean piping and ducts hidden from sight in masonry or other construction, in floor fill, trenches, partitions, hung ceilings, furred spaces, pipe shafts and in service tunnels not used for passage. Where piping and ducts run in areas that have hung ceilings, such piping and ducts shall be installed in the hung ceilings. For work on existing piping any insulation on such existing piping is to be tested for asbestos and abated, if found to be positive by a certified asbestos contractor. Such testing and abatement shall occur prior to the performance of any work on these pipes.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. **INTENT OF MECHANICAL CONTRACT DRAWINGS** – Mechanical Contract Drawings are in part diagrammatic and show the general arrangement of the equipment, ducts and piping included in the Contract and the approximate size and location of the equipment.
- B. The HVAC Contractor shall follow these Contract Drawings in laying out the work and verify the spaces in which it will be installed. The HVAC Contractor shall submit, as directed, Mechanical Shop Drawings, roughing drawings, manufacturer's Shop Drawings, field drawings, cuts, bulletins, etc., of all materials, equipment and methods of installation shown or specified in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.



1. Submit sheet metal shop standards. Submit manufacturer's product data including gauges, materials, types of joints, scaling materials and installations for metal ductwork materials and products.
2. Submit scaled layout drawing (3/8"=1') of metal ductwork and fittings including, but not limited to, duct sizes, locations, elevations, slopes of horizontal runs, wall and floor penetrations and connections. Show modifications of indicated requirements made to conform to local shop practice and how those modifications ensure that free area, materials and rigidity are not reduced. Layouts should include all the room plans, mechanical equipment rooms and penthouses. Method of attachment of duct hangers to building construction all with the support details. Coordinate shop drawings with related trades prior to submission.
3. Indicate duct fittings, particulars such as gauges, sizes, welds and configuration prior to start of work for low-pressure systems.
4. Submit maintenance data and parts lists for metal ductwork materials and products. Include this data, product data and shop drawings in maintenance manual.

**1.6 ACCESSIBILITY:**

All work shall be installed by the HVAC Contractor so as to be readily accessible for inspection, operation, maintenance and repair. Minor deviations from the arrangement indicated on the Contract Drawings may be made to accomplish this, but they shall not be made without approval by the Commissioner.

**1.7 CHANGES IN PIPING, DUCTS, AND EQUIPMENT:**

Wherever field conditions are such that for proper execution of the work, reasonable changes in location of piping, ducts and equipment are necessary and required, the HVAC Contractor shall make such changes as directed and approved, without extra cost to the City.

**1.8 CLEANING OF PIPING, DUCTS, AND EQUIPMENT:**

Piping, ducts and equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned by the HVAC Contractor of all dirt, cuttings and other foreign substances. Should any pipe, duct or other part of the several systems be obstructed by any foreign matter, the HVAC Contractor will be required to pay for disconnecting, cleaning and reconnecting wherever necessary for the purpose of locating and removing obstructions. The Contractor shall pay for repairs to other work damaged in the course of removing obstructions. For work on existing piping, ducts and equipment the HVAC Contractor shall pay special attention during this task so as not to disturb the insulation on such piping, ducts or equipment.

**1.9 STANDARDIZATION OF SIMILAR EQUIPMENT:**

Unless otherwise particularly specified, all equipment of the same kind, type or classification, and used for identical purposes, shall be the product of one (1) manufacturer.

**1.10 SUPPORTING STRUCTURES DESIGNED BY THE CONTRACTOR:**

Unless otherwise specified, supporting structures for equipment to be furnished by the HVAC Contractor shall be designed by an Engineer licensed in New York State retained by the GC Contractor. Supporting structures shall be built by the GC Contractor of sufficient strength to safely withstand all stresses to which they may be subjected, within permissible deflections, and shall meet the following standards:

- A. Structural Steel - ASTM Standard Specifications, AISC and New York City Construction Codes.
- B. Concrete for supports for equipment shall conform to the Specifications for concrete herein, but in no case shall be less than the requirements of the New York City Construction Codes for average concrete.



- C. Steel reinforcement for concrete shall be of intermediate grade and shall meet the requirements of the Standard Specifications for Billet Steel-Concrete Reinforcement Bars, ASTM.
- D. Drawings and calculations shall be submitted for review and acceptance in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

**1.11 ELIMINATION OF NOISE:**

- A. All systems and/or equipment provided under the Contract shall operate without objectionable noise or vibration.
- B. Should operation of any one or more of the several systems produce noise or vibration which is, in the opinion of the Commissioner, objectionable, the HVAC Contractor shall at its own expense make changes in piping, equipment, etc. and do all work necessary to eliminate objectionable noise or vibration.
- C. Should noise or vibration found objectionable by the Commissioner be transmitted by any pipe or portions of the structure from systems and/or equipment installed under the Contract, the HVAC Contractor shall at its own expense install such insulators and make such changes in or additions to the installations as may be necessary to prevent transmission of this noise or vibration.

**1.12 PRELIMINARY FIELD TEST:**

As soon as conditions permit, the HVAC Contractor shall furnish all necessary labor and materials for, and shall make, preliminary field tests of the equipment to ascertain compliance with the requirements of the Contract. If the preliminary field tests disclose equipment that does not comply with the Contract, the HVAC Contractor shall, prior to the acceptance test, make all changes, adjustments and replacements required.

**1.13 INSTRUCTIONS ON OPERATION:**

At the time the equipment is placed in permanent operation by the City, the HVAC Contractor shall make all adjustments and tests required by the Commissioner to prove that such equipment is in proper and satisfactory operating condition. The HVAC Contractor shall instruct the City's operating personnel on the proper maintenance and operation of the equipment for the period of time called for in the Specifications.

**1.14 CERTIFICATES:**

On completion of the work, the HVAC Contractor shall obtain certificates of inspection, approval, acceptance and of compliance with all laws from all agencies and/or entities having jurisdiction over the work and shall deliver these certificates to the Commissioner in accordance with Section 01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES. The work shall not be deemed substantially complete until the certificates have been delivered.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 35 03**



**SECTION 01 35 06**  
**GENERAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract]

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section sets forth the General Requirements applicable to electrical work for the Project. Such requirements are intended to be read in conjunction with the Specifications and Contract Drawings for the Project. In the event of any conflict between the requirements set forth in this Section and the requirements of the Project Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings, whichever requirement is the most stringent, as determined by the Commissioner, shall take precedence.
- B. This Section includes the following:
1. Procedure for Electrical Approval
  2. Submittals
  3. Electrical Installation Procedures
  4. Electrical Conduit System Including Boxes (Pull, Junction and Outlet)
  5. Electrical Wiring Devices
  6. Electrical Conductors and Terminations
  7. Circuit Protective Devices
  8. Distribution Centers
  9. Motors
  10. Motor Control Equipment
  11. Schedule of Electrical Equipment

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |                                 |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY                         |
| B. | Section 01 33 00 | SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES            |
| C. | Section 01 35 03 | GENERAL MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS |
| D. | Section 01 42 00 | REFERENCES                      |
| E. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES             |
| F. | Section 01 78 39 | CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS       |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. **WIRING:** means both wire and raceway (rigid steel, heavy wall conduit unless specifically indicated otherwise).



- B. **POWER WIRING:** means wiring from a panelboard or other specified source to a starter (if required) then to a disconnect (if required), then to the final point of usage such as a motor, unit or device.
- C. **CONTROL and/or INTERLOCK WIRING:** means that wiring that signals the device to operate or shut down in response to a signal from a remote control device such as a temperature, smoke, pressure, float, etc. device (starters and disconnect switches are not included in this definition) regardless of the voltage required for the controlling device.
- D. **RIGID STEEL CONDUIT:** shall mean rigid steel, heavy wall conduit that is hot dipped galvanized inside and outside. The conduit shall meet the requirements of the latest edition, as amended, of the "Standard for Rigid Steel Conduit" of the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. Unless otherwise specified in the Specifications or indicated on the Contract Drawings, rigid steel conduit shall be used for all exposed work, for all underground conduits in contact with earth and for fire alarms systems, as required by the New York City Construction Codes.
- E. **ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT):** shall mean industry standard thin wall conduit of galvanized steel only. All elbows, bends, couplings and similar fittings which are installed as a part of the conduit system shall be compatible for use with electric metallic tubing. Couplings and terminating fittings shall be of the pressure type as approved by the Commissioner. Set screw fittings will not be acceptable. EMT shall meet the requirements of the latest edition, as amended, of the "Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing of the Underwriters Laboratories Inc." EMT may only be used where specifically indicated. In no case will EMT be permitted in spaces other than hung ceilings and dry wall partitions.
- F. **FLEXIBLE METALLIC CONDUIT (FMC):** Shall mean a conduit made through the coiling of a self interlocking ribbed strip of aluminum or steel, forming a hollow tube through which wires can be pulled. For final connections to motors and motorized equipment, not more than a 4' - 0" length of flexible conduit may be used. For watertight installations, this conduit shall be of a watertight type, attached with watertight glands or fittings for final connections from outlet box to recessed lighting fixtures and in locations only where specifically permitted by the Specifications or Contract Drawings.

## 1.5 PROCEDURE FOR ELECTRICAL APPROVAL:

This Sub-Section sets forth General Electrical information, as well as required approvals for all electrical work required for the Project, including ancillary electrical work which may be included in the work for other than the Contract for Electrical Work.

- A. **ELECTRIC SERVICE:** The electric service supply is subject to commercial and operating variation of the utility company. Proper provision shall be made to have all apparatus operate normally under these conditions.
- B. **ACCEPTANCE:** Acceptance and approval of the work will be contingent upon the inspection and test of the installation by the City regulatory agency.
- C. **TESTS:** The Electrical Contractor shall notify the Commissioner when the Electrical Contractor has completed the work and is ready to have it inspected and tested. Upon completion of the work tests shall be made as required by the Commissioner of all electrical materials, electrical and associated mechanical equipment, and of appliances installed hereunder. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish all labor and material for such tests. Should the tests show that any of the material, appliances or workmanship is not first class or not in compliance with the Contract, the Electrical Contractor on written notice shall remove and promptly replace them with other materials in conformity with the Contract.
- D. **CERTIFICATE OF THE BUREAU OF ELECTRICAL CONTROL, OF THE DEPARTMENT OF BUILDINGS (B.E.C.):** The Electrical Contractor must file prior to requesting a substantial completion inspection a Certificate of Inspection issued by B.E.C. On completion of the work the Electrical Contractor shall obtain certificates of inspection, approval, acceptance and compliance from all agencies and/ or



entities having jurisdiction over the work and shall deliver these certificates to the Commissioner in accordance with Section 01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES.

**E. RESPONSIBILITY FOR CARE AND PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT:**

1. Any Contractor furnishing any equipment shall be responsible for the equipment until it has been finally inspected, tested and accepted, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract.
2. After delivery and before and after installation, such Contractor shall protect all equipment against theft, injury or damage from all causes. Such Contractor shall carefully store all equipment received for work, which is not immediately installed. If any apparatus has been subject to possible injury by water, it shall be thoroughly dried out and put through a special dielectric test as directed by the Commissioner, at the expense of such Contractor or replaced by such Contractor without additional cost to the City.

**F. UNIFORMITY OF EQUIPMENT:** Any two (2) or more pieces of equipment, apparatus or materials of the same kind, type or classification which are intended to be used for identical types of service, shall be made by the same manufacturer.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS:**

**A. CONTRACTOR'S ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS AND SAMPLES FOR APPROVAL:**

1. The Electrical Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner for approval, in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, complete dimensional drawings of all equipment, wiring diagrams, motor test data, details of control, installation layouts showing all details and locations and including all schedules, and descriptions and supplementary data to comprise complete working drawings and instructions for the performance of the work. A description of the operation of the equipment and controls shall be included. A letter, in triplicate, shall accompany each submittal.
2. The Electrical Contractor shall submit in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, duplicate samples of such materials and appliances as may be requested by the Commissioner for approval. These samples shall be properly tagged for identification and submitted for examination and test. After the samples are approved, one (1) sample will be returned to the Contractor and the other sample will be filed in the office of the Commissioner's representative for inspection use. After the Contract is completed, the second set of samples will be returned to the Contractor.

**B. TIMELINESS:** All material shall be submitted in accordance with the submittal schedule in sufficient time for the progress of construction. Failure to promptly submit acceptable samples and dimensional drawings of equipment will not be accepted as grounds for an extension of time. The Commissioner may decline to consider submittals unless all related items are submitted at the same time.

**C. CONTRACTOR'S STATEMENT WITH SUBMITTALS:** Contractor shall submit statement in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

**D. BULLETINS AND INSTRUCTIONS:** The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and deliver to the Commissioner in accordance with Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS and Section 01 77 00, CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES, after acceptance of the work, four (4) complete sets of instructions, technical bulletins and any other printed matter (diagrams, prints, or drawings) required to provide complete information for the proper operation, maintenance and repair of the equipment and the ordering of spare parts.



## PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART III – EXECUTION

### 3.1 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION PROCEDURES:

This Sub-Section sets forth the General Installation Procedure that shall apply to all electrical work and electrical equipment appearing in the Contracts.

(Refer to Sub-Section 1.4 DEFINITIONS for terms used in this section)

- A. **INTENT OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS:** The Drawings and Specifications are to be interpreted as a means of conveying the scope and intent of the work without giving every minor electrical detail. It is intended, nevertheless, that each Contractor shall provide whatever labor and materials are found necessary, within the scope of its Contract, for the successful operation of the installation. Specific details of individual installations are to be finally decided upon when the Contractor submits Working or Shop Drawings for approval to DDC. Whenever there are two (2) or more methods to complete project work within the Contract scope, the Commissioner reserves the right to choose that method which, in the Commissioner's opinion, will afford the most satisfactory performance, lasting qualities, and accessibility for repairs, even though this selection is the most costly.
- B. **SCHEMATIC PLANS – APPROXIMATE LOCATIONS:** Conduits and wiring are shown on the plans for diagrammatic purposes only. Therefore, conduit layouts may not necessarily give the actual physical route of the conduits. The Contractor who installs a conduit system will also be required, as part of the work, to furnish and install all hangers and pull-boxes, including any special pull-boxes found necessary to overcome interferences, and to facilitate the pulling of electrical cables. Similarly, the locations of equipment, appliances, outlets and other items shown on Contract Drawings are only approximate and are to be definitively established when equipment Shop Drawings are submitted and approved by DDC during construction.
- C. **SLEEVES:** required for conduits passing through walls or floors, shall be furnished and set by the Contractor installing the conduits. Sleeves in waterproofed floors shall be provided with flashing extending 12 inches in all directions from sleeve and secured to waterproofing. Flashing shall be turned down into space between pipe and sleeve and caulked watertight. Flashing shall be 20 oz. cold rolled copper. Sleeves shall be supplied with welded flanges similar to those supplied by the Plumbing Contractor and shall extend one (1) inch above finished floor.
- D. **COORDINATION:** Each Contractor shall keep in close touch with the construction progress and obtain the necessary information for the accurate placement of its work in ample time before project construction operations obstruct its work. Each Contractor is to consult all other Contract Drawings, as well as approved equipment Shop Drawings on file in the Resident Engineer's Field Office. This will aid in avoiding interferences, omissions and errors in the electrical installation.
- E. **RESTORATION:** If drilling or cutting is done on finished surfaces of equipment or the structure, any marring of the surface shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor who caused the damage. Each Contractor shall be held responsible for corrective restoration due to its cutting or drilling, and for any damage to the project or its contents caused by the Contractor or the Contractor's workers. Any Contractor who pierces waterproofing because of the installation of their work shall, at their own expense, restore the waterproofing to the satisfaction of the Commissioner.
- F. **ELECTRICAL WORK AT SITE:** Any Contractor who is required to furnish equipment consisting of a number of related electrical devices or appliances, mounted in a single enclosure, or on a common base,



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

shall furnish this unit complete with internal wiring, connections, terminal boxes with copper connectors and/or lugs and ample electrical leads, ready for connection and operation. The cost of any wiring, re-wiring or other work required to be done on this unit in the field, shall be borne by the Contractor who furnished the unit, without additional cost to the City.

- G. **COOPERATION AMONG CONTRACTORS:** Whenever an electrically operated unit or system involves the combined work of several Contractors for its installation and successful operation, each Contractor shall exercise the utmost diligence in cooperating with others to produce a complete, harmonious installation.
- H. **WORK BY CONTRACTORS FURNISHING ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:** Any Contractor who furnishes an electrically operated or motorized unit of equipment shall install same and, as part of its Contract, perform the following work in connection therewith:
1. **FOUNDATIONS:** Unless otherwise specified or indicated, the Contractor furnishing electrically operated equipment shall also furnish and install approved foundations for same. Special foundations, if required, will be described in the detailed Specification and/or in the Drawings.
    - a. **MATERIAL -** All foundations, unless required otherwise, shall rest on a structural slab and shall be of poured concrete, of a mixture specified for reinforced concrete. Foundations shall present a neat, smooth appearance without voids, sharp corners or edges.
    - b. **DIMENSIONS:** Foundation dimensions, height above floor, methods of setting, aligning and anchoring of equipment shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of equipment and approved by the Commissioner. The minimum height of foundations above finished floor shall be four (4) inches and foundations shall extend at least six (6) inches at all sides beyond the base plates of equipment.
  2. At least one (1) inch of grout shall be applied under the equipment base plate after placement and alignment of the equipment.
  3. **ITEMS:** Anchor plates, bolts, sleeves, nuts and washers and other necessary items for proper installation of equipment shall be provided. The Contractor shall also furnish and set required templates to locate accurately the positions of the hold down bolts.
  4. **VIBRATION ISOLATION:** If specifically required in the detailed Specifications for a particular unit, vibration isolators shall be provided for rotating equipment.
  5. **SUPPORTS:** If any motorized equipment is required to be mounted overhead or off a wall, the Contractor supplying the unit shall furnish and install a suitable platform, bracket or shelf, whichever is appropriate or specified, and mount the equipment thereon. This support shall be constructed of Galvanized steel members, plates, etc., and the whole securely fastened to the structure or to anchors previously embedded in the wall or slab. In case of excessive vibration transmitted to structure, isolating pads or other devices shall be installed. The Contractor shall apply one (1) coat of approved Galvanized primer paint to the support and one (1) additional coat of approved paint in the field.
  6. **ASSOCIATED EQUIPMENT:** The Contractor who furnishes a motorized or electrically operated unit of equipment shall also furnish all associated motor starters, disconnect means, relays, control devices, lamps, or other devices, necessary for the successful functioning of the unit.
  7. **POINT OF DELIVERY:** Any item specified to be installed by the Contractor for Electrical Work and delivered to the site that cannot be hand carried (due to bulk, weight or timeliness) to the location of its installation is to be delivered and set in place, leveled and secured by the Contractor furnishing the equipment. Such delivery shall be to the location where it is to be installed by the Contractor for Electrical Work.
  8. **CONTROL AND INTERLOCK WIRING:**



- a. General Construction Work and Plumbing Work.
    - (1) All control wiring associated with doors and door hardware is to be furnished and installed, unless otherwise indicated, by the Contractor furnishing the doors. Power for the door operation and for its controls shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor for Electrical Work.
    - (2) All other control wiring associated with equipment furnished by either the Contractor for General Construction Work or the Contractor for Plumbing Work is to be furnished and installed by the Contractor for Electrical Work.
  - b. Contractor for Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning Work
    - (1) The furnishing and installing of all control devices and all control and interlock wiring for equipment furnished under the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning Contract shall be by that Contractor, including any power required for any control device.
    - (2) The Contractor for Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning Work shall deliver to the Contractor for Electrical Work all starters and disconnect switches specified to be furnished under the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning Contract. The Contractor for Electrical Work is to install the starters and disconnect switches, and furnish and install all power wiring and make connections between the starter, disconnect switch and motor or equipment being served. The motor or equipment is to be mounted by the Contractor furnishing the motor.
9. **INSTALLATION OF BURNER:** The Contractor who furnishes and installs the gas/oil-fired boiler/furnace shall also include as part of its Contract, the work of furnishing, installing and connecting all equipment, controls with necessary conduits and wiring, to a service point provided by the Contractor for Electrical Work. Unless detailed otherwise in the Specifications, the Contractor for Electrical Work shall furnish power from the power source to a junction box furnished and installed by the Contractor for the Electrical Work and located near the boiler/furnace control panel. The Contractor for Electrical Work shall also furnish and install an empty conduit and a junction box to be located at a remote location (outside of the boiler/furnace room) for an emergency shut-off switch. The shut-off switch and all other conduit and wire shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor furnishing the boiler/furnace.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.2**

**3.2**

**ELECTRICAL CONDUIT SYSTEM INCLUDING BOXES (PULL, JUNCTION AND OUTLET):**

This Sub-Section sets forth the requirements applying to any Contract requiring the installation of electrical conduits, boxes or fittings. Rigid steel conduit shall be used through out, unless otherwise directed by the Commissioner. Where the word 'conduit', without a modifier such as, rigid steel, EMT, etc., is specified to be used, it shall be interpreted to mean, rigid steel, heavy wall, threaded conduit.

(Refer to Sub-Section 1.4 DEFINITIONS for terms used in this section)

**A. INSTALLATIONS AND APPLICATIONS:**

1. Unless otherwise specified or indicated on the Contract Drawings, conduit runs shall be installed concealed in finished spaces.
2. **CONDUIT SIZES:** The sizes of conduit shall be as indicated on the Contract Drawings. Wherever conduit sizes are not indicated, the conduit shall meet the requirements of the New York City Electrical Code to accommodate the conductors to be installed therein.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

3. Conduits shall be reamed smooth after cutting. No running threads will be permitted. Universal type couplings shall be used where required. Conduit joints shall be screwed up to butt. Empty conduits after installation shall have all open ends temporarily plugged to prevent the entrance of water or other foreign matter.
4. Conduits being installed in concrete or masonry shall be securely held in place by the Contractor installing them during pouring and construction operations. A group of conduits terminating together shall be held in place by a template.
5. **UNDERGROUND STEEL CONDUITS:** Unless otherwise specified, all underground steel conduits in contact with earth shall be encased by the Contractor who installs them, in a covering of not less than two (2) inches of an approved concrete mixture. Concrete mix shall be one (1) part cement to four and one-half (4 ½) parts of fine and coarse aggregate.
6. **EXCAVATION RESTORATION PERMITS:** The Contractor installing underground conduits, duct banks or manholes shall perform as part of its contract the work of cutting pavement, excavation shoring, keeping trenches or holes pumped dry, backfilling, restoration of surfaces to original condition and removal of excess earth and rubbish from premises. During the work, the Contractor shall provide adequate crossovers, protective barriers, lamps, flags, etc., to safeguard traffic and the public. When the work is in a public highway or street, the Contractor shall secure and pay for all necessary permits and inspection fees and pay the cost of repaving.
7. **EXPOSED CONDUIT SUPPORTS:** Exposed conduit shall be supported by Galvanized hangers with necessary inserts, beam clamps of approved design or attached to walls or ceilings by expansion bolts. Exposed conduits shall be supported or fastened at intervals not more than five (5) feet.
8. Exposed conduit shall be installed parallel or at right angles to ceiling, walls and partitions. Where direction changes of exposed conduit cannot be made with neat bends, such as required around beams or columns, conduit type fitting shall be used.
9. The conduit shall be installed with an approved expansion joint:
  - a. Wherever the conduit crosses a building expansion joint (the Contractor responsible for furnishing and installing the conduit will be held responsible for determining where the building expansion joints are located).
  - b. Every 200 feet, when in straight runs of 200 feet or longer.
10. Conduit may only enter and leave a floating slab in the vertical direction, and then only in an approved manner. Horizontal entries into floating slabs are not permitted.
11. Conduit installed in pipe shafts shall be properly supported to carry the total weight of the raceway system complete with cable. In addition at least one (1) horizontal brace per 10 ft. section shall be provided to assure stability of the raceway system.
12. **BUSHINGS AND LOCKNUTS:** Approved bushings and locknuts shall be used wherever conduits enter outlet boxes, switch boxes, pull boxes, panel board cabinets, etc.
13. **CONDUIT BENDS:** shall be made without kinking conduit or appreciably reducing the internal diameter. All bends in conduit of two (2) inch in diameter or larger shall be made with an hydraulic or power pipe bender. The radius of the inner edge of any bend shall not be less than six (6) times the internal diameter of the conduit where rubber covered conductors are to be installed, and not less than 10 times the internal diameter of the conduit where lead covered conductors are to be used. Long gradual sweeps will be required, rather than sharp bends, when changes of direction are necessary.



14. EMPTY CONDUITS

- a. **TESTS:** All conduits and ducts required to be installed and left empty shall be tested for clear bore and correct installation by the Contractor who installed them using a ball mandrel and a brush and snake before the installation will be accepted. The ball shall be turned to approximately 85% of the internal diameter of the raceway to be tested. Two (2) short wire brushes shall be included in the mandrel assembly. Snaking of conduits, ducts, etc., shall be performed by the Contractor in the presence of the Resident Engineer. Any conduits or ducts which reject the mandrel shall be cleared at once with the Contractor bearing all costs, such as chopping concrete, to replace the defective conduit and restore the surface to its original condition.
- b. **TAGS:** Numbers or letters shall be assigned to the various conduit runs, and as they test clear they shall be identified by a fiber tag not less than 1- $\frac{1}{4}$  inch width, attached by means of a nylon cord. All conduit terminations in panel, splice or pull boxes as well as those out of the floor or ceiling shall be tagged.
- c. **TEST RECORDS:** As the conduit runs clear, a record shall be kept under the heading of "Empty Conduit Tested, Left Clear, Tagged and Capped" showing conduit designation, diameter, location, date tested and by whom. When complete, this record shall be signed by the Resident Engineer and submitted in triplicate for approval. This record shall be entered on the Contract Record Drawings under Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS.
- d. **CAPPING:** All empty conduit and duct openings, after test, shall be capped or plugged by the Contractor who installed them as directed.
- e. **DRAG LINES:** A drag line shall be left in all empty conduit.

B. BOXES:

1. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and erect all pull boxes indicated on the plans or where required. Sides, top and bottom of pull boxes shall be Galvanized coated and shall be built of No. 12 USSG steel reinforced at corners by substantial angle irons and riveted or welded to plates. Bottom or side of pull boxes shall be removable and held in place by corrosion resistant machine screws. Pull boxes in damp locations shall have threaded hubs and gaskets and be NEMA 4X. All pull boxes shall be suspended from ceiling or walls in the most substantial manner.
2. In centering outlets, the Electrical Contractor is cautioned to allow for overhead pipes, ducts and other obstructions, and for variations in arrangement and thickness of fireproofing, soundproofing and plastering. Precaution should be exercised regarding the location of window and door trims, paneling, etc. Mistakes resulting from failure to exercise precaution must be corrected by the Contractor at no additional cost to the City. Outlets in hung ceilings shall be supported from the black iron or structure.
3. The exact location of all outlets in finished rooms shall be as directed. When the interior finish has been applied, the Electrical Contractor shall make any necessary adjustment of its work to properly center the outlets. All outlet boxes for local switches near doors shall be located at the strike side of doors as finally hung, whether so indicated on the drawings or not.
4. Exposed wall outlet boxes shall be erected neatly and tight against the walls and securely anchored to same.
5. All wall outlets of each type shall be set accurately at the same level on each floor, except where otherwise specified or directed. Where special conditions occur, outlets shall be located as directed.



6. **MOUNTING HEIGHTS:** The following heights are standard heights and are subject to correction due to coordination with Contract Drawings. All such changes must be approved by the Resident Engineer. Heights given are from finished floor to center line of outlet or device on wall or partition, unless otherwise indicated.
- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| a. General Convenience Outlets<br>(mount vertical) | 1'-6"                        |
| b. Clock Outlets                                   | 8'-6" or 1'-6" below ceiling |
| c. Wall Lighting Switches                          | 4'-0"                        |
| d. Motor Controllers                               | 5'-0"                        |
| e. Motor Push-button                               | 4'-2"                        |
| f. Telephone Outlets                               | As Directed                  |
| g. Fire Alarm Bells                                | 8'-6" or 1'-6" below ceiling |
| h. Fire Alarm Stations                             | 4'-0"                        |
| i. Intercom Outlet                                 | 1'-6"                        |
| j. Cooking and Refrigerator Unit                   | As Directed                  |
7. Outlet boxes shall be of approved design and construction; of form and dimensions suited and adapted to its specific location; the kind of fixture to be used and the number and arrangements of conduits, etc., connecting therewith. All ferrous outlet boxes shall meet the requirements for zinc coating as specified under Electrical Conduit Systems.
8. There shall be knockouts opened only for the insertion of conduit. Any outlet boxes with more openings than are necessary for conduit insertion shall be sealed by the Electrical Contractor without additional charge.
9. All outlet boxes and junction boxes for exposed work shall be galvanized cast iron or cast aluminum with threaded openings. Outlet boxes for exposed inside work in damp locations shall be galvanized cast iron or cast aluminum with threaded hubs and neoprene gaskets.
10. Junction boxes shall not be less than 4 11/16" square and shall be equipped with zinc coated plates. Where plates are exposed they shall be finished to match the room decor.
11. **FIXTURE SUPPORTS:** Outlet boxes supporting lighting fixtures shall be equipped with fixture studs held by approved galvanized stove bolts or integral with the box. Cast iron or malleable boxes shall have four (4) tapped holes for mounting required cover or fixtures.
12. Outlet boxes exposed to the weather or indicated W.P., shall be cast iron or cast aluminum and the covers made watertight with neoprene gaskets. The boxes shall have external lugs for mounting. Drilling of the body of the fitting for mounting will not be permitted. The cover screws shall be appropriate in size, non-corrodible and not less than four (4) in number for each box opening.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.3**

**3.3**

**ELECTRICAL WIRING DEVICES:**

- A. **WALL SWITCHES** shall be of the best specification grade, quiet type, and shall have a rating of 20 Amperes at 277 volts, as manufactured by Bryant, Hubbell or approved equal. The mechanism shall be equipped with arc snuffers. They shall be of the tumbler type, single pole. Switches of the 3-way type shall have a similar rating.
- B. **RECEPTACLES:**



1. **CONVENIENCE OUTLETS:** shall be of the best specification grade, duplex, two-pole, 3-wire, 20 Amperes at 125 volts. It shall have a grounding pole that shall be grounded to the conduit system. Receptacles shall be capable of both back and side wiring and shall have only one (1) grounding screw. Receptacles shall be Hubbell Cat. #5262 or approved equal.
  2. **HEAVY DUTY RECEPTACLE OUTLETS:** shall have the Ampere rating and the number of poles specified on the Contract Drawings and shall be Hubbell, Russell-Stoll, Bryant, AH & H or approved equal. Each outlet shall have a grounding pole, which shall be grounded to the conduit system.
  3. **FLOOR RECEPTACLES:** shall be Russell & Stoll #3040 or approved equal, to fit into floor box previously specified.
  4. **NAMEPLATES:** are required for all receptacles other than 120V.
- C. **CLOCK HANGERS:** Clock outlets for surface type clocks shall be equipped with a supporting hook and recessed faceplate to conceal the electrical cord.
- D. **WATERTIGHT DEVICES:** For installations exposed to weather or in damp locations, the devices shall be in a gasketed, cast iron enclosure.
- E. **PLATES:**
1. Every convenience outlet and switch outlet shall be covered by means of a stainless steel No. 302 - 0.4" antimagnetic plate with an approved finish, unless provided otherwise in the detailed Specifications.
  2. Where two (2) or three (3) switches are grouped together, a single faceplate shall be used. Where more than three (3) switches are located at one (1) point, the faceplates may be made up in multiple units.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4**

**3.4 ELECTRICAL CONDUCTORS AND TERMINATIONS:**

- A. **CONDUCTORS FOR LIGHT AND POWER -** All wire and cable shall be of annealed copper of 98% conductivity. Aluminum wire or cable will not be permitted. The insulation shall be flame retardant, moisture and heat resistant, thermoplastic, type THW or THWN rated for 600 volts at 75 degrees C. for both wet and dry locations. Wires No. 8 or larger shall be stranded. Wires and cables shall also be subject to the requirements of the NYCEC. Cables for incoming service or wire in conduits contiguous with the earth or in concrete or other damp or wet locations shall be synthetic rubber insulated with neoprene jacket, heat and moisture resistant and shall be equal to UL Type USE and rated for 600 volts at 75 degrees C. for both wet and dry locations.
- B. **FIXTURE WIRE:** Lighting fixtures shall be wired with No. 14 gauge wire designated as AWM and rated at 105 degrees C.
- C. **OTHER TYPES:** Cables and wires for interior communication systems are described in applicable detailed Specifications.
- D. **MINIMUM SIZE:** Conductors smaller than No. 12 AWG shall not be used for light or power.
- E. **COLOR CODE:** Wires shall have a phase color code, and multiple conductor cables shall be color coded.
- F. **CABLE DATA:** The Electrical Contractor shall submit for approval the following information for each size and type of cable to be furnished.
1. Manufacture of Cable - Location of Plant.
  2. Minimum insulation resistance at standard test temperature.
  3. Days required for delivery to site of work after order to proceed with manufacture.



- G. ORIGINAL REELS: Cable and wire shall be delivered to the site of the work on original, sealed factory reels.
- H. WIRE INSTALLATION:
1. INSTALL WIRES AFTER PLASTERING - Feeder and branch circuits wiring shall not be installed in conduit before the rough plastering work is completed. No conductors shall be pulled into floor conduits before floor is poured.
  2. CONDUIT SECURED IN PLACE - No conductor shall be pulled into any conduit run before all joints are made up tightly and the entire run rigidly secured in place.
  3. WIRE ENDS - All wires shall be left with sufficiently long ends for proper connection and stowing.
  4. PULLING COMPOUNDS - When required to ease the pulling-in of wires into conduit, only approved compounds as recommended by cable manufacturers shall be used.
  5. PRESSURE CONNECTORS - for wires shall be of the cast copper or forged copper pressure plate type. Connectors shall be O.Z., Burndy, National Electric Products or approved equal.
  6. Splices and feeder taps in the gutters of panel boxes shall be made by means of pressure plate type connectors encased in composition covers as manufactured by O.Z., Burndy, National Electric Products or approved equal.
  7. Splices in branch wiring for sound systems and fire systems, shall be first made mechanically secure, then soldered and taped.
  8. In lieu of soldered splices (except for sound and Fire Systems, which must have soldered splices) the following alternates are acceptable for operating temperatures up to 105 degrees C., for fluorescent fixtures and for the splicing of branch circuit wiring up to No. 8 AWG wire:
    - a. Mechanical splices made with mechanical connectors as manufactured by the Minnesota Manufacturing Company "Scotchlock" or approved equal. Mechanical connectors requiring a special tool (pressure connectors, insulators and locking rings) by Buchanan or approved equal. The tool used for connector application shall be as approved by the connector manufacturer.
    - b. For wire and cable No. 6 AWG and larger for branch circuit wiring the seamless tubular connector will only be accepted. Application of this connector shall be with a tool recommended by the connector manufacturer.
  9. TAGS: All feeders and risers shall be tagged at both ends, and in all pull and junction boxes and gutter spaces through which they pass. Such tags shall be of fiber and have the feeder designation and size stamped thereon.
  10. BRANCH CIRCUIT WIRING:
    - a. The Contractor installing branch circuit wiring shall test the work for correct connections and leave all loop splices in the fixture outlet boxes properly spliced and taped. The Contractor shall provide wire ends long enough for convenient connection to device.
    - b. NEUTRALS: No common neutrals shall be used except for lighting branch circuits. Each neutral wire shall be terminated separately on a neutral busbar in the panelboard. No common neutrals will be permitted for convenience receptacle branch circuits.
- I. TERMINATIONS
1. LUGS: All lugs for all devices and all cable terminations shall be copper. AL/CU rated lugs will not be permitted. The only exception to this requirement is when the particular device is not manufactured with copper lugs by any manufacturer. Lugs for No. 6 AWG cable and larger shall be



cast copper or forged copper pressure plate type. Lugs for 1/0 and larger shall be fastened with two (2) bolts.

2. All lugs shall be of the proper size to accept the cable connected to them. Any Contractor furnishing a device containing lugs is to coordinate with the Electrical Work Contract Documents to insure that the device terminations are adequate for the wire or cable (whose size may be larger than expected due to voltage drop considerations) connected to the device. This requirement applies to both the Electrical Contractor whose branch circuit protector must have lugs of the proper size, as well as to the Contractor who furnishes the device who may have to increase the size of that particular device.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.5**

**3.5**

**CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE DEVICES:**

This Section sets forth the circuit protective devices such as circuit breakers and safety switches, used in connection with Motor Control Equipment, Distribution Centers, Panelboards and Service Entrance.

**A. CIRCUIT BREAKERS:**

1. **CIRCUIT BREAKERS:** shall be operable in any position and shall be of the quick-make, quick-break type on manual operation. The handle shall be trip free, preventing contacts from being held in closed position against abnormal overloads or short circuits. Positive visual indication of automatic tripped position of breaker shall be provided, in addition to the "On" and "Off" indication. All circuit breakers shall be of the bolted type.
2. **TRIP RATING:** Circuit breakers shall be provided with the required number of trip elements, calibrated at 40 degrees C., ambient temperature, in accordance with wire sizes or motor currents as shown on Contract Drawings or indicated in the Specifications.
3. **POLE BARRIER:** Multipole pole breakers shall be designed to break all poles simultaneously. They shall be provided with barriers between poles and arc suppressing devices.
4. **ELEMENTS:** Multipole circuit breakers shall have frames of not less than a 100 Ampere rating. Multipole circuit breakers for 480 volts AC operation shall have a NEMA interrupting rating of 18,000 Amperes, unless a higher rating is specified in the Specific Requirements or indicated on the Contract Drawings.
5. For circuit breakers with frame size up to and including 225 Amperes, the breakers may be provided with non-interchangeable trip elements. For frame ratings above 225 Amperes, the breakers shall be provided with interchangeable trip elements, which can be replaced readily.
6. Single pole circuit breakers for branch circuits shall have a frame size of no less than 100 Amperes, and shall be rated at 125 volt A.C. with a NEMA interrupting rating of 10,000 Amperes, unless a higher rating is specified in the Specifications or indicated on the Contract Drawings.
7. **INVERSE TIME ACTION:** The circuit breakers shall be dual element type, one (1) element with time limit characteristics, so that tripping will be prevented on momentary overloads, but will occur before dangerous values are reached and the other with instantaneous trip action. Inverse time delay action shall be effective between a minimum tripping point of 125% of rating of breaker and an instantaneous tripping point between 600% and 700% of rated current.
8. **CONSTANCY OF CALIBRATION:** The tripping elements shall insure constant calibration and be capable of withstanding excessive short circuit conditions without injury.
9. **CONTACTS:** shall be non-welding under operating conditions and of the silver to silver type.



10. TEMPERATURE RISE: Current carrying parts, except thermal elements, shall not rise in temperature in excess of 30 degrees C. while carrying rated current at rated frequency.
11. NUMBERING: Each circuit breaker shall be distinctly numbered when installed in a group with other breakers. The calibration of trip element shall be indicated on each breaker.

**B. SAFETY SWITCHES:**

NEMA TYPE HD: When safety switches are permitted to be used for service entrance, motor disconnecting means or to control other types of electrical equipment, they shall be of the type HD of a rating not less than 30 Amperes. Enclosures shall be provided with means for locking. For ratings above 60 Amperes terminals shall have double studs.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.6**

**3.6**

**DISTRIBUTION CENTERS:**

This Section sets forth the construction and installation procedure for Switchboards, Panelboards and Cabinets.

- A. PANELBOARDS-GENERAL TYPE: The panelboards shall be of the automatic circuit breaker type with individual breakers for each circuit, removable without disturbing the other units. Circuit breakers shall be in accordance with the requirements outlined under "Circuit Protective Devices."
- B. NUMBER AND RATING OF CIRCUIT BREAKERS: The Contract Drawings show a layout of each panel, giving the number, frame, size and trip setting of circuit breakers and number of branch circuits and spare breakers. Each branch circuit shall be distinctly numbered.
- C. BUS-BAR CONSTRUCTION AND SUPPORT: Panel Boards shall be of the dead front type and shall have bus bars and branch circuits designed to suit the system and voltage. Current carrying parts, exclusive of circuit breakers shall be copper and based on a maximum density of 1,000 Amperes per square inch. Bus bars for the main switchboard shall be designed for the frame rating of the Service Breaker. Bus bars shall run up the center of the panel, unless otherwise indicated, and shall have connected thereto the various branch circuits. Unless otherwise specified, bus bars for each panelboard shall be equipped with main lugs only and capacity as required on Contract Drawings. Where main protection is required, automatic circuit breakers shall be used. A neutral bus of at least the same capacity as a live bus bar shall be provided for the connection of all neutral conductors. Each terminal shall be identified. All current carrying parts, exclusive of circuit breakers, shall be of copper with a minimum number of joints. The bus bar structure shall be a self supporting unit, firmly fastened to a 1/2 inch plastic board, extending the full length and width of assembly which shall serve to insulate the bus structure from the back of panel box. Other methods affording equally effective bus structure support and insulation will be given consideration. An insulating barrier shall separate neutral bus from other parts of panel.
- D. CIRCUIT BREAKER ASSEMBLY: The entire circuit breaker and bus bar assembly shall be mounted on an adjustable metal base or pan and secured to the back of panel box. The panel shall have edges flanged for rigidity.
- E. PANEL MOUNTING: The panel shall be centered in the panel box to line up with door openings and set level and plumb so that no live parts are exposed with the door open.
- F. PANEL CABINET:
  1. PANEL CABINET INSTALLATION: When installed surface mounted in panel closets they shall be mounted on Kindorf channel.



2. Where cabinets cannot be set entirely flush due to shallow walls or partitions or where cabinet is extra deep, the protruding sides of cabinet shall be trimmed with a metal or hardwood return molding of approved design and fastened to cabinet so as to conceal the intersection between the wall and cabinet.
- G. **NAMEPLATES:** Nameplates where required, shall be made of engraved Lamicoide sheet, or approved equal. Letters and numbers shall be engraved white on a black background (except for Firehouse projects which shall have white letters on a red background). The Electrical Contractor shall submit an engraved sample for approval as to design and style of lettering before proceeding with the manufacture of the nameplate. Nameplates shall be of suitable size and shall also be provided at the top of the switchboard or section thereof and on the trim at the top of all lighting and power panels. Similar nameplates shall also be provided for each distribution circuit breaker giving the breaker number, the number of the feeder, and the name of the equipment fed.
- H. **SHOP DRAWINGS:** showing all details of boxes, panels, etc., shall be submitted for approval.
- I. **DIRECTORIES:** A directory shall be fastened with brass screws and consist of a noncorrosive metal frame with dimensions not less than five (5) inches x eight (8) inches and a transparent window of Plasticile, Plexiglass, Lucite or approved equal that is not less than 1/16 inch thick over cardboard or heavy paper. The directory shall be typewritten and show the number of each circuit, the name of circuit and lighting or equipment supplied. The size of riser feeder shall be as indicated on directory. The dimensions of directory shall be submitted for approval for each size of panel.
- J. **CONSTRUCTION**
1. **FINISH:** Panel boxes, doors and trim for installation in dry locations, shall be zinc coated after fabrication by the hot-dip galvanizing or electroplate process on inside and outside surfaces. In damp locations, panelboards shall be enclosed and gasketed NEMA 3R type. Panelboards located outdoors or exposed to the weather shall be NEMA 3X Type.
  2. **PAINTING:** Panel boxes, doors and trim shall receive a coat of approved priming paint and a second coat of approved paint in the field after installation. Paint shall be applied to the inside and outside of boxes and on both sides of trim. Panel trims and doors shall receive a third or finishing coat on the outside after installation. Approval as to texture and color must be obtained before the final coat is applied. All of the aforementioned painting is to be done by the Contractor who furnishes the boxes and trim. Where panel trims or boxes are installed on walls which are to be painted, the previously mentioned third or finishing coat of paint shall be included in the work of the Contractor who has the Contract for general interior painting.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.7**

**3.7 MOTORS:**

This Section sets forth the general design, construction and performance requirements, which shall apply to all motors furnished in any of the Contracts.

- A. **MOTOR DESIGN:** All motors shall be designed to comply with the New York State Energy Conservation and Construction Code currently in effect and the New York City Energy Conservation Code. In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between such codes the New York City Energy Conservation Code shall prevail. Motors shall have standard NEMA frames and shall have nameplate ratings adequate to meet the specified conditions of operation. Motor performance under variable conditions of voltage and frequency shall be within the limits set in NEMA standards, unless modified in the Specifications. Motors shall be expressly designed for the hazard duty load, voltage and frequency as specified in the Contract.



All motor windings shall be copper. All motors intended to operate on a 208 volt system shall be designed and rated for 200 volts.

- B. STANDARDS OF COMPARISON:** In the absence of specific motor specifications, in general, the best standard products of the leading motor manufacturers shall be considered as a standard for comparison. The requirements of the NEMA standards for motors and generators shall be deemed to contain the minimum requirements of performance and design.
- C. OBJECTIONABLE NOISES:** Objectionable noises will not be tolerated and exceptionally quiet motors may be required for certain specified locations. Noise control tests as per the New York City Construction Codes may be performed as directed by the Commissioner. Such motors shall bear a nameplate lettered "Quiet Motor." Springs and slip rings shall be of approved non-ferrous material.
- D. BEARINGS:**
1. Bearings, unless specified otherwise, shall be of the ball or roller type. Motors one (1) horsepower and larger that are equipped with ball roller bearings shall also have lubrication of the pressure-relief greasing type. Each Contractor who furnishes four (4) or more such motors shall also furnish, as part of its Contract, a pressure grease gun of rugged design, of approximately 10 ounce capacity, complete with necessary adapters. The Contractor shall also provide 10 pounds of approved gun grease.
  2. For any particular unit where sleeve bearings are deemed desirable, permission for their use may be granted by the Commissioner. Motors one (1) horsepower and larger that are equipped with sleeve type bearings shall in addition to having protected accessible fittings for oiling be provided with visible means for determining normal oil level. Lubrication shall be positive, automatic and continuous.
- E. MOTOR TERMINALS AND BOXES:** Each motor shall be furnished with flexible leads of sufficient length to extend for a distance of not less than three (3) inches beyond the face of the conduit terminal box. This box shall be furnished of ample size to make and house motor connections. These requirements shall be met irrespective of any other standards or practices. Size of cable terminals and conduit terminal box holes shall be subject to approval. For motors five (5) horsepower or larger, each terminal shall come with two (2) cast or forged copper pressure type connectors with bolts, nuts and washers. For motors of smaller ratings, connectors of other acceptable types may be furnished. For installations exposed to the weather or moist locations, terminal boxes shall be of cast iron with threaded hubs and gasketed covers. Cover screws shall be of non-corrosive material.
- F. MOTOR TEMPERATURE RISES:** The motor nameplate temperature rises for the various types of motor enclosures shall be as listed below:
- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| 1. Open Frame                               | 40 degrees C. |
| 2. Totally enclosed and enclosed fan cooled | 55 degrees C. |
| 3. Explosion proof and submersible          | 55 degrees C. |
| 4. Partially enclosed and drip proof        | 40 degrees C. |
- The temperature of the various parts of a motor shall meet the requirements of NEMA standards for the size and type of the motors. Tests for heating shall be made by loading the motor to its rated horsepower and keeping it so loaded for the rated time interval or until the temperature becomes constant.
- G. SPECIAL CODE INSTALLATIONS:** Electrical installations covered by special publications of NBFU and by special City rulings and regulations shall comply in design and safety features with such applicable codes, regulations and rulings, and shall be furnished and installed complete with all accessories and safety devices as therein specified.



- H. MOTORS ON LIGHTING PANELS: The largest A.C. motor permitted on branch circuits of lighting panels shall not exceed 1/4 horsepower.
- I. MOTORS RATED: ½ horsepower and larger shall be polyphase.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.8**

**3.8 MOTOR CONTROL EQUIPMENT:**

This Section sets forth the requirements for motor controllers and associated devices. Such requirements are applicable to all Contracts under which motor control equipment is furnished or installed.

- A. MANUFACTURER: All control equipment furnished under the Contract shall be the product of a single manufacturer. Exceptions to this rule may be granted in the case of controllers for fractional horsepower motors driving special equipment, the various units of which have been engineered to obtain specific performance.
- B. CONTROL ITEMS REQUIRED: The Contractor who furnishes a motor shall also furnish therewith complete disconnecting, starting and control equipment as required by the detailed Specifications, the various code authorities and for the successful operation of the driven equipment. These items include circuit breaker, magnetic starter with overload protection and low voltage release or protection, push button stations, pilot lights and alarms, float, pressure, temperature and limit switches, load transfer switches, devices for manual operation and speed controllers, etc. The Contractor shall furnish as many of these items as are required for the successful operation of the driven unit.
  - 1. Where a motor is to be located out of sight of the controller, the Contractor who furnishes the motor shall furnish an approved disconnecting means to be mounted near motor.

**C. TYPES OF STARTERS:**

- 1. SQUIRREL CAGE: A.C. motors of the squirrel cage type, rated from one (1) to 30 horsepower, shall have magnetic across the line starters; motors rated above 30 horsepower shall be furnished with reduced voltage (autotransformer type) starter or part winding start with time delay to reduce inrush current. Size of starters shall be based on 200V. operation.
- 2. SLIP RING: A.C. Motors of the slip-ring type shall be furnished with primary across the line starters interlocked with secondary starting and regulating equipment. The interlocking feature shall prevent starting of the motor when the secondary controller is off the initial starting point.
- 3. MAGNETIC: For fractional horsepower motors, magnetic type starters are not required unless the particular method of controlling the driven equipment makes them necessary. Where individual single phase fractional horsepower motors or the sum of fractional horsepower motors controlled by an automatic device are ½ horsepower or more, magnetic starters and circuit breakers shall be used. Single phase A.C. motors smaller than ½ horsepower or three-phase A.C. motors smaller than one (1) horsepower where manual control is specified may be furnished with starters of toggle switch or push button type with inbuilt thermal protection. No additional disconnecting means is required to be furnished with this type of starter. This type of starter may also be used in series with automatic control devices such as thermostats, float and pressure switches, provided the individual motor or the sum of fractional horsepower motors is less than ½ horsepower. Means for manual operation shall be provided.

- D. DISCONNECTING BREAKER: All motor starters, unless otherwise specified, shall be provided with a disconnecting means in the form of a circuit breaker of the type specified under Sub-Section 3.5 CIRCUIT



PROTECTIVE DEVICES of the General Conditions. This disconnecting means shall be contained in the same housing with the starter and shall be operable from outside. Means shall be provided for locking the handle of the circuit breaker in the "OFF" position if it is desired to take the equipment out of service and prevent unauthorized starting.

- E. CONTROL CABINET: DRY LOCATIONS - All starters shall be furnished with general purpose, NEMA Type 1, sheet metal enclosures with hinged covers and baked enamel finish.
- F. CONTROL CABINET – WATERTIGHT: In wet locations, cast iron watertight enclosures with threaded hubs, galvanized and gasketed hinged covers shall be provided.
- G.
  - 1. PANELS: Motor control devices and appliances shall be mounted on approved insulating slabs with all wiring and connections made on the back of the slabs.
  - 2. WIRING AND TERMINALS: Wiring connections for currents of 100 Amperes or less may be made with copper wire or cable with special flameproof insulating coverings. Such wires shall be installed in a neat workmanlike manner, flat against the slab, and held in place by clips. Connections shall be made with pressure connectors for No. 8 AWG and larger wires, and with grommets for small stranded wires. Except for incoming and outgoing main leads, all connections shall terminate on approved connector blocks, which may be installed on the face of the slab. For small, across the line starters, the above requirements may be modified if satisfactory connections are provided.
  - 3. COPPER BUS: For currents exceeding 100 Amperes, copper bus shall be used in place of wires. The bus shall be constructed of copper rods, tubing or flat strap, bent and shaped properly and securely attached to the slab in a neat and workmanlike manner. The cross section of copper shall provide sufficient areas to keep current density at not more than 1,000 Amperes per square inch.
- H. COOPERATION: The Contractors who furnish electrically operated equipment shall give to the Electrical Contractor full information relative to sizes and locations of apparatus furnished by them which require electrical connections.  
  
Equipment being installed by the Electrical Contractor shall be delivered to the Electrical Contractor by other Contractors in proper time and sequence so that the Electrical Contractor shall be able to meet its Project Schedule.
- I. SPARE PARTS:
  - 1. FURNISH: Each Contractor shall furnish the following spare parts pertaining to equipment furnished by each Contractor.
    - One (1) set of contact fingers and springs and thermal elements for each three (3) (or fraction) of each size of magnetic contactor starter.
    - One (1) holding coil for each three (3) (or fraction) of each size of magnetic contactor starter.
  - 2. WRAPPER MARKING: All parts shall be delivered to the Resident Engineer neatly wrapped and boxed and plainly tagged and marked for identification and reordering.

### 3.9

#### SCHEDULE OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:

Schedule D, which is set forth in the Addendum, lists requirements for electrical motor equipment that may be included in one or more of the Specifications for the separate contracts for the Project. SCHEDULE D delineates the responsibilities of each separate contractor for electrical motor control equipment. In the event of any conflict between the Specifications and SCHEDULE D, SCHEDULE D shall take precedence; provided, however, in the event of an omission from SCHEDULE D (i.e., SCHEDULE D omits either a reference to or information concerning electrical motor equipment which is set forth in the Specifications), such omission from SCHEDULE D shall have no effect and the



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Contractor's obligation with respect to the electrical motor control equipment, as set forth in the Specifications, shall remain in full force and effect.

**END OF SECTION 01 35 06**



**SECTION 01 35 26**  
**SAFETY REQUIREMENTS PROCEDURES**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract]
- B. Each Contractor shall comply with the requirements of "*The City of New York Department of Design and Construction Safety Requirements*". This document is included in the Information for Bidders.

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and general procedural requirements for Safety and Health Requirements, including:
  - 1. Definitions
  - 2. Required Safety Meeting
  - 3. Compliance with Regulations
  - 4. Submittals
  - 5. Personnel Protective Equipment
  - 6. Hazardous Materials
  - 7. Emergency Suspension of Work
  - 8. Protection of Personnel
  - 9. Environmental Protection

**1.3 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

**1.4 REQUIRED SAFETY MEETINGS:**

- A. Prior to commencing construction, the Resident Engineer will schedule and hold a preconstruction kick-off meeting either at DDC's main office or at the Project site with representatives of each Contractor, including the principal on-site project representative and one or more safety representatives, Commissioner's designated representatives and other concerned parties for the purpose of reviewing the Contract Safety requirements. The Contractor's safety requirements shall be reviewed, and implementation of safety provisions pertinent to the Work shall be discussed.
- B. The GC Contractor is responsible to conduct weekly documented jobsite safety meetings, given to all jobsite personnel, including all Contractors and their subcontractors on the project, with the purpose of discussing safety topics and job specific requirements at the DDC worksite.



**1.5 COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS:**

- A. The Work, including contact with or handling of hazardous materials, disturbance or dismantling of structures containing hazardous materials, and disposal of hazardous materials, shall comply with the applicable requirement for CFR Parts 1910 and 1926, and 40 CFR, Parts 61, 261, 761 and 763.
- B. Work involving disturbance or dismantling of asbestos or asbestos containing materials, demolition of structures containing asbestos and removal of asbestos, shall comply with 40 CFR Part 61, Subparts A and M, and 40 CFR Part 763, as applicable.
- C. Work shall additionally comply with all applicable federal, state and local safety and health regulations.
- D. In case of a conflict between applicable regulations, the more stringent requirements shall apply.
- E. All workers working on the DDC project site are required by NYC Local Law 41 to complete the OSHA 10 –hour training course.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Each Contractor shall submit, to the Resident Engineer, copies of the Safety Program, Site Safety Plan and other required documentation in accordance with the "*New York City Department of Design and Construction Safety Requirements.*"
- B. Permits: If hazardous materials are disposed of off-site submit copies of shipping manifests and permits from applicable federal, state or local authorities and disposal facilities, and submit certificates that the material has been disposed of in accordance with regulations to the Resident Engineer.
- C. Accident Reporting: Submit a copy of each accident report to the Resident Engineer in accordance with the "*New York City Department of Design and Construction Safety Requirements.*"
- D. All Asbestos and Lead project regulatory notifications are to be submitted to DDC's Bureau of Environmental and Geotechnical Services (BEGS) through the Resident Engineer.
- E. Request for Subcontractor Approval: Any subcontractor performing environmental work shall submit required documentation for approval to perform such work as required by DDC's BEGS.

**PART II – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT:**

- A. Special facilities, devices, equipment and similar items used by each Contractor in execution of the Work shall comply with 29 CFR Part 1910, subpart I, Part 1926, subpart E and other applicable regulations.

**2.2 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS:**

- A. Each Contractor shall bring to the attention of the Commissioner, any material encountered during execution of the Work that the Contractor suspects to be hazardous.
- B. The Commissioner shall determine whether such Contractor shall perform tests to determine if the material is hazardous. A change to the Contract price may be provided, subject to the applicable provisions of the Contract.



- C. If the material is found to be hazardous, the Commissioner may direct such Contractor to remediate the hazard and a change to the Contract price may be provided, subject to the applicable provisions of the Contract.

### **PART III – EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EMERGENCY SUSPENSION OF WORK:**

- A. When a Contractor is notified by the Commissioner of noncompliance with the safety provisions of the Contract, that Contractor shall immediately, unless otherwise instructed, correct the unsafe condition, at no additional cost to the City.
- B. If the Contractor fails to comply promptly, all or part of the Work may be stopped by notice from the Commissioner.
- C. When, in the opinion of the Commissioner, the Contractor has taken satisfactory corrective action, the Commissioner shall provide written notice to the Contractor that work may resume.
- D. The Contractor shall not be allowed any extension of time or compensation for damages in connection with a work stoppage for an unsafe condition.

#### **3.2 PROTECTION OF PERSONNEL:**

- A. Each Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to prevent injury to the public, occupants, or damage to property of others. The public and occupants includes all persons not employed by the Contractor or subcontractor(s).
- B. Whenever practical, the work area shall be fenced, barricaded or otherwise blocked off from the Public or occupants to prevent unauthorized entry into the work area, in compliance with the requirements of Section 01 50 00, TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES AND CONTROLS, and including, without limitation, the following:
  - 1. Provide traffic barricades and traffic control signage where construction activities occur in vehicular areas.
  - 2. Corridors, aisles, stairways, doors and exit ways shall not be obstructed or used in a manner to encroach upon routes of ingress or egress utilized by the public or occupants, or to present an unsafe condition to the public or occupants.
  - 3. Store, position and use equipment, tools, materials, scraps and trash in a manner that does not present a hazard to the public or occupant by accidental shifting, ignition or other hazardous activity.
  - 4. Store and transport refuse and debris in a manner to prevent unsafe and unhealthy conditions for the public and occupants. Cover refuse containers, and remove refuse on a frequent regular basis acceptable to the Resident Engineer. Use tarpaulins or other means to prevent loose transported materials from dropping from trucks or other vehicles.

#### **3.3 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION:**

- A. Dispose of solid, liquid and gaseous contaminants in accordance with local codes, laws, ordinances and regulations.
- B. Comply with applicable federal, state and local noise control laws, ordinances and regulations, including but not limited to 29 CFR 1910.95, 29 CFR 1926.52 and NYC Administrative Code Chapter 28 of Title 15.

**END OF SECTION 01 35 26**



**SECTION 01 35 91  
HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SECTION 01 35 91.**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the historic treatment of Designated Landmark Structures and structures of Landmark/Historical significance, as identified in the Addendum. Specific requirements are indicated in other sections of the project specifications.
- B. This Section includes, without limitation, the following:
1. Storage and protection of existing historic materials.
  2. Temporary protection of historic materials during construction.
  3. General Protection
  4. Protection during use of heat-generating equipment.
  5. Photographic Documentation
  6. NYC Landmarks Preservation Commission Final Approval signoffs.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS: include without limitation the following:**

- A. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
- B. Section 01 32 33 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
- C. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- D. Section 01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
- E. Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- C. **Landmark Structure or Site:** Any building or site which has been designated as a landmark, or any building or site within a landmark district, as designated by the New York City Landmarks Preservation Commission or the New York State Historic Preservation Office.
- D. **Landmark Quality Structure:** Any building which has been determined by the City to be of landmark quality and/or historical significance.
- E. **Preservation:** To apply measures necessary to sustain the existing form, integrity, and materials of a historic property. Work may include preliminary measures to protect and stabilize the property.
- F. **Rehabilitation:** To make possible a compatible use for a property through repair, alterations, and additions while preserving those portions or features that convey its historical, cultural, or architectural values.
- G. **Restoration:** To accurately depict the form, features, and character of a property as it appeared at a particular period of time by means of the removal of features from other periods in its history and the reconstruction of missing features from the restoration period.
- H. **Reconstruction:** To reproduce in the exact form and detail a building, structure, or artifact as it appeared at a specific period in time.
- I. **Stabilize:** To apply measures designed to reestablish a weather-resistant enclosure and the structural reinforcement of an item or portion of the building while maintaining the essential form as it exists at present.
- J. **Protect and Maintain:** To remove deteriorating corrosion, reapply protective coatings, and install protective measures such as temporary guards; to provide the least degree of intervention.
- K. **Replace:** To duplicate and replace entire features with new material in kind. Replacement includes the following conditions:
  - 1. **Duplication:** Includes replacing elements damaged beyond repair or missing. Original material is indicated as the pattern for creating new duplicated elements.
  - 2. **Replacement with New Materials:** Includes replacement with new material when original material is not available as patterns for creating new duplicated elements.
- L. **Replacement with Substitute Materials:** Includes replacement with compatible substitute materials. Substitute materials are not allowed, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. **Remove:** To detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- N. **Remove and Salvage:** To detach items from existing construction and deliver them to the City ready for reuse.
- O. **Remove and Reinstall:** To detach items from existing construction, repair and clean them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
- P. **Existing to Remain or Retain:** Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- Q. **Material in Kind:** Material that matches existing materials, as much as possible, in species, cut, color, grain, and finish.



**1.5 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Historic Treatment Program: The Contractor responsible for Historic Treatment Work shall submit a written plan for each phase or process, including protection of surrounding materials during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods, and equipment to be used for each phase of work.
- B. Alternative Methods and Materials: If alternative methods and materials to those indicated are proposed for any phase of work, submit for Commissioner's approval a written description including evidence of successful use on other comparable projects, and program of testing to demonstrate effectiveness for use on this Project.
- C. Qualification Data: For historic treatment specialists as specified and required by individual sections of the project specifications.
- D. Photographs for Designated Landmark Structures: Submit photographs in accordance with Section 01 32 33, PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION and as described in this section.
- E. Record Documents: Include modifications to manufacturer's written instructions and procedures, as documented in the historic treatment preconstruction conference and as the Work progresses.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. Special Experience Requirements: Special Experience Requirements may apply to the firm that will provide Historic Treatment Services. If applicable, such Special Experience Requirements are set forth in the Bid Booklet and the Addendum.
- B. Historic Treatment Preconstruction Conference: The Resident Engineer will schedule and hold a preconstruction meeting at the site in accordance with Section 01 31 00, PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION.
  - 1. Review manufacturer's written instructions for precautions and effects of products and procedures on building materials, components, and vegetation.
    - a. Record procedures established as a result of the review and distribute to affected parties.

**1.7 STORAGE AND PROTECTION OF HISTORIC MATERIALS:**

- A. Removed and Salvaged Historic Materials: As specified and required by individual sections of the project specifications.
- B. Removed and Reinstalled Historic Materials: As specified and required by individual sections of the project specifications.
- C. Existing Historic Materials to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during historic treatment. When permitted by the Commissioner, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during historic treatment and reinstalled in their original locations after historic treatment operations are complete.
- D. Storage and Protection: When removed from their existing location, store historic materials, at a location acceptable to the Commissioner, within a weather tight enclosure where they are protected from wetting by rain, snow, or ground water, and temperature variations. Secure stored materials to protect from theft.
  - 1. Identify removed items with an inconspicuous mark indicating their original location.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART III – EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PROTECTION, GENERAL:**

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for precautions and effects of products and procedures on adjacent building materials, components, and vegetation.
- B. Ensure that supervisory personnel are present when work begins and during its progress.
- C. Temporary Protection of Historic Materials during Construction:
  - 1. Protect existing materials during installation of temporary protections and construction. Do not deface or remove existing materials.
  - 2. Attachments of temporary protection to existing construction shall be approved by the Commissioner prior to installation.
- D. Protect landscape work adjacent to or within work areas as follows:
  - 1. Provide barriers to protect tree trunks.
  - 2. Bind spreading shrubs.
  - 3. Use coverings that allow plants to breathe and remove coverings at the end of each day. Do not cover plant material with a waterproof membrane for more than 8 hours at a time.
  - 4. Set scaffolding and ladder legs away from plants.
- E. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work or any cleaning operations, test drains and other water removal systems to ensure that drains and systems are functioning properly. Notify Commissioner immediately of drains or systems that are stopped or blocked. Do not begin Work of this Section until the drains are in working order.
  - 1. Provide a method to prevent solids, including stone or mortar residue, from entering the drains or drain lines. Clean out drains and drain lines that become blocked or filled by sand or any other solids because of work performed under this Contract.
  - 2. Protect storm drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

#### **3.2 PROTECTION DURING USE OF HEAT-GENERATING EQUIPMENT:**

- A. No roofing work requiring the use of an open flame shall be permitted on any Designated Landmark Structure whose roof or wall structure is made of wood or primarily of wood.
- B. Comply with the following procedures while performing work with heat-generating equipment, including welding, cutting, soldering, brazing, paint removal with heat, and other operations where open flames or implements utilizing heat are used:
  - 1. Obtain Commissioner's approval for operations involving use of open-flame or welding equipment.
    - a. Notification shall be given for each occurrence and location of work with heat-generating equipment.
  - 2. As far as practical, use heat-generating equipment in shop areas or outside the building.
  - 3. Before work with heat-generating equipment commences, furnish personnel to serve as a fire watch (or watches) for location(s) where work is to be performed.
  - 4. Do not perform work with heat-generating equipment in or near rooms or in areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. Use a combustible gas indicator test to ensure that the area is safe.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

5. Remove and keep the area free of combustibles, including, rubbish, paper, waste, etc., within area of operations.
  6. If combustible material cannot be removed, provide fireproof blankets to cover such materials.
  7. Where possible, furnish and use baffles of metal or gypsum board to prevent the spraying of sparks or hot slag into surrounding combustible material.
  8. Prevent the extension of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, holes, and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings, roofs, and other openings.
  9. Inspect each location of the day's work not sooner than 30 minutes after completion of operations to detect hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper housekeeping is maintained.
- C. Where sprinkler protection exists and is functional, maintain it without interruption while operations are being performed. If operations are performed close to automatic sprinkler heads, shield the individual heads temporarily with guards.

**3.3 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION:**

- A. Photographs for Designated Landmark Structures: Show existing conditions prior to any historic treatments, including one overall photograph and two close-up photographs of all areas of work affected. Show one overall photograph and two close-up photographs of all areas of work after the successful execution of all historical treatments.

**3.4 NEW YORK CITY LANDMARKS PRESERVATION COMMISSION FINAL APPROVALS SIGNOFF:**

- A. For all projects involving a Landmark Structure or Site, the GC Contractor, at the completion of the work, shall submit to the Commissioner, in accordance with Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS, all documentation concerning the successful execution of all historic treatments. This shall include, but not be limited to, copies of all before and after photographs of historic treatments, one copy of the Contractor's as-built drawings, copies of testing and analysis results, including cleaning, mortar analysis, pointing mortars and all other information pertaining to work performed under the New York City Landmarks Preservation Commission jurisdiction.

**END OF SECTION 01 35 91**



**SECTION 01 40 00**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Definitions
  2. Conflicting Requirements
  3. Quality Assurance
  4. Quality Control
  5. Approval of Materials
  6. Special Inspections (Controlled Inspection)
  7. Inspections by Other City Agencies
  8. Certificates of Approval
  9. Acceptance Tests
  10. Repair and Protection
- B. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality control to assure compliance with quality requirements specified in the Contract Documents.
- C. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
- D. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
- E. Provisions of this Section do not limit requirements for each Contractor to provide quality-assurance and control services required by the Commissioner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Specific test and inspection requirements are specified in the individual sections of the Specifications.
- G. LEED: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project is designed to comply with a Certification Level according to the U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design (LEED) Rating System, as specified in Section 01 81 13, "SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS."
- H. COMMISSIONING: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project will be Commissioned by an independent third party under separate contract with the City of New York. Commissioning shall be in accordance with ASHRAE and USGBC LEED-NC procedures, as described in Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS. Each Contractor shall cooperate with the commissioning agent and provide whatever assistance is required.



**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- A. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
- B. Section 01 31 00 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
- C. Section 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
- D. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- E. Section 01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
- F. Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.
- C. Commissioning: A Total Quality Assurance process that includes checking the design and installation of equipment, as well as performing functional testing of the same to confirm that the installed equipment is operating and in conformance with the Contract Documents and the City's requirements.

**1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. General: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, the Contractor shall comply with the most stringent requirement as determined by the Commissioner. The Contractor shall refer any uncertainties and/or conflicting requirements to the Commissioner for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. The Contractor shall refer any uncertainties to the Commissioner for a decision before proceeding.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this Sub-Section establish the minimum qualification levels required. Individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Special Experience Requirements may apply to the firm that will install, erect or assemble specified work required for the Project. If applicable, such Special Experience Requirements are set forth in the Bid Booklet and the Addendum.



- C. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** Special Experience Requirements may apply to the firm that will manufacture equipment, products or systems specified for the Project. If applicable, such Special Experience Requirements are set forth in the Bid Booklet and the Addendum.
- D. **Fabricator Qualifications:** Special Experience Requirements may apply to the firm that will fabricate material, products or systems specified for the Project. If applicable, such Special Experience Requirements are set forth in the Bid Booklet and the Addendum.
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is licensed to practice in the State of New York and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or products that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- F. **Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- G. **Mockups:** Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by the Resident Engineer.
  - 2. Notify Resident Engineer seven (7) days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 4. Obtain Design Consultant's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
  - 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed, unless otherwise directed or indicated.

1.7

**QUALITY CONTROL:**

- A. **City's Responsibilities:** Where quality-control services are indicated as the City's responsibility in the Specifications, the City will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1. **COST OF TESTS BORNE BY THE CITY:** Where the City directs tests to be performed to determine compliance with the Specifications regarding materials or equipment, and where such compliance is ascertained as a result thereof, the City will bear the cost of such tests.
  - 2. The City will furnish each Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing entities engaged and a description of the types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
  - 3. Costs for retesting and re-inspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to the appropriate Contractor.
- B. **Contractor's Responsibility:** Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to the City are the Contractor's responsibility. Unless otherwise indicated, the Contractor shall provide quality-control services as set forth in the Specifications and those required by Authorities having jurisdiction. The Contractor shall provide quality-control services required by Authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  - 1. **COST OF TESTS BORNE BY CONTRACTOR –** In the case of tests which are specifically called for in the Specifications to be provided by the Contractor or tests which are required by any Authority having jurisdiction, but are not indicated as the responsibility of the City, the cost thereof shall be borne by the Contractor and shall be deemed to be included in the Contract price. The expenses of the testing personnel assigned by the City shall not be the Contractor's obligation. The Contractor shall reimburse the City for expenditures incurred in providing tests on materials and



- equipment submitted by the Contractor as the equivalent of that specifically named in the Specifications and rejected for non-compliance.
2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services. Any testing agency engaged by the Contractor to perform quality control services is subject to prior approval by the Commissioner.
  3. The Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by the City, unless agreed to in writing by the Commissioner.
  4. The Contractor shall notify testing agencies and the Resident Engineer at least 48 hours in advance of the date and time for the performance of Work that requires testing or inspecting.
  5. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall submit a certified written report, in triplicate to the Commissioner, of each quality-control service.
  6. Testing and inspecting requested by the Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  7. The Contractor shall submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. **Manufacturer's Field Services:** Where indicated, the Contractor shall engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Results shall be submitted in writing as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- D. **Retesting/Re-inspecting:** Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were the Contractor's responsibility, the Contractor shall provide quality-control services, including retesting and re-inspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. **Associated Services:** The Contractor shall cooperate with entities performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and shall provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. The Contractor shall notify the testing agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist testing entity in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing entities.
  6. Design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by the testing entity.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at the Project site.
- F. **Coordination:** Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
  2. Coordinate and cooperate with the Commissioning Authority/Agent as applicable for start-up, inspection and functional testing in the implementation of the Commissioning Plan.
- G. **Manufacturer's Directions:** Where the Specifications provide that the manufacturer's directions are to be used, such printed directions shall be submitted to the Commissioner.
- H. **Inspection of Material:** In the event that the Specifications require the Contractor to engage the services of an entity to witness and inspect any material especially manufactured or prepared for use in or part of the permanent construction, such entity shall be subject to prior written approval by the Commissioner.
1. **NOTICE** - The Contractor shall give notice in writing to the Commissioner sufficiently in advance of its intention to commence the manufacture or preparation of materials especially manufactured or



prepared for use in or as part of the permanent construction. Such notice shall contain a request for inspection, the date of commencement and the expected date of completion of the manufacture or preparation of materials. Upon receipt of such notice, the Commissioner will arrange to have a representative present at such times during the manufacture as may be necessary to inspect the materials, or the Commissioner will notify the Contractor that the inspection will be made at a point other than the point of manufacture, or the Commissioner will notify the Contractor that inspection will be waived.

- I. **No Shipping Before Inspection:** The Contractor shall comply with the foregoing before shipping any material.
- J. **Certificate of Manufacture:** When the Commissioner so requires, the Contractor shall furnish to the Commissioner authoritative evidence in the form of Certificates of Manufacture that the materials to be used in the work have been manufactured and tested in conformity with the Specifications. These certificates shall include copies of the results of physical tests and chemical analyses where necessary, that have been made directly on the product, or on similar products being fabricated by the manufacturer. This may include such approvals as B.S.A., M.E.A., B.E.C. Advisory Board, etc.
- K. **Acceptance:** When materials or manufactured products shall comprise such quantity that it is not practical to make physical tests or chemical analyses directly on the product furnished, a certificate stating the results of such tests or analyses of similar materials which were concurrently produced may, at the discretion of the Commissioner, be considered as the basis for the acceptance of such material or manufactured product.
- L. **Testing Compliance:** The testing personnel shall make the necessary inspections and tests, and the reports thereof shall be in such form as will facilitate checking to determine compliance with the Specifications, indicating thereon all analyses and/or test data and interpreted results thereof.
- M. **Reports:** Six (6) copies of the reports shall be submitted and authoritative certification thereof must be furnished to the Commissioner as prerequisite for the acceptance of any material or equipment.
- N. **Rejections:** If, in making any test, it is ascertained by the Commissioner that the material or equipment does not comply with the Specifications, the Contractor will be notified thereof, and will be directed to refrain from delivering said materials or equipment, or to promptly remove it from the site or from the work and replace it with acceptable material at no additional cost to the City.
- O. **Furnish Designated Materials:** Upon rejection of any material or equipment submitted as the equivalent of that specifically named in the Specifications, the Contractor shall immediately proceed to furnish the designated material or equipment.

**1.8 APPROVAL OF MATERIALS:**

- A. **Local Laws:** All materials, appliances and types or methods of construction shall be in accordance with the Specifications and shall in no event be less than that necessary to conform to the requirements of the New York City Construction Codes, Administrative Code and Charter of the City of New York.
- B. **Approval of Manufacturer:** The names of proposed manufacturers, material suppliers, and dealers who are to furnish materials, fixtures, equipment, appliances or other fittings shall be submitted to the Commissioner for approval, as early as possible, to afford proper review and analysis. No manufacturer will be approved for any materials to be furnished under the Contract unless it shall have a plant of ample capacity and shall have successfully produced similar products. All approvals of materials and equipment that are legally required by the New York City Construction Codes and other governing Authorities must be obtained prior to installation.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- C. All Materials, fixtures, fittings, supplies and equipment furnished under the Contract shall be new and unused, except as approved by the Commissioner, and of standard first-grade quality and of the best workmanship and design. The City of New York encourages the use of recycled products where practical.
- D. INFORMATION TO SUPPLIERS - In asking for prices on materials under any item of the Contract, the Contractor shall provide the manufacturer or dealer with such complete information from the Specifications and Contract Drawings as may in any case be necessary, and in every case the Contractor shall inform the manufacturer or dealer of all the General Conditions and requirements herein contained.

#### 1.9 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS:

##### A. SPECIAL INSPECTIONS:

1. Inspection of selected materials, equipment, installation, fabrication, erection or placement of components and connections made during the progress of the Work to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and provisions of the New York City Construction Codes, shall be made by a Special Inspector. The City of New York will retain the services of the Special Inspector and bear the costs for the performance of Special Inspections in compliance with NYC Construction Codes requirements or as additionally may be called for in the project specifications, except as noted below for Form TR-3: Technical Report for Concrete Design Mix. The Special Inspector shall be an entity compliant with the requirements of the New York City Construction Codes. The Contractor shall notify the relevant Special Inspector in writing at least 72 hours before the commencement of any work requiring special inspection.
2. Form TR3: Technical Report Concrete Design Mix: The Contractor shall be responsible for, and bear all costs associated with the filing and securing of approvals, if any, for Form TR3: Technical Report Concrete Design Mix, including, but not limited to, engaging the services of a New York City licensed Concrete Testing Lab for the review and approval of concrete design mix, testing, signatures and professional seals, etc., compliant with NYC Department of Buildings requirements, for each concrete design mix.
3. The Contractor shall notify the relevant Special Inspector in writing at least 72 hours before the commencement of any work requiring Special Inspection. The Contractor shall be responsible for, and bear related costs to assure that all construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until the required inspection is completed.
4. Inspections and tests performed under "Special Inspection" shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to comply with the Contract Documents, and that there is no warranty given to the Contractor by the City of New York in connection with such inspection and tests or certifications made under "Special Inspections".
5. The Contractor must coordinate with the Resident Engineer or DDC Project Manager to provide access and schedule the work for inspection by the Special Inspector.

#### 1.10 INSPECTIONS BY OTHER CITY AGENCIES:

- A. Letter of Completion: Just prior to substantial completion of this Project, the Commissioner will file with the Department of Buildings, an application for a Letter of Completion or a Certificate of Occupancy for the structure.
- B. Final Inspections: In connection with the above mentioned application for a Letter of Completion or a Certificate of Occupancy and before certificates of final payments are issued, each Contractor will be required to arrange for all applicable final inspections by the inspection staff of the Department of Buildings, Fire Department or other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction, and secure all reports, sign offs, certificates, etc., by such inspection staff or other governmental agencies, in order that a Letter of Completion or Certificate of Occupancy can be issued promptly.



**1.11 CERTIFICATES OF APPROVAL:**

- A. Responsibility: Each Contractor shall be responsible for and shall obtain all final approvals for the work installed under its Contract in the form of such certificates that are required by all governmental agencies having jurisdiction over the work of the Contract.
- B. Transmittal: All such certificates shall be forwarded to the Commissioner through the Resident Engineer.

**1.12 ACCEPTANCE TESTS:**

- A. Government Agencies: All equipment and appliances furnished and installed under the Contract shall conform with the requirements of the Specifications, and shall in no event be less than that necessary to comply with the minimum requirements of the law and all of the governmental agencies having jurisdiction.
- B. Notice of Tests: Whenever the Specifications and/or any governmental agency having jurisdiction requires the acceptance test, the Contractor shall give written notice to all concerned of the time when these tests will be conducted.
- C. Energy: The City will furnish all energy, fuel, water and light required for tests.
- D. Labor and Materials: The Contractor shall furnish labor and all other material and instruments necessary to conduct the acceptance tests at no additional cost to the City.
- E. Certificates: The final acceptance by the Commissioner shall be contingent upon the Contractor delivering to the Commissioner all necessary certificates evidencing compliance in every respect with the requirements of the regulatory agencies having jurisdiction.
- F. Results: If the results of tests and Special Inspections indicate that the material or procedures do not meet requirements as set forth on the Contract Drawings or in the Specifications or are otherwise unsatisfactory, the Contractor shall only proceed as directed by the Resident Engineer. Additional costs resulting from retesting, re-inspecting, replacing of material and/or damage to the Work and/or Work of other Contractors, and any delay caused to the schedule, shall be borne by the Contractor.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION**

**3.1 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, the Contractor shall repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Division 01 – DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS  
Issue Date - January 15, 2015

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

QUALITY REQUIREMENTS  
01 40 00 - 8



**SECTION 01 42 00  
REFERENCES**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 DEFINITIONS:**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM, Article IX, FOR ADDITIONAL DEFINITIONS AND REVISIONS TO THE CONTRACT AND SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. "APPROVED," ETC. - "Approved," "acceptable," "satisfactory," and words of similar import shall mean and intend approved, acceptable or satisfactory to the Commissioner.
- C. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.
- D. DIRECTED," "REQUIRED," ETC.- Wherever reference is made in the Contract to the work or its performance, the terms "directed," "required," "permitted," "ordered," "designated," "prescribed," "determined," and words of similar import shall, unless expressed otherwise, imply the direction, requirements, permission, order, designation or prescription of the Commissioner.
- E. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings.



### 1.3 CODES, AGENCIES AND REGULATIONS:

A.D.A.A.G.	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) – Architectural Barriers Act (ABA)
B.G.& E.	Bureau of Gas and Electricity of the City of New York
B.S.& A.	New York City Board of Standards and Appeals
DOE	Department of Energy
E.C.C.C.N.Y.S.	Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State
EPA	Environmental Protection Administration
N.Y.C.C.C.	New York City Construction Codes – comprised of New York City Plumbing Code New York City Building Code New York City Mechanical Code New York City Fuel Gas Code
N.Y.S.D.O.L	New York State Department of Labor
N.Y.C.D.E.P	New York City Department of Environmental Protection
N.Y.C.E.C.	New York City Electrical Code
N.Y.C.E.C.C	New York City Energy Conservation Code
N.Y.C.F.C	New York City Fire Code
N.Y.S...D.E.C.	New York State Department of Environmental Conservation
O.S.H.A.	Occupational Safety & Health Administration

### 1.4 INDUSTRY STANDARDS:

- A. STANDARD REFERENCES – Unless otherwise specifically indicated in the Contract Documents, whenever reference is made to the furnishing of materials or testing thereof that conforms to the standards of any technical society, organization or body, it shall be construed to mean the latest standard, code, specification adopted and published by that technical society, organization or body, as of the date of the bid opening, unless the provisions of the New York City Construction Codes adopts a different or earlier dated version of such standard.
- B. APPLICABILITY OF STANDARDS: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect, to the extent referenced, as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- C. CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS: Where compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantity or quality, comply with the most stringent requirements. Immediately refer uncertainties, and requirements that are different but apparently equal, to the Commissioner in writing for a decision before proceeding.
- D. STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS - When no reference is made to a code, standard or specification, the Standard Specifications of the ASTM or the AIEE, as the case may be, shall govern.
- E. REFERENCES - Reference to a technical society, organization or body may be made in the Specifications by abbreviations. Abbreviations and acronyms used in the Specifications and other Contract Documents mean the associated name. The following names are subject to change and are



believed, but are not assured, to be accurate and up-to-date as of the Issue Date of the Contract Documents.

AA	Aluminum Association, Inc. (The)
AAADM	American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists (The)
ABAA	Air Barrier Association of America
ABMA	American Bearing Manufacturers Association
ACI	ACI International (American Concrete Institute)
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association
AEIC	Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The)
AF&PA	American Forest & Paper Association
AGA	American Gas Association
AGC	Associated General Contractors of America (The)
AGMA	American Gear Manufacturer Association
AHA	American Hardboard Association (Now part of CPA)
AHAM	Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
AI	Asphalt Institute
AIA	American Institute of Architects (The)
AIEE	American Institute of Electrical Engineers
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction
ALCA	Associated Landscape Contractors of America (Now PLANET - Professional Landcare Network)



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

ALSC	American Lumber Standard Committee, Incorporated
ALI	Automotive Lift Institute
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
AOSA	Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.
APA	APA - The Engineered Wood Association
APA	Architectural Precast Association
API	American Petroleum Institute
ARI	Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute
ARMA	Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association
ASA	American Standards Association
ASAE	American Society of Agricultural Engineers
ASCE/SEI	American Society of Civil Engineers, Structural Engineering Institute
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering
ASTM	ASTM International (American Society for Testing and Materials International)
AWCI	AWCI International (Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry International)
AWCMA	American Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCSC)
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
AWPA	American Wood-Preservers' Association
AWSC	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Association
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
BIA	Brick Industry Association (The)



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

BICSI	BICSI
BIFMA	BIFMA International (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association International)
BISSC	Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee
CIBSE	Chartered Institute of Building Services Engineers
CCC	Carpet Cushion Council
CDA	Copper Development Association
CEA	Canadian Electricity Association
CFFA	Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.
CGA	Compressed Gas Association
CGSB	Canadian General Standards Board
CIMA	Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association
CIPRA	Cast Iron Pipe Research Association
CISCA	Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute
CPA	Composite Panel Association
CPPA	Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe Association
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission
CRI	Carpet & Rug Institute (The)
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
CSA	Canadian Standards Association
CSI	Cast Stone Institute
CSI	Construction Specifications Institute (The)
CSSB	Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau
CTI	Cooling Technology Institute (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute)
DASMA	Door and Access Systems Manufacturer's Association International



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

DHI	Door and Hardware Institute
DOC	U.S. Department of Commerce – National Institute of Standards and Technology
EIA	Electronic Industries Alliance
DOJ	U.S. department of Justice
EIMA	EIFS Industry Members Association
DOL	U.S. Department of Labor
EJCDC	Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee
DOTn	U.S. Department of Transportation
EN	European Committee of Standards
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.
ESD	ESD Association
EVO	Efficiency Valuation Organization
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FIBA	Federation Internationale de Basketball Amateur (The International Basketball Federation)
FIVB	Federation Internationale de Volleyball (The International Volleyball Federation)
FMG	FM Global (Formerly: FM - Factory Mutual System)
FMRC	Factory Mutual Research (Now FMG)
FRSA	Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.
FSA	Fluid Sealing Association
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
GA	Gypsum Association
GANA	Glass Association of North America
GRI	(Now GSI)
GS	Green Seal
GSI	Geosynthetic Institute



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

HI	Hydraulic Institute
HI	Hydronics Institute
HMMA	Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association (Part of NAAMM)
HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association
HPW	H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.
HUD	U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
IAS	International Approval Services (Now CSA International)
IBF	International Badminton Federation
ICC	International Code Council, Inc.
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.
ICRI	International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The)
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
IEST	Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology
IGCC	Insulating Glass Certification Council
IGMA	Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance
ILI	Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
ISSFA	International Solid Surface Fabricators Association
ITS	Intertek
ITU	International Telecommunication Union
KCMA	Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association
LMA	Laminating Materials Association (Now part of CPA)
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturers Association
MFMA	Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.
MFMA	Metal Framing Manufacturers Association
MH	Material Handling (Now MHIA)
MHIA	Material Handling Industry of America
MIA	Marble Institute of America
MPI	Master Painters Institute
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
NACE	NACE International (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International)
NADCA	National Air Duct Cleaners Association
NAGWS	National Association for Girls and Women in Sport
NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.
NCAA	National Collegiate Athletic Association (The)
NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association
NCPI	National Clay Pipe Institute
NCTA	National Cable & Telecommunications Association
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau
NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
NeLMA	Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NETA	InterNational Electrical Testing Association
NFHS	National Federation of State High School Associations
NFPA	NFPA (National Fire Protection Association)
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

NGA	National Glass Association
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association
NLGA	National Lumber Grades Authority
NIS	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NOFMA	NOFMA: The Wood Flooring Manufacturers Association (Formerly: National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association)
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association
NRMCA	National Ready Mixed Concrete Association
NSF	NSF International (National Sanitation Foundation International)
NSSGA	National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association
NTMA	National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The)
NTRMA	National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association (Now TRI)
NWWDA	National Wood Window and Door Association (Now WDMA)
OPL	Omega Point Laboratories, Inc. (Acquired by ITS - Intertek)
PCI	Precast / Pre-stressed Concrete Institute
PDCA	Painting & Decorating Contractors of America
PDI	Plumbing & Drainage Institute
PGI	PVC Geomembrane Institute
PLANET	Professional Landcare Network (Formerly: ACLA - Associated Landscape Contractors of America)
PPS	Power Piping Society
PTI	Post-Tensioning Institute
RCSC	Research Council on Structural Connections
RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute
RIS	Redwood Inspection Service
RMI	Rack Manufacturers Institute
RTI	(Formerly: NTRMA - National Tile Roofing Manufacturers Association) (Now TRI)



SAE	SAE International
SCAQMD	South Coast Air Quality Management District
SCS	Scientific Certification System
SDI	Steel Deck Institute
SDI	Steel Door Institute
SEFA	Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association
SGCC	Safety Glazing Certification Council
SHBI	Steel Heating Boiler Institute
SIA	Security Industry Association
SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association (Now IGMA)
SJI	Steel Joist Institute
SMA	Screen Manufacturers Association
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association
SMPTE	Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers
SPFA	Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance (Formerly: SPI/SPFD - The Society of the Plastics Industry, Inc.; Spray Polyurethane Foam Division)
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The)
SPRI	Single Ply Roofing Industry
SSINA	Specialty Steel Industry of North America
SSPC	SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings
STI	Steel Tank Institute
SWI	Steel Window Institute
SWRI	Sealant, Waterproofing, & Restoration Institute
TCA	Tile Council of America, Inc.
TIA/EIA	Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance
TMS	The Masonry Society



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

TPI	Truss Plate Institute, Inc.
TPI	Turfgrass Producers International
TRI	Tile Roofing Institute (Formerly: RTI - Roof Tile Institute)
UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
ULC	Underwriters Laboratories of Canada
UNI	Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association
USAV	USA Volleyball
USC	United States Code
USGBC	U.S. Green Building Council
USITT	United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.
WASTEC	Waste Equipment Technology Association
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
WCMA	Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCSC)
WCSC	Window Covering Safety Council (Formerly: WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association)
WDMA	Window & Door Manufacturers Association (Formerly: NWWDA - National Wood Window and Door Association)
WI	Woodwork Institute (Formerly: WIC - Woodwork Institute of California)
WIC	Woodwork Institute of California (Now WI)
WMMPA	Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association
WRI	Wire Reinforcement Institute, Inc.
USEPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
WSRCA	Western States Roofing Contractors Association
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Division 01 – DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS  
Issue Date - January 15, 2015

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

REFERENCES  
01 42 00 - 12



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**SECTION 01 50 00**  
**TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES AND CONTROLS**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This section includes the following:
1. Temporary Water System
  2. Temporary Sanitary Facilities
  3. Temporary Electric Power, Temporary Lighting System, And Site Security Lighting:
  4. Temporary Heat
  5. Dewatering Facilities And Drains
  6. Temporary Field Office for Contractor
  7. Resident Engineer's Office
  8. Material Sheds
  9. Temporary Enclosures
  10. Temporary Partitions
  11. Temporary Fire Protection
  12. Work Fence Enclosure
  13. Rodent and Insect Control
  14. Plant Pest Control Requirements
  15. Project Identification Signage
  16. Security Guards/Fire Guards on Site
  17. Project Sign and Rendering
  18. Safety

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |                                       |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY                               |
| B. | Section 01 42 00 | REFERENCES                            |
| C. | Section 01 54 11 | TEMPORARY ELEVATORS AND HOISTS        |
| D. | Section 01 54 23 | TEMPORARY SCAFFOLDS AND SWING STAGING |
| E. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSE OUT PROCEDURES                  |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by the Commissioner, permanent or temporary roofing that is complete, insulated, and weather tight; exterior walls which are insulated and weather tight; and all openings that are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.



- C. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Reports: Submit reports of tests, inspections, meter readings and similar procedures for temporary use.

**1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS:**

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities and Services: The Contractor responsible for the installation of each permanent facility, services, and controls shall be responsible for the operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent facility and service while in use during construction before Final Acceptance by the City, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.
- B. Install, operate, maintain and protect temporary facilities and controls.
1. Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat in appearance.
  2. Operate temporary services in a safe and efficient manner.
  3. Relocate temporary services and facilities as needed as Work progresses.
  4. Do not overload temporary services and facilities or permit them to interfere with progress.
  5. Provide necessary fire prevention measures.
  6. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist on-site.

**1.7 NON-REGULAR WORK HOURS (OVERTIME):**

- A. The Contractor responsible for the installation of each permanent facility, services, and controls shall provide the temporary services, facilities and controls set forth in this Section during other than regular working hours if the Drawings and/or the Specifications indicate that the Work, or specific components thereof, must be performed during other than regular working hours. In such case, all costs for the provision of temporary services, facilities and controls during other than regular working hours shall be deemed included in the total Contract Price.
- B. The Contractor responsible for the installation of each permanent facility, services, and controls shall provide the temporary services, facilities and controls set forth in this Section during other than regular working hours if a change order is issued directing the Contractor to perform the Work, or specific components thereof, during other than regular working hours. In such case, compensation for the provision of temporary services, facilities and controls during other than regular working hours shall be provided through the change order.

**1.8 SERVICES BEYOND COMPLETION DATE:**

- A. The Contractor responsible for the installation of each permanent facility, services, and controls shall provide the temporary services, facilities and controls set forth in this Section until the date on which it completes all required work at the site, including all punch list work,



as certified in writing by the Resident Engineer, or earlier if so directed in writing by the Commissioner. The Contractor shall provide such temporary services, facilities and controls even if completion of all required work at the site occurs after the time fixed for such completion in Schedule A.

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. Provide undamaged materials in serviceable condition and suitable for use intended.
- B. Tarpaulins: Waterproof, fire-resistant UL labeled with flame spread rating of 15 or less. For temporary enclosures, provide translucent, nylon-reinforced, laminated polyethylene or polyvinyl chloride, fire-retardant tarpaulins.
- C. Water: Potable and in compliance with requirements of the Department of Environmental Protection.

### 2.2 EQUIPMENT:

- A. Provide undamaged equipment in serviceable condition and suitable for use intended.
- B. Water Hoses: Heavy-duty abrasive-resistant flexible rubber hoses, 100 feet (30 m) long with pressure rating greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system. Provide adjustable shutoff nozzles at hose discharge.
- C. Electric Power Cords: Grounded extension cords.
  - 1. Provide hard-service cords where exposed to abrasion or traffic.
  - 2. Provide waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electric cords where single lengths will not reach areas of construction activity.
  - 3. Do not exceed safe length-voltage ratio.
- D. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.

## PART III – EXECUTION:

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL:

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve the Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities as approved by the Resident Engineer.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY WATER SYSTEM:

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.2 A**

- A. TEMPORARY WATER SYSTEM - NEW FACILITIES: During construction, the Plumbing Contractor shall furnish a Temporary Water System as set forth below.
  - 1. Immediately after the Commissioner has issued an order to start work, the GC Contractor shall file an application with the Dept. of Environmental Protection for the schedule of charges for water use during construction. The GC Contractor will be responsible for payment of water charges.



2. Immediately after the Commissioner has issued an order to start work, the Plumbing Contractor shall file an application with the Department of Environmental Protection's Bureau of Water Supply and obtain a permit to install the temporary water supply system. The system shall be installed and maintained for the use of all Contractors and his/ her subcontractors. A copy of the above mentioned permit shall be filed with the Commissioner. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide temporary water main, risers and waste stacks as directed and install on each floor, outlets with two (2) 3/4" hose valve connections over a barrel installed on a steel pan. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide drains from the pans to the stack and house sewer and hose bibs to drain the water supply risers and mains. During winter months, the Plumbing Contractor shall take the necessary precautions to prevent the temporary water system from freezing. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide repairs to the temporary water supply system for the duration of the project until said temporary system is dismantled and removed.
3. Disposition of Temporary Water System: The Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible for dismantling the temporary water system when no longer required for the construction operations, or when replaced by the permanent water system installed for the project, or as otherwise directed by the Resident Engineer. All repair work resulting from the dismantling of the temporary water system shall be the responsibility of the GC Contractor .

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.2 B**

- B. TEMPORARY WATER SYSTEM - PROJECTS IN EXISTING FACILITIES:**
1. When approved by the Commissioner, use of existing water service system will be permitted for temporary water service during construction, as long as system is cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Commissioner. At Substantial Completion, the Plumbing Contractor shall restore the existing water system to conditions existing before initial use.
  2. The Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible for all repairs to the existing water service system permitted to be used for temporary water service during construction. The GC Contractor shall be responsible to maintain the facility in a clean condition on a daily basis, acceptable to the Commissioner.
  3. The GC Contractor will be responsible for payment of water charges as directed by the Commissioner. Billing will be in accordance with the Department of Environmental Protection schedule of charges for Building Purposes.
- C. WASH FACILITIES:** The Plumbing Contractor shall install wash facilities supplied with potable water at convenient locations for personnel involved in handling materials that require wash-up for a healthy and sanitary condition.
1. Dispose of drainage properly.
  2. Supply cleaning compounds appropriate for each condition.
  3. Include safety showers, eyewash fountains and similar facilities for the convenience, safety and sanitation of personnel.
- D. DRINKING WATER FACILITIES:** The Plumbing Contractor shall provide drinking water fountains or containerized tap-dispenser bottled-drinking water units, complete with paper cup supplies. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45 to 55 deg. F (7 to 13 deg. C).
- E. OVERTIME USE:** Whenever any Contractor(s) work before or after the regular work hours hereinafter specified under Subparagraph 3.2 F, or on a Saturday, Sunday or Holiday of any Contract, such Contractor(s) shall pay the Plumbing Contractor for the activation of the temporary water system and toilet facility services during such overtime periods. When more than one (1) Contractor is involved in overtime work, the costs thereof shall be prorated as determined by the Resident Engineer. When overtime is required by any or all Contractors on the work, the



provisions for payment for regular time use of the temporary water supply system as specified in Subparagraph 3.2 F shall apply.

- F. **ACTIVATION** - The Plumbing Contractor shall bear the cost of keeping the temporary water supply system activated from a period of time 15 minutes before the established starting time of that trade which starts work earliest in the morning, to 15 minutes after the established quitting time of that trade which stops work latest in the evening. This applies to every day in the week which is established as a regular working day for aforementioned trades and holds until completion and final acceptance of the work of the Plumbing Contractor or until the services are terminated by instructions from the Commissioner.

**3.3 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall provide for toilets, wash facilities and drinking water fixtures in compliance with regulations and health codes for type, number, location, operation and maintenance of fixtures and facilities. Provide toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups and similar disposable materials as appropriate for each facility, and provide covered waste containers for used materials.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.3 B**

**B. SELF-CONTAINED TOILET UNITS:**

1. The GC Contractor shall provide temporary single-occupant toilet units of the chemical, aerated re-circulation, or combustion type for use by all construction personnel. Units shall be properly vented and fully enclosed with a glass-fiber-reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material. Quantity of toilet units shall comply with the latest OSHA regulations.
2. **Toilets:** Install separate self-contained toilet units for male and female personnel. Shield toilets to ensure privacy.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.3 C**

**C. EXISTING TOILETS:**

1. **TOILET FACILITIES:** When approved by the Commissioner, the GC Contractor shall arrange for the use of existing toilet facilities by all personnel during the execution of the work. The Contractor shall be responsible to clean and maintain facilities in a condition acceptable to the Resident Engineer and, at completion of construction, to restore facilities to their condition at the time of initial use.
2. **MAINTENANCE** - The GC Contractor shall maintain the temporary toilet facilities in a clean and sanitary manner and make all necessary repairs.
3. **NUISANCES** - The Contractors shall not cause any sanitary nuisance to be committed by its employees in or about the work, and shall enforce all sanitary regulations of the City and State Health Authorities.

**3.4 TEMPORARY ELECTRIC POWER, TEMPORARY LIGHTING SYSTEM, AND SITE SECURITY LIGHTING:**

- A. **SCOPE:** This Section sets forth the General Conditions and procedures relating to Temporary Electric Power, Temporary Lighting System and Site Security Lighting during the construction period, and is applicable to, and binding on, all Contracts insofar as they are affected.
- B. **TEMPORARY ELECTRIC POWER:**  
The Electrical Contractor shall provide and maintain Temporary Electric Power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity and power characteristics required for construction



operations for all Contracts, including but not limited to power for Temporary Lighting System, Site Security Lighting, construction equipment, hoists and temporary elevators and all field offices. Temporary Electric Power shall be provided as follows:

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4 B (1)**

1. CONNECTION TO UTILITY LINES:

- a. Temporary Electric Power Service for use during construction shall be provided as follows: The Electrical Contractor shall make all necessary arrangements with the Public Utility Company and pay all charges for the Temporary Electric Power system. The Electrical Contractor shall include in its total Contract Price any charges for Temporary Electric Power, including charges that may be made by the Public Utility Company for extending its electrical facilities, and for making final connections. The Electrical Contractor shall make payment directly to the Public Utility Company.
- b. APPLICATIONS FOR METER: The Electrical Contractor shall make application to the Public Utility Company and sign all documents necessary for, and pay all charges incidental to, the installation of a watt hour meter or meters for Temporary Electric Power. The Electrical Contractor shall pay to the Public Utility Company, all bills for Temporary Electric energy used throughout the work, as they become due.
- c. SERVICE AND METERING EQUIPMENT - The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install, at a suitable location on the site, approved service and metering equipment for the Temporary Electric Power System, ready for the installation of the Public Utility Company's metering devices. The temporary service mains to and from the metering location shall be not less than 100 Amperes, 3-phase, 4-wire and shall be of sufficient capacity to take care of all demands for all construction operations and shall meet all requirements of the NYCEC.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4 B (2)**

2. CONNECTION TO EXISTING ELECTRICAL POWER SERVICE:

- a. When approved by the Commissioner, electrical power service for the Temporary Lighting System and for the operation of small tools and equipment less than 1/4 horsepower may be taken from the existing electric distribution system if the existing system is of adequate capacity for the temporary power load. The Electrical Contractor shall cooperate and coordinate with the facility custodian, so as not to interfere with the normal operation of the facility.
- b. There will be no charge for the electrical energy consumed.
- c. The Electrical Contractor shall provide, maintain and pay all costs for separate temporary electric power for any temporary power for equipment larger than 1/4 horsepower. When directed by the Commissioner, the Electrical Contractor shall remove its own temporary power system.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4 B (3)**

3. ELECTRICAL GENERATOR POWER SERVICE:

- a. When connection to Utility Lines or existing facility electric service is not available or is not adequate to supply the electric power need for construction operations, the



Electrical Contractor shall provide self-contained generators to provide power beyond that available.

- b. Pay for all energy consumed in the progress of the Work, exclusive of that available from the existing facility or Utility Company.
- c. Provide for control of noise from the generators.
- d. Comply with the Ultra Low Sulfur Fuel in Non-Road Vehicles requirements as set forth in Article 5.4 of the Contract.

**C. USE OF COMPLETED PORTIONS OF THE ELECTRICAL WORK:**

1. **USE OF MAIN DISTRIBUTION PANEL:** As soon as the permanent electric service feeders and equipment, metering equipment and main distribution panel are installed and ready for operation, the Electrical Contractor shall have the temporary lighting and power system changed over from the temporary service points to the main distribution panel.
2. **COST OF CHANGE OVER -** The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for all costs due to this change over of service and it shall also make application to the Public Utility Company for a watt hour meter to be set on the permanent meter equipment.
3. The requirements for temporary electric power service specified herein shall be adhered to after change over of service until final acceptance of the project.
4. **NO EXTRA COST -** The operation of the service and switchboard equipment shall be under the supervision of the Electrical Contractor, but this shall in no way be interpreted to mean the acceptance of such part of the installation or relieve the Contractor from its responsibility for the complete work or any part thereof. There shall be no additional charge for supervision by the Electrical Contractor.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4 D**

**D. TEMPORARY LIGHTING SYSTEM:**

1. The Electrical Contractor shall provide adequate service for the temporary lighting system, or a minimum of 100 Amperes, 3-phase, 4-wire service for the temporary lighting system, whichever is greater, and make all necessary arrangements with the Public Utility Company and pay all charges by them for the Temporary Lighting system
2. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and connect to the metered service point, a Temporary Lighting System to illuminate the entire area where work is being performed and points adjacent to the work, with separately fused circuits for stairways and bridges. Control switches for stairway circuits shall be located near entrance on ground floor.
3. **ITEMS:** The Temporary Lighting System provided by the Electrical Contractor shall consist of wiring, fixtures, left-hand double sockets, (one (1) double socket for every 400 square feet, with one (1) lamp and one (1) three-prong outlet) lamps, fuses, locked type guards, pigtails and any other incidental material. Additional details may be outlined in the detailed Specifications for the Electrical Work. Changes may be made, provided the full equivalent of those requirements is maintained.
4. The Temporary Lighting System shall be progressively installed as required for the advancement of the work under the various Contracts.
5. **RELOCATION:** Each Contractor requiring the relocation or extension of the original Temporary Lighting System that is not required due to the normal advancement of the work, as determined by the Resident Engineer, shall bear all costs thereof.
6. **PIGTAILS:** shall be furnished with left-hand sockets with locked type guards and 40 feet of rubber covered cable. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and distribute a minimum of three (3) complete pigtails to each Contractor. See the detailed Electrical Specifications for possible additional pigtail required.



7. **LAMPS:** The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install one (1) complete set of lamps, including those for the trailers. Broken and burned out lamps in the general lighting system shall be replaced by the Electrical Contractor while those in the trailers shall be replaced by each Contractor using such equipment. All lamps shall be compact fluorescent.
8. **CIRCUIT PROTECTION:** The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and install GFI protection for the Temporary Lighting and Site Security Lighting Systems.
9. **ENERGIZING:** The Electrical Contractor shall keep the Temporary Lighting System energized from a period of time, 15 minutes before the established starting time of that trade, which starts work earliest in the morning to 15 minutes after the established quitting time of that trade which stops work latest in the evening. This applies to every day in the week which is established as a regular working day for any trade involved in the construction of this facility and holds until Substantial Completion and Final Acceptance of the work of the Electrical Contractor or until the services are terminated by instructions from the Commissioner.
10. **MAINTENANCE OF TEMPORARY LIGHTING SYSTEM:**
  - a. The Electrical Contractor shall maintain the Temporary Lighting System in good working order during the scheduled hours established.
  - b. The Electrical Contractor shall include in its total Contract Price all costs in connection with the Temporary Lighting System, including all costs for installation, maintenance and electric power.
11. **ADJUSTMENT IN CONTRACT PRICE FOR TEMPORARY LIGHTING MAINTENANCE:** In the event that the temporary lighting maintenance extends beyond the Contract time through no fault of the Electrical Contractor, as determined by the Commissioner, the additional maintenance cost will be in accordance with the requirements of the following paragraphs:
  - a. Payment for maintaining Temporary facilities when required will be made at the average hourly wage for electricians plus 69% of this rate, for each hour of work done upon order of the Resident Engineer. Payments will be included in partial estimates upon submission of detailed vouchers stating date, hour and time expended for each item of work.
  - b. The addition of 69% of the average hourly wage rate specified above shall be deemed as the total allowance for all profit and overhead and for any and all other costs and expenses of any nature whatsoever, including but not limited to allowance for insurance, workman's compensation, unemployment insurance and other supplementary benefits.
12. **REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY LIGHTING SYSTEM:** The temporary lighting system shall be removed by the Electrical Contractor when authorized by the Commissioner.
13. **HAND TOOLS:** The temporary lighting system shall not be used for power purposes, except that light hand tools not larger than 1/4 horsepower may be operated from such system by each Contractor and its subcontractors.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4 E**

- E. **SITE SECURITY LIGHTING (FOR NEW CONSTRUCTION ONLY):**
1. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain a system of site security lighting, as herein specified, to illuminate the construction site of the project, and it shall be connected to and energized from the Temporary Lighting System. All costs in connection with site security lighting shall be deemed included in the total Contract Price.
  2. It is essential that the site security lighting system be completely installed and operating, at the earliest possible date. All Contractors must cooperate, coordinate and exert every effort to accomplish an early complete installation of the site security lighting system. After



- the system is installed and in operation, if a part of the system interferes with the work of any Contractor, that Contractor shall be completely responsible for the expense of removing, relocating and replacing all equipment necessary to reinstate the system to proper operating conditions.
3. The system shall consist of flood lighting by pole mounted guarded sealed-beam units. Floodlight units shall be mounted 16 feet above grade. Floodlights shall be spaced around the perimeter of the site to produce an illumination level of no less than one (1) foot candle around the perimeter of the site, as well as in any potentially hazardous area or any other area within the site that might be deemed by the Resident Engineer to require security illumination. The system shall be installed in a manner acceptable to the Resident Engineer. The first lighting unit in each circuit shall be provided with a photoelectric cell for automatic control. The photoelectric cell shall be installed as per manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. All necessary poles shall be furnished and installed by the Electrical Contractor.
  5. The site security lighting shall be kept illuminated at all times during the hours of darkness. The Electrical Contractor, at its own expense, shall keep the system in operation, and shall furnish and install all material necessary to replace all damaged or burned out parts.
  6. The Electrical Contractor shall be on telephone call alert for maintaining the system during the operating period stated above.
  7. All materials and equipment furnished under this section shall remain the property of the Electrical Contractor and shall be removed and disposed of by the Electrical Contractor upon completion of that phase of the project.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.5**

**3.5**

**TEMPORARY HEAT:**

**A. GENERAL:**

1. Definition: The provision of Temporary Heat shall mean the provision of heat in order to permit construction to be performed in accordance with the Progress Schedule during all seasons of the year and to protect the work from the harmful effects of low temperature. In the event the building, or any portion thereof, is occupied during construction, the provision of Temporary Heat shall include the provision of heat to permit normal operations in such occupied areas.
  - a. The provision of Temporary Heat shall be in accordance with the temperature requirements set forth in Sub-Section 3.5C herein.
  - b. The provision of Temporary Heat shall include the provision of: 1) all fuel necessary and required, 2) all equipment necessary and required, and 3) all operating labor necessary and required. Operating labor shall mean that minimum force required for the safe day to day operation of the system for the provision of Temporary Heat and shall include, without limitation, heating maintenance labor and/or Fire Watch as required by NYC Fire Department regulations. Operating labor may be required seven (7) days per week and during other than normal working hours, for the period of time required by seasonal weather conditions.
  - c. In the event the building, or any portion thereof, is occupied and the Project involves the replacement, modification and/or shut down of the permanent heating system, or any key component thereof; and such system is a combined system which furnishes domestic hot water for the building occupants, the provision of Temporary Heat shall include the provision of domestic hot water at the same temperature as the system which is being replaced. Domestic hot water shall be provided in accordance with the phasing requirements set forth in the Contract Documents.



2. Responsibility: The Contractor responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat, including all expenses in connection therewith, shall be as set forth below:
    - a. Projects Involving Enclosure of the Building:
      - 1) Prior to Enclosure - Until the Commissioner determines that the building has been enclosed, as set forth in Sub-Section 3.5B, each Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of its own Temporary Heat.
      - 2) Post Enclosure - Once the Commissioner determines that the building, or any portion thereof, has been enclosed, as set forth in Sub-Section 3.5B, the HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat by one or more of the following means: 1) by an existing heating system (if any), 2) by a permanent heating system which is being installed as part of the Project, or 3) by a temporary heating system(s).
      - 3) The HVAC Contractor shall, within two (2) weeks of the kick-off meeting, submit to DDC for review its proposed plan to provide Temporary Heat. Such plan is subject to approval by the Resident Engineer. The HVAC Contractor shall provide Temporary Heat in accordance with the approved plan until written acceptance by the Commissioner of the work of all Contractors, including punch list work, unless directed otherwise in writing by the Commissioner. The responsibility of the HVAC Contractor provided for herein is subject to the exception set forth in Sub-Section 3.5A.2(b) herein.
    - b. Projects not involving Enclosure of the Building:
      - 1) If the Project involves the installation of a new permanent heating system if one did not exist previously, or the replacement, modification and/or shut down of the existing permanent heating system, or any key component thereof, the HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat, except as otherwise provided in Sub-Section 3.5H.3(b).2 herein.
      - 2) If the Project does not involve the installation of a new permanent heating system if one did not exist previously, or the replacement, modification and/or shut down of the existing permanent heating system, or any key component thereof; there is no Contractor responsibility of the provision of Temporary Heat, unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents. However, if the Commissioner, pursuant to Sub-Section 3.5 H.3(b).1 herein, determines that the provision of Temporary Heat is necessary due to special and/or unforeseen circumstances, the HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat and such Contractor shall be paid for the same in accordance with Sub-Section 3.5 H.3(b).1 herein.
- B. ENCLOSURE OF STRUCTURES:**
1. Notification: The GC Contractor shall notify all other Contractors and the Resident Engineer at least 30 days prior to the anticipated date that the building(s) will be enclosed.
  2. Commissioner Determination: The Commissioner shall determine whether the building, or any portion thereof, has been enclosed. As indicated in Sub-Section 3.5A.2 above, once the building has been enclosed, the HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat. The Commissioner's determination with respect to building enclosure shall be based upon all relevant facts and circumstances, including without limitation, 1) whether the building meets the criteria set forth in Paragraph 3 below, and 2) whether the openings in the building, such as doorways and windows, have been sufficiently covered so as to provide reasonable heat retention and protection from the elements
  3. Criteria for enclosure:
    - a. Roof Area:
      - 1) A building shall be considered to be roofed when the area to be roofed is covered by a permanent structure and all openings through the permanent



structure are covered and protected by temporary covers in Paragraph (c) below.

- 2) Intermediate floor structures of multi-floor buildings shall be considered to be roofed subject to the same requirements of the building roof.
- 3) The final roofing system need not be in place for the building or structure to be determined to be enclosed; provided, however, all openings through the permanent structure covering the roof must be covered and protected by temporary covers, as described in Paragraph (c) below.
- b. Walls: For the walls to be determined to be enclosed permanent exterior wall elements or facing material must be in place and all openings must be covered and protected by temporary covers, as described in Paragraph (c) below.
- c. Temporary Covers: In order to be acceptable, temporary covers must be securely fixed to prevent the entrance of rain, snow and direct wind. The minimum material requirements for temporary covers are as follows: 1) minimum 10 mil. plastic 2) minimum 12 ounce waterproof canvas tarpaulins, or 3) a minimum three-eighths (3/8)inch thickness exterior grade plywood.
- d. Temporary covers for openings shall be the responsibility of the GC Contractor and such work shall be deemed included in the Contract price.

**C. TEMPERATURE REQUIREMENTS:**

- 1. Unoccupied Buildings: The temperature requirement for the provision of Temporary Heat in unoccupied buildings shall be the GREATER of the following: 1) 50 degrees Fahrenheit, or 2) the temperature requirement for the particular type of work set forth in the Contract Documents.
- 2. Occupied Buildings: The temperature requirement for the provision of Temporary Heat in occupied buildings, or portions thereof, shall be the GREATER of the following: 68 degrees Fahrenheit or the temperature requirement for the particular type of work set forth in the Contract Documents.

**D. DURATION:**

- 1. The HVAC Contractor shall be required to provide Temporary Heat until the date on which it completes all required work at the site, including all punch list work, as certified in writing by the Resident Engineer, or earlier if so directed in writing by the Commissioner. The HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat for the time specified herein, regardless of any delays in completion of the Project, including delays that result in the commencement of the provision of Temporary Heat during a season that is later than that which may have been originally anticipated. The HVAC Contractor shall include in its Total Contract Price all expenses in connection with the provision of Temporary Heat in accordance with the requirements specified herein.
- 2. The total Contract duration is set forth in consecutive calendar days in Schedule A of the Addendum. The Table set forth below indicates the number of full heating seasons that are deemed included in various contract durations, which are specified in consecutive calendar days (ccds). At a minimum, a full heating season shall extend from October 15<sup>th</sup> to April 15<sup>th</sup>.

Contract Duration	Full Heating Seasons Required
up to 360 ccds	1 full heating season
360 to 720 ccds	2 full heating seasons
more than 720 ccds	3 full heating seasons

**E. METHOD OF TEMPORARY HEAT:**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

1. The method of temporary heat shall be in conformance with the New York City Fire Code and with all applicable laws, rules and regulations. Prior to implementation, such method shall be subject to the written approval of the Commissioner.
2. The method of temporary heat shall:
  - a. Not cause the deposition of dirt or smudges upon any finished work or cause any defacement or discoloration to the finished work.
  - b. Not be injurious or harmful to people or materials.
  - c. Portable fueled heating devices or equipment **SHALL NOT BE ALLOWED** for use as temporary heat other than construction-related curing or drying in conformance with the NYC Fire Code.
3. No open fires will be permitted.

**F. TEMPORARY HEATING SYSTEM:**

1. The temporary system for the provision of Temporary Heat provided by the HVAC Contractor following enclosure of the building shall be complete including, subject to provisions of paragraph E above, boilers pumps, radiators, space heaters, water and heating piping, insulation and controls. The temporary system for the provision of Temporary Heat shall be capable of maintaining the minimum temperature requirements set forth in Paragraph C above.

**G. COORDINATION:**

1. The GC Contractor shall coordinate with the HVAC Contractor in the work of providing Temporary Heat, and shall so coordinate its operations as to insure sufficient and timely performance of the work under all Contracts. The GC Contractor shall supply and pay for all water required and used in the building for the operation of the heating system(s) for the purpose of Temporary Heat. The GC Contractor shall include all expenses in connection with the supply of water for Temporary Heat in its Total Contract Price. During the period in which Temporary Heat in an enclosed building is being furnished and maintained by the HVAC Contractor, the GC Contractor shall provide proper ventilating and drying, open and close the windows and other openings when necessary for the proper execution of the work and also when directed by DDC. The GC Contractor shall maintain all permanent or temporary enclosures at its own expense.

**H. USE OF PERMANENT HEATING SYSTEMS:**

1. Use of Permanent Heating System for Temporary Heat after Building Enclosure
  - a. The HVAC Contractor shall provide all labor and materials to promptly furnish and set all required equipment and convectors and/or radiators, piping, valves, fitting, etc., in ample time for their use for the provision of Temporary Heat after enclosure of the building.
  - b. New portions of the permanent heating system that are used for furnishing Temporary Heat shall be left in near perfect condition when delivered to the City for operation. Any repairs required, other than for ordinary wear and tear on the equipment, shall be made by the HVAC Contractor at his/ her expense. The starting date for the warranty or guarantee period for such equipment shall be the date of Substantial Completion acceptance.
  - c. In the event that the HVAC Contractor does not advance the installation of the permanent heating system in sufficient time to permit its use for Temporary Heat as determined by DDC, the HVAC Contractor shall furnish and install a separate system for the provision of Temporary Heat as required to maintain the minimum temperature requirements set forth in Paragraph C above.
2. All equipment for the system for the provision of Temporary Heat shall be placed so as to comply with the requirements specified hereinbefore, and shall be connected, disconnected



and suitably supported and located so as to permit construction work, including finish work such as wall plastering and painting, to proceed. The installation of the system for the provision of Temporary Heat by the HVAC Contractor including the placing of ancillary system equipment, shall be coordinated with the operations of all Contractors so as to insure sufficient and timely performance of the work of all Contractors. Once the permanent heating system is operating properly, the HVAC Contractor shall remove all portions of the system for Temporary Heat which are not part of the permanent heating system.

3. Temporary Heat Allowance for Special Conditions or and/or Unforeseen Circumstances.
  - a. The City may establish an allowance in the HVAC Contract for payment of costs and expenses in connection with the provision of Temporary Heat as set forth herein. If established, the City will include an amount for such allowance on the Bid Form, and the Contractor shall include such allowance amount in its Total Contract Price. The HVAC Contractor shall only be entitled to payment from this allowance under the conditions and in accordance with the requirements set forth below. In the event this allowance or any portion thereof remains unexpended at the conclusion of the Contract, such allowance shall remain the sole property of the City. Should the amount of the allowance be insufficient to provide payment for the expenses specified below, the City will increase the amount of the allowance.
  - b. The allowance set forth herein may be utilized only under the conditions set forth below.
    1. In the event the Project does not involve the installation of a new permanent heating system if one did not exist previously, or the replacement, modification and/or shut down of the existing permanent heating system, or any key component thereof, and the Commissioner determines that the provision of Temporary Heat is necessary due to special and/or unforeseen circumstances, the HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of Temporary Heat, as directed by the Commissioner. The City shall pay such Contractor for all costs for labor, material, and equipment necessary and required for the same. Payment shall be made in accordance with Article 26 of the Contract, except that the cost of fuel shall be as set forth in Paragraph (c) below.
    2. In the event that after enclosure of the building, the Commissioner determines that (i) Contractors other than the HVAC Contractor have not sufficiently advanced the work of their contracts that is necessary and required to permit the HVAC Contractor to use the permanent or other heating equipment for the provision of Temporary Heat, and (ii) the HVAC Contractor does not bear any responsibility for such other Contractors' failure to advance the work, the City shall pay the HVAC Contractor for all differential costs for labor, material, and equipment necessary and required for the provision of a substitute system(s) for the provision of Temporary Heat or portions thereof in lieu of the permanent or other systems intended for Temporary Heat. Payment shall be made in accordance with Article 26 of the Contract, except that the cost of fuel shall be as set forth in Paragraph (c) below.
    3. In the event the Commissioner determines that there is a need for maintenance of the permanent heating system by the HVAC Contractor after written acceptance by the Commissioner of the work of all Contractors, and that the need for such maintenance is not the fault of the HVAC Contractor, the HVAC Contractor shall provide the required maintenance of the permanent heating system for the period of time directed by the Commissioner. The City shall pay the HVAC Contractor for the cost of direct labor and fuel necessary and required in connection with such maintenance, excluding the cost of any foremen or other supervision. Payment shall be made in accordance with Article 26 of the Contract, except that the cost of fuel shall be as set forth in Paragraph (c) below.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- c. Payment for Fuel Costs - Payment from the allowance set forth herein for the cost of fuel necessary and required to operate the system for the provision of Temporary Heat or to maintain the permanent heating system under the conditions set forth in Paragraph b above shall be limited to the direct cost of such fuel. The HVAC Contractor shall not be entitled to any overhead and/or profit for such fuel costs. In order to receive payment for such fuel costs, the HVAC Contractor must present original invoices for the same. DDC reserves the right to furnish the required fuel.
- d. Deduction - In the event that any amount of the allowance set forth herein is expended for payment to the HVAC Contractor under the circumstances set forth in Paragraph b.(2) above, the Commissioner shall deduct and retain such amount out of moneys that are due and owing hereunder to the other Contractor(s) responsible for the failure to advance the work, as determined by the Commissioner. In the event the amount expended from the allowance exceeds the total sum due and owing to such other Contractor(s), such excess shall be paid to the City by such other Contractor(s) immediately upon demand.

I. RELATED ELECTRICAL WORK:

- 1. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for providing the items set forth below and shall include all expenses in connection with such items in its Total Contract Price. The Electrical Contractor shall provide such items promptly when required and shall in all respects coordinate its work with the GC Contractor and the HVAC Contractor in order to facilitate the provision of Temporary Heat by the HVAC Contractor.
  - a. The Electrical Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment and power necessary and required to furnish and maintain any temporary or permanent electrical connections to all equipment specified to be connected as part of the work of his Contract.
  - b. The Electrical Contractor shall supply and pay for all power necessary and required for the operation of the system for the provision of Temporary Heat and/or the permanent heating system used for Temporary Heat by the HVAC Contractor. Such power shall be provided by the Electrical Contractor for the duration the HVAC Contractor is required to provide Temporary Heat, as set forth in Paragraph D above.
- 2. In providing the items set forth in Paragraph 1 above, the Electrical Contractor is advised that labor may be required seven (7) days a week and/or during other than normal working hours for the period of time required by seasonal weather conditions.

J. RELATED PLUMBING WORK:

- 1. The Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible for providing all labor, materials and equipment necessary and required to furnish and maintain all temporary or permanent connections to all equipment or plumbing outlets specified to be provided as part of the work of its Contract. The Plumbing Contractor shall include all expenses in connection with such items of work in its Total Contract Price. The Plumbing Contractor shall provide such items of work promptly when required and shall in all respects coordinate its work with the GC Contractor and the HVAC Contractor in order to facilitate the provision of Temporary Heat by the HVAC Contractor.
- 2. In the event portions of the permanent plumbing equipment furnished by the Plumbing Contractor as part of the work of his Contract are used for the provision of Temporary Heat by the HVAC Contractor, either during construction or prior to acceptance by the City of the complete plumbing system, the Plumbing Contractor shall be responsible to provide such plumbing equipment to the City in near perfect condition and shall make any repairs required, other than for ordinary wear and tear on the equipment, at its expense. The starting date for warranty and/or guarantee period for such plumbing equipment shall be the date of Substantial Completion acceptance by the City.



3. For Projects requiring the installation of new and/or modified gas service, as well as associated meter installations, the Plumbing Contractor shall promptly perform all required filings and coordination with the Utility Companies in order to expedite the installation, testing, and approval of the gas service and associated meter(s).

### 3.6 STORM WATER CONTROL, DEWATERING FACILITIES AND DRAINS:

#### A. PUMPING:

1. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of storm water from heavy rainfall.
2. The GC Contractor shall furnish and install all necessary automatically operated pumps of adequate capacity with all required piping to run-off agencies, so as to maintain the excavation, cellar floor, pits and exterior depressions and excavations free from accumulated water during the entire period of construction and up to the date of final acceptance of work of the Contract.
3. All pumps shall be maintained at all times in proper working order.
4. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
5. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.

### 3.7 TEMPORARY FIELD OFFICE FOR CONTRACTOR:

- A. Each Contractor shall establish a temporary field office for its own use at the site during the period of construction, at which readily accessible copies of all Contract Documents shall be kept.
- B. The field office shall be located where it will not interfere with the progress of any part of the work or with visibility of traffic control devices.
- C. CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIVE: In charge of each office there shall be a responsible and competent representative of the Contractor, duly authorized to receive orders and directions and to put them into effect.
- D. Arrangements shall be made by each Contractor whereby its representative may be readily accessible by telephone.
- E. All temporary structures shall be of substantial construction and neat appearance, and shall be painted a uniform gray unless otherwise directed by the Commissioner.
- F. CONTRACTOR'S SIGN - Each Contractor shall post and keep posted, on the outside of its field office, office or exterior fence or wall at site of work, a legible sign giving full name of the company, address of the company and telephone number(s) of responsible representative(s) of the firm who can be reached in event of an emergency at any time.
- G. ADVERTISING PRIVILEGES - The City reserves the right to all advertising privileges. The Contractor shall not cause any signs of any kind to be displayed at the site unless specifically required herein or authorized by the Commissioner.

### 3.8 DDC FIELD OFFICE:

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.8 A**

#### A. OFFICE SPACE IN EXISTING BUILDING:

1. The Resident Engineer will arrange for office space for sole use in the building where work is in progress. The GC Contractor shall provide and install a lockset for the door to secure the equipment in the room. The GC Contractor shall provide two (2) keys to the Resident Engineer. After completion of the project the GC Contractor shall replace the original lockset on the door and ensure its proper operation.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

2. In addition to equipment specified in Sub-Section 3.8 (D) the GC Contractor shall provide, for exclusive use of the DDC Field Office, the following:
  - a. Two (2) single pedestal desks, 42" x 32"; two (2) swivel chairs with arms and three (3) side chairs without arms to match desk. Two metal (2) lockers, single units, 15" x 18" x 78" overall including 6" legs. Lockers to have flat key locks with two (2) keys each, General Steel products or approved equal. Two (2) full ball bearing suspension four (4) drawer vertical legal filing cabinets with locks, approximately 52"H x 28 1/2"D x 18"W.
  - b. One (1) 9000 B.T.U air conditioner or as directed by Commissioner. Wiring for the air conditioner shall be minimum No. 12 AWG fed from individual circuits in the fuse box.
  - c. One (1) folding conference table, 96" x 30" and ten (10) folding chairs.
  - d. Two (2) metal wastebaskets.
  - e. One (1) fire extinguisher, one (1) quart vaporizing liquid type, brass, wall mounted by Pyrene No. C21 or approved equal.
  - f. One (1) Crystal Springs water cooler with bottled water, Model No. LP14058 or approved equal to be furnished for the duration of the project as required.
3. The GC Contractor shall provide one (1) telephone, where directed and shall pay all costs for telephone service for calls within the New York City limits for the duration of the project.
4. All furniture and equipment, except computer equipment specified in Sub-Section 3.8 D.3, shall remain the property of the GC Contractor..

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.8 B**

**B. DDC FIELD OFFICE TRAILER:**

1. **GENERAL:** The GC Contractor shall, for the time frame specified herein, provide and maintain at it's own cost and expense a DDC Construction Field Office and all related items as specified herein [hereinafter collectively referred to as the "DDC Field Office"] for the exclusive use of the Resident Engineer. The DDC Field Office shall be located at the Project site and shall be solely dedicated to the Project. Provision of the DDC Field Office shall commence within THIRTY (30) days from Notice to Proceed and shall continue through forty-five (45) days after Substantial Completion of the required construction at the Project site. The Contractor shall remove the DDC Field Office forty-five (45) days after Substantial Completion of the required construction, or as otherwise directed in writing by the Commissioner.
2. **TRAILER:** The GC Contractor shall provide at its own cost and expense a mobile office trailer for use as the DDC Field Office. The Plumbing and Electrical Contractors shall install and connect all utility services to the trailer within thirty (30) days from Notice to Proceed. The trailer shall have equipment with the minimum requirements hereinafter specified. Any permit and fees required for the installation and use of said trailer shall be borne by the GC Contractor. The trailer including furniture and equipment therein, except computer equipment specified in Sub-Section 3.8D.3 herein, shall remain the property of the GC Contractor.
3. Trailer shall be an office type trailer of the size specified herein, with exterior stairs at entrance. Trailer construction shall be minimum 2 x 4 wall construction fully insulated with paneled interior walls, pre-finished gypsum board ceilings and vinyl tile floors.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.8.B.3a or SUB-SECTION 3.8.B.3b.**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- a. DDC Managed Project Trailer: DDC Field Office Trailer Size, Layout and Computer Workstation:
- 1) Overall length: 32 Feet  
Overall width: 10 Feet
  - 2) Interior Layout:  
Provide one (1) general office/conference room area and one (1) private office at one end of the trailer. Provide equipment and amenities as specified in Sub-Section 3.8.B herein.
  - 3) Computer Workstation: Provide one (1) complete computer workstation, as specified in Sub-Section 3.8.D herein, in the private office area as directed by the Resident Engineer.
- b. CM Managed Project Trailer: DDC Field Office Trailer Size, Layout and Computer Workstation:
- 1) Overall length: 50 Feet  
Overall width: 10 Feet
  - 2) Interior Layout:  
Provide one (1) large general office/conference room in the center of the trailer and two (2) private offices, one (1) each at either end of the trailer. Provide equipment and amenities as specified in Sub-Section 3.8.B herein.
  - 3) Computer Workstation:  
Provide three (3) complete computer workstations as specified in Sub-Section 3.8D herein. Provide one (1) each complete computer workstation in each private office and one (1) complete computer workstation at the secretarial position as directed by the Resident Engineer.
4. The exterior of the trailer shall be lettered with black block lettering of the following heights with white borders:
- |                                       |        |
|---------------------------------------|--------|
| CITY OF NEW YORK                      | 2-1/2" |
| DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION | 3-3/4" |
| DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS          | 3-1/2" |
| DDC FIELD OFFICE                      | 2-1/2" |
- NOTE: In lieu of painting letters on trailer the GC Contractor may substitute a sign constructed of a good quality weatherproof material with the same type and size of lettering above.
5. All windows and doors shall have aluminum insect screens. Provide wire mesh protective guards at all windows.
  6. The interior shall be divided by partitions into general and private office areas as specified herein. Provide a washroom located adjacent to the private office and a built-in wardrobe closet opposite the washroom. Provide a built-in desk in the private office(s) with fixed overhead shelf and clearance below for two (2) file cabinets.
  7. Provide a built-in drafting or reference table, located in the general office/conference room, at least 60 inches long by 36 inches wide with cabinet below and wall type plan rack at least 42 inches wide.
  8. The washroom shall be equipped with a flush toilet, wash basin with two (2) faucets, medicine cabinet, complete with supplies and a toilet roll tissue holder. Plumbing and fixtures shall be approved house type, with each appliance trapped and vented and a single discharge connection. Five (5) gallon capacity automatic electric heater for domestic hot water shall be furnished.
  9. HVAC: The trailer shall be equipped with central heating and cooling adequate to maintain a temperature of 72 degrees during the heating season and 75 degrees during the cooling season when the outside temperature is 5 degrees F. winter and 89 degrees F. summer.



10. Lighting shall be provided via ceiling mounted fluorescent lighting fixtures to a minimum level of 50 foot candles in the open and private office(s) along with sufficient lighting in the washroom. Broken and burned out lamps shall be replaced by the Electrical Contractor. A minimum of four (4) duplex convenience outlets shall be provided in the open office and two (2) each in the private office(s). These outlets shall be in addition to special outlet requirements for computer stations, copiers, HVAC unit, etc.
11. Electrical service switch and panel shall be adequately sized for the entire trailer load. Provide dedicated circuits for HVAC units, hot water heater, copiers and other equipment as required. All wiring and installation shall conform to the New York City Electrical Code.
12. The following movable equipment shall be furnished:
  - a. Two (2) single pedestal desks, 42" x 32"; two (2) swivel chairs with arms and three (3) side chairs without arms to match desk. Two (2) full ball bearing suspension four (4) drawer vertical legal filing cabinets with locks and two (2) full ball bearing two (2) drawer vertical legal filing cabinets in each private office located below built-in desk.
  - b. One (1) folding conference table, 96" x 30" and ten (10) folding chairs.
  - c. Three (3) metal wastebaskets.
  - d. One (1) fire extinguisher one (1) quart vaporizing liquid type, brass, wall mounted by Pyrene No. C21 or approved equal.
  - e. One (1) Crystal Springs water cooler with bottled water, Model No. LP14058 or approved equal to be furnished for the duration of the Contract as required.
13. TRAILER TEMPORARY SERVICE: Plumbing and electrical work required for the trailer will be furnished and maintained as below.
  - a. PLUMBING WORK: The Plumbing Contractor shall provide temporary water and drainage service connections to the DDC Field Office trailer for a complete installation. Provide all necessary soil, waste, vent and drainage piping.

The Plumbing Contractor shall frost-proof all water pipes to prevent freezing.

    - 1) REPAIRS, MAINTENANCE: The Plumbing Contractor shall provide repairs for the duration of the project until the trailer is removed from the site.
    - 2) DISPOSITION OF PLUMBING WORK: At the expiration of the time limit set forth in Sub-Section 3.8.B.1 herein, the temporary water and drainage connections and piping to the DDC Field Office trailer shall be removed by the Plumbing Contractor and shall be plugged at the mains. All piping shall become the property of the Plumbing Contractor and shall be removed from the site, all as directed. All repair work due to these removals shall be the responsibility of the GC Contractor.
  - b. ELECTRICAL WORK:
    - 1) The Electrical Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain a temporary electric feeder to the DDC Field Office trailer immediately after it is placed at the job site.
    - 2) The temporary electrical feeder and service switch/fuse shall be adequately sized based on the trailer load and installed per the New York City Electrical Code and complying with utility requirements.
    - 3) The Electrical Contractor shall make all arrangements and pay all costs to provide electric service.
    - 4) The Electrical Contractor shall pay all costs for current consumed and for maintenance of the system in operating condition, including the furnishing of the necessary bulb replacements lamps, etc., for the duration of the project and for a period of forty-five (45) days after the date of Substantial Completion.
    - 5) Disposition of Electric Work: At the expiration of the time limit set forth in Sub-Section 3.8.B.1 herein, the temporary feeder, safety switch, etc., shall be removed and disposed of as directed.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- 6) All repair work due to these removals shall be the responsibility of the GC Contractor.

c. MAINTENANCE

- 1) The GC Contractor shall provide and pay all costs for regular weekly janitor service and furnish toilet paper, sanitary seat covers, cloth towels and soap and maintain the DDC Field Office in first-class condition, including all repairs, until the trailer is removed from the site.
- 2) Supplies: The GC Contractor shall be responsible for providing (a) all office supplies, including without limitation, pens, pencils, stationery, filtered drinking water and sanitary supplies, and (b) all supplies in connection with required computers and printers, including without limitation, an adequate supply of blank CD's/DVD's, storage boxes for blank CDs/DVDs, and paper and toner cartridges for the printer.
- 3) Risk of Loss: The entire risk of loss with respect to the DDC Field Office and equipment shall remain solely and completely with the GC Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for the cost of any insurance coverage determined by the Contractor to be necessary for the Field Office.
- 4) At forty-five (45) days after the date of Substantial Completion, or sooner as directed by the Commissioner, the Plumbing and Electrical Contractors shall have all services disconnected and capped to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. All repair work due to these removals shall be the responsibility of the GC Contractor.

d. TELEPHONE SERVICE: The GC Contractor shall provide and pay all costs for the following telephone services for the DDC Field Office trailer:

- 1) Separate telephone lines for one (1) desk phone in each private office.
- 2) One (1) wall phone (with six (6) foot extension cord) at plan table.
- 3) Separate telephone lines for the fax machine and internet access in each private office. Telephone service shall include voice mail.
- 4) A remote bell located on outside of trailer
- 5) The telephone service shall continue until the trailer is removed from the site.

e. PERMITS: The GC Contractor shall make the necessary arrangements and obtain all permits and pay all fees required for this work.

C. RENTED SPACE: The GC Contractor has the option of providing, at its cost and expense, rented office or store space in lieu of trailer. Said space shall be in the immediate area of the Project and have adequate plumbing, heating and electrical facilities. Space chosen by the GC Contractor must be approved by the Commissioner before the area is rented. All insurance, maintenance and equipment, including computer workstations specified in Sub-Section 3.8 herein, required for the DDC Field Office trailer shall also apply to rented spaces.



**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.8 D**

**D. ADDITIONAL EQUIPMENT FOR THE DDC FIELD OFFICE:**

1. The GC Contractor shall provide a high volume copy machine (50 copies per minute) for paper sizes 8½ x 11, 8½ x 14 & 11 x 17. Copier shall remain at job site until the DDC Field office trailer is removed from the site.
2. The GC Contractor shall furnish a fax machine and a telephone answering machine at commencement of the project for the exclusive use of the DDC Field Office. All materials shall be new, sealed in manufacturer's original packaging and shall have manufacturers' warranties. All items shall remain the property of the City of New York at the completion of the project.
3. **COMPUTER WORKSTATION:** The GC Contractor shall provide one complete computer workstation, in quantities specified in Sub-Section 3.8.B.3, as specified herein:
  - a. **Hardware/Software Specification:**
    - 1) Computer Equipment - Computers shall be provided for all contracts that have a Total Consecutive Calendar Days for construction duration as set forth in Schedule "A" of 180 CCD's or greater. Contracts of lesser duration shall not require computers.
    - 2) Computers furnished by the GC Contractor for use by City Personnel, for the duration of the contract, shall be in accordance with Specific Requirements, contained herein, shall remain the property of the City of New York at the completion of the project and shall meet the following minimum requirements:
    - 3) **Personal Computer(s) – Each Workstation Configuration.**
      - a) **Make and Model:** Dell; HP; Gateway; Acer; or, an approved equivalent. (Note: an approved equivalent requires written approval of the DDC Assistant Commissioner of ITS.)
      - b) **Processor:** i5-2400 (6MB Cache, 3.1GHz) or faster computer - Single Processor.
      - c) **System RAM:** Minimum of 4GB (Gigabytes) Dual Channel DDR3 SDRAM at 1333MHz – 2 DIMMSs
      - d) **Hard Disk Drive(s):** 500 GB (Gigabytes) Serial ATA (7200RPM) w/DataBurst Cache, or larger.
      - e) **CD-RW:** Internal CD-RW, 48x Speed or faster.
      - f) **16xDVD+/-RW DVD** DVD Burner (with double layer write capability) 16x Speed or faster
      - g) **I/O Ports:** Must have at least one (1) Serial Port, one (1) Parallel Port, and three (3) USB Ports.
      - h) **Video Display Card:** HD Graphics (VGA, HDMI) with a minimum of 64 MB of RAM.
      - i) **Monitor:** 22" W, 23.0 Inch VIS, Widescreen, VGA/DVI LCD Monitor.



- j) Available Exp. Slots: System as configured above shall have at least two (2) full size PCI Slots available.
- k) Network Interface: Integrated 10/100/1000 Ethernet Card
- l) Other Peripherals: Optical scroll Mouse, 101 Key Keyboard, Mouse Pad and all necessary cables.
- m) Software Requirement: Microsoft Windows 7 Professional SP1, 32 bit; Microsoft Office Professional 2010 or 2013; Microsoft Project 2010; Adobe Acrobat reader, Anti-Virus software package w/ 2 year updates subscription, and, either Auto Cad LT or Microsoft Visio Standard Edition, as directed by the Resident Engineer.

- 4) DDC Field Office Specs: DDC Field Offices requiring computers shall be provided with the following:
- a) One 1) broad-band internet service account. Wideband Internet connectivity at a minimum throughput of 15 Mbps download and 5 Mbps upload is required at each field office location with 1-5 staffers. For larger field offices see table below for minimum required upload speeds. Telephone service should be bundled together with Internet connectivity. Because of throughput requirements Verizon FIOS is the preferred connectivity provider where available.

Office Personnel #	Upload Speeds (Minimum)
1 – 5	5 Mbps
6 – 10	10 Mbps
11 – 15	15 Mbps
16 – 20 ...	20 Mbps

This account will be active for the life of the project. The e-mail name for the account shall be the DDC Field Office/project Id (e.g. FLD\_K\_HWK666 McGuinness@earthlink.com).

- b) One (1) 600 DPI HP Laser Jet Printer (twelve (12) pages per minute or faster) with one (1) Extra Paper (Legal Size)
  - c) All necessary cabling for equipment specified herein.
  - d) Storage Boxes for Blank CD's
  - e) Printer Table
  - f) UPS/ Surge Suppressor combo
- 5) All computers required for use in the DDC Field Office shall be delivered, installed, and setup in the DDC Field Office by the GC Contractor.
- 6) All Computer Hardware shall come with a three (3) year warranty for on-site repair or replacement. Additionally, and notwithstanding any terms of the warranty to the contrary, the GC Contractor is responsible for rectifying all computer problems or equipment failures within one (1) business day.



- 7) An adequate supply of blank CDs/DVDs, and paper and toner cartridges for the printer shall be provided by the GC Contractor, and shall be replenished by the GC Contractor as required by the Resident Engineer.
- 8) It is the GC Contractor's responsibility to ensure that electrical service and phone connections are also available at all times; that is, the Field Office Computer(s) is to be powered and turned on twenty-four (24) hours each day.
- 9) Broadband connectivity is preferred at each field office location. Please take into consideration that an extra phone line dedicated to the modem must be ordered as part of the contract unless Internet broadband connectivity, via Cable or DSL, is available at the planned field office location. Any questions regarding this policy should be directed to the Assistant Commissioner of Information Technology Services at 718-391-1761.
- 10) Ownership: The equipment specified above shall, unless otherwise directed by the Commissioner, be the sole property of the City of New York upon delivery to the DDC Field Office. The GC Contractor shall prepare and maintain an accurate inventory of all equipment which it purchases for the DDC Field Office. Such inventory shall be provided to the City of New York. Upon completion of the required services, as directed by the Commissioner, the Contractor shall turn such equipment over to the City of New York.

**E. HEAD PROTECTION (HARD HATS):**

1. The GC Contractor shall provide a minimum of 10 standard protective helmets for the exclusive use of Department of Design and Construction personnel and their visitors. Helmets shall be turned over to the Resident Engineer and kept in the DDC Field Office.
2. Upon completion of the project, the helmets shall become the property of the GC Contractor.

**3.9 MATERIAL SHEDS:**

- A. Material sheds used by each Contractor for the storage of its materials shall be kept at locations which will not interfere at any time with the progress of any part of the work or with visibility of traffic control devices.
- B. Store combustible materials apart from the facility.

**3.10 TEMPORARY ENCLOSURES:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weather tight enclosure for building exterior.
- B. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.

**3.11 TEMPORARY PARTITIONS:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate occupied tenant areas from fumes and noise.
  1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant plywood on construction operations side.
  2. Construct dustproof partitions with 2 layers of 3-mil (0.07-mm) polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with 2 layers of 3-mil (0.07-mm) polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches (460 mm) up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant plywood.



- a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
3. Insulate partitions to provide noise protection to occupied areas.
4. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
5. Protect air-handling equipment.
6. Weather strip openings.
7. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.

### 3.12 TEMPORARY FIRE PROTECTION:

- A. The GC Contractor shall install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
- B. Prohibit smoking in all areas.
- C. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
- E. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.13**

### 3.13 WORK FENCE ENCLOSURE:

- A. The GC Contractor shall furnish, erect and maintain a wood construction or chain-link fence to the extent shown on the drawings or required by the work enclosing the entire project on all sides. All materials used shall be new. Any permit required for the installation and use of said fence and costs shall be borne by the GC Contractor.
- B. WOOD FENCE shall be 7'-0" high with framing construction of yellow pine, using 4" x 4" approved preservative-treated posts on not more than 6'-0" centers, with three (3) rails of at least 2" x 4" size to which shall be secured minimum 1/2 inch thick exterior grade plywood. Posts shall be firmly fixed in the ground at least 30" and thoroughly braced. Top edge of fence shall be trimmed with a rabbeted edge mould. Provide on the street traffic sides of fence, observation openings as directed.
  1. GATES - Provide an adequate number of double gates, complete with hardware, located as approved by the Resident Engineer. Double gates shall have a total clear opening of 14'-0" with two (2) 7'-0" hinged swinging sections. Hanging posts shall be 6" x 6" and shall extend high enough to receive and be provided with tension or sag rods for the swinging sections.
  2. PAINTING - The fence and gates shall be entirely painted on the street and public sides with one (1) coat of exterior primer and one (1) top coat of exterior grade acrylic-latex emulsion paint. Black stenciled signs reading "POST NO BILLS" shall be painted on fence with three (3) inch high letters on 25 foot spacing for the entire length of fence on street traffic sides. Signs shall be stenciled five (5) feet above the sidewalk.



- C. CHAIN-LINK FENCING shall be minimum 2-inch thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; 8 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch OD top and bottom rails. Fence shall be accurately aligned and plumb, adequately braced and complete with gates, locks and hardware as required. Under no condition shall fencing be attached or anchored to existing construction or trees.
- D.
  - 1. It shall be the obligation of the GC Contractor to remove all posters, advertising signs, and markings, etc., immediately.
  - 2. Should the fencing be required to be relocated during the course of the Contract, it shall be done by the GC Contractor at no additional cost to the City.
  - 3. Where sidewalks are used for "drive over" purposes for Contractor vehicles, a suitable wood mat or pad shall be provided for protection of sidewalks and curbs.
  - 4. Where required, make provision for fire hydrants, lampposts, etc.
  - 5. REMOVAL - When directed by the Resident Engineer, the fence shall be removed.

### 3.14 RODENT AND INSECT CONTROL:

- A. DESCRIPTION: The GC Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, plant and equipment, and incidentals required to survey and monitor rodent activity and to control any infestation or outbreak of rodents, rats, mice, water beetles, roaches and fleas within the project area. Special attention should be paid to the following conditions or areas:
  - 1 Wet areas within the project area, including all temporary structures.
  - 2 All exterior and interior temporary toilet structures within the project area.
  - 3 All Field Offices and shanties within the project area of all Contractors and DDC.
  - 4 Wherever there is evidence of food waste and/or discarded food or drink containers, in quantity, that would cause breeding of rodents or the insects herein specified.
  - 5 Any other portion of the premises requiring such special attention.
- B. MATERIALS:
  - 1. All materials shall be approved by the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation and comply with the New York City Health Code, OSHA and the laws, ordinances and regulations of State and Federal agencies pertaining to such chemical and/or materials.
- C. PERSONNEL:
  - 1. All pest control personnel must be supervised by an exterminator licensed in categories 7A and 8.
- D. METHODS:
  - 1. Application and dosage of all materials shall be done in strict compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 2. Any unsanitary conditions, such as uncollected garbage or debris, resulting from all Contractors' activities, which will provide food and shelter to the resident rodent population shall be corrected by the GC Contractor immediately after notification of such condition by the Resident Engineer.
- E. RODENT CONTROL WORK:
  - 1 In wetlands, woodlands and areas adjacent to a stream, special precautions must be taken to protect water quality and to ensure the safety of other wildlife. To prevent poisoned bait from entering streams, no poisoned bait shall be used in areas within seventy-five (75) feet of all stream banks. Live traps must be used in these seventy-five (75) foot buffer zone areas and within wetland and woodland areas.



- 2 In areas outside the seventy-five (75) foot zone of protection adjacent to streams, and in areas outside wetlands and woodlands, tamper proof bait stations with poisoned bait shall be placed during the period of construction and any consumed or decomposed bait shall be replenished as directed.
- 3 At least one month prior to initiation of the construction work, and periodically thereafter, live traps and/or rodenticide bait in tamper proof bait stations, as directed above, shall be placed at locations that are inaccessible to pets, human beings, children and other non-target species, particularly wildlife (for example-birds) in the project area.
- 4 The GC Contractor shall be responsible for collecting and disposing of all trapped and poisoned rodents found in live traps and tamper proof bait stations. The GC Contractor shall also be responsible for posting and maintaining signs announcing the baiting of each particular location.  
The GC Contractor shall be responsible for the immediate collection and disposal of any visible rodent remains found on streets or sidewalks within the project area.
- 5 It is anticipated that public complaints will be addressed to the Commissioner. The GC Contractor, where directed by the Commissioner, shall take appropriate actions, like baiting, trapping, proofing, etc., to remedy the source of complaint within the next six (6) hours of normal working time which is defined herein for the purposes of this section as 7 A.M. to 6 P.M. on Mondays through Saturdays.
- 6 Emergency service during the regular workday hours (Monday through Friday) shall be rendered within 24 hours, if requested by the Commissioner, at no additional cost to the City.

**F. EDUCATION & INSTRUCTION:**

- 1 The GC Contractor shall post notices on all Construction Bulletin Boards advising workers, employees, and residents to call the Engineer's Field Office to report any infestation or outbreak of rodents, rats, mice, water beetles, roaches and fleas within the project area. The GC Contractor shall provide and distribute literature pertaining to IPM techniques of rodent control to affected businesses and superintendents of nearby residential buildings to ensure their participation in maintaining their establishments free of unsanitary conditions, harborage removal and rodent proofing.
- 2 Prior to application of any chemicals, the GC Contractor shall furnish to the Commissioner copies or sample labels for each pesticide, antidote information, and Material Data Safety Sheets (MSDS) for each chemical used.

**G. RECORDS:**

1. The GC Contractor shall keep a record of all rodent and waterbug infestation surveys conducted by him/her and make available, upon request, to the Commissioner. The findings of each survey shall include, but not be limited to, recommended Integrated Pest Management (IPM) techniques, like baiting, trapping, proofing, etc., proposed for rodent and waterbug pest control.
2. The GC Contractor shall maintain records of all locations baited along with the type and quantity of rodenticide and insecticide bait used.

**3.15 PLANT PEST CONTROL REQUIREMENTS and TREE PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Plant Pest Control Requirements: The GC Contractor and its subcontractors, including the Certified Arborist described below, shall comply with all Federal and New York State laws and regulations concerning Asian Longhorned Beetle (ALB) management, including protocols for ALB eradication and containment promulgated by the New York State Department of Agriculture and Markets (NYSDAM). The GC Contractor is referred to: (1) Part 139 of Title 1 NYCRR, Agriculture



and Markets Law, Sections 18, 164 and 167, as amended, and (2) State Administrative Procedure Act, Section 202, as amended.

1. All tree work performed within the quarantine areas must be performed by New York State Department of Agriculture and Markets (NYSDAM) certified entities. Transportation of all host material, living, dead, cut or fallen, inclusive of nursery stock, logs, green lumber, stumps, roots, branches and debris of a half inch or more in diameter from the quarantine areas is prohibited unless the GC Contractor or its subcontractor performing tree work has entered into a compliance agreement with NYSDAM. The terms of said compliance agreement shall be strictly complied with. Any host material so removed shall be delivered to a facility approved by NYSDAM. For the purpose of this contract host material shall be ALL species of trees.
  2. Any host material that is infested with the Asian Longhorned Beetle must be immediately reported to NYSDAM for inspection and subsequent removal by either State or City contracts, at no cost to the GC Contractor.
  3. Prior to commencement of tree work, the GC Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner a copy of a valid Asian Longhorned Beetle compliance agreement entered into with NYSDAM and the GC Contractor or its subcontractor performing tree work. If any host material is transported from the quarantine area the GC Contractor shall immediately provide the Commissioner with a copy of the New York State 'Statement of Origin and Disposition' and a copy of the receipt issued by the NYSDAM approved facility to which the host materials are transported.
  4. Quarantine areas, for the purpose of this contract shall be defined as all five boroughs of the City of New York. In addition, prior to the start of any tree work, the GC Contractor shall contact the NYC Department of Parks & Recreation's Director of Landscape Management at (718) 699-6724, to determine the limits of any additional quarantine areas that may be in effect at the time when tree work is to be performed. The quarantine area may be expanded by Federal and State authorities at any time and the GC Contractor is required to abide by any revisions to the quarantine legislation while working on this contract. For further information please contact: NYSDAM (631) 288-1751.
- B. Tree Protection Requirements: The GC Contractor shall retain a Certified Arborist, as defined by New York City Department of Parks and Recreation (NYCDPR) regulations, to provide the services described below.
1. Surveys and Reports: The Certified Arborist shall, at the times indicated below, conduct a survey and prepare a plant material assessment report which includes: (1) identification, by species and pertinent measurements, of all plant material located on the project site, or in proximity to the project site, as described below, including all trees, significant shrubs and/or planting masses; (2) identification and plan for the containment of plant pests and pathogens, including the ALB, as described in paragraph A above; (3) evaluation of the general health and condition of any infected plant material.
  2. Frequency of Reports: The Certified Arborist shall conduct a survey and provide a plant material assessment report at two (2) points in time: (1) prior to the commencement of construction work; and (2) at the time of substantial completion. In addition, for projects exceeding 24 months in duration, the Certified Arborist shall conduct a survey and prepare a report at the midpoint of construction. Copies of each plant material assessment report shall be submitted to the Resident Engineer within two (2) weeks of the survey.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

3. Proximity to Project Site: Off-site trees, significant shrubs and/or planting masses shall be considered to be located in proximity to the project site under the circumstances described below.
    - a. The tree trunk, significant shrub, or primary cluster of stems in a planting mass is within 50 (fifty) feet of the project's Contract Limit Lines (CLLs) or Property Lines (PLs).
    - b. Any part of the tree or shrub stands within 50 (fifty) feet of: (a) a path for site access for vehicles and/or construction equipment; or (b) scaffolding to be erected for construction activity, including façade remediation projects.
    - c. The Certified Arborist determines that the critical root zone (CRZ) of an off-site tree, significant shrub, or primary cluster of stems in a planting mass extends into the project site, whether or not that plant material is located within the 50-foot inclusionary perimeter as outlined above.
  4. Tree Protection Plan: The Certified Arborist shall prepare, and the GC Contractor shall implement, a Tree Protection Plan, for all trees that may be affected by any construction work, excavation or demolition activities, including without limitation, (1) on-site trees, (2) street trees, as defined below, (3) trees under NYCDPR jurisdiction as determined by the Department of Transportation, and (4) all trees that are located in proximity to the project site, as defined above. The Tree Protection Plan shall comply with the NYC DPR rules, regulations and specifications. The GC Contractor is referred to Chapter 5 of Title 56 of the Official Compilation of the Rules of the City of New York. Copies of the Tree Protection Plan shall be submitted to the Resident Engineer prior to the commencement of construction. Implementation of the Tree Protection Plan for street trees and trees under NYCDPR jurisdiction shall be in addition to any tree protection requirements specified or required for the project site. For the purpose of this Sub-Section, a "street tree" means the following: (1) a tree that stands in a sidewalk, whether paved or unpaved, between the curb lines or lateral lines of a roadway and the adjacent property lines of the project site, or (2) a tree that stands in a sidewalk and is located within 50 feet of the intersection of the project's site's property line with the street frontage property line.
- C. No Separate Payment. No separate payment shall be made for compliance with Plant Pest Control Requirements or Tree Protection Requirements. The cost of compliance with Plant Pest Control Requirements and Tree Protection Requirements shall be deemed included in the GC Contractor's bid for the Project.

**3.16 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGNAGE:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall provide, install and maintain Project identification and other signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to the Project.

- B. In order to properly convey notice to persons entering upon a City construction site, the GC Contractor shall furnish and install a sign at the entrance (gates) as follows:

---

**NO TRESPASSING**

**AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY**

---

- C. If no construction fence exists at the site, this notice shall be conveyed by incorporating the above language into safety materials (barriers, tape, and signs).  
D. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.  
E. Maintain and touch up signs so that they are legible at all times.

**3.17 PROJECT CONSTRUCTION SIGN AND RENDERING:**

**A. PROJECT SIGN:**

- 1 Responsibility: The GC Contractor shall produce and install one (1) project sign which shall be posted and maintained upon the site of the project at a place and in a position directed by the Commissioner. The GC Contractor shall protect the sign from damage during the continuance of work under the Contract and shall do all patching of lettering, painting and bracing thereof necessary to maintain the sign in first class condition and in proper position. Prior to fabrication, the GC Contractor shall submit an 8-1/2" x 11" color match print proof from the sign manufacturer of the completed sign for approval by the Commissioner.
- 2 Sign Quality: The GC Contractor shall provide all materials required for the production of the sign as specified herein. Workmanship shall be of the best quality, free from defects and shall be produced in a timely manner.
- 3 Schedule: Upon project mobilization, the GC Contractor shall commence production and installation of the sign.
- 4 Removal: At the completion of all work under the Contract, the GC Contractor shall remove and dispose of the project sign away from the site.
- 5 Sign construction:
  - a. Frame: The frame shall be from quality dressed 2"x2" pine, fire retardant, pressure treated lumber, that surrounds the inside back edge of the sign. The sign shall have one (1) intermediate vertical and two (2) diagonal supports, glued and screwed for rigidity. Frame shall be painted white with two (2) coats of exterior enamel paint, prior to mounting of sign panel.
  - b. Edging: U-shaped, 22 gauge aluminum edging, with a white enameled finish to match sign background, shall run around entire edging of sign panel and frame. Corners shall be mitered for a tight fit. Channel dimensions shall be 1" inch (overlap to sign panel face) x 1 3/4" (or as required across frame depth) x 1" (back overlap).
  - c. Sign Panel: 4' x 8' panel shall be constructed in one (1) piece of 14 gauge (.0785") 6061-T6 aluminum. This panel shall be pre-finished both sides with a glossy white baked-on enamel finish and be flush with edge of 2" x 2" wood frame. Samples must be submitted for approval.
  - d. Fastening: Fasten sign panel to wood frame using cadmium plated no. 8 sheet metal screws at 1/2" below edge of panel and 8" on center. The U-shaped aluminum channel



On March 14, 2016 Mayor de Blasio signed into law Int. No 883-A, a Local Law to amend the administrative code of the city of New York, in relation to requiring advertising and other materials pertaining to public events to include information regarding accessibility for people with disabilities. This bill requires that all advertisements, posters, invitations, and other publicity materials for events open to the public hosted by city agencies contain information on who to contact for information regarding accessibility at the event, and a deadline for when requests for accommodations for people with disabilities must be received by the event's organizer.

If accessibility requirements apply to your ad, please check all relevant accessibility items below.

ACCESSIBILITY NOT APPLICABLE

	<input type="checkbox"/>	WHEEL CHAIR		<input type="checkbox"/>	ASSISTIVE LISTENING (EAR)
	<input type="checkbox"/>	BLIND OR LOW VISION	<b>Large Print</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	LARGE PRINT
	<input type="checkbox"/>	AUDIO DESCRIPTION FOR TV, FILM		<input type="checkbox"/>	UNIVERSAL INFORMATION
	<input type="checkbox"/>	TELEPHONE TYPEWRITER		<input type="checkbox"/>	HEARING WITH T-COIL
	<input type="checkbox"/>	ASSISTIVE LISTENING (PHONE)	<b>CC</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	CLOSE CAPTIONING
	<input type="checkbox"/>	SIGN LANGUAGE INTERPRETATION		<input type="checkbox"/>	BRAILLE
	<input type="checkbox"/>	OPEN CAPTIONING		<input type="checkbox"/>	COMMUNICATION ACCESS REAL TIME TRANSLATION

PERSON TO CONTACT WITH QUESTIONS ABOUT ACCESSIBILITY:

MELISSA WU, DISABILITY SERVICE FACILITATOR  
NAME

718.397.2815 / WU@DDC.NYC.GOV  
PHONE NUMBER/EMAIL ADDRESS



For accessibility requests or inquiries, contact (718) 391-2815 or [DDCEEO@ddc.nyc.gov](mailto:DDCEEO@ddc.nyc.gov), by \_\_\_\_\_

Insert date\*

\*Accessibility requests must be submitted at least 10 calendar days before each Bid opening.



shall be applied over the wood frame edge and fastened with cadmium plated no. 8 sheet metal screws at 12" on center around the entire perimeter.

6 Sign Graphics:

- a. A digital file of the project sign will be provided to the GC Contractor by the Commissioner's representative for printing. The Commissioner's representative shall insert the project name and names and titles of personnel (3 or more) and any other required information associated with the project. All signs may include a second panel for a project rendering as described in Sub-Section 3.17.B herein.
- b. The digital file shall be reproduced at the Sign Panel size of 4' x 8' on 3M High Performance Vinyl or approved equal. The 3M High Performance Vinyl or equivalent shall be guaranteed for nine (9) years. Guarantee must cover fading, peeling, chipping or cracking. The sign manufacturer is required to maintain all specified Pantone Matching System (PMS) type and other composition elements represented in the digital file of the project sign.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.17 B**

B. PROJECT RENDERING:

1. Responsibility: In addition to the Project Sign, the GC Contractor shall furnish and install one (1) sign showing a rendering of the project. A digital file of the project rendering will be provided to the GC Contractor by the Commissioner's representative. From an approved image file provided by DDC, the Project Rendering is to be sized, printed, and mounted in an identical manner as described in Sub-Section 3.17 A above for the Project Sign. A color match print proof from the sign manufacturer of the Rendering Sign printed from the supplied file is to be submitted to DDC for approval before fabrication. The Rendering Sign is to be posted at the same height as the Project Sign. Where possible, the Rendering Sign shall be mounted with a perfect match of the short sides of the rectangle so that the Rendering Sign and the Project Sign together will create one long rectangle.
2. Removal: At the completion of all work under the Contract, the GC Contractor shall remove and dispose of the project rendering away from the site.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.18**

3.18

**SECURITY GUARDS/FIRE GUARDS ON SITE:**

A. SECURITY GUARDS (WATCHMEN):

1. The GC Contractor shall provide competent Security Guards on the site until final acceptance of the project or earlier if so notified in writing by the Commissioner. The Security Service shall commence with the start of work. There shall be no less than one (1) Security Guard on duty every day, including Saturdays, Sunday and Holidays, 24 hours a day, except between the hours of 8:00 A.M. and 4:00 P.M. on any day which is a regular working day for a majority of the trades. This exception during the working day shall not apply after the finishing painting of the plaster work is commenced; thereafter, not less than one (1) Security Guard shall be on duty continuously, 24 hours a day, until final completion of the project or earlier if so notified in writing by the Commissioner.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

2. Every Security Guard shall be required to hold a "Certificate of Fitness" issued by the Fire Department. Every Security Guard shall, during his/her tour of duty, perform the duties of Fire Guard in addition to his/her security obligations.
  3. Should the Commissioner find that any Security Guard is unsatisfactory, such guard shall be replaced by the GC Contractor upon the written demand of the Commissioner.
  4. Each Security Guard furnished by the GC Contractor shall be instructed by the GC Contractor to include in their duties the entire construction site including the Field Office, temporary structures, and equipment, materials, etc.
  5. Should any Contractor consider the security requirements outlined above inadequate, that Contractor shall provide such additional security as it thinks necessary, after obtaining the written consent of the Commissioner. The additional cost of such approved increased protection will be paid by the Contractor who provides the additional protection.
  6. Nothing contained in this Sub-Section shall diminish in any way the responsibility of each Contractor for its own work, materials, tools, equipment, nor for any of the other risks and obligations outlined hereinbefore in this Sub-Section.
- B. **COSTS** - The GC Contractor shall employ Security Guards/Fire Guards at all times, except as otherwise modified by the detailed Specifications and as approved by the Commissioner, for the purpose of safeguarding and protecting the site. All costs for Security Guards/Fire Guards shall be borne by the GC Contractor.
- C. **RESPONSIBILITY** - All Contractors will be responsible for safeguarding and protecting their own work, materials, tools and equipment.

**3.19 SAFETY:**

- A. Each Contractor, in compliance with requirements of Section 01 35 26, SAFETY REQUIREMENTS PROCEDURES, shall provide and maintain all necessary temporary closures, guard rails, and barricades to adequately protect all workers and the public from possible injury. Any removal of these items, during the progress of the work, shall be replaced by the GC Contractor at no additional cost to the City.

**END OF SECTION 01 50 00**



**SECTION 01 54 11  
TEMPORARY ELEVATORS AND HOISTS**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This section includes the following:
  - 1. Temporary Use, Operation and Maintenance of Elevators during Construction
    - a. For New buildings up to 15 Stories
    - b. For New buildings over 15 Stories
    - c. For Existing Buildings
  - 2. Temporary Construction Hoists and Hoist ways (For Material and Personnel)

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** include without limitation the following:

- A. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
- B. Section 01 42 00 REFERENCES
- C. Section 01 50 00 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES AND CONTROLS
- D. Section 01 54 23 TEMPORARY SCAFFOLDS AND SWING STAGING
- E. Section 01 77 00 CLOSE OUT PROCEDURES

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.1**

**3.1 TEMPORARY USE, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF ELEVATORS DURING CONSTRUCTION FOR NEW BUILDINGS UP TO AND INCLUDING 15 STORIES:**

- A. **INSTALLATION:** The GC Contractor shall install, complete, operate, and maintain in good working order, as indicated herein, one (1) selected main elevator for the transport of employees of all Contractors and representatives of the DDC and other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction of work at the project. The GC Contractor shall furnish, install and maintain such elevator in good working order, including all necessary hoisting ropes, governor cables, traveling conductor cables, operating devices, temporary hand reset target annunciators, temporary signal devices, and all other permanent or temporary parts. The installation, operation and maintenance of the temporary elevator and all equipment and/or parts utilized in connection therewith shall be in accordance with the rules and regulations of all agencies and/or entities having jurisdiction over elevators in temporary use.



- B. **RESPONSIBILITY:** The GC Contractor shall be responsible for any injury to persons or damage to property arising out of the temporary elevator and all equipment and/or parts utilized in connection therewith.
- C. **COSTS:** The GC Contractor shall be responsible for all costs in connection with the temporary elevator, including without limitation: (1) installing and operating the temporary elevator, (2) maintaining the temporary elevator in clean, proper operating condition, including the cost of lubricants and/or parts for such maintenance, (3) performing all work in pits, shaft ways and machine rooms necessary for the operation of the temporary elevator, (4) replacing the temporary elevator or any equipment or parts utilized in connection therewith, if required, due to damage, destruction or excessive wear or corrosion, except for the replacement of hoisting ropes as set forth below, (5) performing all required electrical work in connection with the temporary elevator, (6) providing all electric power required to operate the temporary elevator, (7) providing all necessary conduit and wiring connections for the proper operation and signaling of the temporary elevator, and (8) providing all labor for the operation and maintenance of the temporary elevator, including on an overtime basis if necessary. The total Contract Price shall include all costs in connection with the temporary elevator, including without limitation, the costs specified herein. The Electrical Contractor shall pay the costs of all electrical current used for operating the temporary elevators.
- D. **ACTIVATION TIME:** The GC Contractor shall keep the temporary elevator activated from a period of time of 15 minutes before the established starting time of that trade which starts work earliest in the morning to 15 minutes after the established quitting time of that trade which stops work latest in the evening. This applies to every day in the week, which is established as a regular working day for the aforementioned trades.
- E. **COMMENCEMENT OF SERVICE:** The GC Contractor shall begin to provide temporary elevator service using the selected main passenger elevator no later than eight (8) weeks (40 working days) after the machine room roof slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed. No later than three (3) weeks (15 working days) after the machine room roof slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed the following work shall have been completed:
1. The shaft shall have been completely enclosed by either the permanent or a temporary enclosure meeting the requirements of the law.
  2. The machine room shall have been made completely watertight either by permanent or temporary construction. Beams or other devices, either permanent or temporary shall be provided which will enable the safe and practicable hoisting of the elevator machinery for installation.
  3. There shall have been installed on all floors at the shaft way entrances to the elevator, solid substantial frames and either sliding or swing doors with substantial hardware and door locks and any necessary approved wire mesh barricades for adjacent shaft ways.
  4. There shall have been furnished and installed solid substantial enclosures at front, back, sides and top of car platform enclosure, with emergency exit at top of car, excepting that the portion of the front at the elevator entrance shall have been provided with a substantial temporary door or gate.
- F. **ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION:** The Electrical Contractor, not later than 20 calendar days after the machine room roof slab or that portion of its surrounding the elevator has been placed, shall have furnished and installed temporary or permanent power and light feeders as required for the elevator used for temporary service and shall have connected such feeders to the terminals on the starter panels or controllers in the machine room to the low voltage transformers and car light outlets in the center of shaftway and for the car control and signal traveling cables. The Electrical Contractor shall make all these required connections as soon as the equipment is declared ready for such connections by the Resident Engineer.
- G. **REMOVAL:** When elevators for permanent use have been installed and are in condition for service, and when directed by the Commissioner, the GC Contractor shall remove the temporary enclosures and all



- temporary elevator equipment and promptly proceed with the installation of the permanent equipment as required under the Contract.
- H. **INSPECTION:** Before temporary elevator equipment is removed, a joint inspection of the equipment shall be made by the GC Contractor and the Commissioner to determine the condition of this equipment upon the discontinuation of its temporary use. If this inspection deems it necessary, the GC Contractor shall furnish and install new governor and compensating ropes, new traveling cables and new controller parts, etc. The car and counterweight safeties shall be thoroughly cleaned of all dirt and all foreign matter, then properly lubricated and placed in good operating condition to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. If it is determined and ordered by the Commissioner that new hoist ropes are required, such ropes shall be installed and payment therefore will be made in accordance with Article 26 of the Contract.
- I. **REPLACEMENT:** The GC Contractor shall furnish and install new equipment or parts of the temporary elevator installation that have been damaged, destroyed, or that indicate excessive wear or corrosion, excepting the replacement of hoisting ropes. All shaft ways, pits, motor rooms and sheave spaces used for temporary operation of elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned. Where lubricated rails are used they shall be washed down. If roller guides are used, all rust, dirt, etc., must be moved from the rails. The full cost of parts replacement, cleaning, etc., shall be borne by the GC Contractor except for the replacement of hoisting ropes.
- J. **LIMITATIONS OF USE:** The temporary elevator shall not be used during its operation for the hoisting of materials or the removal of rubbish, but shall be limited only to the transportation of employees of all Contractors and the representatives of DDC and other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction of work at the project. However, the Resident Engineer may grant special permission at specified times to the various Contractors to hoist materials, which in the Resident Engineer's opinion will not overload or damage the elevator installation, but only after such times as all plastering has been completed from the second floor up. The particular Contractor using the elevator for the hoisting of its material shall be responsible for any damage to the elevator during the entire period of such use. The GC Contractor shall give notification in writing to the Resident Engineer of any alleged damage to the elevator installation within 24 hours after the elevator has been employed for the hoisting of materials by the particular Contractor(s). As indicated above the GC Contractor shall be responsible for the replacement of any equipment or parts of the temporary elevator that have been damaged.
- K. **PAYMENT FOR USE:** The GC Contractor shall be paid for its operation and maintenance of the temporary elevator or permanent elevator used for temporary service at the daily rate indicated under the Item of its Contract. All other costs in connection with the elevator installation and equipment, excepting electrical work done by the Electrical Contractor under its Contract, shall be included in the Total Bid price submitted by the GC Contractor.
- L. **LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:** The GC Contractor will be charged at the rate of \$100 per day for each day it fails to provide the temporary elevator service described in this section beginning with the 41<sup>st</sup> working day after the machine room roof slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed and stripped. This charge will be deducted from any amount due and owing to the GC Contractor.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.2**

**3.2 TEMPORARY USE, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF ELEVATORS DURING CONSTRUCTION FOR NEW BUILDING OVER 15 STORIES:**

- A. **INSTALLATION:** The GC Contractor shall install, complete, operate, and maintain in good working order, as indicated herein, two (2) selected main elevators for the transport of employees of all Contractors and representatives of the DDC and other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction over work at the project. The GC Contractor shall furnish, install, and maintain such elevators in good working order, including all necessary hoisting ropes, governor cables, traveling conductor cables, operating devices, temporary hand reset target annunciators, temporary signal devices, and all other permanent or temporary parts.



The installation, operation and maintenance of the temporary elevators and all equipment and/or parts utilized in connection therewith shall be in accordance with the rules and regulations of all agencies and/or entities having jurisdiction over elevators in temporary use. The two (2) elevators shall not be operated simultaneously.

- B. **RESPONSIBILITY:** The GC Contractor shall be responsible for any injury to persons or damage to property arising out of the temporary elevators and all equipment and/or parts utilized in connection therewith.
- C. **COSTS:** The GC Contractor shall be responsible for all costs in connection with the temporary elevator, including without limitation: (1) installing and operating the temporary elevators, (2) maintaining the temporary elevators in clean, proper operating condition, including the cost of lubricants and/or parts for such maintenance, (3) performing all work in pits, shaft ways and machine rooms necessary for the operation of the temporary elevators, (4) replacing the temporary elevators or any equipment or parts utilized in connection therewith, if required, due to damage, destruction or excessive wear or corrosion, except for the replacement of hoisting ropes as set forth below, (5) performing all required electrical work in connection with the temporary elevator, (6) providing all electric power required to operate the temporary elevators, (7) providing all necessary conduit and wiring connections for the proper operation and signaling of the temporary elevator, and (8) providing all labor for the operation and maintenance of the temporary elevators, including on an overtime basis if necessary. The total Contract Price shall include all costs in connection with the temporary elevators, including without limitation, the costs specified herein. The Electrical Contractor shall pay the costs of all electrical current used for operating the temporary elevators.
- D. **ACTIVATION TIME:** The GC Contractor shall keep the temporary elevator activated from a period of time of 15 minutes before the established starting time of that trade which starts work earliest in the morning to 15 minutes after the established quitting time of that trade which stops work latest in the evening. This applies to every day in the week, which is established as a regular working day for the aforementioned trades.
- E. **LOW RISE ELEVATOR:** The GC Contractor shall begin to provide temporary elevator service using one (1) selected main passenger elevator no later than six (6) weeks (30 working days) after the 12th Floor slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed and stripped. No later than one (1) week, five (5) working days, after the 12th Floor slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed and stripped the following work shall have been completed:
1. The shaft shall have been completely enclosed up to the 12th Floor by either the permanent or a temporary enclosure meeting the requirements of the law.
  2. A temporary machine room enclosure shall have been provided at the 11th Floor and shall have been made completely watertight either by permanent or temporary construction. Beams or other devices, either permanent or temporary, shall be provided which will enable the safe and practicable hoisting of the elevator machinery for installation.
  3. There shall have been installed on all floors up to and including the 9th Floor at the shaft entrances to the elevator, solid substantial wood frames and either sliding or swing doors with substantial hardware and door locks, also any necessary approved wire mesh barricades for adjacent shaft ways.
  4. There shall have been furnished and installed solid substantial enclosures at front, back, sides and top of car platform enclosure, with an emergency exit at top of car, excepting that the portion of the front at the elevator entrance shall have been provided with a substantial temporary door or gate.
- F. **ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION:** The Electrical Contractor, not later than 10 calendar days after the 12th Floor slab or that portion of it surrounding the elevator, has been poured and stripped, shall have furnished and installed temporary or permanent power and light feeders as required for the elevator used for temporary service and shall have connected such feeders to the terminals on the starter panels or



controllers in the temporary machine room, to the low voltage transformers and car light outlets in the center of the shaftway and for the car control and signal traveling cables. The Electrical Contractor shall make all these required connections as soon as the Equipment is declared ready for such connections by the Resident Engineer.

- G. **HIGH RISE ELEVATOR:** The GC Contractor shall begin to provide temporary elevator service to all floors, using a selected main passenger elevator, no later than eight (8) weeks (40 working days) after the machine room roof slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed. No later than three (3) weeks (15 working days) after the machine room roof slab, or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed, the following work shall have been completed:
1. The shaft shall have been completely enclosed by either the permanent or temporary enclosure, meeting the requirements of the law.
  2. The machine room shall have been made completely watertight either by permanent or temporary construction. Beams or other devices, either permanent or temporary shall be provided which will enable the safe and practicable hoisting of the elevator machinery for installation.
  3. There shall have been installed on all floors at the shaftway entrances to the elevator, solid substantial frames and either sliding or swing doors with substantial hardware and door locks, also any necessary approved wire mesh barricades for adjacent shaftways.
  4. There shall have been furnished and installed, solid substantial enclosures at front, back, sides and top of car platform enclosure, with an emergency exit at top of car, excepting that the portion of the front at the elevator entrance shall have been provided with a substantial temporary door or gate.
- H. **ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION:** The Electrical Contractor, not later than 20 calendar days after the machine room slab or that portion of it surrounding the elevator shaft has been placed, shall have furnished and installed temporary or permanent power and light feeders as required for the high rise elevator to be used for temporary service and shall have connected such feeders to the terminals on the motor-generator starter panels or controllers in the machine room, to the signal circuits low voltage transformers for the annunciators and car light outlets in the center of shaft way. The Electrical Contractor shall make all these required connections as soon as the equipment is declared ready for such connections by the Resident Engineer.
- I. When the high rise elevator is completed and ready for temporary operation, the low rise temporary elevator shall be shut down.
- J. **REMOVAL:** When one (1) or more elevators for permanent use have been installed and are in condition for service, and when directed by the Commissioner, the GC Contractor shall remove the temporary enclosures and all temporary elevator equipment, and promptly proceed with the installation of the permanent equipment as required under the Contract.
- K. **INSPECTION:** Before temporary elevator equipment is removed, a joint inspection of the equipment shall be made by the GC Contractor and the Commissioner to determine the condition of this equipment upon the discontinuation of its temporary use. If this inspection determines it necessary, the GC Contractor shall furnish and install new governor and compensating ropes, new traveling cables, new controller parts, etc. The car and counterweight safeties shall be thoroughly cleaned of all dirt and all foreign matter, then properly lubricated and placed in good operating condition to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. If it is determined and ordered by the Commissioner that new hoist ropes are required, such ropes shall be installed and payment therefore will be made in accordance with Article 26 of the Contract.
- L. **REPLACEMENT:** The GC Contractor shall furnish and install new equipment or parts for any equipment or parts of the temporary elevator installations that were damaged, destroyed, or that indicate excessive wear or corrosion, excepting the replacement of hoisting ropes. All shaft ways, pits, motor rooms and sheaves spaces used for temporary operation of elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned down. Where



lubricated rails are used they shall be washed down, if roller guides are used, all rust, dirt, etc., must be removed from the rails. The full cost of parts replacement cleaning, etc., shall be borne by the GC Contractor except for the replacement of hoisting ropes.

- M. **LIMITATIONS OF USE:** The temporary elevator shall not be used during its operation for the hoisting of materials or the removal of rubbish, but shall be limited only to the transportation of employees of all Contractors and the representatives of DDC and other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction of work at the project. However, the Resident Engineer may grant special permission at specified times to the various Contractors to hoist materials, which in the Resident Engineer's opinion will not overload or damage the elevator installation, but only after such times as all plastering has been completed from the second floor up. The particular Contractor using the elevator for the hoisting of its material shall be responsible for any damage to the elevator during the entire period of such use. The GC Contractor shall give notification in writing to the Resident Engineer of any alleged damage to the elevator installation within 24 hours after the elevator has been employed for the hoisting of materials by the other Contractors. As indicated above the GC Contractor shall be responsible for the replacement of any equipment or parts of the temporary elevator that have been damaged.
- N. **PAYMENT FOR USE:** The GC Contractor shall be paid for its operation and maintenance of each temporary elevator or permanent elevator used for temporary service at the daily rate indicated under the item of its Contract. All other costs in connection with elevator installation and equipment, excepting Electrical Work done by the Electrical Contractor under its Contract, shall be included in the Total Bid Price submitted by the Electrical Contractor for Electrical Work.
- O. **LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:** The GC Contractor will be charged at the rate of \$100 per day for each day it fails to provide the temporary elevator service described in this Section beginning with the 31st working day after the 12th Floor slab, or that portion of the 12th Floor slab surrounding the elevator shaft, has been placed and stripped. This charge will be deducted from any amount due and owing to the GC Contractor.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.3**

**3.3**

**TEMPORARY USE, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF ELEVATORS DURING CONSTRUCTION FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS:**

- A. The GC Contractor may use, at the Commissioner's discretion, one (1) selected elevator in the project for temporary operation by the GC Contractor for the transportation of employees of all Contractors and representatives of DDC and other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction over work at the Project. The operation of the temporary elevator and all equipment and/or parts utilized in connection therewith shall be in accordance with the rules and regulations of all agencies and/or entities having jurisdiction over elevators in temporary use.
- B. **RESPONSIBILITY:** The GC Contractor shall be responsible for any injury to persons or damage to property arising out of the temporary elevator and all equipment and/or parts utilized in connection therewith.
- C. **ACTIVATION TIME:** The GC Contractor shall keep the temporary elevator activated from a period of time of 15 minutes before the established starting time of that trade which starts work earliest in the morning to 15 minutes after the established quitting time of that trade which stops work latest in the evening. This applies to every day in the week, which is established as a regular working day for the aforementioned trades.
- D. **REPLACEMENT:** The GC Contractor shall furnish and install new equipment or parts for any equipment or parts of the elevator for temporary operation that were damaged, destroyed, or that indicate excessive wear or corrosion, excepting the replacement of hoisting ropes. All shaft ways, pits, motor rooms and sheave spaces used for temporary operation of elevators shall be thoroughly cleaned down. Where



lubricated rails are used they shall be washed down, if roller guides are used, all rust, dirt, etc., must be moved from the rails. The full cost of parts replacement, cleaning, etc., shall be borne by the GC Contractor except for the replacement of hoisting ropes. If it is determined and ordered by the Commissioner that new hoist ropes are requested, such ropes shall be installed and payment therefore will be made in accordance with Article 26 of the Contract.

- E. **LIMITATIONS OF USE:** The temporary elevator shall not be used during its operation for the hoisting of materials or the removal of rubbish, but shall be limited only to the transportation of employees of all Contractors and the representative of DDC and other Governmental Agencies having jurisdiction of work at the project. However, the Resident Engineer may grant special permission at specified times to the various Contractors to hoist materials which, in the Resident Engineer's opinion, will not overload or damage the elevator installation. The particular Contractor using the elevator for the hoisting of its material shall be responsible for any damage to the elevator during the entire period of such use. The GC Contractor shall give notification in writing to the Resident Engineer of any alleged employed for the hoisting of materials by the particular Contractor(s). As indicated above the GC Contractor shall be responsible for the replacement of any equipment or parts of the temporary elevator that have been damaged.
- F. **COSTS:** The GC Contractor shall pay all costs for the operation and maintenance of the elevator for temporary operation. All other costs in connection with the elevator and equipment excepting electrical work done by the Electrical Contractor under its Contract, shall be included in the Total Bid price submitted by the GC Contractor.
- G. **LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:** The GC Contractor will be charged at the rate of \$100 per day for each day it fails to provide elevator services described in this section beginning with 15 consecutive calendar days from notice to proceed. This charge will be deducted from any amount due and owing to the GC Contractor.

#### 3.4 **TEMPORARY HOISTS AND HOISTWAYS (FOR MATERIAL AND PERSONNEL):**

- A. **RESPONSIBILITY:** The GC Contractor shall provide adequate numbers of material hoists for the most expeditious performance of all parts of its work. All other Contractors are required to provide their own facilities for the hoisting of materials under their respective Contracts. However, these Contractors may make arrangements, whenever possible, with the GC Contractor for the use of its hoist upon such terms and conditions as it may prescribe.
- B. **LOCATIONS:** No hoists shall be constructed at such locations as will interfere with, or affect the construction of, floor arches, or the work of other Contractors. The hoists may be located at the exterior sides of the structure or in the courtyard and extend upward adjacent to the line of window openings. The hoists shall be located a sufficient distance from the exterior walls and be so protected as to prevent any of the permanent work from being damaged, stained or marred.
- C. **ELEVATOR SHAFT:** Wherever possible, one or more of the permanent elevator shafts may be used as temporary hoist ways, providing such use complies with the requirements of the Building Code of the City of New York and has been approved by the Commissioner, and providing further it entails no interference with the progress of the work of any Contractor.
- D. **PROTECTION FOR INTERIOR HOISTS:** All interior material hoist ways shall be enclosed on each floor and shall be adequately protected with appropriate safety guards. In no event shall the protection be less than that required by law.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Division 01 – DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS  
Issue Date - January 15, 2015

END OF SECTION 01 54 11

TEMPORARY ELEVATORS AND HOISTS  
01 54 11 - 8



**SECTION 01 54 23**  
**TEMPORARY SCAFFOLDING AND PLATFORMS**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].
- B. Section 01 35 26: Safety Requirements Procedures.
- C. Each Contractor shall comply with the requirements of "*The City of New York Department of Design and Construction Safety Requirements*". This document is included in the Information for Bidders.

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and general procedural requirements for Temporary Scaffolding and Platforms, including:
  - 1. Conformance
  - 2. Responsibility
  - 3. Jobsite Documentation and Submittals
  - 4. Inspections
- B. This Section governs ALL scaffold used on DDC project sites including, but not limited to, Suspended Scaffold, Supported Scaffold and Sidewalk Sheds.

**1.3 CONFORMANCE:**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, the GC Contractor is responsible for providing, erecting, installing and maintaining all temporary scaffolding and platforms which shall comply with requirements of Chapter 33 (Safeguards During Construction or Demolition) of the NYC Building Code, NYC Local Law 52 of 2005, OSHA Construction Standard 1926 Subpart L, and furnishing the items and personnel set forth in this section.

**1.4 RESPONSIBILITY:**

- A. Jobsite Safety Coordinator: The GC Contractor shall designate and employ a Jobsite Safety Coordinator, who shall be a competent person, who shall have a daily presence on the project site during scaffold use. This designee must possess and maintain a valid New York City Department of Buildings supported scaffold certificate of completion. An alternate shall also be designated, in the event that the Jobsite Safety Coordinator is absent. The Jobsite Safety Coordinator shall:
  - 1. Verify completeness of documentation and submittals (as described below).
  - 2. Verify that inspections are performed, including pull tests (see below), reports are filed and reported deficiencies are corrected.
  - 3. Monitor trades using scaffold.
  - 4. Limit access to scaffold areas that are tagged for non-use.
  - 5. Inform trades of scaffold load limitations.
  - 6. Monitor loading of decks.
  - 7. Verify that any ties that are temporarily removed are properly restored in the same shift.
  - 8. Verify that outriggers and planks that are moved are properly set up and secured.
  - 9. Verify that all scaffold decks in use have proper access/egress.
  - 10. Verify that all open sides of decks in excess of 14 inches have proper guardrails and toe-boards.



11. Notify appropriate parties, including but not limited to the Resident Engineer, site safety coordinator / monitor, site safety consultant, scaffold users, contractor and the scaffold engineer, of misuses, non-conformances, hazards and accidents.
  12. Keep a log of significant actions and events connected with the scaffolding.
- B. The GC Contractor shall be responsible for erection, maintenance and dismantling of the scaffold / shed in conformance with the New York City Building Code and OSHA requirements, contract documents and engineering specifications. The GC Contractor shall also be guided by generally accepted standards of scaffold industry practice as promulgated by the Scaffold Industry Association.
- C. The GC Contractor shall require the subcontractor responsible for erecting the scaffolding to engage a Scaffold Engineer, licensed as a professional engineer by the State of New York. The Scaffold Engineer shall be responsible to ensure the following: (1) that the installation design is in compliance with requirements of the New York City Building Code and OSHA, (2) that the design comports with the capabilities of the components and the characteristics of the site, (3) that scaffold loads on the host building, including netting, have been properly considered, and (4) that the design documents provide accurate information for erectors and users.
- D. Scaffold users are trade contractors assigned to work on the scaffold. Training certificates from a New York City Department of Buildings approved training provider are mandatory. These users have the duty to become familiar with the New York City Building Code and OSHA requirements germane to users, to obey the instructions of the Jobsite Safety Coordinator and inform the Jobsite Safety Coordinator of known hazards, non-conformances or violations.

## 1.5

### JOBSITE DOCUMENTATION AND SUBMITTALS:

The GC Contractor shall prepare, obtain and submit the following to the Resident Engineer:

- A. NYC Department of Buildings permit(s) for scaffold and sidewalk sheds (as applicable) including filing applications signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York;
- B. Site logistics plan / site safety plan;
- C. Installation drawing(s), design and product data to be provided for all scaffold(s) and shed(s) must include, at a minimum:
  1. Plan(s);
  2. Elevation(s);
  3. Duty load designation; "standard" (150 psf live load) or "heavy duty" (300 psf live load).
  4. Details including base support, anchors and ties;
  5. Notes and specifications including load limits, number of planked levels, tie spacing, netting, and sequence of installation and removal.
  6. Anchorage into sound material.
  7. Load limits based on pull tests;
  8. Specifications for pull test(s), method, proof load and the number of trials;
  9. Elevations, levels or heights, where anchorage is made into masonry;
  10. Specifications for frames, planks, screw jacks, anchors, and any other ancillary hardware;
  11. Samples for anchors, ties and netting;
  12. Sequence of operations for erection and demolition;
  13. Location plan, heights, widths, "jumps" over doorways and driveways;
  14. Specify size, maximum span and maximum spacing of headers and stringers;
  15. Specify legs, girts, braces, nailing and connections;
  16. All sidewalk sheds shall be designed, engineered, signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York;
    - a. Generic (not job specific) engineering drawings are satisfactory for standard sheds and arrangements.



- b. Special engineering is required for custom sheds, site-specific problems or non-standard arrangements.

**1.6 INSPECTIONS:**

- A. Signed inspection reports shall be issued for each inspection and pull-test below, and shall be logged and maintained on site by the Jobsite Safety Coordinator for the duration of the project.
- B. Pull testing shall be required during design, and during or post erection, where anchorage is made into masonry. The Scaffold Engineer shall specify the test method, proof load and the number of trials.
- C. Sidewalk sheds shall be inspected after initial installation, major modification, or damage and thence every three months. Inspections shall be by a Scaffold Engineer for custom sheds and by a Competent Person employed by the GC Contractor for standard sheds.
- D. Scaffolds shall be inspected by the Scaffold Engineer during erection, post-erection and prior to use and thence every three months. The Scaffold Engineer shall repeat inspections after major alteration/modification, damage.
- E. A Qualified Person assigned by the GC Contractor shall inspect the progress of erection and dismantling, and the condition and integrity of the sidewalk sheds after high winds, major storms and at least once per month during usage.
- F. A Qualified Person assigned by the GC Contractor shall inspect the progress of erection and dismantling at least weekly, and the condition and integrity of the scaffold after high winds, major storms and at least once per month during usage.
- G. Scaffolds and Sidewalk Sheds shall be inspected daily by the Jobsite Safety Coordinator or alternate prior to use by scaffold users. The inspection results must be recorded in the maintenance log, available on-site at all times.
- H. At the completion of the project, submit all inspection documents as Miscellaneous Record Documents in accordance with Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS.

**1.7 LADDERS AND STAIRS:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall provide and maintain ladders or temporary stairs extending from the street to the first story, and to and from every floor and roof level of the project.

**1.8 ACCESS AND EXITS:**

- A. The ladders or temporary stairs shall be of acceptable size, number and location, so that proper and convenient access may be had by those required to proceed to and from all parts of the project.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 54 23**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**SECTION 01 73 00**  
**EXECUTION**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including without limitation the following:
1. Delivery of Materials
  2. Contractor's Superintendent
  3. Surveys
  4. Borings
  5. Examination
  6. Preparation
  7. Deferred Construction
  8. Installation
  9. Permits
  10. Transportation
  11. Sleeves and Hangers
  12. Sleeve and Hanger Drawings
  13. Cutting and Patching
  14. Location of Partitions
  15. Furniture and Equipment
  16. Removal of Rubbish and Surplus Material
  17. Cleaning
  18. Security And Protection of Work Site
  19. Maintenance of Site and Adjoining Property
  20. Maintenance of Project Site
  21. Safety Precautions for Control Circuits
  22. Obstructions in Drainage Lines

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |  |
|----|------------------|--|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY                                  |
| B. | Section 01 31 00 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION      |
| C. | Section 01 33 00 | SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES                     |
| D. | Section 01 74 19 | CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL |
| E. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES                      |
| F. | Section 01 78 39 | CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS                |



#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is licensed in the State of New York and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

### PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

### PART III – EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DELIVERY OF MATERIALS:

- A. Material Orders: Each Contractor shall furnish to the Commissioner a copy of each material order, indicating date of order and quantity of material, and shall also notify the Commissioner when materials have been delivered to the site and in what quantities.
- B. Ample Quantities: Each Contractor shall deliver materials in ample quantities to insure the most prompt and uninterrupted progress of the work so as to complete the work within the Contract time.
- C. Containers: The manufacturer's containers shall be delivered with unbroken seals and shall bear proper labels.
- D. Each Contractor shall coordinate Deliveries: in order to avoid delaying or impeding the progress of the work of any related Contractor.
- E. Handling: Each Contractor shall provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling or damage.
  - 1. Promptly inspect shipments to assure products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.
  - 2. Promptly return damaged shipments or incorrect orders to manufacturer.
  - 3. For materials or equipment to be reused or salvaged, use special care in removal, storage and reinstallation to insure proper function in completed work.
- F. Storage: Store products in accordance with provisions of Sub-Section 3.1, and periodically inspect to assure that stored products are undamaged and are maintained under required conditions.
- G. Stacking: All materials shall be properly stacked in convenient places adjacent to the site, or where directed, and protected in a satisfactory manner. Stacked materials shall be so arranged as to not interfere with visibility of traffic control devices.
- H. Overloading: If authority is given to store materials in any part of the project area, they shall be so stored as to cause no overloading.
- I. No Interference: If it becomes necessary to remove and restack materials to avoid impeding the progress of any part of the work or interfering with the work to be done by any other Contractor, the relevant Contractor shall remove and restack such materials at no additional cost to the City.



**3.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SUPERINTENDENT:**

- A. Contractor's Construction Superintendent: Each Contractor shall devote its time and personal attention to the work and shall employ and retain at the project site, from the commencement until the entire completion of the work, a Contractor's Construction Superintendent. Each Contractor's Construction Superintendent shall be registered with the New York City Department of Buildings in compliance with the Construction Superintendent Rule of the City of New York and shall be competent and capable of maintaining proper supervision and care of the work and shall be acceptable to the Commissioner, who, in the absence of the applicable Contractor, and irrespective of any superintendent or foreman employed by any subcontractor, shall see that the instructions of the Commissioner are carried out.
- B. Replacement: Each Contractor's Construction Superintendent on the job shall not be changed or removed without the consent of the Commissioner.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.3**

**3.3 SURVEYS:**

- A. Line and Grade: The City will establish a baseline and bench mark near the site of the work for use of the relevant Contractor(s) in connection with the performance of the work.
- B. Responsibility: Each Contractor shall establish all other lines and elevations required for its work and shall be solely responsible for the accuracy thereof.
- C. Safeguard All Points: Each Contractor shall safeguard all points, stakes, grade marks and bench marks made or established by each Contractor on the work, shall re-establish same if disturbed and bear the entire expense of rectifying the work improperly installed due to not maintaining, not protecting or removing without authorization such established points, stakes, or marks.
- D. City Monuments and Markers: No work shall be performed near City monuments or marks so as to disturb them until the said monuments or marks have been referenced or reset or otherwise disposed of by the relevant Agency or party who installed them.
- E. Foundations: The GC Contractor shall furnish certification from a licensed Surveyor that all portions of the foundation work are located in accordance with the Contract Drawings and at the elevations required thereby. This certification shall show the actual locations and the actual elevations of all the work in relation to the locations and elevations shown on the Contract Drawings, including but not restricted to the following:
  - 1. The locations and elevations of all piles, if any.
  - 2. Elevations of tops of all spread footings, tops of pile caps, and tops of all foundation walls, elevator pit walls and ramp walls.
  - 3. Location of all footing centers and pier centers including those for exterior wall columns.
  - 4. Location of all foundation walls including wall columns, elevator pit walls and ramp walls.
- F. Wall Lines: After the first courses of masonry or stone have been laid, the GC Contractor shall establish the permanent lines of exterior walls. The GC Contractor shall furnish promptly, certification from a licensed Surveyor, in the form of signed original drawings showing the exact location of such wall lines, of all portions of all structures. Except at its own risk, the GC Contractor shall not proceed further with the erection of walls until the Surveyor's certification has been submitted and verified for correct location of wall lines.
- G. Surveyor: The Surveyor selected for any of the purposes mentioned in Paragraph E and Paragraph F above, and Paragraph I below, shall be a land Surveyor licensed in the State of New York and shall be subject to the approval of the Commissioner. The Surveyor shall not be a regular employee of the GC Contractor, nor shall the Surveyor have any interest in the Contract. The Surveyor shall not be employed by the GC Contractor in laying out any work, it being intended that the Surveyor's certification shall



represent an independent and disinterested verification of such layout. The Surveyor shall report to the Department of Design and Construction's Resident Engineer each time upon arrival to and departure from the site and review with the Resident Engineer the data required for the project.

- H. Final Certification: Final certification shall be submitted upon completion of the work or upon completion of any subdivision of the work as directed by the Commissioner. Any exceptions or deviations from the drawings shall be noted on the final certificate and there shall be included any maps, plates, notes, pertinent documents and data necessary, in the opinion of the Commissioner, to constitute a full and complete report.
- I. Final Survey: The GC Contractor shall submit to the Department of Design and Construction for submission to the Department of Buildings a final Survey by the licensed Surveyor showing the location of the new Structure, before completion of the Structure. This Survey shall show the location of the first tier of beams or of the first floor; the finish grades of the open spaces on the plot; the established curb level and the location of all other Structures on the plan, together with the location and boundaries of the lot or plot upon which the Structure is constructed, curb cuts, all yard dimensions, etc.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.4**

**3.4**

**BORINGS:**

- A. The work of this Sub-Section shall be the responsibility of the GC Contractor, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Reference Drawings: The Boring Drawings as listed on the title sheet are for information to the bidder and are to be used under the conditions as follows:
  - 1. Boring Logs: shown on the Boring Drawings, record information obtained under engineering supervision in the course of exploration carried out by or under the direction of forces of the Department of Design and Construction at the site.
  - 2. Soils and Rock Samples: All inferences are drawn from the indications observed as made by engineering and scientific personnel. All such inferences and all records of the work including soil samples and rock cores, if any, are available to bidders for inspection.
  - 3. Certification of Samples: The City certifies that the work was carried out as stated, and that the soil samples and rock cores, if any were referred to, were actually taken from the site at the times, places and in the manner indicated. The samples are available for inspection in the Department of Design and Construction Subsurface Exploration Section.
  - 4. Bidder's Responsibility: The bidder, however, is responsible for any conclusions to be drawn from the work. If the bidder accepts those of the City, it must do so at its own risk. If the bidder prefers not to assume such risk, the bidder is under the obligation of employing its own experts to analyze the available information, and must be responsible for any consequences of acting on their conclusions.
  - 5. Continuity Not Guarantee: The City does not guarantee continuity of conditions shown at actual boring locations over the entire site. Where possible, borings are located to avoid all obstructions and previous construction which can be found by inspection of the surface and the bidder is required to estimate the influence of such features from its own inspection of the site.

**3.5**

**EXAMINATION:**

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of site improvements, utilities, and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning work, investigate and verify the existence and location of mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and points of connection of utility services.



- B. Existing Utilities: The existence and location of underground utilities and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning site work, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.
1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; and underground electrical services.
  2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- C. Acceptance of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with the subcontractor responsible for installation or application present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  2. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  3. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.6 ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENTS:

- A. City Responsibilities: An Environmental Assessment and survey is performed by the NYC DDC and its findings are included in the Contract Documents. In accordance with the NYC Administrative Code Title 15 Chapter 1 an asbestos survey is required to be performed by an Asbestos Investigator certified by the NYC Department of Environmental Protection (DEP) to identify the presence of asbestos containing material (ACM) prior to any alteration, renovation or demolition activity. The findings of such survey are required for the submission of approvals and permits issued by the NYC Department of Buildings (DOB). When the findings indicate that asbestos containing material is present and will be disturbed during the alteration, renovation or demolition activity then abatement design specifications will be incorporated into the contract documents. The GC Contractor shall comply with all federal, state and local asbestos regulations affecting the work for this Contract.
- B. Contractor Responsibility: The GC Contractor shall comply with all federal, state and local environmental regulations, including without limitation USEPA and OSHA regulations which require the GC Contractor to assess if lead based paint will be disturbed during the work in order to protect his/her workers and the building occupants from migration of lead dust into the air. The GC Contractor shall comply with all federal, state and local environmental waste disposal regulation which may be required during the work. The GC Contractor is required to hire licensed abatement and disposal companies for the requisite work.

### 3.7 PREPARATION:

- A. Field Measurements: Each Contractor shall verify all dimensions and conditions on the job so that all work will properly join the existing work.
- B. Each Contractor, before commencing work, shall examine all adjoining work on which its work is in any way dependent on good workmanship in accordance to the intent of the Specification and Contract Drawings. The Contractor shall report to the Commissioner any condition that will prevent it from performing work that conforms to the required standard.



- C. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to the Commissioner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

### 3.8 DEFERRED CONSTRUCTION:

- A. Where necessity for deferred construction is certified by the Commissioner, in order to permit the installation of any item or items of equipment required to be furnished and installed concurrent with the time allowed for doing and completing the work of the Contract, each Contractor shall defer construction work limited to adequate areas as approved by the Commissioner.
- B. Each Contractor shall confer with the affected subcontractors and ascertain arrangements, time and facilities necessary to be made by the Contractor in order to execute the provisions specified herein.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION:

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- F. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work and work of other sub-contractors to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- G. Anchors and Fasteners: Provide anchors and fasteners as required to anchor each component securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by the Design Consultant.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- H. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- I. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.



**3.10 PERMITS:**

Each Contractor shall comply with all local, state and federal laws, rules and regulations affecting the Work of this Project, including, without limitation, (1) obtaining all necessary permits for the performance of the Work prior to commencement thereof, and (2) complying with all requirements for the disposal of demolition and/or construction debris, waste, etc., including disposal in City landfills. Each Contractor shall be responsible for all costs in connection with such regulatory compliance, unless otherwise specified in the Contract.

**3.11 TRANSPORTATION:**

- A. **Availability:** It shall be the duty of each Contractor to determine the availability of transportation facilities and dockage for the use of its employees, equipment and material and the conditions under which such use will be permitted.
- B. **Costs:** If transportation facilities and dockage are available and are permitted to be used by the governmental agency having jurisdiction, the applicable Contractor shall pay all necessary costs and expenses, and abide by all rules and regulations promulgated in connection therewith.
- C. **Vehicles:** With respect to the use of vehicles on highways and bridges, each Contractor's attention is directed to the limitations set forth in the Rules of the City of New York, Title 34, Chapter 4, Section 4-15.
- D. **Continued Use:** It is understood that the Commissioner makes no warranty as to the continued use by each Contractor of such facilities.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.12**

**3.12 SLEEVES AND HANGERS:**

- A. **Coordinate with Progress Schedule:** Contractors required to furnish and install conduits, outlets, piping sleeves, boxes, inserts and all other materials and equipment that is to be built into the work performed by the GC Contractor, shall promptly furnish and set such sleeves or other materials in conformity with the requirements of the project.
- B. **Cooperation of Contractors:** All Contractors and their subcontractors shall fully cooperate with each other in connection with the performance of the above work as "cutting in" new work is neither contemplated nor will it be tolerated.
- C. **Timeliness:** In the event that timely delivery of sleeves and other materials cannot be made, and to avoid delay, the affected Contractor may arrange to have boxes or other forms set at the locations where the piping or other material is to pass through or into the slabs, walls or other work. Upon the subsequent installation of the sleeves or other material, the GC Contractor shall fill around them with materials as required by the Contract. The necessary expenditures incurred for the boxing out and filling in shall be borne by the Contractor or Contractors responsible therefore.
- D. **Inserts:** The GC Contractor is to install strip inserts four (4) foot on center and perpendicular to beams in ceiling slabs of boiler, machine and mechanical equipment rooms. Inserts are to be installed for strippable concrete slabs only.



**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.13**

**3.13 SLEEVE AND PENETRATION DRAWINGS:**

- A. As soon as practicable after the commencement of work and when the order in which concrete for the first slabs, walls, etc. to be poured is determined, the Plumbing, HVAC and Electrical Contractors shall submit to the Resident Engineer a sketch indicating the location and size of all penetrations for sleeves, ducts, etc. which will be required to accommodate the mechanical trades, in order to determine if such penetrations will materially weaken the project's structure. The sketch shall be stamped and returned if approved and/or comments will be transmitted. Each Contractor shall continue to submit sketches as the pouring schedule and the concrete work progresses and, until approvals for the penetration sketches have been given. Each Contractor shall not predicate their layout work on unapproved sketches.

**3.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING:**

- A. Responsibility: Each Contractor shall do all cutting, patching and restoration required by its work, unless otherwise particularly specified in the Specifications of its Contract.
- B. Restore Work: Each Contractor shall restore any work they damage that is the work of another Contractor.
- C. Competent Workers: All restoration work shall be done to the satisfaction of the Commissioner by competent workers skilled in the trade required by such restoration. If, in the judgment of the Commissioner, workers engaged in restoration work are incompetent, they shall be replaced immediately by competent workers.
- D. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements without the prior approval, in writing, of the Resident Engineer.
- E. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components.
- F. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Commissioner's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- G. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- H. Removals: Each Contractor must remove from the premises all demolished materials of every nature or description resulting from cutting, patching and restoration work, in accordance with the requirements hereinafter stipulated under Sub-Section 3.17 herein and as further required in Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 3.15**

**3.15 LOCATION OF PARTITIONS:**

- A. Within three (3) weeks after the concrete slabs have been poured on each floor level, the GC Contractor shall immediately locate accurately all of the partitions, including the door openings, on the floor slabs in a manner approved by the Resident Engineer.



**3.16 FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT:**

- A. Responsibility: Each Contractor is responsible for moving all loose furniture and/or equipment in all areas where the location of such furniture and/or equipment interferes with the proper performance of its work.
- B. Protection: All such furniture and/or equipment must be adequately protected with dust cloths and returned to their original locations when directed to do so by the Resident Engineer.

**3.17 REMOVAL OF RUBBISH AND SURPLUS MATERIALS:**

- A. Of the waste that is generated during demolition, as many of the waste materials as economically feasible, and as stated here, shall be reused, salvaged, or recycled. Waste disposal in landfills shall be minimized. Comply with requirements of Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL.
- B. Rubbish: Rubbish shall not be thrown from the windows or other parts of the project. Mason's rubbish, dirt and other dust-producing material shall be wetted down periodically.
- C. Location: Each Contractor shall clean Project site and work area daily and sweep up and deposit, at a location designated on each floor by the GC Contractor, all of its rubbish, debris and waste materials, as it accumulates and when directed by the Resident Engineer. Wood crating shall be broken up, neatly bundled, tied and stacked ready for removal and be deposited at a location designated on each floor by the GC Contractor.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NYC Fire Department for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 degrees F (27 degrees C).
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- D. Laborers: Each Contractor shall be responsible for the removal of all rubbish, etc., from the site. Each Contractor shall remove from the designated locations all piles of rubbish, debris, waste material and wood crating as they accumulate and when directed by the Resident Engineer, and shall remove them from the site. Each Contractor shall employ and keep engaged for this purpose an adequate number of laborers.
- E. Surplus Materials: Each Contractor shall remove from the site all surplus materials when there is no further use for same.
- F. Tools And Materials: At the conclusion of the work, all erection plant, tools, temporary structures and materials belonging to each Contractor shall be promptly removed.
- G. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.

**3.18 CLEANING:**

- A. Each Contractor shall thoroughly clean all equipment and materials furnished and installed and shall deliver such materials and equipment undamaged in a clean and new appearing condition up to date of Final Acceptance.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended.



If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

- D. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- E. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration up to date of Final Acceptance.
- F. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration up to date of Final Acceptance.

**3.19 SECURITY AND PROTECTION OF WORK SITE:**

- A. Each Contractor shall provide protection of its installed work, including appropriate protective coverings and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration up to date of Final Acceptance.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.
- C. Secure and protect work and work site against damage, loss, injury, theft and/or vandalism.
- D. Maintain daily sign-in sheets of workers and visitors and make the sheets available to the Commissioner.

**3.20 MAINTENANCE OF SITE AND ADJOINING PROPERTY:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall take over and maintain the Project site, after order to start work.
- B. The GC Contractor shall be responsible for the safety of the adjoining property, including sidewalks, paving, fences, sewers, water, gas, electric and other mains, pipes and conduits etc. until the date of Final Acceptance. The GC Contractor shall, at its own expense, except as otherwise specified, protect same and maintain them in at least as good a condition as that in which the GC Contractor finds them.
- C. All pavements, sidewalks, roads and approaches to fire hydrants shall be kept clear at all times, maintained and repaired to serviceable condition with materials to match existing.
- D. Provide and keep in good repair all bridging and decking necessary to maintain vehicular and pedestrian traffic.
- E. The GC Contractor shall also remove all snow and ice as it accumulates on the sidewalks within the Contract Limits Lines.

**3.21 MAINTENANCE OF PROJECT SITE:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall take over and maintain all project areas, after order to start work.
- B. Until the date of Final Acceptance, the GC Contractor shall be responsible for the safety of all project areas, including water, gas, electric and other mains and pipes and conduits and shall at the GC Contractor's own expense, except as otherwise specified, protect same and maintain them in at least as good condition as that in which the GC Contractor finds them.
- C. All pavements, sidewalks, roads and approaches to fire hydrants shall be kept clear at all times, maintained, and if damaged, repaired to serviceable conditions with materials to match existing.
- D. The Contractor for General Construction Work shall keep the space for the Resident Engineer in a clean condition.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**3.22 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS FOR CONTROL CIRCUITS:**

- A. Control circuits, the failure of which will cause a hazard to life and property, shall comply with the New York City Electrical Code.

**3.23 OBSTRUCTIONS IN DRAINAGE LINES:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall be responsible for all obstructions occurring in all drainage lines, fittings and fixtures after the installations and cleaning of these drainage lines, fittings and fixtures as certified by the Resident Engineer. Roof drains shall be kept clear of any and all debris. Any stoppage shall be repaired immediately at the expense of the GC Contractor

**END OF SECTION 01 73 00**



**SECTION 01 74 19**  
**CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the management and disposal of construction waste and includes the following requirements:
1. Waste Management Goals
  2. Waste Management Plan
  3. Progress Reports
  4. Progress Meetings
  5. Management Plan Implementation
- B. This Section includes:
1. Definitions
  2. Waste Management Performance Requirements
  3. Reference Resources
  4. Submittals
  5. Quality Assurance
  6. Waste Plan Implementation
  7. Additional Demolition and Salvage Requirements
  8. Disposal

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |  |
|----|------------------|--|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY  |
| B. | Section 01 31 00 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION                |
| C. | Section 01 32 00 | CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION                |
| D. | Section 01 73 00 | EXECUTION  |
| E. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES                                |
| F. | Section 01 78 39 | CONSTRUCTION RECORD DOCUMENTS                      |
| G. | Section 01 81 13 | SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or



combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

- C. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; not contaminated with oils, solvents, caulk or the like.
- D. Construction and Demolition Waste: Solid wastes typically including building materials, trash debris and rubble resulting from remodeling, repair and demolition operations. Hazardous materials and land clearing waste are not included.
- E. Diversion from Landfill: To remove, or have removed, from the site for recycling, reuse or salvage, material that might otherwise be sent to a landfill.
- F. Recyclable: The ability of a product or material to be recovered at the end of its life cycle and remanufactured into a new product.
- G. Recycle (recycling): To sort, separate, process, treat or reconstitute solid waste and other discarded materials for the purpose of redirecting such materials into the manufacture of useful products. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating or thermally destroying waste.
- H. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors.
- I. Reuse: To reuse excess or discarded construction material in some manner on the Project site.
- J. Salvage: To remove a waste material from the Project site for resale or reuse.
- K. Waste: Extra material or material that has reached the end of its useful life in its intended use. Waste includes salvageable, returnable, recyclable and reusable material.
- L. Waste Management Plan: A project-related plan for the collection, transportation and disposal of waste generated at the construction site. The purpose of the plan is to ultimately reduce the amount of material becoming landfill.

1.5

**WASTE MANAGEMENT PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. The City of New York has established that this project shall generate the least amount of waste possible and that processes that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, inaccurate planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors shall be employed.
- B. Of the waste that is generated during demolition, as many of the waste materials as economically feasible, and as stated here, shall be reused, salvaged, or recycled. Waste disposal in landfills shall be minimized.

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR THE APPLICABILITY OF SUB-SECTION 1.5 C**

- C. LEED CERTIFICATION: The City of New York will seek LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) certification for this Project as indicated in the Addendum to the General Conditions from the U.S. Green Building Council. The documentation required here will be used for this purpose. LEED awards points for a variety of sustainable design measures on a project, one of which is the reuse and recycling of project waste.
- D. DIVERSION REQUIREMENTS. A minimum of 75% of total Project demolition waste (by weight) shall be diverted from landfill. The following waste categories are likely candidates to be included in the diversion plan as applicable for this project:
  - 1. Concrete
  - 2. Bricks
  - 3. Concrete masonry units (CMU)
  - 4. Asphalt



5. Metals (e.g. banding, stud trim, ceiling grid, ductwork, piping, rebar, roofing, other trim, steel, iron, galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum, copper, zinc, brass, bronze)
  6. Clean dimensional wood
  7. Carpet and pad
  8. Drywall
  9. Ceiling tiles
  10. Cardboard, paper, and packaging
  11. Reuse items indicated on the Drawings and/or elsewhere in the Specification
- E. All fluorescent lamps, HID lamps and mercury-containing thermostats removed from the site shall be recycled.
- F. Recycling on the job, subject to the Commissioner's approval, is encouraged on the site itself, such as the crushing and reuse of removed sound concrete and stone. Include these categories in the Waste Management Plan.

#### 1.6 REFERENCES, RESOURCES:

- A. DDC encourages its contractors to seek information from websites and experts in salvage or recycling in order to minimize disposal costs. There are numerous opportunities to sell, salvage, or to donate salvage and accrue tax benefits (which would accrue to each Contractor); also there are outlets that will pick up, and in some cases buy recyclable materials. Examples of information resources are as follows:
1. DDC's Sustainable Design web site:  
[http://www.nyc.gov/html/ddc/html/design/sustainable\\_home.shtml](http://www.nyc.gov/html/ddc/html/design/sustainable_home.shtml) This includes a manual on Construction and Demolition Waste Reduction and Recycling, a Sample Waste Management Plan and sample C&D Waste Management log. Standard forms for a Waste Management Plan and a C&D Waste Management Log are included at the end of this section.
  2. Web Resources  
(Information only; no warranty or endorsement is implied.)  
[www.wastematch.org](http://www.wastematch.org) Site of New York Waste Match, a materials exchange database and service  
[www.bignyc.org](http://www.bignyc.org) Site of Build It Green NYC, a non profit outlet for salvaged and surplus building materials  
[www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org) Site of the United States Green Building Council, with a description of the LEED certification process and requirements for C&D waste recycling  
[www.epa.gov/epawaste/index.htm](http://www.epa.gov/epawaste/index.htm) Site of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency that discusses construction and demolition waste issues, and links to other resources.

#### 1.7 SUBMITTALS:

- A. The GC Contractor shall be responsible for the development and implementation of a Waste Management Plan for the Project. Each Contractor shall assist in the development of that Plan, and collect and deposit their waste and recyclable materials in accordance with the approved Plan.
- B. DRAFT WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN. Within fifteen (15) days after receipt of Notice to Proceed, or prior to any waste removal, whichever occurs sooner, the GC Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner a Draft Waste Management Plan. Include separate sections for demolition and



construction waste. The Plan shall demonstrate how the performance goals will be met, and contain the following:

1. List of materials targeted for reuse, salvage, or recycling, and names, addresses, and phone numbers of receiving facilities/companies that will be purchasing or accepting each material.
  2. Description of onsite and/or offsite sorting methods for all materials to be removed from site.
  3. If mixed construction and demolition waste is to be sorted off-site, provide a letter from the processor stating the average percentage of mixed construction and demolition waste they recycle.
  4. Landfill information: Names of landfills where non-recyclable/reusable/salvageable waste will be disposed, and list of applicable tipping fees.
  5. Materials handling procedures: A description of the means by which any recyclable, salvaged, or reused materials will be protected from contamination, and collected in a manner that will meet the requirements for acceptance by the designated recycling processors.
  6. Transportation: A description of the means of transportation and destination for recycled materials.
  7. Meetings: Description of regular meetings to be held to address waste management.
  8. Sample spreadsheet and description of how the implementation of the plan will be documented on a monthly basis.
- C. **FINAL WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN.** Within fifteen (15) days of Commissioner's approval of the Draft Plan, the GC Contractor shall submit a Final Waste Management Plan.
- D. **PROGRESS REPORTS.** The GC Contractor shall submit monthly a Waste Management Progress Report, containing the following information:
1. Project title, name of company completing report, and dates of period covered by the report
  2. Report on the disposal of all jobsite waste. A DDC C&D Waste Management Log form is available on the DDC Sustainable Design website and included at the end of this section. For each material type recycled, reused, salvaged or land filled, provide the following:
    - a. Date and ticket number of removal
    - b. Identity of material hauler
    - c. Material Category
    - d. Total quantity of waste, in tones/cubic yards, by type
    - e. Quantity of waste salvaged, recycled and/or reused, by type
    - f. Total quantity of waste diverted from landfill (recycled, salvaged, reused) as a percentage of total waste
    - g. Recipient of each material type
  3. Provide monthly and cumulative project totals of waste, quantity diverted, and percentage diverted.
  4. Note that the unit of measure may be either tons or cubic yards, but must be consistent for all shipments and all materials throughout the project. Reports with inconsistent or mixed units will not be reviewed and will be returned for re-submission.
  5. Include legible copies of on-site logs, weight tickets and receipts. Receipts shall be from charitable organizations, recycling and/or disposal site operators who can legally accept the materials for the purpose of reuse, recycling or disposal. Contractor shall save such original documents for the life of the project plus seven (7) years.



- E. LEED Submittal: For LEED designated projects submit LEED Letter Template for the applicable credit, signed by each Contractor; tabulating total waste material, quantities diverted and means by which it is diverted, and statement that requirements for the credit have been met.
- F. Refrigerant Recovery. Submit Qualification data for Refrigerant recovery technician and statement of refrigerant recovery, signed by the refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

**1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall designate a Waste Management Coordinator, to ensure compliance with this section. Coordinator shall be present at Project site full time for the duration of the project.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Waste management plans, documentation and implementation shall be discussed at the following meetings:
  - 1. Pre-demolition kick-off meeting
  - 2. Pre-construction kick-off meeting
  - 3. Regular job-site meetings
  - 4. Contractor toolbox meetings

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION**

**3.1 WASTE PLAN IMPLEMENTATION:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall implement the Waste Management Plan, coordinate the Plan with each Contractor and all affected subcontractors, and designate one individual as the Construction Waste Management Representative, who will be responsible for communicating the progress of the Plan with the Commissioner on a regular basis, and for assembling the required LEED documentation.
- B. Each Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of containers and the removal of all waste, non-returned surplus materials, and rubbish from the site in accordance with the approved Waste Management Plan. Each Contractor shall oversee and document the results of the Plan. Monies received for salvaged materials shall remain with the applicable Contractor, except the monies for those items specifically identified elsewhere in the specifications, or indicated on the drawings as belonging to others.
- C. Responsibilities of Subcontractors: Each subcontractor shall be responsible for collecting its waste, non-returned surplus materials, and rubbish, in accordance with the Waste Management Plan.
- D. Distribution. The GC Contractor shall distribute copies of the Waste Management Plan to each Contractor, Subcontractors, Resident Engineer, Construction Manager, and Commissioner.
- E. Instructions. The GC Contractor shall provide on-site instruction of proper waste management procedures to be used by all parties in appropriate stages of the Project.



- F. Procedures. Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with site vegetation, roads, streets, walks and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Collect co-mingled waste and/or separate all recyclable waste in accordance with the Plan Specific areas on the Project site are to be designated, and appropriate containers and bins clearly marked with acceptable and unacceptable materials.
  2. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
  3. Comply with the General Conditions for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### 3.2 ADDITIONAL DEMOLITION AND SALVAGE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Demolition and salvage of additional items indicated in other sections of the Project Specifications require special attention as part of the overall 75 % diversion from landfill. Specific requirements for special attention are designated in other sections of the Project Specifications.

### 3.3 DISPOSAL:

- A. General. Except for items or material to be salvaged, recycled or otherwise reused, remove waste material from the Project site and legally dispose of them in a manner acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning. Do not burn waste materials
- C. Disposal. Transport waste materials off Project Site and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19





NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

NO TEXT





**SECTION 01 77 00  
CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and general procedural requirements for Closeout Procedures, including without limitation the following:
1. Definitions
  2. Substantial Completion
  3. Final Acceptance
  4. Warranties
  5. Final Cleaning
  6. Repair of the Work
- B. LEED: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project is designed to comply with a Certification Level according to the U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design (LEED) Rating System, as specified in Section 01 81 13, "SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS."
- C. COMMISSIONING: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project will be commissioned by an independent third party under separate contract with the City of New York. Commissioning shall be in accordance with ASHRAE and USGBC LEED- NC procedures, as described in Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS. Each Contractor shall cooperate with the commissioning agent and provide whatever assistance is required.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** include without limitation the following:

- A. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
- B. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- C. Section 01 74 19 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL
- D. Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS
- E. Section 01 79 00 DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and



specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

- C. **Substantial Completion:** shall mean the written determination by the Commissioner that the Work required under the Contract is substantially, but not entirely, complete.
- D. **Final Acceptance:** shall mean final written acceptance of all the Work by the Commissioner, a copy of which shall be sent to each Contractor.

#### 1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION:

- A. **Preliminary Procedures:** Before requesting inspection to determine the date of Substantial Completion, each Contractor shall complete and supply all items required by the contract specifications, General Conditions, Addendum to the General Conditions, change orders or other directives from the Commissioner's representatives. The required items will include all contract requirements for substantial completion, including but not limited to items related to releases, regulatory approvals, warranties and guarantees, record documents, testing, demonstration and orientation, final clean up and repairs, and all specific checklist of items by the Resident Engineer. (See Attachment "A" at the end of this section for sample requirements for Substantial Completion).
- B. Prepare and submit a list to the Resident Engineer of incomplete items, the value of incomplete construction, and reasons the work is not complete.
- C. **Inspection:** Each Contractor shall submit to the Resident Engineer a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. Within ten (10) days of receipt of the request, the Resident Engineer will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. The Resident Engineer may request the services, as required, of the Design Consultant, Client Agency Representative and/or other entities having involvement with the Work to assist in the inspection of the Work. If the Resident Engineer makes a determination that the work is substantially complete and approves the Final Punch List and the date for Final Acceptance, he/she will so advise the Commissioner and recommend issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion. If the Resident Engineer determines that the work is not substantially complete, he/she will notify the applicable Contractor of those items that must be completed or corrected before the Certificate of Substantial Completion will be issued.
  - 1 Re-inspection: Contractor shall request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  - 2 Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Acceptance.

#### 1.6 FINAL ACCEPTANCE:

- A. **Preliminary Procedures:** Before requesting final inspection for Final Acceptance of the Work and Final Payment, each Contractor shall complete the following. (Note that the following are to be completed, submitted as appropriate, and approved by the Commissioner, as applicable, prior to the final inspection and are not to be submitted for approval or otherwise at the final inspection unless specifically indicated). List exceptions in the request.
  - 1. Verify that all required submittals have been provided to the Commissioner including but not limited to the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's cleaning instructions
    - b. Posted instructions
    - c. As-built Record Documents (Drawings, specifications, and product data) as described in Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS, incorporating any changes required by the Commissioner as a result of the review of the submission prior to the pre-final inspection.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- d. Operation and Maintenance Manuals, including Preventive Maintenance, Special Tools, Repair Requirements, Parts List, Spare Parts List, and Operating Instructions.
  - e. Completion of required Demonstration and Orientation of designated personnel in operation and maintenance of systems, sub-systems and equipment.
  - f. Applicable LEED Building submittals as described in Section 01 81 13, SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS.
  - g. Construction progress photographs as described in Section 01 32 33, PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION.
2. Submit a certified copy of the final approved Punch List of items to be completed or corrected. The certified copy of the Punch List shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance, and shall be endorsed and dated by the applicable Contractor(s).
  3. Submit pest-control final inspection report and survey as required in Section 01 50 00, TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES, AND CONTROLS.
  4. Submit record documents and similar final record information.
  5. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stock and similar items.
  6. Complete final clean-up requirements including touch-up painting of marred surfaces.
  7. Submit final meter readings for utilities as applicable, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of the date when the City took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the work.
- B. Final Inspection: Each Contractor shall submit to the Resident Engineer a written request for inspection for Final Acceptance of the Work. Within ten (10) days of receipt of the request, the Resident Engineer will either proceed with inspection or notify the applicable Contractor(s) of unfulfilled requirements. The Resident Engineer may request the services, as required, of the Design Consultant, Client Agency Representative and/or other entities having involvement with the Work to assist in the inspection of the Work. If the Resident Engineer finds that all items on the Final Approved Punch List are complete and no further work remains to be done, he/she will so advise the Commissioner and recommend the issuance of the determination of Final Acceptance. If the Resident Engineer determines that the work is not complete, he/she will notify the applicable Contractor(s) of those items that must be completed or corrected before the determination of Final Acceptance will be issued.
- C. Final Acceptance: The Work will be accepted as final and complete as of the date of the Resident Engineer's inspection if, upon such inspection, the Resident Engineer finds that all items on the Punch List are complete and no further Work remains to be done. The Commissioner will then issue a written determination of Final Acceptance.

## 1.7

### WARRANTIES:

- A. The items of materials and/or equipment for which manufacturer warranties are required are listed in Schedule B of the Addendum. For each item of material and/or equipment listed in Schedule B, each Contractor as applicable shall obtain a written warranty from the manufacturer. Such warranty shall provide that the material or equipment is free from defects for the period set forth in Schedule B and will be replaced or repaired within such specified period. Each contractor shall deliver all required warranties to the Commissioner.
- B. Unless indicated otherwise Warranties are to take effect on the date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Submittal Time: Submit written Warranties on request of the Commissioner for designated portions of the Work where commencement of Warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.
- D. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed Warranties to the Commissioner within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by the City.
- E. Organize the Warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the Project Specification Divisions and Section Numbers.



1. Bind Warranties in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES;" name and location of Project; Capitol Budget Project Number (FMS ID); and Contractor's name and address.
  3. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate Warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation.
  4. Provide a typed description of each product or installation being warranted, including the name of the product, and the name, address, and telephone number of the Installer.
- F. When warranted materials and/or equipment require operation and maintenance manuals, provide additional copies of each required Warranty in each required manual. Refer to Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS, for requirements of Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS:

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART III – EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING:

- A. General: Unless otherwise noted, the GC Contractor shall provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations as applicable before requesting inspection for Final Acceptance of the Work for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.



- h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
  - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
  - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - l. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - 1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
  - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - n. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
  - o. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - p. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - q. The HVAC Contractor shall be responsible to clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
  - r. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible to clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
  - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
  - t. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL.
- C. Pest Control: Engage an experienced, licensed exterminator to make a final inspection and rid Project of rodents, insects, and other pests, as required in Section 01 50 00, TEMPORARY FACILITIES, SERVICES AND CONTROLS. Prepare and submit a Pest Control report to the Commissioner.
- D. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on City's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of lawfully.

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK:

- A. Subject to the terms of the Contract each Contractor shall complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Each contractor, as applicable shall repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
  - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

**END OF SECTION 01 77 00**



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**SECTION 01 77 00**

**ATTACHMENT 'A'**

**The following list is a general sample of Substantial Completion requirements, including but not limited to:**

1. Prepare and submit a list to the Resident Engineer, of incomplete items, the value of incomplete construction, and reasons the work is not complete.
2. Obtain and submit any necessary releases enabling the City unrestricted use of the project and access to services and utilities.
3. Regulatory Approvals: Submit all required documentation from applicable Governing Authorities, including, but not limited to, Department of Buildings (DoB); Department of Transportation (DoT); Department of Environmental Protection (DEP); Fire Department (FDNY); etc. Documentation to include, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Building Permits, Applications and Sign-offs.
  - b. Permits and Sign-off for construction fences; sidewalk bridges; scaffolds, cranes and derricks; utilities; etc.
  - c. Certificates of Inspections and Sign-offs.
  - d. Required Certificates and Use Permits.
  - e. Certificate of Occupancy (C.O.), Temporary Certificate of Occupancy (T.C.O.) or Letter of Completion as applicable.
4. Submit specific warranties required by the specifications, final certifications, and similar documents.
5. Prepare and submit Record Documents as described in Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS, including but not limited to; approved documentation from Governing Authorities; as-built record drawings and specifications; product data; operation and maintenance manuals; Final Completion construction photographs; damage or settlement surveys; final property surveys; and similar final record information. The Resident Engineer will review the submission and provide appropriate comments. If comments are significant the initial submission will be returned to the applicable Contractor for correction and re-submission incorporating the comments prior to the Final Inspection.
6. Record Waste Management Progress Report: Submit C&D Waste Management logs, with legible copies of weight tickets and receipts required in accordance with Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL.
7. If applicable submit LEED Letter Template in accordance with the requirements of Section 01 81 13, SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS.
8. Schedule applicable Demonstration and Orientation required in other Sections of the Project Specifications and as described in Section 01 79 00, DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION.
9. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Resident Engineer. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
10. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to the Resident Engineer. Advise Commissioner of changeover in security provisions.
11. Complete startup testing of systems as applicable.
12. Submit approved test/adjust/balance records.
13. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements as directed by the Resident Engineer.
14. If applicable complete Commissioning requirements as defined in Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.
15. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
16. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Division 01 – DDC STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS  
MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS  
Issue Date - January 15, 2015

NO TEXT

CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
01 77 00- 8



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**SECTION 01 78 39**  
**CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and general procedural requirements for Contract Record Documents, including:
1. As-built Contract Record Drawings.
  2. As-built marked-up copies of Record Specifications, addenda and Change Orders.
  3. As-built marked-up Product Data
  4. Record Samples
  5. Construction Record Photographs
  6. Operating and Maintenance Manuals
  7. Final Site Survey
  8. Guarantees and Warranties
  9. Waste Disposal Documentation
  10. LEED Materials and Matrix
  11. Miscellaneous Record Submittals
- B. The Department of Design and Construction, at the start of construction (kick-off meeting), will furnish to each Contractor at no cost a complete set of Contract Drawings Mylars (reproducible) pertaining to the work to be performed under the Contract. It is the responsibility of each Contractor to modify the Contract Drawings to indicate all changes and corrections, if any, occurring in the work as actually installed. Each Contractor is required to furnish all other Mylar (reproducible) drawings, if necessary, such as Addenda Drawings and Supplementary Drawings as may be necessary to indicate all work in detail as actually completed. All professional seals must be blocked out. Title box complete with project title and Design Consultants' names will remain.
- C. Maintenance of Documents and Samples: Each Contractor shall maintain, during the progress of the work, an accurate record of the work as actually installed, on Contract Record Drawings, on Mylar (reproducible), in ink. Store record documents and samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition. Make documents and samples available at all times for the Resident Engineer's inspections.

Each Contractor's attention is particularly directed to the necessity of keeping accurate records of all subsurface and concealed work, so that the Contract Record Drawings contain this information in exact detail and location. Contract Record Drawings shall also show all connections, valves, gates, switches, cut-outs and similar operating equipment.

For projects designated to achieve a LEED rating each Contractor shall receive a copy of the project's LEED scorecard for the purpose of monitoring compliance with the target objectives and to facilitate coordination with the LEED Consultant. Each Contractor shall receive periodic updates of this scorecard,



and is required to submit the final version of the Scorecard at Substantial Completion with other project Record Documents.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** include without limitation the following:

- A. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
- B. Section 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
- C. Section 01 32 33 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
- D. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- E. Section 01 77 00 PROJECT CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. As-Built Contract Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  1. Progress Submission: As directed by the Resident Engineer, submit progress As-Built Contract Record Drawings at the 50% Construction Completion stage.
  2. Final Submission: Before substantial completion payment, each Contractor shall furnish to the Commissioner one (1) complete set of marked-up Mylar (reproducible) As-Built Contract Record Drawings, in ink indicating all of the work and locations as actually installed, plus one (1) set of paper prints which will be furnished to the sponsoring agency by DDC.
  3. As-Built Contract Record Drawings shall be of the same size as that of the Contract Drawings, with a one (1) inch margin on three (3) sides and a two (2) inch margin on the left side.
  4. Each As-Built Contract Record Drawing shall bear the legend "AS-BUILT CONTRACT RECORD DRAWING" in heavy block lettering, one half (1/2) inch high, and contain the following data:

**AS-BUILT CONTRACT RECORD DRAWING**

Contractor's Name \_\_\_\_\_  
 Contractor's Address \_\_\_\_\_  
 Made by: \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_  
 Checked by: \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Commissioner's Representatives  
 (Resident Engineer) DDC  
 (Plumbing Inspector) DDC  
 (Heating & Ventilating Inspector) DDC  
 (Electrical Inspector) DDC

- 5. Record Drawing Title Sheet: Each Contractor shall prepare a title sheet, the same size as the Contract Record Drawings, which shall contain the following:



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- a. Heading:  
The City of New York  
Department of Design and Construction  
Division of Public Buildings
  - b. Capital Budget Project Number (FMS ID)
  - c. Name and Location of Project
  - d. Contractor's Name and Address
  - e. Record of changes (a caption description of work affected, and the date and number of Change Order or other authorization)
  - f. List of Record Drawings
- B. Record Specifications, Addenda and Change Order: Submit to the Commissioner two (2) copies each of marked-up Record Specifications, Addenda and Change Orders.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit to the Commissioner two (2) sets of Record Product Data.
- D. Record Construction Photographs: Submit to the Commissioner final as-built construction photographs and negatives of the completed work as described in Section 01 32 33, PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION.
- E. Operating and Maintenance Manuals:
1. Each contractor, as applicable shall submit three (3) copies each of preliminary manuals to the Resident Engineer for review and approval. Each Contractor shall make such corrections, changes and/or additions to the manual until deemed satisfactory by the Resident Engineer. Deliver three (3) copies of the final approved manuals to the Resident Engineer for distribution.
  2. Commissioning: Comply with the requirements of Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS, as well as the requirements set forth in sections of the Project Specifications, for projects designated for Commissioning. Submit four (4) copies each of data designated to be included in the Commissioning Operation and Maintenance Manual to the Resident Engineer. The Resident Engineer will forward such data to the Commissioning Authority/Agent (CxA) for review and comment. Each Contractor shall make such corrections, changes and/or additions to the data until deemed satisfactory and deliver four (4) copies of the final data to the Resident Engineer for use by the Commissioning Authority/Agent (CxA) to prepare the Commissioning Operation and Maintenance Manual.
    - a. Non-Commissioning Data: All remaining data not designated for Commissioning and required as part of Maintenance and Operation Manual shall be prepared and assembled in accordance with the requirements of this section for Operating and Maintenance Manuals.
- F. Final Site Survey: The GC Contractor shall submit Final Site Survey as described in Section 01 73 00, EXECUTION, in quantities requested by the Commissioner, signed and sealed by a Land Surveyor licensed in the State of New York.
- G. Guarantees and Warranties.
- H. Waste Disposal Documents and Miscellaneous Record Documents.



## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONTRACT RECORD DRAWINGS:

- A. Record Prints: Each Contractor shall maintain one set of blue- or black-line white prints as applicable of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings. If applicable, the Record Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings shall incorporate the arrangement of the work based on the accepted Master Coordination Drawing(s) as described in Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
1. Preparation: Each Contractor shall mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an understandable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
  2. Change Orders: All changes from Contract Drawings shall be distinctly encircled and identified by Change Order number correlating to changes listed on the "Title Sheet." Each Contractor shall show within the encircled areas the work as actually installed.
- B. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 1 Dimensional changes to Drawings.
  - 2 Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
  - 3 Depths of foundations below first floor.
  - 4 Locations and depths of underground utilities.
  - 5 Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
  - 6 Revisions to electrical circuitry.
  - 7 Actual equipment locations.
  - 8 Duct size and routing.
  - 9 Locations of concealed internal utilities.
  - 11 Changes made by Change Order
  - 12 Changes made following Commissioner's written orders.
  - 13 Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
  - 14 Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
  - 15 Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- C. Progress Record Mylar's (reproducible): As directed by the Resident Engineer at 50% construction completion review marked-up Record Prints with the Resident Engineer and the Design Consultant. When directed by the Resident Engineer transfer progress mark-ups to a full set Mylar's (reproducible) and submit one blue line or black line record copy to the Resident Engineer. The marked-up Mylar's (reproducible) shall be retained by the GC Contractor for completion of mark-up and final submission.
- D. Final Contract Record Mylar's (reproducible): Immediately before final inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, each Contractor shall review marked-up Record Prints with the Resident Engineer and the Design Consultant. When authorized, complete mark-up of a full set of corrected Mylar's (reproducible) of the Contract Drawings.



1. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on Record Prints. Erase, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
2. Refer instances of uncertainty to Resident Engineer for resolution.
3. Print the As-Built Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings for use as Record Transparencies as described in Sub-Section 1.5.

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS, ADDENDA AND CHANGE ORDERS:

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings where applicable.
  6. Upon completion of mark-up submit two (2) complete copies of the marked-up Record Specifications to the Commissioner.

## 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA:

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  3. If possible, a Change Order proposal should include resubmitting updated Product Data. This eliminates the need to mark up the previous submittal.
  4. Note related Change Orders and Record Drawings where applicable.
  5. Upon completion of mark-up submit to the Commissioner two (2) sets of the marked-up Record Product Data.
  6. Where Record Product Data is required as part of Maintenance Manuals, submit marked-up Product Data as an insert in the manual instead of submittal as record Product Data.

## 2.4 RECORD SAMPLE SUBMITTAL:

- A. Prior to the date of Substantial Completion, each Contractor shall meet with the Resident Engineer at the site to determine which of the Samples maintained during the construction period shall be transmitted to the Commissioner for record purposes.
- B. Comply with the Resident Engineer's instructions for packaging, identification marking and delivery to the DDC. Dispose of other samples as specified for disposal of surplus and waste material.

## 2.5 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS:

- A. Each Contractor shall provide preliminary and final versions of Operating and Maintenance Manuals required for those systems, equipment and materials listed in other Sections of the Project Specifications.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- B. Format: Prepare and assemble Operation and Maintenance Manuals in heavy-duty, 3-ring, hardback loose leaf binders in the form of an instructional manual. All binders for each discipline shall be the same color. When multiple binders are used, correlate data into related consistent groupings. Binder front shall contain permanently attached labels displaying the following:
1. Heading:  
The City of New York  
Department of Design and Construction  
Division of Public Buildings
  2. Capital Budget Project Number (FMS ID)
  3. Name and Location of Project
  4. Contractor's name and Address
  5. Dates of the work covered by the contents of the Project Manual.
  6. Binder spine shall display Project Number (FMS ID) and date of completion.
- C. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
1. List of documents
  2. List of systems
  3. List of equipment
  4. Table of contents
- D. Arrange content by systems under Specification Section numbers and sequence of Table of Contents of the Project manual. Provide tabbed flyleaf for each separate product, equipment and/or system/subsystem with typed description of product and major component parts of equipment.
- E. Safety warnings or cautions shall be visibly highlighted within each maintenance procedure. Use of such highlights shall be limited to only critical items and shall not be used in an excessive manner which would reduce their effectiveness.
- F. For each product or system, list names, addresses and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and Suppliers, including local source of supplies and replacement parts. Vendors and Supplier listings are to include names, addresses and telephone numbers, including nearest field service telephone numbers.
- G. Where contents of the manual include any manufacturer's catalog pages, clearly indicate the precise items and options included in the installation and delete all manufacturers' data regarding products not included in the installation.
- H. All material within manuals shall be new. Copies used for prior submittals or used in construction shall not be used.
- I. Submit preliminary and final manual editions to the Commissioner according to the approved progress schedule.
- J. Manuals shall present all technical material to the greatest extent possible, with respect to text, tabular matter and illustrations. Illustrations shall preferably consist of line drawings. All applicable drawings shall be included. If available, color photograph prints may be included.
- K. Preliminary manual editions shall be as technically complete as the final manual edition. All illustrations shall be in final forms.
- L. Final manual editions shall be technically accurate and complete and shall represent all "as-built" systems, pieces of equipment, or materials, which have been accepted by the Commissioner. All illustrations, text and tabular material shall be in final form. All shop drawings shall be included as specified in individual Specification Sections.
- M. Building products, applied materials, and finishes: Include product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color texture designations. Where applicable, provide information for re-ordering custom manufactured products.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- N. Instructions for care and maintenance: Include manufacturers' recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- O. Moisture Protection and Weather Exposed Products: Include product data listing applicable reference standards, chemical compositions, and details of installation. Provide recommendations for inspections, maintenance, and repair.
- P. Additional Requirements: Specified in individual Specification Sections.

**2.6 DEMONSTRATION AND ORIENTATION DVD:**

- A. Commissioned and Non-Commissioned Projects: Each Contractor shall submit final version of applicable Demonstration and Orientation DVD recordings in compliance with Section 01 79 00, DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION, and Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

**2.7 GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES:**

- A. SCHEDULE B – Requirements for guarantees and warranties for the Project are set forth in Schedule B, which is included as part of the Addendum.
- B. FORM – For all guarantee requirements set forth in Schedule B, each Contractor shall provide a written guaranty, in the form set forth herein.
- C. Submit fully executed and signed manufacturers' Warranties as listed in the Project Specifications and outlined in Schedule B of the Addendum. Refer to Section 01 77 00, CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES for submittal requirements.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

**GUARANTY**

DDC PROJECT # \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT DESCRIPTION \_\_\_\_\_

CONTRACT # \_\_\_\_\_

SPECIFICATION SECTION # AND TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

GUARANTY TO BE IN EFFECT FROM \_\_\_\_\_

TO \_\_\_\_\_

The Contractor hereby guarantees that the work specified under the above section of the aforesaid Contract will be free from defects of material and/or workmanship, for the period indicated above.

The Contractor also guarantees that it will promptly repair, restore, rebuild or replace whichever may be deemed necessary by the City, any or all defective material or workmanship of the aforementioned section, that may appear within the guaranty period and any finished work to which damage may occur because of such defects, to the satisfaction of the City and without any cost or expense to the City.

The Contractor hereby agrees to pay to the City the cost of the repairs or replacements should the City make the same because of the failure of the Contractor to do so.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor

\_\_\_\_\_  
By

Subscribed and sworn to before me this  
day of \_\_\_\_\_, year \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public



**2.8 WASTE DISPOSAL DOCUMENTATION:**

- A. Certify and deliver to the Commissioner all documentation including reports, receipts, certificates, records etc. for the collection, handling, storage, classification, testing, transportation, recycling and/or disposal of all Non-Hazardous Construction Waste as required by Section 01 74 19, CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL, and Hazardous Waste as required by other Project Specification Sections. Certify compliance with all applicable governing laws, codes, rules and regulations.

**2.9 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD DOCUMENTS:**

- A. Refer to other Project Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Prior to Final Acceptance, complete miscellaneous records and place in good order, properly identified and bound or otherwise organized to allow for use and reference.
- B. Submit three (3) copies of each document to the Commissioner or as otherwise directed by the Commissioner.

**PART III – EXECUTION**

**3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE:**

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Contract Record Document purposes. Post changes and modifications to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store Record Documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Contract Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to the Contract Record Documents for the Resident Engineer's reference during normal working hours.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 39**



**SECTION 01 79 00**  
**DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SUB-SECTION 01 79 00**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements, when set forth in sections of the Project Specifications, for instructing facility's personnel, including the following:
1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  2. Owner's Pre-Acceptance Orientation in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  3. Demonstration and Orientation videotapes.
- B. Each Contractor shall provide the services of equipment manufacturers orientation specialists experienced in the type of equipment to be demonstrated.
- C. Separate Orientation sessions shall be conducted for mechanical operations and maintenance personnel and for electronic and electrical maintenance personnel.
- D. Commissioning: Refer to the Addendum to identify whether this project is to be Commissioned. For Commissioned projects each Contractor shall provide Demonstration and Orientation as described in this section and cooperate with the Commissioning Authority/Agent (CxA) to implement Commissioning requirements as described in Section 01 91 13, GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS: include without limitation the following:**

- A. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
- B. Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
- C. Section 01 77 00 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
- D. Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS
- E. Section 01 91 13 GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS
- F. Specific requirements for Demonstration and Orientation indicated in other sections of the Project Specifications

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.



- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Instruction Program: Submit three (3) copies of outline of instructional program for Demonstration and Orientation including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each instruction module to the Commissioner for approval no less than thirty (30) days prior to the date the proposed instruction is to take place. Include learning objective and outline for each instruction module.
1. At completion of instruction, submit three (3) complete instruction manual(s) and three (3) applicable DVD recording(s) to the Commissioner for the facility's and City's use.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator, instructor and Videographer.
- C. Attendance Record: For each instruction module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each orientation module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.
- E. Submit all final orientation material to the Resident Engineer a minimum of fourteen (14) days prior to the scheduled instruction.
- F. Demonstration and Orientation Recordings:
1. Non-Commissioned Projects:
- a. Each Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner three (3) copies of Demonstration and Orientation DVD (Digital Video Disk) recordings within seven (7) days of end of each instruction module.
- b. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
- 1) Project Contract I.D. Number
  - 2) Project Contract Name
  - 3) Name of Contractor
  - 4) Name of Design Consultant
  - 5) Name of Construction Manager as applicable
  - 6) Date recorded.
  - 7) Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
  - 8) Table of Contents including list of systems covered.
- c. Transcript: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper, punched and bound in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered binders. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding DVD recording. Include name of Project and date of recording on each page.
2. Commissioned Projects:
- a. Demonstration and Orientation DVD recordings for Commissioned projects will be recorded by each applicable Contractor in accordance with Sub-Section 1.5F and Sub-



Section 3.2B herein. Each Contractor performing Demonstration and Orientation shall cooperate with the CxA in the recording of each Demonstration and Orientation module.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. **Facilitator Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in instructing or educating maintenance personnel in an orientation program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in instruction or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. **Instructor Qualifications:** A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 01 40 00, QUALITY REQUIREMENTS, experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and orientation/instruction.
- C. **Videographer Qualifications:** A professional Videographer who has experience with instruction and construction projects.
- D. **Pre-instruction Conference:** Schedule with the Resident Engineer a conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00, PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION. Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and orientation instruction including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

**1.7 COORDINATION:**

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with the Resident Engineer and facility's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting facility's operations.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of orientation instruction modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by the Commissioner.

**PART II – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM:**

- A. **Program Structure:** Develop an instruction program that includes individual orientation modules for each system and equipment not part of a system, as specified and required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. **Orientation Modules:** Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following:



1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
  - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
  - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
  - c. Operating standards.
  - d. Regulatory requirements.
  - e. Equipment function including auxiliary equipment and systems.
  - f. Operating characteristics.
  - g. Limiting conditions.
  - h. Performance curves.
2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
  - a. Emergency manuals.
  - b. Operations manuals.
  - c. Maintenance manuals.
  - d. Project Record Documents.
  - e. Identification systems.
  - f. Warranties
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.



7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
  - h. Housekeeping practices
8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

### **PART III – EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTRUCTION:**

- A. Facilitator: Each Contractor performing Demonstration and Orientation shall engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and instruction modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and the Resident Engineer for the number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Each Contractor shall engage qualified instructors to instruct facility's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
- C. Scheduling: Schedule instruction with the Resident Engineer at mutually agreed times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  1. Schedule orientation instruction with the Resident Engineer with at least fourteen (14) days' advance notice.
- D. Evaluation: At conclusion of each orientation instruction module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module(s) by use of an oral, a written or a demonstration performance-based test.
- E. Cleanup: Collect and remove used and leftover educational materials from project site. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial orientation use.

#### **3.2 DEMONSTRATION AND ORIENTATION RECORDINGS:**

- A. Non-Commissioned projects:
  1. Each Contractor performing Demonstration and Orientation shall engage a qualified commercial Videographer to record demonstration and orientation instruction sessions. Record each orientation instruction module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  2. At beginning of each orientation instruction module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

3. All recordings must be close captioned.
4. Recording Format: Provide high-quality DVD (Digital Video Disk) format.
5. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to show area of demonstration and orientation instruction. Display continuous running time.
6. Narration: Describe scenes on the recording by audio narration by microphone while recording or by dubbing audio narration off-site after. Include description of items being viewed. Describe vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
7. Transcript: Provide a typewritten transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from opposite the corresponding narration segment.

**B. Commissioned Projects:**

Refer to the Addendum to determine if project is to be Commissioned.

1. The Commissioning Authority/ Agent (CxA) under separate contract with the City of New York will assess and comment on the adequacy of the Orientation Instruction sessions by reviewing the Orientation and Instruction program and agenda provided by each Contractor. The provider of the Orientation program will videotape the sessions and provide a copy to the CxA for final review and comments. If necessary, Contractor shall edit DVD recording per CxA comments.

**END OF SECTION 01 79 00**



**SECTION 01 81 13**  
**SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SUB-SECTION 01 81 13**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

A. **LEED BUILDING - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:**

The City of New York is committed to implementing good environmental practices and procedures which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project requirements related to this goal are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this section of the General Conditions. Each Contractor shall ensure that these requirements as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the Contract Documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by each Contractor or its Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. This Section includes:

1. Definitions
2. LEED Provisions
3. LEED Building Submittals
4. LEED Building Submittal Requirements
5. LEED Action Plan

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                     |  |
|----|---------------------|--|
| A. | Section 01 74 19    | CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL   |
| B. | Section 01 81 13.13 | VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND (VOC) LIMITS FOR ADHESIVES,<br>SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS |
| C. | Section 01 81 19    | INDOOR AIR QUALITY REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS                                     |
| D. | Section 01 91 13    | GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS   |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Agrifiber Products: Products derived from recovered agricultural waste fiber from sources such as cereal straw, sugarcane bagasse, sunflower husk, walnut shells, coconut husks, and agricultural prunings, processed and mixed with resins to produce panels with characteristics similar to composite wood.



- C. **Composite Wood:** Products composed of wood or plant particles or fibers bonded by a synthetic resin or binder to produce panels such as plywood, particleboard, and medium density fiberboard (MDF). Does not include hardboard, structural panels, glued laminated timber, prefabricated wood I-joists, or finger-jointed lumber.
- D. **Design Consultant:** "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.
- E. **Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certified Wood:** Wood-based materials and products certified in accordance with the Forest Stewardship Council's principles and criteria.
- F. **LEED:** The Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design rating system developed by the United States Green Building Council.
- G. **Rapidly Renewable Materials:** Materials made from agricultural products that are typically harvested within a ten-year or shorter cycle. Rapidly renewable materials include products made from bamboo, cotton, flax, jute, straw, sunflower seed hulls, vegetable oils, or wool.
- H. **Regionally Manufactured Materials:** Materials that are manufactured within a radius of 500 miles from the Project location. Manufacturing refers to the final assembly of components into the building product that is installed at the Project site.
- I. **Regionally Extracted, Harvested, or Recovered Materials:** Materials which are extracted, harvested, or recovered and manufactured within a radius of 500 miles from the Project site.
- J. **Recycled Content:** The percentage by weight of constituents that have been recovered or otherwise diverted from the solid waste stream, either during the manufacturing process (pre-consumer), or after consumer use (post-consumer).
  - 1. Spills and scraps from the original manufacturing process that are combined with other constituents after a minimal amount of reprocessing for use in further production of the same product are not recycled materials.
  - 2. Discarded materials from one manufacturing process that are used as constituents in another manufacturing process except mechanical and electrical components are pre-consumer recycled materials.
  - 3. "Pre-consumer" may also be referred to as "post-industrial".
- K. **Solar Reflectance Index (SRI):** A measure of a material's ability to reflect solar heat, as shown by a small temperature rise. It is defined so that a standard black (reflectance 0.05, emittance 0.90) is equal to 0, and a standard white (reflectance 0.80, emittance of 0.90) is equal to 100.
- L. **Volatile Organic Compound (VOC):** Any compound of carbon (excluding carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, carbonic acid, metallic carbides or carbonates, and ammonium carbonate) which vaporizes (becomes a gas) and participates in atmospheric photochemical reactions, as specified in Part 51.00 of Chapter 40 of the U.S. Code of Federal Regulations, at normal room temperatures. For the purposes of this specification, formaldehyde and acetaldehyde are considered to be VOCs.



**.1.5 LEED PROVISIONS:**

- A. Refer to the Addendum for the LEED rating to be achieved for this project. The provisions to achieve this LEED rating are integrated within the project construction documents and specifications. Each Contractor is specifically directed to the "LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria" and "LEED BUILDING Submittals" sections within the contract specification. Additional LEED requirements are met through aspects of the project design, including material and equipment selections, which may not be specifically identified as LEED BUILDING requirements. Compliance with the requirements needed to obtain LEED prerequisites and credits will be used as one criterion to evaluate substitution requests.

**1.6 LEED BUILDING SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Scope: LEED BUILDING submittals are required for all installed materials included in General Construction work. LEED BUILDING Submittals are only required for field-applied adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings included in Plumbing, Mechanical and Electrical work. Submit all required LEED BUILDING submittals in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- B. Applicability: The extent of the LEED BUILDING Submittals varies depending on the specification section. Applicable LEED BUILDING Submittals are listed under the "LEED BUILDING Submittals" heading in each specification section. The detailed requirements for the LEED BUILDING Submittals are defined in Item C below.
- C. Detailed Requirements: Sub-Sections 1.6 C.1 through 1.6 C.3 below defines the information and documents to be provided for each type of LEED BUILDING Submittal as identified in the LEED Submittal Requirements of each specification section:
1. ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM (EBMCF): Information to be supplied for this form (blank sample copy attached at end of this Section to be modified as appropriate to the project) shall include some or all of the following items, as identified in the LEED Submittal Requirements of each specification section:
    - a. Cost breakdowns for the materials included in each Contractor or sub-contractor's scope of work. Cost reporting shall include itemized material costs (excluding each Contractor's labor, equipment, overhead and profit).
    - b. The percentages (by weight) of post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content in the supplied product(s).
      1. For each product with recycled content, also indicate the total recycled content value ( $1/2 \times \text{pre-consumer percentage} \times \text{product value} + 1 \times \text{post-consumer percentage} \times \text{product value} = \text{total recycled content value}$ ).
      2. See additional requirements for concrete below.
    - c. Identification (Yes/No) of materials manufactured within 500 miles of the project site AND containing raw materials harvested or extracted within 500 miles of the project site.
      - 1) Indicate the percentage by weight, relative to the total weight of the product, that meets these criteria.
      - 2) Indicate the point of harvest/extraction/recovery of regional raw materials, the point of final assembly of regional manufactured products, and the distance from each point to the project site.
    - d. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content of all field-applied adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings, listed in grams/liter or lbs./gallon, less water.
      - 1) For detailed requirements refer to Section 01 81 13.13 VOC LIMITS FOR ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS.
    - e. The amount of "Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certified" wood products if used in the Project.
      - 1) Record only new FSC-certified wood products. Do not record reclaimed, salvaged, or recycled FSC-certified wood products.



- 2) Reclaimed, salvaged, or recycled FSC-certified wood may be recorded as post-consumer recycled content.
  - f. The amount of Rapidly Renewable materials if used in the Project.
    - 1) Indicate the type of rapidly renewable material used, and the percentage by weight, relative to the total weight of the product, that consists of rapidly renewable material.
  - g. The percentage (by weight), relative to the total weight of cementitious materials, of supplementary cementitious materials or pozzolans such as fly ash used in each concrete mix used in the Project.
    - 1) For each concrete mix, provide a complete breakdown of all components, by weight and by cost.
  - h. Identification (Yes/No) of composite wood or agrifiber products used in the project that are free of added urea-added formaldehyde resins.
  - i. Identification (Yes/No) of flooring products used in the project that have Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) Green Label or Green Label Plus certification, or Resilient Floor Covering Institute FloorScore certification.
    - 1) Untreated solid wood flooring, and mineral-based flooring products such as tile, masonry, terrazzo, and cut stone that have no organic-based coatings or sealants, are excluded from this requirement.
  - j. The EBMCF shall record the above information only for those materials or products permanently installed in the project. The EBMCF shall record VOC content, composite and agrifiber products, and CRI or FloorScore ratings only for those materials or products permanently installed within the weather barrier of the LEED building.
2. **EBMCF BACK-UP DOCUMENTATION:** These documents are used to validate the information provided on the EBMCF (except cost data). For each material listed on the EBMCF, provide documentation to certify the material's LEED BUILDING attributes, as applicable:
  - a. **RECYCLED CONTENT:** Provide published product literature or letter of certification on the manufacturer's letterhead certifying the amounts of post-consumer and/or post-industrial content.
  - b. **REGIONAL MANUFACTURING AND REGIONAL RAW MATERIALS (WITHIN 500 MILES):** Provide published product literature or letter of certification on the manufacturer's letterhead indicating the city/state where the manufacturing plant is located, where each of the raw materials in the product were extracted, harvested or recovered and the distance in miles from the project site.
    - 1) If only some of the raw materials for a particular product or assembly originate within 500 miles of the project site, provide the percentage (by weight) that these materials comprise in the complete product.
  - c. **VOC CONTENT:** Provide Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) certifying the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content of the adhesive, sealant, paint, or coating products. VOC content is to be reported in grams/liter or lbs./gallon, less water. If the MSDS does not show the product's VOC content, this information must be provided through other published product literature from the manufacturer, or stated in a letter of certification from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead.
  - d. **RAPIDLY RENEWABLE MATERIALS:** If used in the project, provide published literature or letter of certification on the manufacturer's letterhead certifying the percentage of each product that is rapidly renewable (by weight).
3. **PRODUCT CUT SHEETS:** Provide product cut sheets with each Contractor's or sub-contractor's stamp, confirming that the submitted products are the products installed in the Project.
4. **CRI GREEN LABEL PLUS CERTIFICATION:** For carpets and carpet cushions, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the products comply with the "Green Label Plus" IAQ testing program of the Carpet and Rug Institute of Dalton, GA.



5. **CERTIFICATION OF COMPOSITE WOOD OR AGRIFIBER RESINS:** For all composite wood, engineered wood and agrifiber products (including plywood, particleboard, and medium density fiberboard), provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the products do not contain added urea-formaldehyde resins.
6. **CERTIFICATION OF COMPOSITE WOOD OR AGRIFIBER LAMINATING ADHESIVES:** For all laminating adhesives used with composite wood, engineered wood and agrifiber products (e.g., adhesives used to laminate wood veneers to an engineered wood substrate), provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the adhesive products do not contain urea-formaldehyde.
7. **FSC-CERTIFIED WOOD:**
  - a. If used in the project, provide chain of custody documents and copies of invoices regarding wood products, including whether or not such wood product is FSC-certified.
  - b. If used in the project, for assemblies, provide the percentage (by cost and by weight) of the assembly that is FSC-certified wood.
  - c. If used in the project, for assemblies, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying the percentage that is FSC-certified wood.
8. **GREEN SEAL COMPLIANCE:** Provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the following product types comply with the VOC limits and chemical component restrictions developed by the Green Seal organization of Washington, DC:
  - a. Interior Architectural Paints and Coatings: refer to Green Seal standard GS-11 (1<sup>st</sup> edition, May 1993)
  - b. Anti-corrosive and Anti-rust paints: refer to Green Seal standard GC-03 (2<sup>nd</sup> Edition, January 1997)
  - c. Aerosol Adhesives: refer to Green Seal standard GS-36 (1<sup>st</sup> edition, October 2000)
9. **HIGH ALBEDO PAVING AND WALKWAY MATERIALS:** For paving and walkway materials made from concrete or brick provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying a minimum Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) value of 29. SRI values shall be calculated according to ASTM E 1980. Reflectance shall be measured according to ASTM E 903, ASTM E 1918, or ASTM C 1549. Emittance shall be measured according to ASTM E 408 or ASTM C 1371.
10. **HIGH ALBEDO ROOFING MATERIALS:** For exposed roofing membranes, pavers, and ballast products, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying the following minimum Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) values:
  - a. 78 for low-sloped roofing applications (slope  $\leq$  2:12)
  - b. 29 for steep-sloped roofing applications (slope  $>$  2:12)

SRI values shall be calculated according to ASTM E 1980. Reflectance shall be measured according to ASTM E 903, ASTM E 1918, or ASTM C 1549. Emittance shall be measured according to ASTM E 408 or ASTM C 1371.

Vegetated roof surfaces are exempt from the SRI criteria.
11. **LOW MERCURY LAMPS:** For all fluorescent, compact fluorescent, and HID lamps installed in the project, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying:
  - a. The mercury content or content range per lamp in milligrams or picograms;
  - b. The design light output per lamp (light at 40% of a lamp's useful life) in lumens; and
  - c. The rated average life of the lamp in hours.



In addition, provide the total number of each lamp type installed in the project.

12. **FLOORSCORE CERTIFICATION:** For all hard surface flooring, including vinyl, linoleum, laminate flooring, wood flooring, ceramic flooring, rubber flooring, and wall base, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the products comply with the current FloorScore standard requirements.
13. **CONCRETE:** Provide concrete mix design for each mix, designated by a distinct identifying code or number and signed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state in which the concrete manufacturer or supplier is located.
14. **INTERIOR LIGHTING FIXTURES:** For each lighting fixture type installed within the building's weather barrier, provide manufacturer's cut sheets indicating the following:
  - a. Fixture power in watts.
  - b. Initial lamp lumens.
  - c. Photometric distribution data.
  - d. Dimming capability, in range of percentages.
15. **EXTERIOR LIGHTING FIXTURES:** For each lighting fixture type installed on site, provide manufacturer's cut sheets indicating the following:
  - a. Fixture power in watts.
  - b. Initial lamp lumens.
  - c. Photometric distribution data.
  - d. Range of field adjustability, if any.
  - e. Warranty of suitability for exterior use.
16. **ALTERNATIVE TRANSPORTATION:** Provide manufacturer's cut sheets and/or shop drawings for the following items installed on site:
  - a. Bike racks, including total number of bicycle slots provided.
  - b. Signage indicating parking spaces reserved for electric or low-emitting vehicles and for carpools/vanpools, including total number of signs.
17. **WATER CONSERVING FIXTURES:** For all water consuming plumbing fixtures and fittings, provide manufacturer's cut sheets showing maximum flow rates and/or flush rates.
18. **ENERGY SAVING APPLIANCES:** Provide manufacturer's cut sheets and published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying the product's rating under the U.S. EPA/DOE Energy Star program, for all of the following:
  - a. Appliances (i.e., refrigerators, dishwashers, microwave ovens, televisions, clothes washers, clothes dryers, chilled water dispensers).
  - b. Office equipment (i.e., copy machines, fax machines, plotters/printers, scanners, binding and publishing equipment).
  - c. Electronics (i.e., servers, desktop computers, computer monitor displays, laptop computers, network equipment).
  - d. Commercial food service equipment
19. **GLAZING:** For glazing in any windows, doors, storefront and window wall systems, curtainwall systems, skylights, and partitions, provide manufacturer's cut sheets indicating the following:
  - a. Glazed area.
  - b. Visible light transmittance.
  - c. Solar heat gain coefficient.
  - d. Fenestration assembly u-factor.
20. **VENTILATION:** Provide manufacturer's cut sheets for the following:
  - a. Carbon dioxide monitoring systems, if any, installed to measure outside air delivery.
  - b. Air filters: for detailed requirements refer to Section 01 81 19 INDOOR AIR QUALITY REQUIREMENTS.
21. **REFRIGERATION:** For all refrigeration equipment, provide manufacturer's cut sheets indicating the following:
  - a. Equipment type.



- b. Equipment life. Default values specified by the 2007 ASHRAE Applications Handbook will be used unless otherwise demonstrated by the manufacturer's guarantee and an equivalent long-term service contract.
- c. Refrigerant type.
- d. Refrigerant charge in pounds of refrigerant per ton of gross cooling capacity.
- e. Tested refrigerant leakage rate, in percent per year. A default rate of 2% will be used unless otherwise demonstrated by test data.
- f. Tested end-of-life refrigerant loss, in percent. A default rate of 10% will be used unless otherwise demonstrated by test data.

#### 1.7 LEED BUILDING SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. The LEED BUILDING submittal information shall be assembled into one package per each Contractor's specification section(s) (or per subcontractor), and submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. Incomplete or inaccurate LEED BUILDING submittals may be used as the basis for rejecting the submittals of products or assemblies.

#### 1.8 LEED ACTION PLANS:

- A. Construction Waste Management Plan- Refer to Section 01 74 19, Construction Waste Management and Disposal for detailed submittal requirements.
- B. Construction IAQ Management Plan- Refer to Section 01 81 19, Indoor Air Quality Requirements for LEED Buildings, for detailed submittal requirements.
- C. Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plan (ESC Plan):
  - 1. The Plan shall be in accordance with the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation (NYSDEC) or the 2003 EPA Construction General Permit, whichever is more stringent.
  - 2. The Plan shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
  - 3. Detailed requirements: ESC Plan
    - i. Include the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan, if required.
    - ii. Identify the party responsible for Plan monitoring and documentation. The party must be regularly on site.
    - iii. Describe all site work that will be implemented on the project.
    - iv. Provide site plan with location of ESC measures, including, but not limited to, stormwater quantity controls, stormwater quality controls, stabilized construction entrances, washdown areas, and inlet/catch basin protection.
    - v. Describe the inspection and maintenance of the ESC measures. Provide a construction schedule indicating weekly site review.
    - vi. Describe reporting and documentation measures.
  - 4. Detailed requirements: ESC Measures
  - 5. Submittal requirements: ESC Tracking Log
    - a. Note date of major rain events, describe damage, describe any repairs or maintenance performed, and note responsible party.
    - b. Note date and findings of weekly site review, describe any repairs or maintenance performed, and note responsible party.
    - c. Submit monthly.
  - 6. Implementation
    - a. The GC Contractor shall implement the ESC Plan, coordinate the Plan with all affected trades, and designate one individual as the Erosion and Sedimentation Control



- Representative, who will be responsible for communicating the progress of the Plan with the Commissioner on a regular basis, and for assembling the required LEED documentation.
- b. Each Contractor shall be responsible for the provision, maintenance, and repair of all ESC measures.
  - c. Demonstration. Each Contractor shall provide on-site instruction of proper construction practices required to prevent erosion and sedimentation.
  - d. Meetings. Urgent or ongoing ESC issues shall be discussed at weekly on-site job meetings.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Each Contractor shall implement all LEED Action Plans, coordinate the Plans and LEED Building Submittals with all affected trades, and designate one individual as the Sustainable Construction Representative at no additional cost to the City of New York, who will be responsible for communicating the progress of LEED activities with the Commissioner on a regular basis, and for assembling the required LEED documentation.
- B. Responsibilities of Contractor's Subcontractors: Each Contractor shall be responsible for his/her subcontractors complying with the LEED Action Plans and for providing required LEED documentation as required for the project.
- C. Distribution and Compilation: The GC Contractor shall be responsible for distributing the EBMCF and any other forms or templates required for each Contractor and his/ her subcontractors to record LEED documentation. Each Contractor shall also be responsible for collecting and compiling EBMCF information into packages as described in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
- D. Meetings: Sustainable design and construction issues shall be discussed at the following meetings:
  1. Demolition kick-off meeting
  2. Construction kick-off meeting
  3. Construction kick-off meeting for LEED (independent meeting)
  4. Weekly job-site progress and coordination meetings
- E. Closeout meeting

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 81 13**





**SECTION 01 81 13.13**

**VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND (VOC) LIMITS FOR ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS FOR LEED BUILDINGS**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SECTION 01 81 13.13**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes requirements for volatile organic compound (VOC) content in adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings used for the project.
- B. All sections in the Project Specifications with adhesives, sealant or sealant primer applications, paints and coatings shall follow all requirements of this section. In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between this section and the Specifications regarding adhesives, sealant or sealant applications, paints and coatings, the requirements set forth in this Section shall prevail.
- C. This Section includes:
1. General Requirements
  2. References
  3. VOC Requirements for Interior Adhesives
  4. VOC Requirements for Interior Sealants
  5. VOC requirements for Interior Paints
  6. VOC requirements for Interior Coatings
  7. Submittals

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- |    |                  |  |
|----|------------------|--|
| A. | Section 01 10 00 | SUMMARY  |
| B. | Section 01 31 00 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION                |
| C. | Section 01 32 00 | CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION                |
| D. | Section 01 33 00 | SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES                               |
| E. | Section 01 73 00 | EXECUTION  |
| F. | Section 01 77 00 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES                                |
| G. | Section 01 78 39 | CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS                          |
| H. | Section 01 81 13 | SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS |
| I. | Section 01 81 19 | INDOOR AIR QUALITY FOR LEED BUILDINGS              |

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. **ADHESIVE:** Any substance used to bond one surface to another by attachment. Includes adhesive primers and adhesive bonding primers.
1. **Aerosol Adhesive:** Any adhesive packaged as an aerosol with a spray mechanism permanently housed in a non-refillable can designed for hand-held application without the need for ancillary equipment.



- B. **CARCINOGEN:** A chemical listed as a known, probable, reasonably anticipated, or possible human carcinogen by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) (Groups 1, 2A, and 2B), the National Toxicology Program (NTP) (Groups 1 and 2), the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS) (weight-of-evidence classifications A, B1, B2, and C, carcinogenic, likely to be carcinogenic, and suggestive evidence of carcinogenicity or carcinogen potential), or the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).
- C. **CLEAR WOOD FINISH:** Clear/semi-transparent coating applied to wood substrates to provide a transparent or translucent solid film.
1. **Lacquer:** Clear/semi-transparent coating formulated with cellulosic or synthetic resins to dry by evaporation without chemical reaction and provide a solid, protective film.
  2. **Sanding Sealer:** A sanding sealer that also meets the definition of a lacquer.
  3. **Varnish:** Clear/semi-transparent coating, excluding lacquers and shellacs, formulated to dry by chemical reaction on exposure to air. May contain small amounts of pigment.
- D. **COATING:** Liquid, liquefiable, or mastic composition that is converted to a solid adherent film after application to a substrate as a thin layer; and is used for decorating, protecting, identifying or to serve some functional purpose such as the filling or concealing of surface irregularities or the modification of light and heat radiation characteristics; and is intended for on-site application to interior or exterior surfaces of buildings. Does not include stains, clear finishes, recycled latex paint, specialty (industrial, marine or automotive) coatings or paint sold in aerosol cans.
- E. **FLOOR COATING:** Opaque coating applied to flooring. Excludes industrial maintenance coatings.
- F. **HAZARDOUS AIR POLLUTANT:** Any compound listed by the U.S. EPA in the Clean Air Act Section 112(b)(1) as a hazardous air pollutant.
- G. **MUTAGEN:** A chemical that meets the criteria for category 1, chemicals known to induce heritable mutations or to be regarded as if they induce heritable mutations in the germ cells of humans, under the Harmonized System for the Classification of Chemicals Which Cause Mutations in Germ Cells (United Nations Economic Commission for Europe, Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals).
- H. **OZONE-DEPLETING COMPOUNDS:** A compound with an ozone-depletion potential greater than 0.1 (CFC 11=1) according to the U.S. EPA list of Class I and Class II Ozone-Depleting Substances.
- I. **PAINT:** A pigmented coating. For the purposes of this specification, paint primers are considered to be paints.
1. **Flat Coating or Paint:** Has a gloss of less than 15 (using an 85-degree meter) or less than 5 (using a 60-degree meter).
  2. **Non-Flat Coating or Paint:** Has a gloss of greater than or equal to 15 (using an 85-degree meter) or greater than or equal to 5 (using a 60-degree meter).
  3. **Non-Flat High-Gloss Coating or Paint:** Has a gloss of greater than or equal to 70 (using a 60-degree meter).
  4. **Anti-Corrosive / Rust Preventative Paint:** Coating formulated and recommended for use in preventing the corrosion of ferrous metal substrates.
- J. **PRIMER:** Coating that is formulated and recommended for one or more of the following purposes: to provide a firm bond between the substrate and a subsequent coating; to prevent a subsequent coating from being absorbed into the substrate; to prevent harm to a subsequent coating from materials in the substrate; or to provide a smooth surface for application of a subsequent coating.
- K. **REPRODUCTIVE TOXIN:** A chemical listed as a reproductive toxin (including developmental, female, and male toxins) by the State of California under the Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act of 1986 (California Code of Regulations, Title 22, Division 2, Subdivision 1, Chapter 3, Sections 1200, et. Seq.).
- L. **SANDING SEALER:** Clear/semi-transparent coating formulated to seal bare wood. Can be abraded to create a smooth surface for subsequent coatings. Does not include sanding sealers that are lacquers (see Clear Wood Finish above).



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

- M. **SEALANT:** Any material with adhesive properties, formulated primarily to fill, seal, or waterproof gaps or joints between surfaces. Includes sealant primers and caulks.
- N. **SHELLAC:** Clear or pigmented coating formulated solely with the resinous secretions of the lac beetle, thinned with alcohol and formulated to dry by evaporation without chemical reaction. Excludes floor applications.
- O. **STAIN:** Clear semi-transparent/opaque coating formulated to change the color but not conceal the grain pattern or texture of the substrate.
- P. **VOLATILE AROMATIC COMPOUND:** Any hydrocarbon compound containing one or more 6-carbon benzene rings, and having an initial boiling point less than or equal to 280 degrees Celsius measured at standard conditions of temperature and pressure.
- Q. **VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND:** Any compound of carbon (excluding carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, carbonic acid, metallic carbides or carbonates, and ammonium carbonate) which vaporizes (becomes a gas) and participates in atmospheric photochemical reactions, as specified in Part 51.00 of Chapter 40 of the U.S. Code of Federal Regulations, at normal room temperatures. For the purposes of this specification, formaldehyde and acetaldehyde are considered to be VOCs.
- R. **WATERPROOFING SEALER:** A coating that prevents the penetration of water into porous substrates.

#### 1.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. The City of New York is committed to implementing good environmental practices and procedures which include achieving a LEED Green building rating. Specific project requirements related to this goal which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. Each Contractor shall ensure that the requirements as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the Contract Documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by each Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated environmental goals.

#### 1.6 REFERENCES:

- A. Rule 1168 – “Adhesive and Sealant Applications”, amended 7 January 2005): South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), State of California, [www.aqmd.gov](http://www.aqmd.gov)
- B. Rule 1113 - “Architectural Coatings”, amended 9 July 2004: South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), State of California, [www.aqmd.gov](http://www.aqmd.gov)
- C. Green Seal Standard GS-11- “Paints”, of Green Seal, Inc., Washington, DC, [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org)
- D. Green Seal Standard GC-03- “Anti-Corrosive Paints”, of Green Seal, Inc., Washington, DC, [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org)

#### 1.7 VOC REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERIOR ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS:

- A. **GENERAL:** Unless otherwise specified herein, the VOC content of all interior adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings (herein referred to as “products”) shall not be in excess of **250 grams per liter**.
- B. No product shall contain any ingredients that are carcinogens, mutagens, reproductive toxins, persistent bioaccumulative compounds, hazardous air pollutants, or ozone-depleting compounds. An exception shall be made for titanium dioxide and, for products that are pre-tinted by the manufacturer, carbon black, which shall be less than or equal to 1% by weight of the product.
- C. No product shall contain the following:
  - 1. methylene chloride
  - 2. 1,1,1-trichloroethane
  - 3. benzene



4. toluene
5. ethylbenzene
6. vinyl chloride
7. naphthalene
8. 1,2-dichlorobenzene
9. di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate
10. butyl benzyl phthalate
11. di-n-butyl phthalate
12. di-n-octyl phthalate
13. diethyl phthalate
14. dimethyl phthalate
15. isophorone
16. antimony
17. cadmium
18. hexavalent chromium
19. lead
20. mercury
21. formaldehyde
22. methyl ethyl ketone
23. methyl isobutyl ketone
24. acrolein
25. acrylonitrile

D. No product shall contain more than 1.0% by weight of sum total of volatile aromatic compounds.

#### 1.8 VOC REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERIOR ADHESIVES:

- A. The volatile organic compound (VOC) content of adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, or adhesive primers used in this project shall not exceed the limits defined in Rule 1168 – "Adhesive and Sealant Applications" of the South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), of the State of California.
- B. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD are as follows. All VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.
- C. For specified building construction related applications, the allowable VOC content is as follows:

##### a. Architectural Applications:

i. Indoor carpet adhesive	50
ii. Carpet pad adhesive	50
iii. Wood flooring adhesive	100
iv. Rubber floor adhesive	60
v. Subfloor adhesive	50
vi. Ceramic tile adhesive	65
vii. VCT and asphalt tile adhesive	50
viii. Drywall and panel adhesive	50
ix. Cove base adhesive	50
x. Multipurpose construction adhesive	70
xi. Structural glazing adhesive	100

##### b. Specialty Applications:

a. PVC welding	510
b. CPVC welding	490



c.	ABS welding	325
d.	Plastic cement welding	250
e.	Adhesive primer for plastic	550
f.	Contact Adhesive	80
g.	Special Purpose Contact Adhesive	250
h.	Structural Wood Member Adhesive	140
i.	Sheet Applied Rubber Lining Operations	850
j.	Top and Trim Adhesive	250

c. Substrate Specific Applications:

a.	Metal to metal	30
b.	Plastic foams	50
c.	Porous material (except wood)	50
d.	Wood	30
e.	Fiberglass	80

d. Aerosol Adhesives:

a.	General purpose mist spray	65% VOC's by weight
b.	General purpose web spray	55% VOC's by weight
c.	Special purpose aerosol adhesives (all types)	70% VOC's by weight

**1.9 VOC REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERIOR SEALANTS:**

- A. The volatile organic compound (VOC) content of sealants, or sealant primers used in this project shall not exceed the limits defined in Rule 1168 – “Adhesive and Sealant Applications” of the South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), of the State of California.
- B. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD are as follows. All VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.

1 Sealants:

a.	Architectural	250
b.	Non-membrane roof	300
c.	Roadway	250
d.	Single-ply roof membrane	450
e.	Other	420

2 Sealant Primer:

a.	Architectural – Nonporous	250
b.	Architectural – Porous	775
c.	Other	750

**1.10 VOC REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERIOR PAINTS:**

- A. Paints and Primers: Paints and primers used in non-specialized interior applications (i.e., for wallboard, plaster, wood, metal doors and frames, etc.) shall meet the VOC limitations of the Green Seal Paint Standard GS-11, of Green Seal, Inc., Washington, DC. Product-specific environmental requirements are as follows:

1. Volatile Organic Compounds:

- a. The VOC concentrations (in grams per liter) of the product shall not exceed those listed below as determined by U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Reference Test Method 24.



Interior Paints and Primers:

Non-flat: 150 g/l

Flat: 50 g/l

The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale.

- B. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints: Anti-corrosive and anti-rust paints applied to interior ferrous metal substrates shall meet the VOC limitations of the Green Seal Paint Standard GC-03, of Green Seal, Inc., Washington, DC. Product-specific environmental requirements are as follows:

- 1. Volatile Organic Compounds:

- a. The VOC concentrations (in grams per liter) of the product shall not exceed those listed below as determined by U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Reference Test Method 24.

Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints: 250 g/l

The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale.

**1.11 VOC REQUIREMENTS FOR INTERIOR COATINGS:**

- A. Clear wood finishes, floor coatings, stains, sealers, and shellacs applied to the interior shall meet the VOC limitations defined in Rule 1113, "Architectural Coatings" of SCAQMD, of the State of California. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD, based on 7/9/04 amendments, are as follows. VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.

- 1. Clear Wood Finishes:

- a. Varnish 350
- b. Sanding Sealers 350
- c. Lacquer 550

- 2. Shellac:

- a. Clear 730
- b. Pigmented 550

- 3. Stains 250

- 4. Floor Coatings 100

- 5. Waterproofing Sealers 250

- 6. Sanding Sealers 275

- 7. Other Sealers 200

The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale.

**1.12 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Each Contractor shall submit Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted. (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Submit Environmental Building Materials Certification Form (EBMCF): As referenced in Section 01 81 13, Sustainable Design Requirements for LEED Buildings, for each field-applied adhesive, sealant, paint, and coating product, provide the VOC requirement, as provided in this Specification, for the relevant material category indicated on the documentation noted above.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 81 13.13**



**SECTION 01 81 19  
INDOOR AIR QUALITY REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SECTION 01 81 19**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 CONSTRUCTION IAQ MANAGEMENT GOALS FOR THE PROJECT:**

- A. The City of New York has established that this Project shall minimize the detrimental impacts on Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) resulting from construction activities. Factors that contaminate indoor air, such as dust entering HVAC systems and ductwork, improper storage of materials on-site, poor housekeeping, shall be minimized.

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:**

- A. All sections of the Specifications related to interior construction, MEP systems, and items affecting indoor air quality.
- B. Section 01 81 13, SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS.
- C. Section 01 81 13.13, VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND (VOC) LIMITS FOR ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, PAINTS AND COATINGS.
- D. Division 9 (of the Specifications): Finishes.

**1.4 DEFINITIONS:**

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.
- C. Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC's): Chemical compounds common in and emitted by many building products, including solvents in paints, coatings, adhesives and sealants, wood preservatives, composite wood binder, and foam insulations. Not all VOC's are harmful, but many of those contained within building products contribute to the formation of smog and may irritate building occupants by their smell and/or health impact.
- D. Materials that act as "sinks" for VOC contamination: Absorptive materials, typically dry and soft materials (such as textiles, carpeting, acoustical ceiling tiles and gypsum board) that readily absorb VOC's emitted by "source" materials and release them over a prolonged period of time.



- E. Materials that act as “sources” for VOC contamination: Products with high VOC contents that emit VOC’s either rapidly during application and curing (typically “wet” products, such as paints, sealants, adhesives, caulks and sealers) or over a prolonged period (typically “dry” products such as flooring coverings with plasticizers and engineered wood with formaldehyde).

#### 1.5 REFERENCES, RESOURCES:

- A. “IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction”, First Edition, November 1995, The Sheet Metal and Air Conditioner Contractors National Association (SMACNA). (703) 803-2980, [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
- B. ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2-1999, “Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size”, [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org)

#### 1.6 LEED BUILDING GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Implement practices and procedures as necessary to meet the project’s environmental performance goals as set forth in the specific requirements of this section. Specific project goals that may impact this area of work include: use of recycled-content materials; use of low-emitting materials; construction waste recycling; and the implementation of a construction indoor air quality management plan. Ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in this Section, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions or other changes to the work shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria.

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION IAQ MANAGEMENT PLAN :

- A. The GC Contractor shall prepare and implement a Construction IAQ Management Plan in coordination with each Contractor and submit the IAQ Management Plan to the Commissioner for approval in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCDEURES. The Construction IAQ Management Plan shall meet the following criteria:
1. Construction activities shall be planned to meet or exceed the minimum requirements of the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning National Contractors’ Association (SMACNA) “IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction”, Second Edition, 2007 (or latest).
  2. Absorptive materials shall be protected from moisture damage when stored on-site and after installation.
  3. If air handlers are to be used during construction, filtration media with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8 must be used at each return air grill, as determined by ASHRAE 52.2-1999.
  4. Filtration media shall be replaced immediately prior to occupancy. Filtration media shall have a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 13 as determined by ASHRAE 52.2-1999 if the project is pursuing Indoor Air Quality Credit 5: Indoor Chemical Pollutant Source Control.
  5. A “Sequence of Finish Installation Plan” shall be developed, highlighting measures to reduce the absorption of VOCs by materials that act as “sinks”.
  6. Upon approval of the Plan by the Commissioner, it shall be implemented through the duration of the construction process, and documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of Sub-Section 1.08 herein.



B. Further description of the Construction IAQ Management Plan requirements is as follows:

1. SMACNA Guidelines: Chapter 3 of the referenced "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction", outline IAQ measures in five categories as listed below. The Construction IAQ Management Plan shall be organized in accordance with the SMACNA format, and shall address measures to be implemented in each of the five categories (including subsections). All subsections shall be listed in the Plan; items that are not applicable for this project should be listed as such.
  - a. HVAC Protection
    - 1) Protect air handling and distribution equipment and air supply and return ducting during construction.
    - 2) All ductwork arriving on site will be sealed with plastic sheeting and stored on pallets or dunnage until installed.
    - 3) Cover and protect all exposed air inlets and outlets, openings, grilles, ducts, plenums, etc. to prevent water, moisture, dust and other contaminant intrusion.
    - 4) Apply protection immediately after ducting.
    - 5) Protect ducting runs at the end of day's work.
    - 6) Inspect temporary filtration weekly and replace as required to maintain the proper ventilation rates in the building.
  - b. Source Control
    - 1) Protect stored on-site or installed absorptive or porous materials.
    - 2) Do not use wet or damaged porous materials in the building.
    - 3) Recover, isolate, and ventilate containers housing toxic materials and materials with VOC levels above the limits for interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings described in these Specifications.
    - 4) Exhaust fumes from idling vehicles and gasoline fueled tools through use of funnels or temporary piping.
    - 5) Containers housing toxic materials and materials with VOC levels above the limits for interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings described in these Specifications, shall be closed when not in use.
  - c. Pathway Interruption
    - 1) Depressurize work areas to contain dust and odors.
    - 2) Pressurize occupied spaces to prevent intrusion of dust and odors.
    - 3) Erect barriers to contain construction areas.
    - 4) Relocate pollutant sources.
    - 5) Temporarily seal the building and provide 100% outside air for ventilation.
  - d. Housekeeping
    - 1) Store materials on elevated platforms under cover, in a designated dry, clean location, prior to unpacking for installation.
    - 2) If materials are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of material with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.
    - 3) Institute cleaning activities to remove contaminants from the building prior to occupancy. Clean all coils, air filters, and ductwork prior to performing testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC systems.
    - 4) Sweep the work area on a daily basis. Use an efficient and effective dust collecting method such as damp cloth, wet mop, or vacuum with particulate filters. Activities which produce high levels of dust shall be cleaned up immediately upon completion.
    - 5) Spills or excess applications of products containing solvents, or with VOC levels above the limits for interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings described in these Specifications, must be removed immediately.
    - 6) Dust all walls prior to application of finishes.
    - 7) Vacuum all stud tracks prior to application of insulation.
    - 8) Materials which become contaminated through direct exposure to moisture from precipitation, plumbing leaks, or condensation shall be replaced by the Contractor.



- e. Scheduling
- 1) Phase construction such that absorptive materials are installed only in areas that are weathertight.
  - 2) Schedule activities that utilize "sources" of VOC contamination to take place prior to installing high absorbent materials that will act as "sinks" for contaminants.
  - 3) Review of the appropriate components of the Construction IAQ Management Plan shall be a regular action topic at weekly site coordination meetings. Implementation of the Plan shall be documented in the meeting minutes.
2. Protection of Materials from Moisture Damage: As part of the "Housekeeping" section of the Construction IAQ Management Plan, measures to prevent installed materials or material stored on-site from moisture damage shall be described. This section should also describe measures to be taken if moisture damage does occur to absorptive materials during the course of construction.
3. Replacement of Filtration Media: Under the "HVAC Protection" section of the Construction IAQ Management Plan, a description of the filtration media in all ventilation equipment shall be provided. The description shall include replacement criteria for filtration media during construction, and confirmation of filtration media replacement for all equipment immediately prior to occupancy.
4. Sequence of Finish Installation for Materials: Where feasible, absorptive materials shall be installed after the installation of materials or finishes which have high short-term emissions of VOC's, formaldehyde, particulates, or other air-borne compounds. Absorptive materials include, but are not limited to: carpets; acoustical ceiling panels; fabric wall coverings; insulations (exposed to the airstream); upholstered furnishings; and other woven, fibrous or porous materials. Materials with high short-term emissions include, but are not limited to: adhesives, sealants and glazing compounds (specifically those with petrochemical vehicles or carriers); paints, wood preservatives and finishes; control and/or expansion joint fillers; hard finishes requiring adhesive installation; gypsum board (with associated finish processes and products); and composite or engineered wood products with formaldehyde binders.
5. Develop and implement an Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan for the pre-occupancy phase as follows:

OPTION 1 — Flush-Out

• After construction ends, prior to occupancy and with all interior finishes installed, perform a building flush-out by supplying a total air volume of 14,000 cu.ft. of outdoor air per sq.ft. of floor area while maintaining an internal temperature of at least 60 degrees F and relative humidity no higher than 60%.

OR

• If occupancy is desired prior to completion of the flush-out, the space may be occupied following delivery of a minimum of 3,500 cu.ft. of outdoor air per sq.ft. of floor area to the space. Once a space is occupied, it shall be ventilated at a minimum rate of 0.30 cfm/sq.ft. of outside air or the design minimum outside air rate determined in EQ Prerequisite 1, whichever is greater. During each day of the flush-out period, ventilation shall begin a minimum of three hours prior to occupancy and continue during occupancy. These conditions shall be maintained until a total of 14,000 cu.ft./sq.ft. of outside air has been delivered to the space.

OR

OPTION 2 — Air Testing

• Conduct baseline IAQ testing, after construction ends and prior to occupancy, using testing protocols consistent with the United States Environmental Protection Agency Compendium of



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

Methods for the Determination of Air Pollutants in Indoor Air and as additionally detailed in the LEED-NC Reference Guide.

- Demonstrate that the contaminant maximum concentrations listed below are not exceeded.

CONTAMINANT	MAXIMUM CONCENTRATION
Formaldehyde	27 parts per billion
Particulates (PM10)	50 micrograms per cubic meter
Total Volatile Organic Compounds (TVOC)	500 micrograms per cubic meter
* 4-Phenylcyclohexene (4-PCH)	6.5 micrograms per cubic meter
Carbon Monoxide (CO)	9 part per million and no greater than 2 parts per million above outdoor levels
* This test is only required if carpets and fabrics with styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) latex backing material are installed as part of the base building systems.	

- For each sampling point where the maximum concentration limits are exceeded, conduct additional flush-out with outside air and retest the specific parameter(s) exceeded to indicate the requirements are achieved. Repeat procedure until all requirements have been met. When retesting non-complying building areas, take samples from the same locations as in the first test.

- The air sample testing shall be conducted as follows:

- a. All measurements shall be conducted prior to occupancy, but during normal occupied hours and with the building ventilation system starting at the normal daily start time and operated at the minimum outside air flow rate for the occupied mode throughout the duration of the air testing.
  - b. The building shall have all interior finishes installed, including but not limited to millwork, doors, paint, carpet and acoustic tiles. Non-fixed furnishings such as workstations and partitions are encouraged, but not required, to be in place for the testing.
  - c. The number of sampling locations will vary depending upon the size of the building and number of ventilation systems. For each portion of the building served by a separate ventilation system, the number of sampling points shall not be less than one per 25,000 sq.ft., or for each contiguous floor area, whichever is larger, and include areas with the least ventilation and greatest presumed source strength.
  - d. Air samples shall be collected between 3 feet and 6 feet from the floor to represent the breathing zone of occupants, and over a minimum 4-hour period.
6. Implementation and Coordination: Implement the Construction IAQ Management Plan, and coordinate the Plan with all affected trades. Each Contractor shall designate one individual as the Construction IAQ Representative at no additional cost to the City of New York, who will be responsible for communicating the progress of the Plan with the Commissioner on a regular basis, and for assembling the required LEED documentation. Include provisions in the Construction IAQ Management Plan for addressing conditions in the field that do not adhere to the Plan, including provisions to implement a stop work order, or to rectify non-compliant conditions.
- a. Distribution: The GC Contractor shall distribute copies of the Construction IAQ Management Plan in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.
  - b. Instruction: The GC Contractor shall provide on-site instruction of appropriate site management to each Contractor.



- c. Monitoring: The Construction IAQ Representative shall monitor the implementation of the Construction IAQ Management Plan.

**1.8 SUBMITTALS:**

Submit the following LEED-required records and documents in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES and Section 01 81 13, SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS.

- A. A copy of the Construction IAQ Management Plan as defined in Sub-Section 1.7 herein.
- B. Product cut-sheets for all filtration media used during construction and installed immediately prior to occupancy, with MERV values highlighted. Cut sheets shall be submitted with each Contractor's or Subcontractor's 'approved' stamp as confirmation that the products are the products installed on the project.
- C. Provide the Commissioner with a minimum of 18 photographs as required under the provision for Special Photographs, in accordance with Section 01 32 33, PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION, comprised of at least six photographs taken on three different occasions during construction. The photographs shall document the implementation of the Construction IAQ Management Plan throughout the course of the project construction. Examples include photographs of ductwork sealing and protection, temporary ventilation measures, and conditions of on-site materials storage (to prevent moisture damage). Photographs shall include integral date stamping, and shall be submitted with brief descriptions of the Construction IAQ Management Plan measure documented, or be referenced to project meeting minutes or similar project documents which reference to the Construction IAQ Management Plan measure documented.
- D. A copy of the project's TAQ Testing report if applicable.

**1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE:**

- A. The GC Contractor shall be responsible for preparing and implementing the Construction IAQ Management Plan and shall coordinate and incorporate the work of each Contractor in the IAQ Management Plan.
- B. Responsibility of other Contractors: Each Contractor for this project shall be responsible to cooperate with the GC Contractor in the preparation and implementation of the Construction IAQ Management Plan.

**PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART III – EXECUTION (Not Used)**

**END OF SECTION 01 81 19**



**SECTION 01 91 13**  
**GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS**

**REFER TO THE ADDENDUM FOR APPLICABILITY OF THIS SECTION 01 91 13**

**PART I – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum, and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].
- B. OPR and BoD documentation are included by reference for information only.
- C. The Commissioning Plan, prepared by the Commissioning Agent (CxA) under separate contract with the City of New York, contains requirements that apply to this section.

**1.2 SUMMARY:**

- A. This Section includes general requirements that apply to implementation of Commissioning without regard to systems, subsystems, and equipment being commissioned.
- B. This Section includes:
  - 1. Definitions
  - 2. Commissioning Team
  - 3. City's Responsibilities
  - 4. Each Contractor's Responsibilities
  - 5. Commissioning Authority's/Agent's (CxA) Responsibilities
  - 6. Commissioning Documentation
  - 7. Submittals
  - 8. Coordination

**1.3 RELATED SECTIONS:** Include without limitation the following:

- A. "HVAC Commissioning Requirements" indicated in other sections of the project specifications for specific requirements for commissioning HVAC systems.
- B. This project will be commissioned by an independent third party under separate contract with the City of New York. Commissioning shall be in accordance with ASHRAE and USGBC LEED procedures, and specific commissioning requirements of the Project Specifications, whichever is more stringent. Each Contractor shall cooperate with the CxA and provide whatever assistance is required.
- C. Related Sections include without limitation the following:
  - 1. Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY
  - 2. Section 01 31 00 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
  - 3. Section 01 32 00 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
  - 4. Section 01 78 39 CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS
  - 5. Section 01 79 00 DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION
  - 6. Section 01 81 13 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LEED BUILDINGS



#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS:

- A. Refer to Article 2 of the Contract for definition of terms, words and expressions used in the General Conditions not otherwise defined herein.
- B. Design Consultant: "Design Consultant" shall mean the entity responsible for providing design services for the Project, including without limitation, preparing the construction documents (drawings and specifications) and providing services in connection with such documents during construction. The entity serving as the "Design Consultant" may be a corporation, firm, partnership, joint venture, individual or combination thereof. Such entity may be either an employee(s) of the City or an entity engaged by the City to provide such services.
- C. Commissioner: The Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction of the City of New York, his/her successors, or duly authorized representative(s).
- D. BoD: Basis of Design: A document, prepared by the Design Consultant that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that support the design process.
- E. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- F. CxA: Commissioning Agent (Aka Commissioning Authority) under separate contract with the City of New York to provide Commissioning Services for this project.
- G. OPR: Owner's (City of New York) Project Requirements: A document, prepared by the Design Consultant that details the functional requirements of a project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated. These include Project goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success criteria, and supporting information.
- H. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
- I. TAB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing.

#### 1.5 COMMISSIONING TEAM:

- A. Members Appointed by each Contractor: Individuals, each having authority to act on behalf of the entity he or she represents, explicitly organized to implement the commissioning process through coordinated actions. The commissioning team shall consist of, but not be limited to, representatives of each Contractor, including Project superintendent and subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists deemed appropriate by the CxA.
- B. Members Appointed by the City:
  - 1. Commissioning Authority/Agent (CxA): The designated person, company, or entity under separate contract with the City that plans, schedules, and coordinates the commissioning team to implement the commissioning process.
  - 2. Representatives of the facility user and operation and maintenance personnel.
  - 3. Design Consultant and other concerned entities.



**1.6 CITY'S RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- A. Provide the OPR documentation to the Commissioning Agent (CxA) for use in developing the commissioning plan; systems manual; operation and maintenance orientation plan; and testing plans and checklists.
- B. Assign operation and maintenance personnel and schedule them to participate in commissioning team activities.
- C. Provide the BoD documents, prepared by the Design Consultant and approved by the Commissioner, to the Commissioning Agent (CxA) for use in developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, and operation and maintenance orientation plan.

**1.7 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- A. The Contractor(s) responsible for each specific service shall provide utility services required for the commissioning process.
- B. As a member of the Commissioning Team, each Contractor and their subcontractors shall assign representatives with expertise and authority to act on behalf of each Contractor and schedule them to participate in and perform commissioning team activities including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Participate in scheduled construction-phase coordination and commissioning team meetings.
  - 2. Integrate and coordinate commissioning process activities with the construction schedule.
  - 3. Review and accept commissioning process test procedures provided by the CxA.
  - 4. Review and accept construction checklists provided by the CxA.
  - 5. Perform testing required in the Commissioning Schedule as per the Commissioning Process test procedures provided by the CxA.
  - 6. Complete installation checklists as Work is completed and return to CxA through the Resident Engineer.
  - 7. Cooperate with the CxA for resolution of issues recorded in the Issues Log.
  - 8. Evaluate performance deficiencies identified in test reports and, in collaboration with entity responsible for system and equipment installation, recommend corrective action.
  - 9. Submit As-Built documents, operation and maintenance manuals for systems and subsystems, and equipment in accordance with Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS.
  - 10. Provide orientation sessions for operation and maintenance personnel (sessions will be recorded by each contractor providing demonstration and orientation instruction sessions) in accordance with Section 01 79 00, DEMONSTRATION AND OWNER'S PRE-ACCEPTANCE ORIENTATION.

**1.8 COMMISSIONING AGENT'S (CxA) RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- A. Organize and lead the commissioning team.
- B. Prepare a construction-phase commissioning plan. Collaborate through the Resident Engineer with each Contractor and with subcontractors to develop test and inspection procedures. Include design changes and coordinate commissioning activities with the overall Project schedule. Identify commissioning team member responsibilities, by name, firm, and trade specialty, for performance of each commissioning task.
- C. Review and comment in accordance with Section 01 33 00, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, on submittals from each Contractor for compliance with the OPR, BoD, Contract Documents, and construction-phase commissioning plan. Review and comment on performance expectations of systems and equipment and interface between systems relating to the OPR and BoD.
- D. Coordinate with the Resident Engineer to convene commissioning team meetings for the purpose of coordination, communication, and conflict resolution; discuss progress of the commissioning processes. Responsibilities include arranging for facilities, preparing agenda and attendance lists, and notifying



participants. The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will prepare and distribute minutes to commissioning team members and attendees within three workdays of the commissioning meeting.

- E. At the beginning of the construction phase, coordinate with the Resident Engineer's kick-off meeting schedule to conduct an initial construction-phase coordination meeting for the purpose of reviewing the commissioning activities and establishing tentative schedules for operation and maintenance submittals, operation and maintenance orientation sessions, TAB Work, and Project completion.
- F. Observe and inspect construction. Report progress and deficiencies to the Commissioner. In addition to compliance with the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents, inspect systems and equipment installation for adequate accessibility required for component maintenance replacement and repair.
- G. Prepare Project-specific test and inspection procedures and checklists.
- H. Coordinate with the Resident Engineer to schedule, direct, witness, and document tests, inspections, and systems startup.
- I. Compile test data, inspection reports, and certificates and include them in the systems manual and commissioning report.
- J. Certify date of acceptance and startup for each item of equipment for start of warranty periods.
- K. Review and comment on operation and maintenance documentation and systems manual outline for compliance with the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents. Operation and maintenance documentation requirements are specified in other sections of the project specifications and described in Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS.
- L. Record and edit demonstration and orientation sessions on DVD.
- M. Prepare commissioning reports.
- N. Assemble the final commissioning documentation, including the commissioning report and Systems Manual.

1.9

**COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION:**

Each Contractor shall assist the Commissioning Agent (CxA) in the development and compiling of the following Commissioning Documentation:

- A. Index of Commissioning Documents: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will prepare an index including the storage location of each document.
- B. OPR: A written document prepared by the Design Consultant that details the functional requirements of the Project and expectations of how it will be used and operated. This document includes the Project and design goals, measurable performance criteria, budgets, schedules, success criteria, and supporting information.
- C. BoD Document: A document, prepared by the Design Consultant, that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that explain the designed systems.
- D. Commissioning Plan: A document, prepared by the Commissioning Agent (CxA), that outlines the schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- E. Test Checklists: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will develop test checklists for each system, subsystem, or equipment including interfaces and interlocks, and include a separate entry, with space for comments, for each item to be tested. The CxA will prepare separate checklists for each mode of operation and provide space to indicate whether the mode under test responded as required. Space will be provided for testing personnel to sign off on each checklist. Specific checklist content requirements are specified in other sections of the project specifications.



- F. Inspection Checklists will be signed by each Contractor, Subcontractor(s), Installer(s), and CxA certifying that systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
- G. Test and Inspection Reports: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will record test data, observations, and measurements on test checklists. Photographs, forms, and other means appropriate for the application will be included with data. CxA shall compile test and inspection reports and test and inspection certificates and include them in systems manual and commissioning report.
- H. Corrective Action Documents: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will document corrective action taken for systems and equipment that fail tests and include required modifications to systems and equipment and revisions to test procedures, if any. Each Contractor, as applicable shall retest systems and equipment requiring corrective action. The CxA will document retest results.
- I. Issues Log: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will prepare and maintain an issues log that describes design, installation, and performance issues that are at variance with the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents. The log will identify and track issues as they are encountered, documenting the status of unresolved and resolved issues.
  - 1. Commissioning Report: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will document results of the commissioning process including unresolved issues and performance of systems, subsystems, and equipment. The commissioning report will indicate whether systems, subsystems, and equipment have been completed and are performing according to the OPR, BoD, and Contract Documents.
- J. Systems Manual: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will gather required information and compile systems manual as specified in other sections of the project specifications and described in Section 01 78 39, CONTRACT RECORD DOCUMENTS..

**1.10 SUBMITTALS:**

- A. Commissioning Plan Pre-final Submittal: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will submit six (6) copies of the pre-final commissioning plan to the Commissioner for review and distribution.
- B. Commissioning Plan Final Submittal: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will submit six (6) hard copies and electronically formatted information of the final commissioning plan to the Commissioner. The final submittal will address previous review comments.
- C. Test and Inspection Reports: CxA will submit test and inspection reports.
- D. Corrective Action Documents: CxA will submit corrective action documents.

**1.11 COORDINATION:**

- A. Coordinating Meetings: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will coordinate with the Resident Engineer's regularly scheduled construction progress meetings to conduct coordination meetings of the commissioning team to review progress on the commissioning plan, to discuss scheduling conflicts, and to discuss upcoming commissioning process activities.
- B. Pre-testing Meetings: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will coordinate with the Resident Engineer to conduct pretest meetings of the commissioning team to review startup reports, pretest inspection results, testing procedures, testing personnel and instrumentation requirements, and manufacturers' authorized service representative services for each system, subsystem, equipment, and component to be tested.
- C. Testing Coordination: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will coordinate with the Resident Engineer the sequence of testing activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.



1. Coordinate schedule times with the Resident Engineer for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- D. Manufacturers' Field Services: The Commissioning Agent (CxA) will coordinate services of manufacturers' field services.

## PART II – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART III – EXECUTION

### 3.1 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. General
1. The CxA shall review the Operation & Maintenance manuals provided by each Contractor(s) or their subcontractors for completeness of the document. The review process shall verify that Operation & Maintenance instructions meet specifications and are included for all Commissioned equipment furnished by each Contractor.
  2. Published literature shall be specifically oriented to the provided equipment, indicating required operation and maintenance procedures, parts lists, assembly / disassembly diagrams and related information.
  3. Each Contractor shall incorporate the standard technical literature into system specific formats for this facility as designed and as actually installed. The resulting Operation & Maintenance information shall be system specific, concise, to the point and tailored specifically to this facility. The CxA shall review these documents as necessary for final corrections by each Contractor(s) as applicable.
- B. The Operation & Maintenance Manual review and coordination efforts shall be completed prior to Owner orientation sessions, as these documents are to be utilized in the orientation sessions.
- C. System Operations Manual
1. The CxA shall prepare and deliver these documents with inputs from other agencies. Each Contractor(s) will confirm the proper documents are onsite and readily available. Typically, the manual includes the following:
    - a. Commissioned systems single line diagrams (Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing, and Building Management System (BMS) subcontractors).
    - b. As built sequences of operations, control drawings and original set points (Design Consultant, and BMS subcontractor)
    - c. Operating instructions for integrated building systems (mechanical and BMS subcontractors).
    - d. Recommended schedule of maintenance requirements and frequency (subcontractors).
    - e. Recommended schedule for calibrating sensors and actuators (BMS subcontractor)

### 3.2 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION

- A. Each Contractor shall schedule and coordinate instruction sessions for the facility's staff for each commissioned system. Demonstrations shall be held per Contract Documents, along with the appropriate schematics, handouts and visual / audio training aids onsite with equipment.
- B. The equipment vendors shall provide instruction on the specifics of each major equipment item including philosophy, troubleshooting and repair techniques.
- C. For additional prescription pertinent to instruction, refer to other specific divisions for demonstration and instruction requirements.



NEW YORK CITY DEPARTMENT OF  
DESIGN + CONSTRUCTION

### **3.3 WARRANTY REVIEW / SEASONAL TESTING**

- A. The CxA will return upon the start of the new season (cooling or heating) after project completion to conduct performance tests that could not be performed due to ambient conditions. The seasonal testing will only be performed if unsuitable loads / conditions were unavailable during the performance testing stages (in other words; the requirement for testing is warranted).
- B. If agreed upon by facility, Seasonal Testing can also be used for the Warranty Review. During which the CxA will interview the occupants, maintenance staff, review the operation of the building, provide recommendations for installation and operational problems and document warranty and operational issues in the issues database.

### **3.4 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. The CxA shall review the as built contract documents to verify incorporation of both design changes and as built construction details. Discrepancies noted shall be corrected by the appropriate party.

**END OF SECTION 01 91 13**

FMS ID: PV028-ISS



**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000 WEBSITE www.nyc.gov/buildnyc

**Contract for Furnishing all Labor and Material Necessary and Required for:**

- CONTRACT NO. 1 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 2 **PLUMBING WORK**
- CONTRACT NO. 3 HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 4 ELECTRICAL WORK

# Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

LOCATION: 110 Livingston Street  
BOROUGH: Brooklyn 1120  
CITY OF NEW YORK

Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.  
Contractor

Dated December 11th, 2019

Approved as to Form  
Certified as to Legal Authority

[Signature]  
Acting Corporation Counsel

JP  
12-31-18

Dated December 31, 2018

Entered in the Comptroller's Office

First Assistant Bookkeeper

Dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_



9-020

FMS ID: PV028-ISS



**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000 WEBSITE www.nyc.gov/buildnyc

Contract for Furnishing all Labor and Material Necessary and Required for:

- CONTRACT NO. 1 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 2 **PLUMBING WORK**
- CONTRACT NO. 3 HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 4 ELECTRICAL WORK

# Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out Rebid

LOCATION: 110 Livingston Street  
BOROUGH: Brooklyn 1120  
CITY OF NEW YORK

Eastern Plumbing & Mechanical Contracting, Inc.  
Contractor

Dated December 11th, 2019

Approved as to Form  
Certified as to Legal Authority

[Signature]  
Acting Corporation Counsel

JP  
12-31-18

Dated December 31, 2018

Entered in the Comptroller's Office

First Assistant Bookkeeper

Dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_



9-020



PROJECT ID:

PV028-ISS

**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

30-30 THOMSON AVENUE  
LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000  
WEBSITE [www.nyc.gov/buildnyc](http://www.nyc.gov/buildnyc)

**VOLUME 3 OF 3**

**ADDENDUM TO THE GENERAL  
CONDITIONS**

**SPECIFICATIONS**

FOR FURNISHING ALL LABOR AND MATERIALS  
NECESSARY AND REQUIRED FOR:

**Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out  
Rebid**

LOCATION:  
BOROUGH:  
CITY OF NEW YORK

110 Livingston Street  
Brooklyn 1120

CONTRACT NO. 1  
CONTRACT NO. 2  
CONTRACT NO. 3  
CONTRACT NO. 4

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK  
PLUMBING WORK  
HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK  
ELECTRICAL WORK

Department of Cultural Affairs

Work AC

Date: October 31, 2018



9-020



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

**ADDENDUM TO THE GENERAL CONDITIONS  
FOR MULTIPLE CONTRACT PROJECTS**

---

**The General Conditions are hereby amended in accordance  
with the terms and conditions set forth in this Addendum.**

---

**I. PROJECT DESCRIPTION**

FMS #: **PV028-ISS**

PROJECT NAME: **ISSUE Project Room Renovation**

PROJECT DESCRIPTION: The ISSUE Project Room (IPR) Renovation project is within a building originally designed by McKim, Mead and Whitey as an Elks Lodge in 1926. Two Trees, a Brooklyn based development company completed the conversion of the building to residential use in 2008 and reserved the historic vaulted lobby space for use as a performance space by ISSUE Project Room, the avant-garde music performance institution. Access to the performance space is from the building's entrance at 22 Boerum Place. The area of the performance hall and its ancillary spaces total 4,675 square feet.

While the building is technically not a landmark, it is a unique and well-preserved structure with original detailing, and the intent of the project is to work with the existing fabric of the building as much as possible, while accommodating IPR's needs.

The scope performed under this contract includes the acoustic treatment of the walls in the performance space and the sound separation of the performance space to the adjacent facilities. The construction of offices for IPR, a green room, new bathrooms, a box office and a bar round out the functionality of the space. To meet ADA requirements, a gently sloped (1:20) walkway with a railing will lead to the entrance to the building.

PROJECT LOCATION: **110 Livingston Street**  
BOROUGH: **Brooklyn**  
CITY OF NEW YORK  
ZIP CODE: **11201**  
COMMUNITY BOARD #: **CB 2**

LANDMARK STATUS:

DESIGNATED LANDMARK STRUCTURE OR SITE: **NO**

*If this is a Designated Landmark Structure or Site, Section 01 3591, Historic Treatment Procedures applies to this project.*

LANDMARK QUALITY STRUCTURE: **YES**

*If this is a Landmark Quality Structure, Section 01 3591, Historic Treatment Procedures applies to this project.*

## II. LEED GREEN BUILDING REQUIREMENTS

This project must achieve a Certified LEED Green Building Rating. A certain number of credits are required for this rating and are detailed in the Project Specifications. Sections 01 8113 Sustainable Design Requirements for LEED Buildings, 01 8113.13 VOC Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings for LEED Buildings, 01 8119 Indoor Air Quality Requirements for LEED Buildings, and 01 9113 General Commissioning Requirements of the DDC Standard General Conditions shall apply to this project.

## III. COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

This project includes Commissioning Requirements. The General Commissioning Requirements are found in Section 01 9113 of the DDC Standard General Conditions. Other specific Commissioning Requirements can be found in the Project Specification Sections.

## IV. PROJECT MANAGEMENT

- DDC shall publicly bid and enter into all contracts for the Project. DDC shall manage the Project using its own personnel.
- DDC shall publicly bid and enter into all contracts for the Project. A Construction Management firm (the "CM") hired by DDC shall manage the Project. The Contractor is advised that the CM shall serve as the representative of the Commissioner at the site and shall, subject to review by the Commissioner, be responsible for the inspection, management, coordination and administration of the required construction work, as delineated in the article of the Standard Construction Contract entitled "The Resident Engineer".

## V. CONTRACTS FOR THE PROJECT

The separate Contracts pertaining to this Project are set forth below:

- Contract No. 1 - Contract for General Construction Work
- Contract No. 2 - Contract for Plumbing Work
- Contract No. 3 - Contract for Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning and Fire Safety Work
- Contract No. 4 - Contract for Electrical Work

## VI. SCHEDULES

The Contractor is advised that Schedules A through F are attached to, and incorporated as part of, this Addendum to the General Conditions. These schedules contain important information that is specific to this Project. The Contractor is advised to carefully review these schedules.

**VII. APPLICABILITY OF SECTIONS/SUB-SECTIONS AND AMENDED SUB-SECTIONS**

The Contractor is advised that various Sections/Sub-Sections in the General Conditions may not apply to this Project or may apply as amended. Such Sections/Sub-Sections advise the Contractor to "Refer to the Addendum for the applicability of this Section/Sub-Section." Such Sections/Sub-Sections are set forth below. A check mark indicates whether the Section/Sub-Section (1) applies to the Project, (2) does not apply to the Project, or (3) applies to the Project as amended. If no box is checked, the Section/Sub-Section, as set forth in the General Conditions, applies to the Project. Amended Sections/Sub-Sections, if any, are set forth following this list of Sections.

<u>Section</u>	<u>Sub-Section</u>	<u>Sub-Section</u>	Applies	Does not Apply	Applies as Amended
01 1000	1.4 (B)	Scope and Intent / LEED	x		
	1.4(C)	Scope and Intent / Commissioning	x		
01 3233		Photographic Documentation	x		
01 3300	1.7 (A-D)	LEED Submittals	x		
01 3503		General Mechanical Requirements	x		
01 3506	3.2 (A-B)	Electrical Conduit System Including Boxes (Pull, Junction and Outlet)	x		
	3.3 (A-E)	Electrical Wiring Devices	x		
	3.4 (A-I)	Electrical Conductors and Terminations	x		
	3.5 (A-B)	Circuit Protective Devices	x		
	3.6 (A-J)	Distribution Centers	x		
	3.7 (A-I)	Motors	x		
	3.8 (A-I)	Motor Control Equipment	x		
01 3591		Historic Treatment Procedures			x
01 5000	3.2 (A)	Temporary Water Facilities / Temporary Water		x	
	3.2 (B)	Temporary Water Facilities / Temporary Water – Work in Existing Facilities	x		
	3.3 (B)	Temporary Sanitary Facilities / Self-Contained Toilet Units	x		
	3.3 (C)	Temporary Sanitary Facilities / Existing Toilets		x	
	3.4 (B) 1	Temporary Power, Lighting, and Site Lighting / Connection to Utility Lines	x		

**Section**      **Sub-Section**      **Sub-Section**

Applies

Date October 3, 2018  
 Applies not Apply as Amended

Section	Sub-Section	Sub-Section	Applies	Date October 3, 2018	Applies not Apply	as Amended
01 5000	3.4 (B) 2	Temporary Power, Lighting, and Site Lighting / Connection to Existing Electrical Power Service	x			
	3.4 (B) 3	Temporary Power, Lighting, and Site Lighting / Electrical Generator Power Service	x			
	3.4 (D)	Temporary Power, Lighting, and Site Lighting / Temporary Lighting	x			
	3.4 (E)	Temporary Power, Lighting, and Site Lighting / Site Security Lighting (for New Construction Only)		x		
	3.5 (A-J)	Temporary Heat	x			
	3.8 (A)	DDC Field Office / Office Space in Existing Building		x		
	3.8 (B)	DDC Field Office / DDC Field Office Trailer	x			
	3.8 (B-3a)	DDC Field Office / DDC Managed Field Office Trailer	x			
	3.8 (B-3b)	DDC Field Office / CM Managed Field Office Trailer		x		
	3.8 (D)	DDC Field Office / Additional Equipment for the DDC Field Office	x			
	3.13(A-D)	Work Fence Enclosure	x			
	3.17(B)	Project Rendering	x			
	3.18 (A-C)	Security Guards / Fire Guards on Site		x		
01 5411	3.1 (A-L)	Temporary Use, Operation and Maintenance of Elevators During Construction for New Buildings Up To and Including 15 Stories		x		
	3.2 (A-O)	Temporary Use, Operation and Maintenance of Elevators During Construction for New Buildings Over 15 Stories		x		
	3.3 (A-G)	Temporary Use, Operation and Maintenance of Elevators During Construction for Existing Buildings		x		
01 7300	3.3 (A-I)	Surveys		x		
	3.4 (A-B)	Borings		x		
	3.12 (A-D)	Sleeves and Hangers	x			
	3.13 (A)	Sleeve and Penetration Drawings	x			
	3.15 (A)	Location of Partitions	x			
01 7419	1.5 (C)	Waste Management Performance Requirements / LEED Certification	x			
01 7900		Demonstration and Owner's Pre-Acceptance Orientation	x			
01 8113		Sustainable Design Requirements for LEED Buildings	x			
01 8113.13		VOC Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings for LEED Buildings	x			
01 8119		Indoor Air Quality Requirements for LEED Buildings	x			
01 9113		General Commissioning Requirements	x			

### AMENDED SECTIONS/SUB-SECTIONS

The Contractor is advised that the amended Sub-Sections set forth below are included in the General Conditions and apply to the Project.

1. Specification Section 013591 - Historic Treatment Procedures to replace DDC General Conditions Section 013591.

### ADDITIONAL SECTIONS/SUB-SECTIONS

The Contractor is advised that the additional Sub-Sections set forth below are included in the General Conditions and apply to the Project:

#### Section 01 10 00 SUMMARY:

#### 1.4 SCOPE AND INTENT

- K. The building is a fully occupied residential building. Work hours are 8am to 5pm, Monday through Friday excluding holidays. ISSUE Project Room space has a dedicated entrance from the street that is the only access point and can be used for loading and unloading. The space will be fully closed to the public and IPR staff during the renovation.

Work outside of the ISSUE Project Room space, in the Basement and 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor Terrace, will need to be coordinated with the Building Manager and Superintendent.

The building requires a 5-day notice for any work involving shut downs (even if partial) and/or closing of a public area.

- L. Investigative Probe Work: At the start of construction, the Contractor for General Construction Work shall coordinate with the Contractor for HVAC and Fire Protection Work to review the proposed HVAC Ducting Integration work required at the West Gallery location (see Drawing DM-012.00, Demolition Note 12.) The Contractor for General Construction Work, after removing and saving one (1) of the existing Rosettes of the West Gallery ceiling, as indicated on the drawings, shall conduct a probe investigation of the interior ceiling space at the Rosette opening to determine whether the space above the ceiling meets the proposed Ducting Integration requirements as designed for the project. The Contractor for General Construction Work will provide the information obtained from the probe investigation of the interior ceiling space of the West Gallery to DDC. DDC will then determine whether reconstruction of the existing plaster ceiling at the West Gallery is required. Accordingly, the Contractor for General Construction Work must incorporate the cost of this probe investigation into the General Construction work bid for the project. See Bid Breakdown pages 23-2 (CSI item 024296).
- M. Allowance: If the City determines that any reconstruction work will be necessary to accommodate the project's HVAC Ducting Integration work at the West Gallery ceiling, then the General Contractor will be responsible for the costs, if any, that relate to the removal and reconstruction of approximately half (1/2) of the plaster ceiling at the West Gallery, and shall be paid for this work pursuant to the unit price amount up to the amount provided by the City as a designated allowance for this work as directed by the Commissioner if the work is required. See Bid Booklet page 15-a (Bid Form).

### VIII. SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROJECT

- (1) **GENERAL:** Special Experience Requirements for the Project are set forth below. Such Special Experience Requirements may apply to either or both of the following entities: (a) the contractor or subcontractor that will perform specific areas of work, and/or (b) the manufacturer that will provide specific material or equipment.
- (2) **REVISION OF SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS:** In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any Special Experience Requirements that are not set forth below, such Special Experience Requirements are deemed deleted, except as otherwise expressly provided in Section VIII of this Addendum.
- (3) **SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR SPECIFIC AREAS OF WORK:** The Special Experience Requirements set forth below apply to the contractor or subcontractor that will perform specific areas of work. Compliance with such Special Experience Requirements will be evaluated after an award of contract. Within two (2) weeks of such award, the contractor will be required to submit the qualifications of the contractor or subcontractor that will perform these specific areas of work. If the contractor intends to perform any specific area of work with its own forces, it must demonstrate compliance with the Special Experience Requirements. If the contractor intends to subcontract any specific area of work, the proposed subcontractor(s) must demonstrate compliance with the Special Experience Requirements. Once approved, no substitution will be permitted, unless the qualifications of the proposed replacement have been approved in writing in advance by the City.
- (a) **Special Experience Requirement #1a:** The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.

#### General Construction

- Section 024118: Alteration Project Procedures
- Section 024296: Historic Removal and Dismantling
- Section 040140: Stone Restoration and Cleaning
- Section 050170: Restoration of Decorative Metal
- Section 068200: Glass Fiber Reinforced Fabrications
- Section 090320: Historic Treatment of Plaster
- Section 090900: Painting and Finishing

- (b) **Special Experience Requirement #1b:** The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work.

#### General Construction

- Section 081416: Wood Doors
- Section 087100: Hardware
- Section 116133: Performance Rigging

#### Electrical Work

- Section 265113: Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts
- Section 266111: Performance Dimming and Control

- (c) **Special Experience Requirement #1c:** The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must be a company regularly engaged in performing roofing projects with its own workforce and have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) roofing projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work within the last three (3) consecutive years prior to the bid opening. At least one of those projects must have been performed within the last twelve (12) months. The three (3) qualifying projects must have utilized one or more of the roofing systems specified for the project being bid herein, been installed by the contractor's or subcontractor's company utilizing its own workforce and must have qualified for, and have been issued, the warranty provided by the manufacturer of the roofing system. In addition, the contractor or subcontractor must be a certified or authorized installer for at least one of the manufacturer's roofing systems specified herein and shall submit proof of same.

General Construction

- Section 071416: Cold-Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System

- (4) **SPECIAL EXPERIENCE REQUIREMENTS FOR MANUFACTURERS:** The special experience requirements set forth below apply to the manufacturer that will supply or fabricate specific material or equipment. Compliance with such experience requirements will be evaluated after an award of contract. Within two (2) weeks of award, the contractor will be required to submit the qualifications of the proposed manufacturer(s). Once approved, no substitution will be permitted, unless the qualifications of the proposed replacement have been approved in writing in advance by the City

- (a) **Special Experience Requirement #2:** The manufacturer providing the material or equipment specified in this section must, for the past five (5) years, have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of material or equipment similar in type to that required for this Project. Such similar material or equipment provided by the manufacturer must have been in satisfactory service for not less than five (5) years. This Special Experience Requirement applies to the manufacturer that will provide material or equipment specified in the section(s) set forth below.

General Construction

- Section 071416: Cold-Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System
- Section 081416: Wood Doors
- Section 116133: Performance Rigging

Electrical Work

- Section 265113: Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts

## IX. REVISIONS: SPECIFICATIONS AND CONTRACT DRAWINGS

The Specifications and the Contract Drawings for the Project are revised in accordance with the provisions set forth below.

- (1) Owner: Wherever the term "Owner" is used in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings, such term shall mean the City of New York.
- (2) Other Entities: In the event any entity other than the City of New York is referred to or named as the "Owner" in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings, the name of such other entity is deemed deleted and replaced with the "City of New York".
- (3) Architect / Engineer: Wherever the words "Architect", "Engineer", "Architect / Engineer" or "Architect and/or Engineer" are used in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings, such words are deemed deleted and replaced with the word "Commissioner".
- (4) Products / Manufacturers: Wherever the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings require the contractor to provide a particular product (i.e., material and/or equipment) from a designated manufacturer and/or vendor, the term "or approved equal" is deemed inserted, even if only one product and/or manufacturer is specified, except as otherwise provided below.
  - (a) Proprietary Items: If the Bid Booklet contains a Notice which identifies a particular product from a designated manufacturer as a "Proprietary Item", the Contractor shall be required to provide such specified product. In such case, no substitution or "approved equal" will be permitted.
- (5) Special Experience Requirements: Special Experience Requirements for the Project, if any, are set forth in the Bid Booklet. Special Experience Requirements may apply to contractors, subcontractors, installers, manufacturers and/or suppliers. If the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any Special Experience Requirement that is not set forth in the Bid Booklet, such Special Experience Requirement is deemed deleted, except as otherwise provided below.
  - (a) Any Special Experience Requirement that provides that the entity performing the work or supplying the material must have more than three (3) years of experience, is revised to provide that the entity performing the work or supplying the material must have three (3) years of experience, except as described in paragraph (b) below.
  - (b) Any Special Experience Requirement that pertains to the abatement of hazardous materials shall not be subject to the deletion and/or revision set forth above. Such Special Experience Requirement shall remain in full force and effect.
  - (c) Any Special Experience Requirement that provides that the entity performing the work must be licensed, authorized, certified, approved by or acceptable to the manufacturer, is deemed deleted and replaced with the requirement that such entity must be properly trained for the specified work.
  - (d) Any Special Experience Requirement that provides that the individual workers performing the work must be licensed, authorized, certified, approved by or acceptable to the manufacturer, is deemed deleted and replaced with the requirement that such individual workers must be properly trained for the specified work.
- (6) Alternate Bids: If the agency is requesting the submission of Alternate Bids, a Notice regarding such Alternate Bids is set forth in the Bid Booklet. In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between (1) the Notice regarding Alternate Bids set forth in the Bid Booklet and (2) a provision in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings regarding Alternate Bids, the Notice set forth in the Bid Booklet shall prevail. If the agency is not requesting the submission of Alternate Bids, as indicated by the absence of a Notice in the Bid Booklet, and the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provision regarding Alternate Bids, such provision is deemed deleted.
- (7) Contractor Retained Engineer: If the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings require the Contractor to retain an Engineer to provide engineering services for the Project, the following sentence is deemed inserted: "Such Engineer must be a Professional Engineer, licensed in the State of New York."

- (8) LEED Related Provisions: If the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings require the Contractor to purchase FSC certified wood, rapidly renewable materials, or materials within 500 miles, such provisions are deemed deleted and replaced with the requirement that if the contractor has purchased FSC certified wood, rapidly renewable materials, or materials within 500 miles, the contractor shall submit such forms or documentation as may be required by the City in order for the USGBC to certify that the Project qualifies for the related LEED credit(s).
- (9) Guarantees: Requirements for Guarantees and Maintenance are set forth in Schedule B, which is included in the Addendum to the General Conditions. In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between (1) a guarantee and/or maintenance requirement set forth in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings and (2) a guarantee and/or maintenance requirement set forth in Schedule B, the guarantee and/or maintenance requirement set forth in Schedule B shall prevail.
- (10) Warranties: Requirements for Warranties are set forth in Schedule B, which is included in the Addendum to the General Conditions.
  - (a) In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between (1) a warranty requirement set forth in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings and (2) a warranty requirement set forth in Schedule B, the warranty requirement set forth in Schedule B shall prevail.
  - (b) In the event a warranty requirement set forth in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings is omitted from Schedule B, such omission from Schedule B shall have no effect and the Contractor's obligation to provide the manufacturer's warranty, as set forth in the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings, shall remain in full force and effect.
  - (c) In the event a warranty requirement for a particular item of material or equipment is omitted from Schedule B, as well as from the Specifications or the Contract Drawings, and the manufacturer of such item actually provides a warranty, the Contractor shall be obligated to obtain and deliver to the Commissioner the highest level of warranty actually provided by that manufacturer.
- (11) Exculpatory Provisions: In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provision whereby the consultant and/or any of its officers, employees or agents, including subconsultants, is absolved of responsibility for any act or omission, such provision is deemed deleted.
- (12) Insurance: Provisions regarding insurance coverage the Contractor is required to provide are set forth in Article 22 of the City of New York Standard Construction Contract and Schedule A, which is included in the Addendum to the General Conditions. In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provision regarding insurance requirements, such provision is deemed deleted.
- (13) Indemnification: Provisions regarding indemnification are set forth in Articles 7, 12, 22 and 57 of the City of New York Standard Construction Contract. In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provision regarding indemnification, such provision is deemed deleted.
- (14) Dispute Resolution: Provisions regarding dispute resolution are set forth in Article 27 of the City of New York Standard Construction Contract. In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provision regarding dispute resolution, such provision is deemed deleted.
- (15) Payment to Other Entities: In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provision which requires the Contractor to make payments to an entity other than a subcontractor and/or supplier providing services and/or material for the project, such provision is deemed deleted.
- (16) General Conditions: In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between (1) the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings and (2) the General Conditions, the General Conditions shall prevail.
- (17) Standard Construction Contract: In the event of any conflict or inconsistency between (1) the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings and (2) the City of New York Standard Construction Contract, the City of New York Standard Construction Contract shall prevail.

**SCHEDULE A (FOR PUBLICLY BID PROJECTS)**  
**PART I - Contract Requirements**

Various Articles of the Contract refer to requirements which are set forth in Schedule A of the General Conditions. The Schedule set forth below specifies the following: (1) the referenced Articles of the Contract, and (2) the specific requirements applicable to the contract.

REFERENCE	ITEM	REQUIREMENTS	CONTRACT #1	CONTRACT #2	CONTRACT #3	CONTRACT #4
Information For Bidders	Bid Security		See Attachment 1 – Bid Information in the Bid Booklet			
Information For Bidders	Performance and Payment Bonds		See Attachment 1- Bid Information in the Bid Booklet			
Article 14 Contract	Time of Completion	Consecutive Calendar Days	720	720	720	720
Article 15 Contract	Liquidated Damages	For each consecutive calendar day over completion time	\$400	\$120	\$200	\$200
Article 17 Contract	Sub-Contracts	Not to exceed Percent of Contract Price	60%	25%	60%	25%
Article 21 Contract	Retainage	Percent of Voucher	If 100% bonds are required			5%
			If 100% bonds are not required, and Contract Price is \$1,000,000 or less			5%
			If 100% bonds are not required, and Contract Price is more than \$1,000,000			10%
Article 24 Contract	Deposit Guarantee	Percent of Contract Price	1%	1%	1%	1%
Article 24 Contract	Period of Guarantee		See Schedule B of the Addendum to the General Conditions			
Article 74 Contract	Statement of Work		Addenda, numbered: <u>3</u>			
Article 75 Contract	Compensation to be Paid to Contractor		Amount for which the Contract was Awarded: <u>one hundred ninety-five thousand</u> Dollars (\$ <u>195,000. -</u> )			
Article 78 Contract	M/WBE Program		See M/WBE Utilization Plan in the Bid Booklet			

**SCHEDULE A (FOR PUBLICLY BID PROJECTS)**

**Relating to Article 22 - Insurance**

**PART II. Types of Insurance, Minimum Limits and Special Conditions**

**Note:** All certificate(s) of insurance submitted pursuant to Contract Article 22.3. 3 must be accompanied by a Certification by Broker consistent with Part III below and include the following information:

- For each insurance policy, the name and NAIC number of issuing company, number of policy, and effective dates;
- Policy limits consistent with the requirements listed below;
- Additional insureds or loss payees consistent with the requirements listed below; and
- The number assigned to the Contract by the City (in the "Description of Operations" field).

Insurance indicated by a blackened box (■) or by (X) in the  to left will be required under this contract.

Types of Insurance (per Article 22 in its entirety, including listed paragraph)	Minimum Limits and Special Conditions
<p>■ Commercial General Liability      Art. 22.1.1</p>	<p>The minimum limits shall be \$1,000,000.00 per occurrence and \$2,000,000.00 per project aggregate applicable to this <b>Contract</b>.</p> <p>Additional Insureds:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. City of New York, including its officials and employees, with coverage at least as broad as ISO Forms CG 20 10 and CG 20 37, and</li> <li>2. All person(s) or organization(s), if any, that Article 22.1.1(b) of the <b>Contract</b> requires to be named as Additional Insured(s), with coverage at least as broad as ISO Form CG 20 26. The Additional Insured endorsement shall either specify the entity's name, if known, or the entity's title (e.g., Project Manager).</li> <li>3. 110 Cultural Space LLC</li> <li>4. Two Trees Management Co. LLC</li> <li>5. Issue Project Room, Inc.</li> </ol>
<p>■ Workers' Compensation      Art. 22.1.2</p> <p>■ Disability Benefits Insurance      Art. 22.1.2</p> <p>■ Employers' Liability      Art. 22.1.2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Jones Act      Art. 22.1.3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> U.S. Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers Compensation Act      Art. 22.1.3</p>	<p>Workers' Compensation, Employers' Liability, and Disability Benefits Insurance: Statutory per New York State law without regard to jurisdiction.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The following forms are acceptable: (1) New York State Workers' Compensation Board Form No. C-105.2, (2) State Insurance Fund Form No. U-26.3, (3) New York State Workers' Compensation Board Form No. DB-120.1 and (3) Request for WC/DB Exemption Form No. CE-200. The City will not accept an ACORD form as proof of Workers' Compensation or Disability Insurance.</p> <p>Jones Act and U.S. Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act: Statutory per U.S. law.</p>



**SCHEDULE A (FOR PUBLICLY BID PROJECTS)**

**Relating to Article 22 - Insurance**

**PART II. Types of Insurance, Minimum Limits and Special Conditions (Continued)**

Insurance indicated by a blackened box (■) or by (X) in the  to left will be required under this contract.

Types of Insurance (per Article 22 in its entirety, including listed paragraph)	Minimum Limits and Special Conditions
<input type="checkbox"/> Hull and Machinery Insurance      Art. 22.1.7(b)	\$ _____ per occurrence  \$ _____ aggregate  Additional Insureds: 1. City of New York, including its officials and employees, and 2. _____ 3. _____
<input type="checkbox"/> Marine Pollution Liability      Art. 22.1.7(c)	\$ _____ each occurrence  Additional Insureds: 1. City of New York, including its officials and employees, and 2. _____ 3. _____
[OTHER]      Art. 22.1.8  <input type="checkbox"/> Ship Repairers Legal Liability	\$ _____ each occurrence
[OTHER]      Art. 22.1.8  <input type="checkbox"/> Collision Liability/Towers Liability	\$ _____ per occurrence  \$ _____ aggregate  Additional Insureds: 1. City of New York, including its officials and employees, and 2. _____ 3. _____
[OTHER]      Art. 22.1.8  <input type="checkbox"/> Railroad Protective Liability	\$ _____ per occurrence  \$ _____ aggregate  Additional Insureds: 1. City of New York, including its officials and employees, and 2. _____ 3. _____



**SCHEDULE A (FOR PUBLICLY BID PROJECTS)**

**Relating to Article 22 - Insurance**

**PART III. Certificates of Insurance**

All certificates of insurance (except certificates of insurance solely evidencing Workers' Compensation Insurance, Employer's Liability Insurance, and/or Disability Benefits Insurance) must be accompanied by one of the following:

- (1) the Certification by Insurance Broker or Agent on the following page setting forth the required information and signatures;

-- OR --

- (2) copies of all policies as certified by an authorized representative of the issuing insurance carrier that are referenced in such certificate of insurance. If any policy is not available at the time of submission, certified binders may be submitted until such time as the policy is available, at which time a certified copy of the policy shall be submitted.



**SCHEDULE A (FOR PUBLICLY BID PROJECTS)**

**Relating to Article 22 - Insurance**

**PART IV. Address of Commissioner**

Wherever reference is made in Article 7 or Article 22 to documents to be sent to the **Commissioner** (e.g., notices, filings, or submissions), such documents shall be sent to the address set forth below or, in the absence of such address, to the **Commissioner's** address as provided elsewhere in this **Contract**.

ACCO's Office, Insurance Unit

---

30-30 Thomson Avenue, 4<sup>th</sup> Floor

---

Long Island City, New York 11101

---

**SCHEDULE B**

**Guarantees and Warranties**

(Reference: Section 01 7839, Article 2.7 of the DDC Standard General Conditions)

**GUARANTY FROM CONTRACTOR**

(1) **Contractor's Guaranty Obligation:** The Contractor shall promptly repair, replace, restore or rebuild, as the Commissioner may determine, any finished Work in which defects of materials or workmanship may appear or to which damage may occur because of such defects, during the one (1) year period subsequent to the date of Substantial Completion (or use and occupancy in accordance with the Contract), except for the areas of Work set forth below:

- Roofing, Waterproofing, and Joint Sealant Work. For these types of work, the guarantee period shall be (2) two years.
- Trees and/or Plant Material. For trees and/or plant material furnished and installed, the guarantee period shall be (2) two years. During the guarantee period, the Contractor shall provide all maintenance services set forth in the Specifications.

(2) **Guaranty Period:** The obligation of the Contractor, and its Surety under the Performance Bond, is limited to the period(s) of time specified above.

(3) **Other Provisions Deemed Deleted:** In the event the Specifications and/or the Contract Drawings contain any provisions regarding guaranty requirements, such provisions are deemed deleted and replaced with the guaranty requirements set forth in this Schedule B.

\*\*\*\*\*

**WARRANTY FROM MANUFACTURER**

(1) **Contractor's Obligation to Provide Warranties:** The items of material and/or equipment for which manufacturer warranties are required are listed below. For each item of material and/or equipment listed below, the Contractor shall obtain a written warranty from the manufacturer. Such warranty shall provide that the material or equipment is free from defects for the period set forth below and will be replaced or repaired within such specified period. The Contractor shall deliver all required warranties to the Commissioner.

(2) **Required Warranties:**

**Specification Number                      Material or Equipment                      Warranty Period**

**Schedule B: Guarantees and Warranties**

Spec Section	Material / Equipment	Warranty Period
033510	• Concrete Finish	Ten (10)
071416	• Cold Fluid Applied Waterproofing and Roofing System	Twenty (20) years
072700.23	• Self-Adhering Vapor Permeable Barrier Membrane	Three (3) years
076200	• Metal Flashing Work	Ten (10)
078123	• Intumescent Fireproofing	Two (2)
081416	• Solid Core Flush Wood Doors	Life of Installation
084228	• Glass door, metals, metal finishes, hardware	Two (2)
087100	• Mechanical Closures • Electrified Closures • Mechanical Exit devices	Thirty (30) years two (2) years Three (3) years One (1) years

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Electrified Exit devices</li> <li>• Mechanical locksets</li> <li>• Electrified locksets</li> <li>• continuous hinges</li> <li>• Key Blanks</li> </ul>	<p>Three (3) years One (1) years Lifetime Lifetime from substantial completion</p>
088000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coated glass products, laminated glass products</li> </ul>	Five (5) years
11 52 32	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Projection screen</li> <li>• mounting brackets and local control panels</li> </ul>	One (1) year
11 61 33	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Curtain Track, carriers, end stops, mounting brackets, and hardware for manual curtains;</li> <li>• Curtain track, chain, sprockets, mounting brackets, and hardware for motorized curtains</li> <li>• Motor, gearing, brake, Motor Control Panel, Control interface, control system and hardware for motorized curtains</li> </ul>	One (1) year
220519	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meters and Gauges</li> </ul>	One (1) year
220523	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Valves</li> </ul>	One (1) year
220529	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hangers and Supports</li> </ul>	One (1) year
220553	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identification for Plumbing</li> </ul>	One (1) year
220700	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insulation for Plumbing</li> </ul>	One (1) year
221116	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Domestic Water Piping</li> </ul>	One (1) year
221119	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water Specialties</li> </ul>	One (1) year
221316	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping</li> </ul>	One (1) year
221319	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sanitary Specialties</li> </ul>	One (1) year
224000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plumbing fixtures</li> </ul>	One (1) year
230519	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meters and Guages</li> </ul>	One (1) year
230523	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Valves for HVAC</li> </ul>	One (1) year
230548	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vibration Control for HVAC Piping and Equipment</li> </ul>	One (1) year
230553	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identification of Piping and Equipment</li> </ul>	One (1) year
230700	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HVAC Insulation</li> </ul>	One (1) year
230900	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic Temperature Controls</li> </ul>	One (1) year
232123	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hydronic Pumps</li> </ul>	One (1) year
233416	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HVAC fans</li> </ul>	One (1) year
238119	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cooled Air Self Contained AC Unit</li> </ul>	Three (3) years
238127	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water Cooled VRV Air Conditioning System</li> </ul>	One (1) year Seven (7) years for compressor

238415	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Variable Frequency Drive</li> </ul>	One (1) year
262416	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Panelboards</li> </ul>	One (1) year
262816	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers</li> </ul>	One (1) year
263353	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Emergency Lighting Inverter</li> </ul>	Two (2) years
263360	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ultra K Isolation transformers</li> </ul>	Two (2) years
26 52 00	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Audio and visual systems isolated ground power systems components: raceway, electrical conductors, control cabinets, circuit breakers and all necessary apparatus and equipment</li> <li>• Conduits, raceways, terminal cabinets, pull boxes, floor boxes, loudspeaker backcans, cable trays, junction boxes, wireways, and wireway ladders</li> <li>• Cable Pass Through hardware.</li> </ul>	One (1) year
26 61 11	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dimming modules</li> <li>• Processing modules</li> <li>• House/Worklight system: Control Console and LCD control Stations, pushbutton stations, distribution devices.</li> <li>• Ethernet and distributed DMX system: controls, switches, panels, nodes, taps, distribution devices</li> <li>• Uninterruptible Power Supply</li> <li>• Relay cabinets</li> </ul>	Two (2) years
27 41 16	<p>AV Systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cabling</li> <li>• Connectors</li> <li>• Wall and Floorbox plates</li> <li>• AV equipment racks</li> <li>• Patch panels</li> <li>• Power conditioners</li> </ul>	One (1) year (Manufacturers' warranties on Audiovisual Equipment of more than one year shall remain in force beyond the Audiovisual Integrator's Basic Warranty Period)
27 05 00	Sleeves	One (1) year from date of acceptance
27 11 16	<p>Cabinets, racks, frames and enclosures</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wall mounted Telecommunications enclosure</li> </ul>	All work and all items of equipment and materials shall be warranted for a minimum period of one year
27 13 23	<p>Backbone cabling</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100-ohm, 25-pair UTP cabling</li> <li>• OM3 type multi-mode optical fiber</li> <li>• Duplex LC multi-mode connectors</li> <li>• Fiber optic patch cords</li> </ul>	All work and all items of equipment and materials shall be warranted for a minimum period of one year
27 15 00	<p>Horizontal copper cabling, pathways and terminations</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cable tray</li> <li>• 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP cabling</li> <li>• Patch Panel – modular panels</li> </ul>	Furnish a manufacturer's "Permanent Link" performance warranty for all EIA/TIA 568-B category 6 workstation

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 110-style IDC for Category 6</li> <li>• Jacks</li> <li>• Plastic Faceplate</li> <li>• Telecommunications Grounding Bus Bar</li> </ul>	<p>cables for a minimum period of 25 years Where a manufacturer's warranty is longer than 25 years, the Contractor shall offer the longer warranty.</p>
283111	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Digital addressable Fire Alarm system</li> </ul>	One (1) year

**(3) Application:** The obligations under the warranty for the periods specified above shall apply only to the manufacturer of the material or equipment, and not to the Contractor or its Surety; provided, however, the Contractor retains responsibility for obtaining all required warranties from the manufacturers and delivering the same to the Commissioner.

**(4) Other Provisions:** The warranty requirements set forth in this Schedule B are also included in the Specifications.

- (a) In the event of any conflict between a warranty requirement set forth in the Specifications and a warranty requirement set forth in Schedule B, the warranty requirement set forth in Schedule B shall take precedence.
- (b) In the event a warranty requirement set forth in the Specifications is omitted from Schedule B, such omission from Schedule B shall have no effect and the Contractor's obligation to provide the manufacturer's warranty, as set forth in the Specifications, shall remain in full force and effect.
- (c) In the event a warranty requirement for a particular item of material or equipment is omitted from both Schedule B and the Specifications, and the manufacturer of such item actually provides a warranty, the Contractor shall be obligated to obtain and deliver to the Commissioner the highest level of warranty actually provided by that manufacturer.
- (d) In the event a warranty requirement is provided for a particular item of material or equipment, and such requirement specifies a warranty period that is longer than that which is actually provided by any of the specified manufacturers, the Contractor shall be obligated to obtain and deliver to the Commissioner the highest level of warranty actually provided by any of the specified manufacturers, unless otherwise directed in writing by the Commissioner.
- (e) Unless indicated otherwise Warranties are to take effect on the date of Substantial Completion.

**SCHEDULE C**

**Contract Drawings**

**(Reference: Section 01 1000, Article 1.5 (A) of the DDC Standard General Conditions)**

The Schedule set forth below lists all Contract Drawings for the Project.

<b>NUMBER</b>	<b>TITLE</b>
<b><u>CONTRACT #1:</u></b>	<b><u>GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK</u></b>
<b>ARCHITECTURAL</b>	
(1) T-000.00	Title Page
(2) G-001.00	General Information
(3) G-002.00	Occupancy & Egress Information
(4) G-003.00	Egress / Seating plans
(5) G-004.00	Existing space photos
(6) 3983-A	Topographic map- 3983a survey
(7) H-001.00	Asbestos Abatement General Notes
(8) H-002.00	Asbestos Abatement Ground Floor Plan
(9) EN-001.00	Energy Compliance Sheet
(10) EN-002.00	Interior Lighting and Power Compliance Certificate
(11) DM-010.00	Ground Floor Demo Plan
(12) DM-011.00	2 <sup>nd</sup> Floor Terrace Demo Plan
(13) DM-012.00	Demo RCP
(14) A-100.00	Key Plan
(15) A-101.00	Ground Floor Plan
(16) A-102.00	Mezzanine Plan
(17) A-103.00	2 <sup>nd</sup> Floor Terrace Plan
(18) A-104.00	RCP Ground Floor
(19) A-105.00	RCP Mezzanine
(20) A-106.00	Signage Plan
(21) A-201.00	Exterior Elevations
(22) A-301.00	Building Sections
(23) A-302.00	Building Sections
(24) A-303.00	Wall Sections - Performance Space
(25) A-304.00	Wall Sections - Performance Space
(26) A-305.00	Wall Sections - Infill
(27) A-306.00	Wall Section - Lobby
(28) A-403.00	Enlarged Performance Space Elevations
(29) A-404.00	Enlarged Performance Space Elevations
(30) A-405.00	Enlarged Performance Space Elevations
(31) A-406.00	Enlarged Performance Space Elevations

(32) A-407.00	Enlarged West Gallery Elevations
(33) A-410.00	Enlarged Bar Plan and Elevations
(34) A-411.00	Enlarged Lobby Plan and Elevations
(35) A-412.00	Enlarged Lobby Elevations
(36) A-413.00	Enlarged Greenroom Plan and Elevations
(37) A-414.00	Enlarged Lower Lobby Elevations
(38) A-415.00	Enlarged Office Plan
(39) A-416.00	Enlarged Office Elevations
(40) A-420.00	Miscellaneous Elevations
(41) A-430.00	Enlarged Bathroom Plan and Elevations
(42) A-431.00	Enlarged Bathroom Hall Elevations
(43) A-501.00	Wall Types
(44) A-502.00	Performance Space Details
(45) A-503.00	Performance Space Details
(46) A-504.00	Performance Space Details
(47) A-505.00	Ceiling Details
(48) A-506.00	Ceiling & Miscellaneous Details
(49) A-507.00	Floor & Miscellaneous Details
(50) A-511.00	Finish and Misc Details
(51) A-512.00	Finish and Misc Details
(52) A513.00	Historic Restoration Details
(53) A-515.00	Glazing and Door Details
(54) A-516.00	Entry and Canopy Details
(55) A-517.00	Canopy Details
(56) A-518.00	Exterior Details
(57) A-520.00	Millwork Details
(58) A-521.00	Millwork Details
(59) A-530.00	Signage
(60) A-531.00	Signage - Donor Wall
(61) A-600.00	Schedules
(62) A-701.00	Equipment Plan
(63) A-801.00	Paint and Repair Plan
(64) A-802.00	Paint and Repair RCP
(65) A-803.00	Paint and Repair Elevations
(66) A-804.00	Paint and Repair Elevations
(67) A-805.00	Paint and Repair Catalog

**THEATRE EQUIPMENT**

(68) TE-000.00	General Arrangements: General Notes
(69) TE-111.00	Theatre Equipment: Plans
(70) TE-121.00	Theatre Equipment: Sections
(71) TE-131.00	Theatre Equipment: Details

**STRUCTURE**

- (72) S-100.00 Ceiling Structure and Mechanical Mezz. Framing Plan
- (73) S-200.00 General Notes and Typical Details
- (74) S-201.00 Sections

**CONTRACT #2**

**PLUMBING WORK**

**PLUMBING**

- (75) P-001.00 Plumbing Legend, Notes, Schedules & Plot Plan
- (76) DM-P-010.00 Ground Floor Plumbing Demo Plan
- (77) P-100.00 Ground Cellar Plan
- (78) P-101.00 Plumbing Floor Plan
- (79) P-201.00 Plumbing Riser Diagrams And Details

**CONTRACT #3**

**HVAC AND FIRE PROTECTION WORK**

**MECHANICAL**

- (80) M-001.00 Mechanical Symbols, Abbreviations And Notes
- (81) DM-010.00 Ground Floor Mechanical Demo Plan
- (82) M-101.00 Mechanical Floor Plan
- (83) M-102.00 Mechanical Backstage Part Plan & Sections
- (84) M-103.00 Mechanical Terrace Part Plan & Sections
- (85) M-201.00 Mechanical Floor Piping Plan
- (86) M-202.00 Cellar Floor Piping Plan
- (87) M-301.00 Mechanical Riser Diagrams
- (88) M-401.00 Mechanical Schedules
- (89) M-501.00 Mechanical Details
- (90) M-502.00 Mechanical Details And Control Diagrams

**SPRINKLERS\_STANDPIPE**

- (91) SP/SD-001.00 Sprinkler & Fire Standpipe Legend, Notes, Schedules And Plot Plan
- (92) SP/SD-100.00 Sprinkler & Fire Standpipe Cellar And Mechanical Mezzanine Plans
- (93) SP/SD-101.00 Sprinkler & Fire Standpipe Floor Plan
- (94) SP/SD-201.00 Sprinkler & Fire Standpipe Riser Diagram
- (95) SP/SD-301.00 Sprinkler & Fire Standpipe Details

**CONTRACT #4**

**ELECTRICAL WORK**

**ELECTRICAL**

- (96) E-001.00 Electrical General Notes, Symbols List, & Abbreviations
- (97) E-002.00 Electrical Emergency Lighting Wiring Details & Riser Diagram
- (98) E-003.00 Electrical Lighting Fixture Schedule I
- (99) E-003.00 Electrical Lighting Fixture Schedule II
- (100) DM-E-010.00 Ground Floor Electrical Demo Plan
- (101) DM-E-011.00 RCP Electrical Demo Plan

(102) E-100.00 Electrical Cellar Plan  
(103) E-101.00 Electrical Floor Power Plan  
(104) E-102.00 Electrical Mechanical Platform Power Plan  
(105) E-201.00 Electrical Floor Lighting Plan  
(106) E-202.00 Electrical Mechanical Platform Lighting Plan  
(107) E-301.00 Electrical Power Riser And Panel Schedules  
(108) E-401.00 Electrical Details

**FIRE ALARM**

(109) FA-001.00 Fire Alarm Riser, I/O Matrix & Notes  
(110) FA-101.00 Fire Alarm Floor Plan  
(111) FA-102.00 Fire Alarm Mechanical Platform Plan

**AUDIO/VISUAL**

(112) AV-000.00 Audio/Visual: General Notes  
(113) AV-011.00 Audio/Visual: Conduit Riser Diagram  
(114) AV-012.00 Audio/Visual: Details  
(115) AV-101.00 Audio/Visual: Infrastructure Plans  
(116) AV-111.00 Audio/Visual: Infrastructure Sections

**COMMUNICATIONS**

(117) T-000.00 Communications: General Notes  
(118) T-011.00 Communications: One Line Diagram  
(119) T-101.00 Communications: Plan  
(120) T-102.00 Communications: Reflected Ceiling Plan

**THEATRE LIGHTING**

(121) TL-000.00 General Arrangements: General Notes  
(122) TL-111.00 Theatre Lighting: Plans  
(123) TL-121.00 Theatre Lighting: Conduit Riser  
(124) TL-122.00 Theatre Lighting: Faceplate Drawings

**SCHEDULE D**

**Electrical Motor Control Equipment**

**(Reference: 01 3506, Article 3.9 of the DDC Standard General Conditions)**

Requirements for electrical motor equipment may be included in one or more sections of the Specifications for the Contract for the Project. Schedule D set forth below delineates specific information for electrical motor control equipment. In the event of any conflict between the Specifications and this Schedule D, Schedule D shall take precedence; provided, however, in the event of an omission from Schedule D (i.e., Schedule D omits either a reference to or information concerning electrical motor equipment which is set forth in the Specifications), such omission from Schedule D shall have no effect and the Contractor's obligation with respect to the electrical motor control equipment, as set forth in the Specifications, shall remain in full force and effect.

**DB** Disconnect Circuit Breaker (Switch) Station    **P** Pilot Light    **BG** Break Glass  
**TS** Thermal Switch    **F** Firestat    **HOA** Hand-Off Auto.  
**MS** Magnetic Starter    **T** Thermostat    **PB** Push Button Station  
**CMS** Comb. Mag. Starter    **AL** Alternator    **RO** Remote "off"

**Schedule D Electrical Motor Control Equipment**

Equip. Ident.	Location	# of Units	HP or KW	Volts and Phase	Control Type: See legend above	Remarks:
WCC-1	Mezz. Mech	1	22.4 MCA 40.0 MFA	208 V / 3 phase	CMS	
WCC-2	Mezz. Mech	1	22.4 MCA 40.0 MFA	208 V / 3 phase	CMS	
AC-1	Mezz Mech	1	74.5 MCA 100 MOCP	208 V/ 3 phase	CMS	
AC-2	Hallway Ceiling	1	0.214 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
AC-3	Hallway Ceiling	1	0.214 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
AC-4	Hallway Ceiling	1	0.080 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
AC-5	Hallway Ceiling	1	0.080 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
AC-6	Hallway Ceiling	1	0.070 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
AC-7	Tech Station	1	0.065 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	

AC-8	Transformer/ Elec Closet	1	0.065 KW	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
HR-1	Hallway Ceiling	1	0.030	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
RF-1	Mezz Mech	1	2 HP	208 V/ 3 phase	CMS	
TX-1	Mezz Mechanical	1	1/6 HP	120 V/ 1 phase	CMS	
OAF-1	Mezz Mechanical	1	0.50 HP	208 V/ 1 phase	DB	
P-1	Mezz Mechanical	1	0.75 HP	208 / 1 phase	CMS	
P-2	Mezz. Mechanical	1	2.0 HP	208 V/ 1 phase	CMS	
Acoustic Curtain track motor	North Wall	1	1 HP	208/480 - three phase	PB	Includes motor control panel
Projection screen	South Wall	1	0.4 HP	120 - single phase	PB	

**SCHEDULE E**

**Separation of Trades**

**(Reference: 01 1000, Article 1.6 (A) of the DDC Standard General Conditions)**

Requirements for various items of work are included in the Specifications for the separate Contracts for the Project and in the General Conditions. Schedule E set forth below delineates the responsibilities of each separate Contractor for various items of work, as well as the extent to which certain items involve coordination between trades. The delineation set forth in this Schedule E shall be taken as specific instruction to the Contractor that it is responsible for the listed items of work. Schedule E is not intended to limit the Contractor's responsibility for supervision and coordination. In the event of any conflict between the Specifications, the General Conditions and this Schedule E, Schedule E shall take precedence; provided, however, in the event of an omission from Schedule E (i.e., Schedule E omits either a reference to or information concerning an item of work which is set forth in the Specifications or the General Conditions), such omission from Schedule E shall have no effect and the Contractor's obligation to perform the work, as set forth in the Specifications or the General Conditions, shall remain in full force and effect.

Legend: "F" = Furnished "I" = Installed "P" = Provided (Furnished and Installed)  
Contractor designation (#1, #2, #3 and #4) is as indicated in Section II of this Addendum.

ITEM	Contr # 1	Contr # 2	Contr # 3	Contr # 4	Notes
Temporary Heat	P				
Temporary Water	P				
Temporary Light and Power	P				
Temporary Toilets – Enclosures	P				
Temporary Toilets – Fixtures	P				
Rubbish removal from project site	P	P	P	P	
Hoisting and Rigging	P	P	P	P	

ITEM	Contr # 1	Contr # 2	Contr # 3	Contr # 4	Notes
Excavation and Backfill	NA				
Utility Trenches – inside building	NA				
Utility Trenches – outside building	NA				
Keeping site, excavations, and building, free from water during construction	NA				
Access doors in finished walls and ceilings, panels and ceilings, panels and supporting frames	P				
Field touch-up painting of damaged shop coats	P	P	P	P	
Prime coating hangers and supports	P	P	P	P	
Rust proofing field cut and assemble iron supporting frames and racks	P	P	P	P	
Finished painting of exposed equipment or piping or ductwork on walls and ceilings where adjacent surfaces are painted	P				#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope. #2,#3,#4 to coordinate with #1 on required masking
Concrete foundations, housekeeping pads or bases for floor mounted equipment not indicated on the contract drawings	P				#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Concrete foundations pads and bases, as indicated on contract drawings, for floor mounted equipment	P				#1. to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Framed slots and openings in walls, decks, slabs and/or precast concrete planks	P	F	F	F	

ITEM	Contr # 1	Contr # 2	Contr # 3	Contr # 4	Notes
Sleeves and core drilling thru slabs, decks and walls whether waterproofed or not	P	F	F	F	
Waterproof sealing of pipes passing thru sleeves and/or slots	P				#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Waterproof sealing of sleeves thru membrane and waterproofed slabs, roofs, and decks	P				#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Sleeves thru walls with no core drilling required	P	F	F	F	
Roof openings	P		F		#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Louvers – exterior	P				#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Louvers – interior	P				
Roof curbs and roof equipment supports	NA				
Pitch pockets	NA				
Roof cap flashing for all supports, penetrations and roof curbs	P				
Fireproof sealing of slab openings at duct or pipe shafts	P				#1 to review drawings of all trades to determine scope
Fire extinguishers	P				
Prefabricated chimneys	NA				
Domestic make-up water piping for heating and air conditioning systems		P			

ITEM	Contr # 1	Contr # 2	Contr # 3	Contr # 4	Notes
Pit frames and covers	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Drywells	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Gas service piping to heating boiler and equipment	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Bathroom accessories	P				
Precast and/or molded receptors (mop basins, shower bases, etc.)		P			
Sprinkler water service from street main including meter, to capped OS&Y valve connection inside building	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Motors for mechanical equipment			P		Power Wiring by #4
Convactor enclosures	I				
Electric duct heaters (heaters installed in air ducts) and electric unit heaters			P		Power Wiring and control by #4
Fire and smoke dampers with motors			P		Power and fire alarm Wiring by #4
Control Wiring - General Construction	P				Raceways by #4
Control Wiring - Plumbing		P			
Control Wiring - Sprinkler				P	
Control Wiring - HVAC for temperature control			P		Raceways by #4
Door Monitoring Systems - Power Wiring				P	

ITEM	Contr # 1	Contr # 2	Contr # 3	Contr # 4	Notes
Door Monitoring Systems - Control Wiring				P	
Motor starters and motor controls for equipment requiring power wiring			F	I	
Power wiring for motorized equipment and motor controls				P	
Electric heating cables for pipe tracing	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Concrete encasement of conduits	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Electric manholes and handholes	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Opening frames for ceiling recessed lighting fixtures and other electrical items	I		F	F	















THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



TABLE OF CONTENTS

CONTRACT NO. 1 – CONTRACT FOR GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK

DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION

013591	Historic Treatment Procedures
013600	Historic Building Component Protection

DIVISION 2 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

SECTION

024118	Alteration Project Procedures
024296	Historic Removal and Dismantling
028013	Allowance for Incidental Asbestos Abatement
028213	Asbestos Abatement

DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE

SECTION

033000	Cast-In-Place Concrete
033510	Polished Concrete Finishing
034500	Architectural Precast Concrete
035300	Concrete Topping

DIVISION 4 - MASONRY

SECTION

040140	Stone Restoration and Cleaning
042000	Unit Masonry

DIVISION 5 - METALS

SECTION

050170	Restoration of Decorative Metal
051200	Structural Steel
053100	Steel Decking
054000	Cold Formed Metal Framing
055000	Miscellaneous Metals
057000	Ornamental Metals



DIVISION 6 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

SECTION

062000	Carpentry
064023	Architectural Woodwork
068200	Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic

DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION

071416	Cold Fluid Applied Roofing and Waterproofing
072100	Thermal Insulation
072700.23	Self-Adhering Vapor Permeable Air Barrier Membrane
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
078123	Intumescent Fireproofing
078413	Firestops and Smoke seals
079200	Joint Sealers

DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS

SECTION

081113	Steel Doors and Frames
081416	Wood Doors
083113	Access Doors
084228	All Glass Doors
087100	Hardware
088000	Glass and Glazing

DIVISION 9 - FINISHES

SECTION

090120	Interior Plaster Patching
090320	Historic Treatment of Plaster
092400	Exterior Lath and Plaster
092900	Gypsum Drywall
093000	Tiling
098413	Acoustic Wall Panels
099000	Painting and Finishing

DIVISIONS 10 - SPECIALTIES

101400	Identifying Devices
102813	Toilet Accessories

DIVISIONS 1 - EQUIPMENT

113100 Appliances

CONTRACT NO. 2 – CONTRACT FOR PLUMBING WORK

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

SECTION

220013	Allowance for Incidental Asbestos Abatement
220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing
220519	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
220523	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220700	Plumbing Insulation
220800	Commissioning of Plumbing Systems
221116	Domestic Water Piping
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
224000	Plumbing Fixtures

CONTRACT NO. 3 – CONTRACT FOR HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR  
CONDITIONING AND FIRE SUPPRESSION WORK

DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION

SECTION

210500	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
210800	Commissioning of Fire Suppression Systems
211000	Water-Based Fire Suppression Systems

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

SECTION

230000	Basic Mechanical Requirements
230013	Allowance for Incidental Asbestos Abatement
230500	Common Work Results for HVAC
230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
230519	Meters and Gages
230523	Valves for HVAC Piping
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230548	Vibration Control for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Mechanical Systems



230700	HVAC Insulation
230800	Commissioning of HVAC Systems
230900	Instrumentation and Controls for HVAC
232113	Hydronic Piping
232123	Hydronic Pumps
232300	Refrigerant Piping
233113	Metal Ducts
233300	Air Duct Accessories
233416	HVAC Fans
233713	Diffusers, Registers and Grilles
234100	Noise Control
235700	Heat Exchangers for HVAC
238119	Water Cooled Air Conditioning Unit
238127	Water Cooled VRV Split AC System
238415	Variable Frequency Drive

**CONTRACT NO. 4 – CONTRACT FOR ELECTRICAL WORK**

**DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

**SECTION**

260013	Allowance for Incidental Asbestos Abatement
260500	Common Work Results for Electrical
260519	Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
260531	Noise Control Electrical
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems
260800	Commissioning of Electrical Systems
260923	Architectural Lighting Control System
266111	Performance Dimming and Control
262416	Panelboards
262713	Electricity Metering
262726	Wiring Devices
262813	Fuses
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
263353	Emergency Lighting Inverter
263360	Ultra-K Isolation Transformer
265113	Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts
265200	Audiovisual Electrical
265561	Theatrical Systems Electrical Requirements
266111	Performance Dimming and Control

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIO

SECTION

270500	Common Work Results for Communications
270553	Identification for Telecommunications Systems
271116	Telecommunications Cabinets, Racks, Frames and Enclosures
271323	Telecommunications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling
271500	Telecommunications Horizontal Cabling
274116	Integrated Audio-Video Systems & Equipment

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

SECTION

283111	Digital Addressable Fire Alarm System
--------	---------------------------------------

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**BID FORM**

**PROJECT ID: PV028-ISS  
Contract #1 - General Construction Work**

**TOTAL BID PRICE:** In the space provided below, the Bidder shall indicate the total bid price in figures.

- A. **LUMP SUM PRICE** - Total price for all labor and material for all required work, excluding items (B), (C) and (D) set forth below. Total Price shall include all costs and expenses, i.e. labor, material overhead and profit for all the Work, described and shown in the drawings and specifications.

Total Price For  
Labor

Total Price for Material Sold and  
Delivered

\$ \_\_\_\_\_ +

\$ \_\_\_\_\_

Total Price for Item A= \$ \_\_\_\_\_

- B. **ALLOWANCE for Incidental Asbestos Abatement** **\$15,000.00**  
(Section 028013 of the Specifications)

- C. **ALLOWANCE for removal and reconstruction work of approximately half (1/2)** **\$57,207.00**  
**of the plaster ceiling at the West Gallery as directed by the Commissioner.**  
(See Addendum to the General Conditions Additional Sub-Section M)

- D. **AMOUNT for Unit Prices (from page 15) for extra work items**

**TOTAL BID PRICE (Add A + B + C + D)**  
**( a/k/a BID PROPOSAL)**

**BIDDER'S SIGNATURE AND AFFIDAVIT**

Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

(Signature of Partner or corporate officer)

Attest:  
(Corporate Seal)

Secretary of Corporate Bidder

Affidavit on the following page should be subscribed and sworn to before a Notary Public

FMS# PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM  
INTERIOR FIT OUT

**CONTRACT #1 – GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK**

**SECTION 01 35 91  
HISTORIC TREATMENT PROCEDURES**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2. SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes general protection and treatment procedures for designated historic spaces, areas, rooms, and surfaces in Project.
- B. Related Sections: Following description of work is included for reference only and shall not be presumed to be complete:
1. Protection of historic building fabric requirement: Section 013600; Historic Building Component Protection Requirements.
  2. Historic removal and dismantling requirements: Section 024296, Historic Removal and Dismantling.

**1.3. DEFINITIONS**

- A. Consolidate: To strengthen loose or deteriorated materials in place.
- B. Design Reference Sample: A sample that represents the Architect's prebid selection of work to be matched; it may be existing work or work specially produced for the Project.
- C. Disassemble: To dismantle or detach a historic item from a surface, or a non-historic item from a historic surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- D. Historic: Spaces, areas, rooms, surfaces, materials, finishes, and overall appearance that are important to the successful preservation, rehabilitation, restoration and reconstruction as determined by Architect. Designated historic attributes are indicated on Drawings, rooms where majority of historic treatment to occur are listed in Part 3 of this Section.
- E. Match: To blend with adjacent construction and manifest no apparent difference in material type, species, cut, form, detail, color, grain, texture, or finish; as approved by Architect.
- F. Refinish: To remove existing finishes to base material and apply new finish to match original or as otherwise indicated.
- G. Reinstall: To protect removed or disassembled item, repair and clean it as indicated for reuse, and reinstall it in original position, or where indicated.
- H. Remove: To take down or detach a non-historic item located within a historic space, area, or room, using methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.



- I. Repair: To correct damage and defects, retaining existing materials, features, and finishes while employing as little new material as possible. This includes patching, piecing-in, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing or upgrading materials.
- J. Replace: To remove, duplicate, and reinstall entire item with new material. The original item is the pattern for creating duplicates unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Replicate: To reproduce in exact detail, materials, and finish unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Reproduce: To fabricate a new item, accurate in detail to the original, and from either the same or a similar material as the original, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Restore: To consolidate, replicate, reproduce, repair, and refinish as required to achieve the indicated results.
- N. Retain: To keep existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled.
- O. Reversible: New construction work, treatments, or processes that can be removed or undone in the future without damaging historic materials unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Salvage: To protect removed or dismantled items and deliver them to Owner.
- Q. Stabilize: To provide structural reinforcement of unsafe or deteriorated items while maintaining the essential form as it exists at present; also, to reestablish a weather-resistant enclosure.
- R. Strip: To remove existing finish down to base material unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.4. COORDINATION

- A. Historic Treatment Subschedule: A construction schedule coordinating the sequencing and scheduling of historic treatment work for entire Project, including each activity to be performed in historic spaces, areas, and rooms, and on historic surfaces; and based on Contractor's Construction Schedule. Secure time commitments for performing critical construction activities from separate entities responsible for historic treatment work.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain best historic treatment results.
  - 2. Coordinate sequence of historic treatment work activities to accommodate the following:
    - a. Other known work in progress.
    - b. Tests and inspections.
  - 3. Detail sequence of historic treatment work, with start and end dates.
  - 4. Utility Services: Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted. Coordinate shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 5. Use of elevator and stairs.
  - 6. Equipment Data: List gross loaded weight, axle-load distribution, and wheel-base dimension data for mobile and heavy equipment proposed for use. Do not use such equipment without certification from Contractor's professional engineer that the structure can support the imposed loadings without damage.

#### 1.5. PROJECT MEETINGS FOR HISTORIC TREATMENT

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

HISTORIC TREATMENT  
PROCEDURES  
013591 -2

- A. Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference: Before starting historic treatment work, Construction Manager will conduct conference at Project site.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, and Contractor, historic treatment specialists, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects historic treatment shall be represented at the meeting.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress of historic treatment work, including review of the following:
    - a. Historic Treatment Subschedule: Discuss and finalize; verify availability of materials, historic treatment specialists' personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Fire-prevention plan.
    - c. Governing regulations.
    - d. Areas where existing construction is to remain and the required protection.
    - e. Hauling routes.
    - f. Sequence of historic treatment work operations.
    - g. Storage, protection, and accounting for salvaged and specially fabricated items.
    - h. Existing conditions, staging, and structural loading limitations of areas where materials are stored.
    - i. Qualifications of personnel assigned to historic treatment work and assigned duties.
    - j. Requirements for extent and quality of work, tolerances, and required clearances.
    - k. Methods and procedures related to historic treatments, including product manufacturers' written instructions and precautions regarding historic treatment procedures and their effects on materials, components, and vegetation.
    - l. Embedded work such as flashings and lintels, special details, collection of wastes, protection of occupants and the public, and condition of other construction that affect the Work or will affect the work.
  3. Reporting: Construction Manager will record conference results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from conference.
- B. Coordination Meetings: Conduct coordination meetings specifically for historic treatment work at twice monthly intervals. Coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, and Contractor, each historic treatment specialist, supplier, installer, and other entity concerned with progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of historic treatment work activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to historic treatment work.



2. **Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress of historic treatment work. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.**
  - a. **Historic Treatment Subschedule: Review progress since last coordination meeting. Determine whether each schedule item is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited with retention of quality; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities are completed within the Contract Time.**
  - b. **Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Historic Treatment Subschedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.**
  - c. **Review present and future needs of each entity present, including review items listed in the "Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference" Paragraph above and the following:**
    - i. **Interface requirements of historic treatment work with other Project Work.**
    - ii. **Status of submittals for historic treatment work.**
    - iii. **Access to historic treatment work.**
    - iv. **Effectiveness of fire-prevention plan.**
    - v. **Quality and work standards of historic treatment work.**
    - vi. **Change Orders for historic treatment work.**
3. **Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.**

#### 1.6. PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

- A. **Prior to commencement of all work and each historic specialty provide pre-construction documentation and subsequent monthly construction documentation comprised of digital image files and print copies to fully describe all conditions prior to and during construction.**
  1. **Provide digital files with a min of 20 images per room. Provide transmittal with:**
    - a. **Name of the Project.**
    - b. **Name and address (including email address) of the photographer.**
    - c. **Name of the Architect.**
    - d. **Name of the Contractor.**
    - e. **Date the photographs were taken.**
    - f. **Vantage Point: Description of vantage point on the plan.**

#### 1.7. MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Historic items and similar objects that may be encountered or uncovered during the Work, regardless of whether they were previously documented, remain Owner's property.
1. Carefully dismantle and salvage each item or object and protect it from damage, then promptly deliver it to Owner where directed.
  2. Coordinate with Owner's restoration architect, who will establish special procedures for dismantling and salvaging.
- 1.8. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Historic Treatment Subschedule:
1. Submit historic treatment subschedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of historic treatment work.
- B. Preconstruction Documentation: Show preexisting conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by Contractor's historic treatment operations.
- C. Historic Treatment Program: Submit 30 days before work begins.
- D. Fire-Prevention Plan: Submit 30 days before work begins.
- E. Paint samples of paint or layered paint mix to match existing paint finish.
- 1.9. QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: An experienced firm regularly engaged in historic treatments similar in nature, materials, design, and extent to this work as specified in each section and that has completed a minimum of three (3) recent projects with a record of successful in-service performance that demonstrates the firm's qualifications to perform this work.
1. Field Supervisor Qualifications: Full-time supervisors experienced in historic treatment work similar in nature, material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supervisors shall be on Project site when historic treatment work begins and during its progress. Supervisors shall not be changed during Project except for causes beyond the control of the specialist firm.
    - a. Construct new mockups of required work whenever a supervisor is replaced.
- B. Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written plan for historic treatment for whole Project, including each phase or process and protection of surrounding materials during operations. Describe in detail the materials, methods, and equipment to be used for each phase of work. Show compliance with indicated methods and procedures specified in this and other Sections. Coordinate this whole-Project historic treatment program with specific requirements of programs required in other historic treatment Sections.
1. Dust and Noise Control: Include locations of proposed temporary dust- and noise-control partitions and means of egress from occupied areas coordinated with continuing on-site operations and other known work in progress.
  2. Debris Hauling: Include plans clearly marked to show debris hauling routes, turning radii, and locations and details of temporary protective barriers.
- C. Fire-Prevention Plan: Prepare a written plan for preventing fires during the Work, including placement of fire extinguishers, fire blankets, rag buckets, and other fire-prevention devices during each phase or

process. Coordinate plan with Owner's fire-protection equipment and requirements. Include fire?watch personnel's training, duties, and authority to enforce fire safety.

D. Safety and Health Standard: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6.

1.10. STORAGE AND HANDLING OF HISTORIC MATERIALS

A. Salvaged Historic Materials:

1. Clean loose dirt and debris from salvaged historic items unless more extensive cleaning is indicated.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning; cushion against damage during handling. Label contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

B. Historic Materials for Reinstallation:

1. Repair and clean historic items for reuse as indicated.
2. Pack or crate items\*for offsite cleaning and repairing by specialist; cushion with minimum 3" thick heavy density, fire retardant polyester foam against damage during handling. Label contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment unless otherwise indicated. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials to make item functional for use indicated.

C. Existing Historic Materials to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling from construction work. Where permitted by Architect, items may be dismantled and taken to a suitable, protected storage location during construction work and reinstalled in their original locations after historic treatment and construction work in the vicinity is complete.

D. Storage: Catalog and store historic items within a weathertight enclosure where they are protected from moisture, weather, condensation, and freezing temperatures.

1. Identify each item with a nonpermanent mark to document its original location. Indicate original locations on plans, elevations, sections, or photographs by annotating the identifying marks.
2. Secure stored materials to protect from theft.
3. Control humidity so that it does not exceed 85 percent. Maintain temperatures 5 deg F (3 deg C) or more above the dew point.

E. Storage Space:

1. Arrange for off-site locations for storage and protection of historic material that cannot be stored and protected on-site.

1.11. *FIELD CONDITIONS*

- A. Size Limitations in Historic Spaces: Materials, products, and equipment used for performing the Work and for transporting debris, materials, and products shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within historic spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, including temporary protection, by **12 inches (300 mm)** or more.

**PART II – PRODUCTS [NOT USED]**

**PART III- EXECUTION**

3.1. PROTECTION, GENERAL

- A. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from historic treatment procedures.
1. Use only proven protection methods, appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
  2. Provide temporary barricades, barriers, and directional signage to exclude unapproved workers and the public from areas where historic treatment work is being performed.
  3. Erect temporary barriers to form and maintain fire-egress routes.
  4. Contain dust and debris generated by historic treatment work, and prevent it from reaching the public or adjacent surfaces.
  5. Provide shoring, bracing, and supports as necessary. Do not overload structural elements.
  6. Protect floors and other surfaces along hauling routes from damage, wear, and staining.
- B. Temporary Protection of Historic Materials:
1. Protect existing historic materials with temporary protections and construction. Do not remove existing materials unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Do not attach temporary protection to historic surfaces except as indicated as part of the historic treatment program and approved by Architect.
- C. Comply with each product manufacturer's written instructions for protections and precautions. Protect against adverse effects of products and procedures on people and adjacent materials, components, and vegetation.
- D. Utility and Communications Services:
1. Notify Owner, Architect, authorities having jurisdiction, and entities owning or controlling wires, conduits, pipes, and other services affected by historic treatment work before commencing operations.
  2. Disconnect and cap pipes and services as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as required for historic treatment work.



3. Maintain existing services unless otherwise indicated; keep in service, and protect against damage during operations. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities.

E. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work in an area, test drainage system to ensure that it is functioning properly. Notify Architect immediately of inadequate drainage or blockage. Do not begin work in an area until the drainage system is functioning properly.

1. Prevent solids such as stone or mortar residue or other debris from entering the drainage system. Clean out drains and drain lines that become sluggish or blocked by sand or other materials resulting from historic treatment work.
2. Protect drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

### 3.2. PROTECTION FROM FIRE

A. General: Follow fire-prevention plan and the following:

1. Comply with NFPA 241 requirements unless otherwise indicated.
2. Remove and keep area free of combustibles, including rubbish, paper, waste, and chemicals, unless necessary for the immediate work.
  - a. If combustible material cannot be removed, provide fire blankets to cover such materials.
3. Prohibit smoking by all persons within Project work and staging areas.

B. Heat-Generating Equipment and Combustible Materials: Comply with the following procedures while performing work with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, including welding, torch-cutting, soldering, brazing, removing paint with heat, or other operations where open flames or implements using high heat or combustible solvents and chemicals are anticipated:

1. As far as practicable, restrict heat-generating equipment to shop areas or outside the building.
2. Do not perform work with heat-generating equipment in or near rooms or in areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. Use a combustible gas indicator test to ensure that the area is safe.
3. Use fireproof baffles to prevent flames, sparks, hot gases, or other high-temperature material from reaching surrounding combustible material.
4. Prevent the spread of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, holes, and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings, roofs, and other openings.
5. Fire Watch: Before working with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, station personnel to serve as a fire watch at each location where such work is performed. Fire-watch personnel shall have the authority to enforce fire safety. Station fire watch according to NFPA 51B, NFPA 241, and as follows:
  - a. Train each fire watch in the proper operation of fire-control equipment and alarms.
  - b. Prohibit fire-watch personnel from other work that would be a distraction from fire-watch duties.



- c. Cease work with heat-generating equipment whenever fire-watch personnel are not present.
  - d. Have fire-watch personnel perform final fire-safety inspection each day beginning no sooner than 30 minutes after conclusion of work at each area of Project site to detect hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper fire prevention is maintained.
  - e. Maintain fire-watch personnel at each area of Project site until 60 minutes after conclusion of daily work.
- C. Fire Extinguishers, Fire Blankets, and Rag Buckets: Maintain fire extinguishers, fire blankets, and rag buckets for disposal of rags with combustible liquids. Maintain each as suitable for the type of fire risk in each work area. Ensure that nearby personnel and the fire-watch personnel are trained in fire-extinguisher and blanket use.
- D. Sprinklers: Where sprinkler protection exists and is functional, maintain it without interruption while operations are being performed. If operations are performed close to sprinklers, shield them temporarily with guards.
- 1. Remove temporary guards at the end of work shifts, whenever operations are paused, and when nearby work is completed.
- 3.3. GENERAL HISTORIC TREATMENT
- A. Have historic treatment work performed only by qualified historic treatment specialists.
  - B. Ensure that supervisory personnel are present when historic treatment work begins and during its progress.
  - C. Record existing work before each procedure (preconstruction), and record progress during the work. Use digital preconstruction documentation photographs. Comply with requirements in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
  - D. Perform surveys of Project Site as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from historic treatment procedures.
  - E. Follow the procedures in subparagraphs below and procedures approved in historic treatment program unless otherwise indicated:
    - 1. Retain as much existing material as possible; repair and consolidate rather than replace.
    - 2. Use additional material or structure to reinforce, strengthen, prop, tie, and support existing material or structure.
    - 3. Use reversible processes wherever possible.
    - 4. Use historically accurate repair and replacement materials and techniques unless otherwise indicated.
    - 5. Record existing work before each procedure (preconstruction) and progress during the work with digital preconstruction documentation photographs. Comply with requirements in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."



- F. Notify Architect of visible changes in the integrity of material or components whether from environmental causes including biological attack, UV degradation, freezing, or thawing or from structural defects including cracks, movement, or distortion.
  - 1. Do not proceed with the work in question until directed by Architect.
- G. Where missing features are indicated to be repaired or replaced, provide work with appearance based on accurate duplications rather than on conjecture, subject to approval of Architect.
- H. Where work requires existing features to be removed or dismantled and reinstalled, perform these operations without damage to the material itself, to adjacent materials, or to the substrate.
- I. Identify new and replacement materials and features with permanent marks hidden in the completed Work to distinguish them from original materials. Record a legend of identification marks and the locations of the items on record Drawings.

#### 3.4. HISTORIC TREATMENT SCHEDULE

- A. Spaces, areas, rooms, and surfaces requiring special care and treatment to ensure successful preservation rehabilitation restoration and reconstruction are indicated on Drawings and generally described below.
  - 1. Entry Lobby: Room 101
  - 2. Front Lobby: Room 102
  - 3. Intermediary Zone: Room 105
  - 4. Green Room: Room 114
  - 5. Performance Space: Room 110
  - 6. West Gallery: Room 118

**END OF SECTION 01 35 91**

**SECTION 01 36 00**  
**HISTORIC BUILDING COMPONENT PROTECTION**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2. SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Provide protection of historic fabric to remain or to be reused in the rooms including but not limited to the following:

1. Door protection.
2. Door trim protection.
3. Door Protection
4. Plaster wall protection
5. Marble column protection
6. Marble floor protection
7. Photographic documentation prior to, during and completion of the work.

- B. Related Sections:

1. For general historic treatment requirements including photographic documentation: Section 013591; "Historic Treatment Procedures".
2. For removing and dismantling historic features: Section 024296; "Historic Removal and Dismantling".

**1.3. DEFINITIONS**

- A. **Dismantle:** To disassemble or detach a historic item from a surface, or a non-historic item from a historic surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. **Existing to Remain:** Existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled, except to the degree indicated for performing required Work.
- C. **Remove:** To take down or detach a nonhistoric item located within a historic space, area, or room, using methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- D. **Retain:** To keep existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled.
- E. **Salvage:** To protect removed or dismantled items and deliver them to Owner ready for reuse.



#### 1.4. PRECONSTRUCTION MEETINGS

- A. Preconstruction Conference(s): Conduct conference(s) at Project site.
1. Review minutes of Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference that pertain to historic building component protection procedures.
  2. Review list of items indicated to be protected.
  3. Verify qualifications of personnel assigned to perform protection work.
  4. Inspect and discuss condition of each construction type to be protected.
  5. Review requirements of other work that occurs at areas to be protected.
  6. Review methods and procedures related to historic building component protection, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Historic building component protection specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
    - c. Fire prevention.
    - d. Coordination with other building work.

#### 1.5. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For historic building component protection specialist and historic building component protection specialist's field supervisors.
- B. Preconstruction Documentation: Show preexisting conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by Contractor's removal and dismantling operations.
- C. Historic Building Component Protection Program: Submit 20 days before work begins.
- D. List of Items Indicated to Be Protected: Prepare a list of items indicated on Drawings to be protected. Submit 15 days before preconstruction conference.

#### 1.6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Building Component Protection Specialist Qualifications: A qualified historic treatment specialist who has successfully completed two (2) Historic Landmarks projects of similar size and detail within the past five (5) years. General protection experience is insufficient experience for historic building component protection work.
- B. Historic Building Component Protection Program: Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of historic building component protection work.
- C. Mockups: Prepare mockups of specific historic building component protection procedures specified in this Section to set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Typical Protection Work: Protect typical historic building components as follows:



- a. Door Trim (Jamb and Head): 1 each full size.
  - b. Window Trim: 1 each full size.
  - c. Wainscot: One (1), 4'-0" length, full height.
  - d. Cabinet: One (1), 4'-0" length, full height.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- D. Product Data: Provide catalogue cuts of all products used under this section..
- E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with notification regulations of authorities having jurisdiction before beginning historic building component protection work.
- F. Damage Repair:
1. Work damaged by failure to provide protection or damaged by the protection installation shall be restored by a qualified specialist at no additional expense to the Owner.

#### 1.7. FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- B. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with historic building component protection work.

### PART II - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1. MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer List: Products of the manufacturers listed below are acceptable subject to conformance to requirements of Drawings, Schedules and Specifications.
- B. Substitution Limitations:
  1. Comparable Products from other manufacturers not listed herein will be accepted in writing provided they meet requirements of this Specification after full review by Consultant.

#### 2.2. MATERIALS

- A. Temporary Wood
  1. Plywood
    - a. Standard, 1/2" CDX with exterior glue.
  2. Framing Lumber;



- a. Grade-stamped, surface or kiln dried, Hemlock Fir, Douglas Fir or Spruce, construction grade or better.
3. Hardboard (Masonite)
  - a. Standard, fiberized wood with durable S2S surface.
  - b. Manufacturer: Panel Processing, Alpena, MI 49707.
- B. Double-coated Urethane Foam Tape
  1. 3M Double-Coated Urethane Foam Tape, 4004.
  2. Manufacturer: 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tape Division, St. Paul, MN 55144.
- C. Foam Protection
  1. Closed or open cell Heavy Density Fire Retardant Polyester Foam, 1.6 PCF, as per drawings and specifications.
  2. Manufacturer: New England Foam, Hartford, CT 06120.
- D. Screw Anchors
  1. ¼" diameter x 6" long Tapper, Philips flathead.
  2. Manufacturer: Powers Fasteners, Inc., 2 Powers Lane, Brewster, NY. 10509.
- E. Heavy Duty Moving Blanket
  1. Dual sided, woven outside heavy moving blanket, min. 72" x 80".
  2. Manufacturer: Pratt Detail Specialties, Atlanta, GA 30354.
- F. Miscellaneous Anchors
  1. Nails and screws at minimum 12" on center, with maximum lengths unable to penetrate through plywood and framing.

### **PART III- EXECUTION**

#### **3.1. EXAMINATION**

- A. Preparation for Historic Building Component Protection: Examine construction to be protected and areas of proposed removals and accept all conditions prior to commencement of the work.
  1. Verify all building features to be protected and conditions which affect the work.
  2. Coordinate with all historic removal and dismantling work.
  3. Notify the Architect of any discrepancies between the drawings and field conditions.
  4. Commencement of work indicates Contractor's acceptance of the conditions as indicated on the drawings.

B. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs.

1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."

3.2. HISTORIC BUILDING COMPONENT PROTECTION

A. General: Have historic building component protection work performed by a qualified historic building component protection specialist. Ensure that historic building component protection specialist's field supervisors are present when protection work begins and during its progress.

B. Perform work according to the historic treatment program and approved mockup(s).

**END OF SECTION 013600**

SECTION 02 41 18

ALTERATION PROJECT PROCEDURES

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the alteration work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not limited to, the following:
1. Alteration and removal work as noted on drawings and as required to complete construction.
  2. Patching and refinishing of existing surfaces damaged as a result of this work.
  3. Selective removal and salvage of existing marble columns for reinstallation.
  4. Protection.
  5. Coordinate all work with building management.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Alteration and removal requirements for mechanical and electrical work - mechanical and electrical sections.

1.4 STANDARDS

- A. Except as modified by governing codes and by this specification, comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of ANSI 10.6 safety requirements for demolition work.

1.5 SCHEDULING

- A. Before commencing any alteration or demolition work, submit for review by the Commissioner and approval of the City of New York, a schedule showing the commencement, the order, and the completion dates for the various parts of this work.
- B. Before starting any work relating to existing utilities (electrical, sewer, water, heat, gas, fire lines, etc.) that will temporarily discontinue or disrupt service to the existing building, notify the Commissioner and the City of New York seventy two (72) hours in advance and obtain the City of New York's approval in writing before proceeding with this phase of the work.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. Special Experience Requirements (SER)
  - 1. The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in size, scope and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.

PART II - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Unless otherwise noted materials for use in repair of existing surfaces, but not otherwise specified, shall conform to the highest standards of the trade involved, and be in accordance with approved industry standards, and shall be as required to match existing surfaces.
- B. Materials or items demolished shall become the property of the contractor and shall be removed from the City of New York's property.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Make such explorations and probes as are necessary to ascertain any required protective measures before proceeding with demolition and removal.
  - 1. Do all shoring and bracing necessary to prevent any damage to the existing facility.
- B. Provide, erect, and maintain catch platforms, lights, barriers, warning signs, and other items as required for proper protection of the workmen engaged in operations, occupants of the building, and adjacent construction.
- C. Provide and maintain temporary protection of the existing structure designated to remain where demolition, removal, and new work are being done, connections made, materials handled, or equipment moved.
- D. Provide and maintain weather protection at exterior openings so as to fully protect the interior premises against damage from the elements until such openings are closed by new construction.
- E. Take necessary precautions to prevent dust and dirt from rising by wetting demolished masonry, concrete, plaster, and similar debris. Protect unaltered portions of the existing building affected by the operations under this section by dustproof partitions and other adequate means.
- F. Provide adequate fire protection in accordance with local fire department requirements.
- G. Do not close or obstruct walkways, passageways, or stairways without the authorization of the Commissioner. Do not store or place materials in passageways, stairs, or other means of egress. Conduct operations with minimum traffic interference.
- H. Be responsible for any damage to the existing structure or contents by reason of the insufficiency of protection provided.

#### 3.2 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Cut, remove, alter, temporarily remove and replace, or relocate existing work as required for performance of the work. Perform such work required with due care, including shoring and bracing.
- B. Coordinate patching involving the various trades whether or not specifically mentioned in the respective specification sections.
- C. Restore finished surfaces remaining in place but damaged or defaced because of demolition or alteration work to condition equal to that which existed at the beginning of work under this contract.



- D. Where alteration or removals expose damaged or unfinished surfaces or materials, refinish such surfaces or materials, or remove them and provide new or salvaged materials to make continuous surfaces uniform.
- E. Perform new work and restore and refinish existing work in conformance with applicable requirements of the specifications, except as follows:
  - 1. Workmanship for repair of existing materials shall, unless otherwise specified, be equal to workmanship existing in or adjacent to the space where the work is being done.
  - 2. Reinstallation of salvaged items where no similar items exist shall be performed in accordance with the highest standards of the trade involved and in accordance with approved Shop Drawings.
- F. Materials or items designated to become the property of the City of New York shall be as noted on the drawings. Remove such items with care and store them in a location at the site as designated by the City of New York.
- G. Execute the work in a careful and orderly manner, with the least possible disturbance to the occupants of the building.
- H. Material to be removed by existing elevators shall be put in enclosed containers.
- I. Cut out embedded anchorage and attachment items as required to properly provide for patching and repair of the respective finishes.
- J. Confine cutting of existing roof areas designated to remain to the limits required for the proper installation of the new work. Cut and fold back existing built-up roofing. Cut and remove insulation and related items. Provide temporary weathertight protection as required until new roofing and flashings are installed. Consult the City of New York to ascertain if existing guarantee bonds are in force, and execute the work so as not to invalidate such bonds.
- K. Where utilities are removed, relocated or abandoned, cap, valve, plug, or by-pass to make complete and working installation.
- L. Properly close and patch holes and openings in existing floor, wall, and ceiling surfaces resulting from alteration work, and those shown to be filled. Match existing surfaces.
- M. Restore existing pipe and duct coverings damaged by work under this contract to original undamaged condition.
- N. Immediately restore to service and repair any damage caused by contractor's workmen to existing pipe and conduits, wires, cables, etc., of utility services or of fire protection systems and communications systems which are not scheduled for discontinuance or abandonment.

- O. Upon completion of contract, deliver work complete and undamaged. Damage that may be caused by contractor or contractor's workmen to existing structures, grounds, and utilities shall be repaired by contractor and left in as good condition as existed prior to damaging.
- P. The existing building shall not be used as a work shop. Neither shall the furnishings or equipment in any room be used as work benches. Should any damage occur during the progress of the work to any furniture, fixtures, equipment, or appurtenances therein, such damage shall be repaired, replaced or made good by the contractor without extra cost to the City of New York.
- Q. Where removing existing floor finish and base, remove all adhesive and leave floors and walls smooth and flush, ready to receive new finish.
  - 1. Where removing existing resilient flooring follow "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings" as published by the Resilient Floor Covering Institute.
- R. Finish new and adjacent existing surfaces as specified for new work. Clean existing surfaces of dirt, grease and loose paint before refinishing.

3.3 CLEANING UP

- A. Remove debris as the work progresses. Maintain the premises in a neat and clean condition.

END OF SECTION 02 41 18



**SECTION 02 42 96  
HISTORIC REMOVAL AND DISMANTLING**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Provide historic treatment procedures in the form of special types of selective demolition work for designated historic spaces, areas, rooms, and surfaces including but not limited to the following specific work:

1. Removal and dismantling of indicated portions of building or structure and debris hauling.
2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

- B. Related Sections:

1. For general historic treatment requirements: Section 013591; "Historic Treatment Procedures".
2. For historic protection requirements: Section 013600; "Historic Building Component Protection".

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Dismantle: To disassemble or detach a historic item from a surface, or a non-historic item from a historic surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Existing to Remain: Existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled, except to the degree indicated for performing required Work.
- C. Remove: To take down or detach a non-historic item located within a historic space, area, or room, using methods and equipment to prevent damage to historic items and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- D. Retain: To keep existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled.



- E. Salvage: To protect removed or dismantled items and deliver them to Owner ready for reuse.

#### 1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETINGS

- A. Preconstruction Conference(s): Conduct conference(s) at Project site.
  - 1. Review minutes of Preliminary Historic Treatment Conference that pertain to removal and dismantling procedures and protection of historic areas and surfaces.
  - 2. Review list of items indicated to be salvaged.
  - 3. Verify qualifications of personnel assigned to perform removal and dismantling.
  - 4. Inspect and discuss condition of each construction type to be removed or dismantled.
  - 5. Review requirements of other work that depends on condition of substrates exposed by removal and dismantling work.
  - 6. Review methods and procedures related to removal and dismantling work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Historic removal and dismantling specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Materials, material application, sequencing, tolerances, and required clearances.
    - c. Fire prevention.
    - d. Coordination with other building work.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For historic removal and dismantling specialist and historic removal and dismantling specialist's field supervisors.
- B. Preconstruction Documentation: Show preexisting conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by Contractor's removal and dismantling operations.
- C. Removal and Dismantling Historic Treatment Program: Submit 20 days before work begins.
- D. List of Items Indicated to Be Salvaged: Prepare a list of items indicated on Drawings to be salvaged for Owner's use or for reinstallation. Submit 15 days before preconstruction conference.
- E. Inventory of Salvaged Items: After removal or dismantling work is complete, submit a list of items that have been salvaged.
  - 1. Include item description, item condition, number of items if more than one of a type, and tag number. Include photo of item in original location.
  - 2. As work proceeds, include on the inventory items that were indicated to be salvaged and items of historic importance discovered during the work. Document reasons, if any, why an item indicated to be salvaged was not salvaged.

**1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. **Historic Removal and Dismantling Specialist Qualifications:** The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in size, scope and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.
- B. **Removal and Dismantling Historic Treatment Program:** Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of removal and dismantling work, including protection of surrounding and substrate materials and Project site.
1. **Dust and Noise Control:** Include locations of proposed temporary dust- and noise-control partitions and means of egress from occupied areas coordinated with continuing on-site operations and other known work in progress.
  2. **Debris Hauling:** Include plans clearly marked to show debris hauling routes, turning radii, and locations and details of temporary protective barriers.
- C. **Mockups:** Prepare mockups of specific historic removal and dismantling procedures specified in this Section to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. **Typical Removal Work:** Remove typical terra cotta masonry wall as shown on Drawings.
  2. **Typical Dismantling Work:** Dismantle typical wood wainscot at new opening as shown on Drawings.
  3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Commissioner specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- D. **Regulatory Requirements:** Comply with notification regulations of authorities having jurisdiction before beginning removal and dismantling work. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- B. Notify Commissioner of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with removal and dismantling work.



**PART II - PRODUCTS [NOT USED]**

**PART III- EXECUTION**

**1.8 HISTORIC REMOVAL AND DISMANTLING EQUIPMENT**

- A. Removal Equipment: Use only hand-held tools, except as follows or unless otherwise approved by Commissioner on a case-by-case basis:
  - 1. Cutting torches are not permitted.
  - 2. Large air hammers are not permitted.
- B. Dismantling Equipment: Use manual, hand-held tools, except as follows or otherwise approved by Commissioner on a case-by-case basis:
  - 1. Hand-held power tools are permitted only as submitted in the historic treatment program. They must be adjustable so as to penetrate or cut only the thickness of material being removed.
  - 2. Pry bars more than 18 inches (450 mm) long and hammers weighing more than 2 lb (0.9 kg) are not permitted for dismantling work.

**1.9 EXAMINATION**

- A. Preparation for Removal and Dismantling: Examine construction to be removed or dismantled to determine best methods to safely and effectively perform removal and dismantling work. Examine adjacent work to determine what protective measures are necessary. Make explorations, probes, and inquiries as necessary to determine condition of construction to be removed or dismantled and location of utilities and services to remain that may be hidden by construction that is to be removed or dismantled.
  - 1. Verify that affected utilities are disconnected and capped.
  - 2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and dismantled for reinstallation or salvage. Enter this information on the submittal of inventory of salvaged items.
  - 3. Before removal or dismantling of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.
- B. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs and preconstruction video recordings.
  - 1. Comply with requirements specified in the DDC General Conditions.

- C. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from historic removal and dismantling procedures.

#### 1.10 HISTORIC REMOVAL AND DISMANTLING

- A. General: Have removal and dismantling work performed by a qualified historic removal and dismantling specialist. Ensure that historic removal and dismantling specialist's field supervisors are present when removal and dismantling work begins and during its progress.
- B. Perform work according to the historic treatment program and approved mockup(s).
  - 1. Perform removal and dismantling to the limits indicated.
  - 2. Provide supports or reinforcement for existing construction that becomes temporarily weakened by removal and dismantling work, until the Project Work is completed unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Perform cutting by hand or with small power tools wherever possible. Cut holes and slots neatly to size required, with minimum disturbance of adjacent work.
  - 4. Do not operate air compressors inside building unless approved by Commissioner in each case.
  - 5. Do not drill or cut columns, beams, joints, girders, structural slabs, or other structural supporting elements, without having Contractor's professional engineer's written approval for each location before such work is begun.
  - 6. Dispose of removed and dismantled items off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- C. Water-Mist Sprinkling: Use water-mist sprinkling and other wet methods to control dust only with adequate, approved procedures and equipment according to the historic treatment program to ensure that such water does not create a hazard or adversely affect other building areas or materials.
- D. Unacceptable Equipment: Keep equipment that is not permitted for historic removal or dismantling work away from the vicinity where such work is being performed.
- E. Removing and Dismantling Items on or Near Historic Surfaces:
  - 1. Use only dismantling equipment and procedures within **12 inches (300 mm)** of historic surface. Do not use pry bars. Protect historic surface from contact with or damage by tools.
  - 2. Unfasten items in the opposite order from which they were installed.
  - 3. Support each item as it becomes loosened to prevent stress and damage to the historic surface.
  - 4. Dismantle anchorages.
- F. Masonry Walls:
  - 1. Remove surface historic materials to expose the masonry walls and protect adjacent historic materials.



2. Saw cut masonry carefully to permit removal for new openings. Remove masonry carefully, and erect temporary bracing and supports as needed to prevent collapse of materials being removed.
3. Dismantle top edge and sides before removing wall. Stop removal work and immediately inform Architect if any structural elements above or adjacent to the work show signs of distress or dislocation during any phase of removal work.
4. Remove wall in easily managed pieces.
5. During removal, maintain the stability of the partially remaining wall. Notify Commissioner of the condition of temporary bracing for wall if work is temporarily stopped during the wall's removal.

G. Anchorages:

1. Remove anchorages associated with removed items.
2. Dismantle anchorages associated with dismantled items.
3. In non-historic surfaces, patch holes created by anchorage removal or dismantling according to the requirements for new work.
4. In historic surfaces, patch or repair holes created by anchorage removal or dismantling according to Section that is specific to the historic surface being patched.

1.11 HISTORIC REMOVAL AND DISMANTLING SCHEDULE

A. Historic Removals:

1. R-1 Remove plaster rustications where indicated.

B. Historic Dismantling:

1. D-1 Dismantle plaster rustications from indicated demolished walls.
2. D-2 Dismantle Trompe L'oeil plywood column section.

END OF SECTION 02 42 96

**SECTION 028013 – GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK**  
**ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

**1.01 SCOPE FOR ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK**

- A. The "General Conditions" apply to the work of this Section.
- B. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall remove asbestos containing materials as needed to perform the other work of this Contract when discovered during the course of work. When required, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall replace the ACM with non-asbestos containing materials. An allowance of **\$15,000.00** for the **General Contractor** is herein established for this incidental work when so ordered and authorized by the Commissioner.
- C. ALL WORK SHALL BE DONE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE PROVISIONS OF THE RULES AND REGULATIONS OF THE ASBESTOS CONTROL PROGRAM AS PROMULGATED BY TITLE 15 CHAPTER I OF RCNY AND NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF LABOR INDUSTRIAL CODE RULE 56 CITED AS 12 NYCRR, PART 56 WHICHEVER IS MORE STRINGENT AS PER LATEST AMENDMENTS TO THESE LAWS AND AS MODIFIED HEREIN BY THESE SPECIFICATIONS.
- D. ALL DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAMINATED MATERIAL SHALL BE PER LOCAL LAW 70/85.
- E. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR'S ATTENTION IS DIRECTED TO THE FACT THAT CERTAIN METHODS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT ARE PROTECTED BY PATENTS. TO DATE, PATENTS HAVE BEEN ISSUED WITH RESPECT TO "NEGATIVE PRESSURE ENCLOSURE" OR "NEGATIVE-AIR" OR "REDUCED PRESSURE" AND "GLOVE BAG".
- F. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR SHALL BE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR AND SHALL HOLD THE DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION AND THE CITY HARMLESS FROM ANY AND ALL DAMAGES, LOSSES AND EXPENSES RESULTING FROM ANY INFRINGEMENT BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR OF ANY PATENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE PATENTS DESCRIBED ABOVE, USED BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR DURING PERFORMANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.
- G. "Asbestos" shall mean any hydrated mineral silicate separable into commercially usable fibers, including but not limited to chrysotile (serpentine), amosite (cumingtonite-grunerite), crocidolite (riebeckite), tremolite, anthrophyllite and actinolite.

GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- H. Prior to starting, the Asbestos abatement contractor must notify the Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction if he/she anticipates any difficulty in performing the Work as required by these Specifications. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to prepare and submit all filings, notifications, etc. required by all City, State and Federal regulatory agencies having jurisdiction.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for submitting the Asbestos Project Notification Form (ACP-7 Form) to the Department of Environmental Protection, Asbestos Control Program, as per Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY and to the NYSDOL as per Industrial Code Rule 56.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for preparing, and submitting Asbestos Variance Application (ACP-9). If a Variance is required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Asbestos Project Designer, as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required variance.

The General contractor is responsible for preparing and submitting an Asbestos Abatement Permit and/or Work Place Safety Plans (WPSP) that may be required for the completion of the Contract or incidental work. If such plans are required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Licensed Design Professional as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required plans.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the submission of all required documents to the NYCDEP to acquire the appropriate Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout (ACP-20) and/or Asbestos Project Completion Forms (ACP-21) on a timely basis for the completion of the incidental work encountered under this contract.

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be required to attend an on-site job meeting with the Construction Project Manager prior to the start of work to examine conditions and plan the sequence of operations, etc.

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall have a NYSDOL/NYCDEP Asbestos Supervisor onsite to oversee the work and conduct a final visual inspection as required by both Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY and NYSDOL Industrial Code Rule 56.

- I. All work shall be done during regular working hours unless the Asbestos abatement contractor requests authorization to work in other than regular working hours and such authorization is granted by the Commissioner. (Regular work hours are those hours during which any given facility, in which work is to be done, is customarily open and functioning, normally between the hours of 8:00 A.M. and 4:00 P.M. Monday - Friday.) If such work schedule is authorized by the Commissioner, the work shall be done at no additional cost to the City.

- J. The Commissioner may order that work be done in other than regular working hours as herein by defined and this order may require the Asbestos abatement contractor to pay premium or overtime wages to complete the work. If the Commissioner orders work in other than regular working hours, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall multiply the unit price for that portion of the work requiring premium wages by 1.50 when computing payment in accordance with Paragraph 1.09. All requests for premium payment must be supported by certified payroll sheets and field sheets approved by the Construction Project Manager.

**1.02 QUALIFICATIONS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR**

- A. Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements set forth in subparagraphs (1) through (5) below. The asbestos abatement contractor must, submit documentation demonstrating compliance with all listed requirements. Such documentation shall include without limitation, all required licenses, certificates, and documentation.
1. The asbestos abatement contractor must, whether an individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture or other legal entity, must demonstrate for the three year period prior to the work, that it has been licensed by the New York State Department of Labor, as an "Asbestos abatement contractor".
  2. The asbestos abatement contractor must, for the three year period prior to the work, have been in the business of providing asbestos abatement services as a routine part of its daily operations.
  3. The asbestos abatement contractor proposing to do asbestos abatement work must be thoroughly experienced in such work and must provide evidence of having successfully performed and completed in a timely fashion at least five (5) asbestos abatement projects of similar size and complexity. The aggregate cost of these projects must be at least \$250,000.00 in each of the three years.
  4. For each project submitted to meet the experience requirements set forth above, the asbestos abatement contractor must submit the following information for the project; name and location of the project; name title and telephone number of the owner or the owner's representative who is familiar with the asbestos abatement contractor's work, brief description of the work completed as a prime or sub-asbestos abatement contractor; amount of contract or subcontract and the date of completion.
  5. The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate that it has the financial resources, supervisory personnel and equipment necessary to carry out the work and to comply with the required performance schedule, taking into consideration other business commitments. The asbestos

**GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

abatement contractor must submit such documentation as may be required by the Department of Design and Construction to demonstrate that it has the requisite capacity to perform the required services of this contract.

- B. **Insurance Requirements:** The asbestos abatement contractor must provide asbestos liability insurance in the following amount: 1 million dollars per occurrence, 2 million dollars aggregate (combined single limit). The City of New York shall be named as an additional insured on such insurance policy.
- C. Throughout the specifications, reference is made to codes and standards which establish qualities and types of workmanship and materials, and which establish methods for testing and reporting on the pertinent characteristics thereof.

**1.03 ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will visit the subject location within one (1) working day of notification to ascertain actual work required. If the project is identified as being "urgent", then work shall commence no later than 48 hours from the time of notification. In this event, the asbestos abatement contractor shall immediately notify when applicable EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL Asbestos Control Bureau and NYCDEP Asbestos Control Program of start of the work and file the necessary Asbestos Notifications and any applicable Variance Applications with the regulatory agencies cited above.

In the event that the project is not classified as "urgent" the Asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL and NYCDEP by submitting the requisite asbestos project notification forms, postmarked 10 days before activity begins if 260 linear feet or more and/or 160 square feet or more of asbestos containing material will be disturbed.

The following information must be included in the notification:

- A. Name and address of building City or operator;
- B. Project description:
  - 1. Size - square feet, number of linear feet, etc;
  - 2. Age - date of construction and renovations (if known);
  - 3. Use - i.e., office, school, industrial, etc.
  - 4. Scope - repair, demolition, cleaning, etc.
- C. Amount of asbestos involved in work and an explanation of techniques used to determine the amount;

- D. Building location/address, including Block and Lot numbers;
- E. Work schedule including the starting and completion dates;
- F. Abatement methods to be employed;
- G. Procedures for removal of asbestos-containing material;
- H. Name, title and authority of governmental representative sponsoring project.

**1.04 WORK INCLUDED IN UNIT PRICE**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be paid a basic unit price of \$25.00 per square feet for the removal and disposal of asbestos containing material and replacement of the same with non-asbestos containing materials.

Unit price shall include all costs necessary to do the work of this Contract, including but not limited to: labor, materials, equipment, utilities, disposal, insurance, overhead and profit.

**1.05 AIR MONITORING – ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR**

- A. "Air Sampling" shall mean the process of measuring the fiber content of a known volume of air collected during a specific period of time. The procedure utilized for asbestos follows the NIOSH Standard Analytical Method 7400 or the provisional transmission electron microscopy methods developed by the USEPA and/or National Institute of Standard and Technology which are utilized for lower detectability and specific fiber identification.
- B. Air monitoring of Asbestos abatement contractor's personnel will be performed in conformance with OSHA requirements, (All costs associated with this work are deemed included in the unit price.).
- C. Qualifications of Testing Laboratory:

The industrial hygiene laboratory shall be a current proficient participant in the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) PAT Program. The laboratory identification number shall be submitted and approved by the City. The laboratory shall be accredited by the AIHA and New York State Department of Health Environmental Laboratory Approval Program (ELAP).

Note: Work area air testing and analysis before, during and upon completion of work (clearance testing) will be performed by a Third Party Air Monitor under separate Contract with the City.

**1.06 THIRD PARTY MONITORING AND LABORATORY**

- A. The NYCDDC, at its own expense, will employ the services of an independent Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and Laboratory. The Third Party Air Monitor will perform air sampling activities and project monitoring at the Work Site.
- B. The Laboratory will perform analysis of air samples utilizing Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) and/or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM).
- C. The Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and the designated Project Monitor shall have access to all areas of the asbestos removal project at all times and shall continuously inspect and monitor the performance of the Asbestos abatement contractor to verify that said performance complies with this Specification. The Third-Party Air Monitor shall be on site throughout the entire abatement operation.
- D. The NYCDDC will be responsible for costs incurred with the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and laboratory work. Any subsequent additional testing required due to limits exceeded during initial testing shall be paid for by the Asbestos abatement contractor.

**1.07 PAYMENT REQUEST DOCUMENTATION**

- B. The following information shall be included for each payment request:
  - 1. Description of work performed.
  - 2. Linear footage and pipe sizes involved.
  - 3. Square footage for boiler & breaching insulation removed.
  - 4. Square footage of non pipe and boiler areas removed, patched, enclosed, sealed, or painted.
  - 5. Square footage of encapsulation, sealing, patching, and painting involved.
  - 6. Total cost associated with compliance with the assigned task.
  - 7. Architectural, Electrical, HVAC, Plumbing, etc. work incidental to the Asbestos Abatement Work.
  - 8. A certified copy (in form 4312-39) to the Comptroller or Financial Officer of the New York City to the effect that the financial statement is true.
  - 9. A signed copy (in form 6506q-6) of certificate of compliance with non-discriminatory provisions of the Contract.

GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

10. Attach a copy of valid workmen compensation insurance.
  11. Valid asbestos insurance per occurrence.
  12. General liability insurance when required.
- C. Each payment request shall include a grand total for all work completed that billing period, the landfill waste manifests and a copy of waste transporter permit. The Department of Design and Construction will inspect the work performed, review the cost and approve or disapprove requests for payment.
- D. EXPOSURE LOG: With this final payment, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a listing of the names and social security numbers of all employees actively engaged in the abatement work of this Contract. This list shall include a summary showing each part of the abatement work in which the employee was engaged and the dates thereof.

**1.08 QUANTITY CALCULATIONS**

In order to determine the square footage involved for the various pipe sizes of pipe insulation that might be encountered, the following table is to be used.

<u>PIPE INSULATION SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>PIPE SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>SQUARE FOOTAGE PER LINEAR FOOT</u>
2-1/2"	1/2"	0.65
2-3/4"	3/4"	0.72
3"	1"	0.79
3-1/4"	1-1/4"	0.85
3-1/2"	1-1/2"	0.92
4"	2"	1.05
4-1/2"	2-1/2"	1.18
5"	3"	1.31
6"	3-1/4"	1.57
7"	3-1/2"	1.83
8"	4"	2.09
9"	5"	2.36
10"	6"	2.62
12"	8"	3.14
14"	10"	3.67
16"	12"	4.19
18"	14"	4.71

1.09 **METHOD OF PAYMENT**

Payment shall be made in accordance with Items A through R below. Payment shall be calculated based on the actual quantity of the item performed by the asbestos abatement contractor, times the unit price specified below. Credits may apply to certain times, as specified below.

- A. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING PIPE INSULATION:** Actual linear footage, multiplied by the square footage factor listed for the respective pipe size in Section 1.08, multiplied by the unit price in Section 1.04.

EXAMPLE: 100 lin.ft. of 1/2" pipe and 100 lin.ft. of 6" pipe, including elbows, tees. Flanges, etc.

$$100 \times 0.65 = 65 \text{ sq.ft.} \quad 65 \times \text{unit price} = \text{Payment}$$

$$100 \times 2.62 = 262 \text{ sq.ft.} \quad 262 \times \text{unit price} = \text{Payment}$$

- B. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER INSULATION:** (all types including Silicate Block and including the removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

EXAMPLE: Item B. removal and replacement of 1000 S.F. of boiler insulation (incl. Silicate block)

$$1000 \text{ S.F.} \times (1.5) \times \text{the Unit Price} = \text{Payment}$$

- C. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF TANK INSULATION:** (all types including removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

- D. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER UPTAKE, & BREACHING INSULATION:** (all types including stiffening angles and wire lath) Payment shall be made at 2.0 times the unit price per square foot.

- E. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF DUCT INSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot.

- F. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF SOFT ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (Including sprayed-on fire proofing and sound proofing) Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot of surface area. Area of irregular surfaces must be calculated and confirmed with DDC representative.

- G. **ACOUSTIC PLASTER REPAIR AND/OR ENCAPSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.

GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- H. **PATCHING OR REPAIR** of items listed in A through F will be paid at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- I. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF WATERPROOFING ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (including friable and non-friable waterproofing material from interior and exterior walls, floors, foundations, penetrations, louvers, vents and openings other than windows, doors and skylights) Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.
- J. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL WIRING INSULATION:** (including friable and non-friable wiring insulation) Payment shall be made at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- K. **PAINTING:** Payment shall be made at 0.05 times the unit price per square foot.
- L. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING PLASTER:** from ceilings and walls, including any wire lath and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.80 times the unit price per square foot.
- M. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING FLOOR TILES, CEILING TILES, TRANSITE PANELS:** (including any adhesive, glue, mastic and/or underlayment) and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.40 times the unit price per square foot. If multiple layers are discovered, each additional layer shall be paid at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot.
- N. **ADDITIONAL CLEAN UP/HOUSEKEEPING OF WORK AREA:** (excluding pre-cleaning of work area required by regulations) HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of asbestos contaminated surface. Payment shall be made at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot. When GLOVE BAG is employed to remove ACM, cost of HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of floor area up to 3 feet on each side of glove-bag shall be included in unit price and no extra payment will be made.
- O. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING ROOFING MATERIAL:** including mastic, flashing and sealant compound and provide temporary asbestos-free roof covering consisting of one layer of rolled roofing paper sealed with asphaltic roofing compound. Payment shall be made at 0.8 times the unit price per square foot. Credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price will be taken for each square foot of temporary roof covering which the Asbestos abatement contractor is directed not to install.
- P. **PICK-UP AND DISPOSAL OF GROSS DEBRIS:** (excluding any waste generated from abatement under Item A-R) at a rate of \$150 per cubic yard for asbestos contaminated waste and \$75 per cubic yard for non-asbestos contaminated waste. This cost includes all labor and material cost associated with work.

GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- Q. **REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING BRICK, BLOCK, MORTAR, CEMENT OR CONCRETE:** along with all surfacing materials including wire lath and/or other supporting structures and disposal as ACM waste. Payment shall be made at a rate of \$25.00 per cubic foot of material removed.
- R. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING WINDOW/DOOR CAULKING:** including friable and non-friable caulking, weather-stripping, glazing, sealants or other waterproofing materials applied to windows, doors, skylights, etc. Payment shall be made at the rate of \$400.00 per opening regardless of size or configuration. This cost includes labor, consumable materials, set-up/breakdown, removal and disposal, as required.

**Note 1: CREDIT:** For items listed in A through F, a credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price, times the respective multiplier (for each item) will be taken for each square foot of insulation which the asbestos abatement contractor is not directed to reapply.

**Note 2: MINIMUM PAYMENT:** The minimum payment per call at any individual job sites or various job sites during the same day will be eight hundred dollars (\$800.00).

**Note 3:** All payments shall be made as described in paragraph 1.09 herein.

**Note 4: WORKING HIGHER THAN 12 FEET ABOVE FLOOR LEVEL OR WORK REQUIRING COMPLEX SCAFFOLDING OR CONSTRUCTION WORK PLATFORMS:** Provisions are made in this Contract to compensate the Asbestos abatement contractor for work performed in locations that are difficult to access due to work at elevations that are significantly higher than the normal work level. The unit price for these items will be paid at 1.20 times the unit price described in Paragraphs 1.09, A through R for those portions of the work that are more than twelve (12) feet above the grade for that would be judged as the normal working level.

**1.10 GUARANTEE**

- A. Work performed in compliance with each task shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date the completed work is accepted by the Department of Design and Construction.
- B. The Commissioner of The Department of Design and Construction will notify the Asbestos abatement contractor in writing regarding defects in work under the guarantee.

**1.11 OCCUPANCY OF SITE NOT EXCLUSIVE**

Attention is specifically drawn to the fact that contractors, performing the work of other Contracts, may be brought upon any of the work sites of this Contract. Therefore, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall not have exclusive rights to any site of his work and shall fully cooperate and coordinate his work with the work of other contractors who may

be brought upon any site of the work of this Contract. This paragraph applies to those areas outside the regulated Work Area as defined by Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY.

1.12 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-Construction Submittals:

1. Attend a pre-construction meeting scheduled by the City of New York Department of Design and Construction. This meeting shall also be attended by a designated representative of the City of New York third party air monitoring firm, facility manager and the Construction Project Manager. At this meeting, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present three copies of the following items:
  - a. Asbestos abatement contractor's scope of work, work plan and schedule.
  - b. Asbestos project notifications, approved variances and plans to Government Agencies.
  - c. Copies of Permits, clearance and licenses if required.
  - d. Schedules: the Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to the Construction Project Manager a copy of the following schedules for approval. Once approved, schedules shall be maintained and updated as received. Asbestos abatement contractor shall post a copy of all schedules at the site:
    - (1) A construction schedule stating critical dates of the project including, but not limited to, mobilization, Work Area preparation, demolition, gross removal, fine cleaning, encapsulation, inspections, clearance monitoring, and phase of refinishing and final inspections. The schedule shall be updated biweekly, at a minimum.
    - (2) A schedule of staffing stating number of workers per shift per activity, name and number of supervisor(s) per shift, shifts per day, and total days to be worked.
    - (3) Submit all changes in schedule or staffing to the Construction Project Manager prior to implementation.
  - e. Written description of emergency procedures to be followed in case of injury or fire. This section must include evacuation procedures, source of medical assistance (name and telephone number to nearest

GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- hospital) and procedures to be used for access by medical personnel (examples: first aid squad and physician). NOTE: Necessary Emergency Procedures Shall Take Priority Over All Other Requirements of These Specifications.
- f. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for encapsulants, sealants, firestopping foam, cleaners/disinfectants, spray adhesive and any and all potentially hazardous materials that may be employed on the project. No work involving the aforementioned will be allowed to proceed until MSDS are reviewed.
  - g. Worker Training and Medical Surveillance: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a list of the persons who will be employed by him /her to perform the removal work. Present evidence that workers have received proper training required by the regulations and the medical examinations required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101.
  - h. Logs: Specimen copies of daily progress log, visitor's log, and disposal log.
    - (1) The Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a permanently bound log book of minimum 8-1/2" x 11" size at the entrance to the Worker and Waste Decontamination enclosure system as hereinafter specified. Log book shall contain on title page the project name, name, address and phone number of the Asbestos abatement contractor; name, address and phone number of Asbestos abatement contractor and City's third party air monitoring firm; emergency numbers including, but not limited to local Fire/Rescue Department. Log book shall contain a list of personnel approved for entry into the Work Area.
    - (2) All entries into the log shall be made in non-washable, permanent ink and such pen shall be strung to or otherwise attached to the log to prevent removal from the log-in area. Under no circumstances shall pencil entries be permitted. Any significant events occurring during the abatement project shall be entered into the log. Upon completion of the job, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit the logbook containing a day-to-day record of personnel log entries countersigned by the Construction Project Manager every day.
  - i. Worker's Acknowledgments: Submit statements signed by each employee that the employee has received training in the proper handling of ACM, understands the health implications and risks

GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

involved; and understands the use and limitations of the respiratory equipment to be used.

B. During Construction Submittals:

1. Security and safety logs showing names of person entering workspace, date and time of entry and exit, record of any accident, emergency evacuation, and any other safety and/or health incident.
2. Progress logs showing the number of workers, supervisors, hours of work and tasks completed shall be submitted daily to the Construction Project Manager.
3. Floor plans indicating Asbestos abatement contractor's current work progress shall be submitted for review by the Construction Project Manager.
4. All Asbestos abatement contractors' air monitoring and inspection results.

C. Project Closeout Submittals:

Upon completion of the project and as a condition of acceptance, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present two copies of the following items, bound and indexed:

1. Lien Waivers from Asbestos abatement contractor, Sub-Asbestos abatement contractors and Suppliers,
2. Daily OSHA air monitoring results,
3. All Waste Manifests (Asbestos and Construction Debris), seals and disposal logs,
4. Field Sign-In/Sign-Out Logs for every shift,
5. Copies of all Building Department Forms and Permits,
6. A Letter of Compliance stating that all the work on this project was performed in accordance with the Specifications and all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations,
7. All Warranties as stated in the Specifications,
  - a. Fully executed disposal certificates and transportation manifest.
8. Project Record: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain a project record for all small and large asbestos projects. During the project, the

## GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

project record shall be kept on site at all times. Upon completion of the project, the project record shall be maintained by the building owner. The project record shall be submitted to DDC as part of the close out documents. The project record shall consist of:

- a. Copies of licenses of all asbestos abatement contractors involved in the project;
- b. Copies of NYCDEP and NYSDOL supervisor and handler certificates for all workers engaged in the project;
- c. Copies of all project notifications and reports filed with NYCDEP, NYSDOL and USEPA for the project, with any amendments or variances;
- d. Copies of all asbestos abatement permits, including associated approved plans and work place safety plan;
- e. A copy of the air sampling log and all air sampling results;
- f. A copy of the abatement asbestos abatement contractor's daily log book;
- g. Copies of all asbestos waste manifests;
- h. A copy of all Project Monitor's Reports (ACP-15).
- i. A copy of each ATR-1 Form completed for the asbestos project (if required).
- j. A copy of each Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout Report (ACP-20) if required.
- k. A copy of the Asbestos Project Completion Form (ACP-21).

### 1.13 PROTECTION OF FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT

Cover all furniture and equipment that cannot be removed from Work Areas. Movable furniture and equipment will be removed from Work Areas by the Asbestos abatement contractor prior to start of work. At the conclusion of the work (after final air testing), the Asbestos abatement contractor will remove all plastic covering on walls, floors, furniture, equipment and reinstall furniture and equipment. He shall remove and store all sheaths, curtains and drapes, and reinstall same following final clean up.

1.14 UTILITIES

A. General:

All temporary facilities shall be subject to the approval of the Commissioner. Prior to starting work at any site, locations and/or sketches (if required) of temporary facilities must be submitted to the Construction Project Manager for the required approval.

B. Water:

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all water needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in buildings under their jurisdiction. However, it is the responsibility of the Asbestos abatement contractor to ensure that hot water is provided for showering in the decontamination unit. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall furnish, install and maintain any needed equipment to meet these requirements at his own expense.

C. Electricity:

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all electricity needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in a building, under their jurisdiction. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for routing the electric power to the abatement Work Area.

All temporary lighting and temporary electrical service for Work Area shall be in weatherproof enclosures and be ground fault protected.

D. In leased spaces, arrangements for water supplies and electricity must be made with the landlord. However, all such arrangements must be made through and are subject to approval of the Department of Design and Construction. Utilities will be provided at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor. However, it is the Asbestos abatement contractor's (or the General contractor's) responsibility to furnish and install a suitable distribution system to the Work Area. This system will be provided at no cost to the City.

1.15 FEES

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for any and all fees or charges imposed by Local, State or Federal Law, Rule and Regulation applicable to the work specified herein, including fees or charges which may be imposed subsequent to the date of the Bid opening.

END OF SECTION

**SPECIFICATIONS FOR  
ABATEMENT OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING  
MATERIALS ASSOCIATED WITH**

**ISSUE PROJECT ROOM  
RENOVATION  
110 LIVINGSTON STREET  
BROOKLYN, NY 11201**

Prepared For:



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

Program Management Division  
Office of Environmental and Geotechnical Services  
30-30 Thomson Avenue, 3<sup>rd</sup> Floor  
Long Island City, New York 11101

Prepared By:



**Louis Berger**

48 Wall Street, 16th Floor  
New York, New York 10005

Final Date: 04/01/2016

DDC Capital Project Number: PV028-ISS  
Work Order Letter Number: 11203-LBA-4-10253  
Task No. 11203  
LBA's Project Number: 3001040.076  
Contract Registration Number: 20151405733  
Contract Registration Date: October 7, 2014

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### SECTION 028213 – ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

<b>PART 1 – GENERAL</b> .....	<b>1</b>
1.01 DESCRIPTION .....	1
1.02 SCOPE OF WORK .....	1
1.03 QUALIFICATIONS OF OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT .....	5
1.04 WORK BY OTHERS .....	7
1.05 DEFINITIONS .....	7
1.06 STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES .....	18
1.07 NOTIFICATIONS, PERMITS, WARNING SIGNS, LABELS, AND POSTERS .....	23
1.08 EMERGENCY PRECAUTIONS .....	26
1.09 SUBMITTALS .....	26
1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE .....	31
1.11 CITY/ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES .....	34
1.12 USE OF BUILDING FACILITIES .....	36
1.13 USE OF THE PREMISES .....	38
1.14 PROTECTION AND DAMAGE .....	39
1.15 RESPIRATORY PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS .....	40
1.16 PROTECTIVE CLOTHING .....	44
1.17 AIR MONITORING - ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR .....	45
1.18 THIRD PARTY MONITORING AND LABORATORY .....	47
1.19 TAMPERING WITH TEST EQUIPMENT .....	55
1.20 GUARANTEE .....	55
<b>PART 2 – PRODUCTS</b> .....	<b>55</b>
2.01 MATERIAL HANDLING .....	55
2.02 MATERIALS .....	55
2.03 TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT .....	57
2.04 CLEANING .....	60
<b>PART 3 – EXECUTION</b> .....	<b>63</b>
3.01 WORKER DECONTAMINATION FACILITY .....	63
3.02 WASTE DECONTAMINATION FACILITY .....	65
3.03 PERSONNEL ENTRANCE AND DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES FOR REMOVAL OPERATIONS UTILIZING REMOTE DECONTAMINATION FACILITIES .....	67
3.04 PERSONNEL ENTRANCE AND DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES FOR REMOVAL OPERATIONS UTILIZING ATTACHED DECONTAMINATION FACILITIES .....	67
3.05 MAINTENANCE OF DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE FACILITIES AND BARRIERS .....	68
3.06 MODIFICATIONS TO HVAC SYSTEMS .....	69
3.07 LOCKOUT OF HVAC SYSTEMS, ELECTRIC POWER, AND ACTIVE BOILERS ...	72

<b>PART 4 – PREPARATION OF WORK AREA AND REMOVAL PROCEDURES.....</b>	<b>72</b>
4.01 REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIAL .....	72
4.02 MAINTENANCE OF CONTAINED WORK AREA AND DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE SYSTEMS .....	88
<b>PART 5 – ASBESTOS WASTE MANAGEMENT.....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.01 ACM WASTE REQUIREMENTS .....	89
<b>PART 6 – ACCEPTANCE .....</b>	<b>96</b>
6.01 ACCEPTANCE.....	96

**APPENDIX A – ASBESTOS ABATEMENT DRAWINGS**

H001.00 – GENERAL NOTES

H002.00 – GROUND FLOOR PARTIAL PLAN

**APPENDIX B – REFERENCE ATTACHMENTS**

SECTION 220013 – PLUMBING CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE  
FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

SECTION 230013 – HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE  
FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

SECTION 260013 – ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE  
FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

SECTION 028013 – GENERAL CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE  
FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

## SECTION 028213

### ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

#### PART 1 – GENERAL

##### 1.01 DESCRIPTION

- A. The Contract Documents are as defined in the "Agreement". The General Conditions shall apply to all Work of this Section.
- B. Work specified herein shall be the removal and disposal of Asbestos-Containing Materials (ACM) and asbestos-contaminated materials from designated areas of the ISSUE Project Room, located at 110 Livingston Street, Brooklyn, NY 11201.
- C. The following documents were reviewed and utilized to generate this abatement design specification which serves to locate and quantify the amount of ACM, and asbestos contaminated material, to be abated in support of this project.
  - 1. Set of 100% CD Submission Drawings titled "ISSUE Project Room Renovation," dated 01/20/16, prepared by Work Architecture Company, PLLC;
  - 2. Asbestos survey reports prepared by Louis Berger & Assoc., P.C. (LBA) dated 03/24/16.
- D. The phasing and scheduling of work for this project shall be coordinated with and approved by the Construction Project Manager and Facility Manager. The Construction Project Manager and Facility Manager will make the final determination on all issues under this Contract covered by this Specification.

##### 1.02 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The asbestos abatement contractor is to provide all labor, materials, equipment, services, testing, appurtenances, permits and agreements necessary to perform the work required for the abatement of ACM as required by these contract documents. All work shall be performed in accordance with this Specification, EPA regulations, OSHA regulations, New York City Local Law 70, Title 15, Chapter 1 RCNY, New York State Industrial Code 56, NIOSH recommendations, and any other applicable federal, state or local government regulations. Whenever there is a conflict or overlap of the above references, the most stringent provisions are applicable.
- B. The intent of this Specification section is to ensure that the asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the following:
  - 1. Abatement of all ACM.
  - 2. Cleaning and decontamination of the entire affected area.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

3. Demolition that may be required to access ACM in each area, Asbestos abatement contractor shall dispose of all debris associated with demolition activities as ACM waste.
  4. Removal and disposal of all ACM found within these areas such as sink caulking, white; exterior door frame caulking, grey and assumed duct insulation.
  5. Provide all scaffolding, platform installation, equipment, tools, transportation and any other equipment required and/or necessary to complete all work described in the Contract Documents.
  6. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for and shall include any and all fees or charges imposed by Local, State or Federal Law, Rule or Regulation applicable to the work specified herein, including fees or charges which may be imposed subsequent to the work.
  7. Prior to destructive demolition activities, the DDC may elect to collect bulk samples of assumed asbestos-containing materials and analyze the bulk samples for asbestos content.
- C. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall perform the following work as described below and indicated on the drawings. The drawings are only a diagrammatic representation of the Work Areas and do not constitute the actual quantities of material. Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the confirmation of the actual total quantities of the Work.
1. **Drawing H002.00: Ground Floor Partial Plan**
    - a. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing exterior door frame caulking, grey within **Work Area 1**. Asbestos-containing exterior door frame caulking, grey shall be removed utilizing NYCDEP Title 15, Chapter 1 § 1-109 Abatement from Vertical Exterior Surfaces.
    - b. Remove and dispose of asbestos-containing sink caulking, white within **Work Area 2**. Asbestos-containing sink caulking, white shall be removed utilizing NYCDEP Title 15, Chapter 1, § 1-106 Tent Containment Procedures.
    - c. Remove and dispose of assumed asbestos-containing duct insulation within **Work Area 3**. Assumed asbestos-containing duct insulation shall be removed utilizing NYCDEP Title 15, Chapter 1, § 1-106 Tent Containment Procedures.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

Work Area	Removal Procedure	Approximate Square Feet (Sq. Ft.)	Approximate Linear Feet (Ln. Ft.)
1	NYC DEP Section § 1-109 Abatement from Vertical Exterior Surfaces	2 Sq. Ft. of Exterior Door Frame Caulking, Grey (24 Ln. Ft. within 1 Masonry Opening)	-
2	NYCDEP Section § 1-106 Tent Containment Procedures	1 Sq. Ft. (or 10 Ln. Ft.) of Sink Caulking, White	-
3	NYCDEP Section § 1-106 Tent Containment Procedures	30 Sq. Ft. of Duct Insulation (Assumed ACM)	-

- D. The facility is under the jurisdiction of the New York City Department of Cultural Affairs. The asbestos abatement contractor shall perform the work of this contract in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the building.
- E. Asbestos abatement contractor's attention is directed to the fact that patents cover certain methods of asbestos abatement indicated in the specifications. To date, patents have been issued with regard to negative pressure enclosures or negative or reduced pressure and glove-bag.
- F. Asbestos abatement contractor shall be solely responsible for and shall hold the City of New York Department of Design and Construction and the City harmless from, any and all damages, losses and expenses resulting from any infringement by Asbestos abatement contractor of any patent, including but not limited to the patents described above, used by Asbestos abatement contractor during performance of this agreement.
- G. Prior to starting, the asbestos abatement contractor must notify the Commissioner of the City of New York Department of Design and Construction if he anticipates any difficulty in performing the work as directed and required by these Specifications. Asbestos abatement contractor shall be required to attend an on-site job meeting with the Construction Project Manager prior to start of work to examine conditions of the site for removal and plan the sequence for removal operations.
- H. The asbestos abatement contractor shall retain a certified Project Designer for the preparation of an Asbestos Variance Application (ACP-9), if required.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- I. The asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for preparing and submitting all filings, notifications, amendments and variances, etc. required by all City, State and Federal regulatory agencies having jurisdiction, at no additional cost to the NYC DDC.
- J. The general contractor shall retain a Registered Design Professional (person licensed and registered to practice the professions of architecture or engineering under the Education Law of the State of New York) to prepare a Work Place Safety Plan (WPSP), if required.
- K. The general contractor shall retain a Registered Design Professional (person licensed and registered to practice the professions of architecture or engineering under the Education Law of the State of New York) to perform final inspections required pursuant to Title 28 of the Administrative Code, including but not limited to special inspections required under Chapter 17 of the Building Code. Such special inspections and A-TR1 forms shall be completed by the Registered Design professional.
- L. For coordination with other Asbestos abatement contractors, see the General Conditions governing all Contracts.
- M. Related Asbestos Removal Work Under Other Contracts:
  - 1. Each asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for the removal of incidental asbestos not identified in this section and found prior to or during the Work.
  - 2. Incidental asbestos is defined as ACM that is discovered during the course of their work that must be abated to enable them to perform the work of their Contract.
- N. Work Hours:
  - 1. The asbestos abatement contractor shall establish his work schedule in a way that avoids interference or conflict with the normal functioning of the facility. Work in the evenings shall be done at no additional cost to the City.
  - 2. All work shall be done during regular working hours unless the Asbestos abatement contractor requests authorization to work other than regular working hours and such authorization is granted by the Commissioner (Regular working hours are those during which any given facility in which work is to be done is customarily open and functioning). If such work schedule is authorized by the Commissioner the work shall be done at no additional cost to the City.
  - 3. The order of phases and start dates associated with each will be determined by the Construction Project Manager.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

4. Asbestos abatement contractor shall be required to schedule waste transfer during evening hours, when activity within the facility is at a minimum. Evening hours are defined as 6:00 p.m. to 6:00 a.m. Waste transfer must be approved by the Construction Project Manager and Facility Manager.
- O. The following conditions shall apply to all temporary shutdowns of existing services:
1. All temporary lighting and temporary electrical services for use in the Work Area shall be in weather proof enclosures and be ground fault protected and:
  2. Shall be performed at no additional charge to the City.
  3. Shall be performed at times not interfering with the other activities in the building.
  4. Shall be performed only with written consent from the Commissioner and the Facility Manager.
  5. Shall be made through written request to the Commissioner at least 10 days in advance with complete written description of the work to be performed.
- P. Stages of Asbestos Removal Work:
- a. The asbestos abatement contractor will be required to perform the work and it is the intent of this Specification to remove all asbestos containing and asbestos contaminated materials from the Work Area. The asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for verifying all quantities of materials listed.
- Q. Certain equipment in the Work Area may need to remain operational during removal. Therefore, the removal of ACM from this equipment shall be performed as the last removal activities within the Work Area. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall coordinate the scheduling for the removal of ACM on functioning equipment with the Construction Project Manager.

### 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR

- A. Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements set forth in subparagraphs (1) through (5) below. The asbestos abatement contractor must submit documentation demonstrating compliance with all listed requirements. Such documentation shall include without limitation, all required licenses, certificates, and documentation.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

1. The asbestos abatement contractor must, whether an individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture or other legal entity, demonstrate for the three year period prior to the work, that it has been licensed by the New York State Department of Labor, as an "Asbestos Abatement Contractor".
  2. The asbestos abatement contractor must, for the three year period prior to the work, have been in the business of providing asbestos abatement services as a routine part of its daily operations.
  3. The asbestos abatement contractor proposing to do asbestos abatement work must be thoroughly experienced in such work and must provide evidence of having successfully performed and completed in a timely fashion at least five (5) asbestos abatement projects of similar size and complexity. The aggregate cost of these projects must be at least \$1,000,000 in each of the three years.
  4. For each project submitted to meet the experience requirements set forth above, the asbestos abatement contractor must submit the following information for the project; name and location of the project; name title and telephone number of the owner or the owner's representative who is familiar with the asbestos abatement contractor's work; brief description of the work completed as a prime or sub-asbestos abatement contractor; amount of contract or subcontract and the date of completion.
  5. The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate that it has the financial resources, supervisory personnel and equipment necessary to carry out the work and to comply with the required performance schedule, taking into consideration other business commitments. The asbestos abatement contractor must submit such documentation as may be required by the Department of Design and Construction to demonstrate that it has the requisite capacity to perform the required services of this contract.
- B. Throughout the specifications, reference is made to codes and standards which establish qualities and types of workmanship and materials, and which establish methods for testing and reporting on the pertinent characteristics thereof. Provide materials or workmanship that meet or exceed the specifically named codes or standards where required by these specifications.
- C. Site Investigation: Asbestos abatement contractor shall inspect all the specifications and related drawings, and will investigate and confirm the site conditions affecting the work, including, but not limited to:
1. Physical considerations and conditions of both the material and structure. These considerations include any obstacles or obstructions encountered in accessing or removing the material.
  2. Handling, storage, transportation and disposal of the material.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

3. Availability of qualified and skilled labor.
4. Availability of utilities.
5. Exact quantities of all materials to be disturbed and/or removed.

### 1.04 WORK BY OTHERS

The City reserves the right during the term of this Contract to have work performed on asbestos abatement projects by other asbestos abatement contractors as the situation warrants.

### 1.05 DEFINITIONS

- A. General Explanation: Certain terms used in this Specification Section are defined below. Definitions and explanations of this Specification Section are not necessarily complete or exclusive, but are general for the Work to the extent they are not stated more explicitly in another element of the Contract Documents.
- B. Definitions in General Use:
  1. Approve: Where used in conjunction with Engineer's response to submittals, requests, applications, inquiries, reports and claims by Asbestos abatement contractor, the meaning of term "approved" will be held to limitations of Engineer's responsibilities and duties as specified in Contract Documents. In no case will "approval" by Engineer be interpreted as a release of Asbestos abatement contractor from responsibilities to fulfill requirements of Contract Documents.
  2. Directed, Requested, etc.: Where not otherwise explained, terms such as "directed," "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," "accepted," and "permitted" mean "directed by Engineer," "requested by Engineer," and similar phrases. However, no such implied meaning will be interpreted to extend Engineer's responsibility into Asbestos abatement contractor's responsibility for construction supervision.
  3. Furnish: Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, term "furnish" is used to mean supply and deliver to project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, etc., as applicable in each instance.
  4. Indicated: The term "indicated" is a cross-reference to graphic representations, notes or schedules on Drawings, to other paragraphs or schedules in the Specifications, and to similar means of recording requirements in Contract Documents. Where terms such as "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" are used in lieu of "indicated," it is for

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

purpose of helping reader locate cross-reference, and no limitation of location is intended except as specifically noted.

5. **Install:** Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, term "install" is used to describe operations at Project site including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning and similar operations, as applicable in each instance.
6. **Installer:** The term "installer" is defined as the entity (person or firm) engaged by the asbestos abatement contractor, or its sub-asbestos abatement contractor for performance of a particular unit of work at Project site, including installation, erection, application and similar required operations. It is a general requirement that such entities (installers) be expert in operations they are engaged to perform.
7. **Provide:** Except as otherwise defined in greater detail, term "provide" means furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use, as applicable in each instance.
8. **Third-Party Air Monitor:** The term "Third-Party Air Monitor" is defined as an entity engaged by City and Construction Project Manager to perform specific inspections or tests of the work, either at Project site or elsewhere; and to report and (if required) interpret results of those inspections or tests.

### C. Definitions Relative to Asbestos Abatement:

1. **Abatement:** Any and all procedures physically taken to control fiber release from asbestos-containing materials. This includes removal, encapsulation, enclosure, cleanup and repair.
2. **Adequately Wet:** The complete penetration of a material with amended water to prevent the release of particulates. If visible emissions are observed coming from asbestos-containing material, then the material has not been adequately wetted. However, the absence of visible emissions is not evidence of being adequately wet. ACM must be fully penetrated with the wetting agent in order to be considered adequately wet. If the ACM being abated is resistant to amended water penetration, wetting agent shall be applied to the material prior to and during removal as necessary to minimize fiber release.
3. **Aggressive Sampling:** Method of sampling in which the individual collecting the air sample creates activity by the use of mechanical equipment during the sampling period to stir up settled dust and simulate activity in that area of the building.
4. **AHERA:** Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act of 1986

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

5. AIHA: American Industrial Hygiene Association.
6. Airlock: System for permitting entrance and exit while restricting air movement between a contaminated area and an uncontaminated area. It consists of two curtained doorways separated by a distance of at least three feet such that one passes through one doorway into the airlock, allowing the doorway sheeting to overlap and close off the opening before proceeding through the second doorway, thereby preventing flow-through contamination.
7. Air Sampling: Process of measuring the fiber content of a known volume of air collected during a specific period. The procedure utilized for asbestos follows the NIOSH Standard Analytical Method 7400, or the provisional transmission electron microscopy methods developed by the US EPA which is utilized for lower detection levels and specific fiber identification.
8. Ambient Air Monitoring: "Ambient air monitoring" shall mean measurement or determination of airborne asbestos fiber concentrations outside but in the general vicinity of the worksite.
9. Amended Water: Water to which a surfactant has been added.
10. ANSI: American National Standards Institute
11. Area Air Sampling: Any form of air sampling or monitoring where the sampling device is placed at some stationary location.
12. Asbestos: Any hydrated mineral silicate separable into commercially usable fibers, including but not limited to chrysotile (serpentine), amosite (cumingtonite-grunerite), crocidolite (riebeckite), tremolite, anthophyllite and actinolite.
13. Asbestos-Containing Material (ACM): Asbestos or any material containing more than one-percent asbestos.
14. Asbestos-Containing Waste Material: ACM, asbestos-contaminated objects or debris associated with asbestos abatement requiring disposal.
15. Asbestos-Contaminated Objects: Any objects which have been contaminated by asbestos or asbestos-containing material.
16. Asbestos Assessment Report: "Asbestos Assessment Report" shall mean the "Form ACP-5" form, as approved by NYCDEP, by which a NYCDEP-certified asbestos investigator certifies that a building or structure (or portion thereof) is free of ACM or the amount of ACM to be abated constitutes a minor project.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

17. **Asbestos Handler:** Individual who disturbs, removes, repairs, or encloses asbestos material. This individual shall have completed approved training course(s) and be in possession of certification issued by NYCDEP and NYSDOL.
18. **Asbestos Handler Supervisor:** Individual who supervises the handlers during an asbestos project and ensures that proper asbestos abatement procedures as well as individual safety procedures are being adhered to. This individual shall have completed approved training course(s) and be in possession of certification issued by NYCDEP and NYSDOL.
19. **Asbestos Investigator:** An individual certified by NYCDEP as having successfully demonstrated his or her ability to identify the presence of and evaluate the condition of asbestos in a building or structure.
20. **Asbestos Project:** Any form of work performed in a building or structure which will disturb (e.g., remove, enclose, encapsulate) more than 25 linear feet or more than 10 square feet of asbestos-containing material.
21. **ASTM:** American Society for Testing and Materials.
22. **Asbestos Project Notification:** The "Form ACP-7" asbestos project notification form as approved by DEP.
23. **Authorized Visitor:** Authorized visitor shall mean the building owner and his/her representative, and any representative of a regulatory or other agency having jurisdiction over the project.
24. **Building Owner:** Person in whom legal title to the premises is vested unless the premises are held in land trust, in which instance Building Owner means the person in whom beneficial title is vested.
25. **Building Materials:** Any and all manmade materials, including but not limited to interior and exterior finishes, equipment, bricks, mortar, concrete, plaster, roofing, flooring, caulking, sealants, tiles, insulation, and outdoor paving such as sidewalks, paving tiles and asphalt.
26. **Certified Industrial Hygienist (CIH):** Individual with a minimum of five years experience as an industrial hygienist and who has successfully completed both levels of the examination administered by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene and who is currently certified by that board.
27. **Certified Safety Professional (CSP):** Individual having a bachelor's degree from an accredited college or university and a minimum of four years experience as a safety professional and who has successfully completed both

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

levels of the examination administered by the Board of Certified Safety Professionals and who is currently certified by that board.

28. Chain of Custody: "Chain of Custody" shall mean the form or set of forms that document the collection and transfer of a sample.
29. City: City of New York
30. Clean Room: An uncontaminated area or room that is part of worker decontamination enclosure system with provisions for storage of workers' street clothes and protective equipment.
31. Clearance Air Monitoring: Employment of aggressive sampling techniques with a volume of air collected to determine the airborne concentration of residual fibers and shall be performed as the final abatement activity.
32. Commissioner: shall mean the head of the Agency that has entered into this contract or his/her duly authorized representative.
33. Competent Person: Shall mean the designated person as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR1926.1101.
34. Curtained Doorway: Device that consists of at least three overlapping sheets of fire retardant plastic over an existing or temporarily framed doorway. One sheet shall be secured at the top and left side, the second sheet at the top and right side, and the third sheet at the top and left side. All sheets shall have weights attached to the bottom to ensure that the sheets hang straight and maintain a seal over the doorway when not in use.
35. Decontamination Enclosure System: Series of connected rooms, separated from the Work Area and from each other by air locks, for the decontamination of workers, materials, waste containers, and equipment.
36. Demolition: The dismantling or razing of a building, including all operations incidental thereto (except for asbestos abatement activities), for which a demolition permit from the New York City Department of Buildings is required.
37. NYCDEP or DEP: The New York City Department of Environmental Protection.
38. Disturb: Any action taken which may alter, change, or stir, such as but not limited to the removal, encapsulation, enclosure or repair of asbestos-containing material.
39. DOB: The New York City Department of Buildings.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

40. Egress: A continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from any occupied portion of a building or structure to a public way. A means of egress consists of three separate and distinct parts: the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge.
41. ELAP: Environmental Laboratory Approval Program administered by the New York State Department of Health.
42. Encapsulant (sealant) or Encapsulating Agent: Liquid material which can be applied to ACM and which temporarily controls the possible release of asbestos fibers from the material either by creating a membrane over the surface (bridging encapsulant) or by penetrating into the material and binding its components together (penetrating encapsulant). A thin coat of lockdown encapsulant shall be applied to all surfaces in the work area which were not the subject of removal or abatement, including the cleaned layer of the surface barriers, but excepting sprinklers, standpipes, and other active elements of the fire suppression system.
43. Encapsulation: The coating or spraying of asbestos-containing material encapsulant. A thin coat of lockdown encapsulant shall be applied to all surfaces in the work area which were not the subject of removal or abatement, including the cleaned layer of the surface barriers, but excepting sprinklers, standpipes, and other active elements of the fire suppression system.
44. Enclosure: Construction of airtight walls and/or ceilings between ACM and the facility environment, or around surfaces coated with ACM, or any other appropriate procedure as determined by the NYCDEP which prevents the release of asbestos fibers.
45. EPA or USEPA: United States Environmental Protection Agency.
46. Equipment Room: Contaminated area or room that is part of the worker decontamination enclosure system with provisions for the storage of contaminated clothing and equipment.
47. Exit: That portion of a means of egress system which is separated from other interior spaces of a building or structure by fire-resistance-rated construction to provide a protected path of egress travel between the exit access and the exit discharge.
48. FDNY: The Fire Department of the City of New York.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

49. Fiber: An acicular single crystal or a similarity elongated polycrystalline aggregate which displays some resemblance to organic fibers by having such properties as flexibility, high aspect ratio, silky luster, axial lineation, and others, and which has attained its shape primarily through growth rather than cleavage.
50. Fixed Object: A unit of equipment, furniture, or other item in the work area which cannot be removed from the work area. Fixed objects shall include equipment, furniture, or other items that are attached, in whole or in part, to a floor, ceiling, wall, or other building structure or system or to another fixed object and cannot be reasonably removed from the work area. Fixed objects shall also include pipes and other equipment inside the work area which are not the subject of the asbestos project. Active fire suppression system components shall not be considered fixed objects.
51. Glovebag technique: shall mean a method for removing asbestos-containing material from heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) ducts, short piping runs, valves, joints, elbows, and other nonplanar surfaces. The glovebag assembly is a manufactured device consisting of a large bag (constructed of at least 6-mil transparent plastic), two inward-projecting long sleeve gloves, one inward-projecting waterwand sleeve, an internal tool pouch, and an attached, labeled receptacle for asbestos waste. The glovebag is constructed and installed in such a manner that it surrounds the object or area to be decontaminated and contains all asbestos fibers released during the removal process.
52. HEPA-Filter: High efficiency particulate air filter capable of trapping and retaining 99.97 percent of particles (asbestos fibers) greater than 0.3 micrometers mass median aerodynamic equivalent diameter.
53. HEPA vacuum equipment: "HEPA vacuum equipment" shall mean vacuuming equipment with a HEPA filter.
54. Holding Area: Chamber in the equipment decontamination enclosure located between the washroom and an uncontaminated area.
55. Homogeneous Work Area: Portion of the Work Area that contains one type of ACM and/or where one type of abatement is used.
56. Industrial Hygiene: Science and art devoted to the recognition, evaluation, and control of those environmental factors or stresses, arising in or from the work place, which may cause sickness, impaired health and well being, or significant discomfort and inefficiency among worker or among the citizens of the community.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

57. **Industrial Hygienist:** Individual having a college or university degree or degrees in Engineering, Chemistry, Physics or Medicine, or related Biological Sciences who, by virtue of special studies and training, has acquired competence in industrial hygiene. Such special studies and training must have been sufficient in all of the above cognate sciences to provide the abilities:
  - a. To recognize the environmental factors and to understand their effect on people and their well being; and
  - b. To evaluate, on the basis of experience and with the aid of quantitative measurement techniques, the magnitude of these stresses in terms of ability to impair people's health and well being; and
  - c. To prescribe methods to eliminate, control, or reduce such stresses when necessary to alleviate their efforts.
58. **Isolation Barrier:** The construction of partitions, the placement of solid materials, and the plasticizing of apertures to seal off the work place from surrounding areas and to contain asbestos fibers in the work area.
59. **Large Asbestos Project:** Asbestos project involving the disturbances (e.g., removal, enclosure, encapsulation) of 260 linear feet or more of ACM or 160 square feet or more of ACM.
60. **Log:** An official record of all activities that occurred during the project. At a minimum, the log shall identify the building owner, agent, asbestos abatement contractor, and workers, and other pertinent information including daily activities, cleanings and waste transfers, names and certificate numbers of asbestos handler supervisors and asbestos handlers; results of inspections of decontamination systems, barriers, and negative pressure ventilation equipment; summary of corrective actions and repairs; work stoppages with reason for stoppage; manometer readings at least twice per work shift; daily checks of emergency and fire exits and any unusual events.
61. **Minor Project:** A project involving the disturbance (e.g., removal, enclosure, encapsulation, repair) of 25 linear feet or less of asbestos containing material or 10 square feet or less of asbestos containing material.
62. **Movable Object:** Unit of equipment or furniture in the Work Area that can be removed from the Work Area.
63. **Negative Air Pressure Equipment:** Portable local exhaust system equipped with HEPA filtration. The system shall be capable of creating a negative pressure differential between the outside and inside of the Work Area.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

64. NESHAPS: National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants.
65. NFPA: The National Fire Protection Association.
66. NIOSH: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.
67. DEP or NYCDEP: New York City Department of Environmental Protection
68. NYSDOL: New York State Department of Labor.
69. NYSDOL ICR 56: "NYSDOL ICR 56" shall mean Part 56 of the Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York or 12 NYCRR Part 56.
70. NYSDOH: The New York State Department of Health.
71. Obstruction: The blocking of a means of egress with any temporary structure or barrier. A double layer of fire-retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting shall not be considered an obstruction when it is prominently marked as an exit with photo luminescent signage or paint and cutting tools (knife, razor) are attached to the work area side of the sheeting for use in the event that the sheeting must be cut to permit egress. A corridor shall not be considered obstructed when there is a clear path measuring at least three (3) feet wide.
72. Occupied Area: Area of the work site where abatement is not taking place and where personnel or occupants normally function or where workers are not required to use personal protective equipment.
73. OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration.
74. Outside air: "Outside air" shall mean the air outside the work place.
75. Person: Individual, partnership, company, corporation, association, firm, organization, governmental agency, administration, or department, or any other group of individuals, or any officer or employee thereof.
76. Personal Air Monitoring: Method used to determine employees' exposure to airborne asbestos fibers. The sample is collected outside the respirator in the worker's breathing zone.
77. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE): Appropriate protective clothing, gloves, eye protection, footwear, and head gear.
78. Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM): The measurement protocol for the assessment of the fiber content of air. (NIOSH Method 7400).

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

79. Physician: Person licensed or otherwise authorized under Article 131 Section 65.22 of the New York State Education Law.
80. Plasticize: To cover floors and walls with fire retardant plastic sheeting as herein specified or by using spray plastics as acceptable to the Department.
81. Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM): The measurement protocol for the assessment of the asbestos content of bulk materials. (Interim Method for the Determination of Asbestiform Materials in Bulk Insulation Samples- 40 CFR Part 763, Subpart F, Appendix A as amended on September 1, 1982)
82. Project Designer: A person who holds a valid Project Designer Certificate issued by the New York State Department of Labor.
83. Project Monitor: A person who holds a valid Project Monitor Certificate issued by the New York State Department of Labor.
84. Qualitative Fit Test: Individual test subject's responding (either voluntarily or involuntarily) to a chemical challenge outside the respirator face-piece. Acceptable methods include irritant smoke test, odorous vapor test, and taste test.
85. Quantitative Fit Test: Exposing the respiratory wearer to a test atmosphere containing an easily detectable, nontoxic aerosol, vapor or gas as the test agent. Instrumentation, which samples the test atmosphere and the air inside the face-piece of the respirator, is used to measure quantitatively the leakage into the respirator. There are a number of test atmospheres, test agents, and exercises to perform during the test.
86. Registered Design Professional: A person licensed and registered to practice the professions of architecture or engineering under the Education Law of the State of New York.
87. Removal: Stripping of any asbestos- containing materials from surfaces or components of a facility or taking out structural components in accordance with 40 CFR 61 Subparts A and M.
88. Renovation: An addition or alteration or change or modification of a building or the service equipment thereof, that is not classified as an ordinary repair as defined in §27-125 of the Administrative Code of the City of New York.
89. Repair: Corrective action using specified work practices (e.g., glovebag, plastic tent procedures, etc.) to minimize the likelihood of fiber release from minimally damaged areas of ACM.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

90. Replacement material: Any material used to replace ACM that contains less than .01 percent asbestos.
91. Shift: A worker's, or simultaneous group of workers', complete daily term of work.
92. Shower Room: Room between the clean room and the equipment room in the worker decontamination enclosure with hot and cold running water controllable at the tap and arranged for complete showering during decontamination.
93. Small Asbestos Project: Asbestos project involving the disturbance (e.g., removal, enclosure, encapsulation) of more than 25 and less than 260 linear feet of ACM or more than ten and less than 160 square feet of ACM.
94. Staging Area: Work Area near the waste transfer airlock where containerized asbestos waste has been placed prior to removal from the Work Area.
95. Strip: To remove asbestos materials from any part of the facility.
96. Structural Member: Load-supporting member of a facility, such as beams and load-supporting walls, or any non-load-supporting member, such as ceiling and non-load-supporting walls.
97. Surface barriers: The plasticizing of walls, floors, and fixed objects within the work area to prevent contamination from subsequent work.
98. Surfactant: Chemical wetting agent added to water to improve penetration.
99. Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM): The measurement protocol for the assessment of the asbestos fiber content of air. Interim Transmission Electron Microscopy Analytical Methods-40 CFR Part 763, Subpart E, Appendix A.
100. Visible Emissions: Emissions containing particulate material that are visually detectable without the aid of instruments.
101. Washroom: Room between the Work Area and the holding area in the equipment decontamination enclosure system where equipment and waste containers are wet cleaned and/or HEPA-vacuumed prior to disposal.
102. Waste decontamination enclosure system: "Waste decontamination enclosure system" shall mean the decontamination enclosure system designated for the controlled transfer of materials and equipment, consisting of a washroom and a holding area.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

103. Wet Cleaning: "Wet cleaning" shall mean the removal of asbestos fibers from building surfaces and objects by using cloths, mops, or other cleaning tools which have been dampened with water.
104. Wet methods: "Wet methods" shall mean the use of amended water or removal encapsulants to minimize the generation of fibers during ACM disturbance.
105. Work Area: Designated rooms, spaces, or areas of the building or structure where asbestos abatement activities take(s) place.
106. Worker Decontamination Enclosure System: Portion of a decontamination enclosure system designed for controlled passage of workers and authorized visitors, consisting of a clean room, a shower room, and an equipment room separated from each other and from the Work Area by airlocks and curtained doorways.
107. Work Place: The work area and the decontamination enclosure system(s).
108. Work Place Safety Plan: Construction documents prepared by a registered design professional and submitted for review by DEP in order to obtain an asbestos abatement permit. Such plan shall include, but not be limited to, plans, sections, and details of the work area clearly showing the extent, sequence, and means and methods by which the work is to be performed.
109. Work Site: Premises where abatement activity is being performed. May be composed of one or more Work Areas.

### 1.06 STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES

- A. Develop and implement a written standard procedure for abatement work to ensure maximum protection and safeguard from asbestos exposure of the workers, visitors, employees, public, and environment.

#### B. TELEPHONE PAGING DEVICE

The asbestos abatement contractor or his authorized representative shall, at all times during the normal workday or during periods of overtime work under this Contract, carry a digital telephone paging device ("Beeper") and/or cellular telephones which can be activated by a telephone number in the 212 or 646 or 718 or 917 or 929 area code. He shall supply the Department of Design and Construction with the activation number for the device and he is liable to respond back to the calls from DDC within the next one (1) hour period after he receives calls from DDC. The cost to the asbestos abatement contractor for this device and all charges accruing thereto is deemed included in the work.

- C. The standard operating procedure shall ensure:

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

1. Tight security from unauthorized entry into the workspace.
  2. Restriction of asbestos abatement contractor's personnel to the immediate Work Area and access/egress routes.
  3. Donning of proper protective clothing and respiratory protection prior to entering the Work Area.
  4. Safe work practices in the work place, including provisions for inter-room communications, exclusion of eating, drinking, smoking, or in any way breaking the respiratory protection.
  5. Proper exit practices from the work space to the outside through the showering and decontamination facilities.
  6. Removing asbestos in a way that minimizes release of fibers.
  7. Packing, labeling, loading, transporting, and disposing of contaminated material in a way that minimizes exposure and contamination.
  8. Emergency evacuation procedures, for medical or safety situations, to minimize the potential exposure to airborne asbestos fibers for emergency personnel, building occupants, and building environment.
  9. Safety from accidents in the workspace, especially from electrical shocks, fall hazards associated with scaffolding, slippery surfaces, and entanglements in loose hoses and equipment.
  10. Provisions for effective supervision, air monitoring and personnel monitoring for exposure during the work.
  11. Engineering controls that minimize exposure to fibers within the workspace.
  12. The asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a 24-hour fire watch throughout the entire term of the project, to protect against fire and unauthorized entry into the workspace. Fire watch shall be performed by an individual who is a certified asbestos worker capable of entering the Work Area for regular inspections.
- D. Provide an Asbestos Handler Supervisor to provide continuous supervision of all work, and to be responsible for the following:
1. Ensure that individuals are using proper personal protective equipment, are trained in its use and hold valid NYCDEP and NYSDOL Asbestos Handler certificates

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. Maintain entry log records and ensure that they are recorded in accordance with the provisions of Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY and NYSDOL ICR 56.
3. Surveillance of the Work Areas at a minimum of once per work shift or as required by Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY and NYSDOL ICR 56 -7.3, to ensure the integrity of work place isolation, negative pressure equipment and workers personal protective equipment is not torn or ripped and that respiratory protection is worn at all times.
4. Ensure that sufficient personal protective equipment is stored in the clean room.
5. Take precautions to prevent heat stress. Precautions include, but are not limited to, selecting lightweight protective clothing, reducing the work rate, and providing adequate fluid breaks.
6. Perform work area inspection with project monitor prior to the commencement of final clearance air monitoring.
7. The asbestos abatement contractor shall retain the asbestos handler supervisor to perform a visual inspection prior to the post-abatement clearance air monitoring to confirm that all containerized waste has been removed from work and holding areas and there is no visible ACM debris or residue on or about all abated surfaces.

### E. ENGINEERING CONTROLS

1. The 8-hour time weighted average airborne concentration of fibers to which any passerby may be exposed shall not exceed 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter of air when fibers have a physical dimension longer than 5 micrometers as determined by the method prescribed in these Specifications.
2. All asbestos projects shall utilize negative pressure ventilation equipment.
  - a. The asbestos abatement contractor shall use a manometer to document the pressure differential. The asbestos abatement contractor shall install and make the manometer operational once the negative pressure has been established in the work area. Magnahelic manometers shall be calibrated at least every six months and a copy of the current calibration certification shall be available at the work site.
3. Negative pressure ventilation equipment shall be installed and operated to provide at least one air change in the work area every 15 minutes. Where there are no floor or wall barriers because floor or wall material is being abated, there shall be at least one air change in the work area every ten minutes.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

4. The negative pressure ventilation equipment shall operate continuously, 24 hours a day, from the establishment of isolation barriers through successful clearance air monitoring. If such equipment shuts off, adjacent areas shall be monitored for asbestos fibers.
- 
5. A static negative air pressure of 0.02 inches (minimum) water column shall be maintained at all times in the work place during abatement to ensure that contaminated air in the Work Area does not filter back to uncontaminated areas.
  6. If the contaminated area of an asbestos project covers the entire floor of the affected building, or an area greater than 15,000 square feet on any given floor, the installation of a negative air cut off switch or switches shall be required at a single location outside the work place, such as inside a stairwell, or at a secured location in the ground floor lobby when conditions warrant. The required switch or switches shall be installed by a licensed electrician pursuant to a permit issued by the Department of Buildings. If negative pressure ventilation equipment is used on multiple floors, the cut off switch shall be able to turn off the equipment on all floors.
  7. On loss of negative pressure or electric power to the negative pressure ventilating units, abatement shall stop immediately and shall not resume until power is restored and negative pressure ventilation equipment is operating again.
  8. Negative pressure ventilation equipment shall be exhausted to the outside of the building away from occupied areas.
    - a. All openings (including but not limited to operable windows, doors, vents, air intakes or exhausts of any mechanical devices) less than 15 feet from the exterior exhaust duct termination location shall be plasticized with two layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, or a second negative pressure ventilation unit with the primary unit's capacity shall be connected in series prior to exhausting to the outside.
    - b. Negative pressure ventilation equipment shall exhaust away from areas accessible to the public.
    - c. All ducting shall be sealed and braced or supported to maintain airtight joints. Ducts shall be reinforced and shall be installed so as to prevent breakage. Damage to ducts must be repaired immediately.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

9. Where ducting to the outside is not possible, a second negative pressure ventilation unit compatible with the primary unit's capacity shall be connected in series. The area receiving the exhaust shall have sufficient, non-recycling exhaust capacity to the outside of the structure.
10. In the event that there is a failure of the containment system or a breach in the Isolation Barriers, all abatement work will cease and the asbestos abatement contractor will immediately correct the condition. Abatement work will not resume until the Work Area has been smoke tested by the third party laboratory and approved by the Construction Project Manager.

### F. LOCKDOWN ENCAPSULATION PROCEDURES

1. The following procedures shall be followed to seal in non-visible residue while conducting lockdown encapsulation on all surfaces from which ACM has not been removed:
  - a. Only encapsulants rated as acceptable or marginally acceptable on the basis of Battelle Columbus Laboratory test procedures and rating requirements developed under the 1978 USEPA Contract shall be used for lockdown encapsulation.
  - b. The encapsulant solvent or vehicle shall not contain a volatile hydrocarbon unless reviewed and approved by DEP.
  - c. Latex paint with solids content greater than 15 percent shall be considered a lockdown sealant for coating all non-metallic surfaces.
  - d. Encapsulants shall be applied using airless spray equipment. Spraying is to occur at the lowest pressure range possible to minimize fiber release from encapsulant impact at the surface. It shall be applied with a consistent horizontal or vertical motion.
  - e. The cleaned layer of the surface barriers shall be removed from walls and floors.

The isolation barriers shall remain in place throughout cleanup. Decontamination enclosure systems shall remain in place and be utilized. A thin coat of lockdown encapsulant shall be applied to all surfaces in the work area which were not the subject of removal or abatement, including the cleaned layer of the surface barriers, but excepting sprinklers, standpipes, and other active elements of the fire suppression system.

1.07 NOTIFICATIONS, PERMITS, WARNING SIGNS, LABELS, AND POSTERS

- A. The asbestos abatement contractor shall submit an Asbestos Project Notification (ACP-7) to the NYCDEP listing each work area within the building separately one week in advance of the start of work.
- 
- B. The registered design professional shall obtain an asbestos abatement permit authorizing the performance of construction work as required for asbestos projects involving one or more of the following activities:
1. Obstruction of an exit door leading to an exit stair or the exterior of the building;
  2. Obstruction of an exterior fire escape or access to that fire escape;
  3. Obstruction of a fire-rated corridor leading to an exit door;
  4. Removal of handrails in an exit stair or ramp;
  5. Removal or dismantling of any fire alarm system component including any fire alarm-initiating device (e.g., smoke detectors, manual pull station);
  6. Removal or dismantling of any exit sign or any component of the exit lighting system, including photo luminescent exit path markings;
  7. Removal or dismantling of any part of a sprinkler system including piping or sprinkler heads;
  8. Removal or dismantling of any part of a standpipe system including fire pumps or valves;
  9. Removal of any non-load bearing / non-fire-rated wall (greater than 45 square feet or 50 percent of a given wall);
  10. Any plumbing work other than the repair or replacement of plumbing fixtures;
  11. Removal of any fire-resistance rated portions of a wall, ceiling, floor, door, corridor, partition, or structural element enclosure including spray-on fire resistance rated materials;
  12. Removal of any fire damper, smoke damper, fire stopping material, fire blocking, or draft stopping within fire-resistance rated assemblies or within concealed spaces;
  13. Any work that otherwise requires a permit from the DOB (full demolitions, alterations, renovations, modifications or plumbing work).

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- C. The asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a floor plan showing the areas of the building under abatement and the location of all fire exits in said areas. It shall be prominently posted in the building lobby or comparable location, along with a notice stating the location within the building of the negative air cutoff switch, if applicable.
- D. The general contractor shall submit, as required, an asbestos abatement permit due to one or more of the activities listed in 1.07 (B) (1-8) and (B) (13) of this specification. The asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for submitting, with an asbestos project notification, a work place safety plan (WPSP) and any other applicable construction documents. These documents must be prepared by a registered design professional.
- E. A WPSP is not required for projects requiring an asbestos abatement permit due to one or more of the activities listed in 1.07 (B) (9-12) of this specification. The asbestos abatement contractor shall submit, together with the asbestos project notification, all applicable asbestos abatement permit construction documents.
- F. The general contractor shall retain a Registered Design Professional to perform the inspections required pursuant to Title 28 of the Administrative Code, including but not limited to special inspections required by Chapter 17 of the Building Code, as follows:
1. A final inspection shall be performed by a registered design professional retained by the asbestos abatement contractor after all work authorized by the asbestos abatement permit is completed. The person performing the inspection shall note all failures to comply with the provisions of the Building Code or approved asbestos abatement permit and shall promptly notify the owner in writing. All defects noted in such inspection shall be corrected. The final inspection report shall either:
    - a. Confirm:
      - (1) That the construction work is complete, including the reinstallation or reactivation of any building fire safety or life safety component.
      - (2) That any defects previously noted have been corrected.
      - (3) That all required inspections were performed.
      - (4) That the work is in substantial compliance with the approved asbestos abatement permit construction documents, the Building Code, and other applicable laws and rules.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

b. Confirm:

- (1) That the construction work does not return the building (or portion thereof) affected by the abatement project to a condition compliant with the building code and other applicable laws and rules, but that the registered design professional has reviewed an application for asbestos abatement permit construction documents approval that has been approved by the department of buildings, and the subsequent scope of work as approved will, upon completion, render all areas affected by the asbestos project in full compliance with the building code and all applicable laws and rules.
  - (2) That any defects previously noted that are not addressed by the subsequent scope of work as approved by the department of buildings, have been corrected.
  - (3) That all required inspections that are not addressed by the subsequent scope of work as approved by the department of buildings were performed.
  - (4) That all completed work pursuant to an asbestos abatement permit is in substantial compliance with the approved asbestos abatement permit construction documents.
- G. The general contractor shall provide the final inspection reports to be filed with DEP on A-TR1 form. Records of final inspections made by registered design professionals shall be submitted to DDC as part of the close out document package.
- H. Erect bilingual (English-Spanish) warning signs around the work space and at every point of potential entry from the outside and at main entrance to building which can be viewed by the public without obstruction, in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101 (K) (Sign Specifications) and Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY. The warning signs shall be a bright color so that they will be easily noticeable. The size of the sign and the size of the lettering shall be no less than OSHA requirements.
- I. Provide the required labels for all polyethylene bags and all drums utilized to transport contaminated material to the landfill in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101 (K)(2) and by 49 CFR Parts 171 and 172 of the Department of Transportation regulations.
- J. Provide any other signs, labels, warnings, and posted instructions that are necessary to protect, inform and warn people of the hazard from asbestos exposure. Post in a prominent and convenient place for the workers a copy of the

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

latest applicable regulations from OSHA, EPA, NIOSH, State of New York and New York City and any additional items mandated for posting by the aforementioned regulations.

- K. Furnish all permits, variances and notices required to perform the Work.

### 1.08 EMERGENCY PRECAUTIONS

- A. Establish emergency and fire exits from the Work Area. The clean side of all emergency exits shall be equipped with two full sets of protective clothing and respirators at all times.
- B. Notify local medical emergency personnel, both ambulance crews and hospital emergency room staff prior to commencement of abatement operations as to the possibility of having to handle contaminated or injured workmen, and shall be advised on safe decontamination.
- C. Prepare to administer first aid to injured personnel after decontamination. Seriously injured personnel shall be treated immediately or evacuated immediately for decontamination. When an injury occurs, precautions shall be taken to reduce airborne fiber concentrations (i.e., misting of the air with water) until the injured person has been removed from the Work Area.
- D. Notify, before actual removal of the asbestos material, the local police and fire departments to the danger of entering the Work Area. Asbestos abatement contractor shall make every effort to help these agencies form plans of action should their personnel need to enter the contaminated area.

### 1.09 SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-Construction Submittals:
  - 1. Attend a pre-construction meeting scheduled by the City of New York Department of Design and Construction. This meeting shall also be attended by a designated representative of the City of New York third party air monitoring firm, facility manager and the Construction Project Manager. At this meeting, the asbestos abatement contractor shall present three copies of the following items, bound and indexed. The detailed plan of action must be submitted at least five (5) days prior to the pre-construction meeting.
    - a. Asbestos abatement contractor's scope of work, work plan and schedule.
    - b. Asbestos project notifications, approved variances and plans to Government Agencies.
    - c. Copies of Permits, clearance and licenses if required.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- d. Schedules: the asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to the Construction Project Manager a copy of the following schedules for approval. Once approved, schedules shall be maintained and updated as received. Asbestos abatement contractor shall post a copy of all schedules at the site:
  - (1) A construction schedule stating critical dates of the project including, but not limited to, mobilization, Work Area preparation, demolition, gross removal, fine cleaning, encapsulation, inspections, clearance monitoring, and phase of refinishing and final inspections. The schedule shall be updated biweekly, at a minimum.
  - (2) A schedule of staffing stating number of workers per shift per activity, name and number of supervisor(s) per shift, shifts per day, and total days to be worked.
  - (3) Submit all changes in schedule or staffing to the Construction Project Manager prior to implementation.
  - (4) A schedule of equipment to be used including numbers and types of all major equipment such as HEPA Air Filtration Units, HEPA-vacuums, airless sprayers, Water Atomizing Devices and Type "C" compressors.
- e. A written plan and shop drawings for preparation of work site and decontamination chamber.
- f. Description of protective clothing and approved respirator to be used, make, model, NIOSH approval numbers.
- g. Delineation of responsibility of work site supervision, including competent person, with names, resumes, and home telephone numbers.
- h. Explanation of decontamination sequence and isolation techniques.
- i. Description of specific equipment to be utilized, including make and model number of air filtration devices, vacuums, sprayers, etc.
- j. Description of any prepared methods, procedures, techniques, or equipment other than those specified in the Contract Documents.
- k. Explanation of the handling of asbestos contaminated wastes including EPA and NYCDEP identification numbers of Waste Hauler.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- l. Description of the final clean-up procedures to be used.
- m. Name and qualifications of asbestos abatement contractor's Air Monitor including AIHA accreditation, and proof of NIOSH PAT and NIST/NVLAP Bulk Quality Assurance Proficiency of OSHA samples for approval by the City of New York Department of Design and Construction.
- n. Written description of emergency procedures to be followed in case of injury or fire. This section must include evacuation procedures, source of medical assistance (name and telephone number) and procedures to be used for access by medical personnel (examples: first aid squad and physician). NOTE: Necessary Emergency Procedures Shall Take Priority Over All Other Requirements of These Specifications.
- o. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for encapsulants, sealants, firestopping foam, cleaners/disinfectants, spray adhesive and any and all potentially hazardous materials that may be employed on the project. No work involving the aforementioned will be allowed to proceed until MSDS are reviewed.
- p. Worker Training and Medical Surveillance: Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a list of the persons who will be employed by him in the removal work. Present evidence that workers have received proper training required by the regulations and the medical examinations required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101.
- q. Logs: Specimen copies of daily progress log, visitor's log, and disposal log.
  - (1) The asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a permanently bound log book of minimum 8-1/2" x 11" size at the entrance to the Worker and Waste Decontamination enclosure system as hereinafter specified. Log book shall contain on title page the project name, name, address and phone number of Environmental Control Representative; name, address and phone number of asbestos abatement contractor; name, address and phone number of asbestos abatement contractor and City's air testing entity; emergency numbers including, but not limited to local Fire/Rescue Department. Log book shall contain a list of personnel approved by the laboratory for entry into the Work Area.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

(2) All entries into the log shall be made in non-washable, permanent ink and such pen shall be strung to or otherwise attached to the log to prevent removal from the log-in area. Under no circumstances shall pencil entries be permitted. Any significant events occurring during the abatement project shall be entered into the log. Upon completion of the job, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a copy of the logbook containing a day-to-day record of personnel log entries countersigned by the Construction Project Manager every day.

r. Worker's Acknowledgments: Submit statements signed by each employee that the employee has received training in the proper handling of ACM, understands the health implications and risks involved; and understands the use and limitations of the respiratory equipment to be used.

B. Submit copies of the following items to the Construction Project Manager during the work:

1. Security and safety logs showing names of person entering workspace, date and time of entry and exit, record of any accident, emergency evacuation, and any other safety and/or health incident.
2. Progress logs showing the number of workers, supervisors, hours of work and tasks completed shall be submitted daily to the Construction Project Manager.
3. Floor plans indicating asbestos abatement asbestos abatement contractor's current work progress shall be submitted for review by the Construction Project Manager at weekly progress meetings.
4. All asbestos abatement contractors' air monitoring and inspection results.

C. Project Closeout Submittals:

Upon completion of the project and as a condition of acceptance, the asbestos abatement contractor shall present two copies of the following items, bound and indexed:

1. Lien Waivers from asbestos abatement contractor, Sub-asbestos abatement contractors and Suppliers,
2. Daily OSHA air monitoring results,
3. All Waste Manifests (Asbestos and Construction Debris), seals and disposal logs,

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

4. Field Sign-In/Sign-Out Logs for every shift,
5. Copies of all Building Department Forms and Permits,
6. A Letter of Compliance stating that all the work on this project was performed in accordance with the Specifications and all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations,
7. All Warranties as stated in the Specifications,
  - a. Fully executed disposal certificates and transportation manifest.
8. Project Record: The asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain a project record for all small and large asbestos projects. During the project, the project record shall be kept on site at all times. Upon completion of the project, the project record shall be maintained by the building owner. The project record shall be submitted to DDC as part of the close out documents. The project record shall consist of:
  - a. Copies of licenses of all asbestos abatement contractors involved in the project;
  - b. Copies of DEP and NYSDOL supervisor and handler certificates for all workers engaged in the project;
  - c. Copies of all project notifications and reports filed with DEP and NYSDOL for the project, with any amendments or variances;
  - d. Copies of all asbestos abatement permits, including associated approved plans and work place safety plan;
  - e. A copy of the air sampling log and all air sampling results;
  - f. A copy of the abatement asbestos abatement contractor's daily log book;
  - g. All data related to bulk sampling including the results of any asbestos surveys performed by an asbestos investigator;
  - h. Copies of all asbestos waste manifests;
  - i. A copy of all Project Monitor's Reports (ACP-15).
  - j. A copy of each ATR-1 Form completed for the asbestos project (if required).

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- k. A copy of each Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout Report (ACP-20).
  - l. A copy of the Asbestos Project Completion Form (ACP-21).
9. The asbestos abatement contractor shall submit one of the following certifications to the DOB, with a copy provided to DDC:
- a. Asbestos Project Completion Form. If an asbestos project has been performed, a copy of the asbestos project completion form issued by DEP shall be submitted to DOB, with a copy being provided to DDC, prior to the issuance of a DOB permit and to any amendment of the underlying construction document approval which increases the scope of the project to include (a) work area(s) not previously covered.
  - b. An Asbestos Project Conditional Close-out Form. If an asbestos project has been performed a copy of the asbestos project conditional close-out form issued by DEP shall be submitted to DOB, with a copy being provided to DDC, prior to the issuance of a DOB permit and to any amendment of the underlying construction document approval which increases the scope of the project to include (a) work area(s) not previously covered.

### 1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All work required for the completion of this project or called for in this Specification must be executed in a workmanlike manner by using the appropriate methods established by regulatory requirements and/or industrial standards. All workmanship or work methods are subject to review and acceptance by the Construction Project Manager. Throughout the Specification, reference is made to codes and standards which establish qualities, levels or types of workmanship which will be considered acceptable. It is the asbestos abatement contractor's responsibility to comply with these codes and standards during the execution of this work.
- B. All materials and equipment required or consumed during the work of this Contract must meet the minimum acceptable criteria established by codes and standards referenced elsewhere in this Specification. Materials and equipment must be submitted for prior approval as part of the asbestos abatement contractor's "Shop Drawings".

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- C. It is the asbestos abatement a contractor's responsibility, when so required by the Specification or upon written request from the Commissioner or his representative to furnish all required proof that workmanship, materials and/or equipment meet or exceed the codes and standards referenced. Such proof shall be in the form requested, typically a certified report or test conducted by a testing entity approved for that purpose by DDC.
- D. The asbestos abatement contractor shall furnish proof that employees working under his supervision have had instruction on the dangers of asbestos exposure, on respirator use, decontamination, and OSHA regulations. This proof shall be in the form of a notarized affidavit to the effect that the above requirements have been satisfied.
- E. The a asbestos abatement contractor will have at all times in his possession and in view at the job site the OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1910.1001, and 1926.1101 Asbestos, and Environmental Protection Agency 40 CFR, Part 61, subpart B: National Emission Standard for asbestos, asbestos stripping, work practices and disposal of asbestos waste. He shall also have one copy of NYC Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY and NYS DOL ICR 56 at the job site at all times.
- F. Familiarity with Pertinent Codes and Standards: In procuring all items used in this work, it is the a asbestos abatement contractor's responsibility to verify the detailed requirements of the specifically named codes and standards and to verify that the items procured for use in this work meet or exceed the specified requirements, and are suitable for their intended use.
- G. Rejection of Non Complying Items: The Commissioner reserves the right to reject items incorporated into the work that fail to meet the specified minimum requirements. The Commissioner further reserves the right, and without prejudice to other recourse that maybe taken, to accept non-complying items subject to an adjustment in the Contract amount as approved by the City.
- H. Applicable Regulations, Codes and Standards: Applicable standards listed in these Specifications include, but are not necessarily limited to, standards promulgated by the following agencies and organizations:
1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)  
(Successor to USASI and ASA)  
25 West 43<sup>rd</sup> Street (between 5<sup>th</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup> Avenue) 4<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, NY 10036  
212-642-4900
  2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)  
100 Bar Harbor Drive  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959  
610-832-9500

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

3. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)  
Robert A. Taft Laboratory  
4676 Columbia Pkwy  
Mailstop R12 Cincinnati, Ohio 45226  
513-841-4428
4. National Electrical Code (NEC)  
See NFPA
5. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, Massachusetts 02169-7471  
617-770-3000
6. New York City Fire Department (FDNY)  
9 Metrotech Center  
Brooklyn, NY 11201-5431  
718-999-2117
7. New York City Department of Buildings (NYC DOB)  
Enforcement Division  
280 Broadway, New York, New York 10007  
212- 566-2850
8. New York City Department of Environmental Protection (NYCDEP)  
Bureau of Environmental Compliance  
Asbestos Control Program  
59-17 Junction Boulevard, 8<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Corona, New York 11368  
718-595-3682
9. New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene (NYC DOHMH)  
Environmental Investigation  
125 Worth Street  
New York, New York 10013  
212-442-3372
10. New York State Department of Labor (NYSDOL)  
Division of Safety and Health  
Engineering Services Unit  
State Office Building Campus  
Albany, New York 12240-0010
11. New York City Department of Sanitation  
125 Worth Street, Room 714  
New York, New York 10013  
212-566-1066

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

12. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)  
Region II - Regional Office  
201 Varick Street, Room 908  
New York, New York 10014  
212-337-2378
  13. United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA or USEPA)  
Region II  
Asbestos NESHAPS Contact  
Air and Waste Management Division  
(Air Compliance Branch) – USEPA  
290 Broadway, 21<sup>st</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10007-1866  
212-637-3660
- I. Post all applicable regulations in a conspicuous place at the job site. Assure that the regulations are not altered, defaced or covered by other materials. One copy of each regulation must also be kept at the Asbestos abatement contractor's office.

### 1.11 CITY/ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The normal occupants of the Work Areas will be relocated by the City prior to the performance of the abatement work and returned there to at the conclusion of the abatement work, at no cost to the asbestos abatement contractor. However, the asbestos abatement contractor shall protect all furniture and equipment in the Work Areas in a manner as hereinafter specified. In addition, the asbestos abatement contractor shall perform the work of this Contract in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-Work Areas in the building.
- B. Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for cleaning all portable items not specifically addressed by the Facility, in the Work Areas, or dispose of same as asbestos contaminated waste.
- C. Facility to provide asbestos abatement contractor with a list of items that cannot be removed and need special attention.
- D. Facility to stop all deliveries that may be scheduled to the Work Area while work is in progress.
- E. Facilities to have authorized personnel on site at all times or supply the asbestos abatement contractor with means of contacting such personnel without unreasonable delay. Such personnel shall have access to all areas, have knowledge of electrical, and air handling equipment. Such personnel shall assist the asbestos abatement contractor in case of any power failure or breakdown to shut down air supply systems, to reset and control all protective systems such as alarms,

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

sprinklers, locks, etc. The Facility shall ensure no active air handling systems are operating within the Work Area.

- F. City will not occupy the portions of the building, in which work is being performed during the entire asbestos removal operation, including completion of clean up.
- G. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a plan for 24 hour job security both for prevention of theft and for barring entry of curious but unprotected personnel into Work Areas.
- H. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide surveillance by a fire watch and set forth procedures to be taken for the safety of building occupants in the event of an emergency, in accordance with the WSPS.
- I. Should the failure of any utility occur, the City will not be responsible to the asbestos abatement contractor for loss of time or any other expense incurred.
- J. Facility will be responsible to notify the asbestos abatement contractor of any planned electrical power shutdowns in order to ensure that there are no power interruptions in the negative air pressure systems.
- K. Asbestos abatement contractor shall remove all flammable materials from the work area and all sources of ignition (including but not limited to pilot lights) shall be extinguished.
- L. Asbestos abatement contractor shall require a competent person (as defined in OSHA 1926.1101) to perform the following functions and to be on-site continuously for the duration of the project:
  - 1. Monitor the set up of the Work Area enclosure and ensure its integrity.
  - 2. Control entry and exit into the work enclosure.
  - 3. Ensure that employees are adequately trained in the use of engineering controls, proper work practices, proper personal protective equipment and in decontamination procedures.
  - 4. Insure that employees use proper engineering controls, proper work practices, proper personal protective equipment and proper decontamination procedures.
  - 5. The competent person (as defined in OSHA1926.1101) shall check for rips and tears in work suits, and ensure that they are mended immediately or replaced.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

### 1.12 USE OF BUILDING FACILITIES

- A. City shall make available to the asbestos abatement contractor, from existing outlets and supplies, all reasonably required amounts of water and electric power at no charge.
- B. Electric power to all Work Areas shall be shut down and locked out except for electrical equipment that must remain in service. Safe temporary power and lighting shall be provided by asbestos abatement contractor in accordance with applicable codes. All power to Work Areas shall be brought in from outside the area through ground-fault interrupter circuits installed at the source. Stationary electrical equipment within the Work Area, which must remain in service, shall be adequately protected, enclosed and ventilated. The Facility will identify all electric lines that must remain in service. Asbestos abatement contractor shall protect all lines.
- C. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide, at his own expense, all electrical, water, and waste connections, tie-ins, extensions, and construction materials, supplies, etc. All water tie-ins shall be hard piped with polyethylene or copper piping. At the end of each shift, asbestos abatement contractor shall disconnect all hoses within the work zone and place in equipment room of the worker decontamination unit. Asbestos abatement contractor shall ensure positive shutoff of all water to Work Area during non-working hours.
- D. Utilities:
1. General:  
All temporary facilities required to be installed, shall be subject to the approval of the Commissioner. Prior to starting the work at any site; specify clearly the temporary locations of facilities preferably with sketches and submit the same to the Construction Project Manager for approval.
  2. Water:  
The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all water needed for construction, at no cost to the asbestos abatement contractor in buildings under their jurisdiction. All temporary plumbing or adaptations to supply the needs of the Work Area shall be installed and removed by the asbestos abatement contractor and the cost thereof included in the Lump Sum price for abatement work. Shower water for the decontamination unit shall be provided hot. Heating of water, if necessary, shall be provided by the asbestos abatement contractor.
  3. Electricity:  
The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all electricity needed for construction, at no cost to the asbestos abatement contractor in buildings under their jurisdiction. All temporary electrical work or adaptations to supply the needs of the Work Area shall be installed and

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

removed by the asbestos abatement contractor and the cost thereof included in the Lump Sum price for abatement work.

In leased spaces, arrangements for water supplies and electricity must be made with the landlord. However, all such arrangements must be made through and are subject to approval of the Department of Design and Construction. Utilities will be provided at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor. However, it is the asbestos abatement contractor's (or the General contractor's) responsibility to furnish and install a suitable distribution system to the Work Area. This system will be provided at no cost to the City.

A dedicated power supply for the negative pressure ventilating units shall be utilized. The negative air equipment shall be on a ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) protected circuit separate from the remainder of the work area temporary power circuits.

- E. Asbestos abatement contractor shall shut down and lock out all electric power to all work areas except for electrical equipment that must remain in service. Safe temporary power and lighting shall be provided in accordance with all applicable codes. Existing light sources (e.g., house lights) shall not be utilized. All power to work areas shall be brought in from outside the area through ground-fault circuit interrupter at the source.
  - 1. If electrical circuits, machinery, and other electrical systems in or passing through the work area must stay in operation due to health and safety requirements, the following precautions must be taken:
    - a. All unprotected cables, except low-voltage (less than 24 volts) communication and control system cables, panel boxes of cables and joints in live conduit that run through the work area shall be covered with three (3) independent layers of six (6) mil fire retardant polyethylene. Each layer shall be individually duct taped and sealed. All three (3) layers of polyethylene sheeting shall be left in place until satisfactory clearance air sampling results have been obtained.
    - b. Any energized circuits remaining in the work area shall be posted with a minimum two (2) inch high lettering warning sign which reads: DANGER LIVE ELECTRICAL - KEEP CLEAR. A sign shall be placed on all live covered barriers at a maximum of ten (10) foot intervals. These signs shall be posted in sufficient numbers to warn all persons authorized to enter the work area of the existence of the energized circuits.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. Any source of emergency lighting which is temporarily blocked as a result of work place preparation shall be replaced for the duration of the project by battery operated or temporary exit signs, exit lights, or photo luminescent path markings.
- F. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a separate temporary electric panel board to power asbestos abatement contractor's equipment. The Facility will designate an existing electrical source in proximity to the Work Area. Asbestos abatement contractor's licensed electrician shall provide temporary tie-in via cable, outlet boxes, junction boxes, receptacles and lights, all with ground fault interruption. At no time shall extension cords greater than 50-feet in length be allowed. All temporary electrical installation shall be in accordance with OSHA regulations. The electric shut down for power panel tie-in will be on off-hours and must be coordinated with the Facility. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to the City a specification and drawing outlining his power requirements at the pre-construction meeting.
- G. Additional electrical equipment (i.e., transformers, etc.), which is necessary due to the lack of existing power on the floor, shall be at the asbestos abatement contractor's expense.
- H. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide fire protection in accordance with all State and Local fire codes.
- I. Sprinklers, standpipes, and other fire suppression systems shall remain in service and shall not be plasticized.
- J. When temporary service lines are no longer required, they shall be removed by the asbestos abatement asbestos abatement contractor. Any parts of the permanent service lines, grounds and buildings, disturbed or damaged by the installation and/or removal of the temporary service lines, shall be restored to their original condition by the asbestos abatement asbestos abatement contractor. Senior Stationary Engineer will inspect and test all switches, controls, gauges, etc. and shall submit a list to the Construction Project Manager of any equipment damaged by the asbestos abatement asbestos abatement contractor.
- K. Asbestos abatement contractor shall supply hot shower water necessary for use in the decontamination unit.

### 1.13 USE OF THE PREMISES

- A. Asbestos abatement contractor shall confine his apparatus, the storage of materials, and supplies, and the operation of his workmen to limits established by law, ordinances, and the directions of the Construction Project Manager and the Facility. All flammable or combustible materials shall be properly stored to obviate fire and in areas approved by the Facility.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- B. Asbestos abatement contractor shall assure that no exits from the building are obstructed, that appropriate safety barriers are established to prevent access, and that Work Areas are kept neat, clean, and safe.
- C. Asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain exits from the work area or alternative exits shall be established, in accordance with section 1027 of the New York City Fire Code. Exits shall be checked at the beginning and end of each work shift against blockage or impediments to exiting.
- D. If the openings of temporary structural partitions related to abatement work areas block egress, the partition shall consist of two sheets of fire retardant 6-mil plastic, prominently marked as an exit with photo luminescent paint or signage. Cutting tools (e.g., knife, razor) shall be attached to the work area side of the sheeting for use in the event that the barrier must be cut open to allow egress.
- E. All surrounding work, fixtures, soil lines, drains, water lines, gas pipes, electrical conduit, wires, utilities, duct work railings, shrubbery, landscaping, etc. which are to remain in place shall be carefully protected and, if disturbed or damaged, shall be repaired or replaced as directed by the City, at no additional cost.
- F. All routes through the building to be used by the asbestos abatement contractor shall first be approved by the Construction Project Manager and the Facility.
- G. Attention is specifically drawn to the fact that other asbestos abatement contractors, performing the work of other Contracts, may be (or are) brought upon any of the work sites of this Contract. Therefore, the asbestos abatement contractor shall not have exclusive rights to any site of his work and shall fully cooperate and coordinate his work with the work of other asbestos abatement contractors who may be on (or are on) any site of the work of this Contract. Regulated area exempted.
- H. Temporary toilet facilities must be provided by the asbestos abatement contractor on the site. Coordinate location of facilities with Construction Project Manager. No toilet facilities will be allowed in the Work Area.

### 1.14 PROTECTION AND DAMAGE

- A. The asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to cover all furniture and equipment that cannot be removed from Work Areas. Moveable furniture and equipment will be removed from Work Areas by asbestos abatement contractor prior to start of work and returned upon successful completion of the final air testing. At the conclusion of the work (after clearance level of air testing reaches the acceptable limit), the asbestos abatement contractor will remove all plastic covering from the walls, floors, furniture, equipment and reinstall furniture and equipment in the cleaned Work Area. The asbestos abatement contractor shall remove all shades, curtains and drapes from the Work Area, and reinstall the same following the final clean up.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- B. Prior to plasticizing, the proposed work areas shall be pre-cleaned using HEPA filtered vacuum equipment and/or wet cleaning methods. Methods that raise dust, such as sweeping or vacuuming with equipment not equipped with HEPA filters, are prohibited.
- C. Use rubber tired vehicles that use non-volatile fuels for conveying material inside building and provide temporary covering, as necessary, to protect floors.
- D. No materials or debris shall be thrown from windows or doors of the building. Building waste system shall NOT be used to remove refuse.
- E. Debris shall be removed from the work site daily. Premises shall be left neat and clean after each work shift, so that work may proceed the next regular workday without interruption. Limited bag storage may take place within the Work Area when approved by the Construction Project Manager.
- F. Protect floors and walls along removal routes from damage, wear and staining with contamination control flooring. All finished surfaces to be protected with Masonite or other rigid sheathing material.
- G. A preliminary inspection for pre-existing damage shall be conducted by asbestos abatement contractor and representative of the City before commencement of the project.

### 1.15 RESPIRATORY PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Respiratory protection shall be worn by all individuals who may be exposed to asbestos fibers from the initiation of the asbestos project until all areas have successfully passed clearance air monitoring in accordance with Regulations and these Specifications.
- B. Asbestos abatement contractor shall develop and implement a written respiratory protection program with required site-specific procedures and elements. The program shall be administered by a properly trained individual. The written respiratory protection program shall include the requirements set forth in OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1910.134, at a minimum.
- C. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide workers with individually issued and marked respiratory equipment. Respiratory equipment shall be suitable for the asbestos exposure level(s) in the Work Area(s), as specified in OSHA Standards 26 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.1101, NIOSH Standard 42 CFR 84, or as more stringently specified otherwise, herein.
- D. Where respirators with disposable filter parts are employed, the asbestos abatement contractor will provide sufficient filter parts for replacement as necessary or as required by the applicable regulation.

**ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

- E. All respiratory protection shall be NIOSH approved. All respiratory protection shall be provided by asbestos abatement contractor, and used by workers in conjunction with the written respiratory protection program.
- F. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide respirators selected by an Industrial Hygienist that meet the following requirements:

**Table 1. -- Assigned Protection Factors<sup>5</sup>**

Type of Respirator <sup>1,2</sup>	Half mask	Full facepiece	Helmet/hood
1. Air-Purifying Respirator	<sup>3</sup> 10	50	.....
2. Powered Air-Purifying Respirator (PAPR)	50	1,000	<sup>4</sup> 25/1,000
3. Supplied-Air Respirator (SAR) or Airline Respirator			
• Demand mode	10	50	.....
• Continuous flow mode	50	1,000	<sup>4</sup> 25/1,000
• Pressure-demand or other positive-pressure mode	50	1,000	.....
4. Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus (SCBA)			
• Demand mode	10	50	50
• Pressure-demand or other positive-pressure mode (e.g., open/closed circuit)	.....	10,000	10,000

**Notes:**

<sup>1</sup>Employers may select respirators assigned for use in higher workplace concentrations of a hazardous substance for use at lower concentrations of that substance, or when required respirator use is independent of concentration.

<sup>2</sup>The assigned protection factors in Table 1 are only effective when the employer implements a continuing, effective respirator program as required by this section (29 CFR 1910.134), including training, fit testing, maintenance, and use requirements.

<sup>3</sup>This APF category includes filtering facepieces, and half masks with elastomeric facepieces.

<sup>4</sup>The employer must have evidence provided by the respirator manufacturer that testing of these respirators demonstrates performance at a level of protection of 1,000 or greater to receive an APF of 1,000. This level of performance can best be demonstrated by performing a WPF or SWPF study or equivalent testing. Absent such testing, all other PAPRs and SARs with helmets/hoods are to be treated as loose-fitting facepiece respirators, and receive an APF of 25.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

<sup>5</sup>These APFs do not apply to respirators used solely for escape. For escape respirators used in association with specific substances covered by 29 CFR 1910 subpart Z, employers must refer to the appropriate substance-specific standards in that subpart. Escape respirators for other IDLH atmospheres are specified by 29 CFR 1910.134 (d)(2)(ii).

### G. Selection of high efficiency filters:

1. All high efficiency filters shall have a nominal efficiency rating of 100 (99.97-percent effective) when tested against 0.3-micrometer monodisperse diethyl-hexyl phthalate (DOP) particles.
2. Choose N-, R-, or P-series filters based upon the presence or absence of oil particles.
  - a. N-series filters shall only be used for non-oil solid and water based aerosols or fumes.
  - b. R- and P-series filters shall be used when oil aerosols or fumes (i.e., lubricants, cutting fluids, glycerin, etc.) are present. The R-series filters are oil resistant and the P-series filters are oil proof.
  - c. Follow filter manufacture recommendations.
3. If a vapor hazard exists, use an organic vapor cartridge in combination with the high efficiency filter.

H. Historical airborne fiber level data may serve as the basis for selection of the level of respiratory protection to be used for an abatement task. Historical data provided by the asbestos abatement contractor shall be based on personal air monitoring performed during work operations closely resembling the processes, type of material, control methods, work practices, and environmental conditions present at the site. Documentation of aforementioned results may be requested by the City and/or Third-Party Air Monitor for review. This will not relieve the asbestos abatement contractor from providing personal air monitoring to determine the time-weighted average (TWA) for the work under contract. The TWA shall be determined in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.

I. At no time during actual removal operations shall half-mask air purifying respirators be allowed unless a full 8-hour TWA and excursion limit have been conducted, and reviewed by the Construction Project Manager. If the TWA and excursion limit have not been conducted, a Supplied-Air Respirator (SAR) or Airline Respirator or Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus (SCBA) must be used. Use of single use dust respirators is prohibited for the above respiratory protection.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- J. Workers shall be provided with personally issued and individually marked respirators. Respirators shall not be marked with any equipment that will alter the fit of the respirator in any way. Only waterproof identification markers shall be used.
- K. Asbestos abatement contractor shall ensure that the workers are qualitatively or quantitatively fit tested by an Industrial Hygienist initially and every 12 months thereafter with the type of respirator he/she will be using.
- L. Whenever the respirator design permits, workers shall perform the positive and negative air pressure fit test each time a respirator is worn. Powered air-purifying respirators shall be tested for adequate flow as specified by the manufacturer.
- M. No facial hairs (beards) shall be permitted to be worn when wearing respiratory protection that requires a mask-to-face seal.
- N. If a worker wears glasses, a spectacle kit to fit their respirator shall be provided by the asbestos abatement contractor at the asbestos abatement contractor's expense.
- O. Respiratory protection maintenance and decontamination procedures shall meet the following requirements:
  - 1. Respiratory protection shall be inspected and decontaminated on a daily basis in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1910.134 (b); and
  - 2. High efficiency filters for negative pressure respirators shall be changed after each shower; and
  - 3. Respiratory protection shall be the last piece of worker protection equipment to be removed. Workers must wear respirators in the shower when going through decontamination procedures as stated in Section 3.03 and/or 3.04.
  - 4. Airline respirators with high efficiency filtered disconnect shall be disconnected in the equipment room and worn into the shower. Powered air-purifying respirator face pieces shall be worn into the shower. Filtered/power pack assemblies shall be decontaminated in accordance with manufacturers recommendations; and
  - 5. Respirators shall be stored in a dry place and in such a manner that the face-piece and exhalation valves are not distorted; and
  - 6. Organic solvents shall not be used for washing of respirators.
- P. Authorized visitors shall be provided with suitable respirators and instruction on the proper use of respirators whenever entering the Work Area. Qualitative fit test shall be done to ensure proper fit of respirator.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

### 1.16 PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

- A. Provide worker protection as required by the most stringent OSHA and/or EPA standards applicable to the work. Provide to all workers, foremen, superintendents, authorized visitors and inspectors, protective disposable clothing consisting of full body coveralls, head covers, gloves and 18-inch high boot type covers or reusable footwear.
- B. In addition to personal protective equipment for workers, the asbestos abatement contractor shall make available at each worksite at least four (4) additional uniforms and required respiratory equipment each day for personnel who are authorized to inspect the work site. He/she shall also provide, for the duration of the work at any site involving a decontamination unit for worksite access, a lockable storage locker for use by the Construction Project Manager. In addition to respiratory masks for workers, the asbestos abatement contractor must have on hand at the beginning of each work day, at least four (4) masks each with two sets of fresh filters, for use by personnel who are authorized to inspect the worksite. The asbestos abatement contractor shall check for proper fit of the respirators of all City personnel authorized to enter the Work Area.
- C. Asbestos handlers involved in tent procedures shall wear two (2) disposable suits, including gloves, hood and footwear, and appropriate respiratory equipment. All street clothes shall be removed and stored in a clean room within the work site. The double layer personal protective equipment shall be used for installation of the tent and throughout the procedure, if a decontamination unit (with shower and clean room) is contiguous to the Work Area, only one (1) layer of disposable personal protective equipment shall be required; in this case, prior to exiting the tent the worker shall HEPA vacuum and wet clean the disposable suit.
- D. The outer disposable suit (if 2 suits are worn) shall be removed and remain in the tent upon exiting. Following the tent disposal and work site clean up the workers shall immediately proceed to a shower at the work site. The inner disposal unit and respirator shall be removed in the shower after appropriate wetting. The disposal clothing shall be disposed of as asbestos-containing waste material. The workers shall then fully and vigorously shower with supplied liquid bath soap, shampoo, and clean dry towels.
- E. Coveralls: provide disposable full-body coveralls and disposable head covers. Require that they be worn by all workers in the Work Area. Provide a sufficient number for all required changes for all workers in the Work Area.
- F. Boots: provide work boots with non-skid soles, and where required by OSHA, foot protection, for all workers. Provide boots at no cost to workers. Paint uppers of all boots yellow with waterproof enamel. Do not allow boots to be removed from the Work Area for any reason after being contaminated with ACM and/or dust.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- G. Hard Hats: provide hard hats as required by OSHA for all workers, and provide a minimum of four spares for Inspectors, visitors, etc. Label all hats with same warning label as used on disposal bags. Require hard hats to be worn at all times that work is in progress that may cause potential head injury. Provide hard hats of the type with polyethylene strap suspension. Require hats to remain in the Work Area throughout the work. Thoroughly clean and decontaminate and bag hard hats prior to removing them from the Work Area at the end of the work.
- H. Goggles: provide eye protection (goggles) as required by OSHA for all workers involved in any activity that may potentially cause eye injury. Require them to be worn at all times during these activities. Thoroughly clean and decontaminate goggles before removing them from the Work Area.
- I. Gloves: provide work gloves to all workers, of the type dictated by the Work and OSHA Standards. Do not remove gloves from the Work Area. Dispose of as asbestos-asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work. Gloves shall be worn at all times, except during Work Area Preparation activities that do not disturb ACM.
- J. Reusable footwear, hard hats and eye protection devices shall be left in the contaminated Equipment Room until the end of the Asbestos Abatement Work.
- K. Disposable protective clothing shall be discarded and disposed of as asbestos waste every time the wearer exits from the workspace to the outside through the decontamination facility.
- L. Respirators, disposable coveralls, head covers and foot covers shall be provided by the asbestos abatement contractor for the Facilities Representative, Construction Project Manager and any other authorized representative who may inspect the Work Area. Provide two respirators and six respirator filter changes per day.

### 1.17 AIR MONITORING - ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR

- A. Asbestos abatement contractor shall employ a qualified industrial hygiene laboratory to analyze air samples in accordance with OSHA Regulations, 1926.1101 (Asbestos Standards for Construction) and New York City regulations.
- B. The industrial hygiene laboratory shall be a current proficient participant in the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) PAT Program. The laboratory identification number shall be submitted and approved by the City. The laboratory shall be accredited by the AIHA and New York State Department of Health Environmental Laboratory Approval Program (ELAP).
- C. Industrial hygiene laboratory shall also be a current proficient participant in the NIST/NVLAP Quality Assurance Program for the identification of bulk samples. Laboratory identification number shall be submitted to and approved by the City.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- D. Air monitoring responsibilities for the asbestos abatement contractor's employees, shall be performed by a representative of the industrial hygiene laboratory retained by the asbestos abatement contractor.
- E. Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit to the City all credentials of the designated (as defined in OSHA 1926.1101) and industrial hygiene laboratory representative for approval.
- F. Air monitoring and inspection shall be conducted by the Asbestos abatement contractor's competent person (as defined in OSHA 1926.1101).
- G. Continuous (daily or per shift) monitoring and inspection will include Work Area samples, personnel samples from the breathing zone of a worker to accurately determine the employees' 8-hour TWA (unless Type C respirators are used) and decontamination unit clean room samples.
- H. Work Area samples and employee personnel samples shall be taken using pumps whose flow rates can be determined to an accuracy of +5-percent, at a minimum of two liters per minute. This must be demonstrated at the job site.
- I. Sampling and analysis methods shall be per NIOSH 7400A.
- J. Test Reports:
  - 1. Promptly process and distribute one copy of the test results, to the Commissioner.
  - 2. Prompt reports are necessary so that if required, modifications to work methods and/or practices may be implemented as soon as possible.
  - 3. Asbestos abatement contractor shall by facsimile notify the Commissioner within 24 hours of the results of each test, followed by written notification within three days.
- K. Competent person shall conduct inspections and provide written reports daily. Inspections will include checking the standard operating procedures, engineering control systems, respiratory protection and decontamination systems, packaging and disposal of asbestos waste, and any other aspects of the project which may affect the health and safety of the people and environment.
- L. All costs for required air monitoring by the asbestos abatement contractor's competent person shall be borne by the asbestos abatement contractor.
- M. The City reserves the right to conduct air and surface dust sampling in conjunction with and separate from the Third-Party Air Monitor for the purposes of Quality Assurance.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- N. All samples shall be accompanied by a Chain of Custody Record that shall be submitted to the Construction Project Manager upon completion of analysis.

### 1.18 THIRD PARTY MONITORING AND LABORATORY

- A. The NYCDDC, at its own expense, will employ the services of an independent Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and Laboratory. The Third Party Air Monitor will perform air sampling activities and project monitoring at the Work Site.
- B. The Laboratory will perform analysis of air samples utilizing Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) and/or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM). This laboratory shall meet the standards stated in Paragraph 1.17. B.
- C. Observations will include, but not be limited to, checking the standard operating procedures, engineering control systems, respiratory protection, decontamination systems, packaging and disposal of asbestos waste, and any other aspects of the project that may affect the health and safety of the environment, Asbestos abatement contractor, and/or facility occupants.
- D. The Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and the designated Project Monitor shall have access to all areas of the asbestos removal project at all times and shall continuously inspect and monitor the performance of the asbestos abatement contractor to verify that said performance complies with this Specification. The Third-Party Air Monitor shall be on site throughout the entire abatement operation.
- E. The NYCDDC will be responsible for costs incurred with the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and laboratory work. Any subsequent additional testing required due to limits exceeded during initial testing shall be paid for by the Asbestos abatement contractor.
- F. At a minimum, air sampling shall be conducted in accordance with the following schedule:

Abatement Activity	Pre-Abatement	During Abatement	Post-Abatement
Equal to or greater than 10,000 square feet or 10,000 linear feet of ACM	PCM	PCM	TEM
Less than 10,000 square feet or 10,000 linear feet of ACM	PCM	PCM	PCM

Note: TEM is acceptable wherever PCM is required.

- G. The number of air samples required per stage of abatement and size of abatement project is listed in the table below:

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

		Pre-Abatement	During Abatement	Post Abatement
<b>Large Asbestos Projects</b>				
1.	Full Containment	10	5	10
2.	Glovebag inside Tent	5 <sup>a</sup>	5 <sup>a</sup>	5 <sup>a</sup>
3.	Exterior Foam and Vertical Surfaces	-	5 <sup>c</sup>	5 <sup>d</sup>
4.	Interior Foam	10	5 <sup>c</sup>	10 <sup>d</sup>
<b>Small Asbestos Projects</b>				
1.	Full Containment	6	3	6
2.	Glovebag inside Tent	3 <sup>b</sup>	3 <sup>b</sup>	3 <sup>b</sup>
3.	Tent	3 <sup>b</sup>	3 <sup>b</sup>	3 <sup>b</sup>
4.	Exterior Foam and Vertical Surfaces	-	3 <sup>c</sup>	3 <sup>d</sup>
5.	Interior Foam	6	3 <sup>c</sup>	6 <sup>d</sup>
<b>Minor Projects</b>				
1.	Glovebag inside Tent	-	-	1 <sup>d</sup>
2.	Tent	-	-	1 <sup>d</sup>
3.	Exterior Foam and Vertical Surfaces	-	-	1 <sup>d</sup>
4.	Interior Foam	-	-	1 <sup>d</sup>

**Notes:**

- a. if more than three (3) tents then two (2) samples required per enclosure.
- b. if more than three (3) tents then one (1) sample required per enclosure.
- c. samples shall be taken within the work area(s).
- d. area sampling is required only if:
  - visible emissions are detected during the project
  - during-abatement area sampling results exceeded 0.01 f/cc or the pre-abatement area sampling result(s) for interior projects where applicable.
  - work area to be reoccupied is an interior space at a school, healthcare, or daycare facility.

H. Prior to commencement of abatement activities, the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm will collect a minimum number of area samples inside each homogeneous work area.

1. Samples will be taken during normal occupancy activities and circumstances at the work site.
2. Samplers shall be located within the proposed work area and at all proposed isolation barrier locations.
3. Samples shall be analyzed using PCM.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

4. The number of samples to be collected will be determined by the size of the project and the abatement methods to be utilized.
- I. Frequency and duration of the air sampling during abatement shall be representative of the actual conditions during the abatement. The size of the asbestos project will be a factor in the number of samples required to monitor the abatement activities. The following minimum schedule of samples shall be required daily.
    1. For large asbestos projects employing full containment, area air sampling shall be performed at the following locations:
      - a. Two area samples outside the work area in uncontaminated areas of the building, remote from the decontamination facilities.
        - (1) Primary location selection shall be within 10 feet of isolation barriers.
        - (2) Where negative ventilation exhaust runs through uncontaminated building areas, one of the area samples will be required in these areas to monitor any potential fiber release.
        - (3) Where exhaust tubes have been grouped together in banks of up to five (5) tubes, with each tube exhausting separately and the bank of tubes terminating together at the same controlled area, one area air sample shall be taken.
      - b. One area sample within the uncontaminated entrance to each decontamination enclosure system.
      - c. Where adjacent non-work areas do not exist, an exterior area sample shall be taken.
      - d. One area sample within 5 feet of the unobstructed exhaust from a negative pressure ventilation system exhausting indoors but not within a duct.
      - e. One area sample outside, but within 25 feet of, the building or structure, if the entire building or structure is the work area.
    2. For large asbestos projects involving interior foam method, area air sampling shall be performed at the following sampling locations:
      - a. One area sample taken outside the work area within 10 feet of isolation barriers.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- b. One area sample taken within the uncontaminated entrance to each worker decontamination and waste decontamination enclosure system.
  - c. One area sample within 5 feet of the unobstructed exhaust from a negative pressure ventilation system exhausting indoors but not within a duct, if applicable.
  - d. Three area samples inside the work area.
  - e. One area sample where the negative ventilation exhaust ducting runs through uncontaminated building areas, if applicable.
3. For large asbestos projects employing the glovebag procedure within a tent, a minimum of five continuous air samples shall be taken concurrently with the abatement for each work area, unless there are more than three enclosures, in which case two area samples per enclosure are required.
- a. Four area samples taken outside the work area within ten feet of tent enclosure(s).
  - b. One area sample taken within the uncontaminated entrance to each worker and waste decontamination enclosure system.
  - c. One area sample within five feet of the unobstructed exhaust from a negative pressure ventilation system exhausting indoors, but not within a duct, if applicable.
  - d. One area sample where negative ventilation exhaust ducting runs through uncontaminated building areas, if applicable.
4. For large asbestos projects involving exterior foam method or removal of ACM from vertical surfaces, a minimum of five continuous area samples shall be taken concurrently with the abatement for each work area using the following minimum requirements:
- a. Three area samples inside the work area and remote from the decontamination systems.
  - b. One area sample within the uncontaminated entrance to each worker and waste decontamination enclosure system.
  - c. One area sample outside the work area within 25 feet of the building or structure, if the entire building or structure is the work area.
  - d. One area sample inside the building or structure at the egress point to the work area, if applicable.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

5. For small asbestos projects employing full containment, a minimum of three continuous area samples shall be taken concurrently with the abatement for each work area at the following locations:
  - a. Two area samples taken outside the work area within ten feet of the isolation barriers.
  - b. One area sample within the uncontaminated entrance to each worker or waste decontamination enclosure system.
  - c. One area sample within five feet of the unobstructed exhaust from a negative pressure ventilation system exhausting indoors, but not within a duct, if applicable.
  - d. One area sample where negative ventilation exhaust ducting runs through an uncontaminated building area, if applicable.
6. Tent Procedures:

For projects involving more than 25 linear feet or 10 square feet, a minimum of three continuous samples shall be taken concurrently throughout abatement.
- J. Post-abatement clearance air monitoring for projects not solely employing glove-bag procedures shall include a minimum number of area samples inside each homogeneous work area and outside each homogeneous work area (five samples inside/five samples outside for Large Projects and three samples inside/three samples outside for Small Projects). In addition to the five sample inside/five sample outside minimum for Large Projects, one additional representative area sample shall be collected inside and outside the work area for every 5,000 square feet above 25,000 square feet of floor space where ACM has been abated.
- K. Post-abatement clearance air monitoring for Small Projects solely employing glove-bag procedures is not required unless one or more of the following events occurs. In such cases, post-abatement clearance air monitoring procedures shall be followed. The events requiring post-abatement clearance air monitoring are:
  1. The integrity of the glove-bag was compromised,
  2. Visible emissions are detected outside the glove-bag, and/or
  3. Ambient levels exceed 0.01 f/cc during abatement.
- L. Monitoring requirements for other than post-abatement clearance air monitoring are as follows:

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

1. The sampling zone for indoor air samples shall be representative of the building occupants' breathing zone.
  2. If possible, outdoor ambient and baseline samplers should be placed about 6 feet above the ground surface in reasonable proximity to the building and away from obstructions and drafts that may unduly affect airflow.
  3. For outdoor samples, if access to electricity and concerns about security dictate a rooftop site, locations near vents and other structures on the roof that would unduly affect airflow shall be avoided.
  4. Air sampling equipment shall not be placed in corners of rooms or near obstructions such as furniture.
  5. Samples shall have a chain of custody record.
- M. Area air sampling during abatement shall be conducted as specified in the following documents except as restricted or modified herein:
1. Measuring Airborne Asbestos Following an Abatement Action, US EPA document 600/4-85-049 (Nov., 1985);
  2. Guidance for Controlling Asbestos-Containing Materials in Buildings; US EPA Publication 560/5-85-024 (June, 1984);
  3. Methodology for the Measurement of Airborne Asbestos by Electron Microscopy US EPA Contract No. 68-02-3266;
  4. Mandatory and non-mandatory Electron Microscopy Methods set forth in 40 CFR Part 763, Subpart E, Appendix A.
  5. NIOSH 7400 method using "A" counting rules
- N. In accordance with the above criteria, area samples (see NYCDEP Asbestos Control Program Regulations) shall conform to the following schedule:

Area Samples for Analysis by	Minimum Volume	Flow Rate
PCM, 25mm cassettes	560 liters	5 to 15 liters/minute
TEM, 25mm cassettes	560 liters	1 to 10 liters/minute
TEM, 37mm cassettes	1,250 liters	1 to 10 liters/minute

- O. Post-abatement clearance air monitoring requirements are as follows:
1. Sampling shall not begin until at least one hour after wet cleaning has been completed and no visible pools of water or condensation remain.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. Samplers shall be placed at random around the work area. If the work area contains the number of rooms equivalent to the number of required samples based on floor area, a sampler shall be placed in each room. When the number of rooms is greater than the required number of samples, a representative sample of rooms shall be selected.
  3. The representative samplers placed outside the work area but within the building shall be located to avoid any air that might escape through the isolation barriers and shall be approximately 50 feet from the entrance to the work area, and 25 feet from the isolation barriers.
- P. The following aggressive sampling procedures shall be used within the work area during all clearance air monitoring:
1. Before starting the sampling pumps, use forced air equipment (such as a one horsepower leaf blower) to direct exhaust air against all walls, ceilings, floors, ledges and other surfaces in the work area. This pre-sampling procedure shall take at least five minutes per 1,000 square feet of floor area; then
  2. Place a 20-inch diameter fan in the center of the room. Use one fan per 10,000 cubic feet of room space. Place the fan on slow speed and point it toward the ceiling.
  3. Start the sampling pumps and sample for the required time or volume.
  4. Turn off the pump and then the fan(s) when sampling is completed.
  5. Collect a minimum number of area samples inside and outside each homogeneous work area (five inside/five outside samples for Large Projects and three inside/three outside samples for Small Projects). In addition to the minimum for Large Projects, one representative area samples shall be collected inside and outside the work area for every 5,000 square feet above 25,000 square feet of floor space where ACM has been abated.
- Q. For post-abatement monitoring, area samples shall conform to the following schedule:

Area Samples for Analysis by	Minimum Volume	Flow Rate
PCM	1,800 liters	5 to 15 liters/minute
TEM	1,250 liters	1 to 10 liters/minute

1. Each homogeneous work area that does not meet the clearance criteria shall be thoroughly re-cleaned using wet methods, with the negative pressure ventilation system in operation. New samples shall be collected in the work area as described above. The process shall be repeated until the work site meets the clearance criteria.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. For an asbestos project with more than one homogeneous work area, the release criterion shall be applied independently to each work area.
3. Should airborne fiber concentrations exceed the clearance criteria, the asbestos abatement contractor shall re-clean the work area utilizing wet wiping and HEPA-vacuuuming techniques. Following completion of re-cleaning activities, the Third-Party Air Monitor will perform an observation of the Work Area. If the Third-Party Air Monitor determines that the work was performed in accordance with the specifications, the appropriate settling period will be observed and additional air sampling will be performed.
4. All costs resulting from additional air tests and observations shall be borne by the asbestos abatement contractor. These costs may include, but are not limited to, labor, analysis fees, materials, and expenses.
5. After the area has been found to be in compliance, the asbestos abatement contractor may remove Isolation Barriers and perform final cleaning as specified.

### R. Clearance and/or Re-occupancy Criteria:

1. The clearance criteria shall be applied to each homogeneous work area independently.
2. For PCM analysis, the clearance air monitoring shall be considered satisfactory when each of the 5 inside/5 outside samples for Large Projects and/or 3 inside/3 outside samples for Small Projects is less than or equal to 0.01 f/cc or the background concentrations, whichever is greater.
3. For TEM analysis, the clearance air monitoring shall be considered satisfactory when the requirements stated in 40 CFR Part 763, Subpart E, Appendix A, Section IV are met.
4. As soon as the air monitoring tests are completed, the Third-Party Air Monitor will send the results of such tests to the City and notify the Asbestos abatement contractor.
5. The asbestos abatement contractor shall initiate the appropriate closeout information into the DEP ARTS database within 24 hours of work area completion to allow the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm to complete and submit the ACP-15 forms for each specific work area.
6. The asbestos abatement contractor shall provide the ACP-20 and ACP-21 forms to the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm within 48 hours of receipt.

**1.19 TAMPERING WITH TEST EQUIPMENT**

All parties to this Contract are hereby notified that any tampering with testing equipment will be considered an attempt at falsifying reports and records to federal and state agencies and each offense will be prosecuted under applicable state and federal criminal codes to the fullest extent possible.

**1.20 GUARANTEE**

- A. Work performed in compliance with this Contract shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date the completed work is accepted by the City.
- B. The asbestos abatement contractor shall not be held liable for the guarantee where the repair required under the guarantee is a result of obvious abuse or vandalism, as determined by the Commissioner.
- C. The City will notify the asbestos abatement contractor in writing regarding defects in work under the guarantee.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MATERIAL HANDLING**

- A. Deliver all materials to the job site in their manufacturer's original container, with the manufacturer's label intact and legible.
  - 1. Maintain packaged materials with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use.
  - 2. Store all materials on pallets, away from any damp and/or wet surface. Cover materials in order to prevent damage and/or contamination.
  - 3. Promptly remove damaged materials and unsuitable items from the job site, and promptly replace with material meeting the specified requirements, at no additional cost to the City.
- B. The Construction Project Manager may reject as non-complying such material and products that do not bear identification satisfactory to the Construction Project Manager as to manufacturer, grade, quality and other pertinent information.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Wetting agents: (Surfactant) shall consist of resin materials in a water base, which have been tested to ensure materials are non-toxic and non-hazardous. Surfactants shall be installed according to the manufacturer's written instructions.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- B. Encapsulants: Liquid material which can be applied to asbestos-containing material which temporarily controls the possible release of asbestos fibers from the material or surface either by creating a membrane over the surface (bridging encapsulant) or by penetrating into the material and binding its components together (penetrating encapsulant). A thin coat of lockdown encapsulant shall be applied to all surfaces in the work area which were not the subject of removal or abatement, including the cleaned layer of the surface barriers, but excepting sprinklers, standpipes, and other active elements of the fire suppression system.
- C. During abatement activities, replacement materials shall be stored outside the work area in a manner to prevent contamination. Materials required for the asbestos project (i.e., plastic sheeting, replacement filters, duct tape, etc.) shall be stored to prevent damage or contamination.
- D. Framing Materials and Doors: As required to construct temporary decontamination facilities and isolation barriers. Lumber shall be high grade, new, finished one side and fire retardant.
- E. Fire Retardant Polyethylene Sheeting: minimum uniform thickness of 6-mil. Provide largest size possible to minimize seams. All materials used in the construction of temporary enclosures shall be noncombustible or fire-retardant in accordance with NFPA 701 and 255.
- F. Fire Retardant Reinforced Polyethylene Sheeting: For covering floor of decontamination units, provide translucent, nylon reinforced or woven polyethylene laminated, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Provide largest size possible to minimize seams, minimum uniform thickness 6-mil. All materials used in the construction of temporary enclosures shall be noncombustible or fire-retardant in accordance with NFPA 701 and 255.
- G. Drums: Asbestos-transporting drums, sealable and clearly marked with warning labels as required by OSHA and EPA.
- H. Polyethylene Disposal Bags: Asbestos disposal bags, minimum of fire retardant 6-mil thick. Bags shall be clearly marked with warning labels as required by OSHA and EPA.
- I. Signs: Asbestos warning signs for posting at perimeter of Work Area, as required by OSHA and EPA.
- J. Waste Container Bag Liners and Flexible Trailer Trays: One piece leak-resistant flexible tray with absorbent pad.
- K. Tape: Provide tape which is of high quality with an adhesive that is formulated to aggressively stick to sheet polyethylene.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- L. Spray Adhesive: Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene.
- M. Flexible Duct: Spiral reinforced flex duct for air filtration devices.
- N. Protective Clothing: Workers shall be provided with sufficient sets of properly fitting, full-body, disposable coveralls, head covers, gloves, and 18-inch high boot-type foot covers. Protective clothing shall conform to OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101.
- O. Surfactants, strippers, sealers, or any other chemicals used shall be non-carcinogenic and non-toxic.
- P. Materials used in the construction of temporary enclosures shall be noncombustible or fire-retardant in accordance with NFPA 701 and 255.

### 2.03 TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Air Filtration Device (AFD): AFDs shall be equipped with High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filtration systems and shall be approved by and listed with Underwriter's Laboratory.
- B. Scaffolding: All scaffolding shall be designed and constructed in accordance with OSHA (29 CFR 1926/1910), New York City Building Code, and any other applicable federal, state and local government regulations. Whenever there is a conflict or overlap of the above references the most stringent provisions are applicable. All scaffolding and components shall be capable of supporting without failure a minimum of four times the maximum intended load, plus an allowance for impact. All scaffolding and staging must be certified in writing by a Professional Engineer licensed to practice in the State of New York.
  - 1. Equip rungs of all metal ladders, etc., with an abrasive, non-slip surface.
  - 2. Provide non-skid surface on all scaffold surfaces subject to foot traffic. Scaffold ends and joints shall be sealed with tape to prevent penetration of asbestos fibers.
- C. Transportation Equipment: Transportation Equipment, as required, shall be suitable for loading, temporary storage, transit and unloading of asbestos contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property. Any temporary storage containers positioned outside the building for temporary storage shall be metal, closed and locked.
- D. Vacuum Equipment: All vacuum equipment utilized in the Work Area shall utilize HEPA filtration systems.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- E. Vacuum Attachments: Soft Brush Attachment, Asbestos Scraper Tool, Drill Dust Control Kit.
- F. Electric Sprayer: An electric airless sprayer suitable for application of encapsulating material and shall be approved by and listed with Underwriters Laboratory.
- G. Water Sprayer: The water sprayer shall be an airless or other low-pressure sprayer for amended water application.
- H. Water Atomizer: Powered air-misting device equipped with a ground fault interrupter and equipped to operate continuously.
- I. Brushes: All brushes shall have nylon bristles. Wire brushes are excluded from use due to their potential to shred asbestos fibers into small, fine fibers. Wire brushes maybe used for cleaning pipe joints within glove-bags upon written approval of the Construction Project Manager.
- J. Power tools used to drill, cut into, or otherwise disturb ACM shall be manufacturer-equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust ventilation. Abrasive removal methods, including the use of beadblasters, are prohibited.
- K. Other Tools and Equipment: Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide other suitable tools for the stripping, removal, encapsulation, and disposal activities including but not limited to: hand-held scrapers, sponges, rounded-edge shovels, brooms, and carts.
- L. Fans and Leaf Blower: Provide Leaf Blower (one leaf blower per floor) and one 20-inch diameter fans for each 10,000 cubic feet of Work Area volume to be used for aggressive sampling technique for clearance air testing.
- M. Fire Extinguishers: At least one fire extinguisher with a minimum rating 2-A:10-B:C shall be required for each work place. In the case of large asbestos projects, at least two such fire extinguishers shall be required.
- N. First Aid Kits: Asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain adequately stocked first aid kits in the clean rooms of the decontamination units and within Work Areas. The first aid kit shall be approved by a licensed physician for the work to be performed under this Contract.
- O. Water Service:
  - 1. Temporary Water Service Connection: All connections to the Facilities water system shall include back flow protection. Valves shall be temperature and pressure rated for operation of the temperature and pressures encountered. After completion of use, connections and fittings shall be removed without damage or alteration to existing water piping, and

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

equipment. Leaking or dripping fittings/valves shall be repaired and or replaced as required.

2. **Water Hoses:** Employ new heavy-duty abrasion-resistant hoses with a pressure rating greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system to provide water into each Work Area and to each Decontamination Enclosure Unit. Provide fittings as required for connection to existing wall hydrants or spouts, as well as temporary water heating equipment, branch piping, showers, shut-off nozzles and equipment.
3. **Water Heater:** Provide UL rated 40-gallon electric water heaters to supply hot water for Personal Decontamination Enclosure System Shower. Activate from 30 Amp Circuit breakers located within the Decontamination Enclosure sub panel. Provide relief valve compatible with water heater operations, pipe relief valve down to drip pan at floor level with type 'L' copper piping. Drip pans shall be 6-inch deep and securely fastened to water heater. Wiring of the water heater shall comply with NEMA, NECA, and UL standards.

### P. Electrical Service:

1. **General:** Comply with applicable NEMA, NECA and UL standards and governing regulations for materials and layout of temporary electric service.
2. **Temporary Power:** Provide service to decontamination unit sub panel with minimum 60 AMP, two pole circuit breaker or fused disconnect connected to the building's main distribution panel. Sub panel and disconnect shall be sized and equipped to accommodate all electrical equipment required for completion of the work.
3. **Voltage Differences:** Provide identification warning signs at power outlets that are other than 110-120 volt power. Provide polarized outlets for plug-in type outlets, to prevent insertion of 110-120 volt plugs into higher voltage outlets. Dry type transformers shall be provided where required to provide voltages necessary for work operations.
4. **Ground Fault Protection:** Equip all circuits for any purpose entering Work Area with ground fault circuit interrupters (GFCI). Locate the GFCIs outside the Work Area so that all circuits are protected prior to entry to Work Area. Provide circuit breaker type ground fault circuit interrupters (GFCI) equipped with test button and reset switch for all circuits to be used for any purpose in Work Area, decontamination units, exterior, or as otherwise required by NEC, OSHA or other authority.
5. **Power Distribution System:** Provide circuits of adequate size and proper characteristics for each use. In general run wiring overhead, and rise vertically where wiring will be least subject to damage from operations.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

6. Temporary Wiring: In the Work Area shall be type UF non-metallic sheathed cable located overhead and exposed for surveillance. Provide liquid tight enclosures or boxes for all wiring devices. Do not wire temporary lighting with plain, exposed (insulated) electrical conductors.
7. Electrical Power Cords: Use only grounded extension cords; use hard service cords where exposed to traffic and abrasion. Use single lengths of cords only.
8. Temporary Lighting: All lighting within the Work Area shall be liquid and moisture proof and designed for the use intended.
  - a. Provide sufficient temporary lighting to ensure proper workmanship everywhere; by combined use of daylight, general lighting, and portable plug-in task lighting.
  - b. Provide lighting in the Decontamination Unit as required to supply a minimum 50-foot candle light level.
9. If electrical circuits, machinery, and other electrical systems in or passing through the work area must stay in operation due to health and safety requirements, the following precautions must be taken:
  - a. All unprotected cables, except low-voltage (less than 24 volts) communication and control system cables, panel boxes of cables and joints in live conduit that run through the work area shall be covered with three (3) independent layers of six (6) mil fire retardant polyethylene. Each layer shall be individually duct taped and sealed. All three (3) layers of polyethylene sheeting shall be left in place until satisfactory clearance air sampling results have been obtained.

### 2.04 CLEANING

- A. Throughout the construction period, the asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain the building as described in this Section.
  1. The asbestos abatement contractor shall prevent building areas other than the Work Area from becoming contaminated with asbestos-containing dust or debris. Should areas outside the Work Area become contaminated with asbestos-containing dust or debris as a consequence of the asbestos abatement contractor's work practices, the asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for cleaning these areas in accordance with the procedures appended in Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY and NYS DOL ICR56. All costs incurred in cleaning or otherwise decontaminating non-Work Areas and the contents thereof shall be borne by the asbestos abatement contractor at no additional cost to the City.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. The asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to all personnel and laborers the required equipment and materials needed to maintain the specified standard of cleanliness.

### B. General

1. Waste water from asbestos removal operations, including shower water, may be discharged into the public sewer system only after approved filtration is on operation to remove asbestos fibers.
2. Asbestos wastes shall be double bagged in six mil (.006") fire retardant polyethylene bags approved for ACM disposal and shall be properly labeled and handled before disposal.
3. All waste generated shall be bagged, wrapped or containerized immediately upon removal. The personal and waste decontamination enclosure systems and floor and scaffold surfaces shall be HEPA vacuumed and wet cleaned at the end of each work shift at a minimum.
4. The asbestos abatement contractor shall use corrugated cartons or drums for disposal of asbestos-containing waste having sharp edged components (e.g., nails, screws, metal lathe and tin sheeting) that may tear polyethylene bags and sheeting. The waste within the drums or cartons must be double bagged.
5. The asbestos abatement contractor shall transport all bags of waste to disposal site in thirty gallon capacity metal or fiber drums with tight lids, or in locked steel dumpster.
6. Dumping of debris, waste or bagged waste will not be permitted.
7. The waste decontamination enclosure system shall be wet cleaned twice using wet cleaning methods upon completion of waste removal. When the worker decontamination enclosure shower room alternates as a waste container wash room, the shower room shall be washed immediately with cloths or mops saturated with a detergent solution prior to wet cleaning.
8. Excessive water accumulation or flooding in the work area shall require work to stop until the water is collected and disposed of properly.
9. ACM shall be collected utilizing rubber dust pans and rubber squeegees.
10. HEPA vacuums shall not be used on wet materials unless specifically designed for that purpose.
11. Metal shovels shall not be used within the work area.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

12. Mastic solvent when used will be applied in moderation (e.g., by airless sprayer). Saturation of the concrete floor with mastic solvent must be avoided.
13. The asbestos abatement contractor shall retain all items in the storage area in an orderly arrangement allowing maximum access, not impeding traffic, and providing the required protection of all materials.
14. The asbestos abatement contractor shall not allow accumulation of scrap, debris, waste material, and other items not required for use in this work. When asbestos contaminated waste must be kept on the work site overnight or longer, it shall be double bagged and stored in accordance with New York City Department of Sanitation (NYCDOS) regulation Title 16 Chapter 8, and Federal, State and City laws.
15. At least twice a week (more if necessary), the asbestos abatement contractor shall completely remove all scrap, debris and waste material from the job site.
16. The asbestos abatement contractor shall provide adequate storage space for all items awaiting removal from the job site, observing all requirements for fire protection and concerns for the environment.
17. All respiratory protection equipment shall be selected from the latest NIOSH Certified Equipment list.
18. Daily and more often, if necessary, the asbestos abatement contractor shall inspect the Work Areas and adjoining spaces, and pick up all scrap, debris, and waste material. All such items shall be removed to the place designated for their storage.
19. Weekly, and more often, if necessary, the asbestos abatement contractor shall inspect all arrangements of materials stored on the site; re-stack and tidy them or otherwise service them to meet the requirements of these Specifications.
20. The asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain the site in a neat and orderly condition at all times.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 WORKER DECONTAMINATION FACILITY

A. Large Asbestos Projects (Small Project Option):

1. Provide a worker decontamination facility in accordance with, Title 15, Chapter 1, OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, 12NYCRR Part 56 and as specified herein. Unless approved by NYCDEP and the City, worker decontamination facilities shall be attached to the Work Areas

a. Structure:

- (1) Use modular systems or build using wood or metal frame studs, joists, and rafters placed at a maximum of 16 inches on-center.
- (2) When worker decontamination unit is located outdoors, in areas with public access, or in correctional facilities, frame work shall be lined with minimum 3/8" thickness fire rated plywood sheathing. Sheathing shall be caulked or taped airtight at all joints and seams.
- (3) Interior shall be covered with two layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, with a minimum overlap of 12 inches at seams. Seal seams airtight using tape and adhesive. The interior floor shall be covered with two (2) layers of reinforced fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting with a minimum overlap on the walls of twelve inches.
- (4) Entrances to the decontamination unit shall be secured with lockable hinged doors. Doors shall be open at all times when abatement operations are in progress. Doors shall be louvered to allow for air movement through the decontamination units into Work Area.

- b. Curtained Doorways: A device to allow ingress or egress from one room to another while permitting minimal air movement between the rooms.
- c. Air Locks: Air locks shall consist of two curtained doorways placed a minimum of three feet apart.
- d. Decontamination Enclosure System shall be placed adjacent to the Work Area and shall consist of three totally enclosed chambers, separated from Work Area and each other by airlocks, as follows:

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- (1) **Equipment Room:** The equipment room shall have a curtain doorway to separate it from the Work Area, and share a common airlock with the shower room. The equipment room shall be large enough to accommodate at least one worker (allowing them enough room to remove their protective clothing and footwear), and a fire retardant 6-mil disposal bag for collection of discarded clothing and equipment. The equipment room shall be utilized for the storage of equipment and tools after decontamination using a HEPA-vacuum and/or wet cleaning. A one-day supply of replacement filters, in sealed containers, for HEPA-vacuums and negative air machines, extra tools, containers of surfactant, and other materials and equipment required for the project shall be stored here. A walk-off pan filled with water shall be placed in the Work Area just outside the equipment room for persons to clean foot coverings when leaving the Work Area. Contaminated footwear and reusable work clothing shall be stored in this room.
- (2) **Shower Room:** The shower room shall have two airlocks (one that separates it from the equipment room and one that separates it from the clean room). The shower room shall contain at least one shower, with hot and cold water adjustable at the tap, per six workers. Careful attention shall be given to the shower to ensure against leaking of any kind and shall contain a rigid catch basin at least six inches deep. Asbestos abatement contractor shall supply towels, shampoo and liquid soap in the shower room at all times. Shower water shall be continuously drained, collected, and filtered through a system with at least a 5-micron particle size collection capacity. A system containing a series of several filters with progressively smaller pore sizes shall be used to avoid rapid clogging of the filters by large particles. Pumps shall be installed, maintained and utilized in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Filtered water shall be discharged in accordance with applicable codes. Contaminated filters shall be disposed of as asbestos waste.
- (3) **Clean Room:** The clean room shall share a common airlock with the shower room and shall have a curtained doorway to separate it from outside non-contaminated areas. Lockers, for storage of workers' street clothing, and shelves, for storing respirators, shall be provided in this area. Clean disposable clothing, replacement filters for respirators, and clean dry towels shall be provided in the clean room. The clean room shall not be used for the storage of tool, equipment or other materials.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

### B. Small Asbestos Projects:

1. Provide a worker decontamination facility in accordance with, Title 15, Chapter 1, OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, 12NYCRR Part 56 and as specified herein. Unless approved by NYCDEP and the City, worker decontamination facilities shall be attached to the Work Areas.
2. The worker decontamination enclosure system shall consist of, as a minimum, an equipment room, a shower room, and a clean room separated from each other and from the work area by curtained doorways. The equipment storage, personnel gross decontamination and removal of disposal clothing shall occur in the equipment room prior to entering the shower. All other requirements shall be the same as described above for a large asbestos project.
3. For small asbestos projects with only one exit from the work area, the shower room may be used as a waste washroom. The clean room shall not be used for waste storage. All other requirements shall be the same as described above for a large asbestos project.

- C. Decontamination Enclosure System Utilities: Lighting, heat, and electricity shall be provided as necessary by the Asbestos abatement contractor, and as specified herein.

### 3.02 WASTE DECONTAMINATION FACILITY

#### A. Large Asbestos Project (Small Project Option)

1. Provide a worker decontamination facility in accordance with, Title 15, Chapter 1, OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1926.1101, 12NYCRR Part 56 and as specified herein. Unless approved by NYCDEP and the City, worker decontamination facilities shall be attached to the Work Areas.
  - a. Structure:
    - (1) Use modular systems or build using wood or metal frame studs, joists, and rafters placed at a maximum of 16 inches on-center.
    - (2) When worker decontamination unit is located outdoors, in areas with public access, or in correctional facilities, frame work shall be lined with minimum 3/8" thickness fire rated plywood sheathing. Sheathing shall be caulked or taped airtight at all joints and seams.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- (3) Interior walls shall be covered with two layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, with a minimum overlap of 12 inches at seams. Seal seams airtight using tape and adhesive. The interior floor shall be covered with two (2) layers of reinforced fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting with a minimum overlap on the walls of twelve inches.
  - (4) Entrances to the decontamination unit shall be secured with lockable hinged doors. Doors shall be open at all times when abatement operations are in progress. Doors shall be louvered to allow for air movement through the decontamination units into the Work Area.
- b. Curtained Doorways: A device to allow ingress or egress from one room to another while permitting minimal air movement between the rooms.
  - c. Air Locks: Air locks shall consist of two curtained doorways placed a minimum of three feet apart.
  - d. Decontamination Enclosure System shall be located outside the work area and attached to all locations through which ACM waste will be removed from the work area and shall consist of two totally enclosed chambers, separated from the Work Area and each other by airlocks, as follows:
    - (1) Washroom: An equipment washroom shall have two air locks (one separating the unit from the Work Area and one common air lock that separates it from the holding area). The washroom shall have facilities for washing material containers and equipment. Gross removal of dust and debris from contaminated material containers and equipment shall be accomplished in the Work Area, prior to moving to the washroom.
    - (2) Holding Area: A holding area shall share a common air lock with the equipment washroom and shall have a curtained doorway to outside areas. A hinged, lockable door shall be placed at the holding area entrance to prevent unauthorized access into the Work Area.

### B. Small Asbestos Project:

1. The worker decontamination enclosure system shall consist of, as a minimum, an equipment room, a shower room, and a clean room separated from each other and from the work area by curtained doorways. The equipment storage, personnel gross decontamination and removal of

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

disposal clothing shall occur in the equipment room prior to entering the shower. All other requirements shall be the same as described above for a large asbestos project.

2. For small asbestos projects with only one exit from the work area, the shower room may be used as a waste washroom. The clean room shall not be used for waste storage. All other requirements shall be the same as described above for a large asbestos project.

C. Decontamination Enclosure System Utilities: Lighting, heat, and electricity shall be provided as necessary by the Asbestos abatement contractor, and as specified herein.

### 3.03 PERSONNEL ENTRANCE AND DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES FOR REMOVAL OPERATIONS UTILIZING REMOTE DECONTAMINATION FACILITIES

A. All individuals who enter the Work Area shall sign the entry log, located in the clean room, upon each entry and exit. The log shall be permanently bound and shall fully identify the facility, agents, asbestos abatement contractor(s), the project, each Work Area, and worker respiratory protection employed. The job supervisor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the log during the abatement activity. The log shall be submitted to the NYC DDC within 48 hours of request.

B. Each worker shall remove street clothes in the clean room; wear two disposable suits, including gloves, hoods and non-skid footwear; and put on a clean respirator (with new filters) before entering the Work Area.

C. Each worker shall, before leaving the Work Area or tent, clean the outside of the respirators and outer layer of protective clothing by wet cleaning and/or HEPA-vacuuming. The outer disposable suit shall be removed in the airlock prior to proceeding to the Worker Decontamination Unit. The inner disposable suit and respirator shall be wet wiped and HEPA vacuumed thoroughly before removing and prior to aggressive shower.

D. Following showering and drying off, each worker or authorized visitor shall proceed directly to the clean room, dress in street clothes, and exit the decontamination enclosure system immediately.

### 3.04 PERSONNEL ENTRANCE AND DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES FOR REMOVAL OPERATIONS UTILIZING ATTACHED DECONTAMINATION FACILITIES

A. All workers and authorized visitors shall enter the Work Area through the worker decontamination facility.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- B. All individuals who enter the Work Area shall sign the entry log, located in the clean room, upon each entry and exit. The log shall be permanently bound and shall identify fully the facility, agents, asbestos abatement contractor(s), the project, each Work Area and worker respiratory protection employed. The site supervisor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the log during the abatement activity. The log shall be submitted to the NYC DDC within 48 hours of request.
- C. Each worker or authorized visitor shall, upon entering the job site, remove street clothes in the clean room and put on a clean respirator with filters, and clean protective clothing before entering the Work Area through the shower room and equipment room.
- D. Each worker or authorized visitor shall, each time he leaves the Work Area, remove gross contamination from clothing before leaving the Work Area; proceed to the equipment room and remove clothing except the respirator; still wearing the respirator, proceed to the shower room; clean the outside of the respirator with soap and water while showering; remove filters, wet them, and dispose of them in the container provided for that purpose; wash and rinse the inside of the respirator; and thoroughly shampoo and wash himself/herself.
- E. Following showering and drying off, each worker or authorized visitor shall proceed directly to the clean room, dress in street clothes, and exit the decontamination enclosure system immediately. Disposable clothing of the type worn inside the Work Area is not permitted outside the Work Area.

### 3.05 MAINTENANCE OF DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE FACILITIES AND BARRIERS

The following procedures shall be followed during abatement activities.

- A. All polyethylene barriers inside the work place and partitions constructed to isolate the Work Area from occupied areas shall be inspected by the asbestos handler supervisor at least twice per shift.
- B. Smoke tubes shall be used to test the integrity of the Work Area barriers and the decontamination enclosure systems daily before abatement activity begins and at the end of each shift.
- C. Damage and defects in the decontamination enclosure system shall be repaired immediately upon discovery. The decontamination enclosure system shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition at all times.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- D. At any time during the abatement activity, if visible emissions are observed, or elevated asbestos fiber counts outside the Work Area are measured, or if damage occurs to barriers, abatement shall stop. The source of the contamination shall be located, the integrity of the barriers shall be restored and extended to include the contaminated area, and visible residue shall be cleaned up using appropriate HEPA-vacuuuming and wet cleaning.
- E. Inspections and observations shall be documented in the daily project log by the asbestos handler supervisor.
- F. The daily inspection to ensure that exits have been checked against exterior blockage or impediments to exiting shall be documented in the log book. If exits are found to be blocked, abatement activities shall stop until the blockage is cleared.

### 3.06 MODIFICATIONS TO HVAC SYSTEMS

- A. Shut down, isolate or seal, all existing HVAC units, fans, exhaust fans, perimeter convection air units, supply and/or return air ducts, etc., situated in, traversing or servicing the work zone.
- B. Seal all seams with duct tape. Wrap entire duct with a minimum of two layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting. All shutdowns are to be coordinated with the Facility. Where systems must be maintained, i.e., traversing Work Areas to non-Work Areas, only supply ducts will be maintained, protect as described above. All returns must be blanked off in Work Area and adjacent areas, including floor above and below Work Area. When required Asbestos abatement contractor shall apply for a clarification from NYCDEP. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall implement the following engineering procedures:
  - 1. Maintenance of a positive pressure within the HVAC system of 0.01 inch water gauge (or greater) with respect to the ambient pressure outside the Work Area. The conditions for this system shall be maintained and be operational 24 hours per day from the initiation of Work Area preparation until successful final air clearance. Positive pressurization of HVAC system shall be applied only under the direction and control of professional engineer, or other knowledgeable licensed professional;
  - 2. The positive pressurization of the duct shall be tested, inspected and recorded both at the beginning and at the end of each shift;
  - 3. The positive pressurization shall be monitored using instrumentation which will provide a written record of pressurization and that will trigger an audible alarm, if the static pressure falls below the set value;

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

4. The supply air fan and the supply air damper for the active positive-pressurized duct shall be placed in the manual "on" positions to prevent shutdown by fail-safe mechanisms;
  5. The return air fan and the return air dampers shall be shut down and locked-out;
  6. All the seams of the HVAC ducts that pass through the Work Area shall be sealed;
  7. The HVAC ducts that pass through the Work Area shall be covered with two (2) layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, and all seams and edges of both layers shall be sealed airtight;
  8. The supply air fans, return air fans, and all dampers servicing the Work Area itself shall be shut down and locked-out. All openings within the Work Area of supply and return air ducts shall be sealed with 3/8-inch fire rated plywood and two layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene;
  9. When abatement occurs during periods while the HVAC system is shut down an alternative method of pressurization of the duct passing through the Work Area should be employed (e.g., by low-pressure "blowers", etc., directly coupled into the duct). Item #4 above shall be deleted and shall be replaced by the requirement to set the dampers of the HVAC duct in the manual closed positions, in order to effect pressurization.
- C. Asbestos abatement contractor to coordinate this item with the Facility and Construction Project Manager at the commencement of work. Where present HVAC systems (ducts) service an area and that air system cannot be shut down, asbestos abatement contractor shall isolate and seal the ducts, both supply and return, at the boundary of that zone.
1. To isolate, cap, or seal a duct, the asbestos abatement contractor shall remove insulation from duct (if necessary), then disconnect linkage to fold shut all fire dampers. Asbestos abatement contractor shall seal all edges and seams with caulk and duct-tape.
  2. Asbestos abatement contractor shall then cut existing duct and fold metal in and secure with approved fasteners. Asbestos abatement contractor shall caulk and duct-tape all seams and edges.
  3. All ducts shall then be completely wrapped and sealed with duct-tape and three (3) layers of reinforced polyethylene sheeting.
  4. All ducts shall be restored to original working order at the end of the project.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- D. Where present HVAC systems (ducts) service occupied areas (non-Work Areas), the Asbestos abatement contractor shall blank off the ducts.
1. To isolate or seal the return duct, the asbestos abatement contractor shall remove any insulation (if necessary) from the duct. Then disconnect linkage to fold shut all fire dampers and insert a fiberglass board within the duct. Asbestos abatement contractor shall seal all edges and seams with caulk, duct-tape and three (3) layers of reinforced polyethylene sheeting.
  2. All isolation of return ducts and any other activity that requires removal of ceiling by the asbestos abatement contractor shall be conducted under controls. Work is to be coordinated with the Construction Project Manager and the Facility and is described as follows:
    - a. Work shall occur as scheduled.
    - b. Horizontal surfaces near the blanking operations shall be protected with fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting.
    - c. Plastic drapes shall be used to enclose the immediate area.
    - d. Asbestos abatement contractor to position and operate air filtration devices and HEPA-vacuums in the area to clean space after blanking operations.
    - e. All personnel involved with this work shall receive personal protection (i.e., respirators and disposable suits).
- E. Upon loss of negative pressure or electric power, all work activities in an area shall cease immediately and shall not resume until negative pressure and/or electric power has been fully restored. When a power failure or loss of negative pressure lasts, or is expected to last, longer than thirty (30) minutes, the following sequence of events shall occur.
1. All make up air inlets shall be sealed airtight.
  2. All decontamination facilities shall be sealed airtight after evacuation of all personnel from the Work Area.
  3. All adjacent areas shall be monitored for potential fiber release upon discovery of and subsequently throughout, power failure.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

### 3.07 LOCKOUT OF HVAC SYSTEMS, ELECTRIC POWER, AND ACTIVE BOILERS

Prior to the start of any prep work, the asbestos abatement contractor shall employ skilled tradesmen with limited asbestos licenses for the following work:

- A. Disable all ventilating systems or other systems bringing air into or exhausting air out of the Work Area. Disable system by disconnecting wires removing circuit breakers, by lockable switch or other positive means to ensure against accidental re-starting of equipment.
- B. Lock out power to the Work Area by switching off all breakers and removing them from panels or by switching and locking entire panel. Label panel with following notation: "DANGER CIRCUIT BEING WORKED ON". Give all keys to Facility.
- C. Lock out power to circuits running through Work Area whenever possible by switching off and removing breakers from panel. If circuits must remain live, the Facility shall notify asbestos abatement contractor in order that he may secure a variance from NYCDEP. The asbestos abatement contractor shall protect all conduit and wires to remain and label all active circuits at intervals not to exceed 3 feet with tags having the following notation: "DANGER LIVE ELECTROCUTION HAZARD". The asbestos abatement contractor shall label all circuits in all locations including hidden locations that may be affected by the work in a similar manner.
- D. All boilers and other equipment within the work area shall be shut down, locked out, tagged out and the burner/boiler/equipment accesses and openings shall be sealed until abatement activities are complete. If the boiler or other exhausted equipment will be subject to abatement, all breeching, stacks, columns, flues, shafts, and double-walled enclosures serving as exhausts or vents shall be segregated from the affected boiler or equipment and sealed airtight to eliminate potential chimney effects within the work area.

## PART 4 – PREPARATION OF WORK AREA AND REMOVAL PROCEDURES

### 4.01 REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIAL

#### A. Asbestos abatement contractor Responsibility

Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for the proper removal of ACM from the Work Area using standard industry techniques. The Third-Party Air Monitor representative shall observe the Work.

#### 1. General Requirements:

- a. Removal of ACM shall be performed using wet methods. Dry removal of ACM is prohibited.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- b. Spray ACM with amended water with sufficient frequency and quantity to enhance penetration. Sufficient time shall be allowed for amended water to penetrate the material to the substrate prior to removal. All ACM shall be thoroughly wetted while work is being conducted.
- c. Accumulation of standing water on the floor of the Work Area is prohibited.
- d. Apply removal encapsulants, when used, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and guidelines.
- e. Containerize ACM immediately upon detachment from the substrate. Alternately, ACM may be dropped in to a flexible catch basin and promptly bagged. Detached ACM is not permitted to lie on the floor for any period of time. Excess air within the bag shall be removed before sealing. ACM shall not be dropped from a height of greater than 10 feet. Above 10 feet, dust free inclined chutes may be used. Maximum inclination from horizontal shall be 60-degrees for all chutes.
- f. Exits from the work area shall be maintained, or alternative exits shall be established, in accordance with section 1027 of the New York City Fire Code. Exits shall be checked at the beginning and end of each work shift against blockage or impediments to exiting.
- g. Signs clearly indicating the direction of exits shall be maintained and prominently displayed within the work area.
- h. No smoking signs shall be maintained and prominently displayed within the work place.
- i. At least one fire extinguisher with a minimum rating 2-A:10-B:C shall be required for each work place. In the case of large asbestos projects, at least two such fire extinguishers shall be required.
- j. If the containment area of an asbestos project covers the entire floor of the affected building, or an area greater than 15,000 square feet on any given floor, the installation of a negative air cut off switch or switches shall be required at a single location outside the work place, such as inside a stairwell, or at a secured location in the ground floor lobby when conditions warrant. The required switch or switches shall be installed by a licensed electrician pursuant to a permit issued by the Department of Buildings. If negative pressure ventilation equipment is used on multiple floors the cut off switch shall be able to turn off the equipment on all floors.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

B. Removal of ACM Utilizing Full Containment Procedures shall be as follows:

1. Preparation Procedures:

- a. Ensure that the Third-Party Air Monitor has performed area monitoring and established a background count prior to the preparatory operations for each removal area, as applicable.
- b. Shut down, isolate, and lock out or tag heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC) systems which serve or which pass through the Work Area. Vents within the Work Area and seams in HVAC components shall be sealed with tape and two layers of fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Filters in HVAC systems shall be removed and treated as asbestos-asbestos contaminated waste.
- c. Shut down, disconnect, and lock out or tag all electric power to the Work Area so that there is no possibility of its reactivation until after clearance testing of the Work Area.
- d. Provide and install decontamination enclosure systems in accordance with Sections 3.01 and 3.02 of this Section.
- e. Remove ACM that may be disturbed by the erection of partitions using tent procedures and wet removal methods. Removal shall be limited to a one-foot wide strip running the length/height of the partition.
- f. Pre-clean and remove moveable objects from the Work Area. Pre-cleaning shall be accomplished using HEPA-vacuum and wet-cleaning techniques. Store moveable objects at a location determined by the City.
- g. Protect carpeting that will remain in the Work Area.
  - (1) Pre-clean carpeting utilizing wet-cleaning techniques.
  - (2) Install a minimum of two layers of fire retardant 6-mil reinforced polyethylene sheeting over carpeting.
  - (3) Place a rigid flooring material, minimum thickness of 3/8-inch, over polyethylene sheeting.
- h. Pre-clean all fixed objects to remain within the Work Area using HEPA-vacuum and wet-cleaning techniques.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- i. Seal fixed objects with two individual layers, minimum, of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting.
- j. Pre-clean entire Work Area utilizing HEPA-vacuum and wet-cleaning techniques. Methods of cleaning that raise dust; such as dry sweeping or use of vacuum equipment not equipped with HEPA-filters, is prohibited.
- k. Install isolation barriers (i.e., sealing of all openings, including but not limited to windows, corridors, doorways, skylights, ducts, grills, diffusers, and other penetrations within the Work Area) using two layers of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting and duct-tape.
- l. Construct rigid framework to support Work Area barriers.
  - (1) Framework shall be constructed using 2-inch by 4-inch wooden or metal studs placed 16 inch on center when existing walls and/or ceiling do not exist for all openings greater than 32 square feet. Framework is not required except where one dimension is one foot or less or the opening will be used as an emergency exit.
  - (2) Apply a solid construction material, minimum thickness of 3/8-inch to the Work Area side of the framing. In secure interior areas, not subject to access from the public or building occupants, an additional layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting may be substituted for the rigid construction material.
  - (3) Caulk all wall, floor, ceiling, and fixture joints to form a leak tight seal.
- m. Seal floor drains, sumps, shower tubs, and other collection devices with two layers of 6-mil fire retardant plastic and fire rated plywood, as necessary, and provide a system to collect all water used by the asbestos abatement contractor. Collected water shall be passed through a water filtration system prior to being discharged into the sanitary sewer.
- n. Remove ceiling mounted objects not previously sealed that will interfere with removal operations. Mist object and surrounding ACM with amended water prior to removal to minimize fiber dispersal. Clean all moveable objects using HEPA-vacuum and wet-cleaning techniques prior to removal from the Work Area.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- o. Fiberglass insulation with intact coverings shall be protected in place during abatement activities. These materials shall be protected with two layers of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting as isolation barriers and two additional layers of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting serving as primary and secondary surface barriers.
- p. Install and initiate operation of AFDs to provide a negative pressure and a minimum of four air changes per hour within the Work Area relative to surrounding non-Work Areas. Do not shut down AFDs until the Work Area is released to the City following final clearance procedures. The use of HEPA-filtered vacuum to produce a negative air pressure inside the enclosure is prohibited.
- q. Maintain emergency and fire exits from the Work Areas or establish alternative exits satisfactory to the local fire officials. Emergency exits and routes shall be established and clearly marked with florescent paint or other effective designations to permit easy location from anywhere within the Work Area. Cutting tools (e.g., knife, razor) shall be attached to the work area side of the sheeting for use in the event that the barrier must be cut open to allow egress. Emergency exits shall be secured to prevent access from uncontaminated areas and yet permit emergency exiting. Exits shall be checked daily against exterior blockage or impediments to exiting.
- r. Temporary lighting within the Work Area and decontamination system shall be provided as required to achieve minimum illumination levels.
- s. Hand power tools used to drill, cut into, or otherwise disturb ACM shall be manufacturer-equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust ventilation.
- t. Prior to being plasticized, the Work Areas shall be cleaned using HEPA vacuum equipment and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate. Methods that raise dust, such as dry sweeping or vacuuming with equipment not equipped with HEPA filters, shall not be used.
- u. Plasticize the area after pre-cleaning, using the following procedures.
  - (1) Cover floors with one layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting, turning layer a minimum of 6 inches up wall, and seal layer to wall.
  - (2) Cover walls with one layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting, overlapping wall layer a minimum of 6 inches, and seal layer to floor layer.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- (3) Cover floors with a second layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting, turning layer a minimum of 12 inches up wall, and seal layer to wall.
  - (4) Cover walls with a second layer of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, overlapping wall layer a minimum of 12 inches, and seal layer to floor layer.
  - (5) In areas where demolition is required to access ACM, a layer of fire retardant 6-mil reinforced polyethylene sheeting shall be placed on the floor of the enclosure.
  - (6) Perform demolition required to access ACM. Debris resulting from demolition activities shall be disposed of as ACM waste as described in this Specification.
  - (7) Repeat preparation of areas accessed by demolition activities as described above.
- v. Suspended ceiling tiles and T-grid components shall remain in place until the preparation of the Work Area below the ceiling tiles are completed and personnel and equipment decontamination enclosures have been constructed.
- w. Scaffolds shall be provided for workers engaged in work that cannot safely be performed from the ground or other solid Work Area surface.
- x. Means of egress shall not be obstructed by hardwall barriers.
- y. Pre-Removal Inspections.
- (1) Prior to removal of any ACM, the asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the Third-Party Air Monitor and request a pre-removal inspection. Posting of warning signs, building of decontamination enclosure systems, and all other preparatory steps have been taken prior to notification of the Third-Party Air Monitor.
  - (2) Asbestos abatement contractor shall correct any deficiencies observed by Third-Party Air Monitor at no additional cost to City.
  - (3) Following the Third-Party Air Monitor's approval of the Work Area preparations, removal of ACM may commence.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. Removal of ACM Within Full Containment:
  - a. Mist material with amended water. Allow sufficient time for the amended water to penetrate the material to be removed.
  - b. Remove the material using hand tools such as scrapers or putty knives. Wire-mesh or wood lathe reinforcing, when present, shall be cut into manageable pieces and disposed of as ACM.
  - c. Remove any residual material from the substrate using wet cleaning methods and nylon-bristled hand brushes.
  - d. Place the removal material immediately into a properly labeled fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene bag. All material shall be properly containerized and decontaminated prior to removal from the Work Area.
  - e. Following the completion of removal of insulation, all visible residue shall be removed from the substrate.
3. Following Removal of ACM utilizing Full Containment Procedures:
  - a. First Cleaning:
    - (1) Remove any visible accumulation of asbestos material and debris. HEPA-vacuuming and wet cleaning shall be performed on all surfaces inside the Work Area. All sealed drums, plastic bags, and equipment used in the Work Area shall be removed from the Work Area.
    - (2) Upon request of the asbestos abatement contractor, the Third-Party Air Monitor will perform a visual inspection. Evidence of asbestos contamination identified during the inspection will necessitate further cleaning as heretofore specified.
    - (3) Remove first layer of plastic sheathing inside the Work Area. The isolation barriers and decontamination facility shall remain in place and be utilized.
  - b. Second Cleaning:
    - (1) After the first cleaning, the Work Area shall be vacated for twelve hours to allow fibers to settle.
    - (2) All objects and surfaces in the Work Area shall be HEPA - vacuumed and wet cleaned for a second cleaning.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- (3) A thin coat of lockdown encapsulant shall be applied to all plastic covered surfaces in the Work Area.
- (4) When the encapsulant is dry, second layer of polyethylene sheeting on the walls, ceiling and floors shall be removed. Do not remove seals from doors, windows, Isolation Barriers or disconnect the negative pressure equipment.

### c. Third Cleaning:

- (1) A minimum of four hours after the second cleaning, all the surfaces in the Work Area shall be HEPA-vacuumed and wet cleaned for a third cleaning.
- (2) Upon the request of the asbestos abatement contractor, the Third-Party Air Monitor will do final visual inspection for re-occupancy. Evidence of asbestos contamination identified during the inspection will necessitate further cleaning as heretofore specified.
- (3) When the Work Area passes the Third-Party Air Monitor's visual re-occupancy inspection, air sampling shall not begin until at least one hour after the completion of the third cleaning. The Third-Party Air Monitor shall perform air monitoring using aggressive testing techniques. The Third-Party Air Monitor will approve re-occupancy if the specified fiber count in the Work Area is achieved according to the Third-Party Air Monitor.
- (4) When the Work Area passes the re-occupancy test, all controls and seals established shall be removed.
- (5) The cleaned layer of the surface barriers shall be removed from walls and floors.
- (6) The isolation barriers shall remain in place throughout cleanup. Decontamination enclosure systems shall remain in place and be utilized. A thin coat of lockdown encapsulant shall be applied to all surfaces in the work area which were not the subject of removal or abatement, including the cleaned layer of the surface barriers, but excepting sprinklers, standpipes, and other active elements of the fire suppression system.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- d. Final Barrier Removal:
    - (1) Upon receipt of acceptable clearance testing results, polyethylene sheeting and Isolation Barriers shall be removed and disposed accordingly as asbestos-containing material.
    - (2) The area surrounding the abatement work place shall be cleaned of any visible debris utilizing HEPA vacuum and wet methods.
  - e. The Third-Party Air Monitor will conduct a final visual observation. Approval must be granted prior to break down of decontamination facility and asbestos abatement contractor demobilization.
- C. Removal of ACM Utilizing NYC DEP § 1-106 Tent Containment Procedures shall be as follows:
- 1. Preparation Procedures:
    - a. Ensure that the Third-Party Air Monitor has performed area monitoring and established a background count prior to the preparatory operations for each removal area, as applicable.
    - b. Shut down, isolate, and lock out or tag heating, ventilating, and air conditioning (HVAC) systems which serve or which pass through the Work Area. Vents within the Work Area and seams in HVAC components shall be sealed with tape and two layers of polyethylene sheeting. Filters in HVAC systems shall be removed and treated as asbestos contaminated waste.
    - c. Shut down, disconnect, and lock out or tag all electric power to the Work Area so that there is no possibility of its reactivation until after clearance testing of the Work Area.
    - d. Provide and install decontamination enclosure systems in accordance with PART 3 - EXECUTION, Sections 3.01 and 3.02 of these Specifications Decontamination facilities may be remote from the Work Areas.
    - e. Construct rigid framework to support Work Area barriers. Framework shall be constructed using 2-inch by 4-inch wooden or metal studs placed 16 inch on center when existing walls and/or ceiling do not exist.
    - f. Seal floor drains, sumps, shower tubs, and other collection devices with two layers of fire retardant 6-mil plastic and minimum 3/8" fire rated plywood, as necessary, and provide a system to collect all water used by the Contractor. Collected water shall be passed through a

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

water filtration system prior to being discharged into the sanitary sewer. Any opening greater than 32 square feet shall be framed with 2-inch by 4-inch studding placed 16 inches on center.

- g. Install and initiate operation of AFDs to provide a negative pressure and a minimum of four air changes per hour and negative pressure of -0.02" of water column within the Work Area relative to surrounding non-Work Areas. Do not shut down AFDs until the Work Area is released to the City following final clearance procedures. The use of HEPA-filtered vacuums to produce a negative air pressure inside the enclosure is prohibited.
- h. Maintain emergency and fire exits from the Work Areas or establish alternative exits satisfactory to the local fire officials. Emergency exits and routes shall be established and clearly marked with florescent paint or other effective designations to permit easy location from anywhere within the Work Area. Emergency exits shall be secured to prevent access from uncontaminated areas and yet permit emergency exiting. Exits shall be checked daily against exterior blockage or impediments to exiting.
- i. Temporary lighting within the Work Area and decontamination system shall be provided as required to achieve minimum illumination levels.
- j. Hand power tools used to drill, cut into, or otherwise disturb ACM shall be manufacture equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust ventilation.
- k. Prior to being plasticized, the Work Areas shall be cleaned using HEPA-vacuum equipment and/or wet cleaning methods as appropriate. Methods that raise dust, such as dry sweeping or vacuuming with equipment not equipped with HEPA filters, shall not be used.
- l. There shall be an airlock at the entrance to the tent, unless there is an attached worker or waste decontamination system.
- m. Plasticize the area after pre-cleaning, using the following procedures. Do not apply polyethylene sheeting to the wall and ceiling surfaces that will be demolished to access ACM.
  - (1) Cover floor with one layer of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, turning layer a minimum of 12 inches up wall, and seal layer to wall.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- (2) Cover walls with one layer of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, overlapping wall layer a minimum of 12 inches, and seal layer to floor layer.
- (3) Cover ceilings with one layer of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, overlapping wall layer a minimum of 12 inches, and seal layer to wall layer.
- (4) Repeat procedure for second layer. All joints in polyethylene sheeting shall be glued and taped in such a manner as to prohibit air passage. Joints on plastic layers shall be staggered to reduce the potential for water to penetrate.
- (5) In areas where demolition is required to access ACM, a layer of fire retardant 6-mil reinforced polyethylene sheeting shall be placed on the floor of the enclosure.
- (6) Perform demolition required to access ACM. Debris resulting from demolition activities shall be disposed of as ACM as described in this Specification.
- (7) Repeat preparation of areas accessed by demolition activities as described above.
- (8) Suspended ceiling tiles and T-grid components shall remain in place until the preparation of the Work Area below the ceiling tiles are completed and personnel and equipment decontamination enclosures have been constructed.
- (9) Protect non-ACM insulation within the Work Area(s) with two individual layers of fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene sheeting. Sheeting shall remain in-place until satisfactory clearance air monitoring results are achieved.

### n. Pre-Removal Inspections

- (1) Prior to removal of any ACM, the Contractor shall notify the Third-Party Air Monitor and request a pre-removal inspection. Posting of warning signs, building of decontamination enclosure systems, and all other preparatory steps have been taken prior to notification of the Third-Party Air Monitor.
- (2) Contractor shall correct any deficiencies observed by Third-Party Air Monitor at no additional cost to City.
- (3) Following the Third-Party Air Monitor's approval of the Work Area preparations, removal of ACM may commence.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. Removal of ACM Utilizing Tent Containment Procedure:
  - a. Tent procedures shall be limited to the removal of less than 260 linear feet and 160 square feet of ACM and shall not result in disturbance of ACM during tent erection.
  - b. Mist material with amended water and/or foam. Allow sufficient time for the amended water to penetrate the material to be removed.
  - c. Cut bands, wire or other items placed over insulation or ACM.
  - d. Remove the ACM using hand tools such as knives or scrapers.
  - e. Exercise caution when removing ACM.
  - f. Remove any residual asbestos-containing material from the substrate using wet cleaning methods.
  - g. Seal exposed ends of remaining insulation or ACM with a "wetable cloth" and/or encapsulant.
  - h. Place the removed material immediately into a properly labeled fire retardant 6-mil polyethylene bag. All material shall be properly containerized and decontaminated prior to removal from the Work Area.
  - i. Following the completion of removal of ACM, all visible residues shall be removed from the substrate.
3. Following Removal of ACM Utilizing Tent Containment or Tent Procedure:
  - a. Clean all visible accumulations of loose ACM. Metal shovels shall not be used within the Work Area.
  - b. Accumulations of dust shall be cleaned continuously until completion of clean up.
  - c. After removal of all visible accumulations of ACM, the area shall be:
    - (1) Wet cleaned using rags, mops or sponges.
    - (2) Permitted sufficient time to dry, prior to HEPA vacuuming all substrates.
    - (3) Lightly encapsulated to lockdown residual asbestos. A thin coat of an encapsulating agent shall be applied to any surfaces in the Work Area which were not the subject of removal or other remediation activities. In no event shall encapsulant be

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

applied to any surface that was the subject of removal or other remediation activities prior to obtaining satisfactory clearance air monitoring results. Contractor shall request and pass a visual inspection performed by the consultant before proceeding to the next step. Documentation of passing this inspection shall be recorded in a daily logbook.

- (4) The Third-Party Air Monitor will conduct a visual observation of the Work Area to verify the absence of asbestos-containing waste materials.
- (5) If the Work is accepted by the Third-Party Air Monitor based on the inspection, Contractor shall be notified. Conduct the following activities in accordance with the contract and all applicable laws, codes, rules and regulations.
  - (a) All waste shall be removed from the Work Area and holding areas.
  - (b) All tools and equipment are to be removed and decontaminated in the decontamination enclosure system.
- (6) If the Work is not approved, the Third-Party Air Monitor will inform Contractor who will then HEPA-vacuum and/or wet-clean the Work Area. The Third-Party Air Monitor will then perform a subsequent visual observation. This process will continue until the Third-Party Air Monitor accepts the Work Area as clean.
- (7) The Work Area shall be vacated for a minimum of one hour to allow fibers to settle prior to clearance air monitoring, when required.

### d. Final Barrier Removal

- (1) Upon receipt of acceptable clearance testing results polyethylene sheeting (inside layers) and Isolation Barriers shall be removed and disposed accordingly as ACM. The tent shall be collapsed inward, enclosing the contaminated clothing. This contaminated material shall be disposed of in another plastic bag. The HEPA vacuum shall be decontaminated and sealed.
- (2) The area surrounding the abatement work place shall be cleaned of any visible debris utilizing HEPA-vacuum and wet methods.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- e. The Third-Party Air Monitor will conduct final visual. Approval must be granted prior to break down of decontamination facility and contractor demobilization. Other Information: Extra time required to clean Work Areas in order to achieve clearance criteria shall not be considered grounds for an extension of time for contract completion.
- D. Removal of ACM from Vertical Exterior Surfaces utilizing NYCDEP Title 15, Chapter 1 §1-109 Abatement from Vertical Exterior Surfaces procedures shall be as follows:

Preparation procedures: This procedure shall apply to the abatement of asbestos-containing materials from vertical exterior surfaces such as, but not limited to caulking or glazing compounds, asphaltic materials or tar, cement siding or shingles (including transite), paints, sealants coping stone caps or clay roof tiles.

- a. The entire surface to be abated and ground-level perimeter shall be considered the work area unless partitions and warning tape are used to define the work area.
- b. A restricted area shall be established using warning tape extending at least 25 feet from the affected areas of the building or to the nearest vertical obstruction or the curb.
- c. The restricted area may be entered only by certified workers or authorized visitors.
- d. Before plasticizing, the restricted area shall be inspected for ACM debris and, if necessary, pre-cleaned using HEPA vacuums and wet methods.
- e. All openings to the building or structure's interior which are within 25 feet of the affected ACM shall be closed and sealed.
- f. Scaffolding erected to access the ACM shall be constructed, maintained, and used in accordance with applicable federal, state, and city laws.
- g. Horizontal surfaces beneath the affected ACM shall be covered with two layers of fire-retardant 6-mil plastic to a width of six feet.
- h. Elevated platforms being used to access the affected ACM shall be plasticized with two layers of fire-retardant 6-mil plastic, which shall extend up from the platform to at least the height of the mid-rail on three sides, and shall be attached directly to the building just below the surfaces under abatement.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- i. The ground-level restricted area shall be cleared of all moveable objects and plasticized with two sheets of fire-retardant 6-mil plastic, which shall be extended one foot up the side of the building. The plasticized area shall be ten feet wide for every floor up to a maximum width of thirty feet, or to the curb. This plastic shall be cleaned, replaced, and disposed of as asbestos waste at the end of each shift.
  - j. Sidewalk bridges in the restricted area shall be covered with two layers of fire retardant 6-mil plastic, placed over and secured to the bridge, spread across the full width, draped over the side to ground level, and extended to a width of at least thirty feet.
  - k. Establish a remote decontamination unit in accordance with Section 3.01 within the restricted area.
  - l. Construct all elevated work platforms a minimum of one foot below the surface to be abated.
  - m. Pre-Removal Inspections
    - (1) Prior to removal of any ACM, the asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the Project Monitor and request a pre-removal inspection. Posting of warning signs, building of decontamination enclosure systems, and all other preparatory steps have been taken prior to notification of the Third-Party Air Monitor.
    - (2) Asbestos abatement contractor shall correct any deficiencies observed by Third-Party Air Monitor at no additional cost to City.
    - (3) Following the Project Monitor's approval of the Work Area preparations, removal of ACM may commence.
2. Removal of ACM Materials:
- a. Mist material with amended water. Allow sufficient time for the amended water to penetrate the material to be removed.
  - b. Remove the caulk using hand tools such as knives or scrapers.
  - c. Exercise caution when removing caulking material to prevent damage to windows or skylight openings.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- d. Remove any residual asbestos-containing caulking material from the substrate using wet cleaning methods and nylon-bristled hand brushes. The use of metal bristled brushes is prohibited.
  - e. Place the removed material immediately into a properly labeled 6-mil polyethylene bag. All material shall be properly containerized and decontaminated prior to removal from the Work Area.
  - f. Following the completion of removal of caulking, all visible residues shall be removed from the substrate.
  - g. Air sampling shall be conducted in compliance with NYC DEP Title 15 Chapter 1, §1-41 Air Sampling Schedule. This sampling shall be performed by the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm.
3. Following Removal of ACM :
- a. The stripped substrate shall be HEPA vacuumed and wet-wiped.
  - b. A visual clearance inspection shall be conducted by the asbestos handler supervisor and project monitor after the work area dries, to ensure the absence of ACM residue or debris in the work area.
  - c. After the inspection is completed, the warning tapes and barriers may be removed.
  - d. The clearance inspection shall be documented in the log and the project air sampling log.
  - e. Air monitoring shall be conducted in accordance with relevant provisions.
  - f. Asbestos abatement contractor shall request and pass a visual inspection performed by the consultant before proceeding to the next step. Documentation of passing this inspection shall be recorded in a daily logbook.
  - g. The Third-Party Air Monitor will conduct a visual observation of the Work Area to verify the absence of asbestos-containing waste materials.
  - h. If the Work is accepted by the Third-Party Air Monitor based on the inspection, asbestos abatement contractor shall be notified. Conduct the following activities in accordance with the contract and all applicable laws, codes, rules and regulations:
    - (1) All waste shall be removed from the Work Area and holding areas.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- (2) All tools and equipment are to be removed and decontaminated in the decontamination enclosure system.
- i. If the Work is not approved, the Third-Party Air Monitor will inform Asbestos abatement contractor who will then HEPA-vacuum and/or wet-clean the Work Area. The Third-Party Air Monitor will then perform a subsequent visual observation. This process will continue until the Third-Party Air Monitor accepts the Work Area as clean.
  - j. Final Barrier Removal
    - (1) Upon receipt of acceptable observation results, polyethylene sheeting and barrier tape shall be removed and disposed accordingly as ACM.
    - (2) The area surrounding the abatement work place shall be cleaned of any visible debris utilizing HEPA vacuum and wet methods.
    - (3) The Third-Party Air Monitor will conduct final visual inspection. Approval must be granted prior to break down of decontamination facility and asbestos abatement contractor demobilization. Other Information: Extra time required to clean Work Areas in order to achieve clearance criteria shall not be considered grounds for an extension of time for contract completion.

### 4.02 MAINTENANCE OF CONTAINED WORK AREA AND DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE SYSTEMS

- A. Ensure that barriers are installed in a manner appropriate to the expected weather conditions during the project and for its duration. Repair damaged barriers and remedy defects immediately upon their discovery. Visually inspect barriers at the beginning and end of each work period.
- B. Visually inspect non-Work Areas and the decontamination enclosure system for water leakage. Check the floor below, ceiling and walls, and view beneath/or around the decontamination enclosure system, for signs of leakage. Perform the visual inspection a minimum of two times for each 8-hour work shift.

PART 5 – ASBESTOS WASTE MANAGEMENT

5.01 ACM WASTE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The asbestos abatement contractor and all sub-asbestos abatement contractors are specifically alerted to the illegal practice of combining asbestos-containing waste (ACW) from one project with the ACW of other projects without using the services of a permitted waste transfer station as defined by 6 NYCRR Part 360 and 364. As part of the shop drawing submittals, the Asbestos abatement contractor must submit for approval the proposed method of transportation and disposal that will be utilized to manage the ACW of this Contract. If a permitted transfer station is to be used, the cost shall be included in the work. The asbestos abatement contractor must submit a waste manifest consistent with whatever approved method is utilized as part of the invoicing and payment procedures.
- B. The asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain compliance with the strictest set of regulations of Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY, NYC LL 70/85, NYS DOL ICR 56, USEPA, Asbestos Regulation 40 CFR Section 61.152, 29 CFR 1926.1101, 29 CFR 1910.1200 (F) of OSHA's Hazard Communication Standards, and other applicable standards.

**NOTE:** Any penalties incurred for failure to comply with any of the above regulations will be the sole responsibility for fines imposed due to negligence of the Asbestos abatement contractor.

- C. When presenting ACW for storage at the generation site, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall:
1. Wet down ACW in a manner sufficient to prevent all visible emissions of dust into the air.
  2. Seal material in a leak tight container while wet.
  3. Keep ACW separate from any other waste.
- D. When presenting ACW for storage away from the site of generation, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall:
1. Ensure that ACW has been properly packaged as per requirements above.
  2. Examine the containers of ACW to ensure that there are no breaks in the containers and that no visible dust is being released into the air.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

3. If examination reveals damage to a container of ACW the Asbestos abatement contractor or person accepting the waste shall immediately wet down the ACW and repackage it into a clean leak tight container. The subsequent repackaging shall be the financial responsibility of the Asbestos abatement contractor and occur at no extra cost to the City.
  4. Keep ACW separate from any other waste.
- E. When storing ACW – The Asbestos abatement contractor shall:
1. Ensure that the ACW has been sufficiently wetted down in tight containers.
  2. Re-wet and repackage any damaged containers.
  3. Maintain at storage site an adequate supply of spare leak tight containers.
  4. Maintain at storage site an adequate supply of amended water.
  5. Keep ACW separate from any other waste.
  6. Keep ACW in a secured, enclosed, and locked container.
  7. If the Asbestos abatement contractor has intention of sorting a quantity of ACW greater than or equal to 50 cubic yards, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall:
    - a. Submit a written request and receive written approval from the City.
- F. When presenting for transport, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall:
1. Ensure that ACW has been sufficiently wetted down.
  2. Examine the integrity of the container's airtight seal.
  3. Re-wet and repackage any damaged containers.
  4. Keep ACW separate from all other waste.
  5. Ensure that a person transporting asbestos waste holds a valid permit issued pursuant to law.
  6. Frequency of Waste Removal:
    - a. Properly packaged and labeled asbestos waste shall be removed from the site on a daily basis. Under no circumstance shall asbestos waste be stored on site without written approval from the City. The Waste Hauler and landfill shall be as indicated on the notifications to regulatory agencies.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- G. Waste Load-out Through Equipment Decontamination Enclosure (Full Decontamination Facility): Place asbestos waste in disposal bags. Large items not able to fit into disposal bags shall be wrapped in one layer of 6-mil thick polyethylene sheeting. Clean outer covering of asbestos waste package by wet cleaning and/or HEPA-vacuuming in a designated part of the Work Area. Move wrapped asbestos waste to the equipment washroom, wet clean each bag or object and place it inside a second disposal bag, or a second layer of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting, as the item's physical characteristics demand. Air volume shall be minimized, and the bags or sheeting shall be sealed airtight with tape.
1. The clean containerized items shall be moved to the equipment decontamination enclosure holding area pending load-out to storage or disposal facilities.
  2. Workers who have entered the equipment decontamination enclosure system from the uncontaminated non-Work Area shall perform load-out of containers from the decontamination enclosure holding area. Dress workers moving asbestos waste to storage or disposal facilities in clean overalls of a color different than from that of coveralls used in the Work Area. Ensure that workers do not enter from uncontaminated areas into the equipment washroom or the Work Area. Ensure that contaminated workers do not exit the Work Area through the equipment decontamination enclosure system.
  3. Thoroughly clean the equipment decontamination enclosure system immediately upon completion of the waste load-out activities, and at the completion of each work shift.
  4. Labeled ACM waste containers or bags shall not be used for non-ACM debris or trash. Any materials placed in labeled containers or bags, including those turned "inside-out", shall be handled and disposed of as ACM waste.
- H. All asbestos materials, wastes, shower water, polyethylene, disposable equipment and supplies shall be disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste, in accordance with the EPA regulation (40 CFR, Section 61.150) and those requirements of the New York Department of Environmental Conservation and New York City Department of Sanitation.
- I. All asbestos materials shall be prepared for transportation in accordance with this specification and all applicable Federal, State, County and City Regulations. asbestos abatement contractor shall submit the following documentation:
1. Where applicable, an EPA Generator's identification number which has been obtained from the EPA for all asbestos waste generated from the project.
  2. Applicable State Waste Hauler license and registration numbers.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

3. Federal Hazardous Materials Waste Hauler number.
  4. Designated landfill EPA Permit numbers.
- J. Prior to loading asbestos waste the enclosed cargo areas (dumpster) shall be prepared as follows:
1. Clean via HEPA-vacuum and wet wipe techniques the enclosed cargo areas of all visible debris prior to preparing with polyethylene.
  2. Line the cargo area with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting to prevent contamination from damaged or leaking containers. Floor sheeting shall be installed first and extend up the walls a minimum of 24-inches. Wall sheeting shall be overlapped and taped securely into place.
- K. Asbestos-containing waste shall be placed on level surfaces in the cargo area of the dumpster and shall be packed tightly to prevent any shifting or tipping of the waste during transportation.
- L. Asbestos-containing waste shall not be thrown into or dropped from the dumpster. All material shall be handled carefully to prevent rupture of the containers.
- M. All personnel engaged in handling and loading of asbestos contaminated waste outside of the Work Area shall wear protective clothing. The disposable clothing shall include head, body and foot protection and color of clothing shall be different from abatement personnel in the Work Area. Minimum respiratory protection shall be half face, dual cartridge, air purifying respirators with HEPA-filters.
- N. Asbestos abatement contractor shall immediately clean debris or residue observed on containers or surfaces outside of the Work Area. Cleaning shall be via HEPA equipped wet/dry vacuums only.
- O. All asbestos-containing waste shall be transported from the abatement site to the landfill by a registered Waste Hauler. When transporting ACW:
1. Ensure that the ACW has been sufficiently wetted down in a leak tight container.
  2. Re-wet and repackage any damaged containers.
  3. Maintain at storage site an adequate supply of spare leak tight containers.
  4. Maintain at storage site an adequate supply of amended water.
  5. Keep ACW separate from any other waste.
- P. Keep ACW in a secured, enclosed, and locked container.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- Q. Waste transport documents shall conform to the requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation, Hazardous Materials Transportation Regulation, 49 CFR Part 173 and EPA 40 CFR 61.150 (d)(1)(2). Shipping documents shall be clearly marked with the required designation "RQ Asbestos". Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a copy of this document to the City.
- R. A uniform hazardous waste manifest shall be prepared by the asbestos abatement contractor and signed by the asbestos abatement contractor each time the asbestos abatement contractor ships a dumpster load of Asbestos-Containing Waste Material. The uniform hazardous waste manifest shall include the site of waste generation, the names and addresses of the Transporter, the asbestos abatement contractor, and the landfill operator with information on the type and number of asbestos-waste containers, time and date. Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide the Construction Project Manager, Third-Party Air Monitor or authorized designated representative with signed copies of the waste manifest before each departure.
- S. Asbestos abatement contractor or his registered hazardous Waste Hauler shall transport asbestos-containing waste material from the abatement site directly to the specified disposal site. Asbestos abatement contractor or their Waste Hauler shall not accept material from any other site when transporting asbestos-containing waste material from the abatement site. The authorized DDC representative or Construction Project Manager reserves the right to travel with asbestos abatement contractor's Waste Hauler to the waste disposal site. No intermediate storage of waste material (i.e., asbestos abatement contractor's warehouse) shall be permitted.
- T. Final or progress application for payments will not be processed unless all hazardous waste manifests generated to date have been received and reviewed by the Construction Project Manager.
- U. All asbestos materials, wastes, shower water, polyethylene disposable equipment and supplies shall be disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste, in accordance with the EPA regulation (40 CFR, Section 61.150) and those requirements of the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation and the New York Department of Sanitation.
- V. Asbestos abatement contractor shall transport all sealed drums to a landfill disposal site approved by the Department of Environmental Conservation and the EPA. Transportation shall be performed by a New York State registered Waste Hauler, where required. When presenting the ACW for disposal the Asbestos abatement contractor or sub Asbestos abatement contractor shall:
1. Ensure that waste container is properly labeled according to the National Emission Standard for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAP); Asbestos Revision, 40 CFR, Part 61, Subpart M. The labels shall include the name of the waste generator and the location where the waste was generated.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

2. Comply with all applicable orders issued pursuant to asbestos disposal.
  3. Ensure that ACW has been sufficiently wetted down.
  4. Re-wet and repackage any damaged containers.
  5. Keep ACW separate from all other wastes.
- W. Asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the waste disposal site, at least 24 hours prior to transportation of asbestos contaminated waste to be delivered. Asbestos abatement contractor shall determine if a larger notification period is required.
- X. At the site asbestos abatement contractors or Waste Hauler trucks shall approach the dump location as close as possible for unloading asbestos waste. Containers shall be carefully placed in the ground. Do not throw containers from truck.
- Y. Asbestos abatement contractor or Waste Hauler shall inspect containers as they are unloaded at the disposal site. Material in damaged containers shall be repacked in empty containers, as necessary.
- Z. Asbestos abatement contractor or Waste Hauler shall not remove asbestos-containing waste Material from drums unless required to do so by the disposal site City. Used drums shall be disposed of as asbestos-asbestos contaminated waste.
- AA. All personnel engaged in unloading of the containers at the waste site shall wear protective clothing. The disposable clothing shall include head, body and foot protection. Minimum respiratory protection shall be half face, dual cartridge, air purifying respirators with HEPA-filters. Workers shall remove their protective clothing at the disposal site, place it in labeled disposal bags and leave them with the deposited waste shipment.
- BB. For the compaction operation, the asbestos abatement contractor shall ensure that disposal sites personnel have been provided with personal protective equipment by the disposal operator. If the disposal site City has not provided this protective equipment, the asbestos abatement contractor shall supply protective clothing and respiratory protection for the duration of this operation (PAPR respirators are mandatory).
- CC. If containers are broken or damaged, the asbestos abatement contractor or Waste Hauler shall, using personnel who are properly trained and wearing proper protective equipment, shall repackage the waste in properly labeled containers. Asbestos abatement contractor shall then clean the entire truck and its contents using HEPA-vacuums and wet cleaning techniques until no visible residue is observed.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- DD. Following the removal of all containerized waste, the asbestos abatement contractor shall decontaminate the truck cargo area using HEPA-vacuums and/or wet cleaning techniques until no residue is observed. All 6-mil polyethylene sheeting shall be removed and discarded as asbestos-containing waste material along with contaminated cleaning material and protective clothing, in containers at the disposal site.
- EE. The transporter(s) of all asbestos waste shall not back-haul any items on his return from landfill/disposal site.
- FF. All asbestos waste shall be disposed of in an approved Asbestos Landfill site only.
1. NO PERSON UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL ABANDON ACW. The same shall be disposed of only by certified persons in approved landfills.
  2. A manifest form will be signed by the Landfill documenting receipt and acceptance of the asbestos-containing waste. This manifest will be furnished to the City of New York within thirty calendar days from the project completion date.
  3. It is the responsibility of the Asbestos abatement contractor to determine current waste handling, transportation and disposal regulations for the work site and for each waste disposal landfill. The Asbestos abatement contractor must comply fully with these regulations and all appropriate U.S. Department of Transportation, EPA and other Federal, State and Local entities' regulations and all other current legal requirements.
  4. The asbestos abatement contractor shall obtain an agreement from the transporter (s) that the practice of "Back-Hauling" will not be engaged in, with respect to any and all waste loads taken from this site during the work.
  5. The asbestos abatement contractor will document actual disposal of the waste at the designated landfill by having completed a Disposal Certificate and will provide a copy of the same to the Department of Design and Construction.

## ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

### PART 6 – ACCEPTANCE

#### 6.01 ACCEPTANCE

Upon satisfactory completion of all decontamination procedures, a certificate will be issued by the Construction Project Manager with copies to all parties.

- A. A letter of Compliance stating that all the work on the project was performed in accordance with the Specifications and all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
- B. All warranties as stated in the Specifications.

END OF SECTION 028213



SECTION 03 30 00

CAST IN PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes but is not limited to the following as shown on the drawings and as specified herein:

1. Foundation systems including footings, caissons, caisson caps, piles, walls, beams, piers, pilasters, pits and similar concrete.
2. Slabs on grade.
3. Structural slabs on grade.
4. Structural slabs on metal deck.
5. Cast-in-place slabs, beams, walls, and columns.
6. Topping slabs
7. Stair pan fills.
8. Furnishing and installing all required anchors and inserts.
9. Placing in the forms all inserts, anchors, anchor bolts, bearing plates and the like furnished by other trades for casting into the concrete and cleaning of same after stripping of forms.
10. Protection of all inserts, anchors, hangers, sleeves and supports furnished and set by others for the attachment of other work to the concrete, or required to permit the passage of other work through the concrete.
11. Supply, fabricate and place all required reinforcing bars, mesh and other reinforcement for concrete where shown, called for, and/or required complete with proper supporting devices.
12. Erection and removal of all formwork and waffle slab forms required to properly complete the work.
13. Finishing of all concrete work as hereinafter specified.
14. Curing and protection of all concrete work.
15. Site concrete consisting of curbs, walks, pads, boxes and the like as shown on the drawings.
16. Floor sealers and dust-proofing of all areas exposed and/or covered with carpet.
17. Cutting, patching, grouting, repairing and pointing up as required.
18. Vapor barrier system below slabs on grade.
19. Under slab drainage course.



20. Dewatering.
21. Waterproofing.
22. Grouting of all beam bearing plates and column base plates.
23. Embedded plates in all foundation walls.
24. Equipment pads as required.
25. All other work and materials as may be reasonably inferred and needed to make the work of this section complete.
26. Waste Management

**B. Related Requirements:**

1. Division 01, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 01, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 01, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 01, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements
5. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel"
6. Division 05 Section "Metal Deck"
7. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications"
8. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
9. Division 07 Section "Waterproofing"
10. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants"

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

**A. Product Data:** Submit data for proprietary materials and items, including the following:

1. Reinforcement
2. Supports for reinforcement
3. Forming accessories
4. Admixtures
5. Patching compounds
6. Waterstops
7. Joint systems
8. Curing compounds
9. Dry-shake finish materials
10. Others items as requested by Commissioner.

**B. Shop Drawings; Reinforcement:** Submit original shop drawings for fabrication, bending, and placement of concrete reinforcement. Comply with ACI 315 "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement" showing bar schedules, stirrup spacing, diagrams of bent bars, arrangement of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures. The shop drawings shall be prepared only by competent detailers, checked by the contractor prior to submission.



1. The shop drawings shall show construction, contraction and isolation joint locations and the added reinforcement required at same.
  2. Obtain and coordinate information for sleeves and openings in concrete, which are required for the work of other trades. Make coordinated drawings showing size and location of openings and sleeves and incorporate this information on the reinforcing drawings.
  3. Only those splices indicated on the approved shop drawings will be permitted.
  4. Provide elevations of all foundation walls and other structural elements to a minimum 1/4" scale.
- C. Shop Drawings Formwork: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of specific finished concrete surfaces. Show form construction including jointing, special form joint or reveals, location and pattern of form tie placement, and other items which affect exposed concrete visually. Commissioner's review is for general architectural applications and features only. Design of formwork for structural stability and efficiency is Contractor's responsibility, prepared by or under the supervision of a licensed professional engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Commissioner.
- E. Contraction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed contraction joints required per applicable codes and drawings.
1. Location of contraction joints is subject to approval of the Commissioner.
- F. The use of the Commissioner's electronic drawing files as a base for the reinforcement, formwork, and joint layout shop drawings will be permitted at the request of the detailer/designer upon completion and return of the waiver form. The use of the Commissioner's electronic drawing files as a base for shop drawing details will not be permitted. The detailer/designer will be responsible for compatibility of the files with his hardware or software. The electronic files are not to be considered the contract documents, the design team makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic files given to detailer/designer and their use will be at the detailer/designer's sole risk and without liability to the design team. The detailer/designer shall remove the project title box and all references to the structural drawings including drawing numbers and structural drawing sections and details. The detailer/designer shall also remove all reference to work not included in the concrete contract.
- G. Scaling of the Commissioner's drawings is not permitted. This applies to hard paper, electronic, and all other versions.



- H. **Samples:** Submit samples of materials as requested by Commissioner, including names, sources and descriptions.
- I. **Laboratory Test Reports:** Submit laboratory test reports for concrete materials, mix design test and microwave test.
- J. **Material Certificates:** Provide materials certificates in lieu of materials laboratory test reports when permitted by Commissioner. Manufacturer and Contractor, certifying that each material item complies with, or exceeds, specified requirements shall sign material certificates. Provide certification from admixture manufacturers that chloride content complies with specification requirements.
- K. **Cold Weather and Hot Weather Concreting Procedures:** Submit written descriptions of contractor's proposed cold weather and hot weather concreting procedures, when applicable.
- L. **Certification that pozzolanic materials conforms to ASTM C 618-01 (noting class C or class F), ASTM C 989 or ASTM C1240.**
- M. **Certified recycled steel content.** Provide cut sheets clearly indicating whether the rebar used meets the minimums for post-consumer OR post-industrial recycled contents. Or, if cut sheets are not available, obtain a written affidavit from the manufacturer stating the recycled content percentage and if the recycled content is post-consumer or post-industrial.
- N. **Formwork:** Specify whether reusable, permanent, salvaged or new wood forms are to be used.
- O. **Recycled Aggregate:** Provide laboratory reports indicating that aggregate conforms to ASTM C33 for structural concrete or ASTM D1241-00 for sub-base material. Provide cut sheets clearly indicating the source, total weight and volume of the recycled aggregate. If aggregate provided is a mix of virgin and recycled aggregates obtain a written affidavit from the manufacturer stating the recycled content percentage
- P. **VOC content for curing compounds, sealants and release agents:** Provide a cut sheet and a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for each curing compound, sealant, hardener and release agent used highlighting VOC contents. VOC content must be less than or equal to limits stated under "PRODUCTS".

#### 1.4 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. **The Contractor is to implement practices and procedures to meet the Project's Sustainable Design goals.** The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in this Section and in Related Sections of the Contract Documents, are implemented. Substitutions, or other changes to the Work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the Project's Sustainable Design goals.



- B. The Contractor is to efficiently use resources and energy while executing the Work of this Section. Resource efficient aspects to be considered in completing this Project include the use of techniques that minimize waste generation, reuse of construction materials on site where possible, and recycling of waste generated during the construction process.
- C. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:**  
The following criteria are **REQUIRED** for the products included in this section:
1. Concrete materials of this Section shall contain post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content as follows:
    - a. Fly ash: Concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Commissioner.  
Note: Commissioner will need to approve this or higher fly-ash content due to its effect on curing times.
    - b. Ground Granulated Blast Furnace (GGBF) Slag: Concrete shall incorporate GGBF Slag as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Commissioner
    - c. Recycled Steel: Reinforcing bar, rods, steel wire, welded wire fabric, anchors and ties, and miscellaneous steel accessories shall contain a minimum of 75% combined post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).

Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.

2. Preference shall be given to cast-in-place concrete containing raw materials harvested or extracted within 500 miles of the project site.
3. Concrete materials manufactured within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
4. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.

Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.



1.5 LEED SUBMITTALS

The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

- A. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
- a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment
- B. VOC Reporting Form: For all installed products and materials of this Section, complete the "VOC Reporting Form" (attached to end of Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements"). Information to be supplied for this Form shall include:
1. Provide generic name by means of product type or application of all field-applied interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings in this Section.
  2. Provide corresponding referenced standard limits.
  3. Provide full name of supplied product(s) and vendor or manufacturer for each product in this Section.
  4. For all field-applied interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings in this Section, provide Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content in grams/liter or lbs./gallon.
- C. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content. Provide concrete mix designs indicating the amount of recycled content, by weight.
- D. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.



- E. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- F. Assemble required LEED Submittal information into one (1) package for each Specification Section or sub-contractor. Incomplete or inaccurate LEED Submittals may be used as the basis for rejecting the submittal products or assemblies.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. LEED BUILDING - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

- B. **Installer Qualifications:** A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- C. **Source Limitations:** Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. **Welding Qualifications:** Qualify procedures per AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
- E. **Codes and Standards:** Comply with provisions of following codes, specifications, and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:
  - 1. New York City Building Code, Latest Edition.
  - 2. ACI 117 "Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary."
  - 3. ACI 211.1 "Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and mass concrete."
  - 4. ACI 211.2, "Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete."
  - 5. ACI 214R, "Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete."
  - 6. ACI 232.2R, "Use of Fly Ash in Concrete."



7. ACI 233R, "Guide to Use of Slag Cement in Concrete and Mortar."
8. ACI 234, "Guide for the Use of Silica Fume in Concrete."
9. ACI 301 "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
10. ACI 302.1R "Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction."
11. ACI 304R, "Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete."
12. ACI 305R "Hot Weather Concreting."
13. ACI 306.1-90 "Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting."
14. ACI 308.1 "Standard Specification for Curing Concrete."
15. ACI 309R, "Guide for Consolidation of Concrete."
16. ACI 311.4R, "Guide for Concrete Inspections."
17. ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."
18. ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary."
19. ACI 347 "Guide to Formwork of Concrete."
20. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute, (CRSI) "Manual of Standard Practice."
21. CRSI-WCRSI, "Placing Reinforcing Bars."
22. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code Reinforcing Steel."
23. The ACI Field Reference Manual, SP-15 shall be kept at the job site, and the practices set forth therein shall be strictly adhered to.
24. ASTM C 618, Standard Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Uses as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete
25. ASTM C 311, Standard Methods of Sampling and Testing Fly Ash and Natural Pozzolans for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete
26. ASTM C 989, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in Concrete Mortars
27. Standard Practice ACI 226.R1, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag as a Cementitious Constituent in Concrete
28. ASTM Standards as applicable in the building code of the local jurisdiction and as noted in this specification.

F. Concrete Testing Service: City of New York will engage a testing laboratory acceptable to Commissioner to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes.

G. Materials and installed work may require testing and retesting at anytime during progress of work. Tests, including retesting of rejected materials for installed work, shall be done at Contractor's expense.

H. Mockups: Cast concrete slab-on-grade and formed-surface panels to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, floor treatments, and standard of workmanship.

1. Build panel approximately 200 sq. ft. for slab-on-grade and 100 sq. ft. for formed surface in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Commissioner.
2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.



**I. Preconstruction Meeting:**

1. At least 35 days prior to the start of the concrete construction schedule, the Contractor shall conduct a meeting to review the proposed mix designs and to discuss the required methods and procedures to achieve the required concrete construction. The Contractor shall send a pre-concrete conference agenda to all attendees 20 days prior to the scheduled date of the conference.
2. The Contractor shall require responsible representatives of every party who is concerned with the concrete work to attend the conference, including but not limited to the following:
  - a. Contractor's superintendent
  - b. Laboratory responsible for the concrete design mix
  - c. Laboratory responsible for field quality control
  - d. Concrete subcontractor
  - e. Ready-mix concrete producer
  - f. Admixture manufacturer(s)
  - g. Concrete pumping equipment manufacturer.
3. Minutes of the meeting shall be recorded, typed and printed by the contractor and distributed by him to all parties concerned within 5 days of the meeting. One copy of the minutes shall also be transmitted to the following for information purposes: City of New York and Commissioner.
4. The minutes shall include a statement by the concrete contractor indicating that the proposed mix design and placing can produce the concrete quality required by these specifications.
5. A minimum of a 4 cubic yard trial mixture containing all required admixtures shall be placed at the job site using the accepted methods of placing, finishing and curing. All applicable tests including slump, strength, air content, permeability, and air content will be performed. This shall occur at least four weeks before actual concreting operations with particular admixture begins. The admixture manufacturer(s) and inspectors shall be present. The same testing should be done in the laboratory at the same time for comparison. A test sample should be done for each condition that is to be placed.
6. The Commissioner will be present at the conference. The Contractor shall notify the Commissioner at least 10 days prior to the scheduled date of the conference.

**1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. The Contractor, before commencing work, shall examine all adjoining work on which this work is in any way dependent for proper installation and workmanship according to the intent of this specification, and shall report to the Commissioner any condition which prevents this contractor from performing first class work.
- B. Protection of Footings Against Freezing: Cover completed work at footing level with sufficient temporary or permanent cover as required to protect footings and adjacent subgrade against possibility of freezing; maintain cover for time period as necessary.



- C. Protect adjacent finish materials against spatter during concrete placement.
- D. Provide all barricades and safeguards at all pits, holes, shaft and stairway openings, etc., to prevent injury to workmen and others within and about the premises. Also provide all safeguards as required by the Building Code, OSHA, or any other departments having jurisdiction. Take full responsibility for all safety precautions and methods.
- E. Procedure of Work: The contractor shall keep himself constantly informed as to the progress of the work in the field, materials and men ready to start work immediately when conditions of preceding work are available or ready, wholly or in part, so as not to delay the progress of building work or to interfere with the progress of work of other contractors, and in any event he shall, within 24 hours after notice from the City of New York, proceed with such work as directed to maintain the uninterrupted progress of the work.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FORM MATERIALS

- A. Forms for Exposed Finish Concrete: Unless otherwise indicated, construct of plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood faced, or other acceptable panel-type materials, to provide continuous, straight, smooth, exposed surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints and to conform to joint system shown on drawings. Provide form material with sufficient strength and thickness to withstand pressure of newly placed concrete without bow or deflection.
  - 1. Use plywood complying with U.S. Product Standard PS-1 "B-B (Concrete Form) Plywood", Class I, Exterior Grade or better mill oiled and edge-sealed, with each piece bearing legible inspection trademark.
- B. Forms for Unexposed Finish Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or other acceptable material. Preference shall go to salvaged or re-used Dimensional Lumber. Provide lumber dressed on at least 2 edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Sustainability Requirements For Wood Used For Formwork



1. New Dimensional Lumber for Formwork: Provide wood certification documentation from the manufacturer/distributor, declaring conformance with Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) guidelines for certified wood building components. The following independent certification organizations are accredited by the FSC and provide the manufacturer/distributor with documentation:
    - a. Scientific Certification Systems, Inc..
    - b. Smart Wood Certification Program: Rainforest Alliance
  2. Salvaged or re-used Dimensional Lumber for Formwork: Provide documentation certifying products are from salvaged wood sources. Provide grading certificate for structural applications. For wood salvage wood resources see GreenSpec.
  3. If new dimensional Lumber is neither Certified nor salvaged: select regionally grown lumber with the lowest grade that meets performance requirements.
- D. Form Coatings: Provide VOC compliant commercial formulation form-coating compounds that will not bond with, stain nor adversely affect concrete surfaces, and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces. Use biodegradable form release agent listed below or equivalent made from soy or rapeseed oil.
- |                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. "Bio-Release EF"  | Dayton Superior                     |
| 2. "Soy Form Away"   | Cure & Seal by Natural Soy Products |
| 3. "Bio-Form"        | Leahy-Wolf Company                  |
| 4. "Duogard II"      | W. R. Meadows, Inc.                 |
| 5. "Atlas Bio-Guard" | Atlas Construction Supply, Inc.     |
- E. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
- F. Form Ties: Form ties and spreaders: prefabricated assemblies by Richmond; Superior, Dayton or approved equal. Wire ties shall not be used. Ties for foundation work shall be of snap design with removal cones and water seal washer. The use of magnetic material (such as carbon steel form ties) is not permitted in the following locations:
1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

## 2.2 REINFORCING MATERIALS

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60.
- B. Non-magnetic Stainless Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A955, Grade 60 (bars shall meet requirements of ASTM A276, Type 316LN).



- C. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767, Class II (2.0 oz. zinc psf) Class I (3.0 oz. zinc psf) hot-dip galvanized, after fabrication and bending.
- D. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars and Wire Welded Fabric: ASTM A 775 (as noted on plan and/or in section).
- E. Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, plain, cold-drawn steel.
- F. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, welded steel wire fabric. Galvanized at exterior locations, conditions permanently exposed to weather and/or water, and where noted on drawings.
- G. Welded Deformed Steel Wire Fabric: ASTM A 497, Galvanized.
- H. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 , plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- I. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 , plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated.
- J. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M.
- K. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.
- L. Supports for Reinforcement: Bolsters, chairs, spacers and other devices for spacing, supporting and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Use wire bar type supports complying with CRSI specifications.
  - 1. For epoxy coated reinforcement provide plastic protected chairs and plastic ties. All imperfections in the epoxy coating are to be repaired prior to placement of concrete.
    - a. Use recycled plastic rebar supports (give preference to local supplier if available). Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) International Plastics Group
      - 2) Eclipse Plastic
  - 2. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs which are plastic protected (CRSI, Class I) or stainless steel protected (CRSI, Class 2), at a spacing not to exceed 4'-0" on center in either direction.

### 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS



- A. Portland cement: ASTM C 150, Type I. Total percentage of Portland Cement is NOT to exceed 75% of the cementitious mix. Use one brand of cement throughout project, unless otherwise acceptable to the Commissioner. Provide either fly ash or GGBF in mix per sections below.
- a. Fly Ash: Cast-in-place concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes must be reviewed and approved by the Commissioner. Fly Ash shall not be used in conjunction with Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast Furnace Slag (GGBF): Cast-in-place concrete shall incorporate GGBF as a replacement for at least 40% (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes must be reviewed and approved by the Commissioner. GGBF shall not be used in conjunction with Fly Ash.
  - c. Pozzolans and Slags: These must be completely accounted for in the design mix. Mix design must meet minimum design requirements set in the contract documents. Additional admixtures may be required to meet early strength requirements and alternative cementitious material goals. If a "blended cement" is used which already contains a certain percentage of Pozzolans or Slags this content may offset or entirely satisfy the minimum percentage required.
    - 1) Coal Fly Ash: ASTM C 618 (Class C or Class F): ASTM C 618 (Note: Class F fly Ash will require higher amounts of air entraining admixtures than class C).
    - 2) Blast Furnace Slag: ASTM C989
    - 3) Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240
    - 4) Rice Hull (or "husk") Ash: ASTM C 618 Blended hydraulic cement, as defined by ASTM C 595 or ASTM C 1157
- B. Normal Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, and as herein specified. Provide aggregates from a single source for exposed concrete.
1. Local aggregates not complying with ASTM C 33 but which have shown by special test or actual service to produce concrete of adequate strength and durability may be used when acceptable to the Commissioner.
  2. Normal weight Fine Aggregate: washed, inert, natural or manufactured or combination thereof, sand conforming ASTM C33 gradation.
  3. Normal weight Coarse Aggregate: well graded crushed stone or washed gravel conforming to ASTM C33, sizes 57 for foundations and 67 for slabs and structure.
    - a. Recycled crushed concrete aggregate in concrete mixes is only to be used with approval of Commissioner. Recycled aggregate shall be used only as a substitute for coarse aggregate and must also be washed and well-graded, conforming to ASTM C33.



- b. For sub-base, slabs on grade and non-structural applications and Recycled Aggregate Materials are NOT required to meet the ASTM C 33 standard. In addition to concrete rubble, glass, porcelain, and tire chips can be used as filler material. Any inert material conforming to ASTM D1241 is acceptable for the applications described in this paragraph.
- C. **Lightweight Aggregates:** Well-graded crushed expanded shale produced by rotary kiln method. Solite or equal, conforming to ASTM C330.
- D. **Water:** Free from oils, acids, alkali, organic matter and other deleterious material to conform to ASTM C94. ASTM C94 for gray water use in the production of ready mixed concrete per approval by the Commissioner.
- E. **Air-Entraining Admixture:** Any material proposed for use as an air-entraining admixture should be tested in conformance with ASTM C 260.
1. **Liquid air-entrainment:** Use only agents derived from salts of wood resins. Select from products listed below or approved equal conforming to ASTM C-260.
- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| a. "Airmix"    | Euclid Chemical |
| b. "Darex AEA" | W. R. Grace     |
| c. "MB-VR"     | Master Builders |
- F. **Water-Reducing Admixture:** ASTM C 494.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| a. "Polyheed 997" | Master Builders |
| b. "Euclid MR"    | Euclid Chemical |
| c. "WRDA 64"      | W. R. Grace.    |
- G. **High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture (Superplasticizer):** ASTM C 494, Type F or Type G and containing not more than 0.05 percent chloride ions.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- |                                     |                     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| a. "Eucon 37, 1037 or Plastol 5000" | Euclid Chemical Co. |
| b. "Rheobuild 1000"                 | Master Builders     |
| c. "Glenium 7500"                   | Master Builders     |
| d. "Daracem-100"                    | W. R. Grace         |
- H. **Water Reducing, Non-Corrosive Accelerating Admixture:** The admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type C or E, and not contain more chloride ions than are present in municipal drinking water. The admixture manufacturer must have long-term non-corrosive test data from an independent testing laboratory (of at least a year's duration) using an acceptable accelerated corrosion test method such as that using electrical potential measures. Accelerating admixtures are not to be used as antifreeze agents. Accelerating admixtures are permitted only upon review by Commissioner.



1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. "Accelguard 80" Euclid Chemical Co.
  - b. "Daraset" W. R. Grace
  - c. "Pozzutec 20" Master Builders.
  
- I. Water-Reducing, Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D, and contain not more than 0.05 percent chloride ions.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Eucon Retarder 75" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Pozzolith 100XR" Master Builders.
    - c. "Plastiment" Sika Chemical Co.
    - d. "Daratard" W.R. Grace.
  
- J. Microsilica Admixture shall be dry densified or slurry formed. Microsilica shall come from the same source throughout the project. If a single source cannot be maintained, laboratory testing of each new source shall be required before acceptance by the Commissioner at no cost to the City of New York.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Emsac F 100" Elkem Chemical, Inc.
    - b. "Eucon MSA" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - c. "Force 10,000" W. R. Grace
  
- K. Prohibited Admixtures: Calcium chloride, thiocyanates or admixtures containing more than 0.05 percent chloride ions are not permitted.
  
- L. Certification: Written conformance to the above-mentioned requirements and the chloride ion content of admixtures will be required from the admixture manufacturer prior to mix design review by the Commissioner.
  
- M. Macro-Fibers: Engineered macro-synthetic fibers.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Tuf-Strand SF" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Fibermesh 650" Propex Concrete Systems
    - c. "Forta-Ferro" Forta
  
- N. Micro-Fibers: Engineered micro-synthetic fibers.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. "Fiberstrand N": Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Fibermesh 150": Propex Concrete Systems



c. "Ultra-Net"

Forta

- O. Natural Fiber Reinforced Concrete: Natural fiber reinforced concrete is permitted only upon review by the Commissioner. Refer to ACI 544.1R, chapter 5
- P. Corrosion Inhibitor: 30% calcium nitrite (where called for in the specifications or on the drawings). Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following at 3 gal/cy:
  - 1. "Eucon CIA" Euclid Chemical
  - 2. "DCI" W. R. Grace
  - 3. "Rheocrete CNI" Master Builders.
- Q. Contractor will be required to provide information demonstrating successful use in prior placement involving all admixtures.

## 2.4 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Greenstreak
    - b. Williams Products, Inc.
  - 2. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb
- B. Flexible PVC Waterstops: CE CRD-C 572, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BoMetals, Inc.
    - b. Greenstreak
    - c. Paul Murphy Plastics Company
    - d. Vinylex Corp.
  - 2. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb
  - 3. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick)



- C. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch (19 by 25 mm).
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; MiraSTOP
    - b. CETCO; Volclay Waterstop-RX
    - c. Concrete Sealants Inc.; Conseal CS-231
    - d. Greenstreak; Swellstop
    - e. Henry Company, Sealants Division; Hydro-Flex
    - f. JP Specialties, Inc.; Earth Shield Type 20

## 2.5 GROUT

- A. Non-Shrink, Non-Metallic Grout: The non-shrink grout shall be a factory pre-mixed grout and shall conform to ASTM C1107, "Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-Shrink)." In addition, the grout manufacturer shall furnish test data from an independent laboratory indicating that the grout when placed at a fluid consistency shall achieve 95% bearing under a 4' x 4' base plate.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Euco-NS" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Five Star Grout" U.S. Grout Corp.
    - c. "Masterflow 713 Plus" BASF
- B. High Flow Grout: Where high fluidity and/or increased placing time is required, use high flow grout. The factory pre-mixed grout shall conform to ASTM C1107, "Standard Specification for Packages Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink)." In addition, the grout manufacturer shall furnish test data from an independent laboratory indicating that the grout when placed at a fluid consistency shall achieve 95% bearing under a 18" x 36" base plate.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Euco Hi-Flow Grout" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Masterflow 928" BASF
    - c. "Five Star Fluid Grout 100" Five Star

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS



- A. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 1241, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2 inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
- B. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 1241, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8 inch sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.
- C. Non-slip Aggregate Finish: Provide fused aluminum oxide grits, or crushed emery, as abrasive aggregate for non-slip finish with emery aggregate containing not less than 40% aluminum oxide and not less than 25% ferric oxide. Use material that is factory-graded, packaged, rustproof and non-glazing, and is unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
- D. Absorptive Cover: Burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. per sq. yd., complying with AASHTO M 182, Class 2.
- E. Moisture-Retaining Cover: One of the following, complying with ASTM C 171.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Waterproof paper
    - b. Polyethylene film
    - c. Polyethylene-coated burlap
- F. Curing Compounds: The compound shall conform to ASTM C 309. Limit VOC content to 130 g/L. Use water-based curing compound. For surfaces receiving both a curing compound and additional flooring, verify that the curing compound and additional flooring are compatible.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. SealTight 1100</li><li>b. Kurez W VOX</li><li>c. Luster Seal WB STD</li><li>d. VOCOMP-25</li></ol>	<p>W.R. Meadows Euclid Chemical Co. Euclid Chemical Co. W.R. Meadows</p>
---	--
- G. Curing & Sealing Compounds: Only specify for slabs that will remain exposed, i.e. will not receive additional flooring. The compound shall conform to ASTM C1315. Limit VOC content to 130 g/L. Use water-based curing compound.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Luster Seal WB STD</li><li>b. VOCOMP-25</li></ol>	<p>Euclid Chemical Co. W.R. Meadows</p>
--	---



- H. Sealers/Hardeners: For use on concrete surfaces that will remain exposed. Slabs that will receive additional flooring do not require sealing or hardening. Sealers and hardeners must conform to ASTM D1546, not yellow under ultra violet light after 500 hours of test in accordance with and have a maximum moisture loss of 0.039 grams per sq. cm. when applied at a coverage rate of 250 sq. ft. per gallon. Limit VOC content to 130 g/L. Use water- or vegetable-based product.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Kure-N-Harden BASF
- I. For concrete floors subjected to heavy vehicular traffic use a Liquid Sealer/Densifier: The product must be a high performance, deeply penetrating concrete densifier conforming to ASTM C836; odorless, colorless, VOC - compliant, non-yellowing silicate based solution designed to harden, dustproof and protect and to resist black rubber tire marks on concrete surfaces. The compound must contain a minimum of 20% solids content of which 50% is silicate
- J. Evaporation Retardant:
1. Products Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Eucobar" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Confilm" BASF
- K. Certify that all curing compounds, sealers and hardeners are compatible with all adhesive products intended for attaching co-lateral floor material. In conformance with ASTM F 710, coordination with flooring manufacturer is required to insure concrete coatings will not obstruct the bond between the concrete and the adhesive. Insure coatings and adhesives are "benignly compatible" -- in other words, do not combine substances whose constituents are reactive. Reactivity releases VOCs and /or other toxic fumes.
- L. Crack Sealer: Elastomeric liquid crack sealer resistant to water, gasoline, oil and salts.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Plasti-seal" Euclid Chemical Co.
- M. Underlayment Compound: Free flowing, self-leveling, pumpable cementitious base compound.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. "Flo-Top 90 or Super Flo-Top" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Ardex" Ardex Co.
    - c. "Underlayment 110" Master Builders



- N. Bonding Admixture: The compound shall be a latex, non-rewettable type.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Flex-Con" Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Daraweld C" W.R. Grace
    - c. "SBR Latex" Euclid Chemical Co.
- O. High Strength Polymer Repair Mortar: For form and pouring or large horizontal repairs, provide the flowable on-part, high strength repair mortar.
1. Products: subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. "Euocrete" The Euclid Chemical Co.
    - b. "Euco Speed MP" (Cold Weather) The Euclid Chemical Co.
    - c. "Emaco R" Master Builders.
- P. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- Q. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
1. Type IV for bonding hardened concrete to hardened concrete, and Type V for bonding freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- R. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022 inch thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- S. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- T. Vapor Barrier: Provide vapor barrier which conforms to ASTM E 1745, Class A or B. The membrane shall have a water-vapor permeance rate no greater than 0.012 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E 154, Section 7. The vapor barrier shall be placed over prepared base material where indicated below slabs on grade. Vapor barrier shall be no less than 10 mil thick in accordance with ACI 302.1R. Preferred vapor barriers will be manufactured from post-consumer recycled polymers.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Stego Wrap (15 mil) Vapor Barrier" Stego Industries LLC
    - b. "Griffolyn Vaporguard" Reef Industries



- c. "Premoulded Membrane with  
Plastmatic Core"

W.R. Meadows.

U. Expansion Joint Filler: ASTM D 1751.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. "Homex 300" Homasote Company
  - b. "Standard Cork Expansion Joint Filler" A.P.S. Cork
  - c. "Fibre Expansion Joint" W.R. Meadows

V. Water: Potable:

2.7 PROPORTIONING AND DESIGN OF MIXES

A. Preparation of Design Mixes

1. All mix designs shall be proportioned in accordance with Section 5.3, "Proportioning on the Basis of Field Experience and/or Trial Mixtures" of ACI 318 and prepared by a licensed testing laboratory approved by the City of New York, but paid for by the contractor. Submit mix designs on each class of concrete for review.
2. If previously used mixes are submitted, all materials shall be from the same sources and with the same brand names as the previously utilized mix.
3. If trial batches are used, the mix design shall be prepared by an independent testing laboratory and shall achieve an average compressive strength 1200 psi higher than the specified strength. This over-design shall be increased to 1.10f<sub>c</sub>+700 psi when concrete strengths greater than 5000 psi are used.
4. The proposed mix designs shall be accompanied by complete standard deviation analysis or trial mixture test data.

B. Submit each proposed mix to the Commissioner for review at least 5 days prior to the pre-concrete conference. Do not begin concrete production until Commissioner has reviewed and approved mixes.

1. Submit Test reports for any pozzolans or slags indicating compliance with ASTM C 618 or ASTM C 989, respectively.
2. Provide cut sheets clearly indicating the percentages of pozzolans or slags used in the mix design as replacement for Portland cement. Or, if cut sheets are not available, obtain a written affidavit from the manufacturer stating the percentage.
3. Test reports for recycled aggregate indicating compliance with ASTM C 33. Provide cut sheets clearly indicating the percentage of aggregates used that are recycled. Or, if cut sheets are not available, obtain a written affidavit from the manufacturer stating the recycled content percentage and source or sources of the material.



4. Provide cut sheets clearly indicating the percentage of sub-base and filler aggregate materials that are recycled. Or, if cut sheets are not available, obtain a written affidavit from the manufacturer stating the recycled content percentage and source or sources of the material.
- C. Design mixes to provide concrete with strength as indicated on drawings and schedules.
- D. Adjustment to Concrete Mixes: Mix design adjustments may be requested by Contractor when characteristics of materials, job conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant; at no additional cost to City of New York and as accepted by Commissioner. Laboratory test data for revised mix design and strength results must be submitted to and accepted by Commissioner before using in work.
- E. Admixtures:
1. Use water-reducing admixture or high range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer) in all concrete as required for placement and workability.
  2. Use non-corrosive, non-chloride accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50°F (10°C).  
Use high-range water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, architectural concrete, parking structure slabs, fiber concrete, concrete required to be watertight, concrete with ultimate strength of 5,000 psi or more, and concrete with water/cement ratios below 0.50.
  3. Use air-entraining admixture in exterior exposed concrete, unless otherwise indicated. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having total air content with a tolerance of plus-or-minus 1-1/2 percent within following limits:
    - a. Concrete structures and slabs exposed to freezing and thawing or deicer chemicals.
      - 1) 4.5 percent (moderate exposure); 5.5 percent (severe exposure): 1-1/2" maximum aggregate
      - 2) 4.5 percent (moderate exposure); 6 percent (severe exposure): 1" maximum aggregate
      - 3) 5 percent (moderate exposure); 6 percent (severe exposure): 3/4" maximum aggregate
      - 4) 5.5 percent (moderate exposure); 7 percent (severe exposure): 1/2" maximum aggregate
      - 5) 6 percent (moderate exposure); 7.5 percent (severe exposure) – 3/8" maximum aggregate
    - b. Other Concrete: (not exposed to freezing, thawing, or hydraulic pressure): 2 percent to 4 percent air.
  4. Use admixtures for water-reducing and set-control in strict compliance with manufacturer's directions.



- F. Water-Cement Ratio: Provide concrete for following conditions with maximum water-cement (W/C) ratios as follows:
1. Concrete for precast slabs, precast beams, structural topping slab, caisson caps, caissons, poured in place slabs and grade beams, columns and walls, over water, on ground or exposed to weather: W/C 0.40.
  2. Concrete on metal deck:
    - a. With specified minimum compressive strength not greater than 5,000 psi: 0.40.
    - b. With specified minimum compressive strength not greater than 7,000 psi: 0.35.
  3. "Quick Dry" Concrete: 0.40.
  4. Subjected to freezing and thawing; W/C 0.45.
  5. Subjected to deicers/watertight: W/C 0.45.
  6. Reinforced concrete subjected to brackish water, salt spray or deicers; W/C 0.40.
- G. Slump Limits: Proportion and design mixes to result in concrete slump at point of placement as follows:
1. Ramp slabs and sloping surfaces: Not more than 3".
  2. Reinforced foundation systems, including mud slabs below hydrostatic slabs: Not less than 1" and not more than 3".
  3. Concrete containing HRWR admixture (superplasticizer): Not more than 9" unless otherwise approved by the Commissioner. The concrete shall arrive at the job site at a slump of 2" to 3" (3" to 4" for concrete receiving a "shake-on" hardener or lightweight concrete), be verified, then the high-range water-reducing admixture added to increase the slump to the approved level.
  4. Other Concrete: Not less than 1" or more than 4".
- H. Chloride Ion Level: Chloride ion content of aggregate shall be tested by the laboratory making the trial mixes. The total chloride ion content of the mix including all constituents shall not exceed the limitations set forth in Table 4.4.1 of ACI 318 for concrete subjected to deicers or exposed to chloride in service (0.15% chloride ions by weight of cement).

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mix Concrete: Comply with requirements of ASTM C 94, and as herein specified.
- B. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in work, indicating project identification name and number, date, mix type, mix time, quantity, and amount of water introduced.



- C. During hot weather, or under conditions contributing to rapid setting of concrete, a shorter mixing time than specified in ASTM C 94 may be required. When air temperature is between 85°F (30°C) and 90°F (32°C), reduce maximum mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes, and when air temperature is above 90°F (32°C), reduce maximum mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- D. No water shall be added after mixing to concrete containing HRWR (Superplasticizer). If loss of slump occurs, the concrete treated with HRWR may be redosed as long as a "flash set" has not occurred. Redosage procedures must be discussed and approved by the Commissioner and the manufacturer.
- E. Form TR-3: Technical Report Concrete Design Mix: the contractor is responsible for, and bear all costs associated with the filing and securing of approvals, if any, for Form TR-3: Technical Report Concrete Design Mix, including, but not limited to, engaging the services of a New York City licensed Concrete Testing Lab for the review and approval of concrete design mix, testing, signatures and professional seals, etc., compliant with the NYC Department of Buildings requirements, for each concrete design mix.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Coordinate the installation of joint materials and vapor retarders with placement of forms and reinforcing steel.

#### 3.2 INSPECTION

- A. Examine all work prepared by others to receive work of this section and report any defects affecting installation to the Contractor for correction. Commencement of work will be construed as complete acceptance of preparatory work by others.

#### 3.3 CONCRETE

- A. Concrete shall develop the minimum compressive strengths shown on drawings at 28 days when sampled and tested in accordance with ASTM C 31 and C 39 with the maximum slump in accordance with the approved mix design.
- B. Concrete shall be in accordance with the requirements and specifications of "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete" as modified by the building code noted above.
- C. Fly Ash Concrete & Slag Concrete: Concrete mixes containing high volumes of fly ash or Slag have slower set times and may take up to 56 days to reach full strength. The



Commissioner, agency responsible for concrete mix design, the Commissioner and the concrete subcontractor must coordinate to ensure that the form stripping schedule is consistent with the ability of the structure to support itself and all imposed construction loads.

### 3.4 FORMS

- A. Design formwork to maximize its reusability, reduce resources devoted to formwork construction and minimize waste generated. Where appropriate choose alternative formwork systems (refer to sections listed above).
- B. Design, erect, support, brace and maintain formwork to support vertical and lateral, static, and dynamic loads that might be applied until such loads can be supported by concrete structure. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of correct size, shapes, alignment, elevation and position. Maintain formwork construction tolerances complying with ACI 347. Provide Class A tolerances for concrete exposed to view. Provide Class C tolerances for other concrete surfaces.
- C. Design formwork to be readily removable without impact, shocks or damage to cast-in-place concrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
- D. Construct forms to size shapes, lines and dimensions shown, and to obtain accurate alignment, location, grades, level and plumb work in finished structures. Provide for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages and inserts, and other features required in work. Use selected materials to obtain required finishes. Solidly butt joints and provide back-up at joints to prevent leakage of cement paste.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush plates or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces where slope is too steep to place concrete with bottom forms only. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, recesses, and the like, to prevent swelling and for easy removal.
- F. Provide temporary openings where interior area of formwork is inaccessible for cleanout, for inspection before concrete placement, and for placement of concrete. Securely brace temporary openings and set tightly to forms to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings on forms at inconspicuous locations.
- G. Chamfer exposed corners and edges as indicated, using wood, metal, PVC or rubber chamfer strips fabricated to produce uniform smooth lines and tight edge joints.
- H. Provisions for Other Trades: Provide openings in concrete formwork to accommodate work of other trades. Determine size and location of openings, recesses and chases from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.



- I. **Cleaning and Tightening:** Thoroughly clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt or other debris just before concrete is placed. Retightening forms and bracing after concrete placement is required to eliminate mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

### 3.5 VAPOR BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Examine the condition of porous fill and remedy any unsatisfactory portions prior to installing vapor barriers.
- B. Sub-base material to be per above sections.
- C. Following leveling and tamping of sub-base for slabs on grade, place vapor barrier sheeting with longest dimension parallel with direction of pour.
- D. Lap joints 6" and seal with appropriate tape.
- E. After placement of moisture barrier, cover with granular material and compact to depth as shown on drawings.
- F. Avoid cutting or puncturing vapor barrier during reinforcement placement and concreting operations.

### 3.6 PLACING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute's recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars", for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports, and as herein specified.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials, which reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations. Locate and support reinforcing by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.
- D. Place reinforcement to obtain at least minimum coverage's for concrete protection. Arrange, space and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations. Set wire ties so ends are directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire fabric in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset end laps in adjacent widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.



- F. **Micro-Fibers:** All concrete where indicated on the drawings shall contain the specified micro-fibers. Length shall be per the manufacturer's specification. The dosage rate shall be 1.0 – 1.6 lbs per cubic yard per the manufacturer's specification. Submit proposed dosage rate to Commissioner for review prior to concrete placement.
- G. **Macro-Fibers:** All concrete where indicated on the drawings shall contain the specified macro-fibers. Length shall be per the manufacturer's specification. The dosage rate shall be 3.0 – 5.0 lbs per cubic yard per the manufacturer's specification. Submit proposed dosage rate to Commissioner for review prior to concrete placement.
- H. **Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars supported from formwork shall rest on coated wire bar supports.** Reinforcing bars used as support bars shall be epoxy-coated. In walls having epoxy-coated reinforcing bars, spreader bars where specified by the Commissioner, shall be epoxy-coated. Proprietary combination bar clips and spreaders used in walls with epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall be made of corrosion-resistant material.
- I. **Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall be fastened with nylon- , epoxy- , or plastic-coated tie wire, or other acceptable materials.**
- J. **Repair of damaged epoxy-coating:** When required, damaged epoxy-coating shall be repaired with patching material conforming to ASTM A775. Repair shall be done in accordance with the patching material manufacturer's recommendations.
- K. **Unless permitted by the Commissioner, epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall not be cut in the field.** When epoxy-coated reinforcing bars are cut in the field, the ends of the bars shall be coated with the same material used for repair of coating damage.

### 3.7 JOINTS

- A. **Construction Joints:** Locate and install construction joints as indicated, or if not indicated, locate so as not to impair strength and appearance of the structure, as acceptable to Commissioner.
- B. **Provide keyways at least 1-1/2" deep in construction joints in walls, slabs and between walls and footings;** accepted bulkheads designed for this purpose may be used for slabs.
- C. **Place construction joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.** Continue reinforcement across construction joints, except as otherwise indicated.
- D. **Waterstops:** Provide waterstops in construction joints as indicated. Install waterstops to form continuous diaphragm in each joint. Make provisions to support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of work. Fabricate field joints in waterstops in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions, using manufacturer's specified welding irons.



- E. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Construct isolation joints in slabs-on-ground at points of contact between slabs-on-ground and vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Joint filler and sealant materials are specified in the section for "Related Materials"
- F. Contraction (Control) Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Maximum joint spacing shall be 36 times the slab thickness unless otherwise noted on the drawings. The dry cut saw shall be used immediately after final finishing and to a depth of 1-1/4". A conventional saw shall be used as soon as possible without dislodging aggregate and to a depth of 1/4 slab thickness.
1. Joint sealant material is specified in the section for "Related Materials".

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. General: Set and build into work anchorage devices and other embedded items required for other work that is attached to, or supported by, cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, diagrams, instructions and directions provided by suppliers of items to be attached thereto.
- B. Edge Forms and Screed Strips for Slabs: Set edge forms or bulkheads and intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain required elevations and contours in finished slab surface. Provide and secure units sufficiently strong to support types of screed strips by use of strike-off templates or accepted compacting type screeds.
- C. Embedded Plates at Foundation Walls: Install plate at top of forms so that exterior face of steel plate is level and plumb. Use construction documents for locations, sizes and elevations.

### 3.9 PREPARATION OF FORM SURFACES

- A. Clean re-used forms of concrete matrix residue, repair and patch as required to return forms to acceptable surface condition.
- B. If form-release compound is required, coat contact surfaces of forms with a form-coating compound *before* reinforcement is placed.
- C. Thin form-coating compounds only with thinning agent of type, and amount, and under conditions of form-coating compound manufacturer's directions. Do not allow excess form-coating material to accumulate in forms or to come into contact with in-place concrete surfaces against which fresh concrete will be placed. Apply in compliance with manufacturer's instructions.



- D. Coat steel forms with a non-staining, rust-preventative form oil or otherwise protect against rusting. Rust-stained steel formwork is not acceptable.

### 3.10 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Ready-mix concrete shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C 94 and ACI 304. All plant and transporting equipment shall comply with the concrete plant standards and truck mixer and agitator standards of the National Ready Mix Concrete Association.
- B. Cold weather mixing procedures shall be submitted to the Commissioner for approval.
- C. Notify Commissioner and City of New York's Inspector at least 36 hours (1 1/2 regular working days) before each pour so that forms and reinforcing may be examined. Do not place concrete until inspection has been made or waived.
- D. **Preplacement Inspection:** Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, reinforcing steel, and items to be embedded or cast-in. Notify other crafts to permit installation of their work; cooperate with other trades in setting such work. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing concrete where form coatings are not used.
  - 1. Apply temporary protective covering to lower 2' of finished walls adjacent to poured floor slabs and similar conditions, and guard against spattering during placement.
- E. **General:** Comply with ACI 304 "Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete," and as herein specified.
  - 1. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be placed on concrete which has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as herein specified. Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable to its final location to avoid segregation.
- F. **Placing Concrete in Forms:** Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers not deeper than 18" and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Where placement consists of several layers, place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic to avoid cold joints. Use internal vibrators penetrating both the top and preceding layers.
- G. Consolidate placed concrete by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand-spading, rodding or tamping. Use equipment and procedures for consolidation of concrete in accordance with ACI recommended practices.
- H. Use and type of vibrators shall conform to ACI 309 "Recommended Practice for Consolidation of Concrete." Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations not farther than



visible effectiveness of machine. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6" into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to set. At each insertion limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing segregation of mix.

- I. **Placing Concrete Slabs:** Deposit and consolidate concrete slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until the placing of a panel or section is completed.
- J. Consolidate concrete during placing operations so that concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
- K. **Slabs:** Bring slab surfaces to correct level with straightedge and strikeoff. Use highway straightedge, bull floats or darbies to smooth surface free of humps or hollows. Do not disturb slab surfaces prior to beginning finishing operations. See also "MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES" below.
- L. Maintain reinforcing in proper position during concrete placement operations.
- M. **Cold Weather Placing:** Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength which could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures, in compliance with ACI 306 and as herein specified.
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40°F (4°C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50°F (10°C), and not more than 80°F (27°C) at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 3. Use only a non-corrosive, non-chloride accelerator. Calcium chloride, thiocyanates or admixtures containing more than 0.05% chloride ions are NOT permitted.
  - 4. Care must be taken to store water-based curing and sealing compounds where they will not freeze. In most cases, they cannot be reconstituted after thawing.
- N. **Hot Weather Placing:** When hot weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete in compliance with ACI 305 and as herein specified.
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90°F (32°C). Mixing water may be chilled, or chopped ice may be used to control temperature provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Use of liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.



2. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.
3. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel and subgrade just before concrete is placed.

### 3.11 FINISH OF FORMED SURFACES

- A. Concrete mixes containing pozzolans or slags do not set at the same rate or with the same bleed water characteristic as plain Portland cement. Therefore attention must be directed to the proper procedures. Refer to ACI 232.2R and ACI 301.
- B. Rough Form Finish: For formed concrete surface not exposed-to-view in the finish work or by other construction, unless otherwise indicated. This is the concrete surface having texture imparted by form facing material used, with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched and fins and other projections exceeding 1/4" in height rubbed down or chipped off.
- C. Smooth Form Finish: For formed concrete surfaces exposed-to-view, or that are to be covered with a coating material applied directly to concrete, or a covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, damp-proofing, painting or other similar system. This is as-cast concrete surface obtained with selected form facing material, arranged orderly and symmetrically with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch defective areas with fins or other projections completely removed and smoothed. Follow all requirements in ACI 301, Chapter 10 for smooth form finish. Surface preparation for surfaces receiving waterproofing must be approved by the waterproofing manufacturer prior to construction.

### 3.12 FLOOR FLATNESS/LEVELNESS TOLERANCES

- A. FF defines the maximum floor curvature allowed over 24 in. Computed on the basis of successive 12 in. (300 mm) elevation differentials, FF is commonly referred to as the "Flatness F-Number".
- B. FL defines the relative conformity of the floor surface to a horizontal plane as measured over a 10 ft. (3.05 m) distance commonly referred to as the "Levelness F-Number".
- C. All floors shall be measured within 72 hours of being poured and in accordance with ASTM E 1155 "Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Levelness Using the "F Number" System (Inch-Pound Units).
- D. All slabs shall achieve the specified overall tolerance. The minimum local tolerance (1/2 bay or as designated by the Commissioner) shall be 2/3 of the specified tolerances.



- E. All elevated slabs shall achieve the specified FL tolerance before the removal of the forms.
- F. All slabs on metal deck shall achieve the specified FF.

### 3.13 MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES

- A. **Float Finish:** Apply float finish to slabs at crawl spaces, unless otherwise noted. After screeding, consolidating, and leveling concrete slabs, do not work surface until ready for floating. Begin floating when surface water has disappeared or when concrete has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of power-driven floats, or both. Consolidate surface with power-driven floats, or by hand-floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Uniformly slope surfaces to drains. Immediately after leveling, refloat surface to a uniform, smooth, granular texture. Surface shall achieve an FF 20 - FL 17 tolerance.
- B. **Trowel Finish:** Apply trowel finish to monolithic slab surfaces to be exposed-to-view, and slab surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile, paint, or other thin film finish coating system, unless otherwise noted. After floating, begin first trowel finish operation using a power-driven trowel. Begin final troweling when surface produces a ringing sound as trowel is moved over surface. Consolidate concrete surface by final hand-troweling operation, free of trowel marks, uniform in texture and appearance and with a surface leveled to an FF 25/ FL 20 tolerance (FL17 for elevated slabs). Grind smooth surface defects, which would telegraph through applied floor covering system.
- C. **Trowel and Fine Broom Finish:** Where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed with thin-set mortar, and slab surfaces which are to be covered with membrane or elastic waterproofing, or sand-bed terrazzo, and as otherwise indicated, apply single trowel finish as specified, then immediately follow with slightly scarifying surface by fine brooming. Surface preparation for surfaces receiving waterproofing must be approved by the waterproofing manufacturer prior to construction
- D. **Sealers, Hardeners and Liquid Densifiers:** Apply a coat of the specified compound to all EXPOSED interior concrete floors where indicated on the drawings. This surface must be continuously moist cured by a method satisfactory to the Commissioner. Apply and mechanically scrub compound into the floor in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.

### 3.14 CONCRETE CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. **General:** Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.



1. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from concrete surface after placing and finishing. Weather permitting, keep continuously moist for not less than 7 days.
  2. Begin final curing procedures immediately following initial curing and before concrete has dried. Continue final curing for at least 7 days in accordance with ACI 301 procedures. Avoid rapid drying at end of final curing period.
  3. In order to avoid plastic or drying shrinkage cracks during warm, dry or windy weather, ACI 302 and ACI 308 shall be followed using wind breaks and sun shades when recommended. Evaporation retardant shall be as specified in Section 2.04.
  4. Care must be taken to store water based curing and sealing compounds where they will not freeze. In most cases, they cannot be reconstituted after thawing.
- B. Curing Methods: Perform curing of concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining cover curing, curing and sealing compound, and by combinations thereof, as herein specified.
1. Provide moisture curing by following methods.
    - a. Keep concrete surface continuously wet by covering with water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Covering concrete surface with specified absorptive cover, thoroughly saturating cover with water and keeping continuously wet. Place absorptive cover to provide coverage of concrete surfaces and edges, with 4" lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  2. Provide moisture-retaining cover curing as follows:
    - a. Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width with sides and ends lapped at least 3" and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  3. Provide curing and sealing compound to exposed interior slabs not receiving additional flooring. A clear curing and sealing compound shall be used on exterior slabs, sidewalks and curbs not receiving a penetrating sealer.
  4. Use the specified curing compound on surfaces to be covered with finish or coating material applied directly to concrete, such as liquid densifier/sealer, waterproofing, dampproofing, membrane roofing, flooring, painting, and other coatings and finish materials. Apply compound in accordance with manufacturer's direction.
- C. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including undersides of beams, supported slabs and other similar surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.



- D. **Curing Unformed Surfaces:** Cure unformed surfaces, such as slabs, floor topping, and other flat surfaces by application of the specified curing compound or a continuous moist curing method approved by the Commissioner.
- E. Certify that all curing compounds, sealers and hardeners are compatible with all adhesive products intended for attaching co-lateral floor material. In conformance with ASTM F710, coordination with flooring manufacturer is required to insure concrete coatings will not obstruct the bond between the concrete and the adhesive. In addition, insure coatings and adhesives are "benignly compatible" -- in other words, do not combine substances whose constituents are reactive.
- F. **Sealer and Dustproofer:** Apply a second coat of the specified curing and sealing compound to exposed interior slabs not subjected to vehicular traffic, noted on the drawings. These slabs must have received an initial coat of the curing and sealing compound.

### 3.15 SHORES AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with ACI 347 for shoring and reshoring in multistory construction, and as herein specified.
- B. Extend shoring from ground to roof for structures 4 stories or less, unless otherwise permitted.
- C. Extend shoring generally at least 4 floors under floor or roof being placed for structures over 5 stories. Shore floor directly under floor or roof being placed, so that loads from construction above will transfer directly to these shores. Space shoring in stories below this levels in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members where no reinforcing steel is provided. Extend shores beyond minimums to ensure proper distribution of loads throughout structure. Contractor shall provide the services of a licensed Professional Engineer to design the shoring, and determine timing of removal.
- D. Remove shores and reshore in a planned sequence to avoid damage to partially cured concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to safely support work without excessive stress or deflection.
- E. Keep reshores in place a minimum of 15 days after placing upper tier, and longer if required, until concrete has attained its required 28-day strength and heavy loads due to construction operations have been removed.

### 3.16 REMOVAL OF FORMS

- A. Formwork not supporting weight of concrete, such as sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the work, may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50°F (10°C) for 12 hours after placing concrete, provided concrete is sufficiently



hard to not be damaged by form removal operations, and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.

- B. Formwork supporting weight of concrete, such as beam soffits, joints, slabs and other structural elements, may not be removed in less than 14 days and until concrete has attained design minimum compressive strength at 28-days. Determine potential compressive strength of in-place concrete by testing field-cured specimens representative of concrete location or members.
- C. Form facing material may be removed 4 days after placement, only if shores and other vertical supports have been arranged to permit removal of form facing material without loosening or disturbing shores and supports.

### 3.17 RE-USE OF FORMS

- A. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be re-used in work. Split, frayed, delaminated or otherwise damaged form facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form coating compound as specified for new formwork.
- B. When forms are intended for successive concrete placement, thoroughly clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten forms to close joints. Align and secure joint to avoid offsets. Do not use "patched" forms for exposed concrete surfaces, except as acceptable to Commissioner.

### 3.18 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling-In: Fill-in holes and openings left in concrete structures for passage of work by other trades, unless otherwise shown or directed, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place and cure concrete as herein specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling shown or required to complete work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations, as shown on drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment to template at correct elevations, complying with certified diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Grout base plates and foundations as indicated using specified free-flowing non-shrink grout. Use non-metallic grout for exposed conditions, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Where high fluidity and/or increased placing time is required use the specified high flow grout. This grout shall be used for all base plates larger than 10 square feet.



- F. **Steel Pan Stairs:** Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads and landings and associated items. Cast-in safety inserts and accessories as shown on drawings. Screeds, tamp, and finish concrete surfaces as scheduled.
- G. **Reinforced Masonry:** Provide concrete grout for reinforced masonry lintels and bond beams where indicated on drawings and as scheduled. Maintain accurate location of reinforcing steel during concrete placement.

### 3.19 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Prior to all repairs, an as-built condition sketch and method of repair must be submitted to the Commissioner for review and approval.
- B. **Patching Defective Areas:** Repair and patch defective areas with cement mortar immediately after removal of forms, when acceptable to Commissioner.
- C. Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4" in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts, down to solid concrete but, in no case to a depth of less than 1". Make edges of cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Thoroughly clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat the area to be patched with a bonding grout containing the specified bonding admixture. Place patching mortar after while bonding grout is still tacky.
- D. For exposed-to-view surfaces, blend white Portland cement and standard Portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match color surrounding. Provide test areas at inconspicuous location to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike-off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
- E. **Repair of Formed Surfaces:** Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Commissioner. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets; fins and other projections on surface; and stains and other discoloration's that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry pack mortar, or pre-cast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
- F. Repair concealed formed surfaces, where possible, that contain defects that affect the durability of concrete. If defects cannot be repaired, remove and replace concrete.
- G. **Repair of Unformed Surfaces:** Test unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, for smoothness and verify surface plane to tolerances specified for each surface and finish. Correct low and high areas as herein specified. Test unformed surfaces sloped to drain for tureens of slope, in addition to smoothness, using a template having required slope.
- H. Repair finished unformed surfaces that contain defects, which affect durability of concrete. Surface defects, as such, include crazing, cracks in excess of 0.01" wide or



which penetrate to reinforcement or completely through non-reinforced sections regardless of width, spalling, pop-outs, honeycomb, rock pockets, and other objectionable conditions.

- I. Correct high areas in unformed surfaces by grinding, after concrete has cured at least 14 days, except at hydrostatic slabs.
- J. Correct low areas in unformed surfaces during or immediately after completion of surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with fresh concrete. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete. The specified underlayment compound or repair topping may be used when acceptable to Commissioner.
- K. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes not exceeding 1" diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas to sound concrete with clean, square cuts and expose reinforcing steel with at least 3/4" clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding compound. Mix patching concrete of same materials to provide concrete of same type or class as original concrete. Place, compact and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in the same manner as adjacent concrete.
- L. Repair isolated random cracks and single holes not over 1" in diameter by dry-pack method. Groove top of cracks and cutout holes to sound concrete and clean of dust, dirt and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding compound. Mix dry-pack, consisting of one part Portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 mesh sieve, using only enough water as required for handling and placing. Place dry-pack after bonding compound has dried. Compact dry-pack mixture in place and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for not less than 72 hours.
- M. Structural Repair: All structural repairs shall be made with prior approval of the Commissioner as to method and procedure, using the specified polymer repair mortar and/or specified epoxy adhesive. Where epoxy injection procedures must be used, an approved low viscosity epoxy made by the manufacturers previously specified shall be used. In addition, all cracks shall be filled with the specified crack sealer or other method as approved by the Commissioner. All garage slabs shall be repaired prior to the slab being treated with the specified penetrating anti-spalling sealer.
- N. Underlayment Application: Leveling of floors for subsequent finishes may be achieved by use of specified underlayment material. Underlayment application shall achieve the tolerances specified in "MONOLITHIC SLAB FINISHES" above.
- O. Specified Polymer Horizontal Repair Mortar: All exposed floors shall be leveled, where required, with the specified self-leveling repair topping.
- P. Repair Methods not specified above may be used, subject to acceptance of Commissioner.



**3.20 FOUNDATION WALLS**

- A. The contractor shall form and leave openings in walls as shown on drawings and approved shop drawings for work of other contractors. These openings shall be temporarily closed and when so directed, the contractor shall point up in solid and neat manner with waterproofed cement.

**3.21 WORK IN CONNECTION WITH OTHER TRADES AND CONTRACTS**

- A. Sleeves, pockets, openings, etc., shall be set in the concrete walls and arches as required for the mechanical trades as shown on approved shop drawings; these shall be encased or built into the concrete work and shall be properly placed and secured in position in the forms before concrete is placed.
- B. Provide all chases, pipe slots, etc., required for the mechanical trades (see mechanical drawings), constructed as shown on the approved shop drawings.
- C. Leave temporary access panels where required to install mechanical equipment as required by trade affected. Panels shall be formed with construction joints as specified. Details for such panels shall be submitted to Commissioner for approval.
- D. Coordinate all penetrations, cutting, and patching with waterproofing contractor.

**3.22 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Contractor for concrete work shall be responsible for all cutting, removing and patching work where concrete surfaces are not installed within the limits shown on the drawings or specified herein. All such work shall meet with the approval of the Commissioner or Commissioner.
- B. Where cutting and patching is required to accommodate the work of other subcontractors, such cutting shall be done at the expense of said subcontractors but shall be performed by the contractor for concrete work.
- C. The location and extent of cutting in completed concrete work and the patching thereof shall meet with the approval of the Commissioner.

**3.23 QUALITY CONTROL TESTING DURING CONSTRUCTION**

- A. The City of New York will employ a testing laboratory to perform tests and to submit test reports.
- B. Provide special inspections per the applicable Building Code and the requirements of all applicable ACI standards.



- C. At locations previously indicated in this specification and on the contract drawings, verify the use of non-magnetic materials. No magnetic materials are permitted in locations where prohibited by this specification or the contract drawings.
- D. Sampling and testing for quality control during placement of concrete may include the following, as directed by Commissioner.
1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94.
  2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of discharge for each truck; additional tests when concrete consistency seems to have changed.
  3. Air Content: ASTM C 173, volumetric method for lightweight or normal weight concrete; ASTM C 231 pressure method for normal weight concrete; one for each truck of air-entrained concrete.
  4. Concrete Temperature: Test hourly when air temperature is 40°F (4°C) and below, and when 80°F (27°C) and above; and each time a set of compression test specimens made.
  5. Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C 31; one set of 5 standard cylinders for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory cured test specimens except when field-cure test specimens are required.
  6. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each day's pour exceeding 25 cu. yds. plus additional sets for each 50 cu. yds. over and above the first 25 cu. yds. of each concrete class placed in any one day; one specimens tested at 7 days, three specimens tested at 28 days, and one specimens retained in reserve for later testing if required.
    - a. When frequency of testing will provide less than 5 strength tests for a given class of concrete, conduct testing from at least 5 randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than 5 are used.
    - b. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing the in-place concrete.
    - c. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength, and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
  7. Water Cement Ratio Test: Check water content of concrete in accordance with 'Standard Method of Test for Water Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete Using Microwave Oven Drying, AASHTO DESIGNATION: TP 23, SHRP DESIGNATION: 2027' for testing procedure. Frequency of this test shall be the same as that of compressive strength tests, noted above.
  8. Test results will be reported in writing to Commissioner and Contractor within 24 hours after tests. Reports of compressive strength tests shall contain the project



identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing service, concrete type and class, location of concrete batch in structure, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials; compressive breaking strength and type of break for both 7-day tests and 28-day tests.

- a. **Non Compliance:** All test reports indicating non-compliance shall be faxed immediately to all parties on the test report distribution list and the hard copies submitted on different colored paper.
  - b. **Nondestructive Testing:** Windsor probes, sonoscope, or other non-destructive device may be permitted but shall not be used as the sole basis for acceptance or rejection.
9. **Additional Tests:** The testing service will make additional tests of in-place concrete when test results indicate specified concrete strengths and other characteristics have not been attained in the structure, as directed by Commissioner. Testing service may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42, or by other methods as directed. Contractor shall pay for such tests when unacceptable concrete is verified.

### 3.24 WASTE MANAGEMENT

- A. Separate and recycle waste materials in accordance with the DDC General Conditions Construction Waste Management and Disposal and to the maximum extent feasible.
- B. Collect cut off steel and discarded reinforcement steel and place in area for recycling.
- C. Place materials defined as hazardous or toxic waste in designated containers.
- D. Use trigger operated spray nozzles for water hoses and closed loop system to reduce water consumption.
- E. Reusable forms should be cleaned immediately after removal and non-reusable forms recycled to the maximum extent economically feasible.
- F. Incorporate crushed concrete or masonry materials in sub-base to the maximum extent feasible in accordance with sub-base specifications.
- G. Before concrete pours, designate location or uses for excess concrete. Options include:
  1. Additional paving
  2. Post footing anchorage
  3. Landscaping – site concrete features
  4. Flowable fill



H. To avoid contamination of the local landscape, before concrete pours, designate a location for cleaning out concrete trucks where run-off can be contained, reused or incorporated. Options include:

1. Company owned site for that purpose
2. On-site area to be paved later in project

END OF SECTION



SECTION 03 45 00

ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the architectural precast concrete as shown on the drawings and specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:

1. Precast concrete copings
2. Mortar,
3. Anchors and accessories.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Unit Masonry Assemblies - Section 042000.
- F. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the



work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. Qualifications of Workmen

1. For the actual cutting and placing of precast concrete units, use only skilled journeyman masons who are thoroughly experienced with the materials and methods specified and thoroughly familiar with the design requirements.
2. In acceptance or rejection of installed precast concrete units, no allowance will be made for lack of skill on the part of workmen.

C. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of three (3) years' experience in the manufacture of precast concrete units of similar size and scope. Manufacturer's products must have previously been used on the exterior with satisfactory results. Manufacturer must have capability to produce units on schedule.

D. Standards

1. Design in accordance with pertinent recommendations contained in:
  - a. ACI 301;
  - b. ACI 304;
  - c. ACI 311;
  - d. ACI 318;
  - e. ACI 347;
  - f. CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice";
  - g. PCI 116.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit samples of precast concrete with documented independent testing laboratory reports to the Architect for approval.
- B. Samples: Before any precast concrete materials are delivered to the job site, submit twelve (12) inch long samples of each profile type unit required.
  1. Submit 6" x 6" precast concrete samples showing full range of colors and texture available.
- C. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings of all cast stonework showing anchorage, type location and spacing, joint fillers, mortar, and precast concrete profiles, sizes, connections, reinforcing and adjacent construction.
  1. Shop drawings must show exact profiles for each piece.
- D. Certification: Submit certification from an independent testing laboratory certifying to compressive strength and absorption of units as specified herein.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect precast concrete and related materials before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
  - 1. Units shall be stored on skids, off the ground, and covered with plastic sheeting; all material in contact with precast concrete shall be non-staining.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary to the approval of the Architect and at no additional cost to the Owner.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 COLOR AND FINISH

- A. The precast concreted used in this work shall match color and texture of samples approved by the Architect.
- B. Exposed surfaces, unless otherwise specified, shall exhibit a typically fine grained texture. No bug holes will be permitted.
- C. The samples shall be approved by the Architect before the manufacturer shall be required to proceed with the work.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cement shall be Portland Type I white and/or grey, meeting ASTM C 150.
- B. Fine aggregate shall be graded and washed natural sands, meeting ASTM C 33, except that gradation may vary to achieve desired finish and texture.
- C. Coarse aggregate shall be graded and washed natural gravel, or crushed graded stone meeting ASTM C 33, except that gradation may vary to achieve desired finish and texture.
- D. Coloring: All colors added shall be inorganic (natural or synthetic) iron oxide pigments meeting ASTM C 979 excluding the use of a cement grade of carbon black pigment, and shall be guaranteed by the manufacturer to be light fast and lime proof. The amount of pigment shall not exceed ten (10) percent by weight of the cement used.
- E. Precast concrete shall be reinforced with new billet steel reinforcing bars meeting ASTM A 615, grade 60, when necessary for safe handling, setting and structural stress; size of the reinforcing shall be as shown on approved shop drawings. The reinforcing shall be galvanized. The material covering in all cases shall be at least twice the diameter of the bars. Precast concrete shall be fully reinforced to take all stresses, including handling, temperature changes, and structural stress.
- F. Precast concrete shall be 6% - 8% air entrained.



- G. All anchors, dowels and other anchoring devices shall be furnished by this Section of work as shown on approved shop drawings using anchors fabricated of hot dip galvanized steel.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Design the mix and proportion the concrete to attain a minimum compressive strength of 5000 psi when cured and tested at 28 days in accordance with ASTM C 39.
- B. Control
1. Fabricate the work of this Section to the sizes and shapes indicated.
  2. Provide finished units which are straight, true to size and shape, and within the specified casting tolerances.
  3. Make exposed edges sharp, straight, and square. Make flat surfaces into a true plane.
  4. Warped, cracked, broken, spalled, stained, and otherwise defective units will not be acceptable.
  5. Place and secure in the forms all anchors, clips, stud bolts, inserts, lifting devices, shear ties and other devices required for handling and installing the precast units and for attachment of subsequent items as indicated or specified.
- C. Curing
1. Form cure the work of this section for a minimum of 20 hours.
  2. Keep wet continuously for not less than six days after being removed from the forms.
  3. Following the curing period, allow the units to air dry for at least four days before being erected.
- D. Casting Tolerances: Maintain casting, bowing, warping, and dimensional tolerance within the following maximums:
1. Overall Dimension for Height and Width of Units: Plus zero of unit dimension to minus 3/32" for 10'-0" and over.
  2. Bowing or Warping: Do not exceed 1/360 of the span.
  3. Insert Locations: Place within plus or minus 1/4" in each direction.

## 2.4 MORTAR

- A. Mortar for setting and pointing of precast concrete sections shall conform to ASTM C 270, Type S, with not more than 1/2 part lime per part of white non-staining Portland cement and integral colorant as specified for masonry construction in Section 042000.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where precast concrete is to be installed and notify the Architect and Owner's Field Representative of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Carefully coordinate with all other trades to ensure proper and adequate interface of the work of other trades with the work of this Section.

#### 3.3 SETTING

- A. All precast concrete shall be set by experienced stone masons, accurately and in accordance with the shop and setting drawings. Unless otherwise noted, every unit shall be set in a full bed or mortar with all vertical joints flushed full. All anchors and dowels shall be firmly placed and all anchor holes and dowel holes and similar holes filled completely with mortar.
- B. When setting with mortar, all units not thoroughly wet shall be drenched with clear water just prior to setting.
- C. All units shall be protected from splashing mortar or damage by other trades. Any foreign matter splashed on the stone shall be removed immediately.

#### 3.4 PATCHING

- A. The repair of chipped or damaged precast concrete shall be done only by mechanics skilled in this class of work, with materials furnished by the manufacturer and according to his direction.
- B. Precast concrete shall show no obvious repairs or imperfections other than minimal color variations when viewed with the unaided eye under good typical lighting at a twenty (20) foot distance.

#### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Before pointing, the face of all precast concrete shall be scrubbed with a fiber brush, using soap powder and water and shall then be rinsed thoroughly with clean running water. Any mortar on the face of the precast concrete shall be removed. No acids or prepared cleaners shall be used without the approval of the precast concrete manufacturer.

#### 3.6 POINTING

- A. When ready for pointing, the bed joints shall be dampened and carefully pointed to a slight concave profile. No pointing shall be done in freezing weather nor in locations exposed to hot sun unless properly protected. Pointing mortar shall be composed of



one (1) part non-staining cement (ASTM C 91), one (1) part hydrate lime (ASTM C 207, Type S) and four (4) parts of clean, washed sand (ASTM C 144). Coloring pigments shall be added as required. The Architect shall approve color of pointing mortar before proceeding with pointing.

**3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. All projecting precast concrete pieces shall be fully protected when installed against damaged of any kind. Any piece damaged shall be replaced at no additional cost.

**3.8 INSPECTION AND ADJUSTMENT**

- A. Upon completion of the work, make a thorough inspection of all installed precast concrete and verify that all units and joints have been installed in accordance with the provisions of this Section; make all necessary adjustments.

**END OF SECTION**

SECTION 03 35 10

POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the polished concrete floor finish.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Concrete work - Section 033000.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. United States Green Building Council (USGBC): Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED®): Green Building Rating System for New Construction and Major Renovations (NC) Version 3.0 (2009), [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org)
- B. American Concrete Institute (ACI): ACI 302.1R Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
- C. ASTM International:
1. ASTM C 171, Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
  2. ASTM C 779, Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Horizontal Concrete Surfaces.
  3. ASTM D 1308, Standard Test Method for Effect of Household Chemical on Clear and Pigmented Organic Finishes.
  4. ASTM F 2170, Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slab Using In-Situ-Probes.
  5. ASTM F 710, Standard Test Method for pH.
- D. National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI): NFSI Test Method 101-A Standard for Evaluating High-Traction Flooring Materials, Coatings, and Finishes.



## 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide polished flooring that has been selected, manufactured and installed to achieve the following:
1. Abrasion Resistance: ASTM C 779, Method A, high resistance, no more than 0.008" (0.20 mm) wear in 30 minutes.
  2. Reflectivity: Increase of 35% as determined by standard gloss meter.
  3. Waterproof Properties: Rilem Test Method 11.4, 70% or greater reduction in absorption.
  4. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: DCOF range of 0.35 to 0.45 under wet conditions when measured according to ANSI B101.3.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide information on shop drawings as follows:
1. Typical layout including dimensions and floor grinding schedule.
  2. Plan view of floor and joint pattern layout.



3. Areas to receive colored surface treatment.
4. Hardener, sealer, densifier in notes.
- C. Samples: Submit 24" x 24" samples showing sheen and full chemical treatments, including colorant, for Architect's approval.
- D. Product Data: Submit product data, including manufacturer's SPEC-DATA® product sheet, for specified products.
  1. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS).
  2. Preparation and concrete grinding procedures.
  3. Colored Concrete Surface, Dye Selection Guides.
- E. Quality Assurance for Submittals:
  1. Technicians and supervisors must be CPAA certified as a Craftsman or Master Craftsman; submit letter to this effect to the Architect.
  2. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties as cited in 1.5 Performance Requirements.
  3. Certificates:
    - a. Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying that materials comply with specified performance characteristics and criteria and physical requirements.
    - b. Letter of certification from the National Floor Safety Institute confirming that the system has been tested and has passed Phase Two Level of certification when tested by Method 101-A.
    - c. Current contractor's certificate signed by manufacturer declaring contractor is an approved installer of polishing system.
  4. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- F. Warranty: Submit warranty documents specified.
- G. Provide the following:
  1. Manufacturer's instructions on maintenance renewal of applied treatments.
  2. Protocols and product specifications for joint filing, crack repair and/or surface repair.



## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **Qualifications:**
1. Installer must have a minimum of five (5) years' experience installing polished concrete floors and must be trained and certified by both the equipment and chemical manufacturer to process polished concrete and be certified by the Concrete Polishing Association of America (CPAA) as noted in Article 1.6, Para. D.1 herein.
  2. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** Manufacturer capable of providing field service representation during construction and approving application method.
- C. **Regulatory Requirements:** NFSI Test Method 101-A Phase Two Level High Traction Material.
- D. **Mock-Ups:** Provide 100 sf sample panel at job site, at location as directed by the Architect, installed under conditions similar to those which will exist during actual placement.
1. Mock-up will be used to judge workmanship, concrete substrate preparation, operation of equipment, material application, color selection and shine.
  2. Allow 24 hours for inspection of mock-up before proceeding with work.
  3. When accepted, mock-up will demonstrate minimum standard of quality required for this work. Approved mock-up may remain as part of finished work.
- E. **Preinstallation Meetings:** Conduct a preinstallation meeting to verify project requirements, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements. Other items for agenda of preinstallation meetings shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
1. Environmental requirements.
  2. Scheduling and phasing of work.
  3. Coordinating with other work and personnel.



4. Protection of adjacent surfaces.
5. Surface preparation.
6. Repair of defects and defective work prior to installation.
7. Cleaning.
8. Installation of polished floor finishes.
9. Application of liquid hardener, densifier.
10. Protection of finished surfaces after installation.

F. Coordination with Section 033000:

1. Concrete to receive polished finish shall not contain admixtures, plasticizers, slag, fly ash, or other products replacing Portland cement in the mix.
2. Concrete to receive polished finish shall be wet cured in accordance with ACI 308, "Guide to Curing Concrete."
3. Concrete to receive polished finish shall not contain any air-entraining agents.
4. Floor Flatness and Levelness: Slab to receive polished concrete must conform to the following:
  - a. Flatness: Overall value 50; minimum local value 35.
  - b. Levelness: Overall value 30; minimum local value 20.
5. Conform to the minimum recommendations of CPAA.
6. Size of aggregate to be coordinated with desired finish per approved sample and mock-up.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packaging with identification labels and seals intact.
- B. Storage and Protection:
  1. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Protect concrete slab.
    - a. Protect from petroleum stains during construction.
    - b. Diaper hydraulic power equipment.
    - c. Restrict vehicular parking.



- d. Restrict use of pipe cutting machinery.
- e. Restrict placement of reinforcing steel on slab.
- f. Restrict use of acids or acidic detergents on slab.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.

#### 1.10 SEQUENCING

- A. Sequence With Other Work: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for sequencing construction operations.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, 10-year finish warranty, commencing on the date of acceptance by the Owner, executed by an authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and does not limit, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.

#### 1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Contractor to provide maintenance materials to allow for 5% of materials installed.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Ensure manufacturer has minimum 5 years' experience in manufacturing components similar to or exceeding requirements of project.

#### 2.2 POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturer: L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc., or approved equal.

- 1. Contact: 14851 Calhoun Rd., Omaha, NE 68152-1140; Telephone: (800) 362-3331, (402) 453-6600; Fax: (402) 453-0244; website: [www.LMCC.com](http://www.LMCC.com), [www.fgs-permashine.com](http://www.fgs-permashine.com); E-mail: [info@lmcc.com](mailto:info@lmcc.com)

- B. All chemicals used must have a pH value of 11.0 or less when tested per ASTM F 710, and shall be 100% reactive, non-resinous, water soluble, and not considered "hazardous waste."

- C. Products/Systems:

- 1. Hardener, Sealer, Densifier: Proprietary, water-based, odorless liquid, VOC-compliant, environmentally-safe chemical hardening solution leaving no surface film.



- a. Acceptable Material: L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc., "FGS Hardener Plus."
2. Joint Filler: Semi-rigid, 2-component, self-leveling, 100% solids, rapid curing, polyurea control joint and crack filler with Shore A 80 or higher hardness.
  - a. Acceptable Material: L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc., "Joint Tite 750."
3. Oil-Repellent Sealer: Ready to use, silane, siloxane and fluoropolymers blended water-based solution sealer, quick drying, low-odor, oil and water repellent, VOC-compliant, and compatible with chemically hardened floors.
  - a. Acceptable Material: L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc., "Petrotex."
4. Concrete Dyes: Fast-drying dye, packaged in premeasured units ready for mixing with VOC-exempt solvent; formulated for application to polished cementitious surfaces.
  - a. Acceptable Material: L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc., "Vivid Concrete Dyes."
5. Cleaning Solution: Proprietary, mild, highly-concentrated liquid concrete cleaner and conditioner containing wetting and emulsifying agents; biodegradable, environmentally safe and certified High Traction by National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI).
  - a. Acceptable Material: L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc., "FGS Concrete Conditioner."
6. Finish: Very high polish 3000 grit; finish to match approved sample and mock-up.
  - a. Meeting Level 80 Reflection Sheen when measured according to ASTM D 4039.
  - b. Meeting Level 20 Reflective Clarity when measured according to ASTM D 5767.
7. Color: As selected by the Architect.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Ensure concrete finishing components and materials are from single manufacturer.



### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's written data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions, and product carton installation instructions.
- B. Use only manufacturer's certified installers.

#### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions
  - 1. Verify that concrete substrate conditions, which have been previously installed under other sections, are acceptable for product installation in accordance with concrete finishing manufacturer's instructions prior to installation of concrete finishing materials.
  - 2. Concrete substrates to receive polished concrete finish must have moisture level below acceptable limits of the manufacturer when tested per ASTM F 2170. Results of such tests must be submitted to the manufacturer, who shall verify same in writing to the Architect.
- B. Verify Concrete Slab Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Verify concrete is fully cured to 28-day minimum 3500 psi strength.
  - 2. Verify concrete surfaces received a hard steel-trowel finish (minimum 3 passes) during placement.

#### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Ensure surfaces are clean and free of dirt and other foreign matter harmful to performance of concrete finishing materials.
- B. Examine surface to determine soundness of concrete for polishing.
- C. Contractor shall remove surface contamination.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor Surface Polishing and Treatment
  - 1. Provide polished concrete floor treatment using wet grind process for entire slab indicated on drawings, wall edge to wall edge. For work immediately adjacent to walls and obstructions, use hand held equipment. Provide consistent finish in all contiguous areas.



2. Apply floor finish prior to installation of fixtures and accessories.
3. Diamond polish concrete floor surfaces with power disc machine recommended by floor finish manufacturer, capable of generating 600 to 1200 revolutions per minute with sufficient head pressure of not less than 20 lbs. Sequence with coarse to fine grit using wet method.
  - a. Comply with manufacturer's recommended polishing grits for each sequence to achieve desired high gloss finish. Level of sheen shall match that of approved sample and mock-up.
  - b. All concrete surfaces shall be as uniform in appearance.
4. Dyed and Polished Concrete
  - a. Locate demarcation line between dyed surfaces and other finishes.
  - b. Polish concrete to final finish level.
  - c. Apply diluted dyes to polished concrete surface.
  - d. Allow dye to dry.
  - e. Remove residue with dry buffer; reapply as necessary for desired result.
5. Apply FGS Hardener Plus, Hardener, Densifier as follows:
  - a. First coat at 250 ft<sup>2</sup>/gal.
  - b. Second coat at 350 ft<sup>2</sup>/gal.
  - c. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for drying time between successive coats.
6. Remove defects and repolish defective areas.
7. Finish edges of floor finish adjoining other materials in a clean and sharp manner.

### 3.5 ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Polish to higher gloss those areas not meeting specified gloss levels per mock-up.
- B. Fill joints flush to surface.

### 3.6 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Mechanically scrub treated floors for seven days with soft to medium pads with approved cleaning solution.
- B. Upon completion, General Contractor must remove surplus and excess materials, rubbish, tools and equipment.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect with EZ Cover™ by McTech Corp., or comparable product.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

1. Contact: Phone: (866) 913-8363; website: [www.ezform.net](http://www.ezform.net)

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING  
03 35 10-10

SECTION 03 53 00  
CONCRETE TOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide monolithic concrete floor toppings over concrete base slabs.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions for each material and product used.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such Comply with governing codes and regulations. Provide products of acceptable manufacturers, which have been in satisfactory use in similar service for three years. Use experienced installers. Deliver, handle, and store materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mock-Ups: Provide mock-up as required to demonstrate quality of workmanship.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### A. Standard Aggregate Toppings:

1. Portland cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III.
2. Standard aggregate: ASTM C 33.
3. Design mix: ASTM C 94, 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
4. Reinforcement: Welded steel wire fabric, ASTM A 185.

#### B. Finish:

1. Ground finish using power driven grinders.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Cure and protect in accordance with Section 03300. Install to tolerance of plus or minus 1/8" in 10'.
- B. Protect adjacent work from damage. Coordinate with work of other sections.
- C. Restore damaged finishes as approved. Clean and protect work from damage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 01 40

STONE RESTORATION AND CLEANING

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the stone restoration and cleaning as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Restore marble columns.
  2. Repair marble base boards.
  3. Removing, abandoned anchors and fasteners and patching holes less than 1/2 inch in diameter using specified stone patching adhesive and holes 1/2 inch or greater in diameter using marble Dutchmen matching adjacent stone.
  4. Repairing stone, including replacing whole and partial units.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dutchman: Careful remove defective portion of stone by making vertical and horizontal saw cuts at face of backing stone and demolishing defective material to depth required for fitting partial replacement (dutchman).



## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Concrete materials of this Section shall contain post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content as follows:

Edit as necessary, based on project-specific conditions:

- a. **Fly ash:** Concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Structural Engineer. Note: Structural Engineer will need to approve this or higher fly-ash content due to its effect on curing times.
- b. **Ground Granulated Blast Furnace (GGBF) Slag:** Concrete shall incorporate GGBF Slag as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Structural Engineer.
- c. **Recycled Steel:** Reinforcing bar, rods, steel wire, welded wire fabric, anchors and ties, and miscellaneous steel accessories shall contain a minimum of 75% combined post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).

Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.

2. Concrete materials manufactured within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.

Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

C. Special Experience Requirements (SER)

1. The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in size, scope and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.

D. Field-Constructed Mock-Ups: Prior to start of stone restoration, prepare the following where directed by Commissioner. Obtain Commissioner's acceptance of visual qualities before proceeding with the work. Retain acceptable units in undisturbed condition, suitably marked, during construction as a standard for judging completed work.

1. Cleaning: Demonstrate materials and methods to be used for cleaning each type of stone surface and condition as directed by the Commissioner.
2. Dutchman: Prepare sample area 6" by 6" for demonstrating techniques and quality of Dutchman work if required due to existing conditions damage warranting Dutchman.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.



4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  - B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for application and use. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.
  - C. Restoration Program: Submit written program for each phase of restoration process including protection of surrounding materials on building and site during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods and equipment to be used for each phase of restoration work.
  - D. Stone Samples: Sets for each variety, color, and finish of stone required; not less than 12 inches square. Provide samples to match existing, for Commissioner's approval prior to execution of the work; samples will establish the standard by which stone will be judged.
  - E. Setting mortar, 12" x 12".
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver stone units to Project site strapped together in suitable packs or pallets or in heavy-duty crates.
  - B. Deliver other materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. For manufactured repair materials, perform work within the environmental limits set by each manufacturer.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate stone restoration and cleaning with public circulation patterns at Project site. Public circulation patterns cannot be closed off entirely, and in places can be only temporarily redirected around small areas of work. Plan and execute the Work accordingly.
- 1.10 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING
- A. Perform stone restoration work in the following sequence:
    1. Remove existing stone and related adhesives.



2. Repair existing stone.
3. Clean existing stone surfaces.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STONE MATERIALS

- A. Marble, complying with ASTM C503 and matching adjacent existing marble in coloring (background color, veining and markings) texture and finish. Surface shall be evenly shaded.
  1. Before selecting marble, clean 12 inch x 12 inch section of existing marble to be matched to show true color, reflectance quality and texture.

### 2.2 CLEANING MATERIALS FOR STONE

- A. Chemical Cleaner: "Sure Klean 942" Limestone and Marble Cleaner, or equivalent product of Diedrich Technologies, Price Research, Ltd. or approved equal; ready-to-use non-acidic alkaline cleaning gel designed for removing moderate-to-severe atmospheric staining on exterior or interior stone masonry surfaces.

### 2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, nonstaining. Do not use masonry cement.
- B. Hydraulic Lime: Natural Hydraulic Lime, NHL 3.5. Do not use hydrated lime.
  1. Available from Virginia Lime Works, 111 Highview Drive, Madison Heights, VA 24572 (434-929-8113) [[www.virginalimeworks.com](http://www.virginalimeworks.com)] or Pennsylvania Lime Works, PO Box 151, MilfordSquare, PA 18935 (215-536-6706) [[www.palimeworks.com](http://www.palimeworks.com)].
- C. Sand: Clean sharp sand, free of loam, silt, soluble salts, organic matter, and other deleterious substances and graded in compliance with ASTM C 144 and as required to provide mortar matching texture of original mortar and matching color of original mortar as closely as possible so that no pigment or only a minimum amount of pigment will be required to provide mortar matching original mortar. Provide Schofield #236 Reddish Mason Sand, available from George Schofield Company, Inc. 831 E. Main Street, Bridgewater, NJ 08807 (800-827-6257) [[www.geoschofield.com](http://www.geoschofield.com)].
- D. Water: Clean and free of all substances that might adversely affect mortar, masonry, and embedded elements.



### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Comply with chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions for protecting building and other surfaces against damage from exposure to its products.
  - 1. Cover adjacent surfaces with materials that are proven to resist chemical cleaners used unless chemical cleaners being used will not damage adjacent surfaces. Apply masking agents to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid masking agent to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking to prevent adhesive staining.

#### 3.2 CLEANING, GENERAL

- A. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each stone material and location.
- B. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner which results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, and which produces an even effect without streaking or damage to masonry and stone surfaces.
- C. Prewet all stone surfaces to be cleaned with chemicals.
- D. pH readings shall be taken and recorded prior to all cleaning operations and after cleaning to ensure that chemicals are completely rinsed from stone surfaces.
- E. All chemically treated surfaces shall be thoroughly rinsed clean until the surface achieves a neutral pH reading, or returns to the pH reading of the stone prior to cleaning.
- F. Water Application Methods: Prior to chemical cleaning, apply water application to mock-ups by spray at various pressures to determine if stone surfaces can be cleaned adequately and to the Commissioner's satisfaction in this manner. If water applications prove ineffective, proceed with chemical cleaners.
- G. Chemical Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to stone surfaces to comply with chemical manufacturer's recommendations. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than that indicated or recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. For hard-to-remove dirt or grime, apply pre-wash cleaner prior to application of chemical cleaner; follow manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.3 REPAIRING STONE UNITS USING DUTCHMEN

- A. General: Remove existing damaged and deteriorated stone from stone units. Prepare holes and provide stone dutchmen matching adjacent stone to restore unit to original configuration and appearance as indicated on Drawings.

1. In locations indicated on Drawings, remove existing dutchman, prepare substrate, and provide new dutchman.

**B. Anchors**

1. Secure each dutchman using at least two metal attachments with one additional attachment for every two additional square feet of configuration and location as shown on approved shop drawings.
2. Attach anchors using epoxy adhesive and mechanical fastening.

**C. General Method for Dutchman Repair**

1. **Stone Preparation:** Cut away portion of deteriorated or damaged stone to sound stone. Cut sides of area to receive dutchman parallel to edges of stone block. Cut sides perpendicular to stone face. Do not weaken stone.
2. **Attachment:** Fasten dutchman with stainless steel wire, pins, and anchors as required to provide mechanical locking and to prevent possible slippage of stone and as shown on approved shop drawings. Position metal fasteners without weakening stone in any way.
3. **Dutchman Preparation:** Dress stone dutchman on all sides and carefully fit to opening in stone, with an allowance of not more than 1/16-inch-wide buttered joints at face. Dress surface of dutchman to match appearance, tooling, and texture of adjacent stone using an approved method. Complete surface dressing of dutchman before installing dutchman.
4. **Cleaning Anchor Holes and Substrate:** Use stiff bristle brushes and filtered, oil-free compressed air to thoroughly remove dust and debris from holes for anchors and from stone surfaces to receive mortar.
5. **Wetting Stone Surfaces:** Wet surfaces to receive mortar to ensure that surfaces are damp but free of standing water at time of mortar application (saturated, surface dry) unless specifically instructed otherwise by mortar admixture manufacturer.
6. **Installation:** Install dutchman using specified mortar matching adjacent stone. Install anchors with specified adhesive.
7. **Joint Surfaces:** Finish joints between new and old work to match color and texture of stone.
8. **Protection:** Protect adjacent surfaces during dutchman repair. Wipe and rinse mortar accidentally splashed onto adjacent surfaces immediately. Remove uncured epoxy adhesive immediately with acetone.
  - a. Repair damage to stone and damage to other materials to remain resulting from epoxy and mortar spills to Commissioner's satisfaction at no additional cost.



9. **Cleaning:** Clean faces of patched stone units following completion of Dutchman installation. Clean mortar splashes, smears, etc. with wood scrapers or by vigorously brushing with stiff natural bristle brushes and clean, potable water. If necessary to remove mortar, add clean white sand to water.

### 3.4 REMOVING ABANDONED ANCHORS AND PATCHING HOLES WITH DUTCHMEN PLUGS

- A. **General:** Remove abandoned anchors from stone units and patch holes with dutchman plugs to match adjacent stone.
  1. If anchor and/or patch extends across a joint between masonry units, do not patch across joint. Provide plugs or patches on masonry units on each side of joint separately. Point joint.
- B. **Removal of Anchors and Previous Patches:** Carefully remove anchors and previous patches by drilling with a rotary drill using a sharp masonry bit or masonry core bit 1/8 inch larger in diameter than existing hole. Do not chip edges of drill hole or otherwise damage adjacent masonry. Do not use hammer drill or percussive power tools.
- C. **Preparation for Dutchmen Plugs**
  1. **Cleaning:** Clean surfaces of area to be plugged free from dust, dirt, oils, grease, and other contaminants and coatings that might adversely affect mortar adhesion. Brush surfaces with stiff natural bristle or fiber bristle brushes and remove dust and loose particles using clean, oil-free compressed air.
  2. **Protection:** Protect surrounding surfaces as required to keep them free from mortar.
  3. **Wetting Stone Surfaces:** Wet surfaces of prepared stone with clean water to ensure that at time of plug installation it is damp but free of standing water (saturated, surface dry).
- D. **Patching Using Dutchman Plugs:** Fill holes with dutchman plugs matching planes and profiles of adjacent stone and color and texture of adjacent stone surface.
  1. **Dutchman Plug:** Shape dutchman plug to match size of hole in stone block, allowing for a maximum 1/8-inch buttered joint between dutchman and stone unit into which it is to be inserted. Dress face of dutchman to match appearance, tooling, and texture of adjacent stone surface using an approved method. Complete surface dressing of dutchman before installing dutchman.
  2. **Installation:** Wet surface of dutchman and allow to dry slightly. Install dutchman using specified mortar matching adjacent stone.
  3. **Joint Surfaces:** Finish joint between dutchman and stone block to match color and texture of stone.



4. **Cleaning Mortar Spills:** Wipe and rinse all mortar accidentally splashed onto adjacent surfaces immediately.

a. Repair damage to stone resulting from mortar spills to Commissioner's satisfaction at no additional cost.

E. **Cleaning:** Clean faces of patched stone units following completion of dutchman installations. Clean mortar splashes, smears, etc. with wood scrapers or by vigorously brushing with stiff natural or fiber bristle brushes and potable water. If necessary to remove mortar, add clean white sand to water.

F. **Corrective Measures:** Should Commissioner determine that a dutchman plug does not equal or exceed the minimum standard established by approved mock-ups, Contractor shall remove plug, properly prepare substrate, and provide new dutchman plug following requirements of this Section to Commissioner's satisfaction at no additional cost to City of New York.

### 3.5 INSTALLING NEW MARBLE UNITS

A. **General:** Install new marble units in locations indicated on Drawings. New units shall match elevation of adjacent units and shall have uniform even joints at perimeters matching widths of adjacent joints.

B. **Preparation:** Clean substrate to remove all contaminants that might interfere with adhesion of setting mortar. Lightly wet substrate to ensure that it is damp but free of standing water at time of stone paver installation.

C. **Installation:** Install new marble units in setting materials as detailed on drawings. Tap unit into place. If unit is too low, remove, apply additional setting materials, and reset. If unit is too high, remove unit, remove setting materials, and reset or grind, hone, and polish stone to achieve height and alignment with matching adjacent units.

END OF SECTION 04 01 40



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 042000

UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the unit masonry work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
1. Face brick in cavity wall construction with metal stud back-up.
  2. Metal joint reinforcing, anchors, ties, weeps, closures and related accessories for masonry.
  3. Control and expansion joints in masonry, filled with joint fillers.
  4. Through-wall flashing.
  5. Cavity drainage material.
  6. Chases, recesses, pockets and openings in masonry as required for installation of work by others.
  7. Building in of items furnished by others into masonry, including access doors, door frames, anchors, sleeves and inserts, and other similar items to be embedded in masonry.
  8. Grouting in of metal items built into masonry work.
  9. Protection, pointing and cleaning of masonry.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.



- E. Cast-in-Place Concrete - Section 033000.
- F. Cast Stone - Section 047200.
- G. Cold-Formed Metal Framing - Section 054000.
- H. Steel lintels - Section 055000.
- I. Joint Sealers - Section 079200.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

- B. Submit Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Anchoring details.
2. Control and expansion joint locations and details.
3. Special brick shapes.

4. Flashing at typical lintels indicating relationship of flashing to lintel hangers.

C. Submit Samples for the following:

1. Each type of face brick in sufficient number and color (not less than 5) to show full range of color, texture and shade. Submit certification that brick meets ASTM standards specified herein.

a. Submit samples of all special shapes required showing color range and sizes.

2. Joint reinforcing, each type, width and proposed location (labeled).

3. Anchors, wedges and ties, each type, width and proposed location (labeled).

4. Joint filler, each type.

5. Flashing, including splice sample, 12" long.

6. Mortar color, 12" long cured sample.

D. Submit technical and installation information for the following:

1. Mortar materials, each material and mortar type.

2. Certification of mortar mix.

3. Flashing material, descriptive literature.

E. Cleaning Procedures: Submit proposed procedures and materials for cleaning masonry work; including certification that cleaner will not adversely affect stone, gaskets, sealants, etc.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Concrete materials of this Section shall contain post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content as follows:

Edit as necessary, based on project-specific conditions:



- a. Fly ash: Concrete shall incorporate fly ash as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the Portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Structural Engineer. Note: Structural Engineer will need to approve this or higher fly-ash content due to its effect on curing times.
- b. Ground Granulated Blast Furnace (GGBF) Slag: Concrete shall incorporate GGBF Slag as a replacement for at least 25% (by weight) of the portland cement. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the Structural Engineer.
- c. Recycled Steel: Reinforcing bar, rods, steel wire, welded wire fabric, anchors and ties, and miscellaneous steel accessories shall contain a minimum of 75% combined post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).

Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.

2. Concrete materials manufactured within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.

Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

- C. Conform to the following non-cumulative tolerances (any masonry work not meeting these standards shall be re-built as directed by the Commissioner).

1. Variation from the plumb:
  - a. In lines and surfaces of columns, walls and arrises:
    - 1). In 10 feet 1/8"
    - 2). In any story of 25 feet maximum 1/4"
    - 3). In 40 feet or more 1/4"
  - b. For external corners, expansion joints and other conspicuous lines:
    - 1). In any story of 25 feet maximum 1/4"
    - 2). In 40 feet or more 3/8"
2. Variation from the level or the grades indicated on the drawings; for exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves and other conspicuous lines:
  - a. In any bay or 20 feet maximum 1/4"
  - b. In 40 feet or more 1/4"



3. Variation of the linear building lines from established position in plan related portion of columns and partitions:
  - a. In any bay or 20 feet maximum 1/4"
  - b. In 40 feet or more 1/2"
4. Variation in cross-sectional dimensions of columns and in thickness of walls:
  - a. Minus 1/8"
  - b. Plus 1/8"
5. Variation in dimensions of masonry openings:
  - a. Horizontal dimension -0" + 1/16"
  - b. Vertical dimension +0" - 1/16"

D. Work of this Section shall conform to the requirements of the following:

1. Brick Industry Association (BIA) "Technical Notes on Brick Construction."

E. Pre-Construction Conference: Prior to installation of masonry and associated work, Contractor shall arrange a meeting with Masonry Subcontractor, installers of related work, and other entities concerned with masonry wall performance, including the Commissioner and City of New York. Contractor shall record discussions and agreements and furnish copy to each participant. Provide at least seventy-two (72) hours' advance notice to participants prior to convening conference. Review methods and procedures related to masonry work, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Review masonry requirements (drawings, specifications and other Contract Documents).
2. Review required submittals, both completed and yet to be completed.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule related to masonry work and verify availability of materials, installer's personnel, equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review required inspection, testing, certifying and material usage accounting procedures.
5. Review weather and forecasted weather conditions, and procedures for coping with unfavorable conditions.
6. Coordinate work with air/vapor barrier membrane and related flashing, review details to avoid conflicts.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. General: Deliver, store, handle and protect all materials from damage, moisture, dirt and intrusion of foreign matter. Store all masonry units and mortar materials on raised



platforms and under ventilated and waterproof cover. Store packaged materials in manufacturer's unopened containers, marked with manufacturer's name and product brand name. Immediately reseal containers after partial use. Remove and replace damaged materials:

- B. **Masonry Units:** Pack, deliver and store to prevent breakage, cracking, chipping, spalling or other damage. Store, protect and ventilate units at project site.
- C. **Aggregate:** Store with provisions for good drainage.
- D. **Reinforcement and Anchors:** Store and protect so that when placed, joint reinforcement and anchors will be free of soil, dirt, ice, loose rust, scale, or other coatings which would destroy or reduce bond with mortar, and will not be disfigured or bent out of shape.

#### 1.7 CODE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this Section shall conform to all applicable requirements of the New York City Building Code.
- B. Conform to New York City Local Law 17-95 for seismic requirements.

#### 1.8 TESTING FOR EFFLORESCENCE

- A. Test selected face brick for efflorescence in accordance with ASTM C 67.
- B. If, at the end of the test period, the samples of brick or mortar show efflorescence, the materials represented shall be rejected and new materials shall be re-tested. This process shall be repeated until no efflorescence appears. Testing shall be done by an independent testing laboratory at the expense of the Contractor; submit test results in writing to the Commissioner.

#### 1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. In cold weather, when the outside temperature is below forty (40) deg. F., conform to the requirements of "Cold Weather Masonry Construction and Protection Recommendations" publication by Brick Industry Association (BIA). No anti-freeze admixtures are permitted.
  - 1. In addition, conform to the following:
    - a. Masonry materials must be warmed as required.
    - b. Brickwork must be protected a minimum of 24 hours after installation so as to maintain enough heat for hydration of the cement in the mortar.
- B. **Hot-Weather Requirements:** Protect unit masonry work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and grout. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of 100 deg. F. and above. In addition, conform to the following:

1. Masonry materials must be cool.
  2. Mortar must be used within 2 hours of initial mixing.
- C. Protection of Masonry: During erection, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
1. Extend cover a minimum of 24" down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
  2. Where one wythe of multi-wythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24" down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
- D. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on ground and over wall surface.
  2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed masonry.
- 1.10 ATTIC STOCK
- A. Provide additional 10% of dry mortar mix labeled, packaged and delivered to location determined by City of New York for attic stock.
  - B. Provide additional 5% of brick labeled, packaged and delivered to location determined by City of New York for attic stock.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Brick
  1. Size and Type : As selected by Commissioner.
  2. Facing Brick: ASTM C 216, Grade SW, Type FBX.
  3. Where brick is fully concealed provide common brick conforming to ASTM C 62, Grade SW.
  4. Provide all special molded shapes as indicated on the drawings.



5. For sills, caps and similar applications resulting in exposure of brick surfaces which otherwise would be concealed from view, provide uncured units with all exposed surfaces finished.

**B. Anchors and Ties**

1. For anchoring brick to cold-formed metal framing, provide one of the following or approved equal by other manufacturers noted above in Para. C.3:
  - a. "Wing-Nut Pos-I-Tie®" with self-drilling screw for steel studs zinc barrel and thermal wing nut as manufactured by Heckmann Building Products. Provide "Seismic Wire Pintle Tie" hot-dip galvanized steel.
  - b. Hot-dip galvanized steel anchors equal to "X-Seal Veneer Anchor" with "X-Seal Tape" as manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard or approved equal. Provide Model 187 "Seismiclip" with 9 gauge wire.

**C. Control and Expansion Joint Fillers**

1. Within Face Brick: Provide filler rod and sealant installed by Section 079200. Filler depth shall be 2 times joint width.
  - a. Compressible filler between top of brick and bottom of shelf angle shall be "Soft Joint Sealant" made by Polytite, or approved equal.
2. Within Expansion Joint at Face Brick: Manufacturer's standard preformed, pre-compressed, open-cell polyurethane foam sealant impregnated with a water based, non-drying polymer modified acrylic water repellent. Provide "Seismic Colorseal" installed to twenty-five 25 percent compression, as manufactured by Emseal or approved equal.
  - a. Properties: Permanently elastic, mildew resistant, non-migratory, non-staining, and compatible with joint substrates and other joint sealants. Density: 8.4 to 9.1 lb./cu. ft.

**2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS**

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1, standard color, one source.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Aggregate for Mortar: Clean, washed, buff colored sand, graded per ASTM C 144.
- D. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- E. Water: Clean, fresh and suitable for drinking.

**2.3 MORTAR MIX**

- A. Exterior Face Brick Construction: Mortar mixes shall meet ASTM C 270, Type N, cement/lime mortar. Colors of mortars shall use coloring agent made by Davis Colors,

Lehigh Cement or approved equal. Color of mortar to meet with Commissioner's approval. The Contractor may use pre-packaged colored mortar equal to "Color Mortar Blend" made by Glen-Gery.

1. Color of mortar must meet with Commissioner's approved sample and mock-up panel.

**B. Mixing**

1. General: Add cement just before mixing and mix dry. Use sufficient amount of water as necessary to produce workable mix. Mix in small batches to make plastic mass.
2. Mixing: Machine mix all mortars in approved type mixer with device to accurately and uniformly control water. Add hydrated lime dry. Mix dry materials not less than two (2) minutes. Add water, then mix not less than three (3) minutes, not to exceed five (5) minutes. Mix only amount of mortar that can be used before initial set. Do not use mortar which has reached its initial set or two (2) hours after initial mixing, whichever comes earlier. Mortar may not be re-tempered. Clean mixer for each batch, whenever mortar type is changed, and at end of each day's work.
3. Acceleration or other admixtures not permitted.
4. Mortar shall have a flow after suction of not less than seventy-five (75) percent of that immediately after mixing as determined by ASTM C 91.

**C. Admixtures**

1. No air-entraining admixtures or cementitious materials containing air-entraining admixtures shall be used in the mortar.
2. No antifreeze compounds or other substances shall be used in the mortar to lower the freezing point.
3. Calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride shall not be used in mortar.

**2.4 MASONRY ACCESSORIES**

- A. Neoprene Joint Filler: Provide closed cell neoprene, Type NN-1, conforming to ASTM D 1056, Grade 1, high performance, as manufactured by Williams Products Inc., or equal made by D. S. Brown, Norton, or approved equal.
- B. Weep Holes: Provide clear plastic weep holes 3/8" wide and 1-1/2" high by four (4) inches long equal to No. 342 made by Hohmann & Barnard or approved equal manufacturer listed above.
- C. Provide sheet membrane flashing as part of exterior wall membrane system. Provide sealants and tapes as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide preformed corner sections "end dams" with system when flashing is discontinuous.



1. Provide flashing for surface adhered applications at sheathed areas with 26 ga. stainless steel termination bar.
  2. Wall flashing shall have 26 ga. stainless steel drip edge adhered to edge of flashing, drip edge shall be set in sealant as specified in Section 079200.
- D. Cavity Drainage Material: Provide 10" high HDPE "Mortar Net" open mesh mortar net of width to fit masonry cavity shown on drawings, manufactured by Mortar Net USA, Ltd., or equal "Mortar Maze," made by Advanced Building Products.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SURFACE CONDITIONS

##### A. Inspection

1. Prior to all work of this Section, carefully inspect the installed work of all other trades and verify that all such work is complete to the point where this installation may properly commence.
2. Verify that masonry may be completed in accordance with all pertinent codes and regulations, the referenced standards, and the original design.
3. Do not start any work until mock-ups are approved by the Commissioner.

##### B. Discrepancies

1. In the event of discrepancy, immediately notify the Commissioner in writing.
2. Do not proceed with installation in areas of discrepancy until all such discrepancies have been fully resolved.
3. Starting of work by the Contractor means acceptance by the Contractor of the substrate.

#### 3.2 COORDINATION

- A. Carefully coordinate with all other trades to ensure proper and adequate interface of the work of other trades with the work of this Section.

#### 3.3 PREPARATION

##### A. Brick

1. Wet brick having an initial rate of absorption greater than 30 grams per 30 square inches when tested per ASTM C 67. Wet bricks by allowing water to run on the cubes or pallets of brick, or placing them in a large tank of water.
2. Except for absorbent units specified to be wetted, lay masonry units dry.



### 3.4 INSTALLATION

#### A. General

1. Build walls to the full thickness shown. Build single wythe walls to the actual thickness of the masonry units, using units of nominal thickness shown.
2. Build chases and recesses as shown or required for the work of other trades.
3. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completion of masonry work. After installation of equipment, complete masonry work to match work immediately adjacent to the opening.
4. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint widths and to properly locate openings, movement type joints, returns and off-sets. Avoid the use of less than half size units at corners, jambs and wherever possible.
5. Lay up walls plumb and true with courses level, accurately spaced and coordinated with other work.
6. Provide templates made of steel studs for plumbing of two-story masonry openings.
7. Pattern Bond: Lay exposed masonry patterns as noted on drawings. If not shown, provide running bond. Lay concealed concrete block with all units in a wythe bonded by lapping not less than two (2) inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units of less than four (4) inches horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
8. Do not use any brick that do not meet chippage and tolerances of the applicable ASTM standard noted herein for the grade, type or class of brick.
9. Mortar, ties and reinforcement must not extend into or bridge any expansion joints.

#### B. Mortar Bedding and Jointing

1. All joints between bricks shall be completely filled with mortar. Bed joints shall be beveled per BMI recommendations, with the brick then shoved in place. At cavity wall construction, care shall be taken that no excess mortar goes into masonry cavity. Head joints shall be completely filled with mortar and shall be formed by applying a full coat of mortar to the entire end or the entire side, as the case requires, and then shoving the mortar covered end and/or side of the brick tightly against the bricks previously laid; the practice of "slushing" by throwing mortar into the head joints will not be permitted. All brick shall be laid without disturbing the brick previously laid. Brick shall be laid within a minute or so after the mortar is placed. Dry or butt joints will not be permitted. Grouting shall be done only as necessary. Do not slush head joints.



2. After brick placement, mortar squeezed out of bed joints shall be cut off before tooling.
  3. Lay masonry walls with 3/8" joints unless otherwise shown on drawings.
  4. Tool exposed joints slightly concave after the mortar joint is thumbprint hard. Concealed joints shall be struck flush.
  5. Remove masonry units disturbed after laying; clean and reset in fresh mortar. Do not pound corners at jambs to fit stretcher units which have been set in position. If adjustments are required, remove units, clean off mortar and reset in fresh mortar.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Rake back 1/2 brick length in each course; do not tooth. Clean exposed surfaces of set masonry, wet units lightly (if required) and remove loose masonry units and mortar prior to laying fresh masonry.
- D. Cutting and Patching
1. All exposed masonry which requires cutting or fitting shall be cut accurately to size with motorized carborundum or diamond saw, producing cut edges.
  2. Do not saw cut any masonry openings in face brick construction without Commissioner's approval and after a procedure has been reviewed and approved.
  3. Holes made in exposed masonry units for attachment of handrail brackets and similar items shall be neatly drilled to proper size.
  4. All masonry which requires patching in exposed work, if approved by Commissioner, shall be patched neatly with mortar to match appearance of masonry as closely as possible and to the Commissioner's satisfaction. Rake back joints and use pointing mortar to match as required.
- E. Ties and Anchors for Masonry Construction
1. Anchoring Masonry to Structure: Provide an open space not less than 1/2" in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise shown. Keep open space free of mortar or other rigid materials.
  2. Attach brick veneer to cold formed metal framing by anchoring brick to studs using specified anchors penetrating through sheathing and through flange of stud. Prior to application of anchors cover sheathing and vapor barrier with tape specified herein. Space anchors 8" o.c. at each stud; provide stainless steel screw anchors for attaching anchor to studs.
- F. Control and Expansion Joints
1. Provide expansion, control and isolation joints in masonry as shown. Build in related items as the masonry work progresses.

2. Brick Veneer Expansion Joint Spacing: Vertical expansion joints in brick veneer construction shall be located maximum 20'-0" o.c. unless otherwise noted in addition to expansion joints located within 2'-0" of each corner of the building.

### 3.5 FLASHING/WEEP HOLES

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at relieving angles, shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to the downward flow of water in the wall, and where indicated. Space weeps 16" o.c. unless otherwise shown on drawings.
- B. Prepare masonry surfaces so that they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing.
- C. Flashing shall be placed, generally, at bottoms of cavity wall construction, over all wall openings, window jambs, at sills of window, and in other locations where indicated on the drawings. Flashing shall overlap a minimum of 6". At bottoms of cavity walls, the flashing shall be built extending from the exterior face of the brick, attached with pressure bar at back up sheathing. At concrete spandrel beams and columns the flashing shall be installed with a termination bar. Extreme care shall be exercised in placing the masonry materials not to damage the flashing. Flashing damaged during the masonry erection shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor at no additional cost to the City of New York. Discontinuous flashing shall terminate with an end dam in a head joint, rising at least 1".
- D. When spanning an air space, flashing shall be supported with a mortar wash, insulation or treated wood blocking.
- E. Where flashing is penetrated by anchors, patch flashings at penetration using adhesive and mastic recommended by the manufacturer to insure watertight seal.
- F. Install flashing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, using adhesive, primer, thinner, cleaner and mastic as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  1. Flashing shall overlap adjacent piece of flashing a minimum of 6".
- G. Provide drip edge when flashing extends beyond face of brick.

### 3.6 CLEANING, PROTECTION, ADJUSTMENT

- A. Protection
  1. The Contractor shall take adequate precautions for the protection of all surfaces against mortar spatter, and shall immediately remove any such spatter should it inadvertently occur, leaving no stain or discoloration.
  2. Excess mortar shall be wiped off the masonry surfaces as the work progresses.
  3. Wood coverings shall be placed over all such masonry surfaces as are likely to be damaged during the progress of the entire project.



4. Protective measures shall be performed in a manner satisfactory to the Commissioner.
  5. Damaged masonry units shall be replaced to satisfaction of the Commissioner.
  6. Exterior masonry walls shall be draped with waterproof covering until copings are in place, to prevent water penetration in cavity.
- B. **Cleaning of Masonry:** Upon completion, all exposed masonry shall be thoroughly cleaned following recommendations of the BIA Technical Note No. 20. Before applying any cleaning agent to the entire wall, it shall be applied to a sample wall area of approximately 4' x 4' in a location approved by the Commissioner. No further cleaning work may proceed until the sample area has been approved by the Commissioner, after which time the same cleaning materials and method shall be used on the remaining wall area. If stiff brushes and water do not suffice, the surface shall be thoroughly saturated with clear water and then scrubbed with a solution of an approved detergent masonry cleaner, equal to "Vana Trol" made by ProSoCo Inc. or equal made by Diedrich or approved equal, mixed as per manufacturer's directions, followed immediately by a thorough rinsing with clear water. All lintels and other corrodible parts shall be thoroughly protected during cleaning.
1. Unless otherwise required by cleaning agent manufacturer use only low pressure device (30 to 50 psi) for application of cleaning agent and water rinsing.
- C. **Pointing:** Point any defective joint with mortar identical with that specified for that joint.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 01 70

RESTORATION OF DECORATIVE METAL

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the ornamental metal restoration. The extent of these items is indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Restoration of satin finish bronze.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.  
B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.  
C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.  
D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.  
E. Ornamental Metals - Section 057000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. General: Work of this section shall be executed by a firm or individual experienced in the restoration of ornamental metal similar in material, design and extent to that



indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in a record of successful in-service performance.

- C. Preconstruction Testing: Test cleaning methods on metal for compliance with specified requirements. Provide proposed cleaning materials and methods.
  - 1. Select sizes and configurations of existing work to adequately demonstrate capability of metal cleaning.
  - 2. Notify Commissioner seven days in advance of the dates and times when testing will be performed.
- D. Mockups: Prepare ornamental metal items to serve as mockups to demonstrate restoration procedures with respect to aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Prepare mockups so they are inconspicuous or reversible.
  - 1. Locate mockups in the building where directed by the Commissioner.
  - 2. Prepare mockups under same conditions as are expected during Project work.
  - 3. Cleaning Mockups: Prepare mockups approximately 4 sq. ft. in area.
    - a. Test cleaners and methods on samples of adjacent materials for possible adverse reactions, unless cleaners and methods are known to have a deleterious effect.
    - b. Allow a waiting period of not less than seven days after completion of mockups to permit a study of mockups for adverse reactions.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for application and use.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection:



1. Protect all adjacent building surfaces from damage, staining, or deterioration resulting from metal restoration work.
2. Damage occurring to the building or to its contents as a result of work of this Section, or Contractor's failure to protect against such damage, shall be the Contractor's responsibility. The Contractor shall restore or replace all damages or losses to existing intact materials resulting from his operations, to the complete satisfaction of the Commissioner, at no expense to the City of New York.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FINISHING PRODUCTS

#### A. Bronze Finish

1. Hand Rubbed Natural Satin Finish, Lacquered: CDA-M31-M34-06x, fine satin directional textured mechanical finish followed by hand-rubbed directional textured mechanical finish, with clear organic coating specified below.
  - a. Clear Organic Coating: Air-dried acrylic coating; Inralac as developed by International Copper Research Corp., 1.0 mil minimum dry thickness.
  - b. Color: Uniform, matching existing.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where ornamental metal restoration work is to be done and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper execution of the work.

### 3.2 BRONZE RESTORATION

- A. Mask and protect all adjoining areas.
- B. Thoroughly strip existing coatings.
- C. Clean and re-grain to a uniform satin finish.
- D. At interior locations, spray with two coats of clear architectural grade lacquer. All spray applications shall be performed with high volume low pressure (HVLP) spray equipment to minimize over-spray.

END OF SECTION 05 01 70

SECTION 05 12 00

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes but is not limited to the following as shown on the drawings and as specified herein:

1. Furnish and deliver for installation, anchor bolts, bearing plates and loose lintels with complete instructions and templates to facilitate installation.
2. Furnish and erect all struts, columns, bearing plates, beams, steel trusses, girders, bracing, hangers and all related connections (bolted and welded).
3. Openings (unreinforced and reinforced) in structural steel to accommodate mechanical and electrical work.
4. Shop painting and field touch-up painting.
5. Erection bracing and supports, including steel wedges, shims or nuts required for leveling base plates.
6. Lintels and angles attached to structural steel as shown on drawings.
7. Unless specifically excluded, furnish and install all other items for structural steel work indicated on the drawings, specified, or obviously needed to make the work of this Section complete.
8. Waste Management

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements
5. Division 03 Section "Cast in Place Concrete"
6. Division 05 Section "Metal Deck."
7. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."
8. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
9. Division 07 Section "Waterproofing."



10. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

C. Related Work Specified Elsewhere

1. Installation of anchor bolts furnished under this section.
2. Grout under base and bearing plates.
3. Installation of loose lintels furnished under this section.
4. Miscellaneous metal work
5. Light gage metal roof trusses.
6. Stair framing and hangers.
7. Field painting of structural steel, except as specified herein.
8. Fireproofing systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit data for each type of product indicated in the contract documents.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings in accordance with the specifications as follows:

1. Show clearly all work, including relationship of structural steel to the adjacent work of other trades and to significant lines of finishes of other trades.
2. Do not fabricate or deliver work to the site before drawings reviewed by the Commissioner have been returned.
3. Before preparing steel shop drawings, submit proposed submittal schedule for review by the Commissioner.
4. Before preparing steel shop drawings, submit for review a set of job standards showing all necessary joint details with full particulars of connection pieces, shop and field welds, and holes for erection bolts and permanent bolts. These shall include any moment and shear connections. Appropriate marks for designating all types and sizes of joint details shall be included. After approval of these job standards, the erection plans are to be submitted and shall be marked to indicate unmistakably the type and size of joint to be used for every beam connection. Do not order steel in advance of approval of the job standards and the erection plans with joint marks, except at own risk
5. Submit calculations for design of connections on job standards and all other connections such as moment and brace frames. Calculations shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state in which the project is located.
6. Prepare remainder of steel shop drawings after approval of job standards and erection plans. Drawings submitted prior to approval of job standards will be returned without review.
7. Prepare shop drawings in conformance with the applicable procedures shown in "*Detailing for Steel Construction*," latest edition, published by AISC. Prepare



- shop drawings under the supervision of competent engineering personnel, licensed by the state in which the construction is to take place. During the preparation of shop drawings, and prior to submittal, coordinate and cross check all shop drawings, including those prepared by subcontractors, for compliance with the Contract Documents.
8. Indicate clearly the size and grade of steel for each component. Identify rolled shapes, tubes and plates by using the standard designations used in "Steel Construction Manual" Latest Edition, by AISC.
  9. Indicate welds and nondestructive tests by using the symbols conforming to AWS A2.4 "Symbols for Welding and Nondestructive Testing." Where necessary for clarity, indicate welding procedure designations or other data in the tail of the welding symbol.
  10. Show explicitly the type of connection used in each location, the grade, size, and number of bolts; the type, number, position, designation and orientation of each washer; and the size of each hole, whether slotted or round. Ensure that adequate wrench clearance for correct bolt tightening is provided and note special bolt tightening sequences where applicable and necessary.
  11. Show all camber dimensions in the shop drawings. Where specific camber is not shown in the drawings, note on each affected shop drawing that such members are to be fabricated with the natural camber up.
  12. Show holes required for securing work specified in other sections to structural steelwork, as well as all holes required for passage through structural steelwork of work of other trades. Provide field work drawings for all such holes not shown in shop or erection drawings. Addition of, or change in size or location of openings will not be permitted without prior approval.
  13. Use bolted connections wherever possible; avoid field welding unless otherwise noted on drawings.
  14. Make details in such a way as to avoid having steel, connections, bracing, bolts, etc., interfere with architectural details or in any way reduce the areas of shafts, openings, clearances, etc.
  15. Detail and schedule cleaning and painting data and requirements, including specific indication of "no-paint" areas.
  16. The use of the Commissioner's electronic drawing files as a base for the erection shop drawings will be permitted at the request of the structural steel detailer upon completion and return of the waiver form. The use of the Commissioner's electronic drawing files as a base for shop drawing details will not be permitted. The structural steel detailer will be responsible for compatibility of the files with his hardware or software. The electronic files are not to be considered the contract documents, the design team makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic files given to the structural steel detailer and their use will be at the structural steel detailer's sole risk and without liability to the design team. The structural steel detailer shall remove the project title box and all references to the structural drawings including drawing numbers and structural drawing sections and details. The structural steel detailer shall also remove all reference to work not included in the steel contract.
  17. Scaling of the Commissioner's drawings is not permitted. This applies to hard paper, electronic, and all other versions.



18. Show clearly the size and location of each member and the erection mark assigned to each member. Show each field connection with all data and details necessary for assembling the structure. Direct special attention to the possible need for special guying, bracing, or shoring to prevent deformation of existing or new structure due to stresses caused by erection procedures and equipment, by construction loadings, and by forces of natural phenomena.
  19. Prepare, keep up-to-date, and submit a complete drawing index cross-referencing each assigned piece mark with the drawing number in which the piece is detailed. Detail drawings submitted without an up-to-date index and the applicable erection drawing(s) showing the location of each piece will be deemed an incomplete submission and will not be accepted as subject to any agreed shop drawing review schedule.
  20. Prepare anchor bolt and base plate erection drawings containing complete location and placing details, including details of all templates. Provide anchor bolt erection drawings to the concrete trade in advance of applicable concrete work and in coordination with concrete construction sequence.
  21. Submit, in writing, any proposed deviations from the Contract Documents, prior to the submission of shop drawings showing the proposed deviation. Submit requests for deviations on the steelwork subcontractor's letterhead. Deviations not identified, or identified only in letters of transmittal or in shop drawings or both, without the required written request, may not be accepted, and shall be sufficient cause for the Commissioner to return each shop drawing containing such deviations without further action. Acceptance of shop drawings containing deviations not detected by the Commissioner during shop drawing review shall not relieve the steelwork subcontractor from responsibility to conform strictly to the Contract Documents.
  22. Prior to resubmission of shop drawings with additions or corrections, circle or bubble and identify all changes. Drawings submitted without each change being clearly identified are subject to return for resubmission.
  23. Prior to making shop drawings for any portion of the work involving alterations to an existing structure, make all necessary field observations, measurements and surveys of existing conditions. If probes are required to accomplish such measurements, give timely notice where probes will be required.
- C. Submit certified copies of each survey conducted by a surveyor licensed by the state in which the construction is to take place and employed by the structural steel subcontractor. Survey shall show elevations and locations of base plates and anchor bolts to receive structural steel, and final elevations and locations for major members. Indicate discrepancies between actual installation and Contract Documents.
- D. Reports:
1. Submit certified copies of mill test reports for all steel furnished. Perform mechanical and chemical tests for all material regardless of thickness or use.
  2. Submit certification of recycled steel content. Certification shall clearly indicate post-consumer AND post-industrial recycled steel content for the particular member or members used.



3. Submit mill and fabricator certification of compliance with ISO14001.
  4. Submit anchor bolt checking certification as required.
  5. Submit qualification certificates of all welders who will perform work on the project.
  6. Submit survey of erected steelwork as required.
- E. Submit verification of bio-degradable or low VOC, and low Hazardous Air Pollutants (HAPS) cleaning solutions. Provide a cut sheet for all cleaning solutions used in the surface preparation of steel components. Highlight VOC limits and chemical component limits.

#### 1.4 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. The Contractor is to efficiently use resources and energy while executing the Work of this Section. Resource efficient aspects to be considered in completing this Project include the use of techniques that minimize waste generation, reuse of construction materials on site where possible, and recycling of waste generated during the construction process.
- C. Performance Requirements: The following criteria are required for the products included in this section
1. Preference shall be given to materials within 500 miles of the project site, and those steel components originating from mills/fabricators located nearest to the building site.
  2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
  3. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  4. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.



5. Require mills and fabricators have ISO14001 certification. Maximize the re-use of salvaged steel (as approved by the Commissioner) and, for work on existing buildings, alert the design team to any existing steel which could be re-used but has not been indicated on the drawings.
6. Maximize the recycled content of all steel products.
7. Design details penetrating the façade strictly in accordance with the architectural and structural directives.
8. Where possible all connections should be made using bolted as opposed to welded details.
9. Where welding is required use Submerged Arc Welding (SAW). The Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW) shall be used were SAW is not applicable (such as for angled connections and anything irregular or short). Field welding shall be allowed only in special circumstances; in such cases Flux Core Arc welding (FCAW) shall be specified with the use of portable fume exhaust system.
10. Use surface preparation techniques that minimize the use of halogenated solvents and solvents classified as volatile organic compounds. Consider using 'weathering steel' (ASTM A 847) for exterior steel with the approval of the Commissioner
11. Use high strength HSS round tubes instead of A36 Steel pipes with approval of the Commissioner.
12. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

#### 1.5 LEED SUBMITTALS

The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

- A. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  1. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  2. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  3. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
- B. VOC Reporting Form: For all installed products and materials of this Section, complete the "VOC Reporting Form" (attached to end of Section 018113 "Sustainable Design Requirements"). Information to be supplied for this Form shall include:
  1. Provide generic name by means of product type or application of all field-applied interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings in this Section.
  2. Provide corresponding referenced standard limits.



3. Provide full name of supplied product(s) and vendor or manufacturer for each product in this Section.
  4. For all field-applied interior adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings in this Section, provide Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content in grams/liter or lbs./gallon.
- C. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
- D. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
- E. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits). Assemble required LEED Submittal information into one (1) package for each Specification Section or sub-contractor. Incomplete or inaccurate LEED Submittals may be used as the basis for rejecting the submittal products or assemblies.

#### 1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches .
  2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches .
  3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches .
- D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.



- E. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

#### 1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of all connections required by the drawings to be completed by structural steel fabricator (including comprehensive engineering analysis by a licensed professional engineer) to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated, unless noted otherwise.
1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
  2. Use design method indicated on structural drawings.
  3. Moment Connections: Fully restrained unless otherwise noted on drawings.
- B. Lateral Framing Resisting System: Type used is indicated on structural drawings.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Except as modified by this specification, comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following codes and standards:
1. New York City Building Code, Latest Edition
  2. AISC "Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings".
  3. AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" latest edition.
  4. AISC "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings", latest edition.
  5. Industrial Fasteners Institute "Handbook of Bolt and Bolted Joints" latest edition.
  6. RCSC "Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
  7. ASTM A 6 "General requirements for rolled steel plates, shapes, sheet piling and bars for structural use".
  8. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code."
  9. AWS A5.18 & A5.28, Structural Welding Code for GMAW
  10. SSPC "Painting Manual, Volume 2, Systems and Specifications.", Latest edition.
- B. Qualifications for welding work shall be as follows:
1. Qualify welding procedures and welding operators in accordance with the AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure."
    - a. Include amended requirements of the building code as noted above.



2. Submit certification that all welders to be employed in work are AWS qualified. If re-certification of welders is required, retesting will be responsibility of structural steel subcontractor.
  - a. Include licensing requirements as per the building code noted above and local jurisdiction.

#### 1.9 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Special Inspection as required by the applicable Building Code of all structural steelwork in the shop and field will be performed by an inspection agency retained by the City of New York at no expense to the Contractor. The inspection agency shall work under the direction of the City of New York. Contractor shall provide the inspection agency with the following:
  1. Schedule of all work in both shop and field with at least ten days' written notice before commencement of either activity.
  2. A complete set of approved shop and erection drawings.
  3. Cutting lists, order sheets, material bills, shipping bills and mill test reports.
  4. Information as to time and place of all rollings and shipment of material to shops.
  5. Representative sample pieces as requested by the testing agency.
  6. Full and ample means and assistance for testing all material.
  7. Proper facilities, including scaffolding, temporary work platforms, etc., for inspection of the work in the mills, shop and field.
- B. Each person installing connections shall be assigned an identifying symbol or mark and all shop and field connections shall be so identified so that the inspector can refer back to the person making the connection.
- C. The following minimum criteria shall be adhered to in testing of welds and bolts:
  1. All welds and bolts shall be examined by visual means.
  2. 25% of all welds, selected randomly, shall be measured.
  3. 25% of all bolts, selected randomly, shall be checked with calibrated torque wrench.
  4. In addition, all welds subject to tensile stress shall be examined by the Ultrasonic Method for 100% of their length.
  5. 10% of all manual fillet welds shall be tested by the magnetic particle method.
  6. 1'-0" at each end of automatic fillet welds shall be tested by the magnetic particle method.
  7. 100% of groove welds shall be tested by the ultrasonic method.
- D. Shop inspection will include examination of steel for straightness and alignment, fissures, mill scale, and other defects and deformities, as described in ASTM A6, examination of fabricated pieces for conforming to approved shop drawings, testing of bolts and welds, and inspection of shop painting. All shop welds shall be visually



inspected and spot tested using Ultrasonic Method ASTM E 114 and AWS, Chapter 6, Part C. All inspected welds shall be identified by the inspector.

- E. Field inspection will include examination of erected steel for welding, proper fitting and tensioning of bolts, alignment, trueness and plumbness, touching-up of shop coat, level of billets and base plates.
- F. Inspection of welding will be such as to assure that the work is within the quality requirements specified below and elsewhere in this section of the specifications and will include:
  - 1. Ascertainment that the electrodes and flux used for the SAW, GMAW and FCAW welding processes conform to the requirements of this section of the specifications.
  - 2. Ascertainment that the approved welding procedures and sequence are followed without deviation, unless specific approval for change is obtained from the Commissioner.
  - 3. The testing agency shall be prepared to utilize the following approved methods of testing:
    - a. Liquid penetrant inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic particle: ASTM E 1444.
    - c. Radiographic inspection: ASTM E 94 and E 1032.
    - d. Ultrasonic inspection: ASTM E 114 and AWS, Chapter 6, Section C.
- G. When defects are revealed, additional inspection by whatever method is deemed necessary by the inspector, shall be performed to the extent necessary to assure that the full amount of defect has been located. No further work shall be done on the assembly or sub-assembly in question until all the necessary corrections have been made. Defects shall be repaired, using the same welding procedure that was used initially in making the weld, unless otherwise approved by the Commissioner. Inspection of the repaired weld shall be by the same method that was used to reveal the defect. A second repair of a defective area shall not be made without approval of the Commissioner.
- H. Apparatus and procedure for measuring torque and tension in high strength bolts and for calibrating wrenches shall be furnished and maintained by steel contractor, and shall be approved by the inspection agency. Wrenches shall be calibrated each day at the beginning of the work, each time the bolt size or length of pressure hose is changed, and at such other times as the inspection agency may direct. Periodic checks of high strength steel bolt connections will be made in the field by the inspection agency. The steel contractor shall maintain at all times during erection a manual torque wrench, and shall provide a laborer and scaffolding as required for the testing of connections by the inspection agency, and shall at his own expense, furnish such facilities and provide such assistance as may be required for proper inspection.



- I. A distinguishing mark will be placed on all work that has been inspected and approved. Material or work that is not acceptable will be designated by words such as "REJECT" or "REPAIR" marked directly on the material or work.
- J. Inspection of Shop Painting:
  1. Visually evaluate surface preparation by comparison with pictorial standards in accordance with SSPC-Vis 1.
  2. Measure dry film thickness of each coat with a magnetic film thickness gauge in accordance with SSPC-PA 2.
  3. Visually inspect dried film for runs, sags, dry spray, overspray and missed areas.
  4. Repair defective or damaged areas in accordance with painting requirements specified. Architecturally exposed structural steel shall be free of runs and holidays. Make repairs to shop or field coat as directed.

#### 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to site at such intervals to ensure uninterrupted progress of work. Minimize the disturbances to site and soil conditions.
- B. Deliver anchor bolts and anchorage devices, which are to be embedded in cast-in-place concrete, in ample time not to delay work.
- C. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members in a safe, dry, off ground location, using pallets, platforms, or other supports. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration, discoloration or staining.
- D. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion or damage to members of supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

#### 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. The structural steel contractor shall coordinate the structural steel work with the work of other Contracts. Verify all dimensions and details of this Contract and those of other Contracts that affect the work before proceeding. Any discrepancies shall be immediately reported to the Commissioner.
- B. Be fully responsible for the accurate installation of the work. Any discrepancy which arises from his failure to execute the work in conformity to the drawings and specifications shall be properly remedied at the contractor's own expense and in a manner acceptable to the Commissioner.



- C. Locate dimensionally on setting plans all anchor bolts, inserts, bearing and base plates, etc., and prepare and deliver all required templates and fully dimensioned setting plans in time for the proper execution of the work. Anchor bolts shall be set by another subcontractor. The structural steel contractor shall check all such settings for correctness after they have been cast in place, and before proceeding with erection work.
- D. Report to the Commissioner and certify compliance with the above checking requirements in writing and indicate any inaccuracies found in the location of anchor bolts or inserts, and corrections which must be made to their installation. Any inaccuracies not included in the report and found during or after steel erection shall be the responsibility of the structural steel contractor and the cost of corrective measures shall be borne by him.
- E. Use base lines, bench marks, or other standards for survey work that have been provided or verified by others. If permanent building bench marks have been established, these will be used for field checking.
- F. Coordinate with all other trades to insure that work of this section does not cause undue conflict. Insure that location of erection devices such as cranes, derricks, booms or hoists, does not cause over-stresses to steel frame to work previously placed by other trades or to existing structures. When required, retain the services of a licensed professional engineer to ascertain that erection devices do not create unsafe conditions or cause overstresses.
- G. Ensure full co-ordination with other related trades and professions.

## 1.12 SUBSTITUTION

- A. Commissioner reserves the right to require substitute shapes of other sizes than those indicated on the drawings when it is apparent that the shapes specified cannot be furnished within the time required for the progress of construction. Make said substitutions without additional cost to the City of New York.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel shapes, including structural steel wide flange and structural tee rolled shapes, channels, angles, plates, pipe, and hollow structural sections: As noted on structural drawings.
- B. High Strength Bolts:
  - 1. Slip-critical bolts as noted on structural drawings, with hardened washers

- C. Anchor Bolts: As noted on structural drawings
- D. Filler metal for welding electrodes. As noted on structural drawings.
- E. Structural steel primer paint: rust inhibitive primer conforms to the following criteria
  - 1. Demonstrate a minimum of adhesion as classified by 4B of ASTM D 3359 method A
  - 2. Demonstrate a minimum opacity as determined by ASTM D 2805
  - 3. Demonstrate corrosion resistance per standards ASTM B 117 & ASTM D 5894
  - 4. "Slip Critical" compatible rating where applicable
  - 5. The product shall not contain any of the prohibited compounds as listed in Green Seal *Standard for Paintings and Coatings*, GS-11, latest edition and in Master Painters Institute (MPI) *Green Performance Standard*, GPS-1-08.
  - 6. The product shall meet the VOC limits as set forth in the MPI Green Performance Standard, GPS-1-08, with a maximum allowable VOC of 340 g/L for rust preventative coatings. Limits are expressed in THINNED state. Preference shall be given to products with the least crystalline silica content.
  - 7. The product shall meet all the requirements of MPI Standards: 23, 26, 76, 79, 95, 107, 135, 173, 275. Products not listed with MPI are acceptable if and only if they meet the same environmental criteria for the same product category.
    - a. Exterior exposed steel, normal conditions: Use alkyd or polyamide solvent based paints (MPI #'s 76, 79 & 101)
    - b. Interior exposed steel: Use water based paint (MPI # 107)
    - c. Special Applications, highly corrosive environments: Use zinc rich paints (MPI #'s 20 & 200)
- F. Structural steel field paint for exposed members: rust inhibitive primer conforms to the following criteria
  - 1. Demonstrate a minimum of adhesion as classified by 4B of ASTM D 3359 method A
  - 2. Demonstrate a minimum opacity as determined by ASTM D 2805
  - 3. Demonstrate corrosion resistance per standards ASTM B 117 & ASTM D 5894
  - 4. "Slip Critical" compatible rating where applicable.
  - 5. The product shall not contain any of the prohibited compounds as listed in Green Seal *Standard for Paintings and Coatings*, GS-11, latest edition and in the Master Painters Institute *Green Performance Standard*, GPS-1-08.
  - 6. The product shall meet the VOC limits as set forth in the MPI Green Performance Standard, GPS-1-08, with a maximum allowable VOC of 400 g/L for rust preventative coatings. Limits are expressed in THINNED state. Preference shall be given to products with the least crystalline silica content.
  - 7. The product shall meet all the requirements of MPI Standards: 23, 26, 76, 79, 95, 107, 135, 173, 275. Products not listed with MPI are acceptable if and only if they meet the same environmental criteria for the same product category. Products



not listed with MPI are acceptable if and only if they meet the same environmental criteria for the same product category.

- a. Exterior exposed steel, normal conditions: Use alkyd or polyamide solvent based paints (MPI #'s 23, 79)
- b. Interior exposed steel: Use water based paint (MPI # 107)

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FABRICATION**

- A. All shop connections shall be high strength bolted unless specifically shown otherwise. Fabricate work in shop in as large assemblies as practicable. Use welded connections ONLY where shown on drawings. If a bolted connection is not possible obtain written approval from the Commissioner for the welded connection.
- B. Camber: As indicated on drawings.
- C. Mill column ends and bearing stiffeners to give full bearing over the cross section. Plane contact surfaces of bearing plates when required by the AISC Specifications. It is not necessary to plane bottom surfaces of plates on grout beds.
- D. Drill or punch holes at right angles to the surface of the metal, not more than 1/16" larger than the connector diameter. Do not make or enlarge holes by burning. Drill material having a thickness in excess of the connector diameter and material thicker than 7/8". Holes shall be clean-cut without torn or ragged edges. Remove outside burrs resulting from drilling operations.
- E. Provide holes in members to permit connection of the work of other trades. Use suitable templates for proper location of these holes. Steel requiring adjustment or accurate alignment shall be provided with slotted holes or full bearing shims as shown.
- F. Provide holes, slots and openings required by other trades together with necessary reinforcing required. Use suitable templates for proper location of these openings. All such openings shall be shown on the shop drawings. No change in size or location will be permitted without prior approval.
- G. Manual flame cutting shall be done only with a mechanically guided torch. An unguided torch may be used provided the cut is within 1/8" of the required line.

### **3.2 SHOP CONNECTIONS**

- A. Provide connections as shown on the drawing exactly as detailed. Where connections are not detailed, the minimum connections shall comply with appropriate tables



headed, "Framed Beam Connections" shown in the AISC "Manual of Steel Construction" unless otherwise noted on the drawings. Use high strength bolts unless otherwise shown.

- B. Do not use welded connections unless shown on details. Field welding is not allowed without written instruction from the Commissioner.
- C. Proportion and detail all connections on shop drawings to resist forces shown on design drawings. If no reactions are indicated on design drawings, design connections for non-composite beams to resist the end reaction shown in the AISC tables for Uniform Load Constants for Beams. Connections for composite beams shall be proportioned to resist 150% of the above mentioned tabulated load.
- D. Bolting
1. Bolts shall be of a length that will extend not less than 1/4" beyond the nuts. Enter bolts into holes without damaging the thread.
  2. Use high-strength bolts in friction as shown. Make high-strength bolted joints without the use of erection bolts. Bolt heads and nuts shall rest squarely against the metal. Where structural members have sloping surface, bolted connections shall be provided with beveled washers to afford square seating or framing for bolt heads or nuts. Bring members tightly together with sufficient high-strength "fitting-up" bolts which shall be retightened as all the bolts are finally tightened. Manual torque wrenches will not be accepted for final tightening. Protect bolt heads from damage during placing. Final tightening of high-strength bolts shall be by properly calibrated power torque wrenches. Bolts that have been completely tightened shall be marked for identification.
- E. Welding
1. The following environmentally preferable welding processes shall be used as described for the related application without exception:
    - a. Submerged Arc Welding (SAW): Plate girders, fillet and butt joints in pipes, cylinders, columns and beams, and welds where 'downhand' or horizontal positions are possible.
    - b. Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW) shall be used where SAW is not applicable (such as for angled connections and anything irregular or short).
    - c. Field welding shall be allowed only in special circumstances; in such cases Flux Core Arc welding (FCAW) shall be specified
  2. Do not begin structural welding until joint elements are inspected for surface preparation, fit-up, and cleanliness of surface to be welded and are then bolted or tacked in intimate contact and adjusted to dimensions shown on drawings, or both, with allowance for any weld shrinkage that is expected. No members are to be spliced without prior approval by the Commissioner.



- a. Containment surface preparation debris must meet SSPC-Guide 6 guidelines.
3. Pre-heat and interpass temperature shall be in accordance with Table 4.2 (including footnotes) of the AWS Code for Welding in Building Construction. The temperature shall be measured from the side opposite to that which the pre-heat is applied, where possible.
4. All groove welds shall be continuous and full penetration welds unless otherwise shown on the design drawings. Welds made without the aid of a back-up bar shall have their roots chipped, ground or roughened out to sound metal from the second side, before welding is done from the second side.
5. All welds shall be sound throughout. There shall be no crack in any weld or weld pass. Weld may be considered sound if it contains only slight porosity or fusion defects which are well dispersed.
6. The heat, input, length of weld and sequence of weld shall be controlled to prevent distortions. The surfaces to be welded and the filler metals to be used shall be subject to inspection before any welding is performed.

### 3.3 SHOP PAINTING AND CLEANING

- A. Finishing, coating, plating
  1. Shop painting and factory finishing shall be preferred to field painting whenever possible. Where applicable, finishes and surface preparations based on a physical process such as abrasive blasting, grinding, buffing and polishing are preferred to coatings and solvent based cleaning. Where coatings are necessary powder-coated fabrication is preferred to painting and plating. Avoid plated metals especially those using cadmium and chromium as plate material or cyanide or copper/formaldehyde based electroless copper as the plating solution.
- B. Remove all rust, scale, grease and other detrimental foreign matter in accordance with SSPC-SP 3, Power Tool Cleaning, unless conditions/opportunities listed below apply.
  1. Use surface preparation classification recommended by paint manufacturer, SSPC or Master Painters Institute (MPI) for paint product used.
    - a. SSPC-Guide 6, Guide for Containing Debris Generated During Paint Removal Operations, must be followed for all applicable surface preparation techniques.
- C. Immediately after surface preparation, apply structural steel primer paint where specified, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and at a rate to provide dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils. Use painting methods which result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges and exposed surfaces. Use type of primer paint as specified in "Materials" article above. Apply two coats to surfaces that will be inaccessible after erection



- D. Paint all structural steel in accordance with the foregoing specification, except as follows:
1. Steel which is to receive spray-on fireproofing.
  2. Within 2" of field welds or welds made after paint is applied.
  3. Within 3" of high strength friction bolts.
  4. Machined surfaces and threaded parts required for adjustment of the structure. Protect these with suitable rust inhibiting coating which may be removed after final installation of the work so that proper finished coatings may be applied.

### 3.4 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

### 3.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Refer to testing and inspection requirements specified above.

### 3.6 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify field measurements prior to start of erection. Check the alignment and elevation of all column supports and location of all anchor bolts with transit and level instruments before starting erection. Notify Commissioner of any errors. Obtain Commissioner's approval of methods proposed for correcting errors prior to proceeding with corrections and erection.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.7 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.



### 3.8 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- C. Column billets and bearing plates shall be supported and aligned on steel wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After the supported members have been plumbed and properly positioned by instrument and anchor nuts tightened, the entire bearing area under the plate shall be packed solidly with grout specified in another Section. Wedges and shims shall be set back a minimum of 3/4" from the edges of plates and shall be left in place. Leveling plates are not permitted.
- D. Plumbing, Leveling and Bracing
  - 1. Structural steel shall be erected true and level, and temporary bracing shall be introduced wherever necessary to provide for all loads to which the structure may be subjected, including equipment and the operation thereof. Such bracing shall be left in place as long as may be required for safety. No welding shall be done or bolts drawn up tight until structural steel has been properly aligned. Obtain approval for guy locations to assure lack of interference with operations of other trades.
- E. Drifting
  - 1. Light drifting necessary to draw holes together will be permitted, but drifting of unfair holes will not be permitted. Twist drills shall be used to enlarge holes as necessary to the next larger size; use next larger size bolts as required. Reaming that weakens the members, or make it impossible to fill the holes properly or to adjust accurately after reaming, will not be allowed.

### 3.9 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. In addition to the requirements for shop connections comply with the following:
  - 1. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 2. Joint Type: As noted on structural drawings.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M[ and AWS D1.8/D1.8M] for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.



1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

### 3.10 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. **Galvanized Surfaces:** Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- B. **Touchup Painting:** Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 3, Power Tool Cleaning.
- C. **Touchup Painting:** Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 9."
- D. After erection, all damaged areas in shop coat, exposed surfaces of bolt heads, nuts and washers, and all field welds and unpainted areas adjacent to field welds and high strength bolts shall be painted with a "touch-up" application of same paint used in the shop coat and then painted with same paint used for shop coat tinted another color. Retouch in field, any scraped, abraded, and unpainted surfaces. Painting shall be as specified for shop coats.
- E. Structural steel which is to support mechanical equipment and will be left exposed to the weather in the finished project shall be field painted with one coat of anti-corrosive paint as described in Part 2 for Paint Materials.

### 3.11 WASTE MANAGEMENT

- A. Separate and recycle waste materials in accordance with the Section 017419 Construction Waste Management and Disposal and to the maximum extent feasible.
- B. Separate for recycling and place in designated containers the following metal waste in accordance with the Waste Management Plans and local recycler standards: Steel, iron, galvanized steel, galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, aluminum, copper, zinc, lead, brass and bronze.
- C. Collect all metal cut-offs and scraps and recycle as above.
- D. Fold up metal banding, flatten and place in designated area.
- E. Close and seal tightly all partly used paint and finish containers and store protected in a well-ventilated, fire-safe area at moderate temperature.



- F. Designated un-used paint for:
  - 1. Immediate re-use
  - 2. Long term maintenance needs
  - 3. Recycling by an appropriate facility.
  - 4. Donation
  
- G. Place empty containers of solvent-based paints in areas designated for hazardous materials.
  
- H. Do not dispose of paints or solvents by pouring on the ground. Place amounts too small to re-use in designated containers for proper disposal
  
- I. Place materials defined as hazardous or toxic waste in designated containers.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 053100

STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work of this section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Work of this section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the metal deck work and headed shear studs as shown on the drawings as specified herein

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:

The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
  3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- B. Except as modified by governing codes and by this specification, comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following codes and standards:
- C. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI) "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members".
  - D. American Welding Society (AWS), D1.1 "Structural Welding Code" and D1.3 "Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel".
  - E. Steel Deck Institute (SDI) "Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, and Roof Decks".

1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS



- A. Metal deck unit sizes and gages are indicated on the drawings. Gages indicated on the drawings are a minimum. Thickness of deck may be required to be increased by deck manufacturer for loadings indicated on drawings.
- B. Unit shall span over three or more supports except where steel layout does not permit.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

##### A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:

The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Shop drawings for all installations showing gauges, type of deck, any shoring required, where located, welding details necessary for fabrication to fit in place, and all accessories. Do not use reproductions of the Design Drawings.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver material to site at such intervals to ensure uninterrupted progress of work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel Decking: ASTM A653 G90.
  - 1. Headed studs for shear connectors shall be 3/4-inch (unless noted) diameter manufactured from cold drawn wire and conforming to ASTM A108, Grades 1010 thru 1020. Studs shall be manufactured by Nelson or KSM.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate deck units in accordance with the AISI's "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and accepted shop drawings. Fabricate deck units to the sizes and configurations indicated and cut to lengths which will span not fewer than three supporting members; use only full length units at overhang where indicated in a manner that laps fit tightly. Locate openings for penetrations where indicated and provide support framing and edge reinforcement for all openings.

3.2 INSPECTION

- A. Inspection of the metal deck and shear stud installation will be performed by an inspection agency retained by the City of New York at no expense to the contractor.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. The erection of the steel decking shall be performed per the manufacturer's standards. Erection shall closely follow the erection of structural steel.
- B. Decking units shall be fastened to the steel framework at ends of units and at all intermediate supports by 3/4-inch diameter puddle welds spaced not more than 12 inch o.c. across width of unit.
- C. Headed shear studs shall be installed by welding through metal deck onto beam below. Automatic welding machinery of approved design, amperage, duration of current, etc., shall be used. Studs shall be tested by testing laboratory in accordance with AWS Procedures for Bend Test; replace all studs, which do not pass test.

3.4 CLEANING UP

- A. Remove all equipment, unused materials and debris from the site immediately upon the completion of this work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 054000

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the cold-formed metal framing as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. "C" shaped steel studs for exterior non-load bearing wall frame construction.
  2. "C" shaped steel joists.
  3. Anchors and accessories.
  4. Gypsum sheathing.
  5. Field inspection.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Unit Masonry - Section 042000.
- F. Structural Steel Framing - Section 051200.
- G. Vapor permeable air barrier - Section 072700.23.
- H. Interior steel stud construction - Section 092900.



#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
1. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
  3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. **Component Design:** Compute structural properties of studs in accordance with AISI "North American Specification for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members."
- D. **Fire-Rated Assemblies:** Where framing units are indicated to be components of fire-resistance rated assemblies, provide cold formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Products used in the assembly shall carry a classification label from an approved testing and inspection agency.
- E. **Qualifications**
1. **Manufacturer's Qualifications:** Minimum five years' experience in producing products of the type specified.



2. Installer's Qualifications: Minimum three years' experience in installation of the type of product specified.
3. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M "Structural Welding Code - Steel" and AWS DL3 "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

**F. Pre-Installation Meeting**

1. Convene meeting at project site within one week of scheduled start of installation with representatives of the following in attendance: Owner, Architect, General Contractor, and metal framing subcontractor.
2. Review substrate conditions, requirements of related work, installation instructions, storage and handling procedures, and protection measures.
3. Keep minutes of meeting, including responsibilities of various parties and deviations from specifications and installation instructions. Distribute minutes to attendees within 72 hours.

**G. Comply with the following standards:**

1. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - a. "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members," latest edition.
  - b. "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing General Provisions."
2. American Welding Society (AWS):
  - a. Structural Welding Code (D1.1).
  - b. Specifications for Welding Sheet Steel in Structures (E1.3).
3. ASTM:
  - a. ASTM A 653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
  - b. ASTM A 780 - Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings.
  - c. ASTM A 924 - Standard Requirements for Sheet Steel, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dipped Process.
  - d. ASTM C 955 - Standard Specification for Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs, Runners (Tracks), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Panel Products and Metal Plaster Bases.
  - e. ASTM A 1003 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Non-Metallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members.



- f. ASTM C 1007 - Standard Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories.
  - g. ASTM C 1513 - Standard Specification for Steel Tapping Screws for Cold-Formed Steel Framing Connections.
- H. Vertical and Lateral Fire Propagation Test Characteristics: The exterior wall assembly is required to comply with NFPA 285 "Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components." The base wall, stud cavity insulation, wall sheathing, air barrier, continuous wall rigid insulation and exterior cladding are components that are required to be evaluated as part of this specific assembly test. The basis of design product listed below is a component of the design test assembly selected by the Architect.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
- 1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  - 2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  - 3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

- B. **Product Data:** For information only, submit copies of manufacturer's product information and installation instructions for each item of cold-formed framing and accessories.
- C. **Shop Drawings**
  - 1. Submit shop drawings for special components and installations not fully dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include placing drawings for framing members showing size and gauge designations, number, type, location and spacing. Indicate supplemental bracing, splices, window and door headers accessories and details as may be required for proper installation.
  - 2. If the Contractor elects to prefabricate framing members into panels for erection, he shall submit shop drawings of such panels at suitable scale showing all dimensions, components, and methods of fastening and support.
- D. For fasteners, submit product data sheet and samples.
- E. **Engineering Data**
  - 1. Submit Engineering Data drawings to the Architect for review. The Contractor is responsible for the structural design and supports for the cold-formed metal frame, and must show his proposed system and how the Performance Criteria noted below is accommodated on these drawings.
  - 2. These drawings must show all load conditions and design calculations relative to connections, fastening devices and anchorage, as well as size and gauge of members. Calculations and drawings must be prepared by a Structural Engineer licensed in the State of New York, and shall be signed and sealed by this Engineer.
- F. **Quality Assurance Submittals:** Submit the following:
  - 1. **Qualifications:** Proof of manufacturer, installer, and welder qualifications.
  - 2. Structural design calculations.
  - 3. **Certificates**
    - a. Submit mill certificates signed by framing member/accessory manufacturer certifying compliance with material requirements.
    - b. Welder certificates.
  - 4. Manufacturer's installation instructions for framing members and framing accessories.



## 1.6 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Cold-formed metal framing system shall be designed, fabricated, and installed to withstand a 30 psf suction and pressure load (or greater if required by Code) with a maximum deflection of  $L/720$  with brick.
- B. Design system to accommodate vertical deflection of structural building frame, live loading, seasonal and day/night temperature ranges and construction tolerances.
- C. Comply with Local Law 17-95 for seismic connections and loads.

## 1.7 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Protect metal framing units from rusting and damage. Deliver to one project site in manufacturer's unopened containers or bundles, fully identified with name, brand, type and grade. Store off the ground in a dry ventilated space or protect with suitable waterproof coverings. Conform to storage and handling requirements of AISI "Code of Standard Practice."

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Provide cold-formed steel framing manufactured by Marino/Ware, Dale/Incor, Superior Steel Studs, ClarkDietrich Building Systems, Super Stud Building Products, or approved equal.

### 2.2 METAL FRAMING: GENERAL

- A. System Components: With each type of metal framing required, provide manufacturer's standard steel runners, (tracks), blocking, lintels, clip angles, shoes, reinforcements, fasteners and accessories, as recommended by manufacturer for the applications indicated, as needed to provide a complete metal framing system.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet for Studs and Tracks: ASTM A 1003 Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G90 galvanized coating.
- B. Steel Sheet for Clips: ASTM A 653, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating G90 galvanized coating.

2.4 FRAMING MEMBERS

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges; thickness and grade as required by structural performance.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths compatible with studs, un-punched, with un-stiffened flanges; thickness and grade as required by structural performance.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Stamp manufacturer's name on each accessory item.
- B. Provide screws with accessories designated for screw attachment.
- C. Connector Devices
  - 1. Vertical Deflection Clips: "VertiClip," including step bushings, as manufactured by The Steel Network Inc. (919) 845-1025 or approved equal. Rigid attachments to structure and screw attachment to stud web using step-bushings to permit frictionless vertical movement. 68 mils minimum thickness, size as required by structural design calculations.
  - 2. Rigid Clip Angles: "StiffClip" as manufactured by The Steel Network Inc., or approved equal, size as required by structural design calculations. Rigid attachment to structure and stud web.
- D. Bridging
  - 1. Cold Rolled Channel: 1-1/2" by 1/2" by 56 mil thick.
    - a. Bridging Clip: "BridgeClip" as manufactured by The Steel Network Inc. or approved equal. Provide attachment through stud punch-out clamping onto stud web and wrapping around bridging channel. Provide holes for screw attachment to stud web and channel.
  - 2. Flat Strap: Width and thickness as required by structural design calculations. Rigid attachment to stud flange.
  - 3. Solid Bridging: Channel shaped bridging with lipped flanges and integral formed clips. Screw attachment to stud. 33 mils minimum thickness, size as required by structural design calculations.
  - 4. Bridging and accessories shall be hot dip zinc coated per ASTM A 153.
- E. Header for Window and Door Openings: Provide "ProX Header" system made by Brady Innovations LLC, or approved equal complete with all accessories including clips and accessories; finish and gauge to match studs.



## 2.6 FASTENERS

- A. Screws: Corrosion resistant coated, self-drilling, pan or hex washer head. Provide screw type and size as required by structural design calculations.
- B. Anchor Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A, carbon steel, with hex-head carbon steel nuts and flat steel washers. Hot-dip zinc coated in accordance with ASTM A 153. Provide bolt or stud type and size as required by structural design calculations.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.7 GALVANIZING TOUCH-UP

- A. For touching up damaged galvanized surfaces after erection, provide "Silver Galv" made by Z.R.C. Worldwide. Apply to a dry film thickness of 1.5 to 3.0 mils.

## 2.8 GYPSUM SHEATHING AND RELATED ACCESSORIES

- A. Gypsum Sheathing: 5/8" thick "Dens-Glass Fireguard," Type X, made by Georgia Pacific, "Securock Glass-Mat Sheathing" made by U.S. Gypsum Co., "Gold Bond EXP Extended Exposure Sheathing" made by National Gypsum Co., "Weather Defense" made by Lafarge/Continental, or approved equal, meeting ASTM C 1177, Type X.
- B. Fasteners: 1-1/4" Type S-12 screws "Climaseal" finish.
- C. Joint Treatment: Provide a one-part high performance sealant conforming to ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25 meeting with the approval of the air/vapor barrier manufacturer for compatibility; see Section 072700.23 for description. Apply a 3/8" bead of sealant to the joint and trowel flat. Apply enough of the same material to each fastener to cover completely when trowelled flat.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Framing components may be prefabricated into panels prior to erection. Fabricate panels plumb, square, true to line and braced against racking with joints welded. Perform lifting of prefabricated panels in a manner to prevent damage or distortion in any members in the assembly.
- B. Fastenings: Attach similar components by welding. Attach dissimilar components by welding, bolting or screw fasteners, as standard with manufacturer.
- C. Wire tying of framing components is not permitted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where cold-formed metal framing is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION: GENERAL

- A. Methods of construction shall be piece by piece.
- B. Connections shall be accomplished with self-drilling screws or welding so that the connection meets or exceeds the design loads required at that connection.
- C. Studs shall be installed seated squarely (within 1/16") against the web portion of the top and bottom tracks. Tracks shall rest on a continuous, uniform bearing surface.
- D. Cutting of steel framing members may be accomplished with a saw or shear. Torch cutting of loaded members is not permitted. Cutting of loaded members is not permitted unless under supervision of the project architect or engineer.
- E. Temporary bracing shall be provided and left in place until work is permanently stabilized.
- F. Bridging shall be of size and type shown on the approved shop drawings and as called for in the engineering calculations.
- G. Install headers in all openings that are larger than the stud spacing in that wall. Form headers as shown on the drawings.
- H. Insulation meeting the requirements of Section 072100 shall be placed in all jamb and header type conditions that will be inaccessible after their installation into the wall.
- I. Provide jack studs to support each end of headers. These studs shall be securely connected to the header and must seat squarely in the lower track of the wall, and be properly attached to it.
- J. If, by design, a header is low in the wall, the less than full-height studs (cripples) that occur over the header shall be designed to carry all imposed loads.
- K. Wall track shall not be used support any load unless specifically designed for that purpose.
- L. All axially loaded members shall be aligned vertically, to allow for full transfer of the loads down to the foundation. Vertical alignment shall be maintained at floor/wall intersections or alternate provisions for load transfer may be made.



- M. Holes that are field cut into steel framing members shall be within the limitation of the product and its design. Provide reinforcement where holes are cut through load bearing members in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as approved by the Architect or Engineer.
- N. Touch up all steel bared by welding using touch-up coating specified herein.
- O. Studs shall be spaced to suit the design requirements and limitations of collateral facing materials.
- P. Care should be taken to allow for additional studs at intersections, corners, doors, windows, control joints, etc., and as called for in the shop drawings or design calculations.
- Q. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in metal framing system wherever walls or partitions are indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim and furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to the wall or partition. Where type of supplementary support is not otherwise indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or loading resulting from item supported.
- R. Provide for structure movement, expansion shall be allowed where indicated and necessary by design or code requirements.
- S. Frame both sides of expansion and control joints with separate studs; do not bridge the joint with components of stud system.
- T. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced (vertical distance) at not more than 48 inches on center. Fasten at each intersection.
- U. Splicing of axially loaded members or floor joists shall not be permitted.
- V. Wire tying of members is not permitted.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Fasten sheathing to exterior of each stud with specified fasteners spaced 3/8" from ends and edges and approx. 8" o.c. at each stud. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations using 2500-RPM maximum screw gun. Sheathing board shall be installed horizontally. Apply sealant between joints and trowel flush; and apply sealant around sheathing perimeter and at interface with other materials. Cover fastener heads with sealant and trowel flush.
- B. Refer to Section 072700.23 for vapor permeable air barrier description.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

SECTION 05 50 00

MISCELLANEOUS METALS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the miscellaneous metal work as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Rough hardware.
  2. Light steel framing and supports, not included as part of work of other trades.
  3. Miscellaneous steel trim, corner guards, angle guards and channels.
  4. Countertop supports.
  5. Curtain track supports, theatrical pipe ring and glazing supports.
  6. Cable niche above cornice.
  7. Steel framing, bracing, supports, anchors, bolts, shims, fastenings, and all other supplementary parts indicated on drawings or as required to complete each item of work of this Section.
  8. Prime painting, touch-up painting, and separation of dissimilar metals for work of this Section.
  9. Cutting, fitting, drilling and tapping work of this Section to accommodate work of other Sections and of concrete, masonry or other materials as required for attaching and installing work of this Section.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.  
B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.



- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Painting and Finishing - Section 099000.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are **REQUIRED** for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - 2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
  - 3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  - 4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. **Field Measurements:** Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication, where possible. Do not delay job progress; allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay work.
- D. **Shop Assembly:** Pre-assemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.



E. Reference Standards: The work is subject to requirements of applicable portions of the following standards:

1. "Manual of Steel Construction," American Institute of Steel Construction.
2. AWS D1-1 "Structural Welding Code," American Welding Society.
3. SSPC SP-3 "Surface Preparation Specification No. 3, Power Tool Cleaning," Steel Structures Painting Council.
4. SSPC PA-1 "Painting Application Specification," Steel Structures Painting Council.
5. "Handbook on Bolt, Nut and Rivet Standards," Industrial Fasteners Institute.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).



- B. **Manufacturer's Literature:** Submit manufacturer's specifications, load tables, dimension diagrams, anchor details and installation instructions for products to be used in the fabrication of miscellaneous metal work, including paint products.
- C. **Shop Drawings:** Shop drawings for the fabrication and erection of all assemblies of miscellaneous iron work which are not completely shown by manufacturer's data sheets. Include plans and elevations at not less than 1" to 1'-0" scale, and include details of sections and connections at not less than 3" to 1'-0" scale. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- D. **Welding** shall be indicated on shop drawings using AWS symbols and showing length, size and spacing (if not continuous). Auxiliary views shall be shown to clarify all welding. Notes such as 1/4" weld, weld and tack weld are not acceptable.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### A. Metals

- 1. **Metal Surfaces, General:** For fabrication of miscellaneous metal work which will be exposed to view, use only materials which are smooth and free of surface blemishes including pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names and roughness.
- 2. **Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars:** ASTM A 36.
- 3. **Steel Bar Grating:** ASTM A 1011 or ASTM A 36.
- 4. **Steel Tubing:** Cold formed, ASTM A 500; or hot rolled, ASTM A 501.
- 5. **Structural Steel Sheet:** Hot rolled, ASTM A 570; or cold rolled, ASTM A 611, Class 1; of grade required for design loading.
- 6. **Steel Pipe:** ASTM A 53, type and grade as selected by fabricator and as required for design loading; black finish unless galvanizing is indicated; standard weight (Schedule 40), unless otherwise indicated.
- 7. **Gray Iron Castings:** ASTM A 48, Class 30, unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.
- 8. **Malleable Iron Castings:** ASTM A 47, grade as selected by fabricator.
- 9. **Brackets, Flanges and Anchors:** Cast or formed metal of the same type material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.
- 10. **Concrete Inserts:** Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either malleable iron, ASTM A 47, or cast steel, ASTM A 27. Provide bolts, washers and shims as required, hot-dip galvanized, ASTM A 153.



- B. Grout: Non-shrink, non-metallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior applications.
- C. Fasteners
  - 1. General: Provide zinc-coated fasteners for exterior use or where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for the type, grade and class required.
  - 2. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon head type, ASTM A 307, Grade A.
  - 3. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
  - 4. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
  - 5. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.
  - 6. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1.
  - 7. Masonry Anchorage Devices: Expansion shields, FS FF-S-325.
  - 8. Toggle Bolts: Tumble-wing type, FS FF-B-588, type, class and style as required.
  - 9. Lock Washers: Helical spring type carbon steel, ASME B18.21.1.
- D. Shop Paint: Shop prime all non-galvanized miscellaneous metal items using Series 88 Azeron Primer made by Tnemec, ICI Devoe "Rust Guard" quick dry alkyd shop coat No. 41403, or "Interlac 393" by International Protection Coatings.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

## 2.2 PRIME PAINTING

- A. Scope: All ferrous metal (except galvanized steel) shall be cleaned and shop painted with one coat of specified ferrous metal primer. No shop prime paint required on galvanized steel or aluminum work.
- B. Cleaning: Conform to Steel Structures Painting Council Surface Preparation Specification SP 3 (latest edition) "Power Tool Cleaning" for cleaning of ferrous metals which are to receive shop prime coat.
- C. Application
  - 1. Apply shop prime coat immediately after cleaning metal. Apply paint in dry weather or under cover. Metal surfaces shall be free from frost or moisture when painted. Paint all metal surfaces including edges, joints, holes, corners, etc.
  - 2. Paint surfaces which will be concealed after shop assembly prior to such assembly. Apply paint in accordance with approved paint manufacturer's printed instructions,



and the use of any thinners, adulterants or admixtures shall be only as stated in said instructions.

3. Paint shall uniformly and completely cover the metal surfaces, 2.0 mils minimum dry film thickness. No work shall be shipped until the shop prime coat thereon has dried.
- D. Touch-Up: In the shop, after assembly and in the field, after installation of work of this Section, touch-up damaged or abraded portions of shop prime paint with specified ferrous metal primer.
- E. Apply one shop coat to fabricated metal items, except apply two (2) coats of paint to surfaces inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from the first.

### 2.3 PROTECTIVE COATINGS

- A. Whenever dissimilar metals will be in contact, separate contact surfaces by coating each contact surface prior to assembly or installation with one coat of specified bituminous paint, which shall be in addition to the specified shop prime paint. Mask off those surfaces not required to receive protective coating.

### 2.4 WORKMANSHIP

#### A. General

1. Miscellaneous metal work shall be fabricated by an experienced fabricator or manufacturer and installed by an experienced tradesman.
  2. Materials, methods of fabrication, fitting, assembly, bracing, supporting, fastening, operating devices, and erection shall be in accordance with drawings and specifications, approved shop drawings, and best practices of the industry, using new and clean materials as specified, having structural properties sufficient to safely sustain or withstand stresses and strains to which materials and assembled work will be subjected.
  3. All work shall be accurately and neatly fabricated, assembled and erected.
- B. Shop Assembly: Insofar as practicable, fitting and assembly of work shall be done in shop. Shop assemble work in largest practical sizes to minimize field work. It is the responsibility of the miscellaneous metal subcontractor to assure himself that the shop-fabricated miscellaneous metal items will properly fit the field condition. In the event that shop-fabricated miscellaneous metal items do not fit the field condition, the item shall be returned to the shop for correction.
  - C. Cutting: Cut metal by sawing, shearing, or blanking. Flame cutting will be permitted only if cut edges are ground back to clean, smooth edges. Make cuts accurate, clean, sharp and free of burrs, without deforming adjacent surfaces or metals.

- D. Holes: Drill or cleanly punch holes; do not burn.
- E. Connections: Make connections with tight joints, capable of developing full strength of member, flush unless indicated otherwise, formed to exclude water where exposed to weather. Locate joints where least conspicuous. Unless indicated otherwise, weld or bolt shop connections; bolt or screw field connections. Provide expansion and contraction joints to allow for thermal movement of metal at locations and by methods approved by Commissioner.
  - 1. Welding
    - a. Shall be in accordance with AWS D1.1 Structural Welding Code of the American Welding Society, and shall be done with electrodes and/or methods recommended by the manufacturer of the metals being welded.
    - b. Welds shall be continuous, except where spot welding is specifically permitted. Welds exposed to view shall be ground flush and dressed smooth with and to match finish of adjoining surfaces; undercut metal edges where welds are required to be flush.
    - c. All welds on or behind surfaces which will be exposed to view shall be done so as to prevent distortion of finished surface. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from all welded surfaces.
  - 2. Bolts and Screws: Make threaded connections tight with threads entirely concealed. Use lock nuts. Bolts and screw heads exposed to view shall be flat and countersunk. Cut off projecting ends of exposed bolts and screws flush with nuts or adjacent metal.
- F. Operating Mechanism: Operating devices (i.e. pivots, hinges, etc.) mechanism and hardware used in connection with this work shall be fabricated, assembled, installed and adjusted after installation so that they will operate smoothly, freely, noiselessly and without excessive friction.
- G. Built-In Work: Furnish anchor bolts, inserts, plates and any other anchorage devices, and all other items specified under this Section of the Specifications to be built into concrete, masonry or work of other trades, with necessary templates and instructions, and in ample time to facilitate proper placing and installation.
- H. Supplementary Parts: Provide as necessary to complete each item of work, even though such supplementary parts are not shown or specified.
- I. Coordination: Accurately cut, fit, drill and tap work of this Section to accommodate and fit work of other trades. Furnish or obtain, as applicable, templates and drawings to or from applicable trades for proper coordination of this work.
- J. Exposed Work
  - 1. In addition to requirements specified herein and shown on drawings, all surfaces exposed to view shall be clean and free from dirt, stains, grease, scratches,



distortions, waves, dents, buckles, tool marks, burrs, and other defects which mar appearance of finished work.

2. Metal work exposed to view shall be straight and true to line or curve, smooth arrises and angles as sharp as practicable, miters formed in true alignment, profiles accurately intersecting, and with joints carefully matched to produce continuity of line and design.
3. Exposed fastenings, where permitted, shall be of the same material, color and finish as the metal to which applied, unless otherwise indicated, and shall be of the smallest practicable size.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS METALS ITEMS

### A. Rough Hardware

1. Furnish bent or otherwise custom fabricated bolts, plates, anchors, hangers, dowels and other miscellaneous steel and iron shapes as required for framing and supporting woodwork, and for anchoring or securing woodwork to concrete or other structures. Straight bolts and other stock rough hardware items are specified in Division 6 Sections.
2. Fabricate items to sizes, shapes and dimensions required. Furnish malleable iron washers for heads and nuts which bear on wood connections; elsewhere, furnish steel washers.

### B. Miscellaneous Light Steel Framing

1. Light steel framing, bracing, supports, framing, clip angles, shelf angles, plates, etc., shall be of such shapes and sizes as indicated on the drawings and details or as required to suit the condition and shall be provided with all necessary supports and reinforcing such as hangers, braces, struts, clip angles, anchors, bolts, nuts, welds, etc., as required to properly support and rigidly fasten and anchor same in place and to steel, concrete, masonry and all other connecting and adjoining work.
2. All light steel framing steel shall be furnished and erected in accordance with the applicable requirements of the "Specifications for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings" by the American Institute of Steel Construction and as specified herein.

- C. Miscellaneous Steel Trim: Provide shapes and sizes for profiles shown. Except as otherwise indicated, fabricate units from structural steel shapes and plates and steel bars, with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Use concealed field splices wherever possible. Provide cutouts, fittings and anchorages as required for coordination of assembly and installation with other work.

- D. Countertop Supports: Steel framing as indicated or required to support countertops. Conceal framing under countertops and within wall behind countertops. Provide supports to withstand a concentrated load of not less than three hundred (300) lbs.

applied at any point with a deflection not to exceed  $L/240$  for the length of the countertop.

- E. Custom Cable Niche Base and Cover: 7.5" wide, 1.5" depth, unpainted galvanized steel base and cover, minimum 16 gauge; flat cover with hinge on outer side. 2" diameter cutouts in lid at unhinged edge at every structural pipe support location (8'-10" on center) for cable management. Inner side edges of base and lid (including cutouts) treated with resilient foam or rubber lip to prevent damage to cabling.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where miscellaneous metal is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 ERECTION

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing miscellaneous metal fabrications to in-place construction; including threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors as required.
- B. Cutting, Fitting and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling and fitting required for installation of miscellaneous metal fabrications. Set work accurately in location, alignment and elevation, plumb, level, true and free of rack, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items which are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- C. Fitting Connections: Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight hairline joints. Weld connections which are not to be left as exposed joints, but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Grind exposed joints smooth and touch up shop paint coat. Do not weld, cut or abrade the surfaces of exterior units which have been hot dip galvanized after fabrication, and are intended for bolted or screwed field connections.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with AWS Code for procedures of manual shielded metal-arc welding, appearance, and quality of welds made, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- E. Touch-Up Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00



SECTION 05 70 00

ORNAMENTAL METALS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the ornamental metals, including heavy gauge stainless steel and non-ferrous metal products which are used in building construction for functional, architectural, and decorative effects, and which are not a part of other metal systems specified in other Sections. The extent of these items is indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Stainless steel trim.
2. Custom stainless steel sink.
3. Blackened steel.
4. Bronze.
5. Steel handrail with bronze finish.
6. Metal perforated wall at entrance.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Miscellaneous Metals - Section 055000.



#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
1. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
  3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. **General:** Work of this section shall be fabricated and installed by an experienced fabricator or manufacturer who has been engaged in work of equivalent scope and fabrication standards for at least three (3) years. Materials, methods of fabrication, fitting, assembly, bracing, supporting, fastening, operating devices, and erection shall be in accordance with drawings, specifications, and approved shop drawings, and be of highest quality practices of the industry, using new and clean materials as specified, having structural properties sufficient to safely sustain or withstand stresses and strains to which materials and assembled work will be subjected. All work shall be accurately and neatly fabricated, assembled, and erected.
- D. **Field Measurements:** Take field measurements prior to preparation of shop drawings and fabrication, where possible, to ensure proper fitting of the work. However, do not delay job progress; allow for adjustments and fitting where taking of field measurements before fabrication might delay the work.

- E. Shop Assembly: Insofar as practicable, fitting and assembly of work shall be done in shop. Work that cannot be permanently shop assembled, shall be completely assembled, marked and disassembled in shop before shipment to insure proper assembly in field. Shop assemble work in largest practical sizes to minimize field work. It is the responsibility of the Contractor for this work to assure himself that the shop fabricated items will properly fit the field condition. In the event that shop fabricated items do not fit the field condition, the item shall be returned to the shop for correction.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit for all items of work of this Section, as enumerated under paragraph 1.2, showing locations, layouts, materials, thicknesses, finishes, dimensions, construction, relation to adjoining construction, erection details, profiles, jointing and all other details to fully illustrate the work of this Section.



- C. Samples: Submit fabricated samples (of sufficient size to fully show construction, materials and finishes) of all items of work as enumerated under paragraph 1.2 herein.
- D. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's, fabricator's and finisher's specifications and installation instructions for products used in ornamental metal work, including finishing materials and methods.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary at no additional cost to the City of New York.

### PART II - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials which have been selected for their surface flatness, smoothness and freedom from surface blemishes where exposed to view in the finished unit. Exposed to view surfaces which exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, "oil-canning," stains, discolorations, or other imperfections on the finished units will not be acceptable.
- B. Bronze
  - 1. Comply with the following standards for the forms and types of bronze for the required items of work.
    - a. Temper: Provide bronze materials in standard commercial tempers and hardness, as required for fabrication, strength and durability.
    - b. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (Architectural bronze).
    - c. Plates and Bars: ASTM B 36, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
    - d. Seamless Tube: ASTM B 135, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
    - e. Seamless Pipe: ASTM B 43, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
    - f. Cascade coil: Model per Drawings.
- C. Stainless Steel
  - 1. Comply with the following standards for the forms and types of stainless steel for the required items of work.
    - a. Pipe: ASTM A 312, Grade TP 304



- b. Sheet, Strip, Flat Bar and Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  - c. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.
  - d. Castings: ASTM A 743A, Grade CF 8 or CF 20.
  - e. Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
  - f. Wire Rope: 1 by 19 wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
- D. Steel: Comply with the following standards for the forms and types of steel for the required items of work.
- 1. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513, Type 5 (mandrel drawn).
  - 2. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
  - 3. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 4. Steel Sheet, Cold Rolled: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel or structural steel, exposed.
- E. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30, and shall be uniform in quality, free from blow holes, porosity, hard spots, shrinkage defects, swells, cracks or other defects. Surfaces shall be smooth and true to pattern.
- F. Steel (Carbon) for Concealed Supports Only
- 1. Structural Shapes: ASTM A 36.
  - 2. Plates (for forming or bending cold): ASTM A 283, Grade C.
  - 3. Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366, Grade 1.
  - 4. Shop prime with rust inhibitive primer equal to Series 88 Azerox made by Tnemec, or approved equal made by Benjamin Moore or Sherwin Williams.
- G. Welding Electrodes and Filler Metal: Type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as recommended by producer of the metal to be welded, and as required for color match, strength and compatibility in the fabricated items.
- H. Fasteners: Furnish basic metal and alloy, matching finished color and texture as the metal being fastened, unless otherwise indicated. Provide Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Anchors and Inserts: Either furnish inserts to be set in concrete or masonry work, or provide other anchoring devices as required for the installation of ornamental metal items. Provide toothed steel or lead shield expansion bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Provide galvanized or cadmium-coated anchors and inserts for exterior installations.



1. Provide units with exposed surfaces matching the texture and finish of the metal item anchored.

J. Bituminous Paint: SSPC-Paint 12 (cold-applied asphalt mastic).

K. Cast-in-Place and Preinstalled Anchors: Anchors fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

A. Cutting: Cut metal by sawing, shearing or blanking. Flame cutting will be permitted only if cut edges are ground back to clean, smooth edges. Make cuts accurate, clean, sharp, square and free of burrs, without deforming adjacent surfaces or metals.

B. Holes: Drill or cleanly punch holes (do not burn), so that holes will be accurate, clean, neat and sharp without deforming adjacent surfaces or metals.

### C. Connections

1. Make connections with tight joints, capable of developing full strength of member, flush unless indicated otherwise, formed to exclude water where exposed to water. Locate joints where indicated on drawings. Provide connections to allow for thermal movement of metal at locations and by methods approved by Commissioner. For work exposed to view, use concealed fasteners (unless welded or other connections indicated) with joints accurately fitted, flush and rigidly secured with hairline contacts.
2. Welding: Welding shall be in accordance with recommendations of the American Welding Society and shall be done with electrodes and/or methods recommended by the manufacturers of the metals being welded. Welds shall be continuous, except where spot welding is specifically permitted. Welds exposed to view shall be ground flush and dressed smooth with and to match finish of adjoining surfaces so that joint will not be visible; undercut metal edges where welds are required to be ground flush and dressed smooth. All welds on or behind surfaces which will be exposed to view shall be done so that finished surface will be free of imperfections such as pits, runs, splatter, cracks, warping, dimpling, depressions or other forms of distortion or discoloration. Remove weld splatter and welding oxides from all welded surfaces.
3. Brazing (for Brass and Bronze): Brazing shall be in accordance with recommendations of the producer of the metal, using type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as required for color match, strength and compatibility in the fabricated items. Brazing shall be continuous. Brazed surfaces exposed to view shall be ground flush and dressed smooth with and to match finish of adjoining surfaces so that joint will not be visible; undercut metal edges where brazed surfaces are required to be ground flush and dressed smooth. All brazed surfaces



on or behind surfaces which will be exposed to view shall be done so that finished surface will be free of imperfections such as pits, runs, splatter, cracks, warping, dimpling, depressions or other forms of distortion or discoloration. Remove splatter and oxides from all brazed surfaces.

4. Bolts and Screws: Make threaded connections tight with threads entirely concealed. Use lock nuts. Bolts and screw heads, where shown to be exposed to view, shall be flat and countersunk. Cut off projecting ends of exposed bolts and screws flush with nuts of adjacent metal.
- D. Operating Mechanism: Operating devices, mechanism and hardware used in connection with this work shall be fabricated, assembled, installed and adjusted after installation so that they will operate smoothly, freely, noiselessly and without excessive friction.
- E. Built-In Work: Furnish anchor bolts, inserts, plates and any other anchorage devices, and all other items for architectural metal work to be built into concrete, masonry, or work of other trades, with necessary templates and instructions, and in ample time to facilitate proper placing and installation.
- F. Supplementary Parts: Provide as necessary to complete each item of work, even though such supplementary parts are not shown or specified.
- G. Coordination: Accurately cut, fit, drill and tap work of this Section to accommodate and fit work of other trades. Furnish or obtain, as applicable, templates and drawings to or from applicable trades for proper coordination of this work.
- H. Exposed Work: In addition to requirements specified herein or shown on drawings, all surfaces exposed to view shall be clean, and free from dirt, stains, grease, scratches, distortions, waves, dents, buckles, tool marks, burrs and other defects which mar appearance of finished work. Ornamental metal work exposed to view shall be straight and true to line or curve, smooth arrises and angles as sharp as practicable, miters formed in true alignment, profiles accurately intersecting, and with joints carefully matched to produce continuity of line and design. Exposed fastenings, where permitted, shall be of the same material, color and finish as the metal to which applied, unless otherwise indicated, and shall be of the smallest practicable size.
- I. Materials used shall be of such strength, thickness and alloy that they are capable of meeting all standards and descriptions specified herein and as detailed on drawings.

## 2.3 SHOP FINISHING

### A. General

1. Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for finish designations and application recommendations, except as otherwise indicated.
2. Provide colors or color matches as indicated on selected samples.



3. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by application of strippable temporary protective covering prior to shipment.
4. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces which will be in contact with concrete, masonry, wood or dissimilar metals, in exterior work and work to be built into exterior and below grade walls and decks, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint. Do not extend coating onto exposed surfaces.

**B. Bronze**

1. Hand Rubbed Natural Satin Finish, Lacquered: CDA-M31-M34-06x, fine satin directional textured mechanical finish followed by hand-rubbed directional textured mechanical finish, with clear organic coating specified below.
  - a. Clear Organic Coating: Air-dried acrylic coating; Inctalac as developed by International Copper Research Corp., 1.0 mil minimum dry thickness.
  - b. In addition to application to new bronze work, clean and apply acrylic coating to existing bronze work.
2. Statuary Conversion Coating, Bright Relieved and Lacquered: CDA-M12-C55-06x. Mechanical Finish: matte finish as cast; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Mechanical Finish: buffed as specified, with clear organic coating specified above.
3. Color: Uniform, matching color of accepted sample.

**C. Stainless Steel**

1. Remove or blend tool and die marks and stretch lines into finish.
2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
3. Bright, Directional Polish: No. 4 finish.

**D. Blackened Steel**

1. Items indicated to be fabricated of blackened steel shall be shop finished after fabrication and welding is complete. Shop finish shall consist of EZ Black 55 and Aquares 1200F by SurFin Chemical Corp; apply per manufacturer's recommendations. Provide lacquered finish.
2. Prior to application of finish, clean steel per SSPC SP-3.
3. Protect surface of blackened steel from abrasion by coating with wax or oil.

4. For steel to receive blackened finish, use uncoated, hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30, unless another grade is required by design loads.

#### 2.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide necessary protection to all exposed surfaces of architectural metal work, so as to prevent damage, staining, discoloration, abrasion, etc., to these surfaces from time of shipment from factory to acceptance of work of this project. Protection shall be provided by wrappings, strippable coatings, or other means. After installation, remove protective paper or strippable coating and clean exposed surfaces, and then provide additional temporary protection to protect architectural metal work from damage during subsequent construction activities. Surfaces which are damaged, stained, discolored, abraded etc., shall be rejected and replaced with new materials, at no cost to the City of New York.

#### 2.5 STEEL FRAMING, BRACING, SUPPORTS AND REINFORCEMENTS

- A. Steel framing, plate reinforcing, supplementary steel framing or reinforcing, bracket assemblies, and the like required for the support, framing, reinforcing, bracing, etc., of work of this Section shall be of such sizes and shapes as indicated on the drawings, or as required to suit the conditions, and shall be provided with all necessary supports and accessory items such as inserts, hangers, braces, struts, clip angles, anchors, bolts, nuts, welds, etc., as required to properly and rigidly fasten, anchor or attach work of this Section in place and to the concrete, masonry and other connecting and adjoining work.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where ornamental metal work is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install work of this Section square, plumb, straight, true to line or radius, accurately fitted and located, with flush, tight hairline joints (except as otherwise indicated or to allow for thermal movement), with provisions for other trades, with provisions to allow for thermal movement, with provisions to exclude water where exposed to weather, and with attachment devices as required for secure and rigid installation. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to assure himself that shop fabricated architectural metal items will properly fit the field condition. In cases where the shop fabricated architectural metal items do not fit the field condition, the item shall be returned to the shop for correction.
- B. Attachments



1. Unless otherwise indicated, work to be built into concrete or masonry shall be anchored with shop welded on galvanized steel strap anchors; work to be attached to concrete or masonry shall be anchored by bolts into embedded inserts or expansion shields; work attached to structural steel shall be anchored by welds or bolts; work attached to metals other than structural steel shall be anchored by bolts or screws. Power actuated fasteners not permitted unless approved by Commissioner. Provide all supplementary parts necessary to complete each item of work of this Section.
  2. All attachment devices shall be of type, size and spacing to suit condition and as approved by Commissioner. Provide shims, slotted holes, or other means necessary for leveling, plumbing and other required adjustments. Attachment devices for work exposed to view shall be concealed, unless indicated otherwise. Where bolts or screws are permitted in work exposed to view, they shall be oval head and counter sunk, unless otherwise noted, with projecting end cut off flush with nuts or adjacent material, and shall match adjacent surfaces.
  3. Do all necessary drilling, tapping, cutting or other preparations of surrounding construction in the field accurately, neatly and as necessary for the attachment and support of work of this Section, but obtain Commissioner's approval prior to such preparation to work of others.
- C. Tolerances: All work of this Section shall be plumb, square, level, true to radius and correctly aligned within the following limitations:
1. Offset from true horizontal, vertical and design location shall not exceed 1/16" per ten (10) feet of length for any component, not cumulative.
  2. Maximum offset from true alignment between abutting components shall not exceed 1/32".
- D. All railings shall be installed to withstand loads as required by prevailing Building Code.
- E. Do not cut or abrade finishes which cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units at Contractor's option.
- F. Install concealed gaskets and joint fillers as the work progresses, so as to make the work soundproof or lightproof as required.
- G. Restore protective coverings which have been damaged during shipment or installation of the work. Remove protective coverings only when there is no possibility of damage from other work yet to be performed at the same location.
- H. Retain protective coverings intact and remove simultaneously from similarly finished items to preclude non-uniform oxidation and discoloration.



- I. Field Welding: Comply with AWS Code for the procedures of manual shielded metal-arc welding, the appearance and quality of welds made, and the methods used in correcting welding work.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of ornamental metal from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by ornamental metal fabricator. Remove protective covering at the time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 70 00

SECTION 06 20 00

CARPENTRY

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the carpentry work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Blocking and miscellaneous wood, including wall lining for telephone and electric closets.
  2. Plywood backing for mirrors.
  3. Rough hardware.
  4. Installation only of finish hardware.
  5. Installation only of doors and hollow metal frames.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Architectural Woodwork - Section 064023.
- F. Steel Doors and Frames - Section 081113.
- G. Wood Doors - Section 081416.
- H. Hardware - Section 087100.



#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **Lumber Standard:** Comply with PS 20.
- C. **Plywood Standard:** Comply with PS 1 and American Plywood Assoc. (APA).
- D. **Shop fabricate carpentry work** to the extent feasible and where shop fabrication will result in better workmanship than feasible for on-site fabrication.
- E. **Grade Marks:** Identify lumber and plywood by official grade mark.
  - 1. **Lumber:** Grade stamp to contain symbol of grading agency certified by Board of Review, American Lumber Standards Committee, mill number or name, grade of lumber, species grouping or combination designation, rules under which graded where applicable, and condition of seasoning at time of manufacture.
    - a. **S-Dry:** Maximum nineteen (19) percent moisture content as per ASTM D 2016.
    - b. **MC-15 or KD:** Maximum of fifteen (15) percent moisture content.
- F. **Installation of doors, frames and hardware** shall conform to the minimum standards of "Installation Guides for Doors and Hardware" of the Door and Hardware Institute.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. **Material cost breakdowns**, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  - 2. **Additional information** to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 3. **Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items** to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.



4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.

- B. Pressure Treatment: Include certification by treating plant stating chemicals and process used, net amount of salts retained and conformance with applicable standards.
- C. Fire-Retardant Treatment: Include certification by treating plant that treatment material complies with governing ordinances and that treatment will not bleed through finished surfaces.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver carpentry materials to the site ready to use with each piece of lumber clearly marked as to grade, type and mill, and place in an area protected from the elements.
- B. Deliver rough hardware in sealed kegs and/or other containers which shall bear labels as to type and kind.
- C. Pile lumber for rough usage, when delivered to the site in stacks to insure drainage and with a minimum clearance of six (6) inches above grade. Cover stacks with tarpaulins or other watertight coverings. Store grounds and similar small sized lumber inside the building as soon as possible after delivery.
- D. Do not store seasoned lumber in wet or damp portions of the building.
- E. Protect fire retardant treated materials against high humidity and moisture during storage and erection.
- F. Remove delivered materials which do not conform to specified grading rules or are otherwise not suitable for installation from the job site and replace with acceptable materials.
- G. All items specified in Section 087000 "Hardware" shall be received, accounted for, stored and applied under this Section.
- H. Hardware shall be sorted and stored in space assigned by Contractor and shall be kept at all times under lock and key. The safety and preservation of all items delivered will be the responsibility of the Contractor.



## 1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Installer must examine the substrates and supporting structure and the conditions under which the carpentry work is to be installed, and notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to the work. Do not proceed with the installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Commissioner.
- B. Coordination: Fit carpentry work to other work; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, grounds and similar supports to allow proper attachment of other work.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD MATERIAL

#### A. General

- 1. All wood shall be sound, flat, straight, well seasoned, thoroughly dry and free from all defects. Warped or twisted wood shall not be used.
- 2. For miscellaneous wood blocking, grounds, furring as required, use Utility Grade Coastal Douglas Fir or Southern Pine, free from knots, shakes, rot or other defects, straight, square edges and straight grain, air seasoned with maximum moisture content of nineteen (19) percent. Wood shall be S4S, S-Dry, complying with PS-20.
- 3. Plywood and rough carpentry for telephone and electric closets, provide 3/4" thick C-D EXT-APA plywood, fire retardant treated as specified herein.

#### B. Wood Treatment

- 1. All interior wood material specified herein shall be fire retardant treated to comply with the AWWA standard U1 to achieve a flame spread rating of not more than 25 (UL Class "FR-S") when tested in accordance with UL Test 723 or ASTM E 84. The fire retardant chemicals used to treat the lumber must comply with FR-1 of AWWA Standard P49 and be free of halogens, sulfates and ammonium phosphate.
  - a. After treatment, kiln dry to a moisture content of fifteen (15) percent; if wood is to be painted or finished, kiln dry to a moisture content of twelve (12) percent. Treatment shall be equal to "Dricon" made by Arch Wood Protection Inc. or approved equal. Provide UL approved identification on treated materials.
- 2. Treated wood which is cut or otherwise damaged shall be further treated in accordance with the AWWA Standard M-4.



## 2.2 HARDWARE

- A. Rough Hardware for Treated Woods and Exterior Use: Hot-dipped galvanized or Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails: Common steel wire, untreated for interior work as per ASTM F 1667.
- C. Bolts: Standard mild steel, square head machine bolts with square nuts and malleable iron or steel plate washers or carriage bolts with square nuts and cut washers conforming to the following:
  - 1. Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A.
  - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563.
  - 3. Lag Screws and Bolts: ASME B 18.2.1.
- D. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2; use stainless steel for treated woods and exterior use.
- E. Wood Screws: ASME B 18.6.1.
- F. Concrete and Masonry Anchors: Standard expansion-shield self-drilling type concrete anchors where so shown or noted on the drawings, or where approved by the Commissioner.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where carpentry is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF FINISH HARDWARE

- A. Hardware shall be carefully fitted and securely attached, in accordance with these specifications and the instructions of the various manufacturers.



- B. Unless otherwise noted, mount hardware units at heights established in Section 081113.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Wherever cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces which are later to be painted or finished in another way, install each item completely and then remove and store in a secure place during the finish application. After completion of the finishes, re-install each item. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrate.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units which are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
- F. Cut and fit threshold and floor covers to profile of door frames, with mitered corners and hair-line joints. Join units with concealed welds or concealed mechanical joints. Cut smooth openings for spindles, bolts and similar items, if any.
- G. All keys used shall be construction keys which are to be tagged with fiber discs as approved, clearly labeled with identifying inscriptions and then neatly arranged in a temporary cabinet. All construction keys shall be returned to the Commissioner.
- H. Adjusting and Cleaning
  - 1. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door, to ensure proper operation and function of every unit. Lubricate moving parts with type lubrication recommended by manufacturer (graphite type if no other recommended). Replace units which cannot be adjusted and lubricated to operate freely and smoothly as intended for the application made.
  - 2. Final Adjustment: Wherever hardware installation is made more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the work during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy, and make a final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean and re-lubricate operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF DOORS AND FRAMES

#### A. Preparation

- 1. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory.
- 2. Prior to installation and with installation spreaders in place, adjust and securely brace standard steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:



- a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
3. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-templated mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

**B. Installation**

1. General: Provide doors and frames of sizes, thicknesses, and designs indicated. Install steel doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
  - a. Install frames in accordance with ANSI 250.11-20001, Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames, unless more stringent requirements are specified herein.
  - b. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
  - c. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  - d. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
  - e. Frames set in masonry walls shall have door silencers installed in frames before grouting.
  - f. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
  - g. Check plumb, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
3. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
  - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.



4. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames conforming to the requirements of acoustical insulation specified in Section 092900, "Gypsum Drywall."
  5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with mortar.
  6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  7. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  8. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to supporting construction above, unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction above. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
  9. Installation Tolerances: Adjust steel door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the tolerance given in HMMA 841 of ANSI/NAAMM, current edition.
  10. Steel Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames to the tolerances given in HMMA 841 of ANSI/NAAMM, current edition.
    - a. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
  11. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 8 Section "Glass and Glazing" and with standard steel door and frame manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c., and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.
- C. Wood Doors
1. Condition doors to average prevailing humidity in installation area prior to hanging.
  2. Install doors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  3. Fit door to frames and machine for hardware to whatever extent not previously worked at factory as required for proper fit and uniform clearance at each edge.



4. Clearances: Install doors to meet clearance requirements specified in Section 081416.

5. Fire-Rated Doors: Install in corresponding fire-rated frames in accordance with the requirements of NFPA No. 80. Provide clearances complying with the limitations of the authority having jurisdiction.

D. Adjustments: Check and readjust operating finish hardware items just prior to final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including doors or frames which are warped, bowed or otherwise unacceptable.

### 3.4 BLOCKING AND MISCELLANEOUS WOOD

#### A. General

1. Erect rough carpentry true to line, levels and dimensions required; squared, aligned, plumbed, and securely fastened in place.
2. Shim where required to true up furring, blocking and the like. Use wood or metal shims only.
3. Do all cutting, fitting, drilling and tapping of other work as required to secure work in place and to perform the work included herein. Do all the cutting and fitting of carpentry work, for the work of other trades as required.

#### B. Blocking and Miscellaneous Wood

1. Furnish and install all wood grounds, furring, blocking, curbs, bucks, nailers, etc., that may be necessary and required in connection with the carpentry and with the work described for any other trades and including required carpentry for electrical fixtures. All blocking and nailers shall be continuous wherever required, whether or not so indicated.
2. Blocking shall be as required for the proper installation of the finished work and for items in mechanical sections as required. Blocking, edgings, stops, nailing strips, etc., shall be continuous, unless distinctly noted otherwise. Provide blocking as required to install all equipment. Provide blocking and nailers where shown or required to fasten interior sheet metal work.
3. Fastening for wood grounds, furring and blocking shall be of metal and of type and spacing as best suited to conditions. Hardened steel nails, expansion screws, toggle bolts, self-clinching nails, metal plugs, inserts or similar fastenings shall be used, of suitable type and size to draw the members into place and securely hold same.



**3.5 TELEPHONE AND ELECTRIC EQUIPMENT MOUNTING BOARDS**

- A. Furnish and install 3/4" thick plywood panels to the walls of the telephone and electric equipment rooms in accordance with the requirements of the local utility company.
- B. Secure to wall using proper devices for substrates encountered, spaced twelve (12) inches o.c., maximum around the edges, 1-1/2" from corners, and in three (3) rows of three (3) each in the field. Recess fastening devices flush with the plywood surface. Adjacent panels shall be butted with 1/16" space between without lapping.

**3.6 ROUGH HARDWARE**

- A. Securely fasten rough carpentry together. Nail, spike, lag screw or bolt as required by conditions encountered in the field and the Contract Documents.
- B. Provide rough or framing hardware, such as nails, screws, bolts, anchors, hangers, clips, inserts, miscellaneous fastenings, and similar items of the best quality and of the proper size and kind to adequately secure the work together and in place, in a rigid and substantial manner.
- C. Secure rough carpentry to masonry with countersunk bolts in expansion sleeves or other acceptable manner, with fastenings not more than sixteen (16) inches apart. Secure woodwork to hollow masonry with toggle bolts spaced not more than sixteen (16) inches apart.
- D. Countersink bolts in nailers and other rough woodwork and include washers and nuts. Cut bolts off flush with surfaces and peen as may be required to receive finished work.
- E. Inserts to secure wood nailers to concrete shall be malleable iron threaded inserts with 3/8" diameter bolts of length to allow for countersinking. Locate at end of each nailer and at intervals not exceeding thirty (30) inches o.c.
- F. Furnish to the mason for building into the work, or attaching the work which is to be built in, anchors, bolts, wall plates bolted to masonry, corrugated wall plugs, nailing blocks, etc., which are required for the proper fastening and installation for the work or other items as called for in this Section.
- G. Detailed instructions with sketches of necessary requirements, shall be given to the masonry trade showing the location and other details of such nailing devices.

**3.7 CLEANING UP**

- A. General: Keep the premises in a neat, safe and orderly condition at all times during execution of this portion of the work, free from accumulation of sawdust, cut-ends and debris.
- B. Sweeping



1. At the end of each working day, or more often if necessary, thoroughly sweep all surfaces where refuse from this portion of the work has settled.
2. Remove the refuse to the area of the job site set aside for its storage.
3. Upon completion of this portion of the work, thoroughly broom clean all surfaces.

END OF SECTION 06 20 00

SECTION 06 40 23

ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the architectural woodwork as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Wood paneling.
  2. Wood trim, moldings, base, and frames.
  3. Wood casework and counters with special veneers.
  4. Hardware for casework.
  5. Solid surface countertop material.
  6. Wood framing and rough lumber as required for work of this Section.
  7. Wood grounds, blocking, nailers, furring as required for work of this Section.
  8. All rough hardware and fastenings for work of this Section.
  9. Drilling concrete and masonry, drilling and/or tapping metal work, as required, for the installation of work of this Section.
  10. Back painting as specified herein.
  11. Shop finish of work of this Section, except items indicated herein to be shop primed only.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.



- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Carpentry - Section 062000.
- F. Caulking between architectural woodwork and any wall, floor, or ceiling joints - Section 079200.
- G. Wood doors - Section 081416.
- H. Field finishing - Section 099000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Engineered wood, not including salvaged wood, shall contain a minimum of 20% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - 2. All composite wood, engineered wood, or agrifiber products (e.g., plywood, particleboard, medium density fiberboard) shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Acceptable resins and binders include, but are not limited to, phenol formaldehyde and methyl diisocyanate (MDI). Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - 3. Laminating adhesives used to fabricate on-site and shop-applied composite wood and agrifiber assemblies shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins.
  - 4. Wood Materials harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - 5. Permanently Installed wood-based materials used in this project that have been certified in accordance with the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) guidelines shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
    - a. Applicable products include, but are not limited to, structural framing and general dimensional framing, flooring, finishes, built-in furnishings,



miscellaneous blocking, fire rated plywood back panels used for equipment mounting, architectural panels, and plywood.

- b. Certified wood material suppliers may be researched through the following websites: [www.rainforest-alliance.org/greenbuilding](http://www.rainforest-alliance.org/greenbuilding), [www.smartwood.org](http://www.smartwood.org), <http://www.certifiedwoodsearch.org/searchproducts.aspx>, [http://www.fscus.org/certified\\_companies/](http://www.fscus.org/certified_companies/).
  - c. Wood products previously purchased and used on prior projects, which are reused on this Project, are exempt from the FSC certification requirement. Appropriate documentation certifying reused wood products must be submitted.
6. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
7. Clear wood finishes, floor coatings, stains, sealers, and shellacs applied to the interior shall meet the VOC limitations defined in Rule 1113, "Architectural Coatings" of SCAQMD, of the State of California. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD, based on 7/9/04 amendments, are as follows. VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.

a.	Clear Wood Finishes	
	1). Varnish	275
	2). Sanding Sealers	275
	3). Lacquer	275
b.	Shellac	
	1). Clear	730
	2). Pigmented	550
c.	Stains (Interior)	100
d.	Floor Coatings	50
e.	Waterproofing Sealers	100
f.	Other Sealers	350

- 8. The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale
  - 9. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. The quality standards of the Architectural Woodwork Institute, "Architectural Woodwork Standards," 1<sup>st</sup> Edition, dated October 1, 2009, shall apply to all workmanship including materials and installation, for architectural woodwork and by reference are made a part of this specification. All work shall conform to "Premium" grade requirements of the AWI "Architectural Woodwork Standards," unless otherwise modified herein.
- D. In the event of a dispute as to the quality grade (or grades), the Contractor shall call upon the Architectural Woodwork Institute for an inspection under AWI's Quality



Certification Program which shall include a QCP Inspection and Report. The Contractor agrees to abide by the decision of this Report.. The cost of said inspection and report shall be borne by the Contractor.

- E. Employ only tradesmen experienced in the fabrication and installation of architectural woodwork.
- F. Woodworking firm must be accredited by the AWI Quality Certification Program (QCP).

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the wood product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content
    - b. Location in which wood materials were manufactured or fabricated and location from which wood was harvested
    - c. For wood products, indication (Y/N) of whether the supplied product(s) are certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC).
    - d. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment. Include total cost for all wood products and itemized costs for all FSC-certified wood products.
  - 2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  - 3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  - 5. Documentation that all composite wood and agrifiber products do not contain added urea-formaldehyde resins.
  - 6. Chain of custody certificate to document FSC-certification



**B. Shop Drawings**

1. Submit shop drawings of all woodwork specified and indicated on the drawings. Shop drawings shall indicate room plans and elevations at 3/4" equals 1'-0" scale and typical construction details at 3" equals 1'-0" scale. Shop drawings shall indicate all materials, thicknesses and finishes.
2. Shop drawings shall show all finish hardware, anchors, fastenings and accessories.
3. Shop drawings shall show all jointing, joint treatment and butt jointing in veneers.
4. Shop drawings for wood paneling must show complete elevations of rooms to receive paneling as well as panel matching required by these specifications.
5. Shop drawings for cabinet work must show centerline height and horizontal location of all required internal wall blocking.
6. Where architectural woodwork deviates from AWI standards noted herein, shop drawings must identify these deviations.

**C. Samples: Submit samples of each of the following items:**

1. Opaque finish wood veneer laminated to particleboard, twelve (12) inches square for each color, gloss and finish specified or shown.
2. Each finish type of wood panel, 24" wide x 36" high.
3. Each type and finish of each type of wood cornice, trim, molding, etc., eight (8) inches long, finish as specified.
4. Cabinet hardware.

**1.6 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. The work of this Section shall be provided by a firm having a minimum of three (3) years' experience on projects of similar size and quality to that specified and shown.

**1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate the work of this Section with other appropriate Sections of the specifications to ensure proper scheduling for fabrication and installation of the work specified herein
- B. Coordinate with partition and finish trades to ensure that proper provisions are made for the installation of the work specified herein.
- C. Verify all dimensions in the field prior to fabrication of all Architectural Woodwork to ensure proper fit.

**1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING**

- A. All materials and work of this Section shall be protected from damage, from time of shipment from shop to final acceptance of work. Cover, ventilate, and protect work of

this Section from damage caused by weather, moisture, heat, staining, dirt, abrasions, any other causes which may adversely affect appearance or use, or which may cause deterioration of finish, warping, distortion, twisting, opening of joints and seams, delamination, loosening, etc., of work of this Section.

- B. Keep all finish carpentry, millwork, and cabinet work under cover both in transit and at the premises. Do not deliver any finish carpentry, millwork or cabinet work before it is required for installation. Protect such work to avoid damage in transit, during erection and after erection until acceptance of the building; use all such methods to provide the proper protection. Remove such protection when directed by the Commissioner.
- C. Deliver finish carpentry, millwork, and cabinet work in a dry stable condition; protect same against injury and dampness. Do not store or install finish carpentry, millwork or cabinet work until after the concrete, masonry and plaster work are thoroughly dry.
- D. Damaged or defective items of work of this Section are subject to rejection and replacement with new by Contractor, at no cost to City of New York.

#### 1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Humidity Controls: The ambient relative humidity at the site, including both the storage and the installation areas, shall be maintained between 25% and 55% prior to delivery and through the life of the installation.
- B. Determine equilibrium moisture content and maintain required temperature and relative humidity as required for a tolerance of plus or minus one (1) percent of the specified optimum moisture content until woodwork receives specified finishes. Refer to "Guide to Wood Species Selection," AWI, for method of determining equilibrium moisture content values.
- C. Examination of Substrate and Conditions: The installer must examine the substrate and the conditions under which the work of this Section is to be performed, and notify the Contractor in writing of unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed with work under this Section until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Installer.
- D. Areas to receive architectural woodwork must be fully enclosed with windows and/or curtain wall installed and glazed, exterior door in place, HVAC systems operational and temporary openings closed. Any plaster, wet grinding and concrete work shall be fully dry.
- E. Architectural woodwork shall be allowed to come to equilibrium on site for 7 days prior to installation.

PART II - PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wood Moisture Content: Provide kiln-dried (KD) lumber with an average moisture content range of nine (9) to twelve (12) percent for exterior work and six (6) to eleven (11) percent for interior work.
- B. Measurements: Before proceeding with woodwork required to be fitted to other construction, obtain field measurements and verify all dimensions of shop drawing details as required for accurate fit.
- C. Compatibility of Grain and Color: Commissioner reserves the right to select materials for best compatibility between visually related members and veneers.
- D. Machine and sand woodwork to comply with requirements of Standards for specified grade.
- E. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles and details shown. Rout or groove back of flat trim members, kerf backs of other wide flat members except plywood or veneered members.
- F. Miter joints by joining, splining and gluing to comply with requirements for the specified grade.
- G. Inspect each piece of lumber and plywood or each unit of woodwork after drying; do not use twisted, warped, bowed or otherwise damaged or defective wood.

2.2 GENERAL - MATERIALS

- A. Softwood lumber shall conform to the requirements of the latest edition of American Lumber Standards Simplified Practice Recommendation R-16. Grades shall conform to the grading rules of the Association having jurisdiction, and shall bear the official grade and trademark of the Inspection Bureau of the Association and a mark of mill identification.
- B. Framing and Rough Lumber: No. 1 KD grade Southern Pine or Dense Construction grade Douglas Fir, having extreme fiber in bending stress of at least 1700 psi, surfaced four sides (S4S). Provide fire retardant treatment meeting requirements of Section 062000.
- C. Grounds, Blocking, Nailers, Furring: Southern Pine, Douglas Fir or Sitka Spruce, grade to suit particular purpose and to be straight, square edged, straight grained, surfaced four sides (S4S), and which will retain nails and screws without splitting. Provide fire retardant treatment.
- D. Lumber: AWI Section 3 with the following requirements:
  - 1. Hardwood for Opaque Finish: Any hardwood which, when finished, will not show any grain, imperfection or other surface defects when used with the opaque finish specified.



E. Plywood: AWI Section 4; Veneer core, particleboard, or plywood core unless otherwise specified, and with the following requirements:

1. Hardwood: Premium Grade, face veneers as shown or specified
2. Particleboard: Premium Grade, fire retardant for wall paneling only equal to Duraflake FR and Duraflake for cabinets. In addition, particleboard and MDF shall be certified to the following EPP CPA 3-08 formaldehyde emission limits:
  - a. Particleboard meets 0.18 ppm.
  - b. MDF meets 0.21 ppm.
3. Edges: Banded with hardwood in accordance with Premium Grade Standards.

F. Veneers

1. Face Veneers for Transparent Finish: AWI, Premium Grade of Rift Sliced wood species as selected by Commissioner. Veneer must be flitch matched, sequence matched, book matched, end matched and centered balanced.

G. Finishing (Wood)

1. Transparent Finish for Paneling, Casework and Trim
  - a. AWI Factory Finish System "Conversion Varnish", System 5, Transparent.
  - b. AWI Premium Grade.
  - c. Stain: As selected by Commissioner.
  - d. Degree of Sheen: As selected by Commissioner.

## 2.3 METAL

A. Steel

1. Structural Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36.
  2. Hot-Rolled Carbon Steel Sheets: Commercial quality, ASTM A 569, may be used for concealed parts only. Galvanize sheets for planters.
- B. Finish - Primer for Unexposed Metal: Zinc chromate primer.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

A. Fasteners

1. Wood Screws: FS FF-S-111, type, size, material and finish as required for the condition of use.
2. Nails: FS FF-N-105, type, size, material and finish as required for the condition of use.
3. Anchors: Type, size, material and finish as required for the condition of use.

4. Staples: Upholstery type staples of sufficient strength to hold fabric taut in place without sagging.

B. Adhesives: Polyvinyl acetate resin emulsion or other type as recommended by the fabricator.

2.5 BUILT-IN CABINETS, WOODWORK WITH WOOD VENEER FINISH

A. Construction: Details of cabinet and wood work construction shall conform to design as detailed on the drawings and shall be constructed in accordance with AWI Section 10, Premium Grade.

B. Finishing: All work shall be factory pre-finished. No field finishing will be permitted, except minor retouching that is necessary after installation to leave work in perfect condition. Field touch-up shall be accomplished using the same finishes as originally applied at the factory. All finishes shall be free from runs, sags and other visual defects. All wood shall be thoroughly hand smoothed and hand sanded to remove all traces of machine and tool marks. All steel or other metal components shall be deburred, thoroughly cleaned and degreased prior to finishing. Requirements for surface preparation shall be in accordance with AWI Standards specified. Surfaces shall be finished as follows:

1. Wood veneers shall be as specified herein, flitches to be selected by Commissioner. Veneer shall be minimum 1/28" thick.

2. All wood veneer surfaces shall be given transparent finish as specified herein.

3. Backing Veneer: Provide backing veneer, of same thickness and strength as face veneer for balanced construction, where plywood surface not exposed, not semi-exposed, or not to be finished. Note that interior surface of cabinets, closets, are to be finished.

C. Edge Banding: All visible edges of case and body members fabricated from plywood shall be banded. Transparent finished wood veneer panels shall be banded with wood species to match face veneers.

2.6 CABINET HARDWARE

A. Architectural Woodwork Hardware: Provide the following items, or their approved equal, as required:

1. Hinges: Hafele concealed hinges.

2. Catches: Magnetic; top and bottom.

3. Pulls: Selected by the Commissioner.

4. Locks: Directed by the Commissioner.

5. Drawer Slides: Accuride, Model 7434, full extension, 100 lb. capacity.



6. Shelf Supports: Pin and grommet system equal to No. 282.01.701 pin and 282.50.704 grommet made by Hafele.

7. Finish: Satin Stainless Steel.

## 2.7 WOOD FOR TRIM, BASES, MOLDINGS AND FRAMES

A. Quality Standard: For the following types of interior architectural woodwork, comply with indicated standards as applicable.

1. Standing and Running Trim: AWI Section 6.

2. Miscellaneous Millwork: AWI Section 6.

B. Woodwork for Paint Finish: Except as otherwise indicated, comply with the following:

1. Grade: Premium.

2. Species of Solid Wood: Solid, paint grade, sound clear Poplar or Birch.

## 2.8 HARDWOOD VENEERED PLYWOOD PANELS

A. Type: Interior grade, hot press laminated with waterproof adhesive, pre-finished, with face veneers and core construction as specified herein, meet AWI Section 8 standards.

B. Core Construction: Shall be fire retardant treated, meeting requirements of Section 062000; type at fabricator's option.

1. Where the core is free of urea formaldehyde, provide a layer of veneer over the substrate prior to application of finish veneer to prevent telegraphing of patterns of the adhesive.

C. Thickness: 3/4" thick.

D. Face Veneers: Panels shall be flitch matched, sequence matched, book matched, end matched, center balanced, Rift Sliced species as selected by Commissioner, vertical grain, and shall be matched for color. Use this veneer in all other areas where wood paneling is required. All panels shall be matched one to the other using "blueprint" matching method. Veneer shall be minimum 1/28" thick.

E. Finish: Veneers shall be finely sanded and clear factory pre-finished using AWI System noted herein.

F. Panel Sizes: See drawings for panel sizes required.

G. Exposed edges of panels shall be solid sections matching face veneer.

H. Where wood doors are set in veneered wood paneling, veneer on door shall be sequenced to fit veneer pattern; doors to meet the requirements of Section 081416.

2.9 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Provide lumber framing for architectural woodwork, complete with all bracing and fastening devices as required for a rigid installation, and as required to sustain the imposed loads.
- B. Do all fabrication from field measurement with provision for scribing as required to meet built-in conditions.
- C. Coordinate the work of this Section with the work of other trades.
- D. Fabricate units in largest practicable sections. Assemble in the shop for trial fit, disassemble for shipment and reassemble with concealed fasteners.
- E. Maintain relative humidity and temperature during fabrication, storage and finishing operations matching that of the areas of installation.
- F. Details indicate the required type and quality of construction. Modifications to conform to manufacturer's standards will be considered providing they comply with the Contract Documents, maintain the profiles shown and subject to acceptance by the Commissioner.
- G. Reinforcing shown is minimum. Provide additional reinforcing as required to ensure a rigid assembly. Exposed surfaces shall be free from dents, tool marks, warpage, buckle, glue and open joints, or other defects affecting serviceability or appearance. Accurately fit all joints, corners and miters. Conceal all fasteners. Make threaded connections up tight so that threads are entirely concealed.
- H. Factory finish all items where possible. Defer final touch-up, cleaning and polishing until after delivery and installation.
- I. Comply with AWI, Premium Grade standards for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, back priming and similar preparations for the finishing of architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
- J. Prepare all countersunk wood screw attachments for wood plugs. Wood plugs shall match surrounding species and grain direction; putty filling is not acceptable.

2.10 FABRICATION - SPECIFIC ITEMS

- A. Casework
  - 1. Include all preparations for mechanical, electrical, telephone and plumbing work required.
  - 2. Provide cabinet hardware for casework as shown.
  - 3. Provide dust panels in body webs and between drawer units.
  - 4. Provide wood veneers for exposed surfaces as specified herein before.



5. Hollow core doors will not be permitted.
  6. Provide drawers with slides as specified. Drawers shall not rest on web body frames.
- B. Paneling
1. General Paneling Requirements
    - a. Panel type shall be AWI, Premium Grade construction.
    - b. Panel joints shall be flush type unless otherwise shown.
    - c. Provide concealed wood blocking and framing, anchors, clips, splines, supporting and attaching devices.
    - d. Provide cut-outs to receive attachments, mechanical and electrical work as required.
  2. Wood Veneer Paneling
    - a. Comply with AWI Section 8.
    - b. Provide veneers as specified and as shown, including all matching requirements. Run veneer in the direction shown.
- C. Standing and Running Trim: Provide standing and running trim of the sizes, profiles, species and finish as specified or shown and complying with AWI Section 6, Premium Grade.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where architectural woodwork is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 FRAMING

- A. Use specified framing lumber, sizes and spacing as indicated on drawings and as required to support loads.
- B. Framing shall be cut square on bearings, closely fitted, accurately set to required lines and levels, rigidly secured in place at bearings and connection with nails, lag screws and/or bolts as required by conditions.

#### 3.3 GROUNDS, BLOCKING, NAILERS AND FURRING

- A. Provide all wood grounds, blocking, nailers, furring, and the like for work of this Section, where shown and where required, dressed to size indicated or required to suit the condition. Install grounds, blocking, nailers, furring, etc., rigidly, in proper alignment, trued with a long straight edge.

3.4 ROUGH HARDWARE

- A. Provide all rough hardware, such as nails, screws, bolts, anchors, hangers, clips and similar items. Hardware shall be of the proper size and kind to adequately secure the work together and in place, in a rigid and substantial manner. Use galvanized hardware at exterior walls, and at other locations where subject to moisture or where water will be present.
- B. Secure wood to concrete and to solid masonry with countersunk bolts in expansion sleeves or other approved manner, to steel with countersunk bolts, to hollow masonry and to drywall with heavy duty countersunk toggle bolts. Space fastenings not more than sixteen (16) inches apart. Hardened cut nails, power-driven fastenings, or other suitable devices may be used where approved by the Commissioner.
- C. Connections and fastenings shall be made in such manner as will compensate for swelling and shrinkage and shall permit the work to remain permanently in place without any splitting or opening of joints.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CABINET FINISH HARDWARE

- A. All items of finish hardware furnished under this Section shall be carefully fitted and secured in place as part of the work of this Section. Locations and positioning of hardware shall be subject to the Commissioner's approval. Care shall be taken not to mar or damage hardware, or other work. Install doors plumb and true. Hardware shall be fitted to ensure operation without forcing.
- B. After preliminary fitting of hardware, the Contractor shall remove trim for painting and finishing work; after which he shall reinstall the hardware in a permanent manner.
- C. Upon completion of the work, before final acceptance of the building by the City of New York, the Contractor shall, in the presence of the Commissioner, show that all hardware is in satisfactory working order; fit all keys in their respective locks and, upon acceptance of the work, shall tag and deliver all keys to the Commissioner and City of New York.
- D. When directed by the City of New York, at any time during the first year after the completion of the Contract, the Contractor shall return to the building and adjust and refit the work and hardware, and leave such items in satisfactory working order.

3.6 GENERAL INSTALLATION

- A. Wall anchorage and general installation procedures for cabinetry work shall conform to AWI Section 10, Article entitled "EXECUTION", Sub-Article 6.1 with all related subparagraphs.
- B. Install the work plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Install to a tolerance of 1/8" in 8'-0" for plumb and level (including countertops), and with 1/16" maximum offset in flush adjoining surfaces, 1/8" maximum offset in revealed adjoining surfaces.



- C. Scribe and cut work to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.
- D. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for a complete installation.

### 3.7 TRIM, MOLDINGS, ETC.

- A. Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces for each run. Stagger joints in adjacent and related members. Cope at returns, miter corner.
- B. Joints of all trim and/or moldings shall be set tight, miter exterior angles and cope interior angles. Joints, except end joints less than twelve (12) feet apart, will not be permitted in straight runs of trim and/or moldings and rails.
- C. Secure all trim and/or moldings with glue and blind nail with finishing nails. Set exposed nail heads in finished work and putty. Sand all work to remove any tool marks and irregularities.
- D. Wood shall receive finish as specified in Section 099000 - Painting.

### 3.8 VENEERED WOOD PANELS

- A. Provide a system of concealed panel hanger clips, shims and corresponding wall clips to support the panel system. Face nailing shall not be permitted.
- B. Hang the panels in the designated locations. Panels shall be straight, level, flat and flush with adjoining panels.
- C. Where reveals are indicated, keep panels spaced so that reveals are parallel and of widths shown.

### 3.9 CABINET WORK AND MILLWORK

#### A. General

- 1. Materials and workmanship shall conform to the Quality Standards of the Architectural Woodwork Institute specified herein and to the drawings.
- 2. Cabinet work and millwork shall be performed by experienced cabinet work and millwork company, having craftsmen skilled in their trade.
- 3. Fabricate all cabinet work and millwork completely in the shop, in complete and/or as large units as practical, leaving only fitting, assembly, installation and a minimum of fabrication and finishing to be done at the building. Assembled work shall be rigidly secured and permanently fastened together with concealed fasteners.
- 4. Afford Commissioner every facility for inspection of work at shop or mill at such times as the Commissioner may select.



5. As far as practicable, use concealed fastenings for joining and assembling the work. Where this is impossible, the means of securing shall be placed in inconspicuous places and methods of joining and assembling submitted for Commissioner's approval prior to fabrication.
  6. Mill all finish wood accurately to detail, with clean cut moldings, profiles and lines, machined, sanded smooth, housed, jointed, blocked, put together in the best manner, with provision for swelling and shrinkage, and to ensure the work remaining in place without warping, splitting or opening of joints.
  7. Cut trim to dimensions and profiles shown, from solid stock.
  8. Make all trim and the like in single lengths wherever possible; joints mitered, glued and splined. Continuous members shall have tight flush joints, doweled or splined and glued.
  9. Make all joints hairline tight, fitted accurately and joined with hardwood splines or dowels, glued together, or by other method approved by Commissioner. Use screws, not nails, for fastenings.
  10. Gluing shall, where practicable, be by the hot plate press method and glued surfaces shall be in close contact throughout. Glue stains on finished work will not be permitted.
  11. Cover surface fastenings, where permitted, with matching wood plugs or wood putty. Finish exposed edges of plywood with matching solid stock. Lock miter external corners; tongue and groove internal corners to allow for contraction and expansion.
  12. Machine sand with grain, finish with hand sanding, leave exposed surfaces free from machine or tool marks that will show through the finish.
  13. Work which adjoins drywall, concrete, or other finish shall be fitted and scribed in a careful manner and ample allowance shall be given for cutting and scribing.
  14. Erect work true to lines, levels and dimensions, square, aligned and plumb, securely and rigidly fastened in place.
- B. Cabinet Work: Provide all items of cabinet work indicated on drawings and as herein specified.
1. Tops, sides, backs, bottoms, dividers, shelves, fronts, doors and drawer fronts shall be of plywood or flakeboard core, with the specified wood veneer as indicated on drawings.
  2. Drawer sides and backs shall be 1/2" thick solid clear selected white birch, suitable for clear finish. Drawer bottom shall be 3/8" thick plywood with clear selected white birch veneers, suitable for clear finish.
  3. Cabinet doors and drawers shall be flush mounted.



4. Adjustable shelves in cabinets shall have grommets spaced 2" o.c.
  5. Fixed shelves shall be dadoed into side supports and glued.
  6. Shelves shall be 3/4" thick for spans up to 30"; for spans in excess of 30" to 48" shelves shall be 1" thick.
  7. All cabinets shall have closed top, sides, bottom, and back with veneers to match face work. Cabinets to fit accurately into indicated locations; scribe moldings permitted only where indicated.
- C. Countertops shall be installed to support a minimum concentrated live load of 150 lbs. acting downward at mid span at outer edge of counter without causing deformation and damage.

### 3.10 WOOD BASES

- A. Provide plywood backing, toggle bolted to substrate, if substrate not suitable for securing wood base.
- B. Machine wood bases from specified wood, to profiles indicated on drawings.
- C. Set base level and plumb. Where indicated on drawings, face of wood base shall be flush with wall above. Glue wood base to substrate or to plywood backing, and screw or nail wood base to substrate or to plywood backing with countersunk wood screws or with finishing nails, recess wood screw heads, and spackle with wood putty, set and spackle nails with wood putty. Do not nail or fasten wood base to floor. Ends of wood base shall be either splined or ship lapped.
- D. Where no wood backing occurs, screw apply base at each stud with screw countersunk and wood putty applied and sanded smooth and flush with base.

### 3.11 WOOD DOOR FRAMES

- A. Where indicated on drawings, provide wood frames and bucks for wood doors. Bucks shall be braced, set straight and plumb and have anchors for building into adjoining construction; space anchors not over two (2) feet apart (one foot from corners). Machine wood frames from specified solid wood to profiles indicated on drawings. Set frames plumb, level, square; securely attached to adjoining construction. Wood frames, bucks and trim shall conform to details.

### 3.12 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. General: All painting and finishing work of this Section shall be shop applied, unless otherwise noted, as specified below. All painting and finishing shall match approved samples. Field finish painting, where specified below, shall be by painting Subcontractor, as specified for in Painting Section.
- B. Schedule of Painting and Finishing
  1. Shop Primer On:



- a. Wood bases.
- b. Wood trim and moldings to be field finish painted.
- c. Ferrous metal work.

2. Shop Natural Finish On:

- a. Wood paneling.
- b. Wood cabinets with wood veneers.

- C. Back-Painting: All work of this Section in contact with concrete or masonry or other moisture areas and all concealed surfaces of cabinet and millwork, shall be back-painted with one (1) coat of oil based paint prior to installation, shop applied where practicable.
- D. Field Touch-Up: Field touch-up shall be the responsibility of the installing Subcontractor, and shall include the filling and touch-up of exposed job made nail or screw holes, refinishing of raw surfaces resulting from job fitting, repair of job inflicted scratches and mars, and final cleaning up of the finished surfaces.

3.13 CLEAN UP AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean Up: At regular intervals during the course of the work, all debris and excess material shall be cleaned up and removed from the site. Upon completion of installation, clean all spaces of debris caused by woodwork installation.
- B. Protection: Protect all woodwork from marring, defacement of other damage until final completion and acceptance of the project by the City of New York. Repair or replace all defective units prior to final inspection as directed by the Commissioner. Any units that cannot be satisfactorily repaired in the opinion of the Commissioner shall be replaced with new units of same original design, at no additional cost to the City of New York.

END OF SECTION 06 40 23



SECTION 068200

GLASS FIBER REINFORCED FABRICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the fiberglass reinforced rosette fabrications.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Painting - Section 099000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).



2. Gypsum wallboard shall contain "synthetic" gypsum produced with a minimum of 75% post-industrial recycled content, if readily available.
  3. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  4. Steel framing and gypsum wallboard products harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  5. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  6. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. **Manufacturer:** Fiberglass reinforced fabrications manufacturer shall have a minimum of five years experience in the design, fabrication, and installation of custom shapes. Manufacturer shall successfully completed at least five projects of the type, scope and quality required by this Project.
- D. **Measurements:** Field measurements shall be taken prior to shop manufacturing and finish.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.

4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits.)
  - B. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings of all work of this Section to Commissioner for approval, including large scale details of construction and showing sizes and thicknesses of all members, types of materials, support systems and methods of connection and assembly, location of joints between panel sections, detail of joints, complete dimensions, clearances, anchorage, relationship to surrounding work by other trades, bedding materials, and other pertinent details of fabrication and installation.
  - C. Engineering Data: Submit Engineering Data signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in New York State; data to include method of support and anchorage of GFRG dome assembly.
  - D. Samples: Submit 12" long samples of portions of full size units showing materials to be furnished under this Section to Commissioner for approval in size, form, color, texture, and finish requested by Commissioner.
  - E. Product Data: Submit complete manufacturer's product data to Commissioner for approval, consisting of complete product description and specifications, complete installation instructions, and other pertinent technical data required for complete product and product use information.
  - F. Do not order materials or begin installation of the work until approval of submittals has been obtained.
- 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Materials shall be packaged, boxed, wrapped, and otherwise protected to assure complete protection from damage during shipment, storage and handling, and shall be stored in interior spaces or above ground under protective, weathertight, ventilated covers.
  - B. GFRG members to be stored in controlled conditions for sufficient period of time to ensure product stability before shipped.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Glass Fiber Reinforced Gypsum (GFRG) rosettes manufactured by Formglas, Plastiglas or approved equal meeting the following:
  1. Glass fiber reinforced gypsum to be fabricated using long strand continuous glass fiber mats laminated with high strength gypsum cement.



2. Embeds and reinforcement to be galvanized steel.
3. All GFRG members to have identification marks, as indicated on shop drawings, clearly displayed on backside of part.
4. Units shall be custom design as indicated on the drawings: Fabricate units in sections as large as practical to minimize joints.
5. Physical Properties
  - a. Glass Fiber 5 - 6% by weight
  - b. Shell Thickness 1/4" minimum
  - c. Weight 2 lbs./ft. +
  - d. Density 101.7 lbs./ft.
  - e. Finish smooth
  - f. Tensile Strength (ASTM D790) 1358
  - g. Flexural Strength (ASTM D695) 4118
  - h. Compressive Strength (ASTM D695) 7030
  - i. Impact (D256) 8.34 ft. lbs./in.
  - j. Humidified Deflection 1/16"
6. Tolerances
  - a. Conform to the following:
    - 1). Dimensional - all directions +/- 1/16"
    - 2). Thickness + 1/16"
7. Finish: Shall be painted in field; see Section 09900.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide steel clip angles, hangers, channels and supports conforming to ASTM A-36, shop primed with rust inhibitive primer, unless otherwise required by the manufacturer.
- B. Provide tapes, adhesives and finishing compounds as recommended by the manufacturer.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where fiberglass reinforced fabrications are to be installed and notify the Commissioner of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 ERECTION

- A. Erection of reinforced glass fiber units shall be performed by an experienced erector in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings and manufacturer's printed standards. Erector of system shall be approved by the manufacturer.

- B. Job Conditions: Installation of interior finish materials shall begin only after glazing is complete and all exterior openings are closed. All wet work shall be completed and dried out. No work is to start until uniform temperature of at least 60 deg. F. is available. The installation contractor shall be responsible for the examination of his materials, and shall not proceed until all unsatisfactory conditions have been met.
- C. Manufacturer's Standards: Manufacturer's standard recommendations shall be the minimum acceptable method, material, accessory, and/or procedure. However, where said manufacturer's standard recommendations are lesser in any way, shape or form than anything contained on the approved shop drawings, proceed in accordance with the provisions of these specifications and the approved shop drawings.
- D. General Installation: Installation shall be in accordance with the specifications, Contract Drawings, and approved shop drawings. Finished appearance in all cases shall be in exact conformance with the Contract Documents. Upon completion of each individual unit, bed and sand smooth all joints and countersunk fasteners to match texture of enclosure and ready for paint. The entire assembly shall be rigid and shall present a smooth finish assembly ready to receive paint as specified under Section 09900.
  - 1. Install angle clips, channels, hangers, inserts and other steel supports as shown on the approved shop drawings.
- E. Tape and Patching
  - 1. Tape, float and sand all joints as specified for gypsum drywall.
  - 2. Countersunk fasteners and damaged areas are to be patched to match texture of adjacent surface.
- F. Exercise extreme care in all handling and stacking of finish components to avoid scratching, staining, or marring of exposed surfaces.
- G. Provide for relief of stresses caused by thermal or structural movement in the installation of all components. Location of joints shall be as indicated on the approved shop drawings.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. Upon completion, clean all surfaces in accordance with recommendations of manufacturer. Repair or replace all damaged materials. Finished surface shall be ready to receive finish painting.
- B. Remove all cartons and debris caused by this work daily and at completion leave all work areas broom cleaned.

END OF SECTION 06 82 00



SECTION 071416

COLD-FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING AND ROOFING SYSTEM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the waterproofing and roofing system as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of surfaces to receive fluid applied waterproofing.
  2. Fluid applied waterproofing system on structural concrete deck below roof and terraces.
  3. Installation of rigid insulation.
  4. Sealant work in conjunction with fluid applied waterproofing.
  5. Alkalinity protection.
  6. Wood deck pavers.
  7. Intensive vegetated roof.
  8. Water testing of fluid applied waterproofing.
  9. Temporary protection of fluid applied waterproofing systems until covered by work of this Section.
  10. Supervision of installation of fluid applied waterproofing system by manufacturer's representative of fluid applied waterproofing material.
  11. Warranty of fluid applied waterproofing system.
  12. Coordination of tying into existing membrane system.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.



- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Plumbing - Division 22, for drains.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Membrane roofing shall have a Solar Reflective Index (SRI) equal to or greater than 78 for low-sloped roofs (slope < 2:12), and equal to or greater than 29 for steeped sloped roofs (Slope > 2:12) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 1980.
  - 2. Roofing products manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of This section.
  - 3. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the insulation product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s)



- c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the product information supplied for the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as stated in this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Construction Manager or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  5. Certification, from the manufacturer, that material has achieved a Solar Reflective Index (SRI) equal to or greater than 78 for low-sloped roofs (slope < 2:12), and equal to or greater than 29 for steeped sloped roofs (Slope > 2:12) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 1980.
- B. Shop Drawings - submit for: Typical installation details, showing details at drains, at reinforcing flashings, at terminations, at joints in structure below, at intersection of horizontal and vertical surfaces, at penetrations in membrane systems.
- C. Samples - Submit:
1. Cold-fluid applied membrane, cured sample.
  2. Insulation material, 12" x 12".
  3. Flashing material, 12" x 12".
  4. Protection board, 12" x 12".
- D. Manufacturer's Literature: Submit manufacturer's technical and installation literature for all materials of this Section.
- E. Submit certification from membrane manufacturer that all components of assembly are compatible and shall be covered by a single source warranty.
- F. Contractor's Certification: Submit per Article 1.8.
- G. Subcontractor's Qualifications: Submit per Article 1.9.



1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original unopened containers or packaging clearly labeled with manufacturer's name, brand name, instructions for use, all identifying numbers, and UL labels.
- B. Materials shall be stored in a neat, safe manner, not to exceed the allowable structural capacity of the storage area.
- C. Store materials in a clean, dry area protected from water and direct sunlight.
- D. Store all adhesives at temperatures between 60 degrees F. and 80 degrees F. If exposed to lower temperatures, restore materials to 60 degrees F. minimum temperature before using.
- E. Do not use materials damaged in handling or storage.

1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Application of the membrane shall not commence nor proceed during inclement weather. All surfaces to receive the membrane shall be free of water, dew, frost, snow and ice.
- B. Application of membrane shall not commence nor proceed when the ambient temperature is below 0 degrees F.
- C. Preparation and application of membrane must be conducted in well ventilated areas.
- D. Over its service life, do not expose membrane or accessories to a constant temperature in excess of 180 degrees F. (i.e. hot pipes and vents or direct steam venting, etc.)

1.8 PROTECTION

- A. Against Loads: Protect work of this Section against concentrated loads and any other loads or equipment that would damage the materials or work. Use boards or other approved means to safely distribute the loads.
- B. Against Traffic: Do not permit traffic on work of this Section except for workmen doing the work, during the installation and after the installation, until covered with protective boards or with the specified protection of finish materials. Take necessary preventive measures to protect work of this Section from damage during and after application, until traffic is permitted.
- C. Rejection of Damaged Work: Damaged materials or work will be rejected. Rejected materials or work must be immediately removed and replaced with new materials, at the Contractor's expense.

1.9 MANUFACTURER'S REPRESENTATIVE

- A. Contractor shall require representative of the manufacturer of the fluid applied waterproofing material to provide field instructions and supervision for the installation of the complete fluid applied waterproofing system at the start of the work of this Section.
- B. Contractor shall require the manufacturer's representative to make sure that the Subcontractor's workmen are fully instructed and trained in the handling and application of all the materials, and shall see that the materials are correctly installed.
- C. Upon completion of the installation, the Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner written certification that the representative of the manufacturer of the fluid applied waterproofing material has supervised the work of this Section and that all materials were correctly installed.

1.10 SPECIAL EXPERIENCE

- A. For installers: "The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope and type to the required work. In addition, the contractor or subcontractor must be licensed or approved by the manufacturer."
- B. For manufacturers: "The manufacturer providing the material or equipment specified in this section must, for the past five (5) years, have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of material or equipment similar in type to that required for this Project. Such similar material or equipment provided by the manufacturer must have been in satisfactory service for not less than five (5) years."
- C. For roof installers: "The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must be a company regularly engaged in performing roofing projects with its own workforce and have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) roofing projects similar in scope, size and type to the required work within the last three (3) consecutive years prior to the bid opening. At least one of those projects must have been performed within the last twelve (12) months. The three (3) qualifying projects must have utilized one or more of the roofing systems specified for the project being bid herein, been installed by the contractor's or subcontractor's company utilizing its own workforce and must have qualified for, and have been issued, the warranty provided by the manufacturer of the roofing system. In addition, the contractor or subcontractor must be a certified or authorized installer for at least one of the manufacturer's roofing systems specified herein and shall submit proof of same."

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Waterproofing Contractor: 2 years.
- B. Waterproofing System Manufacturer: 20-year Material Warranty.



- C. Waterproofing System Manufacturer: 20-Year Single Source Watertight Warranty on waterproofing areas including removal and replacement of separation sheet, drainage material, insulation and flashing. Warranty shall state:
1. The membrane and flashing will remain watertight for ten years.
  2. Both material and workmanship problems are covered.
  3. The insulation will retain at least 80% of its thermal value.
  4. In the event that the waterproofing fails to perform, manufacturer/supplier shall make repairs to the waterproofing to enable it to perform as warranted.
  5. Removal and replacement of overburden is covered under this warranty.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Membrane: Two-component, cold fluid-applied reinforced polyurethane waterproofing membrane with a 360 degree needle punched non-woven 165 gram weight polyester reinforcing fleece, for a finished dry film membrane thickness of 0.070" nominal per ply as dictated by the fleece weight. Provide products manufactured and supplied by the following:

1. Kemper System's 2K-PUR resin for use in an adhered waterproofing system.

**B. Physical Properties:**

Property	Value	Test Method
Color	Gray-Green	-
Physical state	Cures to solid	-
Nominal thickness (165 fleece)	70 mils	-
Tensile strength @ break	> 1200 psi	ASTM D-412
Elongation	> 62%	ASTM D-412
Tear resistance	>1100 lbf	ASTM D-624
Water vapor transmission	0.45 Perms	ASTM E-96
Water absorption	< 1%	ASTM D-570
Impact resistance	Shore A 68	ASTM D-2240
Usage time*	30 minutes	-
Rainproof after*	6 hours	-
Solid to walk on after*	24 hours	-
Solid to drive on with air rubber tires after*	48 hours	-
Overburden may be applied after	2 days	-
Completely hardened after	3 days	-
Crack spanning	2mm/0.08 inch	-
Resistance to temperatures up to (short	250°C/482°F	-

term)		
*all times are approximate and depend upon wind, humidity and temperature.		

- C. Membrane Flashings: A composite of the same resin material as field membrane with 165 fleece reinforcement.
- D. Accessories
1. Epoxy Primer: Two-component, solvent-free epoxy coating for use in improving adhesion of membrane to cementitious/masonry substrate surfaces. Monitor application rate and adjust depending on substrate absorbency.
  2. Accelerator: Additive specifically designed to accelerate the resin reaction time at ambient temperatures below 50°F (10°C). Accelerator to be used with cream resin Component A prior to mixing of multi-component resin. Continuously monitor substrate surface temperatures.
  3. Tools, Accessories, and Cleaners: Supplied and/or approved by membrane manufacturer for product installation.
  4. Leveling and Patching Aggregate: Silica sand shall be washed, kiln-dried, and dust-free, suitable for troweling or pourable self-leveling, round grain or angular with the following size specification:
    - a. For Voids Less Than 1/4" in Depth: 0.45 - 0.55 mm.
    - b. For Voids 1/4" to 2" in Depth: 0.7 - 1.2 mm.

Mixing Proportions shall be a ratio of resin to sand at 1:2 by volume or as approved by membrane manufacturer.
  5. Backer Rod: Expanded, closed-cell polyethylene foam designed for use with cold-applied joint sealant.
  6. Caulking: Single component, non-sag elastomeric polyurethane sealant, as recommended or supplied by membrane manufacturer for use in making airtight and watertight seals where required.
  7. Wood Nailers and Cant Strips: New wood nailers and cant strips shall be pressure treated for rot resistance (e.g., "Wolmanized" or "Osiose K-33"), #2 or better lumber. Asphaltic or creosote treated lumber is not acceptable.
  8. Miscellaneous Fasteners: Appropriate for purpose intended and approved by fastener manufacturer; length required for thickness of material; as supplied or approved by membrane manufacturer.
  9. Drains: Spun/cast aluminum or cast iron roof drain with strainer/grate, as supplied or approved by membrane manufacturer.



- 10. Temporary and Night Sealant: As recommended or required by membrane manufacturer.
- 11. Filter Fabric: Non-woven polyester fabric, minimum 4.0 oz/ sq. yd., for use under pavers; as supplied or approved by membrane manufacturer.
- E. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 sieve, laminated to one side of the core and a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a horizontal flow rate of not less than 2.8 gpm per ft.
- F. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate board meeting ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 2, 2.0 lb/cu. ft. minimum density, 25 psi minimum compressive strength, square edged.
- G. Cover Board: "Permabase," high compressive strength cover board consisting of aggregated Portland cement slurry with polymer-coated glass-fiber mesh, 1/2-inch thick.

## 2.2 GREEN ROOF MATERIALS

- A. Air Layer: Air space over insulation when moisture mat is required shall be composed of a crush-proof core and non-woven filter fabric.
- B. Water Retention Mat: Non-woven, synthetic fiber mat capable of retaining additional moisture for potential use by vegetation.
- C. Drainage/Water Retention Component: Three-dimensional, molded panels of recycled material with drainage channels top and bottom sides and water retention reservoirs top side.
- D. Filter Fabric: Non-woven, polymeric, geotextile fabric.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION - WATERPROOFING CONTRACTOR

- A. Examine all surfaces to receive the waterproofing materials to assure a proper installation. Verify the following:
  - 1. Type, strength, density, and cure time of concrete.
  - 2. Wood float finish, free from defects.
  - 3. Structural limitations of deck.
  - 4. Proper drains and other flashing details.
  - 5. Proper slab slope.

- B. Do not proceed with waterproofing application until all defects are repaired.

### 3.2 PREPARATION OF CONCRETE

- A. Concrete shall have cured a minimum of 28 days in accordance with ACI-308, or as approved by Waterproofing Manufacturer's Technical Department.
- B. Concrete shall be free of oil, grease, curing compounds, loose particles, moss, algae growth, laitance, friable matter, dirt, bituminous products and previous waterproofing materials.
- C. Concrete shall be dry with a maximum moisture content of five (5) percent. Determinations of moisture content shall be performed by the Contractor. Contractor shall be responsible to perform periodic evaluations of moisture content during the work. Moisture evaluation results shall be submitted in writing to the City of new York of his designated Representative and manufacturer for acceptance.
- D. Where required, concrete shall be abrasively cleaned in accordance with ASTM D 4259 to provide a sound substrate free from laitance. Achieve an open concrete surface in accordance with ICRI surface profiles CSP 3-5. When using mechanical methods to remove existing waterproofing products or surface deterioration, the surface profile is not to exceed 1/4 inch (peak to valley).
- E. The substrate shall be sound and all spalls, voids and blow holes on vertical or horizontal surfaces must be repaired prior to placement of the primer coat. Spalls and other deterioration shall be repaired in accordance with the requirements of the City of new York or his designated Representative and Membrane manufacturer.
- F. Areas of minor surface deterioration of 0.25" or greater in depth shall be repaired to prevent possible ponding of the system, leading to excessive usage of primer and resin.
- G. Extent and location of thin surface patching shall require approval of the City of new York or his designated Representative and Waterproofing Manufacturer prior to the application of any system component.
- H. For concrete materials with a compressive strength of less than 3,500 psi contact Waterproofing Manufacturer's Technical Department for substrate preparation requirements.

### 3.3 FINISH LEVELING, PATCHING AND CRACK PREPARATION

- A. General: Resin/sand mix is the preferred material for all substrate finish leveling, crack and wall/deck preparation and patching. Resin/sand patching mix provides a fast-set time of approximately 25 minutes and does not require surface grinding.
- B. Primer/sand mix is an alternative substrate leveling and patching material. Primer/sand patching mix provides a set time of approximately 12 hours, and does not require surface grinding. Kemperol primer/sand mix is typically applied in conjunction with general surface priming.



- C. **Substrate Leveling and Patching:** Substrate conditions are to be evaluated by the Contractor, the City of new York, or his designated Representative, and Membrane manufacturer. Perform leveling and patching operations as follows:
1. Level uneven surfaces with a leveling mixture of primer/unsaturated polyester resin and approved kiln-dried silica sand in a 1:2 primer/resin to sand ratio by volume. Spread and plane this compound with a squeegee and trowel to achieve a flat surface.
  2. Fill cavities with a patching mixture of primer/polyester resin and approved kiln-dried sand in a 1:3/1:3.5 primer/resin to sand ratio by volume.
  3. Silica sand must be kept absolutely dry during storage and handling.
  4. Any surface to be leveled or filled must first be primed with an appropriate primer.
- D. **Joint and Crack Preparation:** Joints, cracks and fractures in the structural deck/substrate shall be prepared as defined below prior to installation of the waterproofing membrane. Note: Joints, cracks, and fractures may telegraph through the waterproofing membrane.
1. **Non-Moving Cracks:** Determine that crack is non-moving. Clean out crack by brushing and oil-free compressed air. Fill crack with polyurethane sealant. Allow for a minimum of twelve (12) hours cure or as required by sealant Manufacturer.
  2. **Moving Cracks:** Determine that crack is moving. Clean out crack by brushing and oil-free compressed air. Fill crack with polyurethane sealant. Allow for a minimum of twelve (12) hours cure or as required by sealant Manufacturer. Apply resin and 4 inch (10 cm) wide strip of membrane (resin and fleece) in strict accordance with Membrane manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 APPLICATION OF PRIMER

#### A. General

1. Mix and apply two-component primer in strict accordance with written instructions of Membrane Manufacturer. Use only proprietary materials, as supplied by the membrane manufacturer.
2. The substrate surface must be dry, with any remaining dust or loose particles removed using clean, dry, oil-free compressed air, industrial vacuum, cloth wipe or a combination of methods.

#### B. Application

1. Apply primer at the rate of approximately 0.7 to 1.4 gallons per 100 square feet.
2. Roll or brush the primer evenly onto the surface to fully saturate the substrate in one application. Do not allow primer to pond or collect in low areas.



3. Apply primer only up to the edge of the membrane flashing terminations. Primer application past the membrane terminations requires surfacing with an approved material.
4. For EP primer applications over cementitious substrates where protection from substrate wetness is required, apply primer coat at a heavier application rate until pore saturation is achieved.
5. For all EP primer applications, apply kiln-dried sand into the final coat of EP primer while still wet at the rate of 30 lbs. per 100 square feet.
6. Allow standard primers to cure for a minimum of twelve (12) hours before membrane application. Allow urethane-based and epoxy-based quick-dry primers to cure for a minimum of three (3) hours before membrane application. Membrane must be applied to primer only when completely dry and without tack.
7. Exposure of the primer in excess of eight (8) days or premature exposure to moisture may require removal and application of new primer. DO NOT apply new primer over exposed primer older than eight (8) days, primer prematurely exposed to moisture, or primer used as temporary waterproofing, unless approved in writing by the Membrane Manufacturer.

### 3.5 APPLICATION OF MEMBRANE

#### A. General

1. Mix and apply cold fluid-applied reinforced unsaturated polyester waterproofing membrane in strict accordance with written instructions of Membrane Manufacturer. Use only proprietary membrane resins and materials, as supplied by the membrane manufacturer.
2. The primed substrate surface shall be dry, with any remaining dust or loose particles removed using clean, dry, oil-free compressed air, industrial vacuum, cloth-wipe or a combination.
3. Two-part polyester resins cure most quickly and completely when exposed to UV light. For concealed and/or interior applications where exposure to natural UV light cannot be obtained, exposure to a UV light source or a supplemental source of hot air blown over the membrane surface will improve membrane cure.
4. Protect all areas where membrane has been installed. Do not work off installed membrane during application of remaining work before forty-eight (48) hours of curing. Movement of materials and equipment across installed membrane is not acceptable. If movement is necessary, provide complete protection of affected areas.
5. Closely follow the Membrane Manufacturer's recommendation for hot and cold weather application. Monitor surface and ambient temperatures, including the effects of wind chill.



**B. Mixing of Resin**

1. Mix resin Component A (black formulation) with a spiral agitator until the liquid is a uniform black color.
2. Add the Catalyst Powder to resin Component A and mix with the same agitator for 5 minutes or until the powder is completely mixed. The dissolving time is 20 minutes to 2 hours, depending on the ambient temperature. The catalyst is completely dissolved when there are no white specs remaining.
3. Mix resin Component B (white formulation) with a separate spiral agitator until the color is a uniform white. If the ambient temperature is below 50 deg. F or above 75 deg. F, then a weather related additive should be combined and mixed into the Component B.
  - a. Cold Activator should be added to resin Component B when the ambient temperature is 50 deg. F and below. The activator should be mixed with the spiral agitator for 5 minutes or until both liquids are thoroughly blended.
  - b. Inhibitor should be added to resin Component B when the temperature is 75 deg. F and above. The inhibitor should be mixed with the spiral agitator for 5 minutes or until both liquids are thoroughly blended.
4. Pour resin Component A and Component B into a third clean bucket at a 1:1 ratio (equal parts) and thoroughly mix the components with a clean spiral agitator. The Resin solution should be a uniform color, with no light or dark streaks present.
5. Mix only that amount of resin components A & B that can be used in 20 minutes.

**C. Application of Resin/Fleece**

1. Apply mixed resin to the prepared surface at the approximate rate of 4.5 gallons per 100 square feet. The resin should be rolled or brushed liberally and evenly onto the surface using a broad, even stroke. Cover one working area at a time, between 15 to 20 sq. ft.
2. Roll out dry polyester fleece onto the liquid resin mix, making sure the smooth side is facing up (natural unrolling procedure), avoiding any folds and wrinkles. The fleece will begin to rapidly saturate with the liquid resin mix. Use a medium nap roller or brush to work the resin into the fleece, saturating from the bottom up, and eliminating air bubbles, wrinkles, etc. The appearance of the saturated fleece should be light opaque amber with no white spots. White spots are indications of unsaturated fleece or lack of adhesion. It is important to correct these faults before the resin cures.
3. Apply additional liquid resin mix on top of fleece at the approximate rate of 2 gallons per 100 square feet to finish the saturation of the fleece. Roll this final coating into the fleece, which will result in a glossy appearance. The fleece can



only hold so much resin and all excess should be rolled forward to the unsaturated fleece, eliminating ponding or excessive build-up of the resin. Any excess resin left on the top of the fleece will weather and peel off. The correct amount of resin will leave no whiteness in fleece and there will be a slightly fibrous surface texture. The final resin coating shall be smooth and uniform.

4. Prevent contact between mixed/unmixed resin and new/existing membrane. If any unmixed resin contacts membrane surface remove immediately and clean thoroughly with a cloth rag.
5. At all fleece seams, allow a 2" overlap for all side joints and a 4" overlap for all end joints.
6. At membrane tie-offs, clean in-place membrane with MEK (methyl ethyl ketone) solvent once resin has cured. Allow solvents to fully evaporate before application of new resin.

### 3.6 FLASHING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install flashing system in accordance with the requirements/recommendations of the Membrane manufacturer and as depicted on standard drawings and details. Provide system with base flashing, edge flashing, penetration flashing, counter flashing, and all other flashings required for a complete watertight system.
- B. Wherever possible, install the flashings before installing the field membrane to minimize foot traffic over newly installed field membrane.
- C. All membrane flashings shall be installed concurrently with the waterproofing membrane as the job progresses. Temporary flashings are not allowed without prior written approval from the Membrane manufacturer. Should any water penetrate the new waterproofing membrane because of incomplete flashings, the affected area shall be removed and replaced at the contractor's expense.
- D. Provide a minimum vertical height of 8" for all flashing terminations. Flashing height shall be at least as high as the potential water level that could be reached as a result of a deluging rain and/or poor slope. Do not flash over existing through-wall flashings, weep holes and overflow scuppers.
- E. All flashings shall be terminated as required by the Membrane Manufacturer.
- F. Alkalinity surface protection consisting of two applications of EP primer and one application of approved broadcast mineral aggregate surfacing shall be applied wherever stone, concrete, or masonry elements will be placed directly over the flashing.

### 3.7 ALKALINITY PROTECTION

- A. Where placement of concrete, mortar or adhesive setting beds are required over sections of the waterproofing membrane or flashing, the application of one of the following alkalinity protective measures is mandatory:



1. Application of one (1) heavy or two (2) lighter coats of Primer EP at 1.5 gal/100 sq. ft. total application, with broadcast of kiln-dried silica sand at the approximate rate of 30 lbs. per 100 square feet into final wet coat of primer.
  2. Application of one (1) coat of epoxy primer at 1.0 gal/100 sq. ft., and placement of one (1) ply of 15 mil polyolefin film with six (6) inch taped side and end laps (not suitable for overburden requiring positive adhesion to waterproofing membrane).
- B. Protection shall extend a minimum of one (1) foot past the concrete form on all sides (polyolefin film may be trimmed after cure of concrete).
- C. Provide continuous cleaning with water and brush to eliminate settlement of concrete residues on in-place waterproofing membrane adjacent to area of concrete placement.

### 3.8 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive or another method that does not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

### 3.9 INSULATION/ COVER BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. General: Insulation and cover board shall be installed in accordance with the insulation/cover board manufacturer's current published specifications and recommendations for use with adhered roofing.
- B. Install Insulation/Cover Board: Install only as much insulation and cover board as can be primed, sealed, and protected before the end of the day's work or before the onset of inclement weather.
- C. Fit Insulation/Cover Board: Neatly fit insulation/cover board to all penetrations, projections, and nailers. Insulation shall be loosely butted, with gaps not greater than 1/4". All gaps greater than 1/4" shall be filled with acceptable insulation. Cover board shall be loosely butted, with gaps not greater than 1/4". All gaps greater than 1/8" shall be filled with primer; all gaps greater than 1/4" shall be filled with polyurethane sealant.
- D. Strip In Cover Board Joints: Strip all cover board joints with four inch (4") wide strip of flashing membrane. Under no circumstances shall the membrane be left unsupported over a space greater than 1/4".
- E. Stagger Insulation/Cover Board Joints: When installing multiple layers of insulation, all joints between succeeding layers shall be staggered a minimum of 6" in each direction.
- F. Steel Deck Substrates: Place boards perpendicular to steel deck flutes with edges over flute surface for bearing support. Edges shall be checked so that no edges are left substantially unsupported along the flutes.



- G. Drain Sumps: Insulation shall be feathered or tapered to provide a sump area a minimum of 36" x 36" where possible at all drains. Taper insulation around roof drains so as to provide proper slope for drainage. In areas where feathered or tapered insulation leaves insulation core exposed, cover with an appropriate cover board or base sheet/cap sheet assembly to provide a sound and smooth substrate surface.
- H. Tapered Insulation: Place the constant thickness first layer and the tapered thickness insulation to the required slope pattern in accordance with insulation manufacturer's instructions.
- I. Polyurethane Adhesive Attachment: Follow insulation/cover board and adhesive manufacturers' recommendations for the appropriate adhesive application rate and application procedure. Under normal application rate, dispense the first bead 3" inside the outside edges of the insulation/cover board to be attached, with sequential beads equidistant. Place the boards onto the roofing adhesive beads. Walk on the boards to spread the roofing adhesive for maximum contact. Periodically walk on the boards until firmly attached. Reference FM approvals for adhesive application patterns that satisfy FM wind uplift requirements. Typical application is a 3/4" bead of roofing adhesive at a rate of one lineal foot per square foot of insulation/cover board to be attached. Note: Additional adhesive is required in the corner and perimeter regions of the roof. Secure insulation/cover board in accordance with approval requirements.

### 3.10 GARDEN ROOF COMPONENTS INSTALLATION

- A. Root Barrier Protection: Provide root barrier with system.
- B. Insulation: Insulation shall be installed loose-laid in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Air Layer: Provide air layer is required between the surface of the insulation and the water retention mat.
- D. Water Retention Mat: Moisture Mat shall be installed over the root barrier or air layer/insulation, lapping adjacent rolls a minimum of 4 inches. The mat shall be turned up all vertical, roofed/flushed surfaces a minimum of 6 inches beyond the anticipated soil level. Any excess shall be trimmed down to the level of the soil.
- E. Filter Fabric - Intensive Garden Roof. A layer of filter fabric shall be laid over the drainage material, lapping adjacent rolls a minimum of 6 inches. Enough material shall be left to be drawn up above the anticipated soil level. Any excess shall be trimmed down to the level of the soil.

### 3.11 SOIL INSTALLATION

- A. Soil shall be placed carefully to avoid damage or displacement of other materials such as walls, paving, drainage components, filter fabric, and roofing membrane.
- B. Soil shall be placed to within 1 inch greater than final grade or to a depth of no greater than 8 inches and compacted. below. For final grades less than 8 inches only one round

of compaction shall be performed and remaining soil loosely placed such that top of soil exceeds final grade by 1 inch. For final grades greater than 8 inches, place soil at no greater than 6 inches and repeat procedure until soil has been compacted within 1 inch of final grade.

- C. Compaction shall be performed with a 200 – 300 lb. landscape roller or lightly compacted with a hand held mechanical compactor to achieve a 50% to 60% compaction as determined by ASTM D 1557.
- D. After compaction remaining soil shall be placed at 1 inch greater than final grade and thoroughly watered or jetted over entire area. Low settled areas shall be filled with additional soil and re-wet to achieve uniform prescribed final grade.

### 3.12 VEGETATION INSTALLATION

- A. Supply and install specified vegetation strictly in accordance with the Commissioner instructions, plans and good practice.

### 3.13 TEMPORARY CLOSURES AND WATERSTOPS

- A. Contractor shall be responsible to ensure that moisture does not damage any completed section of the new waterproofing system. Completion of flashings, terminations, and temporary closures shall be completed as required to provide a watertight condition. All temporary closures shall be made as recommended or required by the membrane manufacturer.

### 3.14 WATER TEST

- A. All areas should be water tested by ponding water a minimum depth of 2" for a period of 48 hours to check the integrity of the installation. Before testing, it should be verified that the structure can support the dead load of the water. If leaks occur the water must be drained completely, and the membrane installation repaired, and the test run again.

### 3.15 JOB COMPLETION

- A. Contractor shall inspect the completed system and correct all defects.
- B. Clean up all debris and equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072100

THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the thermal insulation as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Blanket insulation.
  2. Mineral wool.
  3. Attachment devices.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Masonry - Section 042000.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.



- b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Submit product data for each type of product indicated, including re-cycled content.
  - C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for insulation products.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
  - B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
    1. Adhesives or sealants used for interior work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.



2. Products extracted and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  3. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
  2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
  3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
  3. Johns Manville.
  4. Knauf Insulation.
  5. Owens Corning.
  6. Mason Insulation Products

- B. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim Kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

## 2.2 EXTERIOR MINERAL WOOL INSULATION

- A. Provide mineral wool fiberboard insulation equal to "CavityRock HD" manufactured by Roxul, or approved equal, conforming to ASTM C 612, Type IVB with a maximum flame spread and smoke developed indices of 0.

1. Boards shall be 16" wide x 96" long; thickness as noted on the drawings.
2. Insulation shall have an aged R value of not less than 4.3/inch.

## 2.3 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers.
  - b. Gemco; Spindle Type.
2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
4. Affix plate with stainless steel staple or screw.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where thermal insulation is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.
- B. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- C. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF BLANKET INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  - 5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.



- a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction as indicated on Drawings.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 072700.23

SELF-ADHERING VAPOR PERMEABLE AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. The Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the self-adhering vapor permeable air barrier membrane as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
1. Vapor retarder/air barrier applied over sheathing board and cold-formed metal framing and concrete masonry units.
  2. Materials and installation to bridge and seal the following air leakage pathways and gaps:
    - a. Connections of the walls to the roof.
    - b. Connections of the walls to the foundations.
    - c. Seismic and expansion joints.
    - d. Openings and penetrations of window frames, storefront, curtain wall.
    - e. Door frames.
    - f. Piping, conduit, duct and similar penetrations.
    - g. Masonry ties, screws, bolts and similar penetrations.
    - h. All other air leakage pathways in the building envelope.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Cold-Formed Metal Framing, including sheathing - Section 054000.



#### 1.4 REFERENCES

A. The following standards are applicable to this section:

1. ASTM C 920: Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
2. ASTM C 1193: Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants.
3. ASTM E 84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
4. ASTM E 96: Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
5. ASTM E 283: Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.
6. ASTM E 2112: Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights.
7. ASTM E 2178: Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials.
8. ASTM E 2357: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
9. NFPA: Class A 0 -25 Flame Spread Index 0 -450 Smoke Developed Index.
10. ICC-ES AC-38: Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Barriers.
11. ICC-ES AC188: Acceptance Criteria for Roof Underlayments.
12. ICC-ES AC48: Acceptance Criteria for Roof Underlayment for use in
13. AAMA 2400: Standard Practice for Installation of Windows with a Mounting Flange in Stud Frame Construction.
14. AAMA 711-05: Specification for Self Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products.

B. AATCC – American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists.

1. Test Method 127 Water Resistance: Hydrostatic Pressure Test.

C. TAPPI

1. Test Method T-410; Grams of Paper and Paperboard (Weight per Unit Area).
2. Test Method T-460; Air Resistance (Gurley Hill Method).



1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Provide evidence to the Commissioner of licensing and certification under the Air Barrier Association of America's (ABAA's) Quality Assurance Program.
- C. Submit shop drawings showing locations and extent of air/vapor barrier and details of all typical conditions, intersections with other envelope systems and materials, membrane counter-flashings, and details showing how gaps in the construction will be bridged, how inside and outside corners are negotiated and how miscellaneous penetrations such as conduits, pipes electric boxes and the like are sealed.
- D. Submit manufacturer's product data sheets for each type of membrane, including manufacturer's printed instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, temperature and other limitations of installation conditions, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties.
- E. Submit manufacturer's data showing solids content of fluid applied membranes and coverage rates and wet film thickness upon application in order to achieve minimum dry film thickness required by this specification.



- F. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- G. Submit certification by air/vapor barrier manufacturer that products supplied comply with local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
- H. Submit certification of compatibility by air/vapor barrier manufacturer, listing all materials on the project that it connects to or that come in contact with it, including sealant as specified in Section 054000 for caulking joints between sheathing panels.
- I. Submit samples, 3 by 4 inch minimum size, of each air/vapor barrier material required for Project.
- J. Test results of air permeability testing of primary air barrier material (ASTM E 2178-01).
- K. Test results of assembly in accordance with ASTM E 2357.

#### 1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide air/vapor barrier constructed to perform as a continuous air/vapor barrier, and as a liquid water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior any incidental condensation or water penetration. Membrane shall accommodate movements of building materials by providing expansion and control joints as required, with accessory air seal materials at such locations, changes in substrate and perimeter conditions.
- B. Provide an air barrier assembly that has been tested in accordance with the Air Barrier Association of America's (ABAA's) approved testing protocol to provide air leakage results not to exceed 0.01 cfm/sf @ 1.57 psf.
- C. Connections to Adjacent Materials: Provide connections to adjacent materials at the following locations and show same on shop drawings:
  - 1. Foundation and walls, including penetrations, ties and anchors.
  - 2. Walls, windows, curtain walls, storefronts, louvers or doors.
  - 3. Different wall assemblies, and fixed openings within those assemblies.
  - 4. Wall and roof connections.
  - 5. Floors over unconditioned space.
  - 6. Walls, floor and roof across construction, control and expansion joints.
  - 7. Walls, floors and roof to utility, pipe and duct penetrations.
  - 8. Seismic and expansion joints.
  - 9. All other leakage pathways in the building envelope.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
1. Adhesives or sealants used for interior work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  2. Products extracted and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  3. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. Installer Qualifications
1. The air barrier contractor shall be, during the bidding period as well as for the duration of the installation, officially recognized as a Licensed Contractor by the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA). The Contractor shall carry liability insurance and bonding.
  2. Each worker who is installing air barriers must be either a Certified Applicator or an installer who is registered with ABAA.
  3. Each Lead Certified Applicator can supervise a maximum of five registered installers. The Certified Applicator shall be thoroughly trained and experienced in the installation of air barriers of the types being applied. Lead Certified Applicators shall perform or directly supervise all air/vapor barrier work on the project.
- D. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain air/vapor barrier materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing the product.
- E. Provide products which comply with all state and local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
- F. Field-Constructed Mock-Ups: Prior to installation of air/vapor barrier, apply air/vapor barrier as follows to verify details under shop drawing submittals and to demonstrate

tie-ins with adjoining construction, and other termination conditions, as well as qualities of materials and execution:

1. Construct typical exterior wall panel, 8 feet long by 8 feet wide (one of CMU and one of sheathed areas, incorporating back-up wall, cladding, window and doorframe and sill, insulation, flashing, building corner condition, and typical penetrations and gaps; illustrating materials interface and seals.
- G. Test mock-up in accordance with ASTM E 783 and ASTM E 1105 for air and water infiltration.
- H. Manufacturer shall be on-site at least once a week to observe installation and provide written report within 3 days.
- I. Manufacturer shall confirm all termination details and compatibility with materials being terminated to.
- J. Vertical and Lateral Fire Propagation Test Characteristics: The exterior wall assembly is required to comply with NFPA 285 "Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components." The base wall, stud cavity insulation, wall sheathing, air barrier, continuous wall rigid insulation and exterior cladding are components that are required to be to be evaluated as part of this specific assembly test. The basis of design product listed herein is a component of the design test assembly selected by the Commissioner.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by air/vapor barrier manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.
- C. Avoid spillage. Immediately notify City of New York, Commissioner if spillage occurs and start clean-up procedures.
- D. Clean spills and leave area as it was prior to spill.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. System Warranty: Provide the manufacturer's three (3) year system warranty, including the primary air/vapor barrier and installed accessory sealant and membrane materials that fail to achieve air tight and watertight seal, exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Provide Blue Skin VP160 by Henry Company, or approved equal.

2.2 MEMBRANES (BASIS-OF-DESIGN)

- A. Primary water resistive air barrier membrane shall be BlueskinVP 160 manufactured by Henry; a self-adhering air barrier membrane with an engineered film specifically designed to be water resistant and vapor permeable. Membrane shall have the following physical properties:

1. Air Leakage:  $<0.004$  CFM/ft<sup>2</sup> @ 1.57 lbs/ft<sup>2</sup> when tested in accordance with ASTM E 2178.
2. Water Vapor Permeance: 29 perms to ASTM E 96, Method B.
3. Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies: Tested to ASTM E 2357.
4. Resistance to Water Penetration: Pass ICC-ES AC 38.
5. Water Penetration Resistance Around Nails: Pass when tested to AAMA 711-05 and ASTM D 1970 modified.
6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84: Flame Spread Rating of 0 and Smoke Development Classification of 105.
7. Basis Weight: Minimum 160 gm/m<sup>2</sup>, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.
8. Tensile Strength: 40 lbF MD and 29 lbF CD per ASTM D828.
9. Average Dry Breaking Force: 127 lbF MD, and 91 lbF CD per ASTM D 5034.
10. Cyclic and Elongation: Pass at 100 cycles, -29 degrees C (-20 degrees F) per ICC-ES AC 48.

- B. Self-adhering membrane for window sill pan flashings shall be Blueskin<sup>®</sup> SA or LT manufactured by Henry; an SBS modified bitumen, self-adhering sheet membrane which is integrally laminated to a blue polyethylene film. Membrane shall have the following physical properties:

1. Membrane Thickness: 0.040 inches (40 mils).
2. Low Temperature Flexibility: -30 degrees F to ASTM D 146.
3. Elongation: 200% minimum to ASTM D 412 modified.
4. Minimum Puncture Resistance 40lbF to ASTM E 154.



5. Lap Peel Strength 10 lbf/in width to ASTM D 903 180° bend.
  6. Auxiliary tested component of ASTM E 2357 for Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
- C. Self-adhering membrane for all window jambs, headers, door openings, inside and outside corners, and other transitions shall be pre-cut BlueskinVP™ 160 manufactured by Henry; a self-adhering sheet air barrier membrane with an engineered film specifically designed to be water resistant and vapor permeable. Membrane shall have the following physical properties:
1. Air Leakage:  $<0.004$  CFM/ft<sup>2</sup> @ 1.57 lbs/ft<sup>2</sup> when tested in accordance with ASTM E 2178.
  2. Water Vapor Permeance: 29 perms to ASTM E 96, Method B.
  3. Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies: Tested to ASTM E 2357.
  4. Resistance to Water Penetration: Pass ICC-ES AC 38.
  5. Water Penetration Resistance Around Nails: Pass when tested to AAMA 711-05 and ASTM D 1970 modified.
  6. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84: Flame Spread Rating of 0 and Smoke Development Classification of 105.
  7. Basis Weight: Minimum 160 gm/m<sup>2</sup>, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.
  8. Tensile Strength: 40 lbF MD and 29 lbF CD per ASTM D 828.
  9. Average Dry Breaking Force: 127 lbF MD, and 91 lbF CD per ASTM D 5034.
  10. Cyclic and Elongation: Pass at 100 cycles, -29 degrees C (-20 degrees F) per ICC-ES AC 48.

### 2.3 ADHESIVE PRIMERS

- A. Low VOC adhesive primer for primary self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane, self-adhering transition membrane and SBS modified bitumen membranes at all temperatures shall be Blueskin® LVC Adhesive as supplied by Henry; a low V.O.C. quick setting rubber based adhesive. Adhesive Primer shall have the following physical properties:
1. Color: Blue.
  2. Weight: 7.68 lbs/gal.
  3. Solids by Weight: 4 0%.
  4. Max. V.O.C.:  $<240$  grams/liter.



5. Drying Time (initial set): 30 minutes at 50% RH and 70 degrees F.

B. Adhesive Primer for primary self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane, self-adhering transition membrane and SBS modified bitumen membranes in non-regulated VOC areas, at all temperatures shall be Blueskin® Adhesive manufactured by Henry, a synthetic rubber based adhesive, quick setting, having the following physical properties:

1. Color: Blue.
2. Weight: 6 lbs/gal.
3. Solids by Weight: 35%.
4. Drying Time (initial set): 30 minutes.

#### 2.4 PENETRATION AND TERMINATION SEALANT

A. Termination Sealant shall be HE925 BES Sealant manufactured by Henry; a moisture cure, medium modulus polymer modified sealing compound having the following physical properties:

1. Compatible with sheet air barrier, roofing and waterproofing membranes and substrate.
2. Complies with Fed. Spec. TT-S-00230C, Type II, Class A.
3. Complies with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25.
4. Elongation: 450 – 550%.
5. Remains flexible with aging.
6. Seals construction joints up to 1 inch wide.
7. Auxiliary tested component of ASTM E 2357 for Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

A. Examine the areas and conditions where the self-adhering vapor permeable air barrier membrane is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Surfaces must be sound, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants. Fill spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane.



- B. New concrete should be cured for a minimum of 14 days and must be dry before primer for air barrier membranes are applied.
- C. Ensure all preparatory Work is complete prior to applying primary air barrier membrane.
- D. Mechanical fasteners used to secure sheathing boards or penetrate sheathing boards shall be set flush with sheathing and fastened into solid backing.
- E. Precast and concrete block substrates are required to be primed prior to application of self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane.

### 3.3 APPLICATION OF ADHESIVE PRIMER

- A. Required Adhesive Primer for SBS Modified Self-adhering Membranes
  - 1. For the application of SBS modified self-adhering window sill pan flashings, through-wall flashings and other applications of SBS modified self-adhering transition membranes, the substrate needs to be conditioned with applicable adhesive primer.
  - 2. Apply adhesive primer at rate recommended by manufacturer to all areas to receive SBS modified self-adhering sheet membrane as indicated on drawings by roller or spray and allow to dry.
  - 3. The primary self-adhered water resistive air barrier membrane, the surface of the primary self-adhered water resistive air barrier membrane must be primed and allowed to cure prior to the placement of the SBS modified self-adhered membrane.
- B. Adhesive Primer for Primary Water Resistive Air Barrier Membrane.
  - 1. Apply adhesive primer as required depending on substrate type and condition of substrate
  - 2. Where appropriate surface adhesion can not be achieved, prime substrate with specified primer, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal as per Technical Data Sheet.
  - 3. All pre-cast concrete and concrete block substrates are required to be primed prior to application of self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane.
  - 4. Apply adhesive primer as required on surface of Blueskin VP160 where subsequent Blueskin VP160 membrane will overlap such as selvage edge and end laps.

### 3.4 INSTALLTION OF AIR BARRIER SYSTEM

- A. Inside and Outside Corners: Seal inside and outside corners of sheathing boards with a strip of self-adhering vapor permeable membrane extending a minimum of 3 inches on either side of the corner detail.



1. For inside corners, pre-treat the corner with a continuous ½ inch bead of termination sealant.
- B. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
- C. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Ensure minimum 2 inches overlap at all side laps and minimum 3 inches overlap at all end laps of membrane.
- D. Roll all laps and membrane with a counter top roller to ensure seal.

### 3.5 TRANSITION AREAS

- A. Tie-in to structural beams, columns, floor slabs and intermittent floors, parapet curbs, foundation walls, roofing systems and at the interface of dissimilar materials as indicated in drawings with self-adhering water resistive air barrier transition membrane.
  1. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
  2. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Provide minimum 3 inch lap to all substrates.
  3. Ensure minimum 2 inches overlap at all side laps and minimum 3 inches overlap at all end laps of membrane.
  4. Roll all laps and membrane with a counter top roller to ensure seal.

### 3.6 WINDOWS AND ROUGH OPENINGS

- A. Place specified SBS modified self-adhering window sill pan flashing membrane across window sills. Pre-treat inside corners with a bead of termination sealant. Install window sill pan membrane and end dam terminations, seal cuts and terminations with termination sealant.
- B. Wrap jamb of rough openings with specified self-adhering water resistive air barrier transition membrane as detailed.
- C. Extend specified self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane into rough window openings sufficient to provide a connection to interior vapor retarder.
  1. Prime surfaces in an intermittent pattern, at a rate of 200-250 sq ft/gal where appropriate to achieve surface adhesion as per manufacturers' instructions and allow to dry.
  2. Align and position self-adhering transition membrane, remove protective film and press firmly into place. Ensure minimum 2 inches overlap at all side laps and minimum 3 inches overlap at all end laps of membrane.



3. Roll all laps and membrane with a counter top roller to ensure seal.

### 3.7 THROUGH-WALL FLASHING MEMBRANE

- A. Apply through-wall flashing membrane along the base of masonry veneer walls and over shelf angles as detailed.
- B. Prime surfaces and allow to dry, press membrane firmly into place, over lap minimum 2 inches at all end and side laps. Promptly roll all laps and membrane to ensure the seal.
- C. Applications shall form a continuous flashing membrane and shall extend up a minimum of 8 inches up the back-up wall.
- D. Seal the top edge of the membrane where it meets the substrate using termination sealant. Trowel-apply a feathered edge to seal termination to shed water.
- E. Install through-wall flashing membrane 1/2 inch from outside edge of veneer. Provide end-dam flashing as detailed.

### 3.8 PRIMARY WATER RESISTIVE AIR BARRIER

- A. Apply self-adhering water resistive air barrier membrane complete and continuous to substrate in a sequential overlapping weatherboard method starting at bottom or base of wall and working up in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions. Stagger all vertical joints.
  1. Cut to manageable sections, align and position self-adhering membrane to substrate, remove top panel of protective release film and press firmly into place.
  2. Ensure alignment, hold membrane in place to avoid wrinkles and sequentially remove remaining panels of protective film and press firmly into place.
  3. Ensure minimum 3 inch overlap at all ends and 2 inch side laps of subsequent membrane applications.
  4. Pressure roll all membrane surfaces, laps and flashings with a counter top roller or 'J-roller' to ensure appropriate surface adhesion.
  5. At the end of each days work seal the top edge of the membrane where it meets the substrate with termination sealant. Trowel apply a feathered edge to seal termination and shed water.

### 3.9 APPLICATION OF TERMINATION SEALANT

- A. Seal membrane terminations, heads of mechanical fasteners, masonry tie fasteners, around penetrations, duct work, electrical and other apparatus extending through the primary water resistive air barrier membrane and around the perimeter edge of membrane terminations at window and door frames with specified termination sealant.
- B. Seal the leading edge of membrane terminations and reverse laps.



3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Damp substrates must not be inhibited from drying out. Drying time varies depending on temperature and relative humidity. Do not expose the backside of the substrate to moisture or rain.
- B. Cap and protect exposed back-up walls against wet weather conditions during and after application of membrane, including wall openings and construction activity above completed air barrier installations. Protect air barrier membrane from damage and inclement weather during the construction phase.
- C. Water resistive air barrier membrane is not designed for permanent exposure. Good practice calls for covering as soon as possible, not to exceed 90 days.
- D. Regional weather conditions and daytime sunlight temperatures may require the membrane to be protected under the 90 day exposure limit.

3.11 FIELD TESTING

- A. Contractor shall hire testing laboratory to confirm that the system has been tested and passed requirements in accordance ASTM E 783 and ASTM E 1105 for air and water infiltration. Submit test results to Commissioner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 62 00

SHEET METAL WORK

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the sheet metal work, as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not limited to, the following:
1. Stainless steel cap metal flashing.
  2. Stainless steel through wall flashing.
  3. Field fabricating (including bending, cutting, soldering, etc.), if required, of stainless steel flashing.
  4. Stainless steel flashing elsewhere, where metal flashing is indicated on drawings.
  5. Separation of contacting surfaces of dissimilar metals.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Exterior lath and plaster - Section 092400.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this



specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

**B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.
3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS**

**A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.



3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

B. Shop Drawings: Submit, showing all materials, finishes, fastenings, joint details, fabrication, construction and relation to adjoining construction.

C. Samples: Submit 12" x 12" samples of flashing materials and finishes.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

A. The Contractor shall warrant that all Metal Flashing Work executed under this Section will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from date of acceptance of the Project, and he shall remedy any defects in the Metal Flashing Work.

B. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

2. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.

3. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.

4. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

C. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary at no additional cost to the City of New York.



## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### A. Stainless Steel Flashing Materials

1. Stainless Steel Flashing: ASTM A167, Type 304, stainless steel, with 2D finish, dead soft temper, fully annealed, as manufactured by International Nickel Co., Republic Steel Corp., United States Steel, or Washington Steel Corp. Thickness of stainless steel shall be 26 ga.
2. Through wall flashing shall have sawtooth ribs at three (3) inch interval as manufactured by Keystone Flashing Co., or approved equal.
3. Accessories and Fastenings: AISI, Types 302 and 304 stainless steel.
4. Solder: Composed of sixty (60) percent block tin and forty (40) percent pig lead, except that solder at seams exposed to public view shall be eighty (80) percent tin and twenty (20) percent lead.
5. Flux: An acid type flux manufactured specifically for soldering stainless steel, as approved.

- #### B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type non-corrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- #### A. Examine the areas and conditions where sheet metal work is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 METAL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- #### A. Reference Standard: Conform to the requirements of 5<sup>th</sup> Edition of the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors Association (SMACNA) Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
- #### B. General: Fabricate and install metal flashing work in accordance with details and specifications of above Reference Standard, with manufacturer's instructions, and as herein specified, to provide a watertight installation. Apply metal flashing to smooth, even, sound, clean, dry surfaces free from defects. Make provisions to allow for expansion and contraction of metal flashing work. Wherever practicable, shop form all metal flashing work and deliver ready for installation. Form metal flashing work

accurately to required profiles, with flat surfaces, straight edges and corners, free from defects. Fold exposed metal edges back not less than 1/2" and form drip.

- C. Nailing: Confine to sheets twelve (12) inches or less in width. Confine nailing to one edge only, locate nails where concealed. Use No. 12 x 1" long flat headed, annular threaded, Type 302 stainless steel nails for nailing to wood blocking; use one (1) inch long masonry nails for nailing to concrete. Space nails four (4) inches o.c. maximum.
- D. Cleating: Use cleats where sheets are more than twelve (12) inches in width. Space cleats approximately twelve (12) inches o.c.. Cleats two (2) inches wide by three (3) inches long, of the same material and weight as the metal flashing being installed. Secure one end of the cleat with two (2) nails and fold edge back over the nail heads. Lock other end into seam or into folded edge of metal flashing sheets. Pre-tin cleats for soldered seams.
- E. Joining: Join metal flashings with one (1) inch locked and soldered seams except at slip joints. Mallet seams flat and solder full length of seam as specified below.
- F. Soldering: Mechanically clean all metal surfaces to be soldered with steel wool. Clean and pre-tin edges of metal flashing to be soldered before soldering is begun with solder on both sides for a width of not less than 1-1/2". Solder slowly with well heated metal surfaces. Use ample solder. Show not less than one full inch of evenly flowed solder on seam. Seams shall have a liberal amount of flux brushed in before soldering is commenced. Where soldering paste or killed acid is employed as a flux, soldering shall follow immediately after application of the flux. Upon completion of soldering, clean surfaces of all flux.
- G. Slip Joints: Locate slip joints not more than twenty four (24) feet apart and within 2' of corners and changes in direction. Form slip joints as three (3) inch wide joints with cover piece behind flashing, and fill locked ends neatly with sealant.
- H. Cap Flashing: Install over base flashings, in eight (8) to ten (10) foot lengths, lapped six (6) inches at ends. Cap flashing shall be increased longitudinally to produce spring action to hold bottom edge of cap flashing firmly against base flashing. Cap flashing shall lap base flashing at least four (4) inches, with exposed bottom edge at a forty five (45) degree angle downward and folded back on underside at least 1/2" to form drip. Make cap flashing continuous at corners and angles.
- I. Miscellaneous Flashing: Provide all other miscellaneous metal flashing not specifically mentioned herein, but indicated on drawings and/or required to provide a watertight installation.
- J. Separation of Dissimilar Materials: Back paint surfaces of metal flashing in contact with dissimilar metals or with concrete or masonry with bituminous paint.
- K. Reglets



1. Provide watertight reglets in masonry and concrete work to receive cap flashing. Form reglets of stainless steel using same thickness as stainless steel sheet metal specified.
  2. In masonry work use open or closed slot reglets with slot at least one (1) inch deep and 3/16" wide. Provide hook dams or turn-ups for anchoring securely into mortar joints. Insert cap flashing into slot full depth using button punch or lead wedges to lock in place.
  3. In concrete work, use open or closed slot reglets with slot sloped upward at forty five (45) degrees, at least one (1) inch deep and 3/16" wide. For fastening reglets to concrete forms use double-head stainless steel nails spaced twelve (12) inches apart maximum.
  4. Insert cap flashing full depth into reglet slot, and wedge in place using lead strips spaced on twelve (12) inch centers maximum or lead caulking rope. When lead strips are used for continuous caulked reglets, use approved weather-resistant fibrous compounds.
- L. Through-the-Wall Flashings: Provide through-the-wall flashings as shown. Form bonding features so as not to puddle water on surface. Lap cross joints to interlock design pattern at least three (3) inches. Stop typical flashings in mortar joint 1/2" from exterior face of wall.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

SECTION 078123

INTUMESCENT FIREPROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the intumescent fireproofing on fireproofed steel exposed view, as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Intumescent fireproofing for interior application.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Structural steel - Section 051200.
- F. Painting and finishing - Section 099000.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM Test Standards
1. ASTM D 2240 – Durometer Hardness (Shore D Only).
  2. ASTM D 2794.– Impact Resistance.
  3. ASTM D 4060 – Abrasion Resistance.



4. ASTM D 4541 – Bond Strength.
  5. ASTM E 84 – Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  6. ASTM E 119 – Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- B. The Society of Protective Coatings (SSPC):
1. SSPC SP-6: Commercial Blast Cleaning Standard.
- C. Underwriters' Laboratories Inc. (UL):
1. Fire Resistive Directory, Volume 1; Current edition. Classification identified as Mastic and Intumescent Coatings (CDWZ)
  2. UL 263 - Fire Test of Building Construction and Material

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  3. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and



coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

- B. **Product Data:** Submit product data including manufacturer's technical information indicating product performance characteristics, performance and limitation criteria for each product specified herein.
- C. Submit evidence indicating that manufacturer of the intumescent fireproofing coating has reviewed and approved shop primer to be used by the structural steel fabricator; refer to Section 051200, "Structural Steel," for primer description.
- D. Submit evidence indication that manufacturer of the intumescent fireproofing coating has reviewed and approved proposed topcoat.
- E. **Fire Test Evidence:** Submit published third party design listings for fire resistance ratings and product thickness. Include evidence that the fire testing was sponsored by the manufacturer and that the material tested was produced at the manufacturers facility under the supervision of third party certification personnel.
- F. **Installation Instructions:** Submit manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- G. **Installer Qualifications:** Submit applicator's current certification as a manufacturer trained and approved installer.
- H. **Shop Drawings:** Submit plan, section, elevation and perspective drawings as necessary to depict system configuration, design considerations and application procedures.
- I. **Selection Samples:** For each finish product specified, submit samples representing manufacturer's range of available materials, finishes and shapes.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are **REQUIRED** for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Applied fire-resistive materials shall contain recycled content as follows:
    - a. Cementations and/or fibrous fireproofing shall contain a minimum of 15% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).



- b. Metal lath and reinforcing fabric shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content.
  - c. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
2. Applied Fire resistive materials harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 01115, Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable. As per Section 01115, sealants shall not exceed 250 grams per liter.
- B. Material Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products listed in this section.
1. Fire Protection Factory Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the work of this section with a minimum of three years' documented experience, and certified by the material manufacturer.
- C. Fire Protection Installer: Company specializing in installing the work of this section with a minimum of three years' documented experience and certified by the material manufacturer.
- D. Product
1. All products listed in this section must be manufactured under the appropriate follow-up service with each container bearing the certified label (mark).
  2. Intumescent fireproofing shall be a complete system consisting of compatible primer, intumescent fireproofing coating, adhesive, edge sealant and decorative topcoat.
- E. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
1. Before proceeding with the work, the installer will apply the primer, intumescent fireproofing, and decorative top coat to a representative substrate section of 10 square feet in size. Areas will be designated by the Commissioner.



2. Materials must be applied in accordance with the project requirements for fire rating thickness, finish texture and color.
3. The application must be witnessed by the Commissioner's or City of New York's representative and is subject to their approval. Once agreed upon in writing, it serves as a guide for the finished work.
4. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, and sheen are approved by Commissioner.
5. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, sealed, undamaged container with identification label intact. Packaged materials must bear the appropriate labels, seals and designated certification mark for fire resistive ratings.
- B. Storage: Store materials in strict accordance with manufacturers documented instructions.
- C. Documentation: All batch number, product identification and quantities shall be recorded on appropriate QC documents. A copy of the transport document and manufacturers conformance certificate shall be attached to the material delivery QC form.
- D. Store and dispose of hazardous materials, and materials contaminated by hazardous materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Project Environmental Requirements: Substrate and air temperature shall be in accordance with the manufacturers requirements.
  1. Protect work area from windblown dust and rain. Protect adjacent areas from over spray of fireproofing material.
  2. Provide ventilation in areas to receive work of this section during application and minimum 24 hours after application.
- B. Temperature and Humidity Requirements: Maintain air temperature and relative humidity in areas where products will be applied for a time period before during and after application as recommended by manufacturer.



1. Do not install intumescent fire protection system when temperature of substrate and/or surrounding ambient air temperature is below 41 degrees F. Temporary protection and heat shall be maintained at this minimum temperature for 24 hours before, during and 24 hours after material application.
2. Steel substrate temperature shall be a minimum of 5 deg F. above the dew point of the surrounding air for a period of 24 hours prior and during the application of the material.
3. If necessary for job schedule, the Contractor shall provide enclosures and heat to maintain proper temperatures and humidity levels in the application areas.
4. The relative humidity of the application area shall not exceed a maximum of 85 percent for 24 hours prior, during and 24 hours after the application of the material.

#### 1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Sequence and coordinate installation of fireproofing system with Work in other sections which would interfere with efficient fireproofing application.
- B. Do not apply fire protection materials to supporting structural steel until the concrete toppings and/or roofing applications have been completed and are substantially dry.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. At project closeout, provide to City of New York an executed copy of the manufacturer's standard limited warranty against manufacturing defect, outlining its terms, conditions, and exclusions from coverage.
  1. Duration: Minimum two years.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INTUMESCENT FIREPROOF COATING FOR INTERIOR APPLICATION

- A. Acceptable Products
  1. "Interchar 1120" made by International Paint.
  2. "Thermo-Lag Series" made by Carboline.
  3. "Albi Clad TF" made by Albi Mfg. Co.



4. "Cafco Spray Film – WB 5" made by Isolatek International for columns only, and WB-3 for beams, joists and girders.

5. "Promapaint P-3" made by Promat Firestop.

B. Description: A single pack, chlorine-free, water borne intumescent coating site applied over shop applied prime coat (see Section 051200). Coating must meet the following minimum physical requirements:

PROPERTY TEST METHOD VALUE

Dry Applied Density 85 PCF

Hardness ASTM D 2440 60

Compressive Strength ASTM D 695 500 psi

Bond Strength ASTM D 4541 145 psi

Abrasion Resistance ASTM D 4060 0.16 grams loss @1000

cycles

Flame Spread ASTM E 84 Class A

Smoke Developed ASTM E 84 Class A

C. Fireproofing Performance: Provide intumescent fireproofing system, tested by independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM E 119/UL 263, and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:

1. Listed by UL and bearing the UL label.

D. Structural Steel Fire Resistance Rating

1. Fire Resistance Rating: Per Drawings.

E. Accessory Materials: Manufacturer's recommended adhesive and edge sealant.

F. Shop Primer Coating: Refer to Section 051200, "Structural Steel."

G. Decorative Topcoat: Approved by the intumescent fireproofing manufacturer and applied in accordance with the topcoat manufacturer's documented instructions, custom colors as selected by the Commissioner.



1. Provide water based acrylic topcoat equal to "Endura-Tone 1029" by Tnemec with the approval of the intumescent coating manufacturer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. All surfaces to receive the fire protection material must be clean, dry and free of oil, grease, loose mill scale, loose shop primer, dirt, dust or other foreign substances which would impair bond of the fire protection material to the substrate.
- B. Do not commence installation of the fire protection system until the contractor, installer and fire protection manufacturer's representative have examined the surfaces to receive the fire protection and determined the surfaces are acceptable to receive the fire protection material. Commencement of installation is acceptance of substrate.
- C. Verify that substrate and workspace temperature and humidity conditions are in accordance with requirements of this section.
- D. Verify that all clip hangers, piping, ducts, equipment or other items which would interfere with the installation of the factory-manufactured Commissionerural fire protection system are not positioned or installed until installation is complete.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide masking, drop cloths or other suitable coverings to prevent overspray onto surfaces not intended to be affected by Work in this section.
- B. Clean substrate free of dust, dirt, grease or other foreign substances that would impair with the bond of the intumescent fireproofing protection adhesive material.
- C. Grind smooth all weld spatter and defects prior to commencement of fire protection installation and touch-up shop primer in the field using same paint as shop primer.

#### 3.3 APPLICATION (FIELD APPLIED)

- A. Equipment and installation procedures must conform to the manufacturer's installation instructions. The intumescent fireproofing protection material shall be applied at the required dry film thickness to achieve fire resistance rating specified herein.
- B. Install fire protection material only to primed surfaces and in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Refer to Section 051200 for steel shop primer.



- C. Final texture and finish of the intumescent fireproofing must be completed prior to the application of the decorative top coat and in accordance with the Commissioner's approval and approved mock-up samples. Finish shall be level 4 (high end Commissionerural – spray applied; back rolled and sanded smooth).
- D. Apply decorative top coat in accordance with the manufacturer's application instructions. Final color, gloss and finish will be determined and approved by the Commissioner.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The City of New York shall retain the services of an independent testing laboratory to inspect and verify the installation of the intumescent fireproofing material in accordance with the provisions of AWCI Technical Manual 12-B, Standard Practice for the Testing and Inspection of Field Applied Thin-Film Intumescent Fire-Resistive Materials; an Annotated Guide.
- B. The fire protection material inspection must be performed prior to the application of the decorative top coat.
- C. All test results must be made available to all parties at the completion of each pre-designated area and approved prior to the application of top-coat.
- D. Intumescent fireproofing not in compliance with the specification requirements must be corrected prior to the application of the decorative top coat.

#### 3.5 CLEAN UP AND REPAIR

- A. Upon completion of installation, all excess material, overspray and debris must be cleared and removed from the job site.
- B. Remove fire protection materials from surfaces not required to be fireproofed.
- C. All patching and repair to intumescent fireproofing, due to damage by other trades, shall be performed under this section of work. Patching must be performed by the installer of the intumescent fireproofing and applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

INTUMESCENT FIREPROOFING

078123-10



SECTION 07 84 13

FIRESTOPS AND SMOKESEALS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the firestops and smoke seals as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Penetrations through fire-resistance-rated floor and roof construction including both empty openings and openings containing cables, pipes, ducts, conduits, and other penetrating items.
  2. Penetrations through fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions including both empty openings and openings containing cables, pipes, ducts, conduits, and other penetrating items.
  3. Penetrations through smoke barriers and construction enclosing compartmentalized areas involving both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.
  4. Sealant joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
  5. Penetrations at each floor level in shafts and/or stairwells.
  6. Construction joints, including those between top of fire rated walls and underside of floors above.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Joint sealers - Section 079200.



- F. Drywall - Section 092900.
- G. Piping penetrations - Division 22.
- H. Duct penetrations - Division 23.
- I. Cable and conduit penetrations - Division 26.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM E 814 "Standard Method of Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Firestops."
- B. UL 1479, UBC 7-5 (Both are same as A. above).
- C. ASTM E 119 "Standard Method of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials."
- D. UL 263, UBC 7-1 (Both are same as C. above).
- E. UL 2079 "Tests For Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems."
- F. ASTM E 1399 "Test For Dynamic Movement Conditions."
- G. ASTM E 1966 (Same as E. above).
- H. Published Through-Penetration Systems by recognized independent testing agencies.
  - 1. UL Fire Resistance Directory, Volume II of current year.
  - 2. Warnock Hersey Certification Listings, current year.
  - 3. Omega Point Laboratories, current year.
- I. Material must have approval for use in New York City.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.



2. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  3. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Submit manufacturer's product literature for each type of firestop material to be installed. Literature shall indicate product characteristics, typical uses, performance, limitation criteria, test data and indication that products comply with specified requirements.
  - C. Submit shop drawings detailing materials, installation methods, and relationships to adjoining construction for each firestop system, and each kind of construction condition penetrated and kind of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspection agency evidencing compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
    1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, for proposed UL listed (or equal) firestop and smoke seal assembly required for the Project.
  - D. Material Safety Data Sheets: Submit MSDS for each firestop product.
  - E. Submit qualifications of firestop installer, including letter from firestop manufacturer of products proposed to be installed, wherein manufacturer approves or recognizes as trained/ or certifies installer for installation of that manufacturer's products.
  - F. Manufacturer's Letters: For installations or configurations not covered by a UL or Warnock Hersey design number, a recommendation shall be obtained from the manufacturer, in writing, for the specific application.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
    1. Applied fire-resistive materials shall contain recycled content as follows:
      - a. Cementations and/or fibrous fireproofing shall contain a minimum of 15% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).



- b. Metal lath and reinforcing fabric shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content.
  - c. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
2. Applied Fire resistive materials harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 01115, Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable. As per Section 01115, sealants shall not exceed 250 grams per liter.
  4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- B. General: Provide firestopping systems that are produced and installed to resist the spread of fire, and the passage of smoke and other gases.
- C. Firestopping materials shall conform to Flame (F) and Temperature (T) ratings as required by local building code and as tested by nationally accepted test agencies per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479. The F rating must be a minimum of one (1) hour but not less than the fire resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. T rating, when required by code authority, shall be based on measurement of the temperature rise on the penetrating item(s). The fire test shall be conducted with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inches of water column.
- D. Firestopping products shall be asbestos free and free of any PCBs.
- E. Do not use any product containing solvents or that requires hazardous waste disposal.
- F. Do not use firestop products which after curing, dissolve in water.
- G. Do not use firestop products that contain ceramic fibers.
- H. Firestopping Installer Qualifications: Firestop application shall be performed by a single firestopping contractor who specializes in the installation of firestop systems, whose personnel to be utilized have received specific training and certification or approval from the proposed respective firestop manufacturer, and firestop installer shall have a minimum of three years experience (under present company name) installing firestop systems of the type herein specified.
- I. Mock-Up: Prepare job site mock-ups of each typical Firestop System proposed for use in the project. Approved mock-ups will be left in place as part of the finished project and will constitute the quality standard for the remaining work.
- J. For firestopping exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions.



1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches or more in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting the floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means.
3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original unopened containers with manufacturer's name, product identification, lot numbers, UL or Warnock Hersey labels, and mixing and installation instructions, as applicable.
- B. Store materials in the original, unopened containers or packages, and under conditions recommended by manufacturer.
- C. All firestop materials shall be installed prior to expiration of shelf life.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing conditions and substrates before starting work
- B. Do not use materials that contain solvents, show sign of damage or are beyond their shelf life.
- C. During installation, provide masking and drop cloths as needed to prevent firestopping products from contaminating any adjacent surfaces.
- D. Conform to ventilation requirements if required by manufacturer's installation instructions or Material Safety Data Sheet.
- E. Weather Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of firestop products when temperatures are in excess or below the manufacturer's recommendations.
- F. Schedule installation of firestop products after completion of penetrating item installation but prior to covering or concealing of openings.
- G. Coordinate this work as required with work of other trades.

1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Convene a pre-installation conference to establish procedures to maintain optimum working conditions and to coordinate this work with related and adjacent work.



- B. Sequence: Perform work of this and other sections in proper sequence to prevent damage to the firestop systems and to ensure that their installation will occur prior to enclosing or concealing work.
- C. Install all firestop systems after voids and joints are prepared sufficiently to accept the applicable firestop system.
- D. Do not cover firestop systems until they have been properly inspected and accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Tremco
  - 2. Bio-Fireshield
  - 3. 3M
  - 4. Specified Technologies Inc.
  - 5. U.S. Gypsum Co.
  - 6. Nelson
  - 7. Hilti, Inc.
  - 8. Grace Flame Safe

### 2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide firestopping composed of components that are compatible with each other, the substrates forming openings, and the items, if any, penetrating the firestopping under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by firestopping manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials. Use only components specified by the firestopping manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for the designated fire-resistance-rated systems. Accessories include but are not limited to the following items:
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials including the following:
    - a. Semirefractory fiber (mineral wool) insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.



- d. Joint fillers for joint sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.
- C. Applications: Provide firestopping systems composed of materials specified in this Section that comply with system performance and other requirements.
- D. Smoke seals at top of partitions shall be flexible to allow for partition deflection.
- 2.3 **FILL MATERIALS FOR THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEMS**
- A. Endothermic, Latex Compound Sealant: Single-component, endothermic, latex formulation.
  - B. Intumescent, Latex Sealant: Single-component, Intumescent, latex formulation.
  - C. Intumescent Putty: Non-hardening, dielectric, water-resistant putty containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
  - D. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component, elastomeric sheet with aluminum or polyethylene foil on one side.
  - E. Job-Mixed Vinyl Compound: Prepackaged vinyl-based powder product for mixing with water at Project site to produce a paintable compound, passing ASTM E 136, with flame-spread and smoke-developed ratings of zero per ASTM E 84.
  - F. Mortar: Prepackaged dry mix composed of a blend of inorganic binders, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a non-shrinking, homogeneous mortar.
  - G. Pillows/Bags: Re-usable, heat-expanding pillows/bags composed of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents and fire-retardant additives.
  - H. Silicone Foam: Two-component, silicone-based liquid elastomer that, when mixed, expands and cures in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
  - I. Silicone Sealant: Moisture-curing, single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealant of grade indicated below:
    1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces and non-sag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a non-slumping/gunnable sealant, unless firestop system limits use to non-sag grade for both opening conditions.



#### 2.4 FIRE-RESISTIVE ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

- A. **Elastomeric Sealant Standard:** Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealant of base polymer indicated that complies with ASTM C 920 requirements, including those referenced for Type, Grade, Class, and Uses, and requirements specified in this Section applicable to fire-resistive joint sealants.
  - 1. **Sealant Colors:** Color of exposed joint sealants as selected by the Commissioner.
- B. **Single-Component, Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:** Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; exposure-related Use NT, and joint-substrate-related Uses M, G, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.
  - 1. **Additional Movement Capability:** Provide sealant with the capability to withstand 33 percent movement in both extension and compression for a total of 66 percent movement.
- C. **Multi-Component, Non-Sag, Urethane Sealant:** Type M; Grade NS; Class 25; exposure-related Use NT, and joint-substrate-related Uses M, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.
  - 1. **Additional Movement Capability:** Provide sealant with the capability to withstand 40 percent movement in extension and 25 percent in compression for a total of 65 percent movement in joint width existing at time of installation, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C 719, and remain in compliance with other requirements of ASTM C 920 for uses indicated.
- D. **Single-Component, Non-Sag, Urethane Sealant:** Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; and Uses NT, M, A, and (as applicable to joint substrates indicated) O.

#### 2.5 MINERAL FIBER/CERAMIC WOOL NON-COMBUSTIBLE INSULATION (FIRE SAFING)

- A. Provide min. 4 pcf Thermafiber as manufactured by Thermafiber Co., min. 4 pcf FBX Safing Insulation as manufactured by Fibrex, or approved equal to suit conditions and to comply with fire resistance and firestop manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Material shall be classified non-combustible per ASTM E 119.

#### 2.6 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing prior to application, comply with firestopping manufacturer's directions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce firestopping products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.



### PART-III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configuration, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of firestopping. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings and joints immediately prior to installing firestopping to comply with recommendations of firestopping manufacturer and the following requirements:
1. Remove all foreign materials from surfaces of opening and joint substrates and from penetrating items that could interfere with adhesion of firestopping.
  2. Clean opening and joint substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  3. Remove laitance and form release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended by firestopping manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed upon completion of work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestopping materials. Remove tape as soon as it is possible to do so without disturbing seal of firestopping with substrates.

#### 3.3 CONDITIONS REQUIRING FIRESTOPPING

##### A. Interior Walls and Partitions

1. Construction joints between top of fire rated walls and underside of floors above, shall be firestopped.
2. Firestop system installed shall have been tested by either UL or Omega Point, including exposure to hose stream test and including for use with steel fluted deck floor assemblies.
3. Firestop system used shall allow for deflection of floor above.

##### B. Penetrations

1. Penetrations include conduit, cable, wire, pipe, duct, or other elements which pass through one or both outer surfaces of a fire rated floor, wall, or partition.



2. Except for floors on grade, where a penetration occurs through a structural floor or roof and a space would otherwise remain open between the surfaces of the penetration and the edge of the adjoining structural floor or roof, provide firestopping to fill such spaces in accordance with ASTM E 814.
  3. These requirements for penetrations shall apply whether or not sleeves have been provided, and whether or not penetrations are to be equipped with escutcheons or other trim. If penetrations are sleeved, firestop annular space, if any, between sleeve and wall of opening.
- C. Provide firestopping to fill miscellaneous voids and openings in fire rated construction in a manner essentially the same as specified herein before.

#### 3.4 INSTALLING THROUGH PENETRATION FIRESTOPS

- A. General: Comply with the through penetrations firestop manufacturer's installation instructions and drawings pertaining to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/damming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce the cross sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings of designated through-penetration firestop systems. After installing fill materials, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for through penetration firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
1. Completely fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items.
  2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

#### 3.5 INSTALLING FIRE RESISTIVE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1193, and with the sealant manufacturer's installation instructions and drawings pertaining to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install joint fillers to provide support of sealants during application and at position required to produce the cross sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability and develop fire resistance rating required.
- C. Install sealants by proven techniques that result in sealants directly contacting and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration, and providing uniform, cross sectional shapes and depths relative to joint



width that optimum sealant movement capability. Install sealants at the same time joint fillers are installed.

- D. Tool no sag sealants immediately after sealant application and prior to the time skinning or curing begins. Form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated or required to produce fire resistance rating, as well as to eliminate air pockets, and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealants with sides of joint. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joint. Do not use tooling agents that discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces or are not approved by sealant manufacturer.

### 3.6 INSTALLING FIRESAFING INSULATION

- A. Install fire safing insulation utilizing welded or screw applied galvanized steel impaling pins and retaining clips; space clips or pins 24" o.c. maximum.
- B. Completely fill voids in areas where safing insulation is required. At spandrel conditions/floor edges, depth of insulation top to bottom shall be at least four (4) inches.
- C. Cover top of all safing insulation with firestop sealant or spray.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting agency employed and paid by the City of New York will examine completed firestopping to determine, in general, if it is being installed in compliance with requirements.
- B. Inspecting agency will report observations promptly and in writing to Contractor, the City of New York and the Commissioner.
- C. Do not proceed to enclose firestopping with other construction until reports of examinations are issued.
- D. Where deficiencies are found, Contractor must repair or replace firestopping so that it complies with requirements.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials and sealants adjacent to openings and joints as work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of firestopping products and of products in which opening and joints occur.
- B. Protect firestopping during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances or from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so that they are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated firestopping immediately and install new materials to product firestopping complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 92 00

JOINT SEALERS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the joint sealers work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not necessarily limited to the following:
1. Interior wall joints not specified to be sealed in other Sections of work, including caulking to fill between architectural woodwork and any wall, floor and/or ceiling imperfections.
  2. Control and expansion joints in walls.
  3. Joints at wall penetrations.
  4. Joints between items of equipment and other construction.
  5. All other joints required to be sealed to provide a positive barrier against penetration of air and moisture.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Firestop sealants - Section 078413.
- F. Glazing sealants - Section 088000.
- G. Sealant within drywall construction - Section 092900.



H. Sealant at tile work - Section 093000.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
1. Adhesives or sealants used for interior work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  2. Products extracted and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  3. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. **Qualification of Installers:** Use only personnel who are thoroughly familiar, skilled and specially trained in the techniques of sealant work, and who are completely familiar with the published recommendations of the sealant manufacturer.
- D. **Pre-Construction Field Adhesion Testing:** Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to project joint substrates according to the method in ASTM C 794 and C 1521 that is appropriate for the types of Project joints.
- E. Perform testing per ASTM C 1248 on interior sealants to determine if sealants or primers will stain adjacent surfaces. No sealant work shall start until results of these tests have been submitted to the Commissioner and he has given his written approval to proceed with the work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:



- a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing all joint conditions, indicating relation of adjacent materials, all sealant materials (sealant, bond breakers, backing, primers, etc.), and method of installation.
1. Submit joint sizing calculations certifying that movement capability of sealant is not being exceeded.
- C. Samples: Submit the following:
1. Color samples of sealants, submit physical samples (not color chart).
  2. Sealant bond breaker and joint backing.
- D. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information and installation instructions for:
1. Sealant materials, indicating that material meets standards specified herein.
  2. Backing rods.
- E. Submit manufacturer's certification as required by Article 1.6 herein.
- F. Submit results of testing required in Article 1.4 herein.



1.6 MANUFACTURER'S RESPONSIBILITY AND CERTIFICATION

- A. Contractor shall require sealant manufacturer to review the Project joint conditions and details for this Section of the work. Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner written certification from the sealant manufacturer that the materials supplied are compatible with adjacent materials and backing, that the materials will properly perform to provide permanent watertight, airtight or vaportight seals (as applicable), and that materials supplied meet specified performance requirements.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Temperature: Install all work of this Section when air temperature is above forty (40) degrees F. and below eighty (80) degrees F., unless manufacturer submits written instructions permitting sealant use outside of this temperature range.
- B. Moisture: Do not apply work of this Section on surfaces which are wet, damp, or have frost.

1.8 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section, before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.
- C. Storage
  - 1. Store sealant materials and equipment under conditions recommended by their manufacturer.
  - 2. Do not use materials stored for a period of time exceeding the maximum recommended shelf life of the material.
  - 3. Material shall be stored in unopened containers with manufacturers' name, batch number and date when shelf life expires.

1.9 GUARANTEE

- A. Provide a written, notarized guarantee from the manufacturer stating that the applied sealants shall show no material failure for a period of ten (10) years.
- B. Contractor to provide a written, notarized, guarantee stating that the applied sealants shall show no failure due to improper installation for a period of two (2) years.
- C. Guarantee shall be in a form acceptable to the City of New York and executed by an authorized individual.

- D. Include in guarantee provision, agreement to repair and/or replace, at Contractor's expense, sealant defects which develop during guarantee period, because of faulty labor and/or materials.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Interior Sealant: Provide a one (1) part acrylic based sealant conforming to ASTM C 834, equal to "AC-20+ Silicone" made by Pecora or equal made by Tremco.
- B. Colors: Colors selected from manufacturer's standard selection.

### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Back-Up Materials: Provide back-up materials and preformed joint fillers, non-staining, non-absorbent, compatible with sealant and primer, and of a resilient nature, equal to "HBR" made by Nomaco Inc. or approved equal, twenty-five (25) percent wider than joint width. Materials impregnated with oil, bitumen or similar materials shall not be used. Provide back-up materials only as recommended by sealant manufacturer in writing.
- B. Provide bond breakers, where required, of polyethylene tape as recommended by manufacturer of sealant.
- C. Provide primers recommended by the sealant manufacturer for each material to receive sealant.
- D. Provide solvent, cleaning agents and other accessory materials as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
- E. Materials shall be delivered to the job in sealed containers with manufacturer's original labels attached. Materials shall be used per manufacturer's printed instructions.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where joint sealers are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with instructions and recommendations of the manufacturer and in accordance with ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as



applicable to materials, applications and conditions required by this Project where more stringent installation requirements are specified herein, such requirements shall apply.

**B. Sample Section of Sealant**

1. During sealant installation work in exterior wall, the manufacturer of sealant shall send his representative to the site, under whose supervision a section of the wall (used as "control section") shall be completed for purposes of determining performance characteristics of sealant in joints. Commissioner shall be informed of time and place of such installation of control section.
2. Control section shall be installed according to specification given herein and shall not be considered as acceptable until written acceptance is provided by the Commissioner.
3. Accepted control section shall be standard to which all other sealant work must conform.

**C. Supervision:** The Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner written certification from the sealant manufacturer that the applicators have been instructed in the proper application of their materials. The Contractor shall use only skilled and experienced workmen for installation of sealant.

**D.** Apply sealant under pressure with a hand or power actuated gun or other appropriate means. Gun shall have nozzle of proper size and provide sufficient pressure to completely fill joints as detailed. Neatly point or tool joint to provide the contour as indicated on the drawings.

**E. Preparation and Application**

1. Thoroughly clean all joints, removing all foreign matter such as dust, oil, grease, water, surface dirt and frost. Sealant must be applied to the base surface. Previously applied film must be entirely removed.
2. Stone, masonry and concrete surfaces to receive sealant shall be cleaned where necessary by grinding, water blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or combination of these methods as required to provide a clean, sound base surface for sealant adhesion.
  - a. Do not use any acid or other material which might stain surfaces.
  - b. Remove laitance by grinding or mechanical abrading.
  - c. Remove loose particles present or resulting from grinding, abrading, or blast cleaning by blowing out joints with compressed air, oil and water free, or vacuuming joints prior to application of primer or sealant.
3. Clean non-porous surfaces such as metal and glass chemically. Remove protective coatings on metallic surfaces by solvent that leaves no residue and is compatible with sealant. Use solvent and wipe dry with clean, dry lint free paper towels. Do



- not allow solvent to air dry without wiping. Clean joint areas protected with masking tape or strippable films as above after removal of tape film.
4. Do not seal joints until they are in compliance with drawings, or meet with the control section standard.
  5. Joint Size and Sealant Size: Joints to receive sealant shall be at least 1/4" wide. In joint 1/4" to 3/8" wide, sealant shall be 1/4" deep. In joints wider than 3/8" and up to 1" wide, sealant depth shall be one half the joint width. For joints wider than 1", sealant depth shall be as recommended by the sealant manufacturer. Depth of joint is defined as distance from outside face of joint to closest point of the filler.
  6. Primer: Thoroughly clean joints and apply primer to all surfaces that will receive sealant. Apply primer on clean, dry surfaces, and prior to installation of joint backing. Completely wet both inner faces of the joint with primer. Mask adjacent surfaces of joint with non-staining masking tape prior to priming. Apply primer with clean brush and only when temperature is above 45 deg. F.
  7. Joint Backing: In joints where depth of joint exceeds required depth of sealant, install joint backing (after primer is dry) in joints to provide backing and proper joint shape for sealant. Proper shape for sealant is a very slight "hourglass" shape, with back and front face having slight concave curvature. Use special blunt T-shaped tool or roller to install joint backing to the proper and uniform depth required for the sealant. Joint backing shall be installed with approximately twenty-five (25) percent compressions. Do not stretch, twist, braid, puncture, or tear joint backing. Butt joint backing at intersections.
  8. Bond Breaker: Install bond breaker smoothly over joint backing so that sealant adheres only to the sides of the joint and not backing.
  9. Sealant Application: Apply sealant in accordance with the manufacturer's application manual and manufacturer's instructions, using hand guns or pressure equipment, on clean, dry, properly prepared substrates, completely filling joints to eliminate air pockets and voids. Mask adjacent surfaces of joint with non-staining masking tape. Force sealant into joint in front of the tip of the "caulking gun" (not pulled after it) and force sealant against sides to make uniform contact with sides of joint and to prevent entrapped air or pulling of sealant off of sides. Fill sealant space solid with sealant.
  10. Tooling: Tool exposed joints to form smooth and uniform beds, with slightly concave surface conforming to joint configuration per Figure 4A in ASTM C 1193. Finished joints shall be straight, uniform, smooth and neatly finished. Remove masking tape immediately after tooling of sealant and before sealant face starts to "skin" over. Neatly remove any excess sealant from adjacent surfaces of joint, leaving the work in a neat, clean condition.
  11. Replace sealant which is damaged during construction process.
- END OF SECTION 07 92 00



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

JOINT SEALERS  
07 92 00 - 8

SECTION 08 11 13

STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the steel doors and frames work as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Interior hollow metal doors and frames for fire rated and unrated door openings.
  2. Trimmed openings.
  3. Interior hollow metal vision panels.
  4. Preparation of metal doors and frames to receive finish hardware, including reinforcements, drilling and tapping necessary.
  5. Preparation of hollow metal doors to receive glazing where required.
  6. Furnishing anchors for building into masonry and drywall.
  7. Factory prime painting of work of this Section.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Installation of doors and frames - Section 062000.
- F. Wood Doors - Section 081416.
- G. Hardware - Section 087000.



- H. Glass and glazing - Section 088000.
- I. Gypsum drywall - Section 092900.
- J. Painting - Section 099000.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s) and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  - 2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  - 3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, compliance with standards referenced herein, sound and fire-resistance ratings, and finishes for each type of door and frame specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation of doors and frames. Include details of each frame type, elevations of door design types, conditions at openings, details of construction, reinforcement for surface applied hardware, dimensions of profiles and hardware preparation, location and installation requirements of door and frame

hardware and reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessories.

D. Door Schedule: Submit schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings.

1. Coordinate glazing frames and stops with glass and glazing requirements.

E. Oversize Construction Certification: For door assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies, submit certification of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that each door and frame assembly has been constructed to comply with design, materials, and construction equivalent to requirements for labeled construction.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Structural metal members (and/or steel deck, steel tubing, etc.) shall contain a minimum of 75% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.

2. Metal members (and steel deck, steel tubing, framing, metal stairs, etc.) fabricated within, and containing raw materials extracted within, 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements above.

3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.

4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.



- C. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing custom steel doors and frames similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- E. **Source Limitations:** Obtain custom steel doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.
- F. **Fire-Rated Door and Frame Assemblies:** Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated.
  - 1. **Test Pressure:** Test according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C. After 5 minutes into the test, the neutral pressure level in furnace shall be established at 40" or less above the sill.
  - 2. **Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies:** For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-protection-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 3. **Temperature-Rise Rating:** At exit enclosures, provide doors that have a temperature-rise rating as required by prevailing Building Code in 30 minutes of fire exposure.
- G. **Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies:** Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9. Label each individual glazed lite.
- H. **Smoke-Control Door Assemblies:** Comply with NFPA 105 or UL 1784.
- I. For projects located in New York City, fire rated assemblies must have M.E.A. approval with UL label.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver doors and frames palleted, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
- B. Inspect doors and frames, on delivery, for damage. Minor damage may be repaired provided refinished items match new work and are approved by Commissioner; otherwise, remove and replace damaged items as directed.
- C. Store doors and frames under cover at building site. Conform to the requirements of ANSI A 250-11-2001 for site storage unless more stringent requirements are noted herein. Place units on minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Avoid using nonvented

plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber. If wrappers on doors become wet, remove cartons immediately. Provide minimum 1/4-inch spaces between stacked doors to permit air circulation.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Fabricate hollow metal units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles. Weld exposed joints continuously, grind, dress, and make smooth, flush and invisible. Metallic filler to conceal manufacturing defects is not acceptable.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide countersunk flat Phillips or Jackson heads for exposed screws and bolts.
- C. Prepare hollow metal units to receive finish hardware, including cutouts, reinforcing, drilling and tapping in accordance with Finish Hardware Schedule and templates provided by hardware suppliers. Comply with applicable requirements of ANSI A115 "Specifications for Door and Frame Preparation for Hardware."
- D. Locate finish hardware as shown on final shop drawings in accordance with locations noted herein.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide products manufactured by Steelcraft, Curries, Ceco Door Products, or approved equal meeting these specifications.

### 2.3 FRAMES

- A. Materials
  - 1. Frames for interior openings shall be either commercial grade cold-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1008/A, Type B or commercial grade hot-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1011/A, Commercial Steel, Type B. Metal thickness shall be not less than sixteen (16) ga. for frames in openings 4'-0" or less in width; not less than fourteen (14) ga. for frames in openings over 4'-0" in width.
- B. Design and Construction
  - 1. All frames shall be welded units with integral trim, of the sizes and shapes shown on approved shop drawings. Knocked down frames are not permitted.
  - 2. All finished work shall be strong and rigid, neat in appearance, square, true and free of defects, warp or buckle. Molded members shall be clean cut, straight and of uniform profile throughout their lengths.
  - 3. Jamb depths, trim, profile and backbends shall be as shown on drawings.



- a. Frames at drywall partitions shall be formed with double return backbends to prevent cutting into drywall surface.
4. Welded frames shall have corners mitered and reinforced and faces of welded frames shall be continuously back welded full depth and width of frame conforming to NAAMM Standard HMMA-820; face joints shall be hairline.
5. Minimum depth of stops shall be 5/8". Cut-off (Sanitary or hospital type) stops, where scheduled, shall be capped at forty-five (45) degrees at heights shown on drawings, and all jamb joints below cut-off stops shall be ground and filed smooth, making them imperceptible. Do not cut off stops on frames for soundproof, light proof or lead-lined doors.
6. Frames for multiple or special openings shall have mullion and/or rail members which are closed tubular shapes having no visible seams or joints. All joints between faces of abutting members shall be securely welded and finished smooth.
  - a. Mullions shall have 16 ga. internal steel stiffeners welded not less than 4" o.c.
7. Hardware Reinforcements
  - a. Frames shall be mortised, reinforced, drilled and tapped at the factory for fully-templated mortised hardware only, in accordance with approved hardware schedule and templates provided by the hardware supplier. Where surface-mounted hardware is to be applied, frames shall have reinforcing plates.
  - b. Minimum thickness of hardware reinforcing plates shall be as follows:
    - 1). Hinge and pivot reinforcements - seven (7) ga., 1-1/4" x 10" minimum size.
    - 2). Strike reinforcements - twelve (12) gauge
    - 3). Flush bolt reinforcements - twelve (12) gauge
    - 4). Closer reinforcements - twelve (12) gauge
    - 5). Reinforcements for surface mounted hardware - twelve (12) gauge.
8. Floor Anchors
  - a. Provide adjustable floor anchors, providing not less than two (2) inch height adjustment.
  - b. Minimum thickness of floor anchors shall be fourteen (14) gauge.
9. Jamb Anchors
  - a. Frames for installation in masonry walls shall be provided with adjustable jamb anchors of the wire type. Anchors shall be not less than 0.156"



- diameter steel wire. The number of anchors provided on each jamb shall be as follows:
- 1). Frames up to 7'-6" height - three (3) anchors.
  - 2). Frames 7'-6" to 8'-0" height - four (4) anchors.
  - 3). Frames over 8'-0" height - one (1) anchor for each 2'-0" or fraction thereof in height.
- b. Frames for installation in stud partitions shall be provided with steel anchors of suitable design, not less than eighteen (18) gauge thickness, securely welded inside each jamb as follows:
- 1). Frames up to 7'-6" height - four (4) anchors.
  - 2). Frames 7'-6" to 8'-0" height - five (5) anchors.
  - 3). Frames over 8'-0" height - five (5) anchors plus one additional for each 2'-0" or fraction thereof over 8'-0".
- c. Knock-down frames for installation in stud partitions that have drywall panels in place prior to installation of door frames shall have compression anchors at each jamb placed 4" below head of frame and attached to steel stud, bottom of frame shall have 16 ga. adjustable steel clip anchors fastened to stud runner.
- 1). Where height of frame is 9'-0" or greater, provide two (2) compression anchors at each jamb spaced 4" apart starting 4" below head of frame.
- d. Frames to be anchored to previously placed concrete or masonry shall be provided with minimum 3/8" concealed bolts set into expansion shields or inserts at six (6) inches from top and bottom and twenty-four (24) inches o.c. Reinforce frames at anchor locations with sixteen (16) gauge sheet steel stiffeners welded to frame at each anchor.
10. Frames for installation in masonry wall openings more than 4'-0" in width shall have an angle or channel stiffener factory welded into the head. Such stiffeners shall be not less than twelve (12) gauge steel and not longer than the opening width, and shall not be used as lintels or load bearing members.
  11. Dust cover boxes (or mortar guards) of not thinner than twenty-six (26) gauge steel shall be provided at all hardware mortises on frames to be set in masonry or plaster partitions.
  12. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 3/8" thick x 2" wide steel.
  13. All frames shall be provided with a steel spreader temporarily attached to the feet of both jambs to serve as a brace during shipping and handling.
  14. Loose glazing stops shall be of cold rolled steel, not less than twenty (20) gauge thickness, butted at corner joints and secured to the frame with countersunk cadmium-or zinc-plated screws. Interior frames may be provided with snap-on glazing stops.



15. Except on weatherstripped frames, drill stops to receive three (3) silencers on strike jambs of single door frames and two (2) silencers on heads of double-door frames.
- C. Finish: After fabrication, all tool marks and surface imperfections shall be removed, and exposed faces of all welded joints shall be dressed smooth. Frames shall then be chemically treated to insure maximum paint adhesion and shall be coated on all surfaces with one coat of rust-inhibitive baked-on alkyd primer standard with the manufacturer which is fully cured before shipment to a dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
  1. Frames set in masonry walls shall be grouted in as described in Section 042000 - Unit Masonry. These frames shall have surfaces in contact with grout shop coated with epoxy coating equal to Series 27 FC Typoxy made by Tnemec or approved equal spray applied at 4 to 6 mils, passing NFPA 101, Class A for smoke and flame spread, tested per ASTM E 84.

#### 2.4 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. Materials: Doors shall be made of commercial quality, level, cold rolled steel conforming to ASTM A 1008/A, Commercial Steel, Type B and free of scale, pitting or other surface defects. Face sheets for interior doors shall be not less than eighteen (18) gauge.
- B. Design and Construction
  1. All doors shall be of the types and sizes shown on the approved shop drawings, and shall be fully welded seamless construction with no visible seams or joints on their faces or vertical edges. Minimum door thickness shall be 1-3/4".
  2. All doors shall be strong, rigid and neat in appearance, free from warpage or buckles. Corner bends shall be true and straight and of minimum radius for the gauge of metal used.
  3. Face sheets shall be stiffened by continuous vertical formed steel sections spanning the full thickness of the interior space between door faces. These stiffeners shall be not less than twenty two (22) gauge spaced not more than six (6) inches apart and securely attached to face sheets by spot welds not more than five (5) inches o.c. Spaces between stiffeners shall be sound deadened and thermal insulated the full height of the door with an inorganic non-combustible batt type material.
  4. Door faces shall be joined at their vertical edges by a continuous weld extending the full height of the door. All such welds shall be ground, filled and dressed smooth to make them invisible and provide a smooth flush surface.
  5. Top and bottom edges of all doors shall be closed with a continuous recessed steel channel not less than fourteen (14) gauge, extending the full width of the door and spot welded to both faces.
  6. Edge profiles shall be provided on both vertical edges of doors as follows:



- a. Single-acting swing doors - beveled 1/8" in two (2) inches.
- b. Double acting swing doors - rounded on 2-1/8" radius.
- c. No square edge doors permitted.

7. Hardware Reinforcements

- a. Doors shall be mortised, reinforced, drilled and tapped at the factory for fully templated hardware only in accord with the approved hardware schedule and templates provided by the hardware supplier. Where surface-mounted hardware (or hardware, the interrelation of which is to be adjusted upon installation - such as top and bottom pivots, floor closers, etc.) is to be applied, doors shall have reinforcing plates.
- b. Minimum gauges for hardware reinforcing plates shall be as follows:
  - 1). Hinge and pivot reinforcement - seven (7) gauge.
  - 2). Reinforcement for lock face, flush bolts, concealed holders, concealed or surface mounted closers - twelve (12) gauge.
  - 3). Reinforcements for all other surface mounted hardware - sixteen (16) gauge.

8. Glass Moldings and Stops

- a. Where specified or scheduled, doors shall be provided with hollow metal moldings to secure glazing by others in accordance with glass opening sizes shown on drawings.
- b. Fixed moldings shall be securely welded to the door on the security side.
- c. Loose stops shall be not less than twenty (20) gauge steel, with mitered corner joints, secured to the framed opening by cadmium or zinc-coated countersunk screws spaced eight (8) inches o.c. Snap-on attachments will not be permitted. Stops shall be flush with face of door.

C. Finish: After fabrication, all tool marks and surface imperfections shall be dressed, filled and sanded as required to make all faces and vertical edges smooth, level and free of all irregularities. Doors shall then be chemically treated to insure maximum paint adhesion and shall be coated, on all exposed surfaces, with manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive alkyd primer as specified for frames which shall be fully cured before shipment.

D. Flatness: Doors shall maintain a flatness tolerance of 1/16" maximum, in any direction, including in a diagonal direction.

2.5 LABELED DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Labeled doors and frames shall be provided for those openings requiring fire protection ratings as scheduled on drawings. Such doors and frames shall be labeled by Underwriters' Laboratories or other nationally recognized agency having a factory inspection service.



- B. If any door or frame specified by the Commissioner to be fire-rated cannot qualify for appropriate labeling because of its design, size, hardware or any other reason, the Commissioner shall be so advised before fabricating work on that item is started.

## 2.6 HARDWARE LOCATIONS

- A. The location of hardware on doors and frames shall be as noted in "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" of the Door Hardware Institute unless otherwise required by prevailing Handicap Codes.

## 2.7 CLEARANCES

- A. Fabricate doors and frames to meet edge clearances as follows:
  - 1. Jamb and Head: 1/8" plus or minus 1/16".
  - 2. Meeting Edges, Pairs of Doors: 1/8" Plus or minus 1/16".
  - 3. Bottom: 3/4", if no threshold.
  - 4. Bottom: 3/8", at threshold.
- B. Fire rated doors shall have clearances as required by NFPA 80.

## 2.8 MANUFACTURING TOLERANCES

- A. Manufacturing tolerance shall be maintained within the limits given in HMMA 841 of ANSI/NAAMM, current edition.

## 2.9 PREPARATION FOR FINISH HARDWARE

- A. Prepare door and frames to receive hardware:
  - 1. Hardware supplier shall furnish hollow metal manufacturer approved hardware schedule, hardware templates, and samples of physical hardware where necessary to insure correct fitting and installation.
  - 2. Preparation includes sinkages and cut-outs for mortise and concealed hardware.
- B. Provide reinforcements for both concealed and surface applied hardware:
  - 1. Drill and tap mortise reinforcements at factory, using templates.
  - 2. Install reinforcements with concealed connections designed to develop full strength of reinforcements.

2.10 REJECTION

- A. Hollow metal frames or doors which are defective, have hardware cutouts of improper size or location, or which prevent proper installation of doors, hardware or work of other trades, shall be removed and replaced with new at no cost.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where steel doors and frames are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Section 062000 for installation procedures for all work of this Section.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

SECTION 08 14 16

WOOD DOORS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the wood doors as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not limited to, the following:
1. Solid core flush wood doors.
  2. Acoustically-rated flush wood doors.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Installation of wood doors - Section 062000.
- F. Wood door frames - Section 064023.
- G. Hollow metal frames - Section 081113.
- H. Hardware - Section 087000.
- I. Glass and Glazing - Section 088000.
- J. Field painting - Section 099000.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:



1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the wood product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content
    - b. Location in which wood materials were manufactured or fabricated and location from which wood was harvested
    - c. For wood products, indication (Y/N) of whether the supplied product(s) are certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC).
    - d. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment. Include total cost for all wood products and itemized costs for all FSC-certified wood products.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  5. Documentation that all composite wood and agrifiber products do not contain added urea-formaldehyde resins.
  6. Chain of custody certificate to document FSC-certification
- B. Product Data: Submit door manufacturer's product data, specifications and installation instructions for each type of wood door.
1. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings.
  2. Include factory finish specifications.
  3. Include certifications to show compliance with specifications.
  4. Include certification to show compliance with AWI and WDMA requirements specified herein.



- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings indicating location and size of each door, elevation of each kind of door, details of construction, location and extent of hardware blocking, acoustical ratings, requirements for finishing and other pertinent data.
1. Include requirements for veneer matching.
- D. Submit the following
1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in the finished work.
- E. Submit the following for acoustically-rated doors:
1. Submit certified test reports indicating that the acoustical performance of the door meets the Sound Transmission Class (STC) performance as indicated. Test data shall be produced from an accredited independent acoustical laboratory which is a member of NVLAP (National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program). Reports shall indicate that the test was performed on the doors and frames of the type to be supplied, in conformance with the requirements of test method ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 413. Earlier test reports will not be acceptable. The test results shall be representative of the performance of the proposed Sound Control Door assembly.
  2. Test reports by an independent Acoustical Engineer certifying a Field Sound Transmission Class (FSTC) or Noise Isolation Class (NIC) in conformance with the requirements of test method ASTM E 336, Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Attenuation between Rooms in Buildings, performance of no more than six points below the laboratory STC performance on similar installations.
  3. Written guarantee that door is constructed in accordance with the laboratory tested door and free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of one (1) year after installation.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:



1. Engineered wood, not including salvaged wood, shall contain a minimum of 20% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
2. All composite wood, engineered wood, or agrifiber products (e.g., plywood, particleboard, medium density fiberboard) shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Acceptable resins and binders include, but are not limited to, phenol formaldehyde and methyl diisocyanate (MDI). Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
3. Laminating adhesives used to fabricate on-site and shop-applied composite wood and agrifiber assemblies shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins.
4. Wood Materials harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
5. Permanently Installed wood-based materials used in this project that have been certified in accordance with the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) guidelines shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - a. Applicable products include, but are not limited to, structural framing and general dimensional framing, flooring, finishes, built-in furnishings, miscellaneous blocking, fire rated plywood back panels used for equipment mounting, architectural panels, and plywood.
  - b. Certified wood material suppliers may be researched through the following websites: [www.rainforest-alliance.org/greenbuilding](http://www.rainforest-alliance.org/greenbuilding), [www.smartwood.org](http://www.smartwood.org), <http://www.certifiedwoodsearch.org/searchproducts.aspx>, [http://www.fscus.org/certified\\_companies/](http://www.fscus.org/certified_companies/).
  - c. Wood products previously purchased and used on prior projects, which are reused on this Project, are exempt from the FSC certification requirement. Appropriate documentation certifying reused wood products must be submitted.
6. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
7. Clear wood finishes, floor coatings, stains, sealers, and shellacs applied to the interior shall meet the VOC limitations defined in Rule 1113, "Architectural Coatings" of SCAQMD, of the State of California. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD, based on 7/9/04 amendments, are as follows. VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.
  - a. Clear Wood Finishes
    - 1). Varnish 275



2).	Sanding Sealers	275
3).	Lacquer	275
b.	Shellac	
1).	Clear	730
2).	Pigmented	550
c.	Stains (Interior)	100
d.	Floor Coatings	50
e.	Waterproofing Sealers	100
f.	Other Sealers	350

8. The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale
  9. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated"; latest edition "Premium" grade and WDMA "Extra Heavy Duty" Performance Level.
1. Only manufacturers that are certified and listed by AWI to be QCP qualified are acceptable for this project.
  2. Provide letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grade specified.
- E. Acoustically-Rated Doors, General Requirements: Provide manufacturer certification based on tests conducted at an independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM E 90, Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements, and ASTM E 413, Classification for Rating Sound Insulation. Acoustically-rated doors with lites will be factory-glazed to maintain STC rating.
1. Provide Testing Laboratory's label on each acoustically-rated door scheduled or required to be labeled. Include all information required by the local building authority.
- F. Installer Qualifications for Acoustically-Rated Doors
1. Provide doors and frames manufactured by a firm specializing in the production of acoustically-rated doors.
  2. Assign undivided responsibility of the acoustical door work to a single firm specializing in this type of work. The firm and their personnel engaged in the work shall be able to demonstrate successful experience with work of comparable extent, complexity and quality to that shown and specified. Do not engage a firm unacceptable to the manufacturers of the primary materials to be used. The firm



shall engage other specialist firms to perform any part of the work which he is not equipped or qualified to perform properly with his own personnel.

G. Special Experience

1. The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope and type to the required work.
2. The manufacturer providing the material or equipment specified in this section must, for the past five (5) years, have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of material or equipment similar in type to that required for this Project. Such similar material or equipment provided by the manufacturer must have been in satisfactory service for not less than five (5) years.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that are defective in materials or workmanship, have warped (bow, cup, or twist) in excess of permitted standard noted in Article 2.3 herein, or show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers.
  1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  2. Manufacturer's warranty shall be in effect for the life of the installation starting from date of Substantial Completion:
  3. Period of Contractor's Warranty: One (1) year.

PART II - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID CORE FLUSH WOOD DOORS

- A. Provide AWI PC-5 Premium Grade hot pressed 5-ply solid core particleboard doors, 1-3/4" thick, conforming to standards specified herein. Subject to meeting standards specified herein, the following manufacturers are acceptable: Marshfield Door Systems, Inc., Algoma Hardwoods Inc., or Eggers Hardwood Products Corp.
1. Core shall consist of a formed flat panel consisting of wood particles bonded together with synthetic resins or other added binder, with an average density of 30 to 32 lbs. per cubic foot. The material shall meet or exceed the requirements of ANSI A208.1, Grade 1-LD-2 covering mat formed particleboard with face screw holding of 124 lbs., modulus of rupture of minimum 700 psi and modulus of elasticity of not less than 148,000 psi.
  2. Core shall be capable of satisfying this WDMA TM-7 cycle slam test for 1 million slams for surface mounted hardware. Where the manufacturer's core does not meet this criteria, stiles and rails must measure a minimum of 5-1/2" and must be fabricated of hardwood.
    - a. Surface mounted hardware must be installed with minimum 1-1/4" screw penetrations using threaded to the head screws; coordinate with Section 087000.
- B. Cross Bands: Shall be 1/16" thick hardwood extending full width of door and laid with grain at right angles to face veneers. Cross bands and faces shall be laminated to the core with Type I MF or PVA glue.
- C. Stiles, Rails: Stile and rail shall be a minimum of 1-3/8" solid hardwood or structural composite lumber (after trimming) laminated to the core. Stiles and rails must be securely glued to the core with no voids allowed. Stiles and rails must be capable of screw holding of 550 lbs. per WDMA TM-10.
- D. Vertical door edge must be capable of screw holding of 550 lbs. per WDMA TM-10; horizontal door edge must be capable of screw holding of 400 lbs. per WDMA TM-10.
- E. Doors with transparent finish to have center balanced, slip matched, quarter sliced, Select species as selected by Commissioner veneer. Veneer to conform to AWI, "AA" grade veneer with 3" wide leaf. Minimum veneer thickness shall be not less than 1/50" after sanding.
  1. Veneers shall be continuous or end matched at transoms.
- F. Doors shall have hinge loading capacity of 500 lbs. per WDMA TM-8.
- G. Where glass lites are noted, factory cut openings. Trim openings with solid hardwood moldings of same type of wood as face veneer. Lite openings in 20 minute rated doors shall have manufacturer's 20 minute approved hardwood system.

- H. Doors to be field painted shall have MDO or hardboard face.
- I. Acoustically Rated Wood Doors: Where scheduled, provide 1-3/4" thick flush acoustically rated wood doors with an STC rating of 55 (minimum) made by one of the manufacturers listed above.
  - 1. Provide all necessary seals and gaskets to insure STC rating of assembly.
  - 2. Door to have face finish as indicated, specified above.

## 2.2 SHOP FINISH

- A. Transparent Finish: Finish in the shop with clear satin catalyzed polyurethane finish conforming to AWI System "Catalyzed Polyurethane Transparent".
- B. Opaque Finish: For doors to be field painted, shop prime on all surfaces with one coat of alkyd wood primer applied to a dry film thickness of 1.5 mils.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Prefit and premachine wood doors at the factory.
- B. Comply with the tolerance requirements specified herein. Machine doors for hardware requiring cutting of doors. Comply with final hardware scheduled and door frame shop drawings, and with hardware templates and other essential information required to ensure proper fit of doors and hardware.
- C. Take accurate field measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with machining in the factory.
- D. Doors shall be factory sized to door opening so that trimming and fitting are not required in the field.
- E. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Three degree bevel or bevel to suit frame sizes indicated, with 3/16" prefit in width, +0/-1/32" tolerances. Prefit top of door 1/8" + 1/16"/-0" and undercut as required by floor condition. Undercut shall not exceed 1/8" from bottom of door to top of finished floor; where threshold occurs undercut shall not exceed 1/8" from bottom of door to top of threshold.
- F. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3 unless otherwise noted. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
  - 1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.

- G. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kinds of doors required.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Once installed, maximum allowable warp, bow, cut or twist in doors shall be 1/16" as measured by the 1/16 inch feeler gauge and a straight-edge extending from corner to corner of the door face at stiles, top and bottom rails and along both diagonals.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Section 062000 for installation of wood doors.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL AND TESTING OF ACOUSTICALLY-RATED DOORS

- A. Upon completion of this portion of work, and prior to its acceptance by the City of New York, secure a visit to the job site by a qualified representative of the manufacturer of the acoustical door system(s) to confirm that installation is in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Field Testing
  1. Testing Agency: The City of New York will employ and pay an independent testing agency to perform sound control field testing.
  2. Selection: Randomly selected by the City of New York, except not-completely installed sound doors.
  3. Testing Requirements: Conduct field tests according to ASTM F 336 with results calculated according to ASTM E 413 to confirm that the operating field NIC values are within 5 dB of laboratory STC values.
  4. Test results shall be reported promptly and in writing by testing agency to the City of New York, Contractor and Commissioner.
  5. Repair or replace components of sound control doors where test results indicate STC rating does not meet requirements.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 31 13

ACCESS DOORS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the access doors as indicated on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Frameless recessed panel access doors at drywall ceilings and walls.
  2. Framed flush panel access doors at tile walls.
  3. Provide access doors and frames for access from occupied spaces to the following, where indicated or required, and as directed by the trades of Divisions 23 and 26.
    - a. All shutoff or balancing valves.
    - b. Fire dampers, as required.
    - c. Points of duct access.
    - d. Pull boxes.
    - e. Controls of mechanical and electrical items.
    - f. Masonry shafts for pipes and conduits, as required.
    - g. Pipe spaces, if required.
    - h. Inlets of fans.
    - i. Fusible link and splitter damper at filter bank.
    - j. Automatic damper and motor.
    - k. Equipment not otherwise accessible.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Drywall - Section 092900.

- F. Tile work - Section 093000.
- G. Valves and connections - Division 23.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. For actual installation of the work of this Section, use only personnel who are thoroughly familiar with the manufacturer's recommended methods of installation and who are completely trained in the skills required.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Wherever a fire-resistance classification is shown, or for construction where access doors are installed, provide required access door assembly with panel door, frame, hinge and latch from manufacturers listed in Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. "Classified Building Materials Index" for the rating shown.
  - 1. Provide UL label on each access panel.
  - 2. Provide flush, key operated cylinder lock.
- D. Size Variations: Obtain Commissioner's acceptance of manufacturer's standard size units which may vary slightly from sizes shown or scheduled.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  - 2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC)



limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.

- B. Before any materials of this Section are delivered to the job site, submit complete manufacturer's literature to the Commissioner. Submit plans and schedules showing size and location of each and every access door for Commissioner's acceptance prior to installation.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

### PART II - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. Provide access door assembly manufactured by Milcor Inc, or equal made by Nystrom Inc., Karp Associates, Inc. or approved equal. Assembly shall be an integral unit complete with all parts and ready for installation.
- B. Acoustically Rated Access Door: "STC Acoustical Access Door" by Karp, galvanized steel door with 5/8" thick acoustical tile and neoprene gasketing, having STC rating of 35.
- C. Fabricate units of continuous welded steel construction. Grind welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Provide attachment devices and fasteners of the type required to secure access panels to the types of supports shown.
- D. Frames for Tile Wall Only (Flush Panel Units): Fabricate frame from sixteen (16) gauge steel. Provide frame with exposed flange not less than one (1) inch wide around perimeter of frame for tile finish.
- E. Frameless Units for Drywall Surfaces (Recessed Panel Units): Provide access doors without exposed frames for drywall adhered to recessed panel.
- F. Panels: Fabricate from fourteen (14) gauge steel, with concealed spring hinges set to open to 175 degrees. Provide removable pin type hinges of the quantity required to support the access panel sizes used in the work. Finish with manufacturer's factory applied baked enamel prime coat applied over phosphate protective coating on steel.

G. Locking Devices

1. For non-rated access doors, provide flush, screwdriver operated cam locks of number required to hold door in flush, smooth plane when closed.
2. For fire rated doors, provide locks as described in paragraph 1.04, B. herein.

- H. Inserts and Anchorage: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be built into masonry for the installation of access panels. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorage devices. Coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where access doors are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate all work with the mechanical trades to insure proper locations and in a timely manner to permit orderly progress of the total work.
- B. Set frames accurately in position and securely attach to supports with face panels plumb or level in relation to adjacent finish surfaces.
- C. Adjust hardware and panels after installation for proper operation.
- D. Remove and replace panels or frames which are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13

SECTION 08 42 28

ALL GLASS DOORS

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the all glass doors, as shown on the drawings, and/or specified herein, as needed for a complete and proper installation, including the following:
1. 3/4" thick clear tempered glass doors.
  2. 3-1/2" full bottom rail.
  3. Top center pivot hinge plate.
  4. Top plate for mounting of electric lock.
  5. 1" diameter push/pull bars.
  6. Cylinder lock in bottom rail.
  7. Recessed floor closer, center pivots, extruded bronze saddle with removable section at closer.
  8. Hardware for sliding glass doors.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Door Hardware - Section 087000.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **Qualifications of Installers:** For actual installation of doors, use only personnel who are thoroughly trained and experienced in installation of the selected products and who are completely familiar with the requirements of this work.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding loads indicated without structural failure, deflection exceeding specified limit, support components transferring stresses to glazing, and glazing-to-glazing or glazing-to-support contact as determined by structural analysis.
  - 1. **Deflection Normal to Glazing Plane:** Limited to 1/175 of clear span or 3/4", whichever is smaller.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  - 2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).



5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.

B. Product Data: For each type of product specified. Include details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings; Show details of fabrication and installation, including the following:

1. Plans, elevations, and sections.
2. Details of fittings.
3. Hardware quantities, locations, and installation requirements.
4. Anchorages and reinforcement.
5. Glazing details.

D. Samples for Verification: Of size indicated below and of same thickness and material indicated for Work. Show the full range of color and texture variations expected.

1. Metal Finishes: 6-inch long sections of patch fittings, rails, and other items.
2. Glass: 6 inches square showing exposed-edge finish.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during, and after installation, and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify opening dimensions of all-glass entrances by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace components of all-glass entrances that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Structural failures.
2. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
3. Failure of operating components to function normally.



- B. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide all glass doors manufactured by Blumcraft, Virginia Glass Products Corp., Vistawall, or approved equal.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Clear Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated surfaces), Type I (transparent), Class 1 (clear) requirements. Provide products of thickness indicated that have been tested for surface and edge compression according to ASTM C 1048 and for impact strength according to CPSC 16 CFR, Part 1201 for Category II materials.

1. Thickness: 3/4 inch.
2. Exposed Edges: Flat polished.
3. Corner Edges: Mitered.

- B. Bronze: Satin finish bronze to match bronze doors.

### 2.3 COMPONENTS

- A. Fittings: Provide fittings and accessories for all-glass entrances of configurations shown on drawings fabricated of bronze to match bronze doors.
- B. Anchors and Fastenings: Manufacturer's standard concealed anchors and fastening.

### 2.4 HARDWARE

- A. General: Heavy-duty hardware units indicated in sizes, numbers, and type recommended by manufacturer for all-glass entrances indicated. For exposed parts, match fitting metal and finish.

- B. Closers: Center-hung, concealed floor closers complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 or Grade 2 requirements, including cases, bottom arms, top pivots, plates and accessories required for a complete installation, and as follows:

1. Swing: Single acting.
2. Hold Open: Selective.
3. Positive Dead Stop: Coordinated with hold-open angle.
4. Delayed-Action Closing: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," whichever are more stringent.



- a. Opening Force: 5 lbf.
- C. Push/Pull: 1" diameter bronze, as shown on drawings.
- D. Lockset: Bottom rail dead bolt, dead bolt operated by key outside and inside engaging cutout in threshold or floor plate.
  - 1. Lock cylinder furnished by Section 087100.
- E. Make provisions for and coordinate with installation requirements for electro/magnetic lock and door release at door head as specified in Section 087100.
- F. Threshold: Manufacturer's standard threshold with cutouts coordinated for operating hardware, with anchors and jamb clips. not more than 1/2 inch high with beveled edges providing a floor-level change with a slope of not more than 1:2, and fabricated of bronze.
- G. Sliding Door Track: Dorma RS 120 aluminum track. Finish for track shall be bronze per manufacturer's standard method of application, color as approved by the Commissioner.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate all-glass entrance components in sizes, profiles, and configurations indicated.
  - 1. Provide holes and cutouts in glass to receive hardware, fittings, rails, and accessories before tempering glass. Do not cut, drill, or make other alterations to glass after tempering.
  - 2. Fully temper glass using horizontal roller hearth process.
  - 3. Factory assemble components and factory install hardware to greatest extent possible.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where all glass doors are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install all-glass entrances and associated components according to manufacturer's written instructions; coordinate installation with structural glass wall fabricator.
- B. Set units level and plumb.



- C. Maintain uniform clearances between adjacent components.
- D. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Set, seal, and grout floor closer cases as required by hardware and substrate.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware to provide tight fit at contact points, and smooth operation.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer that ensure all-glass entrances are without damage or deterioration.

END OF SECTION 08 42 28

**SECTION 08 71 00**  
**HARDWARE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical door hardware for:

- a. Swinging doors.
- b. Sliding doors.

2. Field verification, preparation and modification of existing doors and frames to receive new door hardware.

B. Exclusions: Unless specifically listed in hardware sets, hardware is not specified in this section for:

- 1. Windows
- 2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
- 3. Signage
- 4. Toilet accessories
- 5. Overhead doors

C. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
- 2. Division 09 sections for touchup finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

A. Fire/Life Safety

- 1. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association
  - a. NFPA 70 - National Electric Code
  - b. NFPA 80 - Standard for Fire Doors and Fire Windows



- c. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code
  - d. NFPA 105 - Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
2. State Fire Safety Code.
- B. UL - Underwriters Laboratories
1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
  2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
  3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
  4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware
- C. Accessibility
1. ADA - Americans with Disabilities Act.
  2. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
- D. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute
1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
  2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
  3. Key Systems and Nomenclature
- E. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with DDC General Conditions requirements.
2. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.
3. Prior to forwarding submittal, comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, "EXAMINATION" article, herein.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Product data including manufacturers' technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
2. Samples for Verification: If requested by Commissioner, submit production sample or sample installations of each type of exposed hardware unit in finish indicated, and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
  - a. Samples will be returned to supplier in like-new condition. Units that are acceptable to the Commissioner may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.



3. Door Hardware Schedule: Submit schedule with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule as published by the Door and Hardware Institute. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each door or opening, include:
  - a. Door Index; include door number, heading number, and the Commissioner hardware set number.
  - b. Opening Lock Function Spreadsheet: List locking device and function for each opening.
  - c. Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
  - d. Name and manufacturer of each item.
  - e. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - f. Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
  - g. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
  - h. Mounting locations for hardware.
  - i. Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - j. Name and phone number for local manufacturer's representative for each product.
  - k. Operational Description of openings with any electrified hardware (locks, exits, electromagnetic locks, electric strikes, automatic operators, door position switches, magnetic holders or closer/holder units, and access control components). Operational description should include how door will operate on egress, ingress, and fire and smoke alarm connection.
    - 1) Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
4. Key Schedule:
  - a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule listing levels of keying as well as explanation of key system's function, key symbols used and door numbers controlled.
  - b. Use ANSI A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
  - c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
  - d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
  - e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion.
    - 1) Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to the Commissioner, by means as directed by the Commissioner.
  - f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing the Commissioner's final keying instructions for locks.
5. Templates: After final approval of hardware schedule, provide templates for doors, frames and other work specified to be factory prepared for door hardware installation.

**C. Informational Submittals:**

1. Qualification Data: For Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.



2. Certificates of Compliance:

- a. Certificates of compliance for fire-rated hardware and installation instructions if requested by The City of New York.
- b. Installer Training Meeting Certification: Letter of compliance, signed by Contractor, attesting to completion of installer training meeting specified in "QUALITY ASSURANCE" article, herein.

3. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.

4. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Data : Provide in accordance with DDC General Conditions requirements and include:

- a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
- b. Catalog pages for each product.
- c. Name, address, and phone number of local representative for each manufacturer.
- d. Parts list for each product.
- e. Final approved hardware schedule, edited to reflect conditions as-installed.
- f. Final keying schedule
- g. Copies of floor plans with keying nomenclature
- h. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.
- i. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Special Experience: The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope and type to the required work.

B. Product Substitutions: Comply with product requirements stated in DDC General Conditions.

C. Supplier Qualifications and Responsibilities: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that provides certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available to the Commissioner, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.

1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.

2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.



3. **Engineering Responsibility:** Preparation of data for door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
4. **Coordination Responsibility:** Coordinate installation of hardware with the Commissioner and provide installation and technical data to the Commissioner and other related subcontractors.
  - a. Upon completion of electronic security hardware installation, inspect and verify that all components are working properly.
- D. **Installer Qualifications:** Qualified tradesmen, skilled in application of commercial grade hardware with record of successful in-service performance for installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project.
- E. **Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications:** Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
  1. For door hardware, DHI-certified, Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
  2. Can provide installation and technical data to the Commissioner and other related subcontractors.
  3. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
- F. **Single Source Responsibility:** Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.
- G. **Fire-Rated Door Openings:** Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed and are identical to products tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
- H. **Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies:** Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  1. **Air Leakage Rate:** Maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
- I. **Means of Egress Doors:** Latches do not require more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release latch. Locks do not require use of key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- J. **Accessibility Requirements:** For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article, herein.
  1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of wrist and that operate with force of not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N).
  2. **Maximum opening-force requirements:**
    - a. **Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors:** 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied perpendicular to door.



- b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied parallel to door at latch.
  - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Bevel raised thresholds with slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
4. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from open position of 70 degrees, door will take at least 3 seconds to move to 3 inches (75 mm) from latch, measured to leading edge of door.
- K. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of the DDC General Conditions.
- 1. Attendees: Commissioner, Contractor, Installer, and Supplier's Architectural Hardware Consultant.
  - 2. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
    - a. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
    - b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
    - c. Requirements for key control system.
    - d. Requirements for access control.
    - e. Address for delivery of keys.
- L. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 2. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - 3. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
- M. Coordination Conferences:
- 1. Installation Coordination Conference: Prior to hardware installation, schedule and hold meeting to review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.
    - a. Attendees: Door hardware supplier, door hardware installer, Contractor.
    - b. After meeting, provide letter of compliance to the Commissioner, indicating when meeting was held and who was in attendance.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
  - 1. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Project Conditions:



1. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
2. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

D. Protection and Damage:

1. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
2. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work.
3. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.

E. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to the Commissioner.

F. Deliver keys to the Commissioner by registered mail or overnight package service.

### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with the Commissioner's security consultant.
- D. Existing Openings: Where hardware components are scheduled for application to existing construction or where modifications to existing door hardware are required, field verify existing conditions and coordinate installation of door hardware to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.
- E. Direct shipments not permitted, unless approved by Contractor.

### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: Years from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated.
    - a. Closers:  
Mechanical: 30 years.



- b. Exit Devices:  
Mechanical: 3 years.
  - c. Locksets:  
Mechanical: 3 years.
  - d. Continuous Hinges: Lifetime warranty.
  - e. Key Blanks: Lifetime
2. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.

1.9 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance Tools:

- 1. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of manufacturers other than those listed shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated as "Alternate Manufacturer" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.

Item	Scheduled Manufacturer
Hinges	Ives (IVE)
Floor Closers	Rixson (RIX)
Pivots	Ives (IVE)
Locksets & Deadlocks	Schlage (SCH)
Exit Devices & Mullions	Von Duprin (VON)
Cylinders & Keying	Schlage (SCH)
Door Closers	LCN (LCN)
Door Trim	Ives (IVE)
Protection Plates	Ives (IVE)
Overhead Stops	Glynn-Johnson (GLY)
Stops & Holders	Ives (IVE)
Thresholds & Weatherstrip	Zero (ZER)
Silencers	Ives (IVE)
Sliding Door Hardware	Grant (GRA)

Key Cabinets	Telkee (TEL)
--------------	--------------

- C. Hand of Door: Drawings show direction of slide, swing, or hand of each door leaf. Furnish each item of hardware for proper installation and operation of door movement as shown.
- D. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to the Commissioner's approval.

## 2.2 EXISTING MATERIALS

- A. Where existing door hardware is indicated to be removed and reinstalled:
  - 1. Carefully remove door hardware and components.
  - 2. Clean, protect and store existing door hardware in accordance with storage and handling requirements specified herein.
  - 3. Reinstall in accordance with installation requirements for new door hardware.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners
  - 1. Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
  - 2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
  - 3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units exposed when door is closed except when no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless thru-bolts are required to fasten hardware securely. Review door specification and advise the Commissioner if thru-bolts are required.
  - 4. Install hardware with fasteners provided by hardware manufacturer.
- B. Modification and Preparation of Existing Doors: Provide necessary fillers, Dutchmen, reinforcements, and fasteners, compatible with existing materials, as required for mounting new opening hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.
  - 1. Use materials which match materials of adjacent modified areas.
  - 2. When modifying existing fire-rated openings, provide materials permitted by NFPA 80 as required to maintain fire-rating.
- C. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
  - 1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.



## 2.4 HINGES

### A. Provide five-knuckle, ball bearing hinges.

#### 1. Manufacturers and Products:

- a. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Ives 5BB series.
- b. Alternate Manufacturers and Products: Hager BB series, McKinney TA/T4A series, Stanley FBB Series, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
  - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
  - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
2. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
  - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
  - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
3. 2 inches or thicker doors:
  - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
  - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
4. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
5. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
6. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
  - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
  - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
  - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
  - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
  - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
7. Width of hinges: 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) at 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, and 5 inches (127 mm) at 2 inches (51 mm) or thicker doors. Adjust hinge width as required for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
8. Doors 36 inches (914 mm) wide or less furnish hinges 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high; doors greater than 36 inches (914 mm) wide furnish hinges 5 inches (127 mm) high, heavy weight or standard weight as specified.
9. Provide spring hinges where specified. Provide two spring hinges and one bearing hinge per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height. Provide one additional bearing hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.

## 2.5 OFFSET FLOOR CLOSERS AND INTERMEDIATE PIVOTS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Rixson
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Jackson, Dorma, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide single-acting floor closers complete with ball-bearing top pivot, floor plates, intermediate pivots and cement boxes unless indicated otherwise.
2. Provide one intermediate pivot for doors less than 91 inches (2311 mm) high and one additional intermediate pivot per leaf for each additional 30 inches (762 mm) in height or fraction thereof. Intermediate pivots spaced equally not less than 25 inches (635 mm) or not more than 35 inches (889 mm) on center, for doors over 121 inches (3073 mm) high.
3. Provide floor closers with adjustable swing speed, latch speed, back-check, and selective hold-open features, with built in positive stop at specified degree of opening.
4. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, with reduced opening force for physically handicapped.
5. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves. Provide separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
6. Provide appropriate model where floor closers are specified at fire rated openings.
7. Provide mortar guard for each electric pivot specified, unless specified in hollow metal frame specification.

## 2.6 PIVOT SETS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Dorma, Rixson, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide pivot sets complete with oil-impregnated top pivot, unless indicated otherwise.
2. Where offset pivots are specified, Provide one intermediate pivot for doors less than 91 inches (2311 mm) high and one additional intermediate pivot per leaf for each additional 30 inches (762 mm) in height or fraction thereof. Intermediate pivots spaced equally not less than 25 inches (635 mm) or not more than 35 inches (889 mm) on center, for doors over 121 inches (3073 mm) high.
3. Provide appropriate model where pivot sets are scheduled at fire rated openings.
4. Provide lead-lined model where pivot sets are specified at lead-lined doors.
5. Provide mortar guard for each electric pivot specified, unless specified in hollow metal frame specification.

## 2.7 MORTISE LOCKS

### A. Manufacturers and Products:



1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Schlage L9000 series
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Corbin ML2000 Series, Sargent 8200 Series, or Approved Equal

**B. Requirements:**

1. Provide mortise locks certified as ANSI A156.13, Grade 1 Operational, Grade 1 Security, and manufactured from heavy gauge steel, containing components of steel with a zinc dichromate plating for corrosion resistance. Provide lock case that is multi-function and field reversible for handing without opening case. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
2. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset with full 3/4 inch (19 mm) throw stainless steel mechanical anti-friction latchbolt. Provide deadbolt with full 1 inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of stainless steel.
3. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
4. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
  - a. Lever Design: Schlage 02A.
  - b. Tactile Warning (Knurling): Where required by authority having jurisdiction. Provide on levers on exterior (secure side) of doors serving rooms considered to be hazardous.

**2.8 EXIT DEVICES**

**A. Manufacturers and Products:**

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Von Duprin 98 series.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Sargent 80 Series, Precision Apex Series, or Approved Equal

**B. Requirements:**

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1, and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
2. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
3. Touchpad: Extend minimum of one half of door width. Match exit device finish, stainless steel for US26, US26D, US28, US32, and US32D finishes; and for all other finishes, provide compatible finish to exit device. Provide compression springs in devices, latches, and outside trims or controls; tension springs also acceptable.
4. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
5. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
6. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Locate exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by the Commissioner.
7. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors, or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
8. Provide hex-key dogging at non-fire-rated exit devices, unless specified less dogging.



9. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion that is removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
10. Where lever handles are specified as outside trim for exit devices, provide heavy-duty lever trims with forged or cast escutcheon plates. Provide vandal-resistant levers that will travel to 90-degree down position when more than 35 pounds of torque are applied, and which can easily be re-set.
  - a. Lever Style: Match lever style of locksets.
  - b. Tactile Warning (Knurling): Where required by authority having jurisdiction. Provide on levers on exterior (secure side) of doors serving rooms considered to be hazardous.
11. Provide UL labeled fire exit hardware for fire rated openings.
12. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.

## 2.9 EXIT DEVICES

### A. Manufacturer and Product:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Von Duprin 88 series.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Sargent 90 Series, Precision Olympian Series, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1, and UL listed for Panic Exit and/or Fire Exit Hardware. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
2. Provide bar type exit devices, cast or forged of brass, bronze, or stainless steel, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of the door hardware.
3. Latch Bolt Throw: 3/4 inch (19 mm) for rim and mortise devices, 5/8 inch (16 mm) for surface and concealed vertical rod devices.
4. Mechanism Case: One piece without cover plate. Mount flush on face of doors, or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
5. Provide UL labeled fire exit devices for fire rated openings.
6. Provide manufacturer's standard strikes.
7. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Locate exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by the Commissioner.
8. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
9. Furnish all necessary wood door kits and cover plates, for proper installation of exit device.

## 2.10 CYLINDERS

### A. Manufacturer:



1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Tie into the Commissioner existing system.
  2. Alternate Manufacturers: Falcon, Sargent, or Approved Equal
- B. Requirements: Provide cylinders/cores complying with the following requirements.
1. Furnished by same manufacturer as locks.
  2. Cylinders/cores compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision, Section 12, Grade 1; permanent cylinders; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated.
- C. Full-sized cylinders in the below-listed configuration(s), distributed throughout the Project as indicated.
1. Conventional cylinder keyway compatible with existing system.
  2. Keying:
- D. Manufacturer-keyed permanent cylinders/cores, configured into existing keying system per "KEYING" article herein.
- E. Nickel silver bottom pins.
1. Identification:
- F. Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code per DHI publication "Keying Systems and Nomenclature" for identification. Blind code marks shall not include actual key cuts.
- G. Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Commissioner.
- H. Failure to comply with stamping requirements shall be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to the Commissioner.
1. Forward cylinders/cores to the Commissioner, separately from keys, by means as directed by the Commissioner.
- I. Temporary Construction Cylinder Keying.
1. Provide construction cores that permit voiding construction keys without cylinder removal, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
- J. Construction Keying System.
- K. 3 construction control keys and extractor tool, if required.
- L. 12 construction change (day) keys.
1. The Commissioner will void operation of temporary construction keys.

## 2.11 KEYING OPTION FOR EXISTING KEY SYSTEM

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.
- B. Keying System: Existing system maintained by the Commissioner, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.
- C. Keying Requirements – General
  - 1. Permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
- D. Keying system tied into existing system as directed by the Commissioner.
  - 1. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by the Commissioner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements shall be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to the Commissioner.
- E. Keys
  - 1. Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .092-inch (2.3mm)
  - 2. Identification:
- F. Coordinate with cylinder/core and key identification requirements above.
- G. Stamp keys with the Commissioner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
- H. Failure to comply with stamping requirements shall be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to the Commissioner.
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
    - a. Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
    - b. Permanent Control Keys: 3.
    - c. Master Keys: 6.

## 2.12 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Key Control System Manufacturers:
  - 1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Telkee
  - 2. Alternate Manufacturers: HPC, Lund, or Approved Equal
- B. Requirements:
  - 1. Provide key control system, including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet,



all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of number of locks required for Project.

- a. Provide complete cross index system set up by hardware supplier, and place keys on markers and hooks in cabinet as determined by final key schedule.
- b. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.

## 2.13 DOOR CLOSERS

### A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: LCN 4010/4110 series
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Sargent 281 Series, Corbin DC8000 Series, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers certified to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter, with 11/16 inch (17 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Provide closers with a solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).
10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

## 2.14 DOOR TRIM

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:



1. Provide push plates 4 inches (102 mm) wide by 16 inches (406 mm) high by 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick and beveled 4 edges. Where width of door stile prevents use of 4 inches (102 mm) wide plate, adjust width to fit.
2. Provide push bars of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled. Provide push bars of sufficient length to span from center to center of each stile. Where required, mount back to back with pull.
3. Provide offset pulls of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled. Where required, mount back to back with push bar.
4. Provide flush pulls as specified. Where required, provide back-to-back mounted model.
5. Provide pulls of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled. Where required, mount back to back with push bar.
6. Provide pull plates 4 inches (102 mm) wide by 16 inches (406 mm) high by 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled 4 edges, and prepped for pull. Where width of door stile prevents use of 4 inches (102 mm) wide plate, adjust width to fit.
7. Provide wire pulls of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled.

## 2.15 PROTECTION PLATES

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide kick plates, mop plates, and armor plates minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
2. Sizes of plates:
  - a. Kick Plates: 10 inches (254 mm) high by 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs
  - b. Mop Plates: 4 inches (102 mm) high by 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs
  - c. Armor Plates: 36 inches (914 mm) high by 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs

## 2.16 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers: Glynn-Johnson
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Rixson, Sargent, or Approved Equal

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide heavy duty concealed mounted overhead stop or holder as specified for exterior and interior vestibule single acting doors.

2. Provide heavy duty concealed mounted overhead stop or holder as specified for double acting doors.
3. Provide heavy or medium duty and concealed or surface mounted overhead stop or holder for interior doors as specified. Provide medium duty surface mounted overhead stop for interior doors and at any door that swings more than 140 degrees before striking wall, open against equipment, casework, sidelights, and where conditions do not allow wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
4. Where overhead holders are specified provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

## 2.17 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood, or Approved Equal

### B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide convex type where mortise type locks are used and concave type where cylindrical type locks are used.
2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops for low or high rise options.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide medium duty surface mounted overhead stop.

## 2.18 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Zero.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Pemko, Reese, or Approved Equal.

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide thresholds, weatherstripping (including door sweeps, seals, astragals) and gasketing systems (including smoke, sound, and light) as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Size of thresholds::
  - a. Saddle Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by jamb width by door width
  - b. Bumper Seal Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width
3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.

## 2.19 SILENCERS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.

2. Alternate Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood, or Approved Equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

## 2.20 POCKET DOOR HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Grant.
2. Alternate Manufacturers: Lawrence, Stanley, or Approved Equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide complete sets of pocket door hardware as recommended by manufacturer for door type and weight.
  - a. Include track, hangers, fasteners, guides, and other hardware as required for complete installation.

## 2.21 FINSHES

A. Finish: BHMA 630 (US32D); except:

1. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
2. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
3. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

B. Finish: BHMA 612/639 (US10); except:

1. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
2. Weatherstripping: Dark Bronze Anodized Aluminum
3. Thresholds: Extruded Architectural Bronze – Mill Finish

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.



- B. Existing Door and Frame Compatibility: Field verify existing doors and frames receiving new hardware and existing conditions receiving new openings. Verify that new hardware is compatible with existing door and frame preparation and existing conditions.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Where on-site modification of doors and frames is required:
  - 1. Remove existing hardware being replaced, tag, and store according to contract documents.
  - 2. Field modify and prepare existing door and frame for new hardware being installed.
  - 3. When modifications are exposed to view, use concealed fasteners, when possible.
  - 4. Prepare hardware locations in accordance with:
    - a. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
    - b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
    - c. Doors in rated assemblies: NFPA 80 for restrictions on on-site door hardware preparation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  - 3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- F. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- G. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches (750 mm) of



door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.

- H. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every 30 inches (750 mm) of door height greater than 90 inches (2286 mm).
- I. Lead Protection: Lead wrap hardware penetrating lead-lined doors. Levers and roses to be lead lined. Apply kick and armor plates on lead-lined doors with adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.
- J. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- K. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Closers shall not be visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by the Commissioner.
- L. Closer/holders: Mount closer/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- M. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- N. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- O. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- P. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- Q. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Engage qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.
  - 1. Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.



Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

- 1. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately six months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Provide demonstration for the Commissioner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to DDC General Conditions requirements.

### 3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. Locksets, exit devices, and other hardware items are referenced in the following hardware sets for series, type and function. Refer to the above-specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- B. Hardware Sets:

SpeXtra: 115140

#### Hardware Group No. 01

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
1	EA	FLOOR CLOSER	MATCH EXISTING RIXSON PROVIDE PIVOTS AS REQUIRED	612	RIX
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	8827-TL-OP-377T-RCB	US10	VON
1	EA	LATCH GUARD	BFLG10	612	ROC
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	20-001 114	612	SCH

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

HARDWARE  
087100- 22



1	EA	DOOR PULL	RE-USE EXISTING	MIS
1	EA	NOTE	RE-USE BALANCE OF EXISTING HARDWARE	

GC TO RE-WORK EXISTING DOOR & FRAME AS REQUIRED FOR NEW HARDWARE

Hardware Group No. 02

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
2	EA	FLOOR CLOSER	MATCH EXISTING RIXSON	612	RIX
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	8827-EO-RCB	US10	VON
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	8827-TL-OP-377T-RCB	US10	VON
2	EA	LATCH GUARD	BFLG10	612	ROC
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	20-001 114	612	SCH
2	EA	DOOR PULL	RE-USE EXISTING		MIS
1	EA	NOTE	RE-USE BALANCE OF EXISTING HARDWARE		

GC TO RE-WORK EXISTING DOOR & FRAME AS REQUIRED FOR NEW HARDWARE

Hardware Group No. 03

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
2	EA	PIVOT SET	7226 SET	612	IVE
2	EA	INTERMEDIATE PIVOT	7226 INT	612	IVE
2	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	8827-TL-OP-377T-RCB	US10	VON
2	EA	LATCH GUARD	BFLG10	612	ROC
2	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	20-001 114	612	SCH
2	EA	DOOR PULL	109 X SP1073	612	ROC
			GC TO MATCH EXISTING PULLS ON TAG E101, E102, E103		
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4111 SCUSH MC	US10	LCN
2	EA	MOUNTING PLATE	4110-18	US10	LCN
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655B	B	ZER

Hardware Group No. 04

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

HARDWARE  
087100- 23



Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
2	EA	PIVOT SET	7230F SET	639	IVE
6	EA	INTERMEDIATE PIVOT	7230F INT	639	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE BOLT	SB1600M1 B	693	IVE
			BOTTOM BOLTS ONLY PROVIDE (2) EXTRA FLOOR STRIKES		
2	EA	KNIFE EDGE PULL	FE158	BLK	ACC
2	EA	FLOOR STOP/HOLDER	FS446	612	IVE
2	EA	ACOUSTIC PAD	ACP112		PEM
1	SET	SEALS	S44D	DKB	PEM
1	SET	SEAL	S773	DKB	PEM
2	EA	DOOR BOTTOM	PDB411AE	AL	PEM

Hardware Group No. 05 – REF DWG 1/A-515.00

Hardware Group No. 06

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
2	EA	FLOOR CLOSER	PH-27-90-SHO	612	RIX
6	EA	INTERMEDIATE PIVOT	M19	612	RIX
2	EA	LATCH GUARD	BFLG10	612	ROC
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	20-001 114	612	SCH
2	EA	DOOR PULL, 1" ROUND	8103EZHD 12" F	612	IVE
2	EA	PUSH PLATE	75C	BLK	ROC
2	EA	ACOUSTIC PAD	ACP112		PEM
1	SET	SEALS	S44D	DKB	PEM
1	SET	SEAL	S773	DKB	PEM
1	SET	MEETING STILE	S1125 (PEMKO)	BLK	PEM
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	328B	B	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655B	B	ZER

Hardware Group No. 07

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

HARDWARE  
087100- 24



<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	639	IVE
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 4" X 16"	612	IVE
1	EA	PULL PLATE	8302 6" 4" X 16"	612	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4111 CUSH MC	US10	LCN
1	EA	GASKETING	770D	D	ZER
1	EA	DOOR BOTTOM	355A6	A	ZER

Hardware Group No. 08

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	639	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 02A 612 630 L583-363	612/630	SCH
1	EA	OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	7200ER-1	612	ACC
1	EA	OH STOP	100S	630	GLY
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

Hardware Group No. 09

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	639	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 02A 612 630 L583-363	612/630	SCH
1	EA	OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	7200ER-1	612	ACC
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS407	612	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

Hardware Group No. 10

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 02A 612 630 L583-363	612/630	SCH
1	EA	OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	7200ER-1	612	ACC
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4011 MC	MTLPC	LCN



1	EA	WALL STOP	WS407	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

Hardware Group No. 11

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	639	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	98-L-02	612	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-021	612	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4111 EDA MC	US10	LCN
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS407	612	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

Hardware Group No. 12

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 02A 612 630 L583-363	612/630	SCH
1	EA	OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	7200ER-1	612	ACC
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4011 MC	MTLPC	LCN
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS407	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

Hardware Group No. 13

Provide each PD door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
1	SET	POCKET DOOR	1230	AL	GRA
1	EA	FLUSH PULL	227	626	IVE
2	EA	DOOR EDGE PULL	230	626	IVE
1	EA	BUMPER STOP	1213		GRA

Hardware Group No. 14

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

HARDWARE  
087100- 26

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	639	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080P 02A	612	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4111 CUSH MC	US10	LCN
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

Hardware Group No. 15 – REF DWG 2/A-515.00

Hardware Group No. 16

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
3	EA	HW HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080P 02A	630	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4011 MC	MTLPC	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS407	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S-BK	S-Bk	ZER
			4 SIDED FRAME CONTINUOUSLY SEALED		

Hardware Group No. 17

Provide each DD door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
1	SET	OFFSET PIVOT	DUTCH DOOR PIVOT SET	612	MIS
2	EA	DUTCH DOOR BOLT	054	612	IVE
1	EA	OFFICE/ENTRY LOCK	L9050P 02A L583-363	612	SCH
			PROVIDE EXTENDED LIP AS REQUIRED		
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4011 H MC	US10	LCN
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS407	612	IVE
4	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE



Hardware Group No. 18

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>Qty</u>		<u>Description</u>	<u>Catalog Number</u>	<u>Finish</u>	<u>Mfr</u>
2	EA	PIVOT SET	7226 SET	612	IVE
4	EA	ROLLER LATCH	RL30	612	IVE
			(2) MOUNTED AT EACH HEAD OF DOOR		
2	EA	KNIFE EDGE PULL	FE158	612	ACC
2	EA	OH STOP	90S	612	GLY

END OF SECTION 08 71 00



SECTION 08 80 00

INTERIOR GLASS AND GLAZING

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the interior glass and glazing as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including but not limited to glazing of the following:
1. Doors.
  2. Borrowed lites.
  3. Mirrors, frameless.
  4. Distraction markings.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Hollow metal doors and frames - Section 081113.
- F. Framed mirrors - Section 102813.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with the recommendations of the following references unless more stringent requirements are indicated herein.
1. FGMA Publications: FGMA Glazing Manual.
  2. LSGA Publications: LSGA Design Guide.



3. SIGMA Publications: TM-3000 Vertical Glazing Guidelines
4. Safety Glass: Products complying with ANSI Z97.1 and testing requirements of 16 CFR Part 1201.
5. Fire-Resistive Glazing Products for Door Assemblies: Products identical to those tested per ASTM E 152, labeled and listed by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Fire-Resistive Glazing Products for Window Assemblies: Products identical to those tested per ASTM E 163, labeled and listed by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. 16 CFR 1201, Safety Standards for Architectural Glazing, Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturing Association.
8. ASTM C 920, Elastomeric Joint Sealant.
9. Insulating Glass Criteria - IGCC International Glass Cert. Council.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Glass Design: Glass thicknesses indicated on drawings and/or specified herein are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites for various size openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
  1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
    - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: 30 psf or greater if required by Code.
  2. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing:
    - a. 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
    - b. 1 lite per 1000 for lites installed 15 degrees from the vertical and under wind action.
    - c. Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.



3. **Maximum Lateral Deflection:** For glass supported on all four edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/100 times the short side length or 0.5", whichever is less.
4. **Thermal Movements:** Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - a. **Temperature Change (Range):** 120 deg. F ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
5. **Thermal Solar Performance:** See Article 2.2 herein.

- C. Glass units shall be annealed, heat strengthened, fully tempered or laminated where required to meet wind and/or snow loads and safety glazing requirements, as shown, specified or recommended by the glass fabricator and as required by the prevailing Building Code.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.

- B. **Product Data:** Submit manufacturer's printed product data, specifications, standard details, glazing instructions, use limitations and recommendations for each material used. Provide certifications that materials and systems comply with specified requirements, including performance requirements.
- C. Submit compatibility and adhesion test reports from sealant manufacturer indicating materials were tested for compatibility and adhesion with glazing sealant, as well as other glazing materials including insulation units.
- D. **Initial Selection Samples:** Submit samples of each glass and glazing material showing complete range of colors, textures, and finishes available for each material used.
  - 1. Submit complete range of samples of standard colors and patterns for ceramic frits at insulating glass.
  - 2. Submit complete range of samples of sandblasted glass showing variations of grits and opacity achieved.
- E. **Verification Samples:** Submit representative samples of each glass and glazing material that is to be exposed in completed work. Show full color ranges and finish variations expected. Provide glass samples having minimum size of 144 sq. in. and 6 in. long samples of sealants and glazing materials; all samples shall bear the name of the manufacturer, brand name, thickness, and quality.
- F. **Calculations:** Provide wind load charts, calculations, thermal stress analysis, and certification of performance of this work. Indicate how design requirements for loading and other performance criteria have been satisfied. Document shall be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York.
- G. **Test Reports:** Provide certified reports for specified tests.
- H. **Warranties:** Provide written warranties as specified herein.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **Source:** For each glass and glazing type required for work of this Section, provide primary materials which are products of one manufacturer. Provide secondary or accessory materials which are acceptable to manufacturers of primary materials.

- C. Installer: A firm with a minimum of three (3) years experience in type of work required by this Section and which is acceptable to manufacturers of primary materials; and with a successful record of in-service installations similar in size and scope to this Project.
- D. Glass Thickness: Glass thicknesses shown on drawings and/or specified herein are minimum thicknesses. Determine and provide size and thickness of glass products that are certified to meet or exceed performance requirements specified in this Section.
- E. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA'S "Glazing Manual" and "Laminated Glass Design Guide."
- F. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and, for wired glass, ANSI Z97.1.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council.
  - 2. Where glazing units, including Kind FT glass and laminated glass, are specified in Part 2 articles for glazing lites more than 9 sq. ft. in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category II materials, for lites 9 sq. ft. or less in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category I or II materials, except for hazardous locations where Category II materials are required by 16 CFR 1201 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials and products in unopened, factory labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and GANA Manual.
  - 1. Protect materials from moisture, sunlight, excess heat, sparks and flame.
  - 2. Sequence deliveries to avoid delays, but minimize on-site storage.

#### 1.9 WARRANTIES

- A. General: Warranties shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights the City of New York may have under the Contract Documents.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Coated Glass Products: Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer of coated glass agreeing to furnish f.o.b. point of manufacture, within specified warranty period indicated below, replacements for those coated glass units which develop manufacturing defects. Manufacturing defects are



defined as peeling, cracking or deterioration in metallic coating due to normal conditions and not due to handling or installation or cleaning practices contrary to glass manufacturer's published instructions.

1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard but not less than five (5) years after date of substantial completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Project Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to City of New York and signed by laminated glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
1. Warranty period five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS MATERIALS AND PRODUCTS

- A. Ultraclear (Low Iron) Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality Q3; with visible light transmission not less than 91 percent and solar heat gain coefficient not less than 0.87.
1. Acceptable Products
    - a. PPG Industries, Inc.; Starphire.
    - b. AFG Industries, Inc.; Krystal Klear.
    - c. Guardian Industries Corp.; Ultrawhite.
    - d. Pilkington North America; Optiwhite.
- B. Low-Iron Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition A (Uncoated), Type I (Transparent, Flat), Class 1 (Clear), Quality q3, Kind FT, minimum 1/4" thick. Tempered glass must be certified by SGCC to meet applicable standards.
1. Tempered glass shall also conform to the following:
    - a. Length and Width: For 2.9 mm to 6.0 mm; +/-1.6 mm.
    - b. Diagonal: +/- 3.0 mm.
    - c. Edgework: Belt seaming or diamond wheels. 1.5 mm seam of upper and lower glass edges. No sharp edges.
    - d. Corners: No more than 3.0 mm from square.
    - e. Float Glass Defects: Must meet the requirements of ASTM C 1036. The most common defects are scratches, stones gaseous bubbles and edge chips. Tables in the glass standards have limits for size/quantity of defects.
    - f. Tempered glass shall have a minimum surface compression of 10,000 psi.
    - g. Tempered glass to be heat-treated by horizontal (roller hearth) process with inherent roller-wave distortion parallel to the bottom edge of the glass when installed.



h. Flatness Tolerances

- 1). Roller-Wave or Ripple: The deviation from flatness at any peak shall be targeted not exceed 0.003" as measured per peak to valley for 1/4" (6mm) thick glass.
- 2). Bow and Warp: The bow and warp tolerances shall not exceed 1/32" per linear foot.
- 3). Fully tempered glass shall be heat soaked to EN 14179-1:2005-European Heat Soaking Standard.

C. Laminated Safety Glass: Provide two glass panes of equal thickness, laminated together with a polyvinyl butyl interlayer, conform to ASTM C 1172, and as follows:

1. Interlayer Color: Clear.
2. Interlayer Material: Provide Monsanto "Saflex" or DuPont "Butacite," 0.030" thick at vertical applications, and 0.060" thick at sloped or horizontal applications.
3. Minimum thickness of 1/4".

D. Frameless Mirrors: 1/4", Quality q2, clear float glass with silver, copper, and organic coating, and as follows:

1. Edges: Uniformly ground and polished.
2. Mirror Type/Finish: As indicated on Drawings.

E. Distraction markings: 3M.

2.2 GLAZING MATERIALS AND PRODUCTS

A. General: Provide sealants and gaskets with performance characteristics suitable for applications indicated. Ensure compatibility of glazing sealants with insulating glass sealants, with laminated glass interlayers, and with any other surfaces in contact.

B. General Glazing and Cap Bead Sealant: Provide sealant with maximum Shore A hardness of 50. Provide one of the following:

1. Dow Corning 795.
2. General Electric Silglaze N 2500 or Contractors SCS-1000.
3. Tremco Spectrem 2.

C. Backer Rod: Closed cell non-gassing polyethylene rod with rod diameter 25% wider than joint width.

D. Acoustical Seals: Acoustic seals for glazing shall be vibration-isolating resilient gaskets, U-shaped and continuous santoprene QSI UV grade 65-75 durometer. Self-



contained, sound absorptive interior perimeter of not less than 22 gauge steel shall be perforated and pre-finished in color as selected by Commissioner.

- E. Dense Elastomeric Compression Seal Gaskets: Provide molded or extruded neoprene or EPDM gaskets, Shore A hardness of  $75\pm 5$  for hollow profile, and  $60\pm 5$  for solid profiles, ASTM C 864.
- F. Cellular, Elastomeric Preformed Gaskets: Provide extruded or molded closed cell, integral-skinned neoprene, Shore A  $40\pm 5$ , and 20% to 35% compression, ASTM C 509; Type II.
- G. Preformed Glazing Tape: Provide solvent-free butyl-polyisobutylene rubber with 100% solids content complying with ASTM C1281 AAMA A 800 with integral continuous EPDM shim. Provide preformed glazing tape in extruded tape form. Provide Tremco "Polyshim II" or approved equal.
- H. Setting Blocks: Provide 100% or silicone blocks with Shore A hardness of 80-90. Provide products certified by manufacturer to be compatible with silicone sealants. Length to be not less than 4". Width for setting blocks to be  $1/16$ " more than glass thickness and high enough to provide the lite recommended by glass manufacturer. When thickness of setting block exceeds  $3/4$ " the glass manufacturer must be consulted for sizes and configuration. In a vented system, setting block shall be designed so as to not restrict the flow of water within the glazing rabbet to the weep holes.
  - 1. Shims: For shims used with setting blocks, provide same materials, hardness, length and width as setting blocks.
- I. Edge Blocks: Provide neoprene or silicone as required for compatibility with glazing sealants. Provide blocks with Shore A hardness of  $55\pm 5$ .
- J. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place.
- K. Miscellaneous Glazing Materials: Provide sealant backer rods, primers, cleaners, and sealers of type recommended by glass and sealant manufacturers.
- L. Mirror Adhesive: Palmer's "Mirro-Mastic", or approved equal; mastic must be compatible with mirror backing.
  - 1. Clips: No. 4 finish Type 304 stainless steel.

## 2.3 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS

- A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.



- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with indoor and outdoor faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
  - 3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
  - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

#### 3.3 GENERAL GLAZING STANDARDS

- A. Install products using the recommendations from the manufacturer of glass, sealants, gaskets and other glazing materials, except where more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in the "GANA Glazing Manual".
- B. Verify that Insulating Glass (IG) Unit secondary seal is compatible with glazing sealants.
- C. Install glass in prepared glazing channels and other framing members.
- D. Install setting blocks in rabbets as recommended by referenced glazing standards in "GANA Glazing Manual" and "IGMA Glazing Guidelines".
- E. Provide bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances and glazing material tolerances recommended by "GANA Glazing Manual".
- F. Provide weep system as recommended by "GANA Glazing Manual".
- G. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow and similar characteristics.
- H. Distribute the weight of glass unit along the edge rather than the corner.



- I. Comply with manufacturers and referenced industry standards on expansion joint and anchors; accommodating thermal movement; glass openings; use of setting blocks, edge, face, and bite clearances; use of glass spacers; edge blocks and installation of weep systems.
- J. Protect glass edge damage during handling and installation.
- K. Prevent glass from contact with contaminating substances that result from construction operations, such as weld spatter, fireproofing or plaster.
- L. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped cracked or damaged in any way.

### 3.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Shop Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where the length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.



- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- J. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- K. Flush Glazing
  - 1. If the butt joint in the metal framing is in the vertical direction, the glazier shall run the tape initially on the head and sill members going directly over this joint. Should the butt joint in the metal framing run horizontally, tapes must first be applied to the jambs so that it crosses over the joint.
  - 2. Each tape section shall butt the adjoining tape and be united with a tool to eliminate any opening.
  - 3. Do not overlap the adjoining length of tape or rubber shim as this will prevent full contact around the perimeter of glass.
- L. Off-Set Glazing
  - 1. Where the glazing legs are off-set, the difference in the rabbet width shall be compensated by employing different glazing tapes with different diameter shims. The difference in shim shall be equal to the size of the off-set. The thinner tape shall be positioned first on the glazing leg closest to the interior. The thicker tape shall be cut to the exact length of the dimension between the applied tapes, and installed on the outermost glazing leg.
  - 2. Immediately prior to setting glass, paper backing shall be removed. Apply a toe bead of sealant 6" in each direction, from each corner.
  - 3. Locate setting blocks in the sill member at quarter points, or if necessary to within 6" of each corner. Setting blocks must be set equal distance from center line of the glass and high enough to provide the recommended bite and edge clearances.
  - 4. Set edge block according to glass manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 5. Set Glass: The glass shall be pressed firmly against the tape to achieve full contact.
  - 6. In a vented system, apply a heel bead (air seal) of sealant around the perimeter of glass, between the sole of the I.G. unit and the base of the rabbet of the metal framing developing a positive bond to the unit and to the metal framing. The bead



of the sealant shall be deep enough so that it will partially fill the channel to a depth of 1/4" between the glass edge and the base of the metal framing rabbet.

7. Interior stops shall be set, and glazing tape spline for the appropriate face clearance shall be rolled into place, compressing the glass to the shim within the glazing tape.

### 3.5 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Where framing joints are vertical, cover these joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Where framing joints are horizontal, cover these joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant as recommended by glass manufacturer or glass frame manufacturer.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape where noted on approved shop drawings.

### 3.6 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with stretch allowance during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.



- D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.7 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.8 FRAMELESS MIRRORS

- A. Apply mastic to back of mirror "pats" spaced 4 pats/sq. ft.; adjust mirror so that it is plumb and in place to avoid distortion of reflecting images. Allow 1/8" space between back of mirror and wall surface.
  - 1. Apply "pats" using Palmer Electric Applicator.
- B. Apply stainless steel clips at mirror top and bottom; securely clip to substrate using non-corrosive anchors. At drywall back-up anchors must be secured to studs or steel wallplate spanning from stud to stud.

### 3.9 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- C. Clean excess sealant or compound from glass and framing members immediately after application, using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- D. Glass to be cleaned according to:
  - 1. GANA Glass Informational Bulletin GANA 01-0300 – "Proper Procedure for Cleaning Architectural Glass Products".
  - 2. GANA Glass Informational Bulletin GANA TD-02-0402 – "Heat Treated Glass Surfaces are Different".
- E. Do not use razor blades, scrapers or metal tools to clean glass.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

3.10 GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Interior: As indicated on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

SECTION 09 01 20

INTERIOR PLASTER PATCHING

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the plaster patching work for existing ceilings and walls scheduled to remain as specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Contractor shall survey all areas where existing plaster is shown to remain, in order to verify extent of patch or repair. Scope of work to include plaster patching at all areas scheduled to receive new paint, plaster skim coat or wall covering.
  2. Cutting out and removing existing interior plaster surfaces where needed to repair existing gypsum plaster.
  3. Cutting out and removing existing plaster on walls and ceilings as required for installation of new work.
  4. Repair and patching cracks, spalls, delaminations, breaks, losses, chips, holes or other defects in gypsum plaster surfaces.
  5. Repair of existing ornamental plaster designs and moldings, including making molds of existing designs for replication elsewhere as indicated.
  6. Providing plaster accessories and associated Work.
  7. Providing new plaster to align with existing plaster at existing walls and ceilings.
  8. Application of skim coat of plaster over new and existing plaster ceilings and walls to remain.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.



D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.

E. Painting - Section 099000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).
2. Gypsum wallboard shall contain "synthetic" gypsum produced with a minimum of 75% post-industrial recycled content, if readily available.
3. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
4. Steel framing and gypsum wallboard products harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
5. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
6. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

C. Conform to the following standards:

1. ASTM C 841 - Standard Specification For Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring.
2. ASTM C 842 - Standard Specification For Application of Interior Gypsum Plaster.
3. ASTM C 847 - Standard Specification For Metal Lath.
4. ASTM C 28 - Standard Specification For Gypsum Plasters.



5. ASTM C 631-81 - Standard Specification For Bonding Compounds For Interior Plastering.
6. ASTM C 35 - Standard Specification For Inorganic Aggregates For Use In Gypsum Plaster.
7. ASTM C 206 - Standard Specification For Finishing Hydrated Lime.

D. Allowable Tolerances: All plaster repairs shall be keyed and feathered to exactly match and continue edges and contours of existing plaster work. Repairs shall be true and flat in connections with adjacent surfaces when checked with an 8 ft. straight edge; do not exceed 1/8-inch variation in 8 ft. for bow, warp, plumb, or level for flat and curved surfaces.

E. Defects

1. Plastering with defects of such character as will mar the appearance of finished Work, or which is otherwise defective, shall be rejected, removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.
2. All ridges, ledges and visual irregularities shall be rejected, removed, and plaster replaced at the Contractor's expense.
3. Any defects or irregularities of plaster restoration work telegraphing through paint shall be cause for rejection of the Work. The Contractor shall remove any subsequent work, remove and replace the defective or irregular plaster restoration work and have the subsequent work replaced by skilled workman in the appropriate trades, to the satisfaction of the Commissioner, at the Contractor's expense.

F. Special Experience Requirements (SER)

1. Installer: The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this Section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope and type to the required work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).



- c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
- B. Materials List: Before any materials are delivered to the job site, submit a complete list of all the materials proposed to be furnished and installed.
- C. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for plaster materials, lath, metal support components, and accessories; including manufacturer's current recommendations as to methods and installation.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers or bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer.
- B. Store materials inside, under cover and in manner to keep them dry, protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, and damage from construction traffic and other causes. Neatly stack gypsum lath flat to prevent deformation.
- C. Handle gypsum lath to prevent damage to edges, ends or surfaces. Protect metal corner beads and trim from being bent or damaged.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements, General: Comply with requirements of referenced plaster application standards and recommendations of plaster manufacturer for environmental conditions before, during, and after application of plaster.
- B. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces in compliance with ASTM C 842 and as required to remove water in excess of that required for hydration of plaster. Begin ventilation immediately after plaster is applied and continue until it sets.

- C. Protection: Restoration of existing plaster shall be done in such manner as not to cause damage to contiguous work.

**PART II - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Gypsum Plaster: ASTM C 28. Neat plaster for hand application of scratch coat over metal lath and concrete shall contain not less than 0.01 percent by weight of synthetic or vegetable fibers or not less than 0.02 percent by weight of mineral fibers.
- B. Bond Compound: A plaster bonding compound having special bonding properties shall be used for application to concrete surfaces that have been sufficiently roughened to provide a mechanical key. The Bond Compound shall be "Plaster Weld" made by Larsen Mfg. Co. or approved equal. It shall be mixed and applied in strict accordance with the Manufacturer's directions.
- C. Plaster Crack Patching Compound: Provide "Sheetrock All Purpose Joint Compound Ready Mixed" as manufactured by U.S. Gypsum Co., or approved equal made by DAP; apply per manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Special Finishing Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 206. Lime putty shall be made from special finishing hydrated lime, machine mixed with water to form a putty and allowed to stand for at least 15 minutes before using. Approved measures shall be taken to protect the putty from sun and to prevent excessive evaporation when stored.
- E. Sand: ASTM C 35. Graduation of natural or manufactured sand for plaster shall be as follows:

U.S. Standard Sieve Size No.	Percentage Retained	
	Max.	Min.
4	0	0
8	10	0
16	40	10
30	65	30
50	100	95
100	100	95

- F. Water: Clean, fresh, potable, and free from injurious amounts of oils, acids, alkalis and organic matter injurious to the plaster.
- G. Metal Accessories: Grounds and casing corner beads shall be zinc-coated sheet steel, 26 ga. or heavier, with expanded or perforated flanges or clips so shaped and fabricated as to permit complete embedment in the plaster.

**2.2 MIXING OF PLASTER**

- A. Mix and apply plaster in accordance with the directions of the manufacturer.



- B. Texture of finishing coat shall match existing plaster.

## PART II - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where plaster work is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected by the Contractor in a manner acceptable to the Commissioner.

### 3.2 GENERAL

- A. Sequence plaster installation properly with the installation and protection of other work, so that neither will be damaged by the installation of other work.
- B. Cut out and replace all unbonded spots. Build in the work in others and do all cutting and patching of plaster in this connection. Where abutting other built-in materials, plaster shall be finished tightly against them and neatly trimmed, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plaster thicknesses indicated shall be considered as a minimum; plaster shall be of such thickness required to plumb and square wall surfaces so that plaster is flush with adjacent surfaces.
- D. Replicate, repair and restore flat wall plaster as indicated. Replicate repair and restore or move existing decorative moldings, applied panels, grooving and cast decoration as indicated.
- E. Plaster repairs shall be executed edge to edge in long strips or large areas for each separate coat. Where breaks are necessary lap new work over adjoining work.
- F. Bring finished surfaces of plaster to true planes. When complete surface shall be clean, free from blisters, pits, discoloration, cracks or other defects. In all cases the plastering throughout is to be delivered clean and perfect in every respect.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Inspect all surfaces to be plastered before beginning Work and correct all defects that will affect the proper execution of this Work.
- B. Carefully remove all soft, broken, loose or flaking plaster back to substrate and to solid adjacent plastering, making clean and sharp edges; cut back the existing plaster at an angle so that the patching will key properly and blend in with the existing surfaces at both sides of the crack. Where necessary, partially remove existing metal lath, leaving enough lath exposed to tie to new lath. Sweep masonry and lath clean and dampen immediately prior to replastering. Replace deteriorated wood lath with new wood lath to match existing. Concrete substrates shall be roughened to receive scratch or brown coats. Keys in masonry and metal lath substrates shall be cleaned of all existing plaster.



Masonry substrates shall be prewetted to prevent excessive suction and too rapid drying. Join new work and make flush with contiguous work.

- C. Cracks: Hairline cracks, random cracking and checking shall be repaired using plaster crack patching compound specified herein.
- D. Bonding compound shall be applied to all plaster, concrete and masonry surfaces for all plaster repairs. Application shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations and first and brown coats shall be applied directly over bonding compound.
- E. All preparation shall be done with compatible materials and methods that will not compromise the integrity of the plasters, and will not telegraph through finished surfaces.

#### 3.4 GYPSUM PLASTER ON METAL AND WOOD LATH, AND CONCRETE

- A. For Metal and Wood Lath Apply in Three (3) Coats: Scratch coat, brown coat and finish coat.
- B. For Concrete Substrates Repair With Bond Plaster: As noted above and in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- C. For Masonry: Apply in two (2) coats: Brown coat and finish coat.
- D. Scratch Coats: Apply with sufficient material and pressure to form full bond with solid base materials. Scratch the surface to form a bond for the brown coat.
- E. Brown Coats: Do not apply brown coat until after the scratch coat has hardened, and not less than 24 hours after application of the scratch coat. All joints in brown coat plaster shall be lap joints. After drying, all shrinkage cracks shall be cut out and filled with scratch coat plaster.
- F. Mix scratch and brown coats shall be mixed in the proportions of 100 lbs. gypsum neat plaster to 2-1/2 cu. ft. of sand. Scratch and brown coats of fibered gypsum plaster shall be mixed in the proportions of 100 lbs. fibered gypsum plaster to one cu. ft. of sand.
- G. Finish Coats: Gypsum gauging plaster finish. Mix in the proportion of one part calcined gypsum, to 3 parts of lime putty by volume. Apply bonding compound to existing base coat and then apply finish coat over base coat of gypsum plaster. The finish shall be allowed to draw a few minutes and then shall be well troweled with water to a smooth finish, free from blemishes. The thickness of finish coat shall be from 1/16" to 1/8" and total thickness of gypsum plaster shall be as indicated but no less than 5/8".
  - 1. At plaster ceilings to remain, apply bonding agent per manufacturer's instructions followed by skim coat of finish plaster applied 1/16" to 1/8" thick.



3.5 FINISHING

- A. Cut, patch, point-up and repair plaster as necessary to restore shrinkage cracks, dents and imperfections. Repair or replace work to eliminate blisters, buckles, excessive crazing and check cracking, dry-outs, efflorescence, sweat-outs and similar defects, and where bond to the substrate has failed. Patched surfaces in existing plaster surfaces shall be imperceptible.
- B. Sand smooth-troweled finishes lightly to remove trowel marks and arrises.
- C. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work. Remove plaster from other surfaces that are not to be plastered. Repair floors, walls and other surfaces that have been stained, marred or otherwise damaged during the plastering work. When plastering work is completed, remove unused materials, containers and equipment and clean floors of plaster debris.
- D. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner suitable to Installer, which ensures plaster work being without damage or deterioration at time of substantial completion.

END OF SECTION 09 01 20

**SECTION 09 03 20  
HISTORIC TREATMENT OF PLASTER**

**PART I - GENERAL**

**1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

**1.2. SUMMARY**

A. Section Includes:

1. Repair and replacement of interior gypsum plaster.
2. Skim coat of plaster over area indicated on contract documents, or areas damaged during construction.

B. Related Requirements:

1. For general historic treatment requirements including photographic documentation: Section 013591; "Historic Treatment Procedures".
2. For wood framing, grounds, and furring that support lath and plaster: Section 061000: "Rough Carpentry"

**1.3. PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to historic treatment of plaster including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Verify historic treatment specialist's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - b. Materials, material application, colors, patterns, and sequencing.
  - c. Fire-protection plan.
  - d. Plasterwork historic treatment program.
  - e. Photographic Documentation

**1.4. SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING**

A. Perform historic treatment of plaster in the following sequence, which includes work specified in this and other Sections:

1. Verify that temporary protections have been installed.
2. Examine condition of plaster surfaces.



3. Clean plaster surface and remove paint and other finishes to the extent required.
4. Repair and replace existing plaster and supports to the degree required for a uniform, tightly adhered surface on which to paint or apply other finishes.
5. Cure repaired surfaces and allow them to dry for proper finishing.
6. Apply skim coat on all wall surfaces previously covered.
7. Paint and apply other finishes.

1.5. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Where approved equivalent is proposed, submit manufacturers' application instructions and Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS). Include manufacturer's printed recommendations for product use.

1.6. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified historic treatment firms and persons performing the work of this section to demonstrate their capabilities and experience, including a list of completed projects, addresses, names of Architects and Owners, and description of the work performed.
- B. Plasterwork Historic Restoration Program: Prior to commencing work, submit for approval by Architect, a written schedule of work, including materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations proposed for each phase of restoration work including protection of surrounding materials within the building and project site.
- C. Dust Control Program: Prior to commencing work submit for approval by Architect, a written program for control of dust, including protection of surrounding materials within the building and project site.
- D. Protection Program: Prior to commencing work submit for approval by Architect, a written program for the protection of historic and other existing material to remain.

1.7. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Historic Treatment Specialist Qualifications: The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in size, scope and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government.
1. Historic treatment specialist must have a minimum experience of five (5) consecutive years and have successfully completed within those five (5) years at least five (5) projects of similar type and scope to the work required by this section.
  2. Firm shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on the Project site during times that any work on historic materials is in progress. Supervisors shall not be changed during project except for causes beyond control. Designation of the supervisor must be approved by the Architect.
- B. Plasterwork Historic Treatment Program: Prepare a written, detailed description of materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for historic treatment work and protection of surrounding materials and Project site.



1. Include methods and procedures to protect plastered surfaces from damage caused by construction operations, including, but not limited to, exposure to moisture, vibration, mechanical damage, and soiling.
2. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of historic treatment work, add a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects, and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

**1.8. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver packaged materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
- C. Store hydrated lime and factory-prepared lime putty in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
- D. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers.
- E. Store lime putty covered with water in sealed containers.
- F. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- G. Handle cast-plaster fabrications to prevent overstressing, chipping, defacement, and other damage.

**1.9. FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Comply with plaster-material manufacturers' written instructions and with ASTM C 842 requirements.
- B. Temperatures: Maintain temperatures in work areas at not less than 55 deg F (13 deg C) or greater than 80 deg F (27 deg C) for at least seven days before application of plaster, continuously during application, and for seven days after plaster has set or until plaster has dried.
- C. Conditioning: Acclimatize cast-plaster fabrications to ambient temperature and humidity of spaces in which they are installed. Remove packaging and move units into installation spaces not less than 48 hours before installing them.
- D. Avoid conditions that result in plaster drying out too quickly.
  1. Distribute heat evenly; prevent concentrated or uneven heat on plaster.
  2. Maintain relative humidity levels for prevailing ambient temperature that produce normal drying conditions.
  3. Ventilate work areas in a manner that prevents drafts of air from contacting surfaces during plaster application and until plaster is dry.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1. GYPSUM PLASTER MATERIALS**

- A. Base coat plasters: ASTM C28, types as indicated below.



1. Gypsum Neat Plaster: "Red Top Gypsum Plaster", "Red Top Two-Purpose Plaster (United States Gypsum Association), "Two-Way Hardwall Plaster (National Gypsum Co.), or approved equal.
2. High strength gypsum neat plaster with a minimum average dry compressive strength of 2,800 psi per ASTM C472 for a mix of 100 lbs. plaster and 2 cu. Ft. of sand such as "Structo-Base" (United States Gypsum Association), or approved equal.
3. Scratch and Brown Coat Plaster: Structo-Lite, by USG, or approved equal.

**B. Finish coat plasters: Types as indicated below:**

1. Gypsum gauging plaster: ASTM C28; for flatwork such as "Champion Gauging Plaster", Red Top Gauging Plaster, "Star Gauging Plaster (USGA), "Super-White Gauging Plaster (National Gypsum Co.), Graymont or approved equal.
2. Gypsum Ready-Mixed Finish Plaster: ASTM C 28/C 28M; manufacturer's standard, mill-mixed, gaged, interior finish, or approved equal

**C. Hydrated Lime: Grand Prize Hydrated Lime (Graymont Dolime OH Inc., 800-537-4489), Texas Lime Company, Oldcastle or approved equal.**

**D. Liquid Bonding Agent: Plasterweld (Larsen Products Corp. 800-633-6668), Lanco, Dap or approved equal**

**2.2. LATH**

**A. Metal Lath:**

1. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C 847, cold-rolled carbon-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized zinc coated.
  - a. Diamond-Mesh Lath: Self-furring, 2.5 lb/sq. yd. (1.4 kg/sq. m).

**2.3. TRIM ACCESSORIES**

**A. General: According to ASTM C 841 for gypsum plaster; coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.**

**B. Metal Accessories:**

1. Cornerite: Fabricated from expanded-metal lath with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
2. Striplath: Fabricated from expanded-metal lath with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
3. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel.
  - a. Small nose cornerbead with expanded flanges; use unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Small nose cornerbead with perforated flanges; use on curved corners.
  - c. Small nose cornerbead with expanded flanges reinforced by perforated stiffening rib; use on columns and for finishing unit masonry corners.

4. Casing Beads: Fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel; square-edged style; with expanded flanges.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1. HISTORIC TREATMENT OF PLASTER, GENERAL**

- A. Historic Treatment Appearance Standard: Completed work is to have a uniform appearance as viewed by Architect from building interior at 5 feet (1.5 m) away from surface.
- B. General: In treating historic plaster, disturb it as minimally as possible and as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Dismantle loose, damaged, or deteriorated plaster, lath, and support systems that cannot be repaired.
  2. Verify extent of plaster deterioration against that indicated on Drawings. Consult Architect on types and extent of required work.
  3. Verify that substrate surface conditions are suitable for repairs.
  4. Provide lath, furring, and support systems for plaster included in the work of this Section.
  5. Replace lost details in new, wet-applied plaster that replicates existing or indicated plaster configurations.
  6. Provide skim coat on all wall surfaces and flat ceiling surfaces designated for repair.
  7. Leave repaired plasterwork in proper condition for painting or applying other finishes as indicated.
  8. Install temporary protective measures to protect historic surfaces that shall be treated later.
- C. Illumination: Perform plastering work with adequate, uniform illumination that does not distort the flatness or curvature of surfaces.

#### **3.2. EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate and environmental conditions, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Masonry Substrates: Verify that mortar joints are struck flush. Notify Architect of undocumented masonry substrate without flush joints. Proceed with plastering as directed by Architect.
- C. Begin historic plastering work only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.3. PREPARATION FOR PLASTERING**

- A. Remove existing temporary patches of wood gypsum board and plaster.
- B. Substrates: Prepare according to plaster manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  1. Clean surfaces to remove dust, loose particles, grease, oil, incompatible curing compounds, form-release agents, and other foreign matter and deposits that could impair bond with plaster.



2. Remove ridges and protrusions greater than 1/8 inch (3 mm) and fill depressions greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) with patching material. Allow to set and dry.

**3.4. AT AREAS OF PLASTER REMOVAL FOR INSTALLATION OF NEW WORK**

**A. Repair plaster as follows:**

1. Affix expanded galvanized metal lath (diamond mesh).
2. Dry brush area to clean it of dust and debris.
3. Moisten surface.
4. Paint with liquid plaster-bonding agent (PlasterWeld) to accept new plaster.
5. Apply plaster in three coats over the metal lath beginning with a scratch coat. Lap each new layer of plaster over the old to join old and new plaster evenly.
6. Trowel the scratch coat (Structo-lite) to below the level of surrounding existing plaster. Before the scratch coat has set, rake and cross rake.
7. Apply brown coat (Structo-lite) when the scratch coat has set but not dried.
8. Ensure brown coat surface is below the level of surrounding existing plaster as required for application of finish coat.
9. Lightly rake brown coat.

**3.5. CRACK REPAIR (for cracks that result from demolition and construction activities)**

**A. If cracks are stable hairline map cracks that occur over a large area, repair as follows:**

1. Sound map cracked plaster surface to ensure soundness.
2. Rake out a sample of the crack to ensure that crack is stable.
3. Dry brush crack to remove loose debris.
4. Moisten surface.
5. Install fiberglass mesh tape over area of map cracks.
6. Apply Plasterweld.
7. Fill and level with finish coat (50% gauging plaster and 50% lime putty) when underlying coat has set but not dried. Match contours of existing adjacent plaster surfaces.
8. Sand plaster flush with surface and prepare for finishing.

**3.6. FINISHING**

**A. Apply the final skim coat on all vertical surfaces and all flat ceiling surfaces after all cracks and losses on the plaster have been filled with the recommended materials.**

1. Remove grease and dirt with alcohol or an approved cleaner.
2. Sand sound painted surfaces using a 400 grit mesh or approved equivalent.



3. Feather edges of paint to eliminate shadow lines in the finished surface.
4. Wipe down all surfaces with a damp sponge to remove dust and moisten plaster.
5. While surface is still moist, apply Plasterweld.
6. Apply skim coat composed of joint compound and gypsum plaster (70% compound and 30% gauging plaster by volume).
7. Apply so that the surface is smooth and clean as required for receiving new painted finish and preventing "telegraphing" of lines, ridges and flakes through new finish. Final thickness shall not exceed 1/8".
8. Feather the plaster thinly towards the adjacent moldings so that the skim coat does not diminish their legibility.

3.7. INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Completed plaster installation shall not deviate from a true plane by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) as measured by a 5-foot (1.5-m) straightedge placed at any location on a surface, except where existing plaster is retained as a substrate for new plasterwork.

3.8. CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of other trades against damage. Promptly remove plaster from surfaces not indicated to be repaired or plastered. Do not scratch or damage finished surfaces.
- B. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.
- C. Correct damage to other historic surfaces and to new work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work.

**END OF SECTION 090320**



SECTION 09 24 00

EXTERIOR LATH AND PLASTER

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the lath and plaster as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Suspended metal lath and suspension system.
  2. Self-furring metal lath over masonry or sheathing back-up.
  3. Portland cement lime stucco plaster for exterior wall surfaces.
  4. Accessories.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
1. Steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).
  2. Gypsum wallboard shall contain "synthetic" gypsum produced with a minimum of 75% post-industrial recycled content, if readily available.

3. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  4. Steel framing and gypsum wallboard products harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  5. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  6. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. Qualifications of Installers: For actual installation of lath and plaster, use only skilled journeyman plasterers with a minimum three (3) years experience who are completely familiar with the referenced standards and with the requirements for this work.
- D. Standards
1. Comply with ASTM C 926, Specifications for Application of Portland Cement Based Plaster.
  2. Comply with ASTM C 1063, Specifications for Installation of Lathing and Furring to receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement Based Plaster.
  3. Comply with minimum standards of ASTM C-847, Standard Specification for Metal Lath, galvanizing shall be G-90 coating.
  4. Comply with ASTM B-69 Standard Specification for Rolled Zinc.
  5. National Lime Assoc. recommendations and standards.
  6. Portland Cement Assoc. Plasterer's Manual.
- E. Allowable Tolerances: For flat surfaces, do not exceed 1/8" in 10'-0" for bow or warp of surface, and for plumb or level.
- F. Plaster wall assemblies shall be fabricated and installed so that deflection of plaster surfaces does not exceed L/360 when subject to a lateral load of 30 psf.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:



- a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
  - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the
- B. **Materials List:** Before any lath and plaster materials are delivered to the job site, submit to the Commissioner a complete list of all materials proposed to be furnished and installed under this portion of the Work, Samples of all accessories, and copies of the manufacturer's current recommendations as to methods and installation.
- C. **Shop Drawings:** Submit shop drawings of furring and lathing framing and control joint locations. Shop drawings shall detail the installation of lath, including lath discontinuity, lath fastening and fastener support requirements.
- D. **Samples:** Submit 12" x 12" sample panels of plaster showing finish described herein including each color required.
- 1.5 **PRODUCT HANDLING**
- A. **General**
1. Deliver all manufactured products to the site in their original unopened containers with all labels intact and legible at the time of use.
  2. Do not permit scattering of materials or equipment but use all means necessary to ensure neatness of the site and structure at all times.
  3. Perform all cleaning of tools and equipment only in the areas set aside for that purpose.



- B. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades. Store all materials off the ground
- C. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

#### 1.6 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Do not apply plaster when ambient temperature is less than 32 deg. F., or when less than 40 deg. F. and falling.
- B. In hot weather (above 75 deg. F.) protect cement plaster from direct sunlight and wind until fully cured.
- C. Protect contiguous work from soiling, spattering, moisture, deterioration and other harmful effects which might result from plastering.

### PART II - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL PRODUCTS

##### A. Lath

- 1. For wall surfaces, provide 3.4 lb. galvanized, paper-backed, self-furring junior diamond mesh made by U.S. Gypsum Co., or approved equal complying with ASTM C-847 with G-90 galvanized steel coating.
- 2. Lath shall be paper backed over wall sheathing only.
- 3. Lath shall be self furring over CMU and/or concrete back up.

- B. All galvanizing shall be hot-dip galvanizing conforming to ASTM A 653, G-90 coating.

#### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Two-Piece Control Joints: Manufacturer's standard roll formed pair of zinc alloy casing beads with modified back flanges providing positive slip joint action and dust barrier, adjustable for joint width variation of 1/8" to 5/8".
  - 1. The Contractor may, at his option, provide "Double J" (XJ-15) expansion joint fabricated of hot dipped galvanized steel made by California Expanded Metal Lath Products Co.
- B. Corner and Casing Beads: Provide expanded flange beads at all plaster terminations of zinc alloy material; conforming to ASTM B-69, manufactured by U.S. Gypsum Co. or approved equal.

C. Other Accessories: Provide furring brackets, fasteners and other accessories for complete plaster installation fabricated of galvanized steel meeting standards noted above.

1. Fasteners shall be hot dip galvanized steel self drilling screws for attaching to metal.

2.3 PORTLAND CEMENT/LIME STUCCO SYSTEM

A. Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Types 1.

2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 206, Type S.

3. Aggregate (sand): ASTM C 144 with the following gradation:

Sieve Size # Each Sieve	Percentage	Passing
8	100%	
16	60-90%	
30	35-70%	
50	10-30%	
100	0-5%	

4. Water: All water must be fit to drink.

B. Assembly: For scratch and brown coat mixes conform to ASTM C 926; add "Acryl 60" made by Thoro or approved equal acrylic admixture to both coats using 1:3 mix (1 part acrylic admixture to 3 parts water).

1. Finish Coat Mix: Factory prepared stucco finish containing all necessary materials except water.

2. Unacceptable Additives: Do not use air entraining admixtures in any stucco mixes.

PART II - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Examine the areas and conditions where lath and plaster is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 LATH APPLIED OVER WALL SURFACES

A. Lap lath 1" at ends and 2" at laps. Fasten lath to masonry with 1" long nail drive anchor with 2" dia. galvanized plate equal to "Zamac Nailin" made by Rawl or approved equal

space 8" o.c. both directions. Fasten lath through sheathing into metal stud supports using self tapping corrosion resistant sheet metal screws spaced 8" o.c. vertically at each stud.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF PLASTERING ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchor accessories to the plaster base or substrate 8" o.c. along each flange, by wire tying to lath.
- B. Miter or cope exposed portions of accessory items at corners, and install with tight joints. Spline splices to avoid off-sets; conceal splines.
- C. Set exposed accessories plumb, level and true to line, with a tolerance of 1/8" in 10'-0". Shim as required and align units with adjoining work in a manner which will produce the best possible visual effect.
- D. Install metal casing beads where shown and at the following locations:
  - 1. At openings and terminations of plaster finish where otherwise edge of plaster would be exposed.
  - 2. Where plaster abuts adjacent wall.
  - 3. Where plaster abuts other finish, and termination is not lapped by other finish.
- E. Install control joints where indicated on approved shop drawings; space control joints in accordance with ASTM C1063. Control joints shall limit the maximum panel area to 144 sq. ft. with a maximum aspect ratio of 2 to 1.
  - 1. Mount control joint flanges by 18 ga. wire-ties to the lath only.

### 3.4 GENERAL PLASTERING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Mechanically mix plaster materials at the project site; do not hand mix except where small amounts are needed, using less than one bag of plaster material.
- B. Sequence plaster installation properly with the installation and protection of other work, so that neither will be damaged by the installation of other work.
- C. Cut out and replace all unbonded spots. Build in the work of others and do all cutting and patching of plaster in this connection. Where abutting other built-in materials, plaster shall be finished tightly against them and be neatly trimmed.
- D. Repair surface defects. Surfaces shall be within 1/32" to 1/16" of true plane.

### 3.5 CEMENT LIME STUCCO APPLICATION

- A. Environmental Conditions: Where there is not danger of freezing for a period of 48 hrs. after application and surface temperature can be maintained at 50 deg. F. during the hydration period, stucco work may proceed.



**B. Portland Cement Plaster**

1. Portland cement plaster/lime stucco shall be thoroughly mixed and worked in small batches, and after mixing it shall be allowed to stand until initial set is about to begin, when it shall be reworked just prior to application.
2. Scratch coat shall be full and approx. 3/8" thick, applied with sufficient force to form good keys. Scratch coat shall be evenly cross-scratched upon attaining its initial set.
  - a. Surface mist the scratch coat with water four (4) times daily for 72 hours after application.
3. Brown coat shall be applied after the scratch coat has set. Apply with sufficient force to ensure tight contact with scratch coat. Thickness of brown coat shall be approx. 3/8". Bring brown coat to a true and even surface by floating or rodding. The brown coat shall be lightly scratched and broomed, shall be kept moist by surface misting with water four (4) times daily for 48 hours after application
4. Finish coat shall not be applied until the brown coat has seasoned for 7 days. Just before application of the finish coat, the brown coat shall again be evenly moistened with a fog spray for 48 hours. Thickness of finish coat shall be sufficient to secure texture required, but not less than 1/8".
  - a. After stirring to a homogeneous consistency, the finish shall be applied to the entire wall surface in a continuous application.
  - b. Finish shall be trowel or spray applied per manufacturer's application instructions.
  - c. Finish shall be moist cured immediately after placement as per ASTM C926.
  - d. No additives shall be added under any circumstances.
  - e. Furnish color and texture to match approved sample.
5. Total thickness of plaster shall be no less than 1".

**3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Cut, patch, point-up and repair plaster as necessary to accommodate other work and to restore work, free from cracks, dents and imperfections. Repair or replace work to eliminate blisters, buckles, and excessive crazing defects, including areas of the work which do not comply with specified tolerances, and where bond to the substrate has failed.
- B. Sand plaster lightly to remove trowel marks and arrises.

**3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Promptly remove plaster from surfaces which are not to be plastered. Repair floors, walls and other surfaces which have been stained, marred or otherwise damaged during the plastering work. When plastering work is completed, remove unused materials, containers and equipment and clean floors of plaster debris.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

END OF SECTION 09 24 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM

EXTERIOR LATH AND PLASTER  
09 24 00 - 8

SECTION 09 29 00

GYPSUM DRYWALL

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the gypsum drywall as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Gypsum board work for partitions, ceilings, column enclosures, furring, and elsewhere where gypsum drywall work is shown on drawings.
  2. Gypsum sheathing and related accessory materials at exterior duct shaft construction.
  3. Metal supports for gypsum drywall construction.
  4. Acoustical insulation for gypsum drywall work.
  5. Sealant for gypsum drywall work.
  6. Concealed metal reinforcing for attachment of railings, toilet partitions and other items supported on drywall partitions and walls.
  7. Taping and finishing of drywall joints.
  8. Installing rings and frames in drywall surfaces for grilles, registers and lighting fixtures.
  9. Gypsum wallboard cants at beams and other projections over 2" deep in elevator shafts where adjoining wall is of gypsum wallboard construction.
  10. Gypsum shaftwall construction.
  11. Bracing and connections.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Hollow metal door frames - Section 081113.



- B. Access Doors - Section 083113.
- C. Painting and Finishing - Section 099000.
- D. Rings for grilles, registers and light fixtures - Division 23 and 26.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **LEED BUILDING - General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. **LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria:** The following criteria are **REQUIRED** for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).
  - 2. Gypsum wallboard shall contain "synthetic" gypsum produced with a minimum of 75% post-industrial recycled content, if readily available.
  - 3. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - 4. Steel framing and gypsum wallboard products harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  - 5. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  - 6. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. The following standards, as well as other standards which may be referred to in this Section, shall apply to the work of this Section:
  - 1. The Gypsum Construction Handbook, latest edition, USG.
  - 2. Construction Guide, latest edition, National Gypsum.



3. ASTM A 568 "Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements For"
  4. ASTM C 475 "Standard Specification for Joint Treatment Materials For Gypsum Wallboard Construction"
  5. ASTM C 645 "Standard Specification for Non-Structural Steel Framing Members"
  6. ASTM C 754 "Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw Attached Gypsum Panel Products"
  7. ASTM C 840 "Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board"
  8. ASTM C 919 "Standard Specification for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications"
  9. ASTM C 954 "Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws For the Application of Gypsum Board or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. to 0.112 in. in Thickness"
  10. ASTM C 1002 "Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws For the Application of Gypsum Board"
  11. ASTM C 1177 "Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing"
  12. ASTM C 1178 "Standard Specification for Glass Mat Water Resistant Gypsum Backing Board"
  13. ASTM C 1278 "Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Panel"
  14. ASTM C 1396 "Standard Specification for Gypsum Board"
  15. ASTM D 3273 "Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber"
- D. Allowable Tolerances: 1/32" offsets between planes of board faces, and 1/16" in 8'-0" for plumb, level, warp and bow.
- E. System Design Load
1. Provide standard drywall wall assemblies designed and tested by manufacturer to withstand a lateral load of 5 lbs. per sq. ft. for the maximum wall height required, and with deflection limited to L/240 of partition height.
    - a. Drywall assemblies with tile finish shall have a deflection limit of L/360.
  2. Provide drywall ceiling assemblies designed, fabricated and installed to have a deflection not to exceed L/360.



- F. **Fire-Resistance Rating:** Where gypsum drywall with fire resistance ratings are indicated, provide materials and installations which are identical with those of applicable assemblies tested per ASTM E 119 by fire testing laboratories, or to design designations in UL "Fire Resistance Directory" or in listing of other testing agencies acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and compliant with UL Test #2079; criteria for cycle movement for all field height wall sections requiring allowance for vertical deflection within framing details.
- G. **Installer:** Firm with not less than three (3) years of successful experience in the installation of specified materials.
- H. **Comply with New York City Section 32-05 of Chapter 32 of Title 1 of the Official Compilation of the Rules of the City of New York regarding "Impact Resistant Stair and Elevator Enclosures" when such enclosures are of gypsum drywall construction.**

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  - 2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  - 3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits.)



- B. Submit shop drawing for each drywall partition, furring and ceiling system showing size and gauges of framing members, hanger and anchorage devices, wallboard types, insulation, sealant, methods of assembly and fastening, control joints indicating column lines, corner details, joint finishing and relationship of drywall work to adjacent work.
- C. Samples: Each material specified herein, 12" x 12", or 12" long, or in manufacturer's container, as applicable for type of material submitted.
- D. Manufacturer's Literature: Submit technical and installation instructions for each drywall partition, furring and ceiling system specified herein, and for each fire-rated and sound-rated gypsum board assembly. Submit other data as required to show compliance with these specifications, including data for mold resistant joint compound.
- E. Test Reports: This Contractor shall submit test report, obtained by drywall manufacturer, indicating conformance of drywall assemblies to required fire ratings and sound ratings.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING AND PROTECTION

- A. Deliver, store and handle drywall work materials to prevent damage. Deliver materials in their original, unopened containers or bundles, and store where protected from moisture, damage and from exposure to the elements. Store wallboard in flat stacks.
- B. Protect wallboard from becoming wet.

#### 1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Provide and maintain minimum temperature of fifty-five (55) degrees F. and adequate ventilation to eliminate excessive moisture within the building in the area of the drywall work for at least twenty-four (24) hours, prior to, during and after installation of drywall work. Installation shall not start until windows are glazed and doors are installed, unless openings are temporarily closed. Space above suspended ceilings shall be vented sufficiently to prevent temperature and pressure build up.

#### 1.8 JOB MOCK-UP

- A. At a suitable location, where directed by the Commissioner, lay up a portion of a finished wall and ceiling demonstrating the quality of work, including finishing, to be obtained under this Section. Omit drywall boards in locations as directed by the Commissioner to show stud spacing and attachments; after acceptance, complete assembly.
- B. Adjust the finishing techniques as required to achieve the finish required by the Commissioner as described in this Section of these specifications.
- C. Upon approval of the mock-up, the mock-up may be left in place as a portion of the finished work of this Section.
- D. All drywall work shall be equal in quality to approved mock-up.



## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers for Gypsum Drywall Panels and Accessories: U.S. Gypsum Co., Georgia Pacific, Lafarge North America, or National Gypsum Co. meeting specification requirements are acceptable.
  - 1. All drywall products must be manufactured in North America.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers for Metal Supports of Drywall Assemblies: Unless otherwise noted, provide products manufactured by Dietrich Metal Framing, Super Stud Building Products, Marino/Ware, Clark Western or approved equal.

### 2.2 METAL SUPPORTS

#### A. Metal Floor and Ceiling Runners

- 1. Channel Type: Formed from 20 U.S. Std. gauge (unless otherwise noted) galvanized steel, width to suit channel type metal studs. Use 20 ga. top runners with 1-1/4" minimum flanges.
- 2. Ceiling runners and head of wall connections at rated partitions shall conform to UL #2079 for cycle movement. Provide positive mechanical connection of framing to structure, allowing for vertical movement within connections. Minimum of 20 ga. galvanized steel for clips, 25 ga. galvanized steel for ceiling runners. Providing a friction free – anti-seizure movement capacity.
  - a. As manufactured by the Steel Network, VertiClip or VertiTrack or equal made by Metal-Lite Inc.
  - b. FireTrak (including stud clips) by FireTrak Corp. or equal made by Metal-Lite Inc.
- 3. "J" Type: Formed from 20 U.S. Std. gauge galvanized steel, 1" x 2-1/2" or 4" wide (to suit detail) x 2-1/4" (for shaft wall).

#### B. Metal Studs, Framing and Furring

- 1. Channel Type Studs: Channel type with holes for passage of conduit formed from minimum 20 U.S. Std. gauge (unless heavier gauge is required to meet deflection limits) galvanized steel, width as shown on drawings.
- 2. Furring Channels: Hat shaped, formed from galvanized steel, 25 U.S. Std. gauge.
- 3. "C-H," "CT," or "I" Type Stud: 1-1/2" x 2-1/2", 4" or 6" wide (to suit detail) galvanized steel. Use for shaft wall construction; gauge and size as required to meet deflection limits given herein.



4. Double "E" Type Stud or "J" Track with Holding Tabs: 1" x 2-1/2", 4" or 6" wide (to suit detail) galvanized steel. Use for shaft wall construction; gauge and size as required to meet deflection limits given herein.
5. Continuous 16 gauge x 8" wide steel wall plate screwed to studs as required for support of railings, toilet partitions and other items supported on drywall partitions and walls.

C. Suspended Ceiling and Fascia Supports

1. Main Runners: 1-1/2" steel channels, cold rolled at 0.475 lbs. per ft., rust-inhibitive paint finish.
2. Furring Members: Screw-type hat-shaped furring channels of 25 ga. zinc-coated steel; comply with ASTM C 645.
3. Hangers: Galvanized, 1" x 3/16" flat steel slats capable of supporting 5x calculated load supported.
4. Hanger Anchorages: Provide inserts, clips, bolts, screws and other devices applicable to the required method of structural anchorage for ceiling hangers. Size devices for 5x calculated load supported.
5. Furring Anchorages: 16 ga. galvanized wire ties, manufacturer's standard clips, bolts or screws as recommended by furring manufacturer.

- D. All galvanized steel members shall have coating conforming to ASTM A 653, G60.

2.3 GYPSUM WALLBOARD TYPES

- A. Gypsum Wall Board: 1/2", 5/8" and 3/4" thick as indicated on drawings, "Sheetrock" by USG, or "Gold Bond" by National Gypsum, 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
- B. Fire Rated Gypsum Wall Board: 1/2" thick and 5/8" thick as indicated on drawings, "Sheetrock Firecode C" by USG, "Firecheck Type C" by Lafarge/Continental, or "Gold Bond Fireshield" by National Gypsum, 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
- C. Water Resistant Backing Board for Tile Finish: 5/8" thick, "Fiberock Aqua-Tough" by USG, "Dens-Shield Tile Backer Board" by Georgia Pacific, or "EXP Tile Backer Board" by National Gypsum. Cover joints with a pressure sensitive woven glass fiber tape equal to Imperial Type P Tape.
- D. Moisture/Mold Resistant Gypsum Wall Board (for areas in toilet rooms, lockers, janitor's closets not scheduled to receive ceramic tile, or where fire rating is required): 1/2" thick and 5/8" thick as indicated on drawings, "Mold Tough" or "Mold Tough FR" by U.S. Gypsum, "DensArmor Plus" by Georgia Pacific, "Mold Defense" and/or "Mold Defense Type X" by Lafarge/Continental, or "Gold Bond EXP Interior Extreme



Gypsum Board" by National Gypsum, 48" wide, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.

1. Board must have a rating of 10 per ASTM D 3273 with a core that meets ASTM C 1396, Section 6 or ASTM C 1658.
- E. Mold Resistant Shaft Wall Liner: Solid gypsum board liner for shaft wall construction, 1" thick, 24" wide, as required to suit condition, by standard lengths as required, beveled edges. Provide "Mold Tough Liner Panel" by USG, "DensGlass Ultra Shaft Guard" by Georgia Pacific, "Mold Defense Shaftliner Type X" and/or "Weather Defense Shaftliner Type X" by Lafarge/Continental, or "Gold Bond Brand Fireshield Shaft Liner XP" or "Gold Bond Brand EXP Extended Exposure Shaft Liner" by National Gypsum.
1. Liner board must have a rating 10 per ASTM D 3273 with a core that meets ASTM C 1396 Section 6.
- F. Mold Resistant Paperless Wall Board (at all perimeter walls and wet shafts): 1/2" and 5/8" thick as indicated on drawings, 48" wide "Mold Tough Glass Mat Interior Panel" by USG, "DensArmour Plus" by Georgia Pacific, "Weather Defense Platinum Interior" by Lafarge/Continental, "Gold Bond Brand EXP Interior Extreme" by National Gypsum, or approved equal that has a rating of 10 per ASTM D 3273 with core that meets ASTM C 1396, Section 6 or ASTM C 1658.
- G. Cement Board (for tile backer board in shower areas and wherever else scheduled): 1/2" thick "Durock Tile Backer Board" by USG, "Wonder Board Lite" by Custom Building Products, or approved equal

#### 2.4 MATERIALS FOR EXTERIOR DUCT SHAFT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Mold Resistant Shaft Wall Liner: Solid gypsum board liner for shaft wall construction, 1" thick, 24" wide, as required to suit condition, by standard lengths as required, beveled edges. Provide "DensGlass Ultra Shaft Guard" by Georgia Pacific, or equivalent product of U.S. Gypsum Co., Lafarge/Continental, National Gypsum Co., or approved equal.
1. Liner board must have a rating 10 per ASTM D 3273 with a core that meets ASTM C 1396 Section 6.
- B. C-H Stud: Galvanized steel, of dimensions indicated on the drawings. Use for shaft wall construction; gauge and size as required to meet deflection limits indicated.
- C. Thermal and Acoustical Insulation: Provide semi-rigid, mineral-wool insulation equal to "Thermafiber FS-25" made by the Thermafiber Co. or equivalent product of Fibrex, Roxul, or approved equal, conforming to ASTM C 612, Type 1A and 1B faced on one side with foil scrim Kraft vapor retarder, maximum flame spread and smoke developed indices of 25 and 5 respectively. Insulation shall have an R value of not less than 3.7 per inch. Provide thickness as indicated on the drawings.



- D. Gypsum Sheathing: 1/2" thick "Dens-Glass Fireguard," Type X, made by Georgia Pacific, or equivalent product of U.S. Gypsum Co., National Gypsum Co., Lafarge/Continental, or approved equal, meeting ASTM C 1177, Type X.
- E. Paper-Backed Metal Lath and Stucco: Refer to Section 092400.
- F. Sheet Metal Flashing: Refer to Section 076200.
- G. Roofing Interface Materials: New materials to match and be compatible with existing materials; coordinate with the City of New York and roof membrane manufacturers. Contractor shall coordinate work with roof membrane manufacturers to insure continuity of warranty and shall submit written authorization from the roof manufacturers stating that all work has been done in accordance with procedures that allow warranty to remain in effect.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Acoustical Insulation: Paper-less, non-combustible, semi-rigid mineral fiber mat, 2" thick, in walls (unless otherwise indicated), 3 lb./cu. ft. maximum density; Thermafiber LLC "Thermafiber," or approved equal.
- B. Fasteners for Wall Board: USG Brand Screws; Type S Bugle Head for fastening wallboard to lighter gauge interior metal framing (up to 20 ga.). Type S-12 Bugle Head for fastening wallboard to heavier gauge interior metal framing (20 ga. to 12 ga.); Type S and Type S-12 Pan Head for attaching metal studs to door frames and runners; and Type G Bugle Head for fastening wallboard to wall board. Lengths specified below under "Part 3 - Execution" Articles and as recommended by drywall manufacturer.
  - 1. For Portland cement base boards, fasteners shall be equal to Durock Steel Screws by U.S. Gypsum.
- C. Laminating Adhesive: "Sheetrock Brand Joint Compound."
- D. Metal Trim - Corner Beads: For 90 degree External Corners - "Dur-A-Bead" No. 103, 27 U.S. Std. ga. galvanized steel, 1-1/4" x 1-1/4", for 90 degree external corners.
- E. Metal Trim - Edge Beads: "Sheetrock Brand Paper Faced Metal Bead and Trim."
- F. Metal Trim Treatment Materials and Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Drywall Boards: Paper tape for joint reinforcing; Setting Type (Durabond 90) or Lightweight Setting Type Joint Compound for taping and topping; and Ready Mix Compound for finishing.
  - 1. For mold-resistant drywall, water resistant drywall, and tile backer board, use glass mesh tape with setting joint compound that is rated 10 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3273 and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D 3274. Acceptable joint compound is "Rapid Set One Pass" made by CTS Cement Manufacturing Corp. or "Rapid Joint" manufactured by Lafarge North America or approved equal meeting standards noted herein.



- G. Control Joints: No. 0.093, USG.
- H. Acoustical Sealant: USG "Acoustical Sealant" or "Tremco Acoustical Caulking" of Tremco Mfg. Co., or approved equal.
- I. Neoprene Gaskets: Conform to ASTM D 1056.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where gypsum drywall is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

##### A. General

1. Install drywall work in accordance with drywall manufacturer's printed instructions and as indicated on drawings and specified herein.
  2. All metal framing for drywall partitions shall extend from floor to underside of structural deck above. Provide for vertical deflection with positive mechanical connections of framing members to structure.
  3. Provide concealed reinforcement, 16 ga. thick by eight (8) inches wide or as detailed or as recommended by manufacturer, for attachment of railings, toilet partitions, and other items to be supported on the partitions which cannot be attached to the metal framing members. Concealed reinforcement shall span between metal studs and be attached thereto using two (2) self-tapping pan head screws at each stud.
    - a. Back of drywall shall be scored or notched to prevent bulging out where reinforcement plate occurs.
- B. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install fire-rated assemblies in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, Underwriters' Laboratories and test results obtained and published by the drywall manufacturer, for the fire-rated drywall assembly types indicated on the drawings.
  - C. Acoustical Assemblies: Install acoustically-rated assemblies to achieve a minimum STC as noted on drawings, in accordance with test results obtained and published by the drywall manufacturer, for the drywall assembly type indicated on the drawings.



D. Sealant

1. Install continuous acoustical sealant bead at top and bottom edges of wallboard where indicated or required for sound rating as wallboard is installed, and between metal trim edge beads and abutting construction.
2. Install acoustical sealant in 1/8" wide vertical control joints within the length of the wall or partitions, and in all other joints, specified below under "Control Joints." Install bead of acoustical sealant around electric switch and outlet boxes, piping, ducts, and around any other penetration in the wallboard; place sealant bead between penetrations and edge of wallboard.
3. Where sealant is exposed to view, protect adjacent surfaces from damage and from sealant material, and tool sealant flush with and in same plane as wallboard surface. Sealant beads shall be 1/4" to 3/8" diameter.

E. Wall Board Application

1. Do not install wallboard panels until steel door frames are in place; coordinate work with Section 081113, "Steel Doors and Frames."
2. See drawings for all board types. Use fire-rated wallboard for fire-rated assemblies. Use water-resistant wallboard where indicated on drawings and where wallboard would be subject to moisture. Install water-resistant wallboard in full, large sheets (no scraps) to limit number of butt joints.
3. Apply wallboard with long dimension parallel to stud framing members, and with abutting edges occurring over stud flanges.
4. Install wallboard for partitions from floor to underside of structure above and secure rigidly in place by screw attachment, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Provide "Thermafiber" safing insulation meeting standards of Section 078413 at flutes of metal deck where partitions carry up to bottom of metal deck.
6. Neatly cut wallboard to fit around outlets, switch boxes, framed openings, piping, ducts, and other items which penetrate wallboard; fill gaps with acoustic sealant.
7. Where wallboard is to be applied to curved surfaces, dampen wallboard on back side as required to obtain required curve. Finish surface shall present smooth, even curve without fluting or other imperfections.
8. Screw fasten wallboard with power-driven electric screw driver, screw heads to slightly depress surface of wallboard without cutting paper, screws not closer than 3/8" from ends and edges of wallboard.
9. Where studs are doubled-up, screw fasten wallboard to both studs in a staggered pattern.



**F. Cementitious Backer Board**

1. **General:** Furnish cementitious backer board in maximum available lengths. Install horizontally, with end joints over framing members.
2. **Fastening:** Secure cementitious backer board to each framing member with screws spaced not more than 12 inches on center and not closer than 1/2" from the edge. Install screws with a conventional screw gun so that the screw heads are flush with the surface of the board.
3. **Joint Treatment:** Fill space between edge of backer and receptor with dry-set Portland cement or latex-Portland cement mortar. Fill all horizontal and vertical joints and corners with dry-set Portland cement or latex-Portland cement mortar. Apply fiberglass tape over joints and corners and embed with same mortar.

**G. Metal Trim:** Install and mechanically secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; and finish with three (3) coats of joint compound, feathered and finish sanded smooth with adjacent wallboard surface, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. **Corner Beads:** Install specified corner beads in single lengths at all external corners, unless corner lengths exceed standard stock lengths.
2. **Edge Beads:** Install specified edge beads in single lengths at all terminating edges of wallboard exposed to view, where edges abut dissimilar materials, where edges would be exposed to view, and elsewhere where shown on drawings. Where indicated on drawings, seal joint between metal edge bead and adjoining surface with specified gasket, 1/8" wide minimum and set back 1/8" from face of wallboard, unless other size and profile indicated on drawings.
3. **Casing beads** shall be set in long lengths, neatly butted at joints. Provide casing beads at juncture of board and vertical surfaces and at exposed perimeters.

**H. Control Joint Locations:** Gypsum board surfaces shall be isolated with control joints where:

1. Ceiling abuts a structural element, dissimilar wall or other vertical penetration.
2. Construction changes within the plane of the partition or ceiling.
3. Shown on approved shop drawings.
4. Ceiling dimensions exceed thirty (30) feet in either direction.
5. Wings of "L," "U," and "T" shaped ceiling areas are joined.
6. Expansion or control joints occur in the structural elements of the building.
7. Shaftwall runs exceed 30' without interruption.



8. Partition or furring abuts a structural element or dissimilar wall or ceiling.
9. Partition or furring runs exceed 30' without interruption.
10. Where control joints are required, ceiling height door frames may be used as control joints. Less than ceiling height frames shall have control joints extending to the ceiling from both corners.

I. Joint Treatment and Spackling

1. Joints between face wallboards in the same plane, joints at internal corners of intersecting partitions and joints at internal corners of intersections between ceilings and walls or partitions shall be filled with joint compound.
2. Screw heads and other depressions shall be filled with joint compound. Joint compound shall be applied in three (3) coats, feathered and finish surface sanded smooth with adjacent wallboard surface, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Treatment of joints and screw heads with joint compound is also required where wallboard will be covered by finish materials which require a smooth surface, such as vinyl wall coverings.

3.3 FURRED WALLS AND PARTITIONS

- A. Use specified metal furring channels. Run metal furring channel framing members vertically, space sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum. Fasten furring channels to concrete or masonry surfaces with power-driven fasteners or concrete stub nails spaced sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum through alternate wing flanges (staggered) of furring channel. Furring channels shall be shimmed as necessary to provide a plumb and level backing for wallboard. At inside of exterior walls, an asphalt felt protection strip shall be installed between each furring channel and the wall. Furring channel and splices shall be provided by nesting channels at least eight (8) inches and securely anchoring to concrete or masonry with two (2) fasteners in each wing.
- B. Wallboard Installation: Same as specified under Article 3.4 - "Metal Stud Partitions."

3.4 METAL STUD PARTITIONS

- A. Unless otherwise noted, steel framing members shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C754.
- B. Runner Installation: Use channel type. Align accurately at floor according to partition layout. Anchor runners securely sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum with power-driven anchors to floor slab, with power-driven anchors to structural slab above. See "Stud Installation" below for runners over heads of metal door frames. Where required, carefully remove sprayed-on fireproofing to allow partition to be properly installed.
- C. Stud Installation



1. Use channel type, positioned vertically in runners, spaced as noted on drawings, but not more than sixteen (16) inches o.c.
  2. Anchor studs to floor runners with screw fasteners. Provide snap-in or slotted hole slip joint bolt connections of studs to ceiling runners leaving space for movement. Anchor studs at partition intersections, partition corners and where partition abuts other construction to floor and ceiling runners with sheet metal screws through each stud flange and runner flange.
  3. Connection at ceiling runner for non-rated partitions shall be snap-in or slotted hole slip joint bolt connection that shall allow for movement. Seal studs abutting other construction with 1/8" thick neoprene gasket continuously between stud and abutting construction.
  4. Connections for fire rated partitions at ceiling runners shall conform to UL Design #2079.
  5. Install metal stud horizontal bracing wherever vertical studs are cut or wallboard is cut for passage of pipes, ducts or other penetrations, and anchor horizontal bracing to vertical studs with sheet metal screws.
  6. At jambs of door frames and borrowed light frames, install doubled-up studs (not back to back) from floor to underside of structural deck, and securely anchor studs to jamb anchors of frames and to runners with screws. Provide cross braces from hollow metal frames to underside of slab.
  7. Over heads of door frames, install cut-to-length section of runner with flanges slit and web bent to allow flanges to overlap adjacent vertical studs, and securely anchor runner to adjacent vertical studs with sheet metal screws. Install cut-to-length vertical studs from runner (over heads of door frame) to ceiling runner sixteen (16) inches maximum o.c. and at vertical joints of wallboard, and securely anchor studs to runners with sheet metal screws.
  8. At control joints, in field of partition, install double-up studs (back to back) from floor to ceiling runner, with 1/4" thick continuous compressible gasket between studs. When necessary, splice studs with eight (8) inches minimum nested laps and attach flanges together with two (2) sheet metal screws in each flange. All screws shall be self-tapping sheet metal screws.
- D. Runners and Studs at Chase Wall: As specified above for "Runners" and "Studs" and as specified herein. Chase walls shall have either a single or double row of floor and ceiling runners with metal studs sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum and positioned vertically in the runners so that the studs are opposite each other in pairs with the flanges pointing in the same direction. Anchor all studs to runner flanges with sheet metal screws through each stud flange and runner flange following requirements of paragraph 3.4, B. Provide cross bracing between the rows of studs by attaching runner channels or studs set full width of chase attached to vertical studs with one self-tapping screw at each end. Space cross bracing not over thirty-six (36) inches o.c. vertically.



**E. Wallboard Installation - Single Layer Application (Screw Attached)**

1. Install wallboard with long dimension parallel to framing member and with abutting edge joints over web of framing member. Install wallboard with long dimension perpendicular to framing members above and below openings in drywall extending to second stud at each side of opening. Joints on opposite sides of wall shall be arranged so as to occur on different studs.
2. Boards shall be fastened securely to metal studs with screws as specified. Where a free end occurs between studs, back blocking shall be required. Center abutting ends over studs. Correct work as necessary so that faces of boards are flush, smooth, true.
3. Wallboard screws shall be applied with an electric screw gun. Screws shall be driven not less than 3/8" from ends or edges of board to provide uniform dimple not over 1/32" deep. Screws shall be spaced twelve (12) inches o.c. in the field of the board and 8" o.c. staggered along the abutting edges.
4. All ends and edges of wallboard shall occur over screwing members (studs or furring channels). Boards shall be brought into contact but shall not be forced into place. Where ends or edges abut, they shall be staggered. Joints on opposite sides of a partition shall be so arranged as to occur on different studs.
5. At locations where piping receptacles, conduit, switches, etc., penetrate drywall partitions, provide non-drying sealant and an approved sealant stop at cut board locations inside partition.

**F. Wallboard Installation - Double-Layer Application**

1. General: See drawings for wallboard partition types required.
2. First Layer (Screw Attached): Install as described above for single layer application.
3. Second Layer (Screw Attached): Screw attach second layer, unless laminating method of attachment indicated on drawings or necessary to obtain required sound rating or fire rating. Install wallboard vertically with vertical joints offset thirty-two (32) inches from first layer joints and staggered on opposite sides of wall. Attach wallboard with 1-5/8" screws sixteen (16) inches o.c. along vertical joints and sixteen (16) inches o.c. in the field of the wallboard. Screw through first layer into metal framing members.
4. Second Layer (Laminated): Install wallboard vertically. Stagger joints of second layer from first layer joints. Laminate second layer with specified laminating adhesive in beads or strips running continuously from floor to ceiling in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. After laminating, screw wallboard to framing members with 1-5/8" screws, spaced twelve (12) inches o.c. around perimeter of wallboard.



- G. Wallboard Installation - Laminated Application: Where laminated wallboard is indicated, use specified laminating adhesive, install wallboard vertically and maintain tolerances as specified for screw attached wallboard.
- H. Insulation Installation: Install where indicated on drawings. Place blanket tightly between studs.
- I. Deflection of Structure Above: To allow for possible deflection of structure above partitions, provide top runners for non-rated partitions with 1-1/4" minimum flanges and do not screw studs or drywall to top runner. Where positive anchorage of studs to top runner is required, anchorage device shall be by means of slotted hole (in clip connection with screw attachment to web of steel through bushings located in slots of clips), or other anchorage device approved by Commissioner.
- J. Control Joints
  1. Leave a 1/2" continuous opening between gypsum boards for insertion of surface mounted joint.
  2. Back by double framing members.
  3. Attach control joint to face layer with 9/16" galvanized staples six (6) inches o.c. at both flanges along entire length of joint.
  4. Provide two (2) inch wide gypsum panel strip or other adequate seal behind control joint in fire rated partitions and partitions with safing insulation.

### 3.5 DRYWALL FASCIAS AND CEILINGS

- A. Furnish and install inserts, hanger clips and similar devices in coordination with other work.
- B. Secure hangers to inserts and clips. Clamp or bolt hangers to main runners.
- C. Space main runners 4'-0" o.c. and space hangers 4'-0" o.c. along runners, except as otherwise shown.
- D. Level main runners to a tolerance of 1/4" in 12'-0", measured both lengthwise on each runner and transversely between parallel runners.
- E. Metal Furring Channels: Space sixteen (16) inches o.c. maximum. Attach to 1-1/2" main runner channels with furring channel clips (on alternate sides of main runner channels). Furring channels shall not be let into or come in contact with abutting masonry walls. End splices shall be provided by nesting furring channels no less than eight (8) inches and securely wire tying. At any openings that interrupt the furring channels, install additional cross reinforcing to restore lateral stability.
- F. Mechanical accessories, hangers, splices, runner channels and other members used in suspension system shall be of metal, zinc coated, or coated with rust inhibitive paint, of



suitable design and of adequate strength to support units securely without sagging, and such as to bring unit faces to finished indicated lines and levels.

1. Provide special furring where ducts are over two (2) feet wide.

G. Apply board with its long dimension at right angles to channels. Locate board butt joints over center of furring channels. Attach board with one (1) inch self-drilling drywall screws twelve (12) inches o.c. in field of board at each furring channel; eight (8) inches o.c. at butt joints located not less than 3/8" from edges.

### 3.6 SHAFT WALLS

- A. Runner Installation: Use "J" metal runners at floor and ceiling, with the short leg toward finish side of wall. Securely attach runners to structural supports with power-driven fasteners at both ends and twenty-four (24) inches o.c.
- B. Shaft Wall Liner: Cut shaft wall liner panels one (1) inch less from floor to ceiling height and erect vertically between J-runners.
- C. C-H Studs: Cut metal studs 3/8" to not more than 1/2" less than floor to ceiling height and install between shaft wall liner panels so that panels are fitted snugly into the one (1) inch wide "H," "T," or "I" portion of the stud. Space studs twenty-four (24) inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated on drawings. Install full-length steel E-Studs or J-runners vertically at T-intersections, corners, door jambs, and columns. Install full length E-Studs or J-runners over shaft wall liner both sides of closure panels. Frame openings cut within a liner panel with J-Runner around perimeter. For openings, frame with vertical E-Stud or J-runner at edges, horizontal runner at head and sill, and reinforcing as shown on the drawings. Suitably frame all openings to maintain structural support for wall. Install floor-to-ceiling steel E-Studs or J-runners each side of elevator door frames to act as strut-studs. Attach strut-stud to floor and ceiling runners with two (2) 3/8" Type S screws, space twelve (12) inches o.c. Over metal doors, install a cut to length section of runner and attach to strut-studs with clip angles and 3/8" Type S Screws space twelve (12) inches o.c.
- D. Wallboard Installation - Double Layer Installation: Erect gypsum wallboard base layer vertically or horizontally to meet fire rating on one side of studs with end joints staggered. Fasten base layer panels to studs with one (1) inch Type S screws twenty-four (24) inches o.c. Caulk perimeter of base layer panels. Apply gypsum wallboard face layer vertically over base layer with joints staggered and attached with 1-5/8" Type S screws staggered from those in base, spaced eight (8) inches o.c. and driven into studs.
- E. Wallboard Installation (Where Both Sides of Shaft Wall are Finished): Apply gypsum wallboard face layers vertically both sides of studs. Stagger joints on opposite partition sides. Fasten panels with one (1) inch or two (2) inches Type S screws spaced eight (8) inches o.c. in field and along edges into studs.



- F. Cants: Provide one (1) inch thick shaft wall liner, cut to suit condition, at beams and other projections wider than two (2) inches in elevator shafts. Cants shall slope seventy-five (75) degrees from the horizontal. Screw attach shaft wall liner to the vertical metal studs.
- G. Support elevator hoistway door frames independently of drywall shaft framing system, or reinforce system in accordance with system manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Where handrails are indicated for direct attachment to drywall shaft system, provide not less than a sixteen (16) ga. x eight (8) inches wide galvanized steel reinforcement strip, accurately positioned and secured to studs and concealed behind not less than one 1/2" thick course of gypsum board in the system.
- I. Integrate stair hanger rods with drywall shaft system by locating cavity of system as required to enclose rods.

### 3.7 ERECTION AT COLUMN ENCLOSURES

- A. Metal furring supports shall be provided under work of this Section, and shall be cut to lengths as necessary for tight fit such that spacing is not more than sixteen (16) inches o.c.
- B. Board shall be fastened securely to supports with screws as specified. Place boards in position with minimum amount of joints. Where free ends occur between supports, back-blocking or furring shall be required. Center abutting ends over supports. Correct work as necessary so that faces of boards are flush, smooth and true. Provide clips or cross furring for attachment as required.
- C. All layers shall be screw attached to furring.
- D. When column finish called for on drawings to be in the same plane as drywall finish layer, maintain even, level plane.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Fasten sheathing to exterior of each stud with specified fasteners spaced 3/8" from ends and edges and approx. 8" o.c. at each stud. Install fasteners in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations using 2500-RPM maximum screw gun. Sheathing board shall be installed horizontally. Apply sealant between joints and trowel flush; and apply sealant around sheathing perimeter and at interface with other materials. Cover fastener heads with sealant and trowel flush.

### 3.9 FINISHING

- A. Taping: A thin, uniform layer of compound shall be applied to all joints and angles to be reinforced. Reinforcing tape shall be applied immediately, centered over the joint, seated into the compound. A skim coat shall follow immediately, but shall not function as a fill or second coat. Tape shall be properly folded and embedded in all angles to provide a true angle.

- B. Filling: After initial coat of compound has hardened, additional compound shall be applied, filling the board taper flush with the surface. The fill coat shall cover the tape and feather out slightly beyond the tape. On joints with no taper, the fill coat shall cover the tape and feather out at least four (4) inches on either side of the tape. No fill coat is necessary on interior angles.
- C. After compound has hardened, a finishing coat of compound shall be spread evenly over and extending slightly beyond the fill coat on all joints and feathered to a smooth, uniform finish. Over tapered edges, the finished joint shall not protrude beyond the plane of the surface. All taped angles shall receive a finish coat to cover the tape and taping compound, and provide a true angle. Where necessary, sanding shall be done between coats and following the final application of compound to provide a smooth surface, ready for painting.
- D. Fastener Depressions: Compound shall be applied to all fastener depressions followed, when hardened by at least two (2) coats of compound, leaving all depressions level with the plane of the surface.
- E. Finishing Beads and Trim: Compound shall be applied to all bead and trim and shall be feathered out from the ground to the plane of the surface. When hardened, this shall be followed by two (2) coats of compound each extending slightly beyond the previous coat. The finish coat shall be feathered from the ground to the plane of the surface and sanded as necessary to provide a flat, smooth surface ready for decoration.
- F. Except as otherwise noted, level of finish for surface exposed to view shall conform to Level 4 of ASTM C 840 and GA-214 of the Gypsum Association.
  - 1. For drywall boards with fiberglass facing, provide Level 5 finish of ASTM C840 and GA-214.
  - 2. For drywall boards to receive decorative finishes, provide Level 5 finish of ASTM C840 and GA-214.
- G. Drywall construction with defects of such character which will mar appearance of finished work, or which is otherwise defective, will be rejected and shall be removed and replaced at no expense to the City of New York.

### 3.10 CLEANING AND ADJUSTMENT

- A. At the completion of installation of the work, all rubbish shall be removed from the building leaving floors broom clean. Excess material, scaffolding, tools and other equipment shall be removed from the building.
- B. Work shall be left in clean condition ready for painting or wall covering. All work shall be as approved by Commissioner.
- C. Cutting and Repairing: Include all cutting, fitting and repairing of the work included herein in connection with all mechanical trades and all other trades which come in



conjunction with any part of the work, and leave all work complete and perfect after all trades have completed their work.

3.11 PROTECTION OF WORK

- A. Installer shall advise Contractor of required procedures for protecting drywall work from damage and deterioration during remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

in items for straight, aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping and fixtures so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

- I. Lay tile in grid pattern. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls and trim are the same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths.
- J. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use cleaners only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning to insure removal of all cleaning material.
  - 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.
- B. Protect installed tile work with Kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. Apply coat of sealer to all grout joints and all unglazed tile.
- C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings from tile surfaces.
- E. Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded or otherwise defective tile work.

END OF SECTION 09 30 00



3. Wall tile over masonry or concrete using dry set mortar with latex additive - ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007, C2ES2P2.
  4. Floor tile using full mud set mortar - ANSI A118.4, A228.15, and ISO 13007, C2ES2P2.
  5. Floor tile using dry set mortar with latex additive - ANSI A118.4, A118.15, and ISO 13007, C2ES2P2.
  6. Floor tile over waterproofing membrane.- ANSI A118.4, 118.5, and ISO 13007, C2ES2P2.
- B. Backs of tile must be cleaned before installing same.
- C. All setting beds and/or adhesives shall provide for an average contact area of not less than 95% coverage.
- D. Allowable Variations in Finished Work: Do not exceed the following deviations from level and plumb, and from elevations, locations, slopes and alignment shown.
1. Floors: 1/8" in 10'-0" run, any direction; +/- 1/8" at any location; 1/32" offset at any location.
  2. Walls: 1/8" in 8'-0" run, any direction; 1/8" at any location; offset at any location, 1/32".
  3. Joints: +/- 1/32" joint width variation of any location; 1/16" in 3'-0" run deviation from plumb and true.
- E. Waterproofing Membrane
1. Install the membrane in strict accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
  2. Upon completion of work, test horizontal membrane for leaks by flood testing per ASTM D 5957. Inspect for leakage. Make necessary adjustments to stop all leakage and retest until watertight. If membrane is not covered by another surface immediately, provide protection until membrane is covered.
- F. Handle, store, mix and apply setting and grouting materials in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- G. Extend tile work into recesses and under equipment and fixtures, to form a complete covering without interruptions. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges and corners without disruption of pattern or joint alignment.
- H. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-



1. Floors: + 1/8" in 10'-0" distance and 1/4" total max. variation from levels shown.

- B. Grind or fill concrete and masonry substrates as required to comply with allowable variations.
- C. Concrete substrates must meet ANSI A108.01 tolerances and surface textures in preparation for tile work; coordinate with concrete trades.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Etch concrete substrate as may be required to remove curing compounds or other substances that would interfere with proper bond of setting bed. Rinse with water to remove all traces of treatment. Surface must meet finish requirements as noted in ANSI 108.01.
- B. Blending: for tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at project site before installing.
- C. Field Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Pre-coat tile with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

### 3.4 JOINTS IN TILE WORK

- A. Joint Widths: 1/16" wide in ceramic tile.
- B. Alignment: Wall, base and floor joints shall align through the field and trim. Direction and location of all joints as directed by Commissioner.
- C. Movement Joints: Conform to TCA Detail EJ171. Locate where movement joints are in back-up material. Provide movement joint at joints between mop receptors and tile. Provide movement joint at all vertical internal joints of wall tile. Movement joints 1/8" wide in tile. Fill all movement joints with specified backing and sealant. Use bond breaker where sufficient space for joint backing does not exist.
  - 1. Provide sealant between tile and plumbing fixtures, mirrors, pipes, countertops and other dissimilar materials penetrating or adjacent to tile.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following installation standards
  - 1. Wall tile over drywall using organic adhesive - ANSI A136.1 and ISO 13007, D2TE.
  - 2. Wall tile over cement board or glass mat backer board using dry set mortar with latex additive - ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007, C2ES2P2.

- Q. Temporary Protective Coating: Either product indicated below that is applied in the tile manufacturer's factory and formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products; and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
1. Petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot, fully refined and odorless, containing at least 0.5 percent oil with a melting point of 120 to 140 deg. F. per ASTM D 87.
  2. Grout release in form of manufacturer's standard proprietary liquid coating that is specially formulated and recommended for use as temporary protective coating for tile.
- R. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, equal to "Concentrated Stone & Tile Cleaner" made by Aqua-Mix or approved equal, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

#### 2.4 SEALANT

- A. Joint Backing: Preformed, compressible, resilient, non-extruding, non-staining strips of foam neoprene, foam polyethylene, or other material recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- B. Bond Breaker: Polyethylene tape, 3 mils thick or other material recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- C. Sealant Primer: Colorless, non-staining, or type to suit substrate surface, as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- D. Sealant: One-part silicone based sanitary sealant, conforming to ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25. Sealant hardness upon full cure shall be between 20-30 Shore "A" Durometer. Color of sealant to blend with or match adjacent materials, and as selected by the Commissioner. Sealant shall be equivalent to 1700 Sanitary Sealant made by General Electric or approved equal.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where tile is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 CONDITION OF SURFACES

- A. Allowable Variations in Substrate Levels



- J. Floor Tile - Thin Set: Set floor tile using latex modified Portland Cement mortar, Basis of Design, MAPEI, Kerabond/Keralastic System, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and TCA Detail F-113.
1. For installation of (LFT and Stone Tile), Improved Modified Cement Mortars and medium bed, Basis of Design, custom Building Products, MegaLite Crack Prevention Medium Bed Mortar conforming to ANSI 118.15, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2
- K. Floor Tile - Waterproof Setting Bed: Set floor tile using thin set latex Portland cement bond coat, Basis of Design, MAPEI, Kerabond/Keralastic System, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and waterproofing membrane conforming to TCA Detail F-122/122A. Use this system where toilet room occurs over occupied space other than another toilet room and wherever else noted on drawings.
1. For installation of (LFT and Stone Tile), Improved Modified Cement Mortars and medium bed, Basis of Design, custom Building Products, MegaLite Crack Prevention Medium Bed Mortar conforming to ANSI 118.15, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2
- L. Waterproofing Membrane complying with ANSI A118.10 and ANSI A118.12; and having IAPMO certification as a shower pan liner: "Mapelastic 400" by MAPEI with factory blended "Bio-Block Antimicrobial", "Laticrete 9235 with Microban" made by Laticrete International, ProSpec B6000 or Custom 9240.
1. Reinforce membrane with polyester fabric.
- M. Water: Clean, fresh and suitable for drinking.
- N. Grout complying with A118.7; and ISO 13007, CG2WAF: For grouting tile, provide a commercial Portland cement grout "Ultracolor Plus" (additive not required) made by MAPEI or Laticrete Sanded Grout with required Latex Additive or Custom Prism Sure Color Grout; (addition not required); color as selected by the Commissioner. Add latex additive to grout made by same manufacturer as grout.
- O. Physical Properties: The setting beds and grouts must meet the following physical requirements:
1. Compressive Strength – 3000 psi min.
  2. Shear Bond Strength – 500 psi min.
  3. Water Absorption – 4.0% max.
  4. Service Rating (ASTM C 627) – Extra Heavy Duty.
- P. Sealer: Seal all grout joints and all unglazed tile using "Sealer's Choice 15 Gold" by Aqua Mix Inc.



(Also for use with LFT Tile and Stone Tile)

1. Custom Building Products; Mega-Lite Crack Prevention Mortar (650-725 psi).
2. Laticrete; 220 Marble Granite Mortar (500-540 psi).
3. Mapei; Kerabond T Keralastic (400-600 psi).
4. Pro Spec; StayFlex 590 (460 psi).

**H. Wall and Base Tile**

1. Over drywall use ANSI A136.1-1967 Organic Adhesive for installation of Ceramic Tile, Type I and ISO 13007 D2TE. Shear strength shall be 50 psi minimum. Adhesive primer as recommended by adhesive manufacturer. Manufacturer shall certify, in writing, that adhesive and primer used are proper types for the intended tile types and application. Conform to TCA Detail W-242.
  - a. MAPEI Type 1 Mastic.
  - b. Laticrete Type 1 Adhesive.
  - c. ProSpec B-1000 Tile Adhesive.
  - d. Custom Building Products' Reliabond Adhesive Type 1.
2. Over masonry and concrete use a mortar bed leveling coat conforming to ANSI A108.1A followed by a Latex Portland Cement Bond Coat, MAPEI, Kerabond/Keralastic System, Custom Mega Flex or equal by Laticrete or Pro Spec, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and TCA Detail W-211.
3. Over cement board use a Latex Portland cement mortar bond coat, MAPEI, Kerabond/Keralastic System, Custom Mega Flex or equal by Laticrete or Pro Spec, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and TCA Detail W-244; coat back of board with waterproof membrane as specified below.
4. Over glass mat water resistant gypsum backer board use a Latex Portland cement mortar bond coat, MAPEI, Kerabond/Keralastic System, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and TCA Detail W-245.

**I. Floor Tile - Mud Set: Set floor tile using Portland Cement mortar setting bed conforming to ANSI A108.1A and latex modified Portland cement bond coat, Basis of Design, MAPEI, Kerabond/Keralastic System, conforming to ANSI A118.4, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2, and TCA Detail F-112.**

1. For installation of (LFT and Stone Tile), Improved Modified Cement Mortars and medium bed, Basis of Design, custom Building Products, MegaLite Crack Prevention Medium Bed Mortar conforming to ANSI 118.15, ISO 13007-C2ES2P2



2.2 TRIM AND SPECIAL SHAPES

- A. Provide external and internal corners, trim shapes at openings, and all other trim and special shapes to match the tile specified herein, as required by field conditions and drawing details.
- B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; bronze finish exposed-edge material. Provide products by Schluter Systems, LP, Blanke Corporation, Ceramic Tool Company, Inc. or approved equal.
  - 1. Basis of Design - Floor Profiles: Schluter RENO-U, EBU 110 and 125, or approved equal.

2.3 MORTAR BED, BOND COAT AND GROUT

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Sand: ASTM C 144, clean and graded natural sand.
- D. Reinforcing for Mud Set Systems: 2" x 2" x 16/16 ga. welded wire mesh.
- E. Latex Admixture for Mortar Bed
  - 1. MAPEI, Planicrete AC, blended with a 3:1 site mix.
  - 2. Laticrete 333.
  - 3. Pro Spec - Acrylic Additive.
  - 4. Custom - Custom Crete Thin Set Additive.
- F. Latex - Portland Cement Bond Coat, complying with ANSI A118.4 and ISO 13007, C2ES2P2 with minimum compressive strength of 400 psi.
  - 1. MAPEI, Keralastic System thin set mortar, consisting of Kerabond dry-set mortar and Keralastic latex admixture.
  - 2. Laticrete; 211 dry-set mortar and 4237 latex admixture.
  - 3. Pro Spec - Permalastic System consisting of Permalastic Dryset Mortar and Permalastic Admixture
  - 4. Custom - Pro-Lite.
- G. Improved Modified Cement Mortars, complying with ANSI 118.15 and ISO 13007, CSES2PS.



2. The mock-ups, when approved by the Commissioner, will be used as datum for comparison with the remainder of the work of this Section for the purposes of acceptance or rejection.
3. If the mock-up panels are not permitted to be part of the finished Work, completely demolish and remove them from the job site upon completion and acceptance of the work of this Section.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

##### A. Delivery and Storage

1. Deliver all materials of this Section to the job site in their original unopened containers with all labels intact and legible at time of use.
2. Store all materials under cover in a manner to prevent damage and contamination; store only the specified materials at the job site.

B. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.

C. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions and protect work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's printed recommendations.

B. Vent temporary heaters to exterior to prevent damage to tile work from carbon dioxide buildup.

C. Maintain temperatures at not less than 50 deg. F. in tiled areas during installation and for 7 days after completion.

### PART II - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FLOOR AND WALL TILE

A. Provide floor and wall tile as indicated on Drawings.

B. Provide sanitary cove base to match wall tile unless otherwise indicated.



- c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  5. Certificate or manufacturer letter (on manufacturer's letterhead) demonstrating products compliance with FloorScore standard,
- C. Samples
1. Before any tile is delivered to the job site, submit to the Commissioner sample panels, approx. 12" x 12", mounted on hardboard back-up with selected grout color for each color and pattern of tile and grout specified.
  2. Submit 6" length of each type of metal edge strip.
  3. Submit 12" x 12" samples of waterproofing membrane.
- D. Master Grade Certificates: Prior to opening tile containers, submit to the Commissioner a Master Grade Certificate, signed by an officer of the firm manufacturing the tile used, and issued when the shipment is made, stating the grade, kind of tile, identification marks for tile containers, and the name and location of the project.
- E. Mock-ups
1. At an area on the site where approved by the Commissioner, provide a mock-up tile installation.
    - a. Make the mock-up approximately 4'-0" x 4'-0" in dimension.
    - b. Provide one mock-up for each type, class, and color of installation required under this Section.
    - c. The mock-ups may be used as part of the Work, and may be included in the finished Work, when so approved by the Commissioner.
    - d. Revise as necessary to secure the Commissioner's approval.



2. Glass tile must meet ANSI A137.2.
3. Install all tile in accordance with the recommendations contained in Handbook for Ceramic, Glass and Stone Tile Installation of the Tile Council of North America, Inc., latest edition noted herein and ANSI A108/A118/A136.
4. Stone tiles shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C1242.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.

B. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:

1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
  - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
  - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).

- H. Stone Tile – Conform to requirements of MIA (Marble Institute of America) Dimension Stone Design Manual.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
1. Ceramic tile shall contain a minimum of 25% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).
  2. Tiles manufactured and whose raw materials are harvested within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the Submittal Requirements below.
  3. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Division 1, Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  4. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  5. Ceramic tile flooring shall be compliant with the most up to date FloorScore standard.
- C. Qualifications of Installers: For cutting, installing and grouting of tile, use only thoroughly trained and experienced journeyman tile setters who are completely familiar with the requirements of this work, and the recommendations contained in the referenced standards, and the installers are Certified Ceramic Tile Installer (CTI) through the Ceramic Tile Education Foundation (CTEF) or Tile Installer Thin Set Standards (ITS) verification through the University of Ceramic Tile and Stone.
- D. Codes and Standards: In addition to complying with all pertinent codes and regulations, comply with the following:
1. Manufacture all tile in accordance with Standard Grade Requirements of ANSI A-137.1.



SECTION 09 30 00

TILING

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the tiling as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Floor and wall tile.
  - 2. Metal edge strips.
  - 3. Setting beds, grout, sealant and waterproofing membrane.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Gypsum drywall - Section 092900.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A108 Series/A118 Series - American National Standards for Installation of Ceramic Tile.
- B. ANSI A136.1 - American National Standards for Organic Adhesives for Installation of Ceramic Tile.
- C. ASTM C 144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
- D. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
- E. TCNA - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass and Stone Tile Installation; Tile Council of North America, latest 2013 Edition.
- F. ISO 13007 - International Standards Organization; classification for Grout and Adhesives.
- G. LFT Tile - Large Format Tile, tile 15" or larger in any one direction and/or 144 sq. inch in size.



SECTION 09 84 13

ACOUSTIC WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the acoustic wall panels as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. 2" thick acoustical absorption panels wrapped in selected fabric.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Carpentry - Section 062000.
- B. Gypsum wallboard - Section 092900.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:
  - 1. Steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall contain a minimum of 35% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials).
  - 2. Gypsum wallboard shall contain "synthetic" gypsum produced with a minimum of 75% post-industrial recycled content, if readily available.



3. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  4. Steel framing and gypsum wallboard products harvested and manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
  5. Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Section 018114: Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits For Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings (LEED BUILDING), where applicable.
  6. Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.
- C. **Manufacturer Qualification:** At least three (3) years' experience fabricating and installing comparable work, employing skilled mechanics under competent supervision for all phases of the Work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not



include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the

- B. Shop Drawings/Product Data
  - 1. Base drawings on field measurements.
  - 2. Show dimensioned wall elevations with seam and joint locations, cutout sizes and locations, anchor locations, relation to adjacent work; large scale joint and mounting details; materials type, weight/thickness, design, color; and other data necessary to fabricate and install work and coordinate work with affected trades.
- C. Samples: Two 12" x 12" (minimum) panels in selected finish, showing seam, edge and cutout conditions.
- D. Certification
  - 1. Acoustical Performance: Certified reports of acoustical performance tests conducted and/or witnessed by a recognized, independent, testing agency. Tests shall have been done by specified methods or recognized equivalent. Sound absorption tests shall be not more than three years old. Reports on earlier tests are acceptable if it can be established to the Commissioner's satisfaction, that they are valid indications of compliance with Project requirements.
  - 2. Fire Hazard: Evidence of compliance with regulatory agency and specifications requirements.
- E. Cleaning and Maintenance Instructions: Recommendations for City of New York maintenance and cleaning per requirements of DDC General Conditions. Identify cleaning/spotting products generically or by trade name.
- F. Manufacturer Qualifications: List comparable installations with 3-year (minimum) service histories. Describe installations and give City of New York/building manager names and addresses.

#### 1.6 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 423 Test for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method.
- B. ASTM E 84 Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Allow materials to become acclimated to Project conditions before installation, if necessary to prevent sag and distortion during service life.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions



1. Work areas shall be at or near ambient occupancy temperature and relative humidity.
2. Painting, dust-raising activities, and work that introduces dampness shall be completed.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide products manufactured by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries.
2. DFB Sales Inc.
3. Fabritrak Systems Inc.
4. StretchWall Products Inc.

### 2.2 GENERAL

A. Fabricate panels to sizes and configurations indicated; attach facing materials to cores to produce installed panels with visible surfaces fully covered and free from waves in fabric weave, wrinkles, sages, blisters, seams, adhesive or other foreign matter.

1. Fabricate back mounted panels in factory to exact sizes required to fit wall surfaces based on field measurements of completed substrates indicated to receive acoustical wall panels.
2. Where radius corners are indicated, attach facing material so there are no seams or gathering of material.

B. Dimensional Tolerances of Finished Units: Overall height and width of panels - plus or minus 1/16".

C. Sound Absorption Performance: Provide acoustical wall panels with minimum noise reduction coefficients (NRC) indicated, as determined by testing per ASTM C 423 for mounting type specified under individual product requirements.

D. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: See finish schedule.

### 2.3 BACK MOUNTED ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS

A. Back Mounted, Edge Reinforced Acoustical Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material laminated to front, edges, and back border of molded glass fiber board core; with edges chemically hardened to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damaged; and complying with the following requirements:



1. Core Density: 6 - 7 lb./cu. ft.
2. Thickness and NRC: Nominal overall panel thickness of 2" and NRC of not less than 0.95 for Type A (ABPMA No. 4) mounting.
3. Facing Material: Custom material as indicated on Drawings; see Material Schedule on A600.
4. Panel Size: As indicated.
5. Edge Detail: Square.

#### 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Back Mounting Accessories: Manufacturer's standard or recommended accessories for securely mounting panels of type and size indicated to substrates provided, and complying with the following requirements:
  1. Mechanically Mounted Edge Reinforced Panels: Metal panel clip and base support bracket system consisting of 2 part panel clips, with one part of each clip mechanically attached to back of panel and the other part to wall substrate, designed to support panels laterally; and base support brackets designed to support full weight of panels; with both designed to allow panel removal.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where acoustic wall panels are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

##### A. General

1. Install acoustical wall panels in locations indicated with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other panels, scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations. Comply with panel manufacturer's printed instructions for installation of panels using type of mounting accessories indicated or, if none indicated, as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Construction Tolerances
  - a. Variation from Plumb and Level: +/- 1/16".
  - b. Variation of Joints from Hairline: Not more than 1/16".

- B. Anchoring to Drywall: Anchor clips to unreinforced gypsum board with toggle or Molly anchors. Anchor clips to metal drywall framing with tapping sheet metal screws.
- C. Panels shall be pressed against wall and slid down engaging "Z" clips into wall brackets.
- D. Remove and replace panels that are damaged and are unacceptable to Commissioner.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Correct non-complying and damaged/defective Work. Replace work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
- B. Restretch and reinstall sagging and distorted fabric and correct other defects that occurred during normal service.
- C. Carefully and thoroughly clean completed work by vacuuming and/or other means. Remove soil, stains, loose threads.
- D. Protect work from soiling and other damage.

END OF SECTION 09 84 13

SECTION 09 90 00

PAINTING AND FINISHING

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the painting and finishing as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Prime painting unprimed surfaces to be painted under this Section.
  2. Painting all items furnished with a prime coat of paint, including touching up of or repairing of abraded, damaged or rusted prime coats applied by others.
  3. Painting all ferrous metal (except stainless steel) exposed to view.
  4. Painting gypsum drywall exposed to view.
  5. Exterior painting at upper Terrace duct penetrations to match existing Richard Haas mural pattern.
  6. Painting of wood exposed to view, except items which are specified to be painted or finished under other Sections of these specifications. Back painting of all wood in contact with concrete, masonry or other moisture areas.
  7. Painting pipes, pipe coverings, conduit, ducts, insulation, hangers, supports and other mechanical and electrical items and equipment exposed to view.
  8. Painting surfaces above, behind or below grilles, gratings, diffusers, louvers, lighting fixtures, and the like, which are exposed to view through these items.
  9. Incidental painting and touching up as required to produce proper finish for painted surfaces, including touching up of factory finished items.
  10. Painting of any surface not specifically mentioned to be painted herein or on drawings, but for which painting is obviously necessary to complete the job, or work which comes within the intent of these specifications, shall be included as though specified.



### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Shop priming is required on some, but not all of the items scheduled to be field painted. Refer to other Sections of work for complete description.
- F. Shop Coat on Machinery and Equipment: Refer to the Sections under which various items of manufactured equipment with factory applied shop prime coats are furnished, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following Sections. All items of equipment furnished with prime coat finish shall be finish painted under this Section.
  - 1. Plumbing - Division 22.
  - 2. Heating, ventilation and air conditioning - Division 23.
- G. Wallcovering - Section 097200.
- H. Color Coding of Mechanical Piping and Electrical Conduits - Divisions 22 and 26.
  - 1. This Color Coding consists of an adhesive tape system and is in addition to painting of piping and conduits under this Section, as specified above.

### 1.4 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT NOT TO BE PAINTED

- A. Items of equipment furnished with complete factory finish, except for items specified to be given a finish coat under this Section.
- B. Factory-finished toilet partitions.
- C. Factory-finished acoustical tile.
- D. Non-ferrous metals, except for items specified and/or indicated to be painted.
- E. Finished hardware, excepting hardware that is factory primed.
- F. Surfaces not to be painted shall be left completely free of droppings and accidentally applied materials resulting from the work of this Section.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this



specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.

B. LEED BUILDING Performance Criteria: The following criteria are REQUIRED for the products included in this section:

1. Paints and coatings manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

2. Paints used for interior applications shall meet the volatile organic compound (VOC) and chemical component limitations of the Green Seal Paint Standards GS-11 and GC-03, of Green Seal, Inc., Washington, DC. Other architectural coatings shall meet the VOC limits as established in the South Coast Air Product-specific environmental requirements as follows:

a. Volatile Organic Compounds: the VOC concentrations (in grams per liter) of the product shall not exceed those listed below as determined by U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Reference Test Method 24.

i. Interior Paints:

Non-flat: 50 grams/liter  
Flat: 50 grams/liter

ii. Interior Anti-Corrosive Paints (if used in interior applications):

Gloss: 250 grams/liter  
Semi-gloss: 250 grams/liter  
Flat: 250 grams/liter

iii. Other Interior Coatings Clear wood finishes, floor coatings, stains, sealers, and shellacs applied to the interior shall meet the VOC limitations defined in Rule 1113, "Architectural Coatings" of SCAQMD, of the State of California. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD, based on 7/9/04 amendments, are as follows. VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.

- 1) Clear Wood Finishes
  - a) Varnish 275
  - b) Sanding Sealers 275
  - c) Lacquer 275
- 2) Shellac
  - a) Clear 730
  - b) Pigmented 550
- 3) Stains 100
  - a) Interior 250
- 4) Floor Coatings 50



5) Waterproofing Sealers	100
6) Other Sealers	350

The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale.

iii) Adhesives or sealants used for work in this section shall meet the requirements of Division 1, Section 01115: "Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives and Sealants", where applicable.

iv) Certification of these products shall be in accordance with the LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements of this Section.

**C. Job Mock-Up**

1. In addition to the samples specified herein to be submitted for approval, apply in the field, at their final location, each type and color of approved paint materials, applied 10 feet wide, floor to ceiling of wall surfaces, before proceeding with the remainder of the work, for approval by the Commissioner. Paint mock-ups to include door and frame assembly.
2. These applications when approved will establish the quality and workmanship for the work of this Section.
3. Repaint individual areas which are not approved, as determined by the Commissioner, until approval is received. Assume at least two paint mock-ups of each color and gloss for approval.

D. Qualification of Painters: Use only qualified journeyman painters for the mixing and application of paint on exposed surfaces.

E. Paint Coordination: Provide finish coats which are compatible with the prime paints used. Review other Sections of these specifications in which prime paints are to be provided to ensure compatibility of the total coatings system for the various substrates. Upon request from other subcontractors, furnish information on the characteristics of the finish materials proposed to be used, to ensure that compatible prime coats are used. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and re-prime as required. Notify the Commissioner in writing of any anticipated problems using the coating systems as specified with substrates primed by others.

F. All paints must conform to the Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) standards of prevailing codes and ordinances.

G. Special Experience Requirements (Historic SER for Area of Work)

1. The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in size, scope and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and



materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government. Installer must also have prior experience with murals to be able to match the Richard Haas painted mural work, at the upper terrace duct enclosures penetrations (Ref image #14 on dwg G-004). Installer must also have prior experience for the faux-stone painting at pilaster (Ref dwg 2-A-803).

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. **LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements:** The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. A completed ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications. Information to be supplied includes:
    - a. The amount of recycled content in the product(s). Identify post-consumer and/or post-industrial recycled content.
    - b. The manufacturing location for the product(s); and the location (source) of the raw materials used to manufacture the product(s).
    - c. Provide material costs for the materials included in the contractor's or subcontractor's work. Material cost does not include costs associated with labor and equipment.
  2. Letters of Certification, provided from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead, to verify the amount of recycled content.
  3. Product Cut Sheets for all materials that meet the LEED BUILDING Performance criteria, as per the QUALITY ASSURANCE requirements of this Section. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or Subcontractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the project.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. MSDS shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits). Materials List
- B. Before any paint materials are delivered to the job site, submit to the Commissioner a complete list of all materials proposed to be furnished and installed under this portion of the work.
- C. This shall in no way be construed as permitting substitution of materials for those specified or accepted for this work by the Commissioner.
- D. Samples



1. Accompanying the materials list, submit to the Commissioner copies of the full range of colors available in each of the proposed products.
2. Upon direction of the Commissioner, prepare and deliver to the Commissioner two (2) identical sets of Samples of each of the selected colors and glosses painted onto 8-1/2" x 11" x 1/4" thick material; whenever possible, the material for Samples shall be the same material as that on which the coating will be applied in the work.

E. **Manufacturer's Recommendations:** In each case where material proposed is not the material specified or specifically described as an acceptable alternate in this Section of these specifications, submit for the Commissioner's review the current recommended method of application published by the manufacturer of the proposed material.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver all paint materials to the job site in their original unopened containers with all labels intact and legible at time of use.
- B. **Protection**
  1. Store only the approved materials at the job site, and store only in a suitable and designated area restricted to the storage of paint materials and related equipment.
  2. Use all means necessary to ensure the safe storage and use of paint materials and the prompt and safe disposal of waste.
  3. Use all means necessary to protect paint materials before, during and after application and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- C. **Replacements:** In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

#### 1.8 EXTRA STOCK

- A. Upon completion of this portion of the Work, deliver to the City of New York an extra stock of paint equaling approximately ten (10) percent of each color and gloss used and each coating material used, with all such extra stock tightly sealed in clearly labeled containers.

#### 1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and the surrounding air temperatures are between 50 degrees F. and 90 degrees F., unless otherwise permitted by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and the surrounding air temperatures are between 45 degrees F. and 95 degrees F. unless otherwise permitted by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

- C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog or mist; or when the relative humidity exceeds eighty-five (85) percent; or to damp or wet surfaces; unless otherwise permitted by the paint manufacturer's printed instructions.
- D. Painting may be continued during inclement weather only if the areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within the temperature limits specified by the paint manufacturer during application and drying periods.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PAINT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Except as otherwise noted, provide the painting products listed for all required painting made by one of the manufacturers listed in the paint schedule (Section 2.4). These companies are Benjamin Moore, Akzo Nobel Paint (Glidden Professional), and Sherwin Williams (S-W). Comply with number of coats and required minimum mil thicknesses as specified herein.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Provide undercoat paint produced by the same manufacturer as the finish coats. Use only thinners approved by the paint manufacturer, and use only to recommended limits.
- B. Colors and Glosses: All colors and glosses shall be as selected by the Commissioner. Certain colors will require paint manufacturer to prepare special factory mixes to match colors selected by the Commissioner. Color schedule (with gloss) shall be furnished by the Commissioner.
- C. Coloring Pigment: Products of or furnished by the manufacturer of the paint or enamel approved for the work.
- D. Linseed Oil: Raw or boiled, as required, of approved manufacture, per ASTM D 234 and D 260, respectively.
- E. Turpentine: Pure distilled gum spirits of turpentine, per ASTM D 13.
- F. Shellac: Pure gum shellac (white or orange) cut in pure denatured alcohol using not less than four (4) lbs. of gum per gallon of alcohol.
- G. Driers, Putty, Spackling Compound, Patching Plaster, etc.: Best quality, of approved manufacture.
- H. Heat Resistant Paint: Where required, use heat resistant paint when applying paint to heating lines and equipment.

### 2.3 GENERAL STANDARDS

- A. The various surfaces shall be painted or finished as specified below in Article 2.4. However, the Commissioner reserves the right to change the finishes within the range of flat, semi-gloss or gloss, without additional cost to the City of New York.



- B. All paints, varnishes, enamels, lacquers, stains and similar materials must be delivered in the original containers with the seals unbroken and label intact and with the manufacturer's instructions printed thereon.
- C. All painting materials shall bear identifying labels on the containers with the manufacturer's instructions printed thereon.
- D. Paint shall not be badly settled, caked or thickened in the container, shall be readily dispersed with a paddle to a smooth consistency and shall have excellent application properties.
- E. Paint shall arrive on the job color-mixed except for tinting of under-coats and possible thinning.
- F. All thinning and tinting materials shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the particular material thinned or tinted.
- G. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to see that all mixed colors match the color selection made by the Commissioner prior to application of the coating.

#### 2.4 SCHEDULE OF FINISHES

##### A. Interior Ferrous Metal

###### Satin Finish/Latex

- Primer: 1 coat Moore Alkyd Metal Primer (Z06)  
1 coat Akzo Devflex 4020 PF DTM Prime/Flat Finish or touch-up shop primer  
1 coat Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310
- First Coat: 1 coat Moore Super Spec-HP DTM Acrylic Low Luster P25  
1 coat Akzo: Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic Eggshell GP1403  
1 coat S-W Pro-Classic Waterborne Acrylic Satin, B20
- Second Coat: 1 coat Moore Super Spec-HP DTM Acrylic Low Luster P25  
1 coat Akzo: Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic Eggshell GP1403  
1 coat S-W Pro-Classic Waterborne Acrylic Satin, B20
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.9 mils

###### Semi-Gloss Finish/Latex

- Primer: 1 coat Moore Super Spec-HP Acrylic Metal Primer (P04)  
1 coat Akzo Devflex 4020 PF DTM Primer/Flat Finish or touch-up shop primer.  
1 coat Sherwin-Williams, Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310
- First Coat: 1 coat Moore Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss (P29)  
1 coat Akzo: Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic S/G 6P1407  
1 coat S-W Pro-Classic Waterborne Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B31
- Second Coat: 1 coat Moore Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss (P29)



- 1 coat Akzo: Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic S/G 6P1407
- 1 coat S-W Pro-Classic Waterborne Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B31
- a. Total DFT not less than: 4.0 mils

**B. Interior Drywall**

**Flat Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex**

- Primer: 1 coat Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer (N534)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Gripper GP 3210
- 1 coat S-W Promar 200 Interior Latex Primer
- First Coat: 1 coat Moore Ultra Spec 500 Latex Flat (N536)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Flat GP 1201
- 1 coat S-W Promar 200 "O" VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-2600
- Second Coat: 1 coat Moore Ultra Spec 500 Latex Flat (N536)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Flat GP 1201
- 1 coat S-W Promar 200 "O" VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-2600
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.6 mils

**Eggshell Finish/Vinyl Acrylic Latex**

- Primer: 1 coat Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer (N534)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Gripper GP 3210
- 1 coat S-W Promar 200 Interior Latex Primer,
- First Coat: 1 coat Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell (N538)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic Eggshell GP 1403
- 1 coat S-W Promar 200 "O" VOC Interior Latex Egg-Shell, B20-2600
- Second Coat: 1 coat Moore Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell (N538)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic Eggshell GP 1403
- 1 coat S-W Promar 200 "O" VOC Interior Latex Egg-Shell B20-2600
- a. Total DFT not less than: 3.8 mils

**C. Primer for Fiberglass Faced Drywall:**

- 1 coat Glidden Prep and Primer Gripper Multi-Purpose Interior/Exterior Water Based Primer Sealer 3210-1200
- 1 coat Pratt & Lambert "Suprime" Interior Latex Enamel Undercoater Z1013/F1013
- 1 coat Sherwin Williams "Builders Solution."
- 1 coat Benjamin Moore 046 Fresh Start Acrylic Superior Primer

**D. Interior Painted Wood:**

**Satin Finish/Latex**

- Primer: 1 coat Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Primer (790)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Gripper GP 3210
- 1 coat S-W Premium Wall and Wood Primer B28W111
- First Coat: 1 coat Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Satin (792)
- 1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic Eggshell GP 1403



- Second Coat: 1 coat S-W Pro Classic Interior WB, Acrylic/Alkyd Classic B20.  
1 coat Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Satin (792)  
1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic Eggshell GP  
1403  
1 coat S-W Pro Classic Interior WB, Acrylic/Alkyd Classic B20.  
a. Total DFT not less than: 4.0 mils

Semi-Gloss Finish/Latex

- Primer: 1 coat Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd Primer (790)  
1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Gripper GP 3210  
1 coat S-W Premium Wall and Wood Primer B28W111  
First Coat: 1 coat Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd (793)  
1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic S/G GP 1407  
1 coat S-W Pro Classic Interior WB, Acrylic/Alkyd Classic Semi-Gloss  
B31  
Second Coat: 1 coat Moore Advance Waterborne Int. Alkyd (793)  
1 coat Akzo Glidden Professional Diamond 350 Acrylic S/G GP 1407  
1 coat S-W Pro Classic Interior WB, Acrylic/Alkyd Classic Semi-Gloss  
B31  
a. Total DFT not less than: 3.8 mils

2.5 EXISTING SURFACES TO BE PAINTED

- A. Existing surfaces shall be painted in accordance with schedule given in Article 2.4 herein except that first or prime coat may be eliminated where existing paint is sound. Where existing paint must be removed down to base material, provide first or prime coat as specified.

2.6 PIPING AND MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT EXPOSED TO VIEW

- A. Paint all exposed piping, conduits, ductwork and mechanical and electrical equipment. Use heat resisting paint when applied to heating lines and equipment. The Contractor is cautioned not to paint or otherwise disturb moving parts in the mechanical systems. Mask or otherwise protect all parts as required to prevent damage.
- B. Exposed Uncovered Ductwork, Piping, Hangers and Equipment: Latex Enamel Undercoater and one (1) coat Acrylic Latex Flat.
- C. Exposed Covered Piping, Duct Work and Equipment: Primer/Sealer and one (1) coat Acrylic Latex Flat.
- D. Panel Boards, Grilles and Exposed Surfaces of Electrical Equipment: Latex Enamel Undercoater and two (2) coats Latex Semi-Gloss.
- E. Equipment or Apparatus with Factory-Applied Paint: Refinish any damaged surfaces to match original finish. Do not paint over name plates and labels.
- F. All surfaces of insulation and all other work to be painted shall be wiped or washed clean before any painting is started.

- G. All conduit, boxes, distribution boxes, light and power panels, hangers, clamps, etc., are included where painting is required.
- H. All items of Mechanical and Electrical trades which are furnished painted under their respective Contracts shall be carefully coordinated with the work of this Section so as to leave no doubt as to what items are scheduled to be painted under this Section.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where painting and finishing are to be applied and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP REQUIREMENTS

- A. Only skilled mechanics shall be employed. Application may be by brush or roller. Spray application only upon acceptance from the Commissioner in writing.
- B. The Contractor shall furnish the Commissioner a schedule showing when he expects to have completed the respective coats of paint for the various areas and surfaces. This schedule shall be kept current as the job progresses.
- C. The Contractor shall protect his work at all times, and shall protect all adjacent work and materials by suitable covering or other method during progress of his work. Upon completion of the work, he shall remove all paint and varnish spots from floors, glass and other surfaces. He shall remove from the premises all rubbish and accumulated materials of whatever nature not caused by others and shall leave his part of the work in clean, orderly and acceptable condition.
- D. Remove and protect hardware, accessories, device plates, lighting fixtures, and factory finished work, and similar items, or provide ample in place protection. Upon completion of each space, carefully replace all removed items by workmen skilled in the trades involved.
- E. Remove electrical panel box covers and doors before painting walls. Paint separately and re-install after all paint is dry.
- F. All materials shall be applied under adequate illumination, evenly spread and flowed on smoothly to avoid runs, sags, holidays, brush marks, air bubbles and excessive roller stipple.
- G. Coverage and hide shall be complete. When color, stain, dirt or undercoats show through final coat of paint, the surface shall be covered by additional coats until the paint film is of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage, at no additional cost to the City of New York.

- H. All coats shall be dry to manufacturer's recommendations before applying succeeding coats.
- I. All suction spots or "hot spots" in plaster after the application of the first coat shall be touched up before applying the second coat.
- J. Do not apply paint behind frameless mirrors that use mastic for adhering to wall surface.

### 3.3 PREPARATION OF SURFACES

- A. Existing Surfaces: Clean existing surfaces requiring paint or finishing, remove all loose and flaking paint or finish and sand surface smooth as required to receive new paint or finish. No "telegraphing" of lines, ridges, flakes, etc., through new surfacing is permitted. Where this occurs, Contractor shall be required to sand smooth and re-finish until surface meets with Commissioner's approval.
- B. General
  - 1. The Contractor shall be held wholly responsible for the finished appearance and satisfactory completion of painting work. Properly prepare all surfaces to receive paint, which includes cleaning, sanding, and touching-up of all prime coats applied under other Sections of the work. Broom clean all spaces before painting is started. All surfaces to be painted or finished shall be perfectly dry, clean and smooth.
  - 2. Perform all preparation and cleaning procedures in strict accordance with the paint manufacturer's instructions and as herein specified, for each particular substrate condition.
  - 3. Clean surfaces to be painted before applying paint or surface treatments. Remove oil and grease with clean cloths and cleaning solvents prior to mechanical cleaning. Program the cleaning and painting so that dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall in wet, newly painted surfaces.
- C. Metal Surfaces
  - 1. Weld Fluxes: Remove weld fluxes, splatters, and alkali contaminants from metal surfaces in an approved manner and leave surface ready to receive painting.
  - 2. Bare Metal: Thoroughly clean off all foreign matter such as grease, rust, scale and dirt before priming coat is applied. Clean surfaces, where solder flux has been used, with benzene. Clean surfaces by flushing with mineral spirits. For aluminum surfaces, wipe down with an oil free solvent prior to application of any pre-treatment.
    - a. Bare metal to receive high performance coating specified herein must be blast cleaned SSPC SP-6 prior to application if field applied primer; coordinate with steel trades furnishing ferrous metals to receive this coating to insure that this cleaning method is followed.



3. Shop Primed Metal: Clean off foreign matter as specified for "Bare Metal." Prime bare, rusted, abraded and marred surfaces with approved primer after proper cleaning of surfaces. Sandpaper all rough surfaces smooth.
  4. Metal Filler: Fill dents, cracks, hollow places, open joints and other irregularities in metal work to be painted with an approved metal filler suitable for the purpose and meeting the requirements of the related Section of work; after setting, sand to a smooth, hard finish, flush with adjoining surface.
- D. Gypsum Drywall Surfaces: Scrape off all projections and splatters, spackles all holes or depressions, including taped and spackled joints, sand smooth. Conform to standards established in Section 092900, "Gypsum Drywall."
  - E. Wood Surfaces: Sand to remove all roughness, loose edges, splinters, or splinters and then brush to remove dust. Wash off grease or dirt with an approved cleaner. Fill all cracks, splits, nail holes, screw holes, and surface defects with putty after the priming coat has been applied. Putty shall be brought up flush with the surface and sanded smooth and touched-up with primer when dry.
  - F. Testing for Moisture Content: Contractor shall test all plaster, masonry, and drywall surfaces for moisture content using a reliable electronic moisture meter. Contractor shall also test latex type fillers for moisture content before application of top coats of paint. Do not apply any paint or sealer to any surface or to latex type filler where the moisture content exceeds seven (7) percent as measured by the electronic moisture meter.
  - G. Touch-Up: Prime paint all patched portions in addition to all other specified coats.
- 3.4 MATERIALS PREPARATION
- A. Mix and prepare painting materials in strict accordance with the manufacturer's directions.
  - B. Store materials not in actual use in tightly covered containers. Maintain containers used in storage, mixing, and application of paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - C. Stir all materials before application to produce a mixture of uniform density, and as required during the application of the materials. Do not stir any film which may form on the surface into the material. Remove the film and, if necessary, strain the material before using.
  - D. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat where multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.



### 3.5 APPLICATION

#### A. General

1. Apply paint by brush or roller in accordance with the manufacturer's directions. Use brushes best suited for the type of material being applied. Use rollers of carpet, velvet back, or high pile sheep's wool as recommended by the paint manufacturer for material and texture required.
2. The number of coats and paint film thickness required is the same regardless of the application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until the previous coat has completely dried. Sand between each enamel or varnish coat application with fine sandpaper, or rub surfaces with pumice stone where required to produce an even, smooth surface in accordance with the coating manufacturer's directions.
3. Apply additional coats when undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through the final coat of paint, until the paint film is of uniform finish, color and appearance. Give special attention to insure that all surfaces, including edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
4. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - a. "Exposed surfaces" is defined as those areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convector covers, covers for finned tube radiation, grilles, etc., are in place in areas scheduled to be painted.
5. Paint interior surfaces of ducts, where visible through registers or grilles, with a flat, non-specular black paint, before final installation of equipment.
6. Paint the back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers to match the exposed surfaces.
7. Finish doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as the faces, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Enamel finish applied to wood or metal shall be sanded with fine sandpaper and then cleaned between coats to produce an even surface.
9. Paste wood filler applied on open grained wood after beginning to flatten, shall be wiped across the grain of the wood, then with a circular motion, to secure a smooth, filled, clean surface with filler remaining in open grain only. After overnight dry, sand surface with the grain until smooth before applying specified coat.

#### B. Scheduling Painting



1. Apply the first coat material to surfaces that have been cleaned, pre-treated or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
  2. Allow sufficient time between successive coatings to permit proper drying. Do not re-coat until paint has dried to where it feels firm, does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and the application of another coat of paint does not cause lifting or loss of adhesion of the undercoat.
  - C. Prime Coats: Re-coat primed and sealed walls and ceilings where there is evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat, to assure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
  - D. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover to provide an opaque, smooth surface of uniform finish, color, appearance and coverage.
  - E. "Touching-Up" of Factory Finishes: Unless otherwise specified or shown, materials with a factory finish shall not be painted at the project site. To "touch-up," the Contractor shall use the factory finished material manufacturer's recommended paint materials to repair abraded, chipped, or otherwise defective surfaces.
- 3.6 PROTECTION
- A. Protect work of other trades, whether to be painted or not, against damage by the painting and finishing work. Leave all such work undamaged. Correct any damages by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as acceptable to the Commissioner.
  - B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs as required to protect newly painted finishes. Remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others for protection of their work after completion of painting operations.
- 3.7 CLEAN UP
- A. During the progress of the work, remove from the site all discarded paint materials, rubbish, cans and rags at the end of each work day.
  - B. Upon completion of painting work, clean window glass and other paint spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by proper methods of washing and scraping, using care not to scratch or otherwise damage finished surfaces.
  - C. At the completion of work of other trades, touch-up and restore all damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 90 00

SECTION 10 14 00

IDENTIFYING DEVICES

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the identifying devices as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Exit signs - Division 26.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. For actual installation of the identifying devices, use only personnel who are thoroughly familiar with the manufacturer's recommended methods of installation and who are completely trained in the required skills.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for each type of identifying device required.
- C. Samples: Submit samples of each identifying device showing finishes, colors, surface textures and qualities of manufacture and design of each sign component including graphics.
- D. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of identifying devices. Include plans, elevations, and large scale details of sign wording and lettering layout. Show anchorage and accessory items. Furnish location template drawings for items supported or anchored to permanent construction.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Protection: Use all means necessary to protect the materials of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades.
- B. Replacements: In the event of damage, immediately make all repairs and replacements necessary.

PART II - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Donor Signage
  - 1. Magnet and Bracket: As indicated on Drawings and in Signage Schedule.
  - 2. Letters: Not in Contract.
- B. General Wall ID Signs: As indicated on Drawings and in Signage Schedule.
- C. Backlit Display Cases: As indicated on Drawings and in Signage Schedule.
- D. Light Box: Round DSA light box as indicated on Drawings and in Signage Schedule; or equivalent product of Displays2go, Stylmark, or approved equal.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where identifying devices is to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units and components at the locations directed by the Commissioner, securely mounted with concealed theft-resistant fasteners. Attach to substrates in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install level, plumb, and at the proper height. Cooperate with other trades for installation of sign units to finish surfaces. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by the Commissioner.

END OF SECTION 10 14 00



SECTION 10 28 13

TOILET ACCESSORIES

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the toilet accessories as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Requirements - Section 017419.
- B. Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building) - Section 018113.
- C. Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings - Section 018114.
- D. Construction IAQ Requirements - Section 018119.
- E. Gypsum board partitions - Section 092900.
- F. Tiling - Section 093000.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or built into masonry; coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.



- C. Accessory Locations: Coordinate accessory locations with other work to avoid interference and to assure proper operation and servicing of accessory units. Accessories shall be installed at heights in compliance with prevailing Handicapped Code.
- D. Products: Unless otherwise noted, provide products of same manufacturer for each type of unit and for units exposed in same areas.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING Submittal Requirements: The contractor or subcontractor shall submit the following LEED BUILDING certification items:
  - 1. Material cost breakdowns, submitted in the format of the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, per Section 018113 - 1.5.C (Sustainable Design Requirements) of these specifications.
  - 2. Additional information to complete the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 3. Letters of Certification, Product Cut Sheets, Material Safety Data Sheets, or other items to support the information provided in the ENVIRONMENTAL BUILDING MATERIALS CERTIFICATION FORM, as requested by the Commissioner.
  - 4. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).
  - 5. The LEED BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one package per specification section (or per subcontractor), and sent to the Commissioner for review.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data, catalogue cuts and installation instructions for each toilet accessory.
- C. Setting Drawings: Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorage devices in other work
- D. Submit schedule of accessories indicating quantity and location of each item.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver accessories to the site ready for use in the manufacturer's original and unopened containers and packaging, bearing labels as to type or material,

manufacturer's name and brand name. Delivered materials shall be identical to approved samples.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: AISI Type 302/304, with polished No. 4 finish, 22 gauge minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19 flat products; ASTM B 16, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G60.
- D. Chromium Plating: Nickel and chromium electro-deposited on base metal, ASTM B 456, Type SC 2.
- E. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, mirror glazing quality, clear glass mirrors, nominal 1/4" thick.

### 2.2 FASTENING DEVICES

- A. Exposed Fasteners: Theftproof type, chrome plated, or stainless steel; match finishes on which they are being used.
- B. Concealed Fasteners: Galvanized (ASTM A 123) or cadmium plated.
- C. No exposed fastening devices permitted on exposed frames.
- D. For metal stud drywall partitions, provide ten (10) gauge galvanized sheet concealed anchor plates for securing surface mounted accessories.

### 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Stamped names or labels on exposed faces of toilet accessory units are not permitted. Unobtrusive labels on surfaces not exposed to view are acceptable. Where locks are required for a particular type of toilet accessory, provide same keying throughout project. Furnish two keys for each lock.
- B. Surface-Mounted Toilet Accessories, General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, exposed edges rolled. Hang doors or access panels with continuous stainless steel piano hinge. Provide concealed anchorage.
- C. Recessed Toilet Accessories, General: Fabricate units of all welded construction, without mitered corners. Hang doors of access panels with full-length stainless steel piano hinge. Provide anchorage which is fully concealed when unit is closed.



#### 2.4 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide products manufactured by Bobrick Washroom Equipment Co., American Specialties, Inc., Bradley Corp., A & J Washroom Accessories or approved equal.

#### 2.5 ACCESSORY SCHEDULE

- A. Accessories: As indicated on Drawings.

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where toilet accessories are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Accessories which are to be partition mounted shall be closely coordinated with other trades, so that the necessary reinforcing is provided to receive the accessories.
- B. Furnish templates and setting drawings and anchor plates required for the proper installation of the accessories at gypsum drywall and masonry partitions. Coordinate the work to assure that base plates and anchoring frames are in the proper position to secure the accessories.
- C. Verify by measurements taken at the job site those dimensions affecting the work. Bring field dimensions which are at variance with those on the approved shop drawings to the attention of the Commissioner. Obtain decision regarding corrective measures before the start of fabrication of items affected.
- D. Cooperate in the coordination and scheduling of the work of this Section with the work of other Sections so as not to delay job progress.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories at locations indicated on the drawings, using skilled mechanics, in a plumb, level and secure manner.
- B. Concealed anchor assemblies for gypsum drywall partitions shall be securely anchored to metal studs to accommodate accessories. Assemblies shall consist of plates and/or angles tack welded to studs.
- C. Secure accessories in place, at their designated locations by means of theftproof concealed set screws, so as to render removing of the accessory with a screwdriver impossible.



- D. Unless otherwise indicated, accessories shall conform to heights from the finished floor as shown on the drawings. Where locations are not indicated, such locations shall be as directed by the Commissioner.
- E. Installed accessories shall operate quietly and smoothly for use intended. Doors and operating hardware shall function without binding or unnecessary friction. Dispenser type accessories shall be keyed alike. Prior to final acceptance, master key and one duplicate key shall be given to the Commissioner.
- F. The Commissioner shall be the sole judge of workmanship. Workmanship shall be of the highest quality. Open joints, weld marks, poor connections, etc., will not be permitted. The Commissioner has the right to reject any accessory if he feels the workmanship is below the standards of this project.
- G. Grab bars shall be installed so that they can support a three hundred (300) lb. load for five minutes per ASTM F 446.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Upon completion of the installation, clean accessories of dirt, paint and foreign matter.
- B. During the installation of accessories and until finally installed and accepted, protect accessories with gummed canvas or other means in order to maintain the accessories in acceptable condition.
- C. Replace and/or repair installed work which is damaged or defective to the Commissioner's satisfaction, at no additional cost.

END OF SECTION 10 28 13



SECTION 11 31 00

APPLIANCES

PART I - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary to complete the appliances as shown on the drawings and/or specified herein.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Sinks and related plumbing fixtures - Division 22.
- B. Electrical service - Division 26.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED BUILDING - General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- B. Submit catalog cuts, product information and technical data for each appliance.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and who are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.

1.6 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver products to project site in manufacturer's undamaged protective containers.



- B. Delay delivery until spaces to receive them have been fully enclosed and utility rough ins are complete.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 APPLIANCES

- A. See Equipment Plan A-701.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions where appliances are to be installed and correct any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected to permit proper installation of the work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate as required with other trades to assure proper and adequate provision in the work of those trades for interface with the work of this Section.
- B. Install the work of this Section in strict accordance with the original design, pertinent requirements of governmental agencies having jurisdiction, and the manufacturer's recommended installation procedures as approved by the Architect, anchoring all components firmly into position for long life under hard use.
- C. Upon completion of installation and hookup to utilities, put each operating component of each appliance through at least five (5) complete operating cycles, adjusting as needed to secure optimum operation level.
- D. Touch up scratches and abrasions to be completely invisible to the unaided eye from a distance of five (5) feet.
- E. Promptly remove from the job site all cartons and packing material associated with the work of this Section.

END OF SECTION 11 31 00

FMS# PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM  
INTERIOR FIT OUT

**CONTRACT #2 – PLUMBING WORK**

**SECTION 220013 – PLUMBING CONTRACTOR WORK**  
**ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

**1.01 SCOPE FOR ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK**

- A. The "General Conditions" apply to the work of this Section.
- B. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall remove asbestos containing materials as needed to perform the other work of this Contract when discovered during the course of work. When required, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall replace the ACM with non-asbestos containing materials. An allowance of **\$5,000.00** for the **Plumbing Contractor** is herein established for this incidental work when so ordered and authorized by the Commissioner.
- C. ALL WORK SHALL BE DONE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE PROVISIONS OF THE RULES AND REGULATIONS OF THE ASBESTOS CONTROL PROGRAM AS PROMULGATED BY TITLE 15 CHAPTER I OF RCNY AND NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF LABOR INDUSTRIAL CODE RULE 56 CITED AS 12 NYCRR, PART 56 WHICHEVER IS MORE STRINGENT AS PER LATEST AMENDMENTS TO THESE LAWS AND AS MODIFIED HEREIN BY THESE SPECIFICATIONS.
- D. ALL DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAMINATED MATERIAL SHALL BE PER LOCAL LAW 70/85.
- E. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR'S ATTENTION IS DIRECTED TO THE FACT THAT CERTAIN METHODS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT ARE PROTECTED BY PATENTS. TO DATE, PATENTS HAVE BEEN ISSUED WITH RESPECT TO "NEGATIVE PRESSURE ENCLOSURE" OR "NEGATIVE-AIR" OR "REDUCED PRESSURE" AND "GLOVE BAG".
- F. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR SHALL BE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR AND SHALL HOLD THE DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION AND THE CITY HARMLESS FROM ANY AND ALL DAMAGES, LOSSES AND EXPENSES RESULTING FROM ANY INFRINGEMENT BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR OF ANY PATENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE PATENTS DESCRIBED ABOVE, USED BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR DURING PERFORMANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.
- G. "Asbestos" shall mean any hydrated mineral silicate separable into commercially usable fibers, including but not limited to chrysotile (serpentine), amosite (cumingtonite-grunerite), crocidolite (riebeckite), tremolite, anthrophyllite and actinolite.

PLUMBING CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- H. Prior to starting, the Asbestos abatement contractor must notify the Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction if he/she anticipates any difficulty in performing the Work as required by these Specifications. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to prepare and submit all filings, notifications, etc. required by all City, State and Federal regulatory agencies having jurisdiction.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for submitting the Asbestos Project Notification Form (ACP-7 Form) to the Department of Environmental Protection, Asbestos Control Program, as per Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY and to the NYSDOL as per Industrial Code Rule 56.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for preparing, and submitting Asbestos Variance Application (ACP-9). If a Variance is required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Asbestos Project Designer, as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required variance.

The Plumbing contractor is responsible for preparing and submitting an Asbestos Abatement Permit and/or Work Place Safety Plans (WPSP) that may be required for the completion of the Contract or incidental work. If such plans are required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Licensed Design Professional as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required plans.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the submission of all required documents to the NYCDEP to acquire the appropriate Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout (ACP-20) and/or Asbestos Project Completion Forms (ACP-21) on a timely basis for the completion of the incidental work encountered under this contract.

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be required to attend an on-site job meeting with the Construction Project Manager prior to the start of work to examine conditions and plan the sequence of operations, etc.

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall have a NYSDOL/NYCDEP Asbestos Supervisor onsite to oversee the work and conduct a final visual inspection as required by both Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY and NYSDOL Industrial Code Rule 56.

- I. All work shall be done during regular working hours unless the Asbestos abatement contractor requests authorization to work in other than regular working hours and such authorization is granted by the Commissioner. (Regular work hours are those hours during which any given facility, in which work is to be done, is customarily open and functioning, normally between the hours of 8:00 A.M. and 4:00 P.M. Monday - Friday.) If such work schedule is authorized by the Commissioner, the work shall be done at no additional cost to the City.

- J. The Commissioner may order that work be done in other than regular working hours as herein by defined and this order may require the Asbestos abatement contractor to pay premium or overtime wages to complete the work. If the Commissioner orders work in other than regular working hours, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall multiply the unit price for that portion of the work requiring premium wages by 1.50 when computing payment in accordance with Paragraph 1.09. All requests for premium payment must be supported by certified payroll sheets and field sheets approved by the Construction Project Manager.

## 1.02 QUALIFICATIONS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR

- A. Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements set forth in subparagraphs (1) through (5) below. The asbestos abatement contractor must, submit documentation demonstrating compliance with all listed requirements. Such documentation shall include without limitation, all required licenses, certificates, and documentation.
1. The asbestos abatement contractor must, whether an individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture or other legal entity, must demonstrate for the three year period prior to the work, that it has been licensed by the New York State Department of Labor, as an "Asbestos abatement contractor".
  2. The asbestos abatement contractor must, for the three year period prior to the work, have been in the business of providing asbestos abatement services as a routine part of its daily operations.
  3. The asbestos abatement contractor proposing to do asbestos abatement work must be thoroughly experienced in such work and must provide evidence of having successfully performed and completed in a timely fashion at least five (5) asbestos abatement projects of similar size and complexity. The aggregate cost of these projects must be at least \$250,000.00 in each of the three years.
  4. For each project submitted to meet the experience requirements set forth above, the asbestos abatement contractor must submit the following information for the project; name and location of the project; name title and telephone number of the owner or the owner's representative who is familiar with the asbestos abatement contractor's work, brief description of the work completed as a prime or sub-asbestos abatement contractor; amount of contract or subcontract and the date of completion.
  5. The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate that it has the financial resources, supervisory personnel and equipment necessary to carry out the work and to comply with the required performance schedule, taking into consideration other business commitments. The asbestos

**PLUMBING CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

abatement contractor must submit such documentation as may be required by the Department of Design and Construction to demonstrate that it has the requisite capacity to perform the required services of this contract.

- B. Insurance Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must provide asbestos liability insurance in the following amount: 1 million dollars per occurrence, 2 million dollars aggregate (combined single limit). The City of New York shall be named as an additional insured on such insurance policy.
- C. Throughout the specifications, reference is made to codes and standards which establish qualities and types of workmanship and materials, and which establish methods for testing and reporting on the pertinent characteristics thereof.

**1.03 ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will visit the subject location within one (1) working day of notification to ascertain actual work required. If the project is identified as being "urgent", then work shall commence no later than 48 hours from the time of notification. In this event, the asbestos abatement contractor shall immediately notify when applicable EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL Asbestos Control Bureau and NYCDEP Asbestos Control Program of start of the work and file the necessary Asbestos Notifications and any applicable Variance Applications with the regulatory agencies cited above.

In the event that the project is not classified as "urgent" the Asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL and NYCDEP by submitting the requisite asbestos project notification forms, postmarked 10 days before activity begins if 260 linear feet or more and/or 160 square feet or more of asbestos containing material will be disturbed.

The following information must be included in the notification:

- A. Name and address of building City or operator;
- B. Project description:
  - 1. Size - square feet, number of linear feet, etc;
  - 2. Age - date of construction and renovations (if known);
  - 3. Use - i.e., office, school, industrial, etc.
  - 4. Scope - repair, demolition, cleaning, etc.
- C. Amount of asbestos involved in work and an explanation of techniques used to determine the amount;

- D. Building location/address, including Block and Lot numbers;
- E. Work schedule including the starting and completion dates;
- F. Abatement methods to be employed;
- G. Procedures for removal of asbestos-containing material;
- H. Name, title and authority of governmental representative sponsoring project.

**1.04 WORK INCLUDED IN UNIT PRICE**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be paid a basic unit price of **\$25.00** per square feet for the removal and disposal of asbestos containing material and replacement of the same with non-asbestos containing materials.

Unit price shall include all costs necessary to do the work of this Contract, including but not limited to: labor, materials, equipment, utilities, disposal, insurance, overhead and profit.

**1.05 AIR MONITORING – ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR**

- A. "Air Sampling" shall mean the process of measuring the fiber content of a known volume of air collected during a specific period of time. The procedure utilized for asbestos follows the NIOSH Standard Analytical Method 7400 or the provisional transmission electron microscopy methods developed by the USEPA and/or National Institute of Standard and Technology which are utilized for lower detectability and specific fiber identification.
- B. Air monitoring of Asbestos abatement contractor's personnel will be performed in conformance with OSHA requirements, (All costs associated with this work are deemed included in the unit price.).
- C. Qualifications of Testing Laboratory:

The industrial hygiene laboratory shall be a current proficient participant in the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) PAT Program. The laboratory identification number shall be submitted and approved by the City. The laboratory shall be accredited by the AIHA and New York State Department of Health Environmental Laboratory Approval Program (ELAP).

Note: Work area air testing and analysis before, during and upon completion of work (clearance testing) will be performed by a Third Party Air Monitor under separate Contract with the City.

**1.06 THIRD PARTY MONITORING AND LABORATORY**

- A. The NYCDDC, at its own expense, will employ the services of an independent Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and Laboratory. The Third Party Air Monitor will perform air sampling activities and project monitoring at the Work Site.
- B. The Laboratory will perform analysis of air samples utilizing Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) and/or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM).
- C. The Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and the designated Project Monitor shall have access to all areas of the asbestos removal project at all times and shall continuously inspect and monitor the performance of the Asbestos abatement contractor to verify that said performance complies with this Specification. The Third-Party Air Monitor shall be on site throughout the entire abatement operation.
- D. The NYCDDC will be responsible for costs incurred with the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and laboratory work. Any subsequent additional testing required due to limits exceeded during initial testing shall be paid for by the Asbestos abatement contractor.

**1.07 PAYMENT REQUEST DOCUMENTATION**

- B. The following information shall be included for each payment request:
  - 1. Description of work performed.
  - 2. Linear footage and pipe sizes involved.
  - 3. Square footage for boiler & breaching insulation removed.
  - 4. Square footage of non pipe and boiler areas removed, patched, enclosed, sealed, or painted.
  - 5. Square footage of encapsulation, sealing, patching, and painting involved.
  - 6. Total cost associated with compliance with the assigned task.
  - 7. Architectural, Electrical, HVAC, Plumbing, etc. work incidental to the Asbestos Abatement Work.
  - 8. A certified copy (in form 4312-39) to the Comptroller or Financial Officer of the New York City to the effect that the financial statement is true.
  - 9. A signed copy (in form 6506q-6) of certificate of compliance with non-discriminatory provisions of the Contract.

PLUMBING CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

10. Attach a copy of valid workmen compensation insurance.
  11. Valid asbestos insurance per occurrence.
  12. General liability insurance when required.
- C. Each payment request shall include a grand total for all work completed that billing period, the landfill waste manifests and a copy of waste transporter permit. The Department of Design and Construction will inspect the work performed, review the cost and approve or disapprove requests for payment.
- D. EXPOSURE LOG: With this final payment, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a listing of the names and social security numbers of all employees actively engaged in the abatement work of this Contract. This list shall include a summary showing each part of the abatement work in which the employee was engaged and the dates thereof.

**1.08 QUANTITY CALCULATIONS**

In order to determine the square footage involved for the various pipe sizes of pipe insulation that might be encountered, the following table is to be used.

<u>PIPE INSULATION SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>PIPE SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>SQUARE FOOTAGE PER LINEAR FOOT</u>
2-1/2"	1/2"	0.65
2-3/4"	3/4"	0.72
3"	1"	0.79
3-1/4"	1-1/4"	0.85
3-1/2"	1-1/2"	0.92
4"	2"	1.05
4-1/2"	2-1/2"	1.18
5"	3"	1.31
6"	3-1/4"	1.57
7"	3-1/2"	1.83
8"	4"	2.09
9"	5"	2.36
10"	6"	2.62
12"	8"	3.14
14"	10"	3.67
16"	12"	4.19
18"	14"	4.71

1.09 **METHOD OF PAYMENT**

Payment shall be made in accordance with Items A through R below. Payment shall be calculated based on the actual quantity of the item performed by the asbestos abatement contractor, times the unit price specified below. Credits may apply to certain times, as specified below.

- A. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING PIPE INSULATION:** Actual linear footage, multiplied by the square footage factor listed for the respective pipe size in Section 1.08, multiplied by the unit price in Section 1.04.

EXAMPLE: 100 lin.ft. of 1/2" pipe and 100 lin.ft. of 6" pipe, including elbows, tees. Flanges, etc.

100 X 0.65 = 65 sq.ft.      65 x unit price = Payment

100 X 2.62 = 262 sq.ft.      262 x unit price = Payment

- B. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER INSULATION:** (all types including Silicate Block and including the removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

EXAMPLE: Item B. removal and replacement of 1000 S.F. of boiler insulation (incl. Silicate block)

1000 S.F. X (1.5) X the Unit Price = Payment

- C. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF TANK INSULATION:** (all types including removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

- D. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER UPTAKE, & BREACHING INSULATION:** (all types including stiffening angles and wire lath) Payment shall be made at 2.0 times the unit price per square foot.

- E. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF DUCT INSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot.

- F. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF SOFT ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (Including sprayed-on fire proofing and sound proofing) Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot of surface area. Area of irregular surfaces must be calculated and confirmed with DDC representative.

- G. **ACOUSTIC PLASTER REPAIR AND/OR ENCAPSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.

- H. **PATCHING OR REPAIR** of items listed in A through F will be paid at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- I. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF WATERPROOFING ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (including friable and non-friable waterproofing material from interior and exterior walls, floors, foundations, penetrations, louvers, vents and openings other than windows, doors and skylights) Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.
- J. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL WIRING INSULATION:** (including friable and non-friable wiring insulation) Payment shall be made at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- K. **PAINTING:** Payment shall be made at 0.05 times the unit price per square foot.
- L. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING PLASTER:** from ceilings and walls, including any wire lath and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.80 times the unit price per square foot.
- M. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING FLOOR TILES, CEILING TILES, TRANSITE PANELS:** (including any adhesive, glue, mastic and/or underlayment) and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.40 times the unit price per square foot. If multiple layers are discovered, each additional layer shall be paid at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot.
- N. **ADDITIONAL CLEAN UP/HOUSEKEEPING OF WORK AREA:** (excluding pre-cleaning of work area required by regulations) HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of asbestos contaminated surface. Payment shall be made at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot. When GLOVE BAG is employed to remove ACM, cost of HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of floor area up to 3 feet on each side of glove-bag shall be included in unit price and no extra payment will be made.
- O. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING ROOFING MATERIAL:** including mastic, flashing and sealant compound and provide temporary asbestos-free roof covering consisting of one layer of rolled roofing paper sealed with asphaltic roofing compound. Payment shall be made at 0.8 times the unit price per square foot. Credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price will be taken for each square foot of temporary roof covering which the Asbestos abatement contractor is directed not to install.
- P. **PICK-UP AND DISPOSAL OF GROSS DEBRIS:** (excluding any waste generated from abatement under Item A-R) at a rate of \$150 per cubic yard for asbestos contaminated waste and \$75 per cubic yard for non-asbestos contaminated waste. This cost includes all labor and material cost associated with work.

- Q. **REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING BRICK, BLOCK, MORTAR, CEMENT OR CONCRETE:** along with all surfacing materials including wire lath and/or other supporting structures and disposal as ACM waste. Payment shall be made at a rate of \$25.00 per cubic foot of material removed.
- R. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING WINDOW/DOOR CAULKING:** including friable and non-friable caulking, weather-stripping, glazing, sealants or other waterproofing materials applied to windows, doors, skylights, etc. Payment shall be made at the rate of \$400.00 per opening regardless of size or configuration. This cost includes labor, consumable materials, set-up/breakdown, removal and disposal, as required.

**Note 1: CREDIT:** For items listed in A through F, a credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price, times the respective multiplier (for each item) will be taken for each square foot of insulation which the asbestos abatement contractor is not directed to reapply.

**Note 2: MINIMUM PAYMENT:** The minimum payment per call at any individual job sites or various job sites during the same day will be eight hundred dollars (\$800.00).

**Note 3:** All payments shall be made as described in paragraph 1.09 herein.

**Note 4: WORKING HIGHER THAN 12 FEET ABOVE FLOOR LEVEL OR WORK REQUIRING COMPLEX SCAFFOLDING OR CONSTRUCTION WORK PLATFORMS:** Provisions are made in this Contract to compensate the Asbestos abatement contractor for work performed in locations that are difficult to access due to work at elevations that are significantly higher than the normal work level. The unit price for these items will be paid at 1.20 times the unit price described in Paragraphs 1.09, A through R for those portions of the work that are more than twelve (12) feet above the grade for that would be judged as the normal working level.

#### 1.10 GUARANTEE

- A. Work performed in compliance with each task shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date the completed work is accepted by the Department of Design and Construction.
- B. The Commissioner of The Department of Design and Construction will notify the Asbestos abatement contractor in writing regarding defects in work under the guarantee.

#### 1.11 OCCUPANCY OF SITE NOT EXCLUSIVE

Attention is specifically drawn to the fact that contractors, performing the work of other Contracts, may be brought upon any of the work sites of this Contract. Therefore, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall not have exclusive rights to any site of his work and shall fully cooperate and coordinate his work with the work of other contractors who may

be brought upon any site of the work of this Contract. This paragraph applies to those areas outside the regulated Work Area as defined by Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY.

1.12 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-Construction Submittals:

1. Attend a pre-construction meeting scheduled by the City of New York Department of Design and Construction. This meeting shall also be attended by a designated representative of the City of New York third party air monitoring firm, facility manager and the Construction Project Manager. At this meeting, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present three copies of the following items:
  - a. Asbestos abatement contractor's scope of work, work plan and schedule.
  - b. Asbestos project notifications, approved variances and plans to Government Agencies.
  - c. Copies of Permits, clearance and licenses if required.
  - d. Schedules: the Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to the Construction Project Manager a copy of the following schedules for approval. Once approved, schedules shall be maintained and updated as received. Asbestos abatement contractor shall post a copy of all schedules at the site:
    - (1) A construction schedule stating critical dates of the project including, but not limited to, mobilization, Work Area preparation, demolition, gross removal, fine cleaning, encapsulation, inspections, clearance monitoring, and phase of refinishing and final inspections. The schedule shall be updated biweekly, at a minimum.
    - (2) A schedule of staffing stating number of workers per shift per activity, name and number of supervisor(s) per shift, shifts per day, and total days to be worked.
    - (3) Submit all changes in schedule or staffing to the Construction Project Manager prior to implementation.
  - e. Written description of emergency procedures to be followed in case of injury or fire. This section must include evacuation procedures, source of medical assistance (name and telephone number to nearest

**PLUMBING CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

hospital) and procedures to be used for access by medical personnel (examples: first aid squad and physician). NOTE: Necessary Emergency Procedures Shall Take Priority Over All Other Requirements of These Specifications.

- f. Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for encapsulants, sealants, firestopping foam, cleaners/disinfectants, spray adhesive and any and all potentially hazardous materials that may be employed on the project. No work involving the aforementioned will be allowed to proceed until SDS are reviewed.
- g. Worker Training and Medical Surveillance: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a list of the persons who will be employed by him /her to perform the removal work. Present evidence that workers have received proper training required by the regulations and the medical examinations required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101.
- h. Logs: Specimen copies of daily progress log, visitor's log, and disposal log.
  - (1) The Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a permanently bound log book of minimum 8-1/2" x 11" size at the entrance to the Worker and Waste Decontamination enclosure system as hereinafter specified. Log book shall contain on title page the project name, name, address and phone number of the Asbestos abatement contractor; name, address and phone number of Asbestos abatement contractor and City's third party air monitoring firm; emergency numbers including, but not limited to local Fire/Rescue Department. Log book shall contain a list of personnel approved for entry into the Work Area.
  - (2) All entries into the log shall be made in non-washable, permanent ink and such pen shall be strung to or otherwise attached to the log to prevent removal from the log-in area. Under no circumstances shall pencil entries be permitted. Any significant events occurring during the abatement project shall be entered into the log. Upon completion of the job, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit the logbook containing a day-to-day record of personnel log entries countersigned by the Construction Project Manager every day.
- i. Worker's Acknowledgments: Submit statements signed by each employee that the employee has received training in the proper handling of ACM, understands the health implications and risks

involved; and understands the use and limitations of the respiratory equipment to be used.

B. During Construction Submittals:

1. Security and safety logs showing names of person entering workspace, date and time of entry and exit, record of any accident, emergency evacuation, and any other safety and/or health incident.
2. Progress logs showing the number of workers, supervisors, hours of work and tasks completed shall be submitted daily to the Construction Project Manager.
3. Floor plans indicating Asbestos abatement contractor's current work progress shall be submitted for review by the Construction Project Manager.
4. All Asbestos abatement contractors' air monitoring and inspection results.

C. Project Closeout Submittals:

Upon completion of the project and as a condition of acceptance, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present two copies of the following items, bound and indexed:

1. Lien Waivers from Asbestos abatement contractor, Sub-Asbestos abatement contractors and Suppliers,
2. Daily OSHA air monitoring results,
3. All Waste Manifests (Asbestos and Construction Debris), seals and disposal logs,
4. Field Sign-In/Sign-Out Logs for every shift,
5. Copies of all Building Department Forms and Permits,
6. A Letter of Compliance stating that all the work on this project was performed in accordance with the Specifications and all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations,
7. All Warranties as stated in the Specifications,
  - a. Fully executed disposal certificates and transportation manifest.
8. Project Record: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain a project record for all small and large asbestos projects. During the project, the

project record shall be kept on site at all times. Upon completion of the project, the project record shall be maintained by the building owner. The project record shall be submitted to DDC as part of the close out documents. The project record shall consist of:

- a. Copies of licenses of all asbestos abatement contractors involved in the project;
- b. Copies of NYCDEP and NYSDOL supervisor and handler certificates for all workers engaged in the project;
- c. Copies of all project notifications and reports filed with NYCDEP, NYSDOL and USEPA for the project, with any amendments or variances;
- d. Copies of all asbestos abatement permits, including associated approved plans and work place safety plan;
- e. A copy of the air sampling log and all air sampling results;
- f. A copy of the abatement asbestos abatement contractor's daily log book;
- g. Copies of all asbestos waste manifests;
- h. A copy of all Project Monitor's Reports (ACP-15).
- i. A copy of each ATR-1 Form completed for the asbestos project (if required).
- j. A copy of each Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout Report (ACP-20) if required.
- k. A copy of the Asbestos Project Completion Form (ACP-21).

### 1.13 PROTECTION OF FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT

Cover all furniture and equipment that cannot be removed from Work Areas. Movable furniture and equipment will be removed from Work Areas by the Asbestos abatement contractor prior to start of work. At the conclusion of the work (after final air testing), the Asbestos abatement contractor will remove all plastic covering on walls, floors, furniture, equipment and reinstall furniture and equipment. He shall remove and store all sheaths, curtains and drapes, and reinstall same following final clean up.

1.14 UTILITIES

A. General:

All temporary facilities shall be subject to the approval of the Commissioner. Prior to starting work at any site, locations and/or sketches (if required) of temporary facilities must be submitted to the Construction Project Manager for the required approval.

B. Water:

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all water needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in buildings under their jurisdiction. However, it is the responsibility of the Asbestos abatement contractor to ensure that hot water is provided for showering in the decontamination unit. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall furnish, install and maintain any needed equipment to meet these requirements at his own expense.

C. Electricity:

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all electricity needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in a building, under their jurisdiction. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for routing the electric power to the abatement Work Area.

All temporary lighting and temporary electrical service for Work Area shall be in weatherproof enclosures and be ground fault protected.

- D. In leased spaces, arrangements for water supplies and electricity must be made with the landlord. However, all such arrangements must be made through and are subject to approval of the Department of Design and Construction. Utilities will be provided at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor. However, it is the Asbestos abatement contractor's (or the Plumbing contractor's) responsibility to furnish and install a suitable distribution system to the Work Area. This system will be provided at no cost to the City.

1.15 FEES

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for any and all fees or charges imposed by Local, State or Federal Law, Rule and Regulation applicable to the work specified herein, including fees or charges which may be imposed subsequent to the date of the Bid opening.

**END OF SECTION**



## SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  2. Dielectric fittings.
  3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  4. Sleeves.
  5. Escutcheons.
  6. Grout.
  7. Plumbing demolition.
  8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  9. Concrete bases.
  10. Supports and anchorages.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than plumbing and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and plumbing equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.



1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. LEED Building submittal requirements:

1. Provide for all field-applied adhesives, sealants (used as fillers), and paints: Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

B. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. LEED Building Requirements:

1. General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED building criteria.
2. Performance Criteria: All field applied adhesives, sealants (used as fillers), prime painting, and finished painting shall comply with the low VOC requirements called out in Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, & Architectural Coatings, and Section 09900 - Interior Paint.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

C. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

D. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAgl, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.



- E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

#### 2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

#### 2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

#### 2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.



- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated and rough brass.

## 2.7 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 10 and Division 20 for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Commissioner's representative.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.



3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
  - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.



- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Firestops and Smoke seals" for materials.
- Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.



- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402, for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.



- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use [3000-psi (20.7-MPa)], 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.



3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 220500



## SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Water Sub-Meters
  - 2. Thermometers.
  - 3. Gages.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WATER SUB-METERS

- A. A sub-meter that provides for accurate flow measurement of potable water supplied to the IPR.
- B. Design of the sub-meter shall use transit-time ultrasonic technology along with transducers to provide for flow totalizing (gallons used) and flow rate (gpm) in real time. Sub-meter (s) shall be wall-mounted and capable for  $\pm 1\%$  accurate flow measurement of clean liquids, suitable for liquids that contain small amounts of suspended solids or particle in sizes smaller than 100  $\mu\text{m}$  in order to make a measurement. Sub-meter shall be able to operate in temperatures ranging from 32°F to 212°F and come equipped with a device that emits pulse signals.
- C. The clamp-on sub-meter shall contain a display that is LCD with backlight. Indication for flow rate and flow accumulator shall be displayed in English (US) units.



- D. Clamp-on transducers that are strapped to the water lines and wired directly to the sub-meter electronics enclosure must be provided as part of the potable water sub-metering system.
- E. Enclosure shall be weather-resistant, NEMA 4X or IP65. It shall be constructed of stainless steel
- F. Power requirement for the sub-meter is 90 VAC.
- G. Approved Models: STUF -300FxB by SHENITECH or TFX by Dynasonics.

## 2.2 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product manufactured by one of the following:
  - 1. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
  - 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 4. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
- B. Case: Chrome-plated brass, 7 inches (178 mm) long.
- C. Tube: Red or blue reading, organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.
- D. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- E. Window: Glass.
- F. Connector: Rigid, straight type.
- G. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- H. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

## 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
  - 1. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.
  - 2. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
  - 3. Ernst Gage Co.
  - 4. Eugene Ernst Products Co.
  - 5. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc.
  - 6. Marsh Bellofram.



7. Miljoco Corp.
8. Noshok, Inc.
9. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
10. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
11. Terrice, H. O. Co.
12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
13. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
14. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
15. Winters Instruments.

B. Direct-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: Indicating-dial type complying with ASME B40.100.

1. Case: Dry type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch (114-mm).
2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4 (DN 8), bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
6. Pointer: Red[ or other dark-color] metal.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half scale.
10. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.

C. Pressure-Gage Fittings:

1. Valves: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) brass or stainless-steel needle type.
2. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 (DN 8) brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

- A. Install liquid-in-glass thermometers in the outlet of each domestic, hot-water storage tank.
- B. Install liquid-filled-case-type, bimetallic-actuated dial thermometers at suction and discharge of each pump.
- C. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:
  1. Domestic Hot Water: 30 to 180 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions (Minus 1 to plus 82 deg C, with 1-degree scale divisions).
  2. Domestic Cold Water: 0 to 100 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions (Minus 18 to plus 38 deg C, with 1-degree scale divisions).



### 3.2 GAGE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install dry-case-type pressure gages for discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
- B. Install dry-case-type pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

### 3.3 INSTALLATIONS

- A. Install direct-mounting thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- B. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) into fluid or to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.
- C. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.
- D. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage.
- E. Install thermometers and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for thermometers, gages, machines, and equipment.
- F. Adjust faces of thermometers and gages to proper angle for best visibility.
- G. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for installation of the sub-meter. The recommended spacing between transducers and the laying-out or method of installation: Z-method (two transducers on opposite sides of the pipe), V-method (two transducers on the same side) that is outlined in the installers' guide must be adhered to. Provide cable of sufficient length to wire the transducer to the electronic enclosure. The electronic enclosure shall be installed neatly at a location shown on the Drawings or as approved by the Engineer of Record in a location where the meter can be read.

END OF SECTION 220519



SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Brass ball valves.
  - 2. Bronze ball valves.
  - 3. Bronze swing check valves.
  - 4. Iron swing check valves.
  - 5. Bronze gate valves.
  - 6. Iron gate valves.
  - 7. Bronze globe valves.
  - 8. Iron globe valves.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
  - 3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.4 LEAD-FREE CERTIFICATION

- A. All copper and brass products used in portable water system shall bear "LEAD-FREE" certification.



1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
- B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller[ except plug valves].
  - 4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.



- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. DynaQuip Controls.
- d. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
- g. Jomar International, LTD.
- h. Kitz Corporation.
- i. Legend Valve.
- j. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Brass, blow-out proof stem.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).



- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze, blow-out proof.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

## 2.4 IRON GATE VALVES

### A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

#### 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Flo Fab Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Kitz Corporation.
- g. Legend Valve.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. NIBCO INC.
- j. Powell Valves.
- k. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

#### 2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: Class 125, 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- h. Stem: Rising stem, OS&Y

## 2.5 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

#### 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.



- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Kitz Corporation.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Powell Valves.
- h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron or bronze.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Kitz Corporation.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.



## 2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Legend Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Powell Valves.
  - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  
2. **Description:**
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.



### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
  - 2. Throttling Service: Globe or ball or butterfly valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP class or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

### 3.4 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
  - 3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass bronze trim.
  - 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
  - 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
  - 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
  - 1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to NPS 100): Flanged ends.
  - 2. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
  - 3. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
  - 4. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523



SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  3. Metal framing systems.
  4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  5. Fastener systems.
  6. Equipment supports.
- B. See Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- C. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

ISSUE PROJECT ROOM



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
3. Powder-actuated fastener systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Equipment supports.

C. Welding certificates.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.

B. Manufacturers:

1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
2. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.
3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
5. Empire Industries, Inc.
6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
8. Grinnell Corp.
9. GS Metals Corp.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

10. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
11. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
12. PHS Industries, Inc.
13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
14. Tolco Inc.

- C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

**2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

**2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS**

- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.

**B. Manufacturers:**

1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
3. GS Metals Corp.
4. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
6. Tolco Inc.
7. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.

- C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish, unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

**2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS**

- A. Description: 100-psig- (690-kPa-) minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.

**B. Manufacturers:**

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
3. PHS Industries, Inc.



4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Hilti, Inc.
- b. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
- c. Masterset Fastening Systems, Inc.
- d. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- e. Powers Fasteners.

- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
- b. Empire Industries, Inc.
- c. Hilti, Inc.
- d. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
- e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- f. Powers Fasteners.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.



- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16 (DN 100 to DN 400), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
  - 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
  - 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  - 7. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.



8. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050), if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20 (DN 20 to DN 500).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20 (DN 20 to DN 500), if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
  
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
  
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
  8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.



K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.

L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchor instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.

B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.



- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, [NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)] and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- M. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
    - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
  - 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood inserts.
  - 6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.



7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 220529



## SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTAL

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or Stainless steel, 0.025-inch (0.64-mm) or Aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.



- B. **Label Content:** Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. **Equipment Label Schedule:** For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. **Material and Thickness:** Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. **Letter Color:** Red
- C. **Background Color:** White.
- D. **Maximum Temperature:** Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. **Minimum Label Size:** Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. **Minimum Letter Size:** 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. **Fasteners:** Stainless-steel rivets or rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. **Adhesive:** Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. **Label Content:** Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. **General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels:** Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. **Pretensioned Pipe Labels:** Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover or cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. **Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels:** Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. **Pipe Label Contents:** Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.



1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

#### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

#### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  1. Domestic Water Piping:
    - a. Background Color: White.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.
  2. Sanitary Waste Piping:
    - a. Background Color: White.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

END OF SECTION 220553



## SECTION 220700 - PLUMBING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

- 1. Insulation Materials:
  - a. Cellular glass.
  - b. Flexible elastomeric.
  - c. Mineral fiber.
  - d. Polyolefin.
  - e. Polystyrene.
- 2. Insulating cements.
- 3. Adhesives.
- 4. Mastics.
- 5. Sealants.
- 6. Factory-applied jackets.
- 7. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
- 8. Field-applied jackets.
- 9. Tapes.
- 10. Securements.
- 11. Corner angles.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.



3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
8. Detail field application for each equipment type.

C. LEED Submittals

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393,



Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products:

- a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
- b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
- c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
- e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).

1. Products:

- a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
- b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.

C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products:

- a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; AeroSeal.
- b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
- c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
- d. RBX Corporation; Rubatex Contact Adhesive.

D. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products:

- a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
- b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
- c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
- d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
- e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

E. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).

1. Products:



- a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 97-13.
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); 739, Dow Silicone.
    - b. Johns-Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
    - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
    - d. Red Devil, Inc.; Celulon Ultra Clear.
    - e. Speedline Corporation; Speedline Vinyl Adhesive.

### 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
    - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
    - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
    - f. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.



1. Products:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-10.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 35-00.
  - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-05/15.
  - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 550.
  - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
  - f. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms (2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 93 deg C).
4. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.4 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
  - f. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
2. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-70.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45/30-46.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
6. Color: White or gray.

### B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.



- e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
  5. Color: Aluminum.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
    2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
    3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
    5. Color: White.

## 2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - a. Products:
      - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.



- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:



1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Cleanouts

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.



- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

#### 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe



- insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.



### 3.5 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.6 FINISHES

#### A. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.



- a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Commissioner's representative. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Commissioner's representative, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
  - 2. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Commissioner's representative, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
  - 2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be:



1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inch thick with Field-applied PVC jacket for pipes 1-1/2" and smaller.
- B. Domestic Cold Water : Insulation shall be:
1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick with field applied PVC jacket.
- C. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1" thick.
  2. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 220700



**SECTION 22 08 00 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the project:
  - 1. Contract Drawings
  - 2. Specifications
  - 3. General Conditions
  - 4. Addendum
  - 5. City of New York Standard Construction Contract
  
- B. The OPR and BOD documentation are included for reference information only.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes commissioning process requirements for Plumbing systems, assemblies, and equipment.

**1.3 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Commissioning: Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems, including the mechanical and electrical systems, have been installed in the prescribed manner, are functionally checked and capable of being operated and maintained to perform with the design intent and have documentation to support proper installation and operation. The Commissioning Agent (CxA) shall provide the City of New York with an unbiased, objective view of the system's installation, operation and performance. This process does not eliminate or reduce the responsibility of each contractor to provide a complete and finished product. Commissioning is intended to enhance the quality of each system installation, startup and transfer to beneficial use by the City of New York.
  
- B. Commissioning during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following specific objectives, according to the Contract Documents:
  - 1. Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that they receive adequate operational checkout by installing subcontractors.
  - 2. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems.
  - 3. Verify that Operation & Service documentation is complete and transferred to City of New York.
  - 4. Verify that the City of New York's operating personnel are adequately instructed.
  - 5. Perform a post occupancy review with O&M staff within 10 months after Substantial Completion.
  
- C. The Commissioning process shall be a team effort and encompass, as well as coordinate, the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, system installation, equipment



startup, control system calibration, testing, balancing and verification and performance checkouts.

- D. The CxA will work closely with the construction team, cooperating on and coordinating all Cx activities with the Commissioner, Contractor, subcontractors, manufacturers and equipment suppliers.
- E. The Cx process shall not reduce the responsibility of the Commissioner to comply with the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for definitions.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to "Submittals" section of DDC General Conditions for specific requirements. In addition, provide the following:
- B. Certificates of readiness
- C. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.
- D. O&M manuals
- E. Test reports

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test Equipment Calibration Requirements: Subcontractors will comply with test manufacturer's calibration procedures and intervals. Recalibrate test instruments immediately after instruments have been repaired resulting from being dropped or damaged. Affix calibration tags to test instruments. Furnish calibration records to CxA upon request.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for requirements pertaining to coordination during the commissioning process.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup, initial checkout and functional performance testing shall be provided by the subcontractor for the equipment being tested. For example, the subcontractor performing plumbing work shall ultimately be responsible for all standards testing equipment for the plumbing system in Division 22, except for equipment



specific to and used by subcontractor performing TAB work in their commissioning responsibilities. A sufficient quantity of two-way radios shall be provided by each subcontractor.

- B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (specific to a piece of equipment and only available from vendor) required for testing shall be included in the base bid price to the City of New York and left on site, except for stand-alone data logging equipment that may be used by the CxA.
- C. Test equipment and software required by any equipment manufacturer for programming and/or start-up, whether specified or not, shall be provided by the manufacturer of the equipment. Manufacturer shall provide the test equipment, demonstrate its use, and assist in the commissioning process as needed. Proprietary test equipment (and software) shall become the property of the City of New York upon completion of the commissioning process.
- D. Data logging equipment and software required to test equipment, if provided by the CxA, shall not become the property of the City of New York.
- E. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply: Temperature sensors and digital thermometers shall have a certified calibration within the past year to accuracy of 0.5°F and a resolution of + or - 0.1°F. Pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of + or - 2.0% of the value range being measured (not full range of meter) and have been calibrated within the last year.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. With assistance from the installing subcontractors, the CxA will prepare Pre-Functional Checklists for commissioned components, equipment, and systems
- B. Red-lined Drawings:
  - 1. The subcontractor will verify all equipment, systems, instrumentation, wiring and components are shown correctly on red-lined drawings.
  - 2. Preliminary red-lined drawings must be made available to the Commissioning Team for use prior to the start of Functional Performance Testing.
  - 3. Changes, as a result of Functional Testing, must be incorporated into the final as-built drawings, which will be created from the red-lined drawings.
  - 4. The contracted party, as defined in the Contract Documents will create the as-built drawings.
- C. Operation and Service Data:
  - 1. Subcontractor will provide a copy of O&M literature within 45 days of each submittal acceptance for use during the commissioning process for all commissioned equipment and systems.
  - 2. The CxA will review the O&M literature once for conformance to project requirements.



3. The CxA will receive a copy of the final approved O&M literature once corrections have been made by the subcontractor.

**D. Demonstration and Instruction:**

1. Subcontractor will provide demonstration and instruction as required by the specifications.
2. A complete instruction plan and schedule must be submitted by the subcontractor to the CxA four weeks (4) prior to any instruction.
3. An instruction agenda for each instruction session must be submitted to the CxA one (1) week prior the training session.
4. The CxA shall be notified at least 72 hours in advance of scheduled tests so that testing may be observed by the CxA and Commissioner. A copy of the test record shall be provided to the CxA, City of New York, and Commissioner.
5. Engage a Factory-authorized service representative to instruct City of New York's service personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specific equipment.
6. Instruct City of New York's service personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, trouble shooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
7. Review data in O&M Manuals.

**3.2 SUBCONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meetings.
- C. Attend domestic water balancing review and coordination meetings.
- D. Participate in Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and component service orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- F. Include requirements for submittal data, operation and maintenance data, and instruction in each purchase order or sub-contract written.
- G. Prepare preliminary schedule for Plumbing system orientations and inspections, operation and maintenance manual submissions, instruction sessions, pipe and duct system testing, flushing and cleaning, equipment start-up, testing and balancing and task completion for City of New York. Distribute preliminary schedule to commissioning team members.
- H. Update schedule as required throughout the construction period.
- I. During the startup and initial checkout process, execute the related portions of the prefunctional checklists for all commissioned equipment.
- J. Assist the CxA in all verification and functional performance tests.



- K. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.
- L. Gather operation and maintenance literature on all equipment, and assemble in binders as required by the specifications. Submit to CxA (45) days after submittal acceptance.
- M. Coordinate with the CxA to provide (48) hour advance notice so that the witnessing of equipment and system start-up and testing can begin.
- N. Notify the CxA a minimum of (2) weeks in advance of the time for start of the balancing work. Attend the initial balancing meeting for review of the balancing procedures.
- O. Participate in, and schedule vendors and subcontractors to participate in the instruction sessions.
- P. Provide written notification to the Commissioner and CxA that the following work has been completed in accordance with the contract documents, and that the equipment, systems, and sub-system are operating as required.
  - 1. Plumbing equipment including backflow preventers, domestic water heaters, pumps, plumbing fixtures, and all other equipment furnished under Division 22 and contract document.
- Q. The equipment supplier shall document the performance of his equipment.
- R. Provide a complete set of red-lined drawings to the CxA prior to the start of Functional Performance Testing.
- S. Subcontractor performing Test, Adjust and Balance work:
  - 1. Attend initial commissioning coordination meeting scheduled by the CxA.
  - 2. Submit the site specific balancing plan to the CxA and Commissioner for review and acceptance.
  - 3. Attend the balancing review meeting scheduled by the CxA. Be prepared to discuss the procedures that shall be followed in balancing the Plumbing system.
  - 4. At the completion of the balancing work, and the submittal of the final balancing report, notify the subcontractor performing plumbing work and the Commissioner.
  - 5. Participate in verification of the balancing report, which will consist of repeating measurements contained in the balancing reports. Assist in diagnostic purposes when directed.
- T. Provide instruction of the City of New York's operating staff using qualified personnel, as specified.
- U. Equipment Suppliers
  - 1. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed start-up procedures and specific responsibilities of the City of New York, to keep warranties in force.
  - 2. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with respective subcontractors.
  - 3. Provide information requested by CxA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.
- V. Refer to DDC General Conditions for additional contract and subcontractor responsibilities.



**3.3 CITY OF NEW YORK'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for the City of New York's responsibilities.

**3.4 COMMISSIONER'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for Commissioner's Responsibilities.

**3.5 CxA's RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for CxA's Responsibilities.

**3.6 TESTING PREPARATION**

- A. Certify in writing to the CxA that Plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify in writing to the CxA that Plumbing instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify in writing that balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

**3.7 DOMESTIC WATER BALANCING VERIFICATION**

- A. Prior to performance of Domestic Water Balancing work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- B. Notify the CxA at least ten (10) days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness balancing Work.
- C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of Plumbing systems at the direction of the CxA.



1. The CxA will notify testing and subcontractor performing balancing work ten (10) days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The subcontractor performing balancing work shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Failure of an item includes a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final balancing report.
4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

### **3.8 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of Plumbing testing shall include entire Plumbing installation. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the subcontractor performing plumbing work and the subcontractor performing balancing work shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Plumbing system, document the deficiency and report it to the City of New York. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.



**3.9 PLUMBING SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES**

- A. **Equipment Testing and Acceptance Procedures:** Testing and Acceptance requirements are specified in Division 22. Provide submittals, test data, inspector records, and certifications to the CxA.
- B. **Plumbing Instrumentation and Control System Testing:** Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 22. Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- C. **Pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic tests and chemical treatment:** Subcontractor performing plumbing work shall prepare a pipe system cleaning, flushing, and hydrostatic testing plan. Provide cleaning, flushing, testing, and treating plan and final reports to the CxA.
- D. **Plumbing Distribution System Testing:** Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of domestic water distribution system.
- E. **Vibration and Sound Tests:** Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of vibration isolation and seismic controls.
- F. **The work included in the commissioning process involves a complete and thorough evaluation of the operation and performance of all components, systems and sub-systems. The systems shall be evaluated shall include, but not limited to:**
  - 1. **Plumbing equipment including pumps, plumbing fixtures, and all other equipment furnished under Division 22 and contract document.**

**3.10 DEFICIENCIES/NON-CONFORMANCE, COST OF RETESTING, FAILURE DUE TO MANUFACTURER DEFECT**

- A. **Refer to DDC General Conditions for requirements pertaining to deficiencies/non-conformance, cost of retesting, or failure due to manufacturer defect.**

**3.11 APPROVAL**

- A. **Refer to DDC General Conditions for requirements for approval procedures.**

**3.12 DEFERRED TESTING**

- A. **Refer to DDC General Conditions for requirements pertaining to deferred testing.**

**3.13 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. **The Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall conform to Contract Documents requirements.**
- B. **Refer to DDC General Conditions for requirements for the Commissioner and CxA roles in the Operation and Maintenance Manual contribution, review and approval process.**



**3.14 INSTRUCTION OF CITY OF NEW YORK PERSONNEL**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for requirements pertaining to instruction.
- B. Subcontractor Performing Plumbing Work: The specified subcontractor shall have the following instruction responsibilities:
  - 1. Provide the CxA with an instruction plan two weeks before the planned instruction.
  - 2. Provide the City of New York personnel with comprehensive orientation and instruction in the understanding of the systems and the operation and service of each piece of Plumbing equipment.
  - 3. During any demonstration, should the system fail to perform in accordance with the requirements of the O&M manual or sequence of operations, the system will be repaired or adjusted as necessary and the demonstration repeated.
  - 4. The appropriate trade or manufacturer's representative shall provide the instructions on each major piece of equipment. This person may be the start-up technician for the piece of equipment, the installing subcontractor or manufacturer's representative. Practical building operating expertise as well as in-depth knowledge of all modes of operation of the specific piece of equipment is required. More than one party may be required to execute the instruction.
  - 5. The instruction sessions shall follow the outline in the Table of Contents of the operation and maintenance manual and illustrate whenever possible the use of the O&M manuals for reference.
  - 6. Hands-on instruction shall include start-up, operation in all modes possible, including manual, shut-down and any emergency procedures and preventative maintenance for all pieces of equipment.
  - 7. The subcontractor work shall fully explain and demonstrate the operation, function and overrides of any local packaged controls.
  - 8. Instruction shall occur after functional testing is complete, unless approved otherwise by the City of New York.

\*\*\*\*\* END OF SECTION 22 08 00 \*\*\*\*\*



## SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes domestic water piping inside the building.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility company.
- C. See Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and fittings.
- D. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water distribution piping specialties.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Copper pipes used in potable water system shall bear "LEAD-FREE" certification.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic, potable domestic water piping and components.
- C. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water piping and components.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Pipe and Fitting Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Transition Couplings for Aboveground Pressure Piping: Coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L or Type K, water tube, drawn temper.
  - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  - 2. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
  - 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

### 2.2 VALVES

- A. Bronze and cast-iron, general-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Balancing and drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPE AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Domestic Water Piping inside the Building: Use any of the following piping materials for each size range:
  - 1. NPS 4 to NPS 6 (DN 100 to DN 150): Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- E. Under-Building-Slab, Domestic Water Piping, NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Hard copper tube; Type K, copper pressure fittings; and brazed joints.



- F. Aboveground Domestic Water Piping: Use any of the following piping materials for each size range:
1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  2. NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 1-1/2 (DN 32 and DN 40): Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  3. NPS 2 (DN 50): Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Hard copper tube; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.

### 3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  2. Throttling Duty: Use bronze ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  3. Hot-Water-Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated or Memory-stop balancing valves.
  4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.
1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
  2. Install stop-and-waste drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger. Balancing valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Calibrated balancing valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."



### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Install under-building-slab copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Pressure gages are specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping," and drain valves and strainers are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install domestic water piping level [with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain] [without pitch] and plumb.
- F. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

### 3.5 ROUGHING-IN FOR WATER METERS

- A. Rough-in domestic water piping for water meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- B. Water meters will be furnished and installed by utility.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hanger and support devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.



2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
  - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls, if indicated.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- B. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve, and extend and connect to the following:
  1. Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  2. Water Heaters: Cold-water supply and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.



3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
  - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass, test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

#### B. Test domestic water piping as follows:

1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping using purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction.



- B. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
  - 1. Balancing valves
  - 2. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
  - 3. Hose bibbs.
  - 4. Drain valves.
  - 5. Water hammer arresters.
  - 6. Trap-seal primer valves.
  - 7. Pressure reducing valves

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig (860 kPa), unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NSF Compliance:



1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BALANCING VALVES

#### A. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Balancing valve shall be "B-Plus" manufactured by Presco or equal from one of the following manufacturers:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller.
5. Body: Brass or Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

### 2.2 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

- #### A. Thermostatic Water Mixing Valves shall be Model 270-BRKT-BV-SW or 370 BRKT-BV-SW manufactured by Leonard or equal from the following manufacturers:
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Guardian Equipment
    - b. Armstrong International, Inc.
    - c. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
    - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
  3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

4. Type: thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Sweat.
7. Accessories: Inlet ball valves, mounting brackets.
8. Valve Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Tempered-Water Setting: 85 deg F (deg C).
10. Valve Finish: Bronze.
11. Piping Finish: n/a

### 2.3 HOSE BIBBS

#### A. Hose Bibbs in mechanical rooms:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
7. Vacuum Breaker: drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.

### 2.4 DRAIN VALVES

#### A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

### 2.5 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

#### A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.



- b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. PPP Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
  3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
  4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.6 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

### A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc.
  - b. PPP Inc.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

## 2.7 BRANCH PRESSURE REDUCING ASSEMBLIES

### A. Manufacturers:

- a. Guardian Equipment
- b. Armstrong International, Inc.
- c. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.

- B. Branch pressure reducing valve shall be Lead-Free cast copper silicon alloy body construction, double union inlet and outlet, integral stainless steel strainer, bypass feature, similar to Watts Model LFN45BU-M1 or approved equal.
- C. Valves shall be factory preset for 50 psi.
- D. Valves shall be listed to ASSE 10003 and IAPMO and certified to CSA B356.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install water meter in accordance with NYC DEP requirements. Meter shall require straight pipe equal to five pipe diameters upstream of the meter and three pipe diameters downstream.
- C. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
  - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- D. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- E. Install balancing valves on hot water return pipes in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- F. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
  - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of main control valve at connection to base building riser.
- H. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.



- I. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- J. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- K. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  - 2. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 3. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
  - 4. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 5. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 6. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- L. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119



SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following soil and waste, sanitary drainage and vent piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; and "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping.

## 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Extra Heavy Class.
  - 1. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- B. Hubless Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
  - 1. Solvent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
  - 2. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
    - a. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
  - 1. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
  - 2. Pressure Fittings:
    - a. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
    - b. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
    - c. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, [galvanized, ]standard pattern.
    - d. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
    - e. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125[, galvanized].

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure ratings may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Aboveground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be:



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

D. Aboveground, sewage ejector discharge piping shall be:

1. Galvanized Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.

E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be:

1. Extra heavy class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and compression joints.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- D. Install wall penetration system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight. Wall penetration systems are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- E. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- F. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- G. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.



- H. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- I. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- J. Install ABS soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- K. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- L. Install underground [ABS] [and] [PVC] soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- M. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Cast-Iron, Soil-Piping Joints: Make joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
1. Gasketed Joints: Make with rubber gasket matching class of pipe and fittings.
  2. Hubless Joints: Make with rubber gasket and sleeve or clamp.
- C. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-duty valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
1. Use gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.
  2. Use gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.



- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, downstream from shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow.
  - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.[ Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.]
  - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves, unless drain has integral backwater valve.
  - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
  - 4. Backwater valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m), if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  - 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 (DN 150): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.



5. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).

G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
5. NPS 3 (DN 80): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).

J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
4. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.

K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).

L. Install hangers for [ABS] [and] [PVC] piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
4. NPS 6 (DN 150): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.

M. Install supports for vertical [ABS] [and] [PVC] piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).

N. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.



B. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  2. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221316



## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
  - 4. Flashing materials.
  - 5. Backwater valves

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for grease interceptors.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.



- c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
  3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
  4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  5. Closure: brass plug.
  6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

**B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts:**

**1. Manufacturers:**

- a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Oatey.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
  3. Size: Same as connected branch.
  4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
  5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
  6. Clamping Device: Not required.
  7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
  8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
  9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
  10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze.
  11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
  12. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
  13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

**C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:**

**1. Manufacturers:**

- a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
- b. MIFAB, Inc.
- c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
- d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
- e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.



2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: drilled-and-threaded brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, stainless steel cover plate with screw.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS AND FLOOR SINKS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains FD (finish areas): floor drains in finish areas shall be Model 2010A-P050-NB manufactured by J.R.Smith or equal from the following manufacturers:

1. Available Manufacturers:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, ASME A112.3.1 or CSA B79.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: cast iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required.
10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
11. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
14. Top Shape: Round or Square.
15. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 6".
16. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
17. Funnel: Required where shown on contract drawings.
18. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
19. Trap Material: Cast iron.
20. Trap Pattern: P-trap.
21. Trap priming connection: Required where shown on contract drawings.

- B. Floor Sinks FS (mechanical rooms): floor sink in mechanical rooms shall be Model 3100 manufactured by J.R.Smith or equal from the following manufacturers:

1. Available Manufacturers:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3, ASME A112.3.1 or CSA B79.



3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: cast iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required.
10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Acid Resistant Coating
11. Sediment Bucket: Not Required.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Open Top
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze bottom strainer
14. Top Shape: Square.
15. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 8-1/2".
16. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
17. Funnel: Required where shown on contract drawings.
18. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
19. Trap Material: Cast iron.
20. Trap Pattern: P-trap.
21. Trap priming connection: Required where shown on contract drawings.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

#### A. Open Drains (standpipe):

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, 18" long hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

#### B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) side inlet.

#### C. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

#### D. Funnel Drain:



1. Funnel drain shall be duco cast iron with acid resistant coated interior and exterior with no-hub adaptor, 4" outlet, Figure 3821 as manufactured by J.R.Smith or approved equal.

#### 2.4 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness.
  2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft. (15-kg/sq. m), 0.0469-inch (1.2-mm) thickness.
  3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness.
- B. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- C. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- E. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

#### 2.5 BACKWATER VALVE

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide backwater valve Model 7012 manufactured by J.R.Smith or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
  3. Size: Same as connected piping.
  4. Body: Cast iron.
  5. Cover: Cast iron with threaded access check valve.
  6. End Connections: Hubless.
  7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang 1/4" open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
  8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.
  - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- H. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.



- I. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- J. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- K. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
  - 1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  - 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- L. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- M. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- N. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- O. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
  - 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
  - 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
  - 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- P. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- Q. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.



### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

### 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each grease interceptor.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319



## SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Faucets.
  - 2. Flushometers.
  - 3. Toilet seats.
  - 4. Protective shielding guards.
  - 5. Fixture supports.
  - 6. Water closets.
  - 7. Lavatories.
  - 8. Sinks.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- E. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- F. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.



- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 WATERSENCE PROGRAM LABELS

- A. Water Closets shall meet specifications required for the WaterSense program and shall bear such label.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- D. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- E. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- F. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:

- 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
- 2. Plastic Laundry Trays: ANSI Z124.6.
- 3. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
- 4. Plastic Sinks: ANSI Z124.6.
- 5. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
- 6. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
- 7. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
- 8. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
- 9. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
- 10. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
- 11. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.

- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:

- 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
- 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.



3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
  4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
  6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
  9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
  11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
  12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for and shower faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
  2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
  3. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  4. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
  5. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
  6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  7. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
  8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  9. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
  10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
  11. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
  3. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  4. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
  5. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
  6. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
  7. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
  2. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  3. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
  4. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
  5. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  6. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
  7. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
  8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.



9. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
10. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

#### A. Lavatory Faucets L:

1. Description: ADA compliant, Chrome Plated Brass, Battery Powered, Sensor Operated, Electronic Hand Washing Faucet. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - a. Faucet: Sloan, Optima Model EAF-275-ISM-C-CP.
  - b. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass
  - c. Finish: Chrome plate.
  - d. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.35 gpm.
  - e. Centers: single hole
  - f. Mounting: Deck, exposed.
  - g. Inlet(s): NPS 3/8 (DN 10) tubing, with compression fittings.
  - h. Spout: Rigid type.
  - i. Operation: Sensor Operated.
  - j. Time out setting: 12 sec.
  - k. Power: Not required.
  - l. Mixing valve: Integral Spout Temperature Mixer.
2. Other manufacturers:
  - a. American Standard
  - b. Zurn
  - c. Or Approved Equal

### 2.2 SINK FAUCETS

#### A. Sink Faucets SS:

1. Description: ADA compliant, single level handle, solid brass construction, rotating spout, pull-down spray. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - a. Faucet: Moen Model Align 5965. (Moen Model 7165 with Side Spray)
  - b. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  - c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
  - d. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
  - e. Handles: One lever handles.
  - f. Mounting: top.
  - g. Handle(s): Single Lever faucet.



- h. Inlet(s): 3/8" female compression ends.
- i. Spout Outlet: 360 degree rotating spout with pull-down spray.
- j. Operation: manual.

2. Other manufacturers:

- a. American Standard
- b. Zurn
- c. Or Approved Equal

B. Sink Faucets PS:

1. Description: ADA compliant, single level handle, solid brass construction, rotating spout, pull-down spray. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.

- a. Faucet: Moen Model Align 5965. (Moen Model 7165 with Side Spray)
- b. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
- c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
- d. Maximum Flow Rate: 1.5 gpm.
- e. Handles: One lever handles.
- f. Mounting: top.
- g. Handle(s): Single Lever faucet.
- h. Inlet(s): 3/8" female compression ends.
- i. Spout Outlet: 360 degree rotating spout with pull-down spray.
- j. Operation: manual.

2. Other manufacturers:

- a. American Standard
- b. Zurn
- c. Or Approved Equal

C. Sink Faucets MS:

1. Description: ADA compliant, two-handle, solid brass construction, threaded spout for hose connection, lever handles, pail hook, vacuum breaker. Coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture holes; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.

- a. Faucet: Kohler Model 8906.
- b. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
- c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
- d. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.
- e. Handles: Two lever handles.
- f. Mounting: Back.
- g. Inlet(s): 3/8" female compression ends.
- h. Spout Outlet: Threaded for hose connection.
- i. Vacuum Breaker: integral
- j. Operation: manual.
- k. Drain: Grid.

2. Other manufacturers:



- a. American Standard
- b. Zurn
- c. Or Approved Equal

## 2.3 FLUSHOMETERS

### A. Flush Valve, WC and WC-H:

- 1. Description: ADA Compliant, exposed, high efficiency, battery operated, automatic infrared sensor activated flushometer.
  - a. Flushometer: American Standard, Selectronic PWRX, Model 6066.111.002.
  - b. Integral Design: Diaphragm Operation.
  - c. Style: Exposed.
  - d. Finish: Polished Chrome Plated
  - e. Inlet Size: NPS 1 (DN 25).
  - f. Trip Mechanism: Electronic.
  - g. Consumption: 1.1 gallon per flush.
  - h. Tailpiece Size: top spud, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
  - i. 24-hour automatic flush
  - j. Manual override: Yes
- 2. Other manufacturers:
  - a. Toto
  - b. Zurn
  - c. Or Approved Equal

## 2.4 TOILET SEATS

### A. Toilet Seats WC-H and WC:

- 1. Description: Elongated, standard white, open front toilet seat, less cover with stainless steel check hinges.
  - a. Seat: American Standard Model No. 5905.100.
  - b. Material: Molded, solid plastic.
  - c. Configuration: Open front without cover.
  - d. Size: Elongated.
  - e. Class: Standard commercial.
  - f. Color: White.
- 2. Other manufacturers:
  - a. Toto
  - b. Zurn
  - c. Or Approved Equal



## 2.5 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Josam Company.
  - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
  - 3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  - 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- C. Water-Closet Supports:
  - 1. Description: Combination carrier designed for standard mounting height of wall-mounting, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, compact vertical, offset or center line, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space. Fittings shall be J.R. Smith Series 0410, 0440 or 0450 or equal.
- D. Lavatory Supports
  - 1. Description: lavatory supports with concealed hanger, pro-set uprights with welded base, similar to J.R. Smith Series 08005-M31.

## 2.6 WATER CLOSETS

### A. Water Closets WC-H and WC:

- 1. Description: ADA compliant, wall mounted, low consumption siphon jet, vitreous-china fixture, elongated, 1-1/2" top spud.
  - a. Water Closet: American Standard AFWall Millenium 'FloWise' Model 2257.101
  - b. Style: Flush Valve
  - c. Bowl Type: Elongated with siphon-jet design.
  - d. Height: Accessible for WC-H.
  - e. Design Consumption: 1.1 gal/flush
  - f. Color: White
- 2. Other manufacturers:
  - a. Toto
  - b. Zurn
  - c. Or Approved Equal



## 2.7 LAVATORIES

### A. Lavatories, L-H and L:

1. Description: ADA Compliant, 18.3"x16.7" vitreous china wall hung lavatory with single center faucet hole and rear overflow.
  - a. Lavatory: WS Bath Collection Model Unlimited 46.
  - b. Type: wall-hung with wall hanger
  - c. Faucet Hole Punching: Single
  - d. Faucet Hole Location: Top.
  - e. Soap Disposer Hole: Required
  - f. Color: White.
  - g. Supplies: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) chrome-plated copper with stops.
  - h. Grid drain: Linea Model 53991
  - i. Offset drain: provide for ADA lavatories; similar to Kohler K-7131-A-CP.
  - j. Trap: chrome plated P-trap similar to Kohler K-8999-CP
  - k. Trim: Lead-free angle supplies with stops and flexible hose connections, similar to Kohler K-7654.
2. Other manufacturers:
  - a. American Standard
  - b. Toto
  - c. Or Approved Equal

## 2.8 SERVICE SINKS

### A. Sink, SS:

1. Description: Custom made. Refer to architectural drawings for specification.
  - a. Strainer: Duostrainer sink strainer Kohler K-8801.
  - b. Trap: chrome plated P-trap similar to Kohler K-9000-CP
  - c. Trim: Lead-free angle supplies with stops and flexible hose connections, similar to Kohler K-7654.
2. Other manufacturers:
  - a. American Standard
  - b. Toto
  - c. Or Approved Equal

### B. Sink, PS:

1. Description: ADA compliant, Undermounted, 18-gauge stainless steel sink



- a. Sink: Kohler Model K-3894
- b. Size: 25"x22".
- c. Strainer: Duostrainer sink strainer Kohler K-8801.
- d. Trap: chrome plated P-trap similar to Kohler K-9000-CP
- e. Trim: Lead-free angle supplies with stops and flexible hose connections, similar to Kohler K-7654.

2. Other manufacturers:

- a. American Standard
- b. Toto
- c. Or Approved Equal

C. Sink, MS:

1. Description: 16-gauge stainless steel mop sink, with interior polished surface, exposed exterior surface polished with standard brush finish.

- a. Sink: Just Model A-47699.
- b. Size: 33"x21".
- c. Strainer: Just J-127-B sink strainer.

2. Other manufacturers:

- a. Advanced Tabco
- b. Acorn
- c. Or Approved Equal

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
  1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
  2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
  3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.



- G. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- H. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- I. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- J. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- K. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- L. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- M. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- N. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- O. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- P. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- Q. Install traps on fixture outlets.
  - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
  - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- R. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- S. Install dishwasher air-gap fitting at each sink indicated to have air-gap fitting. Install in sink deck. Connect inlet hose to dishwasher and outlet hose to disposer.
- T. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
- U. Install escutcheons at piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."



- V. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealers."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by City of New York.

END OF SECTION 224000

FMS# PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM  
INTERIOR FIT OUT

**CONTRACT #3 – HVAC AND FIRE SAFETY WORK**



SECTION 210500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

- A. LEED related scope of work
1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  3. Sleeves.
  4. Escutcheons.
  5. Grout.
  6. Fire-suppression demolition.
  7. Concrete bases.
  8. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.



1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.



- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Plastic Piping: ASTM F 493.

### 2.3 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

### 2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

### 2.5 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.



1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.6 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
  3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FIRE-SUPPRESSION DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### 3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.



- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
  - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.



- P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402, for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.



### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

### 3.5 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.6 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### 3.7 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.



- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 210500



## **SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The followings documents apply to all required work for the project:
  - 1. Contract drawings
  - 2. Specifications
  - 3. General Conditions
  - 4. Addendum
  - 5. City of New York Standard construction Contract.
- B. The OPR and BOD documentation are included by reference for information only.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes commissioning process requirements for Fire Suppression systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Refer DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process description.

#### **1.3 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Commissioning: Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems, including the mechanical and electrical systems, have been installed in the prescribed manner, are functionally checked and capable of being operated and maintained to perform with the design intent and have documentation to support proper installation and operation. The Commissioning Agent (CxA) shall provide the City of New York with an unbiased, objective view of the system's installation, operation, and performance. This process does not eliminate or reduce the responsibility of each contractor to provide a complete design or installing subcontractors to provide a finished product. Commissioning is intended to enhance the quality of each system installation, startup, and transfer to beneficial use by the City of New York.
- B. Commissioning during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following specific objectives, according to the Contract Documents:
  - 1. Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that they receive adequate operational checkout by installing contractors.



2. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems.
  3. Verify that Operation & Maintenance documentation is complete and transferred to City of New York.
  4. Verify that the City of New York's operating personnel are adequately instructed.
  5. Verify a contract is in place for a post occupancy review with O&M staff within 10 months after Substantial Completion.
- C. The Commissioning process shall be a team effort and encompass, as well as coordinate, the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, system installation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing, and performance checkouts.
- D. The CxA will work closely with the construction team, cooperating on and coordinating all Cx activities with the Commissioner, Trade Contractors, subcontractors, manufacturers, and equipment suppliers.
- E. The Cx process shall not reduce the responsibility of the Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for definitions.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for CxA's role.
- B. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section for specific Submittals requirements. In addition, provide the following:
- C. Certificates of readiness
- D. Certificates of completion of installation, and startup activities.
- E. Test reports
- F. O&M manuals

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test Equipment Calibration Requirements: Contractors will comply with test manufacturer's calibration procedures and intervals. Recalibrate test instruments immediately after instruments have been repaired resulting from being dropped or



damaged. Affix calibration tags to test instruments. Furnish calibration records to CxA upon request.

**1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to coordination during the commissioning process.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup, initial checkout and functional performance testing shall be provided by the contractor for the equipment being tested. For example, the subcontractor who provides and installs the Fire Suppression system shall ultimately be responsible for all standard testing equipment for the plumbing system in Division 21. A sufficient quantity of two-way radios shall be provided by each subcontractor.
- B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (specific to a piece of equipment and only available from vendor) required for testing shall be included in the base bid price to the Owner and left on site, except for stand-alone data logging equipment that may be used by the CxA.
- C. Test equipment and software required by any equipment manufacturer for programming and/or start-up, whether specified or not, shall be provided by the manufacturer of the equipment. Manufacturer shall provide the test equipment, demonstrate its use, and assist in the commissioning process as needed. Proprietary test equipment (and software) shall become the property of the City of New York upon completion of the commissioning process.
- D. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply: Temperature sensors and digital thermometers shall have a certified calibration within the past year to accuracy of 0.5°F and a resolution of + or - 0.1°F. Pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of + or - 2.0% of the value range being measured (not full range of meter) and have been calibrated within the last year.



**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 GENERAL DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. With assistance from the installing contractors, the CxA will prepare Pre-Functional Checklists for commissioned components, equipment, and systems.
- B. Red-lined Drawings:
1. The contractor will verify all equipment, systems, instrumentation, wiring and components are shown correctly on red-lined drawings.
  2. Preliminary red-lined drawings must be made available to the Commissioning Team for use prior to the start of Functional Performance Testing.
  3. Changes, as a result of Functional Testing, must be incorporated into the final as-built drawings, which will be created from the red-lined drawings.
  4. The contractor, as defined in the Contract Documents will create the as-built drawings.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data:
1. Contractor will provide a copy of O&M literature within 45 days of each submittal acceptance for use during the commissioning process for all commissioned equipment and systems.
  2. The CxA will review the O&M literature once for conformance to project requirements.
  3. The CxA will receive a copy of the final approved O&M literature once corrections have been made by the contractor.
- D. Demonstration and Instruction:
1. Contractor will provide demonstration and instruction as required by the specifications for fire suppression systems.
  2. A complete instruction plan and schedule must be submitted by the contractor to the CxA four weeks (4) prior to any instruction.
  3. An instruction agenda for each instructing session must be submitted to the CxA one (1) week prior the instructing session.
  4. The CxA shall be notified at least 72 hours in advance of scheduled fire pump test so that testing may be observed by the Commissioner. A copy of the test record shall be provided to the CxA, City of New York, and Commissioner.
  5. Engage a Factory-authorized service representative to train City of New York's service personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.
  6. Engage a Factory-authorized service representative to train City of New York's service personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain Fire Pump.



7. Train City of New York's service personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, trouble shooting, servicing, and maintaining units.
8. Review data in O&M Manuals.

### 3.2 SUBCONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Subcontractor performing Fire Suppression System work: The commissioning responsibilities applicable to the Fire Suppression system are as follows (all references apply to commissioned equipment only):
  1. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
  2. Attend construction phase coordination meetings.
  3. Participate in Fire Suppression systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
  4. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
  5. Include requirements for submittal data, operation and maintenance data, and instructing in each purchase order or sub-contract written.
  6. Prepare preliminary schedule for Fire Suppression system orientations and inspections, operation and maintenance manual submissions, instructing sessions, flushing and cleaning, pressure testing, equipment start-up, and task completion for the City of New York. Distribute preliminary schedule to commissioning team members.
  7. Update schedule as required throughout the construction period.
  8. During the startup and initial checkout process, execute the pressure testing of all piping system.
  9. Assist the CxA in all Installation and Functional Checks.
  10. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.
  11. Gather operation and maintenance literature on all equipment, and assemble in binders as required by the specifications. Submit to CxA 45 days after submittal acceptance.
  12. Coordinate inspection and testing with the CxA to provide (72) hour advance notice so that the witnessing of equipment and system start-up and testing can begin.
  13. Participate in, and schedule vendors and contractors to participate in the instruction sessions.
  14. Provide written notification to the Commissioner and CxA that the following work has been completed in accordance with the contract documents, and that the equipment, systems, and sub-system are operating as required.
    - a. Fire Suppression equipment including pumps, piping, and all other equipment furnished under this Division.
    - b. Automatic sprinkler system.
    - c. Fire stopping in fire rated construction, including caulking, gasketing and sealing of smoke barriers.
  15. The equipment supplier shall document the performance of his equipment.
  16. Provide a complete set of red-lined drawings to the CxA prior to the start of Functional Performance Testing.



17. Equipment Suppliers
  - a. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed start-up procedures and specific responsibilities of the City of New York, to keep warranties in force.
  - b. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with contractors.
  - c. Provide information requested by CxA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.
18. Provide instruction of the City of New York's operating staff using qualified personnel, as specified.
19. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for additional contractor responsibilities.

### 3.3 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for Owner's Responsibilities.

### 3.4 DESIGN PROFESSIONAL'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Refer DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for Design Professional's Responsibilities.

### 3.5 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Refer DDC General Conditions 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for CxA's Responsibilities.

### 3.6 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify in writing to the CxA that Fire Suppression systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, tested, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify in writing to the CxA that Fire Suppression instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- D. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- E. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.



- F. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

### 3.7 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of Fire Protection testing shall include entire Fire Suppression installation. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions.
- D. The Contractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Fire Suppression systems, subsystems, and equipment and submit for CxA review.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Fire Suppression system, document the deficiency and report it to the City of New York. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

### 3.8 FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

- A. Equipment Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 21. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and certifications to the CxA.
- B. Fire Suppression Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of sprinkler distribution systems.



C. The work included in the commissioning process involves a complete and thorough evaluation of the operation and performance of all components, systems, and sub-systems in Division 21. The following equipment and systems shall be evaluated:

1. Piping
2. Sprinkler system

**3.9 DEFICIENCIES/NON-CONFORMANCE, COST OF RETESTING, FAILURE DUE TO MANUFACTURER DEFECT**

A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to deficiencies/non-conformance, cost of retesting, or failure due to manufacturer defect.

**3.10 APPROVAL**

A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to deferred testing.

**3.11 DEFERRED TESTING**

A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to deferred testing.

**3.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

A. The Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall conform to Contract Documents requirements.

B. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for the Commissioner and CxA roles in the Operation and Maintenance Manual contribution, review, and approval process.

**3.13 TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL**

A. Refer DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to instruction.

**\*\*\*END OF SECTION\*\*\***



## SECTION 211000

### WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following fire-suppression piping inside the building:
  - 1. Automatic wet-type, Class III standpipe systems.
  - 2. Wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
- B. See Division 28 Section "Fire Detection and Alarm" for alarm devices not specified in this Section.

##### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Automatic Wet-Type, Class III Standpipe System: Includes NPS 2-1/2 and 1-1/2" hose stations. Has open water-supply valve with pressure maintained and is capable of supplying water demand.
- B. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard Piping System Component Working Pressure: Listed for at least 175 psig (1200 kPa).
- B. Fire-suppression standpipe system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Minimum Static Pressure at Each Hose-Connection Outlet: 65 psig.
  - 2. Unless Otherwise Indicated, the Following Is Maximum Residual Pressure at Required Flow at Each Hose-Connection Outlet: 100 psig.
- C. Fire-suppression sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 5 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
  - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - b. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.



- c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
- d. Performance Space: Ordinary Hazard, Group I.
- e. Offices: Light Hazard.

3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:

- a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq.ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (4.1 L/min. per sq. m over 139 sq. m or 4.1 mm/min. over 139 sq. m).
- b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq.ft. over 1500 sq. ft. (6.1 over L/min. per sq. m over 139 sq. m or 6.1 mm/min. over 139 sq. m).

4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:

- a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft. (20.9 sq. m).
- b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).
- c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).
- d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft. (12.1 sq. m).
- e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Seismic Performance: Fire-suppression piping shall be capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13 and New York City Building Code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations, if applicable.
- C. Field test reports and certificates.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing fire-suppression systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
  - 1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Standards: Fire-suppression-system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:



1. New York City Building Code, 2008 edition and Referenced NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems.", 2002 Edition.
2. NFPA 14, "Installation of Standpipe, Private Hydrant, and Hose Systems.", 2003 Edition.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Threaded-End, Standard-Weight Steel Pipe; ASTM A 53/A 53M, ASTM A 135, or ASTM A 795, Schedule 40.

1. 2" and smaller: standard weight pattern Cast Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4.
2. 2-1/2" to 6": standard weight pattern malleable iron fittings: ASME B 16.3.

- B. Grooved-End, Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, ASTM A 135, or ASTM A 795, Schedule 40, **factory-formed, roll-grooved ends.**

1. Grooved-Joint Piping Systems:

- a. Manufacturers:

- 1) Anvil International, Inc.
- 2) Central Sprinkler Corp.
- 3) Ductilic, Inc.
- 4) JDH Pacific, Inc.
- 5) National Fittings, Inc.
- 6) Shurjoint Piping Products, Inc.
- 7) Southwestern Pipe, Inc.
- 8) Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
- 9) Victaulic Co. of America.
- 10) Ward Manufacturing.

- b. Grooved-End Fittings: UL-listed, ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting with OD matching steel-pipe OD.



- c. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings: UL 213 and AWWA C606, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting matching steel-pipe OD. Include ductile-iron housing with keys matching steel-pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated rubber gasket listed for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

## 2.3 NON-FERROUS PIPE AND FITTINGS:

- A. Copper Tube, drawn, seamless, Type K: ASTM B75 and B 251 with brazed joints using brazing filler metal (classification BCuP-3 or BCuP-4) AWS A5.8.
  1. Standard weight pattern wrought copper and copper alloy solder joint pressure fittings: ASME B16.22.

## 2.4 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Sprinkler specialty fittings shall be UL listed with 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working-pressure rating, and made of materials compatible with piping.
- B. Outlet Specialty Fittings:
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Central Sprinkler Corp.
    - c. Ductilic, Inc.
    - d. JDH Pacific, Inc.
    - e. National Fittings, Inc.
    - f. Shurjoint Piping Products, Inc.
    - g. Southwestern Pipe, Inc.
    - h. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
    - i. Victaulic Co. of America.
    - j. Ward Manufacturing.
  2. Mechanical-T and -Cross Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron housing with gaskets, bolts and nuts, and threaded, locking-lug, or grooved outlets.
  3. Snap-On and Strapless Outlet Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron housing or casting with gasket and threaded outlet.
- C. Sprinkler Drain and Alarm Test Fittings: Cast- or ductile-iron body; with threaded or locking-lug inlet and outlet, test valve, and orifice and sight glass.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Central Sprinkler Corp.
    - b. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
    - c. Viking Corp.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.



D. Sprinkler Branch-Line Test Fittings: Brass body with threaded inlet, capped drain outlet, and threaded outlet for sprinkler.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
- b. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
- c. Potter-Roemer; Fire-Protection Div.

E. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fitting: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with threaded inlet and drain outlet and sight glass.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. AGF Manufacturing Co.
- b. Central Sprinkler Corp.
- c. G/J Innovations, Inc.
- d. Triple R Specialty of Ajax, Inc.

F. Drop-Nipple Fittings: UL 1474, adjustable with threaded inlet and outlet, and seals.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. CECA, LLC.
- b. Merit.

## 2.5 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

A. Valves shall be UL listed or FMG approved, with 175-psig (1200 kPa) minimum pressure rating.

B. Butterfly Valves: UL 1091.

1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.

a. Manufacturers:

- 1) Global Safety Products, Inc.
- 2) Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, or ductile-iron body; wafer type or with grooved ends.

a. Manufacturers:

- 1) Central Sprinkler Corp.
- 2) Global Safety Products, Inc.
- 3) McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
- 4) Mueller Company.



- 5) NIBCO.
- 6) Pratt, Henry Company.
- 7) Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 SPRINKLERS

- A. Sprinklers shall be UL listed or FMG approved, quick response, standard spray, with 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum pressure rating.
- B. Manufacturers:
  1. Central Sprinkler Corp.
  2. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  3. Grinnell Fire Protection.
  4. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  5. Star Sprinkler Inc.
  6. Victaulic Co. of America.
  7. Viking Corp.
- C. Automatic Sprinklers: With heat-responsive element complying with the following:
  1. UL 199, for nonresidential applications.
  2. UL 1626, for residential applications.
  3. UL 1767, for early-suppression, fast-response applications.
- D. Sprinkler Types and Categories: Quick response, nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating, unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Sprinkler types, features, and options as follows:
  1. Concealed ceiling sprinklers, including cover plate.
  2. Pendent sprinklers.
  3. Quick-response sprinklers.
  4. Recessed sidewall sprinklers, including escutcheon.
  5. Upright sprinklers.
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: Custom painting as per Architect's selection.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
  1. Ceiling Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat; unless otherwise shown on drawings
- H. Sprinkler Guards: Wire-cage type, including fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.



## 2.7 FIRE HOSE CONNECTIONS AND CABINET

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Grinnell Fire Protection.
2. Potter-Roemer; Fire-Protection Div.
3. Approved Equal

SCHEDULE 1 - Description: Where shown on the Contract Drawings, provide a Potter-Roemer Figure 2712 Hose Rack Assembly in Recessed Cabinet with solid Bronze No.10 Satin Finish Door furnished with following:

1. 2-1/2" Model 4075 rough brass 300lb angle valve, BSA CAL-No.481-81-SM
2. 2-1/2"-1-1/2" Model 2794 red polyester coated steel hose rack
3. 2-1/2" Model 2756 satin brass hose rack nipple
4. 2-1/2"- 1-1/2" Model 2810 satin brass reducer
5. 1-1/2" Model 2930 satin brass pin lug coupling
6. 125 ft of 1-1/2" "flax-line" unlined linen hose, BSA CAL-No. 760-81-SM or equivalent.
7. 1-1/2" Model 2962 satin brass fog nozzle
8. 2-1/2" model 2751 escutcheon
9. Adjustable pressure restricting device model 2766, BS&A No. 8-56-56-SM

CABINET: - Cabinet shall be recessed with solid door and bronze US No. 10 satin finish, clear polyester coated similar to Potter-Roemer Model No. 1404. Engrave "FIRE HOSE and FIRE EXTINGUISHER" on door.

## 2.8 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Flow Indicator: UL 346, electrical-supervision, paddle-operated-type, water-flow detector with 250-psig (1725-kPa) pressure rating and designed for horizontal or vertical installation. Include two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.

### 1. Manufacturers:

- a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
- b. Grinnell Fire Protection.
- c. ITT McDonnell & Miller
- d. Potter Electric Signal Company.
- e. System Sensor.
- f. Viking Corp.



C. Valve Supervisory Switch: UL 753, electrical, single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts. Include design that signals controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
- b. Potter Electric Signal Company.
- c. System Sensor.

## 2.9 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. AGF Manufacturing Co.
2. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
3. Brecco Corporation.
4. Dresser Equipment Group; Instrument Div.
5. Marsh Bellofram.
6. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

B. Description: UL 393, 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm-) diameter, dial pressure gage with range of 0 to 250 psig (0 to 1725 kPa) minimum.

1. Water System Piping: Include caption "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" on dial face.

## 2.10 SIAMESE CONNECTIONS

A. Siamese connections shall be two way type, having a cast brass clapper body, polished brass plate, two polished brass double female snoots with rigid end NYFD threads, pin lug thread swivels with plug and chain. Siamese connection shall be similar to Potter- Roemer Model 5025. Siamese connection shall be polished brass. Lettering shall be "AUTO SPKR. STANDPIPE".

B. BSA No. 594-63-SM.

C. Siamese connections shall be manufactured by Potter Roemer Inc., Elkhart Brass Manufacturing Co. Inc., or approved equal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

A. Flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings with finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating may be used in aboveground applications, unless otherwise indicated.



### 3.2 STANDPIPE SYSTEM PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Threaded-end, black, Schedule 40, standard-weight steel pipe; cast- or malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Grooved-end, black, Schedule 40, standard-weight steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; grooved-end malleable-iron fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

### 3.3 SPRINKLER SYSTEM PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded-end, **black**, standard-weight steel pipe; cast- or malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. NPS 2-1/2" (DN 65) and Larger: Grooved-end, black, standard-weight steel pipe; grooved-end malleable-iron fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

### 3.4 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Listed Fire-Protection Valves: UL listed and FMG approved for applications where required by NYC Building Code and referenced standards.
    - a. Shutoff Duty: Gate valves.

### 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Refer to Division 21 Section "Common Work Results for Fire Suppression" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Threaded Joints: Comply with NFPA 13 for pipe thickness and threads. Do not thread pipe smaller than NPS 8 (DN 200) with wall thickness less than Schedule 40 unless approved by authorities having jurisdiction and threads are checked by a ring gage and comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- C. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with listed coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts.
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: Radius-cut-groove ends of piping. Use grooved-end fittings and grooved-end-pipe couplings.
  - 2. Steel Pipe: Square-cut or roll-groove piping as indicated. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings, unless otherwise indicated.



### 3.6 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect fire-suppression piping to water-service piping of size and in location indicated for service entrance to building. Refer to Division 22 Section "Water Distribution Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for backflow preventers.
- C. Fire Protection Service and backflow preventer shall be installed by licenced Plumbing Contractor. Alarm Devices for service and backflow preventer valves shall be provided by Fire Protection Contractor.

### 3.7 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 21 Section "Common Work Results for Fire Suppression" for basic piping installation.
- B. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- C. Use approved fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Unions are not required on flanged devices or in piping installations using grooved joints.
- E. Install flanges or flange adapters on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler zone control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install drain valves on standpipes.
- J. Install ball drip valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or outside building.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.



- L. Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA 13 for hanger materials.
  - 1. Install standpipe system piping according to NFPA 14.
  - 2. Install sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13.
- M. Earthquake Protection: Install piping according to NFPA 13 to protect from earthquake damage.
- N. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 (DN 8) and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.
- O. Fill wet-standpipe system piping with water.
- P. Fill wet-pipe sprinkler system piping with water.

### 3.8 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, unlisted general-duty valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water supply sources.
- D. Alarm Check Valves: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, including bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

### 3.9 SPRINKLER APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate sprinkler types to be used. Where specific types are not indicated, use the following sprinkler types:
  - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
  - 3. Sprinkler Finishes:
    - a. Upright, Pendent, and Recessed Sidewall Sprinklers: White unless otherwise shown on drawings or approved by Engineer and Architect.
    - b. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate or non-ferrous finish where shown on construction drawings.
    - c. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.



**3.10 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels and tiles.
- B. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing. Use dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space.

**3.11 HOSE-CONNECTION INSTALLATION**

- A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install freestanding hose connections for access and minimum passage restriction.
- C. Install hose-connection valves with flow-restricting device, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install wall-mounting-type hose connections in cabinets. Include pipe escutcheons, with finish matching valves, inside cabinet where water-supply piping penetrates cabinet. Install valves at angle required for connection of fire hose. Refer to Division 10 Section "Fire Extinguisher Cabinets" for cabinets.

**3.12 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect water-supply piping to fire-suppression piping. Include backflow preventer between potable-water piping and fire-suppression piping. Refer to Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers.
- D. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection. Drain to floor drain or outside building.
- E. Connect piping to specialty valves, hose valves, specialties, fire department connections, and accessories.
- F. Electrical Connections: Power wiring is specified in Division 26.
- G. Connect alarm devices to fire alarm.
- H. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- I. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."



3.13 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in New York City Building Code.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Hydrostatic Test: Fire Protection system shall be tested hydrostatically at not less than 300 psi ( 20.7 bar) of pressure for on (1) hour. For systems where the maximum system pressure exceeds 250 psi ( 17.2 bar), such systems shall be tested for 1 hour at a minimum pressure of 50 psi ( 3.5 bar) above maximum expected system pressure.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  4. Flush, test, and inspect standpipe systems according to NFPA 14, "System Acceptance" Chapter.
  5. Coordinate with fire alarm tests. Operate as required.
  6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

**END OF SECTION 211000**



## SECTION 230000 - BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. The project consists of Performance Hall with support spaces to include but not limited to lobby, reception, green room, conference rooms, workspaces, storage and bathroom,
- B. The requirements of this Section apply to all the Work of Division 23.
- C. Provide a complete working installation with all equipment called for in proper operating condition. Documents do not undertake to show or list every item to be provided. When an item not shown or listed, is clearly necessary for proper operation of equipment which is shown or listed, provide an item which will allow the system to function properly at no increase in Contract Sum. Work shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:

#### 1.2 THE SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The following is an outline cooling, heating and ventilation systems
  - 1 The proposed heating and cooling system consist of packaged water cooled air conditioning unit with DX cooling and hot water heating coil with associated return air fan to serve the Performance Hall. The unit is tied to base building condenser water and heating hot water.
  - 2 All other spaces are served by heat recovery type water source variable refrigerant volume split heat pump system. The water source heat pump condensing unit is connected to base building cooling tower via plate and frame heat exchanger. The system is also tied to base building boiler to inject heating hot water to provide heating to the space.
  - 3 Outdoor ventilation air fan and toilet exhaust fan
- B. Hoisting and rigging of equipment and materials required to complete work of this section.
- C. Vibration isolation
- D. Complete air distribution system including low pressure ductwork, linear diffusers, registers, grilles, dampers, filter frames and filters at return air grilles in animal holding areas, etc.
- E. Noise control measures to include acoustic lining, sound traps, treatment of pipe and duct penetrations
- F. Sheet metal work
- G. Insulation
- H. Identification
- I. Cleaning and prime painting



- J. Instruction manual and start up instructions.
- K. Testing and balancing
- L. Automatic temperature controls

### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements
- B. Electric power wiring for all equipment. See division 26.
- C. Provision for circuit breakers, testing and connections for control power wiring.
- D. Concrete work, including concrete housekeeping pads and other pads and blocks for vibrating and rotating equipment, ductbank envelopes and cast in place manholes and handholes, except as part of an inertia base.
- E. Cutting and patching of masonry, concrete, tile and other parts of structure, with the exception of drilling for hangers and providing holes and openings in metal deck.
- F. Flashing of wall and roof penetrations.
- G. Installation of access panels in floors, walls, furred spaces or above ceilings
- H. Structural supports necessary to distribute loading from equipment to roof or floor , except as specified herein.
- I. Foundation drainage systems and site drainage structures.
- J. Thermal and sound insulation in partitions and ceilings.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
  - 1 All equipment and accessories shall be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in its manufacture.
  - 2 All equipment and accessories new, free from defects.
  - 3 Supply all equipment and accessories in compliance with the applicable standards listed in this Section and with all applicable national, state and local codes.
  - 4 All items of a given type shall be the product of the same manufacturer.



- 5 Install work by craftsmen skilled in trade involved and by apprentices as indicated in the general conditions.

**B. LEED Building Requirements:**

- 1 **General Requirements:** The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED BUILDING criteria.
- 2 **Performance Criteria:** All field applied adhesives, sealants (used as fillers), prime painting, and finished painting shall comply with the low VOC requirements called out in Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Paints and Coatings.
- 3 **Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).**

**C. Requirement of Regulatory Agencies:**

- 1 In accordance with requirements of Division 1 and as specified herein.
- 2 Nothing in the Drawings or Specifications shall be construed to permit Work not conforming to applicable laws, ordinances, rules or regulations.
- 3 When Drawings or Specifications exceed requirements of applicable laws, ordinances, rules or regulations, Drawings and Specifications take precedence.
- 4 It is not the intent of Drawings and Specifications to repeat requirements of codes except where necessary for completeness or clarity.
- 5 If any of the requirements of the above are in conflict with one another, or with the requirements of this specification, the most stringent requirements shall govern.
- 6 New York City Building Code, New York State Energy Code, Reference Standards, NYC Fire Department Regulations.
- 7 Materials and equipment shall be manufactured, installed and tested as specified in latest editions of applicable publications, standards, rulings and determinations of:
- 8 Local and state building, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, fire and health department codes.



D. Codes and Standards

- 1 NYC Mechanical Code
- 2 NYC Plumbing Code
- 3 American Gas Association (AGA).
- 4 National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
- 5 American Insurance Association (AIA) ( formerly National Board of Fire Underwriters).
- 6 Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)
- 7 Underwriter's Laboratories (UL).
- 8 Factory Mutual Association (FM).
- 9 National Electric Code (NEC)
- 10 Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- 11 National Bureau of Standards (NBS)
- 12 Commissioner's Insurance Underwriter.
- 13 All materials and equipment shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories (UL), and approved by ASME, ANSI, ASTM, AGA, and NEC for intended service.
- 14 Most recent editions of applicable specifications and publications of the following organizations form part of these Contract Documents.
- 15 American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
- 16 American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
- 17 National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA)
- 18 American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
- 19 American Water Works Association (AWWA)
- 20 Plumbing and Drainage Institute (PDI)
- 21 American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
- 22 Air Moving and Conditioning Association (AMCA)
- 23 Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA)
- 24 Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)



- 25 Hydraulic Institute (HI)
- 26 Tubular Exchanger Manufacturer's Association (TEMA)
- 27 Thermal Insulation Manufacturers Association (TIMA)
- 28 Associated Air Balance Council (AABC)
- 29 A13.1 Scheme for Identification of Piping Systems
- 30 Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valves & Fittings Industry (MSS)
- 31 Adhesive and Sealant Council (ASC)
- 32 American Society of Sanitary Engineering (ASSE)
- 33 American Welding Society (AWS)
- 34 Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
- 35 Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA)
- 36 Certified Ballast Manufacturers (CMB)
- 37 Illuminating Engineering Society (IES)
- 38 NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau
- 39 Specific reference is made to following NFPA codes which contain an exceptionally high quantity of mechanical, electrical, and fire protection requirements.
- 40 No. 13- Installation of sprinkler systems
- 41 No. 14- Installation of standpipe and hose systems
- 42 No. 20- Installation of centrifugal fire pumps.
- 43 No. 30- Combustible Liquids
- 44 No. 45- Fire Protection for Laboratories
- 45 No. 70- National Electric Code
- 46 No. 72D- Proprietary Protective Signaling Systems
- 47 No. 72E- Automatic Fire Detectors

#### 1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Reference by abbreviation may be made in the specifications and the Contract Drawings for Mechanical and Electrical Work in accordance with the following list:

HVAC	Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning
GC	General Contractor



AC	Air Conditioning
H&V	Heating and Ventilating
AWG	American Wire Gauge
BWG	Birmingham Wire Gauge
USS	United States Standards
B&S	Brown and Sharpe
OS&Y	Outside Screw and Yoke
IBBM	Iron Body Brass Mounted
WSP	Working Steam Pressure
PSIG	Pounds Per Square Inch
PRV	Pressure Reducing Valve
GPM	Gallons Per Minute
MBH	Thousand BTU per Hour
BTU	British Thermal Units
WG	Water Gage
LB	Pound (Also shown as: #)
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	American Society of Testing Materials
ABMA	American Boiler Manufacturer's Association
ASA	American Standards Association

#### 1.6 SCOPE

- A. Perform work and provide material and equipment as shown on the drawings and/or as specified and/or as indicated in this section of the specifications. Completely coordinate all work of this section with work of other trades and provide a complete and fully functional installation
- B. Drawings and Specifications form complimentary requirements; provide work specified and not shown, and work shown and not specified as though explicitly require by both. Although work is not specifically shown or specified, provide supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, devices and materials obviously necessary for sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. Give notices, file plans, obtain permits and licenses, pay fees and back-charges, and obtain necessary approvals from authorities that have jurisdiction as required to perform work in accordance with all legal requirements and with Specifications, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders, all of which are part of Contract Documents

#### 1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. This paragraph supplements Division 1.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1 Shop Drawings are information prepared by the Contractor to illustrate portions of the work in more detail than shown in Contract Documents.
  - 2 Coordination Drawings are detailed, large scale layout Shop Drawings showing HVAC, Electrical, Plumbing and Fire protection work superimposed in order to identify conflicts and ensure inter-coordination of Mechanical, Electrical,

Architectural, Structural and other work.

C. LEED Building Submittal Requirements

5. Provide for all field-applied adhesives, sealants (used as fillers), and paints:
6. Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

1.8 SUBMITTALS PROCEDURE AND FORMAT

- A. Submittals Procedure and format shall be as specified under Division 1 Requirements
- B. Shop Drawings showing layouts of systems shall contain sufficient plans, elevations, sections, details and schematics to describe work clearly. They shall be 1/4"=1'-0" scale unless otherwise specified. Sheet metal shop drawings shall be 3/8"=1'-0" and shall indicate work of other sections where physical clearances are critical and where interferences are possible. Provide larger scale details as necessary. Shop drawings shall show elements of Architect's reflected ceiling plan, exposed ductwork, walls, partitions, diffusers, registers, grilles, fire dampers, sleeves and other aspects of construction as necessary coordination.
- C. ALL FIREWALLS AND SMOKE PARTITIONS SHALL BE HIGHLIGHTED ON THE SHEET METAL DRAWINGS FOR APPROPRIATE COORDINATION.
- D. Shop Drawings showing manufacturer's product data shall contain detailed dimensional drawings, accurate and complete description of materials of construction, manufacturer's published performance characteristics and capacity ratings (performance data alone, is not acceptable), electrical requirements, wiring diagrams, field installation diagrams and manufacturer's performance test on equipment. Drawings shall clearly indicate location (terminal block or wire number), voltage and function for all field terminations, and other information necessary to demonstrate compliance with all requirements of Contract Documents.
- E. Provide shop drawings submittals showing details of piping and ductwork connections to all equipment. If connection details are not submitted, and the connections are found installed incorrectly in the field, this contractor shall reinstall them within the original contract price.
- F. Shop drawings shall clearly indicate compliance with each and every requirement of specifications and drawings.

1.9 SUBMITTAL NOTATIONS:

- A. Submittals will be returned from the Architect marked as illustrated below:
- B. REVIEWED: "Reviewed and found generally acceptable. Minor deviations may be noted. No further submittal required if notations are complied with."



- C. REVIEWED, DEVIATIONS NOTED; REVISE AND RESUBMIT: "Submittal contains deviations which must be corrected and confirmed by a new submittal."
- D. REJECTED: "Submittal is incorrect to such an extent that the material is unacceptable, or in incomplete to such an extent that a review cannot be made. Resubmit in accordance with requirements of the Contract Documents."

1.10 LIST OF PROPOSED EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS:

- A. Within four weeks of Award of Contract and before ordering materials or equipment, submit complete list of materials and equipment and indicate manufacturer's name, addresses and telephone numbers. No consideration will be given to partial lists submitted out of sequence.
- B. If the List of Materials and Equipment is not received within the prescribed time limit, provide the first-named manufacturer for all material and equipment on this project.
- C. Specific requirements: No materials or products shall be provided which are not for permitted for use by local jurisdiction in the City of New York or items not permitted by the Commissioner.

1.11 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. A single set of coordination drawings shall be mutually prepared by all mechanical and electrical trades.
- B. The initiation of these drawings begins with Sheet Metal Subcontractor.
- C. The Sheet Metal Subcontractor shall prepare a complete set of background drawings at scale not less than 3/8" equals 1'-0", showing structure and other information as needed for coordination. He shall show sheet metal layout thereon. These will be Coordination Drawings.
- D. Each of the mechanical, electrical and other specialty trade shall add its work to these background drawings with appropriate elevations and grid dimensions. Specialty trade information is require for fan rooms and mechanical rooms, horizontal exits from duct shafts, crossovers, and for spaces in and above ceilings where congestion of work may occur such as corridors, and even entire floors. Drawings shall indicate horizontal and vertical dimensions, to avoid interference with structural framing, ceilings, partitions, and other services.
- E. Where conflicts occur with placement of materials of various trades, the Sheet Metal Subcontractor will be responsible to coordinate the available space to accommodate all trades. Any resulting adjustments shall be initialed and dated by specialty trade. The Sheet Metal Subcontractor shall then final date and sign each drawing. If he cannot resolve conflicts, the decision of the General Contractor/Construction Manager shall be final.
- F. A Subcontractor who fails to promptly review and incorporate his work on the drawings shall assume full responsibility of any installation conflicts affecting his work and of any schedule ramifications.
- G. Review of coordination drawings shall not diminish responsibility under this Contract for final coordination of installation and maintenance clearances of all systems and equipment with Architectural, Structural, Mechanical, Electrical and other work.



- H. After review of coordination drawings, the method used to resolve interferences not previously identified shall be as in "MODIFICATIONS IN LAYOUT" above.
- I. All changes to reviewed coordination drawings shall be in writing by the Architect/Engineer prior to start of work in affected area.

1.12 DISTRIBUTION OF COORDINATION DRAWINGS:

A. The Sheet Metal Subcontractor shall provide the following distribution of documents:

- 1 Provide coordination drawing to General Contractor/Construction Manager, all trade contractors and a copy to Commissioner for record.
- 2 ALL FIREWALLS AND SMOKE PARTITIONS SHALL BE HIGHLIGHTED ON COORDINATION DRAWINGS FOR APPROPRIATE COORDINATION.
- 3 The main paths of egress and for equipment removal from main mechanical and electrical rooms must be clearly shown on coordination drawings.
- 4 Coordination Drawings shall include, but not limited to:
  - 5 Plumbing systems, piping and equipment.
  - 6 HVAC piping, systems and equipment.
  - 7 Control systems.
  - 8 Electrical distribution, systems and equipment.
  - 9 Lighting systems and fixtures.
  - 10 Sheet metal work, components and accessories, costs and boxes in terminals, etc.
  - 11 Fire protection and sprinkler system, piping and heads.
  - 12 Structural.
  - 13 Electrical Equipment Room layouts.
  - 14 Environmental Rooms and associated refrigeration/heating systems.
  - 15 Partition/room layout.
  - 16 Ceiling tile and grid.
  - 17 Access panels.
  - 18 Smoke and fire dampers.
  - 19 Roof drain piping.
  - 20 Major electrical conduit runs, panelboards, feeder conduit and racks of branch conduit.



- 21 Above ceiling miscellaneous metal.
- 22 Heat tracing of piping.
- 23 Minimum access space requirements for all equipment for both installation and maintenance.

#### 1.13 REGULATIONS, CODES, PERMITS, AND FEES

- A. Conform to all rules, regulations, standards, ordinances and laws of local, state, and Federal governments and other authorities that have legal jurisdiction over the site.
- B. Prior to commencement of work, notify State and applicable authorities as required and submit all of the applicable notifications for construction, operation and demolition. Secure required permits and inspections from any of the authorities having jurisdiction, for this work and pay for all fees required for permits, inspections and review, including special agency construction.
- C. Include all utility and local building department charges for providing temporary and permanent water, sewer, and gas services to buildings.
- D. Provide Commissioner and Inspectors from any of the authorities / agencies having jurisdiction access to work at all times.
- E. Trade Contractor shall be responsible for all law violations caused by the work under this Division. Notify Construction Manager in writing when a discrepancy occurs between code requirements and work shown on drawings and resolve matter before proceeding with work.
- F. When requirements cited in this specification conflict with each other or with Contract Documents, most stringent shall govern work. Architect may relax this requirement when such relaxation does not violate ruling of authorities that have jurisdiction. Approval for such relaxation shall be obtained in writing.
- G. Make corrections in the work as required by the Commissioner or Inspector to pass local regulations.
- H. Deliver to the Construction Manager any and all certificates of inspections, permits, and approvals. Submit final inspection certificates signed by governing authorities to the Commissioner.
- I. Make all necessary submissions to the Department of Environmental Protection, Bureau of Air Resources and Management, Department of Labor and Industry and other agencies having jurisdiction. Pay all required fees for review, registration and sign off.

#### 1.14 FIELD ADJUSTMENT TO AIR HANDLING EQUIPMENT, PUMPS, AND FANS

- A. Trade Contractor shall be responsible for changing or adjusting belts, drives, pulleys, motors, impellers, etc., as required, by adjustment for acoustic performance, and by balancing company to achieve the desired air and water delivery by all air handling equipment and pumps.

#### 1.15 RECORD DRAWINGS (AS-BUILTS)

- A. Provide Record As-Built drawings in accordance with requirements of Div 1

1.16 COOPERATION BETWEEN TRADES

- A. Cooperate with all other Divisions performing work on this project as necessary to achieve a complete neatly fitted installation for each condition. Consult the Drawings and Specifications to determine nature and extent of work specified in other Divisions that adjoins or attaches to the work of this Division. Confer with other Divisions at the site to coordinate this work with theirs in view of job conditions to the end that interferences may be eliminated and that maximum head room and clearance may be obtained. In the event that interferences develop, the Commissioner's decision will be final as to which Division shall relocate its work, and no additional compensation will be allowed for the moving of piping, ductwork, conduit, or equipment, to clear such interferences. Provide templates, information, and instructions to other divisions to properly locate holes and openings to be cut or provided.
- B. For Testing and Balancing of the system, ensure full co-ordination between the Testing and Balancing subcontractor and all other Trades to achieve access to all system components, including leaving wall/ceiling sections down for access. HVAC Contractor shall be responsible for pre-balancing checks and check sheet and responsibilities outlined in Section 23 0593.
- C. Ensure full co-ordination between controls subcontractor and Testing and Balancing subcontractor to ensure the system is commissioned in accordance with the complete requirements of the complete contract documents.

1.17 HOIST, RIGGING, TRANSPORTATION AND SCAFFOLDING

- A. Provide all scaffolding, staging, cribbing, tackle hoist and rigging necessary for placing all materials and equipment in their proper places in the Project. All temporary work shall be removed from the premises when its use is no longer required.

1.18 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver equipment in its original package to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter. Perform all handling and shipping in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Provide protective coverings during construction.
- B. Identify materials and equipment delivered to Site to permit check against approved materials list, reviewed Shop Drawings.
- C. Completely cover motors and other moving machinery to protect from dirt and water during construction.
- D. Cap all openings in pipe and ductwork daily to protect against entry by foreign matter.
- E. Protect premises and Work of other Divisions from damage arising out of installation of Work of this Division.
- F. Perform Work in manner precluding unnecessary fire hazard.
- G. All ductwork shall be delivered to site with all ends and openings capped with minimum of heavy gauge polyethylene sheeting taped all around to prevent ingress of moisture, dust,



debris, etc.

- H. Protect from loss or damage. Replace lost or damaged materials and equipment with new at no increase in Contract Sum. Protect from damage, water, dust, etc., material, equipment and apparatus provided under this Division, both in storage and installed, until Notice of Completion has been filed. Provide temporary storage facilities for material and equipment. Material, equipment or apparatus damaged because of improper storage or protection will be rejected. Remove from Site and provide new, duplicate material, equipment or apparatus in replacement of that rejected.
- I. All stock piled conduit and piping shall be placed on dunnage, and protected from weather and from entry of foreign material. All stored materials and equipment shall be carefully inspected prior to installation and replaced with new material or equipment if found to be damaged, corroded, etc.

#### 1.19 GUARANTEE AND 24 HOUR SERVICE

- A. Guarantee the Work of this section for one year following the date of Substantial Completion. If the equipment is used for ventilation, temporary heat, etc. prior to initial beneficial occupancy by the Commissioner, the bid price shall include an extended period of warranty covering the one year of occupancy starting from the initial date of beneficial occupancy by the Commissioner. The guarantee shall repair or replace defective materials, equipment, workmanship and installation that develop within this period, promptly and to Architect's satisfaction and correct damage caused in making necessary repairs and replacements under guarantee within Contract Price.
- B. In addition to guarantee requirements of Division 1 and of Paragraph A above, obtain written equipment and material warranties offered in manufacturer's published data without exclusion or limitation, in Commissioner's name.
- C. Replace material and equipment that require excessive service during guarantee period as defined and as directed by Architect.
- D. Provide 24 hour service beginning on the date of substantial completion and lasting until the termination of guarantee period. Service shall be at no cost to Commissioner. Service can be provided by this Contractor or a separate service organization. Choice of service organization shall be subject to Architect and Commissioner approval. Submit name and phone number that will be answered on a 24 hour basis each day of the week, for the duration of the service.
- E. Submit copies of equipment and material warranties to Architect before final payment.
- F. At end of guarantee period, transfer manufacturer's equipment and warranties still in force to Commissioner.
- G. This paragraph shall not be interpreted to limit Commissioner's rights under applicable codes and laws under this Contract.
- H. Part 2 Paragraphs of the Specification sections may specify warranty requirements that exceed those of this Paragraph.
- I. Use of systems provided under this Section for temporary services and facilities shall not

constitute Final Acceptance of work nor beneficial use by Commissioner, and shall not institute guarantee period.

- J. Provide manufacturer's engineering and technical staff at site to analyze and rectify problems that develop during guarantee period immediately. If problems cannot be rectified immediately to Commissioner's satisfaction, advise Architect in writing, describe efforts to rectify situation, and provide analysis of cause of problem. Architect will suggest course of action.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Refer to each specific Mechanical and Electrical Section for details.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Equipment and materials shall be as described in the respective Sections of Division 23 and Division 26 and as shown.
- B. Equipment specified by manufacturer's number shall include all accessories, controls, etc., listed in catalog as standard with equipment. Furnish optional or additional accessories as specified.
- C. Equipment, material damaged during transportation, installation, operation is considered as totally damaged. Replace with new. Variance from this permitted only with written acceptance.
- D. All items of materials in each category of equipment shall be of one manufacturer.

### 2.3 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT-GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. New.
- B. Approved for use in the City of New York. Submit MEA number sand BSA numbers as appropriate.
- C. Testing agency labeled or with other identification wherever standards have been established.
- D. Commissioner reserves right to reject items not in accordance with Specification either before or after installation.
- E. Comprised to render complete and operable systems; provide additional items needed to complete installation to realized design.
- F. Compatible with space allocated. Modifications necessary to adjust items to space limitations at Contractor's expense.
- G. Installed fully operating and without objectionable noise or vibration.

### 2.4 FLAME-SPREAD AND SMOKE-DEVELOPED PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS



- A. All materials and adhesives used throughout the mechanical systems shall have a flame spread rating not over 25 without evidence of continued combustion and with a smoke-developed rating not higher than 50. Materials include but not limited to are insulation, acoustical lining, filter, ducts, flexible connections, jackets or coverings regardless of kind, etc. If such materials are to be applied with adhesives and the adhesives used shall have a flame-spread rating not over 25 and a smoke developed rating not higher than 50.
- B. "Flame Spread Rating" and "Smoke Developed Rating" shall be as determined by the "method of test of surface burning characteristics of building materials, NFPA no. 244, ASTM E84, Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., Standard." Such materials are listed in the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., "Building Materials List" under the heading "Hazard Classification (Fire)."

### PART 3- EXECUTION

#### 3.1 COMMISSIONING OF EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. Commissioning shall be as specified under Section 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC System"

#### 3.2 SPECIAL RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Cooperate and coordinate with work of other Sections in executing work of this Section.
- B. Perform work such that progress of entire project including work of other Sections shall not be interfered with or delayed.
- C. Provide information as requested on items furnished under this Section which shall be installed under other Sections.
- D. Obtain detailed installation information from manufacturers of equipment provided under this section.
- E. Obtain final roughing dimensions or other information needed for complete installation of items furnished under other Sections or by Commissioner.
- F. Keep fully informed as to shape, size and position of openings required for material or equipment to be provided under this and other Sections. Give full information so that openings required by work of this Section may be coordinated with other work and other openings and may be provided for in advance. In case of failure to provide sufficient information on proper time, provide cutting and patching or have same done, at own expense and to full satisfaction of Architect.
- G. Provide information as requested as to sizes, number and locations of housekeeping pads necessary for floor mounted vibrating and rotating equipment provided under this Section.
- H. Notify Architect of location and extent of existing piping, conduit, ductwork and equipment that interferes with new construction. In coordination with and with approval of Architect, relocate piping, ductwork and equipment to permit new work to be provided as required by Contract Documents. Remove non-functioning and abandoned piping, ductwork and equipment as directed by Architect. Dispose of or store items as requested by Architect.



- I. Installation Only Items: Where this contractor is required to install items which it does not purchase, it shall coordinate delivery and be responsible for their unloading from delivery vehicles and for their safe handling and field storage up to time of installation. This trade shall be responsible for:
- 1 Any necessary field assembly and internal connections, as well as mounting in place of the items, including the purchase and installation of all dunnage supporting members and fastenings necessary to adapt to architectural and structural conditions.
  - 2 Their connection to building systems including the purchase and installation of all terminating fittings necessary to adapt and connect them to the building systems.
- J. This contractor shall carefully examine such items upon delivery. Claims that any of these items have been received in such condition that their installation will require procedures beyond the reasonable scope of work of this contractor will be considered only if presented in writing within one week of their date of delivery. Unless such claims have been submitted this contractor shall be fully responsible for the complete reconditioning or replacement of the damaged items.
- K. Maintenance of equipment and systems: Maintain equipment and systems until Final Acceptance. Ensure adequate protection of equipment and material during delivery, storage, installation and shutdown and during delays pending final test of systems and equipment because of seasonal conditions.
- L. Use of premises: Use of premises shall be restricted as directed by Architect and as required below:
- 1 Remove and dispose of dirt and debris, and keep premises clean. During progress of work, remove equipment and unused material. Put building and premises in neat and clean condition, and do cleaning and washing required to provide acceptable appearance and operation of equipment, to satisfaction of Architect.
  - 2 Store materials in a manner that will maintain an orderly clean appearance. If stored on-site in open or unprotected areas, all equipment and material shall be kept off the ground by means of pallets or racks and covered with tarpaulins.
  - 3 Do not interfere with function of existing sewers and water and gas mains, electrical or mechanical systems and services. Extreme care shall be observed to prevent debris from entering pipe, ductwork and equipment. Confer with Architect as to disruption of services or other utilities due to testing, connection of new work to existing. Interruption of services shall be performed at time of day or night deemed by Commissioner to provide minimal interference with normal operation. Obtain Commissioner's approval of the method proposed for minimizing service interruption.
- M. Surveys and Measurements:
- 1 Base measurements, both horizontal and vertical, on reference points established by Contractor and be responsible for correct laying out of work.
  - 2 In event of discrepancy between actual measurements and those indicated, notify



Architect in writing and do not proceed with work until written instructions have been issued by Architect.

N. Fireproofing:

- 1 Clip, hangers, clamps, supports and other attachments to surfaces to be fireproofed shall be installed, insofar as possible prior to start of spray fiber work.
- 2 Ducts, piping and other items which would interfere with proper application of fireproofing shall installed after completion of spray fiber work.
- 3 Patching and repairing of fireproofing due to cutting or damaging to fireproofing during course of work specified under this section shall be shall be performed by installer of fireproofing and paid for by the trade responsible for damage and shall not constitute grounds for an extra to Commissioner.

O. Temporary Utilities:

- 1 Refer to Division 1 regarding requirements.
- 2 Coordinate work under this Section with progress of construction so that permanent heating system will be ready for temporary heating if permitted by Architect as soon as the building is closed in.
- 3 Provide and direct labor required for attendance, operation and final restoration of permanent heating system if used for temporary heating purposes. Continuous direct attendance shall be provided whenever permanent system is in operation prior to acceptance of permanent heating system by Commissioner.
  - a. Air bound Systems: If, after the plant is in operation, any piping systems, coils or other apparatus are stratified or air bound (by vacuum or pressure), they shall be repiped with new approved and necessary fittings, air vents, or vacuum breakers at no extra cost. If connections are concealed in furring, floors or ceilings, this trade shall bear the cost of tearing up and refinishing construction and finish, leaving same in as good condition as before it was disturbed.
  - b. Miscellaneous: Unload materials and equipment delivered to site. Pay cost for rigging, hoisting, lowering and moving electrical equipment on and around site, in building or on roof.

3.3 MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP

- A. Work shall be neat and rectilinear. Ductwork, piping, conduit, etc. shall run concealed except in mechanical rooms and areas where no hung ceiling exists. Install material and equipment as required by manufacturers. Installation shall operate safely and without leakage, undue wear, noise, vibration, corrosion or water hammer. Work shall be properly and effectively protected, and pipe and duct openings shall be temporarily closed to prevent obstruction and damage before completion.
- B. Except as specified otherwise, material and equipment shall be new. Provide supplies, appliances and connections necessary for complete and operational installation. Provide components required or recommended by OSHA and applicable NFPA documents.

- C. Finish of materials, components and equipment shall be as approved by Architect and shall be resistant to corrosion and weather as necessary.
- D. Commissioner will not be responsible for material and equipment before testing, commissioning, and acceptance.

### 3.4 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

- A. Do not interrupt existing services without Commissioner's approval.
- B. Schedule interruptions in advance, according to Commissioner's instructions. Submit, in writing, with request for interruption, methods proposed to minimize length of interruption.
- C. Interruptions shall be scheduled at such times of day and work so that they have minimal impact to Commissioner's operations.
- D. Subcontractor shall coordinate any shutdowns of existing systems as follows:
- E. Give proper notice to Commissioner when making shutdowns; a minimum of fourteen full days are required.
- F. Minimize shutdowns of any system.
- G. Provide temporary services where required and perform shutdown and tie-ins at a time convenient to Commissioner.
- H. Subcontractor shall be responsible for completing and filing Commissioner's shutdown notice questionnaire.
- I. Perform required survey and inspection work required by the notice for shutdown.
- J. Include premium time work associated with interruption of services and/or shutdown as necessary to avoid disruption to Commissioner's operations.

### 3.5 WELDING

- A. Weld only by approved acetylene or electric welding process and welders shall hold certificate from approved insurance company.
- B. Conduct tests to demonstrate suitability of procedures to be used in making welds which conform to specified requirements.
- C. Specification for welding procedure shall meet requirements of Welding Qualifications, Section IX, ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code and ANSI B31.1.
- D. Align components. No strain shall be placed on weld during welding. No part of pipe shall be offset more than 20% of thickness. Set flanges and branches properly.
- E. Welder qualification:
  - 1 Test welders to demonstrate ability to make acceptable welds. Tests conducted for qualification of welder for work under one Division or Section shall not qualify welder for work under another Division or Section.



- 2 Tests shall be as prescribed for welder qualification in Section IX of the ASME Code.
- 3 Records of such tests shall be as follows: Each welder shall be assigned an identifying number, letter or symbol. Identifying mark shall be stamped adjacent to welds made by this welder. Identification shall be at top of horizontal piping and at front of vertical piping.
- 4 Maintain record of welders employed, showing dates and results of tests and identifying mark assigned to each welder. Certify records and make them accessible to Commissioner's project representative and/or project manager. Before completion of project, one copy of records shall be turned over to Commissioner.
- 5 No qualification shall be older than three years when welder commences to work on this project. If the welder has not welded in required welding process for a period of six months, he shall be re-certified.

F. Welding Tests

- 1 As designated by Architect, remove welds for destructive testing or for testing by non-destructive means.
- 2 If, in Architects opinion, welds so tested do not meet requirements of Sections VIII and IX of ASME, then the contractor shall pay for costs of the tests. Remove welds welded by that welder at no cost to the Commissioner. Rewelding shall be performed by qualified welder other than welder whose weld did not pass the test. Welders whose welds were defective shall not be employed on site for remainder of the project.
- 3 Welding of stanchions, brackets, anchors and other welding not performed on pipe joints shall be in accordance with requirements of AWS specifications and requirements.

3.6 ACCESS AND ACCESS PANELS

- A. Access panels shall be provided where indicated on drawings. Include allowance for 24x24 access panels in sheetrock ceilings for ceiling mounted equipment.
- B. Provide proper access to materials and equipment that require inspection, replacement, repair or service, and coordinate their delivery with the installing Trade. If proper access cannot be provided, confer with Architect as to the best method of approach for minimizing effect of reduced access which may result.
- C. Coordinate and prepare a location, size, and function schedule of access panels required to fully service equipment and deliver to a representative of installing Trade. Furnish and install distinctively colored buttons ( color as selected by Architect) in finished ceiling to identify all access panels.
- D. Furnish access panels for installation under other Sections where fire dampers, volume dampers, controls, shut-off valves, control valves, check valves, or other items installed under this section require access and are concealed in floor, wall, furred space or above ceiling. Access panels shall be by Milcor, Knapp, Nystorm or Inlanf Steel; coordinate selection with

other Section supplying similar access panels

- E. Ceilings consisting of lay-in or removable splined tiles do not require access panels and dampers, splitters, or test hole openings above ceiling shall have location marked with thumb tack on finished ceiling panel. Location shall be noted on record drawings.
- F. Access panels shall have same fire rating classification as surface penetrated
- G. Panels shall be atleast 12"x12"; access panels at equipment (VAV boxes, fan boxes and others) shall be 18"x18".

### 3.7 PENETRATIONS AND SLEEVES

#### A. General

- 1 Layout penetration and sleeve openings in advance, to permit provision in work. Set sleeves and conduit in forms before concrete is poured. Provide remedial work where sleeves and conduits are omitted or improperly placed.
- 2 Provide sleeves and packing materials at all penetrations of foundations, walls, slabs (except on grade), partitions and floors. Sleeves shall meet NFPA 101 requirements and material requirements of these specifications.
- 3 Sleeves that penetrate outside walls, basement slabs, footings and beams shall be waterproof.
- 4 Coordinate work carefully with architectural and structural. Set sleeves in forms before concrete is poured. Provide core drilling as necessary if walls are poured, or otherwise constructed, without sleeves and a wall penetration is required. Provide core drilling as required for penetration of existing construction. Do not penetrate structural members without Architect's approval.
- 5 Sleeves for insulated pipe and duct in no-fire rated construction shall accommodate continuous insulation without compression. Sleeves and/or penetration in fire rated construction shall be packed with fire rated material which shall maintain the fire rating of the wall. Seal ends of penetrations to provide continuous vapor barrier where insulation is interrupted.
- 6 Where pipes, etc. passing through openings are exposed in finished rooms, finishes of filling materials shall match and be flush with adjoining floor, ceiling, and wall finishes.
- 7 Identify unused sleeves and slots for future installation.
- 8 Fill slots, sleeves and other openings in floors and walls not used. Fill spaces in openings after installation of pipe, duct, conduit or cable.
- 9 Fill for floor penetration shall prevent passage of water, smoke, fire, and fumes. Fill shall be fire resistant in fire floors and walls, and shall prevent passage of air, smoke and fumes.
- 10 Sleeves through floors shall be watertight and shall extend 2" above floor surface.



**B. Pipe and Conduit Sleeves:**

- 1 Annular space between pipe/conduit and sleeve shall be at least 1/4".
- 2 Sleeves are not required for slabs-on-grade unless specified otherwise.
- 3 Sleeves and packing materials, through rated firewalls and smoke partitions shall maintain fire rating of construction penetrated.
- 4 Do not support piping risers or conduit on sleeves.

**C. Duct Sleeves and Prepared Openings:**

- 1 Provide duct sleeves for round ducts 15" and smaller; provide prepared, framed openings for round ducts larger and for square, rectangular and flat oval ducts, except as otherwise specified otherwise. Sleeves shall meet SMACNA requirements.
- 2 Provide sleeves for ducts through 1-, 2- Or 3- hour fire rated construction and smoke partitions, regardless of size or shape of ducts. Sleeves shall maintain fire rating of construction penetrated. Sleeve and seal materials, construction and clearances shall meet requirements of SMACNA Fire Damper and Heat Stop Guide for Air Handling Systems.
- 3 Prepared openings shall be framed to provide 1" clearance between framing and duct or duct insulation.

**3.8 INSTALLATIONS, TESTING AND APPROVALS:**

- A. Installation shall meet manufacturer's recommendations exactly, particularly regards to safety, ventilation, removal of foreign materials and other details of installation. Dam openings as recommended. Remove flammable materials used for damming and forming seals in fire rated construction.
- B. Sleeve penetration methods shall be water- and gas- tight and shall meet requirements of ASTM 119 Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- C. Fire-stop penetration seal methods and materials shall be FM-approved and UL-listed as applicable. They shall have same rating as the structure penetrated. Submit manufacturer's detail sheet indicating assembly rating.
- D. Inspect foamed sealants to ensure manufacturer's optimum cell structure and color ranges.

**3.9 ANCHORS AND INSERTS**

- A. Inserts shall be iron or steel of type to receive machine bolt head or nut after installation. Insert shall permit adjustment of bolt in one horizontal direction and shall develop strength of bolt when installed in properly cured concrete.
- B. Provide anchors as necessary for attachment of equipment support and hangers.

**3.10 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. Install escutcheons around exposed pipe passing through finished floor, floor, wall, or ceiling.

Escutcheons shall be heavy cast brass, chromium plated, adjustable, and of sufficient outside diameter to cover sleeve opening and shall fit snugly around pipe and flush against floor or wall surface. Escutcheon plates shall be provided on pipes at fixtures and shall be polished chrome plated. Plated steel escutcheon plates are not acceptable. Sample escutcheon plates shall be submitted to the Architect for approval prior to installation.

3.11 CORE DRILLING

- A. Core drilling is to be avoided.
- B. Set sleeves prior to installation of structure for passage of pipes, conduits, ducts, etc.
- C. Where core drilling is unavoidable, or required by renovation projects, locate all required openings prior to coring and submit to Architect for review.
- D. Coordinate openings with General Contractor/Construction Manager and all other trades.
- E. Core drilling is to be provided by the Contractor for General Construction and not by the M/E subcontractors.
- F. Do not disturb existing systems.
- G. Thoroughly investigate existing conditions in vicinity of required opening prior to coring.

3.12 CARPENTRY, CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. In accordance with Division 1, Cutting and Patching Article, and as follows.
- B. Provide all sleeves, core drilling, carpentry, cutting and patching required for proper installation of material and equipment shall be provided as per Construction Manager's bid package.
- C. Do not cut or drill structural members without consent of Commissioner and Architect.

3.13 EXCAVATING & BACKFILLING

- A. Preparation:
- B. In accordance with the requirements of Division 2.
- C. Provide barricades, signs, lanterns, shoring, sheeting and pumping as part of Work in this Division as required to insure safe conditions.
- D. Dig trenches straight, true to line and grade with sides and bottoms smoothed of any rock points. Excavate 6 inches below grade of pipe, fill with sand properly packed. Support pipe for entire length on packed sand. Shape or pack bottom of trenches for pipe, duct fittings, hubs, couplings, etc., using templates to fit outside periphery of lower third of piping and ductwork. Provide piping outside building with 36 inch minimum cover from top of pipe to finished grade. Minimum width 16 inches.
- E. Dispose of all surplus excavation material and seepage water as directed.
- F. Backfill shall be as per Division 1 requirements



- G. After piping has been installed, tested and approved, backfill all excavation, tamp and compact by compressed air tampers.
- H. Backfill to 6 inches above crown of pipe with unwashed sand, with remainder of trench back-filled and mechanically tamped in 6 inch maximum layers of selected excavated materials, free from organic matter, rocks, etc. Provide 90 percent compaction in accordance with ASTM D 1557-58T; 95 percent compaction for trenches below building slabs.
- I. In any asphalt or concrete paved areas, backfill only to subgrade level.
- J. When piping is installed, and prior to backfilling, advise CM. Do not backfill without acceptances of Commissioner.
- K. Replace to original condition all paving, curbs, gutters, walks, etc., which become disturbed by trenching.

#### 3.14 CUTTING AND REPAIRING

- A. Assume responsibility for damage to any part of premises or Work of other Divisions, caused by leaks or breaks in piping or equipment furnished or installed under this Division during construction and guarantee/warranty period.

#### 3.15 VIBRATION CONTROL

- A. Coordinate with Division 1.
- B. Design criteria for all the Work of Division 23 are specified in Section 230548.
- C. Concrete Equipment Bases
- D. Locate and size concrete base for all equipment located on existing floors. Base: 6 inches high and extending 4 inches beyond edge of equipment base unless indicated otherwise. Trade Contractor shall ensure equipment elevation is suitable for gravity drainage where relevant.

#### 3.16 WATERPROOF CONSTRUCTION

- A. Maintain waterproof integrity of penetrations of materials intended to be waterproof. Provide flashing at exterior wall and roof penetrations. Caulk watertight penetrations of foundation walls and floors. Provide membrane clamps at penetrations of waterproof membranes.
- B. Provide galvanized sheet metal weather protection canopies, hoods or enclosures over all out-of-doors equipment, the operation or maintenance of which would be impaired by rainwater. This requirement applies to damper operators and bearing, damper motors, controls, and instruments. See other paragraphs in this Division for application of this requirement to motors, drive, ducts, and fans.

#### 3.17 RESTORATION OF DAMAGE

- A. Repair or replace, as directed by Architect, materials and parts of premises which become damaged as result of installation of Work of this Division. Remove replaced parts from premises.

3.18 LINTELS

- A. Where openings break into an already completed wall as a result of a failure to set sleeves or provide openings during erection of the wall, the Trade Contractor shall provide lintels as required for the support of building construction above the inserted item.
- B. Lintels shall be structural steel angles, channels or tees of proper size and sections for the supported load; submit to the Architect with supporting calculations for approval prior to the installation.
- C. Where new openings are required in an existing wall co-ordinate opening size, location and lintel type with structural engineer.

3.19 ROOF OPENINGS AND CURBS

- A. Roof openings where required shall be coordinated with Architect and all flashing and patching shall be as per details indicated on the Architectural plans.

3.20 TOOLS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Furnish all tools and equipment necessary for the proper installation, protection and upkeep of the Work.

3.21 ADJUSTMENT

- A. Preliminary Operation:
- B. Operate any portion of installation for Commissioner's convenience if so requested by Construction Manager. Such operation does not constitute acceptance of Work as complete. Cost of utilities, such as gas and electrical power, will be borne by Commissioner if Commissioner requests operation.

3.22 STARTUP SERVICE:

- A. Prior to startup, ensure that systems are ready, including checking the following: proper equipment rotation, proper wiring, auxiliary connections, lubrications, venting fan balance, controls and installed and properly set relief and safety valves.
- B. Start and operate all systems. Provide services of factory trained technicians for startup of major equipment and systems including chillers, boilers, pumps, air handling units, etc.

3.23 ADJUSTING:

- A. Adjust all equipment and system components as shown or as otherwise required to result in intended system operation.
- B. Thereafter, as a result of system operation or as directed by Commissioner, make readjustments as necessary to refine performance and to effect complete system "tune-up".
- C. After completion of testing and adjustment, operate the different systems and equipment under normal working conditions for 72 hours continuously and show specified performance. If, in the opinion of the Architect, performance of equipment or systems is not in accordance with



specifications or submitted data, alter or replace equipment at no increase in Contract Sum. Trade Contractor, at his option, may order tests from an independent approved laboratory to prove compliance. All such tests shall be at no increase in Contract Sum. Repeat process as often as required. If the reason for unsatisfactory operation is design errors all additional cost for corrective measures will be reimbursed to the contractor.

- D. At completion of Work, provide written certification that all systems are functioning properly without defects.
- E. Noise:
  - 1 Cooperate in reducing any objectionable noise or vibration caused by mechanical systems to the extent of adjustments to specified and installed equipment and appurtenances.
  - 2 Cooperate in adjustment of mechanical systems and terminal devices, as directed by Commissioner, to obtain specified acoustic properties.
  - 3 Completely correct noise problems caused by failure to make installation in accordance with Contract Documents, including labor and materials required as a result of such failure, at no increase in Contract Sum. Includes refinish walls, floors etc.

### 3.24 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT \*

- A. Use printed descriptions, specifications and recommendations of manufacturers as a guide for installation of Work.
- B. Assemble equipment required to be field assembled under the direct supervision of the manufacturers' agent. Prior to the final acceptance submit letters from the manufacturers that this has been done.
- C. Avoid interference with structure and with work of other trades, preserving adequate headroom and clearing doors and passageways, to satisfaction of Architect and in accordance with code requirements. Installation shall permit clearance for access to equipment for repair, servicing and replacement.
- D. Install equipment so as to properly distribute equipment loads on building structural members provided for equipment support under other Sections. Roof mounted equipment shall be installed and supported on structural steel provided under other Sections.
- E. Provide suspended platforms, strap hangers, brackets, shelves, stands or legs as necessary for floor, wall or ceiling mounting of equipment as required.
- F. Provide steel supports and hardware for proper installation of hangers, anchors, guides, etc.
- G. Provide cuts, weights, and other pertinent data required for proper coordination of equipment support provisions and installations.
- H. Structural steel and hardware shall conform to Standard specifications of ASTM; use of steel and hardware shall conform to requirements of Section V of Code of Practice of American Institute of Steel Construction.

- I. Verify site conditions and dimensions of equipment to ensure access for proper installation of equipment without disassembly, which will void warranty. Report in writing to Architect, prior to purchase or shipment of equipment involved, on conditions which may prevent proper installation.

### 3.25 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Work in this Division shall conform to requirements of Division 26.
- B. This Contractor shall furnish all motors, starters, variable frequency drives, disconnects for motors and heating coils and controls for equipment under this Contract, unless otherwise noted.
- C. Division 26 Contractor shall install all starters, variable frequency drives, disconnects and overload protectors furnished by this Contractor and shall provide all necessary wire, conduit and boxes to properly connect equipment for this Contractor no matter how many disconnects, starters, etc are included, unless otherwise noted. Electrical Contractor shall receive, unload, set and install motor starters, disconnects and other items to be installed under Division 26.
- D. This Contractor shall provide all necessary conduit and control wiring to pushbuttons, thermostats, pilot lights, interlocks and similar equipment for equipment under this Division.
- E. Flow control switches, thermostats, controllers, relays, transformers, switches, etc and other components provided with equipment shown on the Contract Documents not to be factory wired or part of division 17 scope necessary for proper operation of mechanical systems shall be furnished and installed by this Contractor.
- F. Where the starter and/or safety switch is an integral part of equipment assembly, the assembly shall be furnished with the wiring complete between starter, controller and motor. The Electrical Contractor will make connections to unit terminals.
- G. Factory wired assemblies and panels: Pre-wired to numbered terminal strips for connection to field wiring. Provide disconnect switch for each control circuit connection to pre-wired assemblies and control panels.
- H. All motors and motor control equipment shall meet the requirements of NEC, and shall comply with requirements of the Public Utility Company furnishing service and with rules and regulations of all authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. THIS CONTRACTOR SHALL VERIFY VOLTAGE AT SITE BEFORE ORDERING ANY ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT.

### 3.26 WIRING:

- A. Power wiring: Except for factory wiring on mechanical equipment, power wiring is specified in Division 26.
- B. HVAC control wiring:
  - 1 Except for factory wiring on mechanical equipment, specified in specification section "Automatic Temperature Controls".



- 2 All wiring and conduit shall be according to latest edition of the NEC. All control wiring shall be installed in EMT in accordance with applicable portions of NEC and requirements of Division 26.
- 3 Low voltage wiring in air plenums shall be UL approved conductor for application as manufactured by Alpha or Beldon.

### 3.27 MOTORS:

- A. Provide motors for equipment specified. Separately shipped motors are to be installed by Division 23. Coordinate with Division 26.
- B. Separately shipped motors and variable frequency drives shall be received unloaded installed by Division 23, wired by Division 26. Adjustable motor bases and all bolts and nuts required for installation of base and motor shall be provided and installed by Division 23.
- C. Align and adjust mechanical coupling for direct-driven motorized equipment. Adjust and align drive and belt tension on belt-driven equipment.
- D. Field lubricate all motors prior to operation and maintain lubrication prior to acceptance of equipment by the Commissioner.
- E. Provide to electrical contractor motor terminal connection diagram as prepared by motor manufacturers.
- F. The Electrical Contractor shall be responsible for proper rotation of three phase equipment.
- G. Power Factor Correction:
- H. This Contractor shall be responsible for all equipment, labor, coordination and all other related appurtenances required for the installation of power correction devices at all equipment supplied under this contract. Equipment requiring power correction devices shall be furnished and installed with the same as hereinafter specified. Power factor correction devices (including means and methods) shall be included as part of their respective equipment submittal, materials, wiring diagrams, shop drawings, and catalog cuts for review by the Architect.
- I. Devices shall be furnished and installed to ensure a minimum power factor of over 90% over the full operating range of the equipment. Equipment requiring power factor correction devices are:
  - 1 Packaged Rooftop Units
  - 2 Heat Pump Condensing Units
  - 3 All three-phase mechanical exhausters and fans of any type.

### 3.28 PAINTING

- A. Equipment installed shall have shop coat of non-lead gray paint. Hangers and supports shall have one coat of non-lead primer. Machinery such as pumps, fans, etc., shall be stenciled with equipment name. Stencil shall be at least 6" high for large equipment, 2" high for small



equipment. Finish painting, including painting of various piping and duct systems, shall be done under other Sections.

- B. Paint all outside exposed equipment and equipment supports with two coats of weather resistant enamel.
- C. Provide heat resistant paint for hot piping, equipment and materials.
- D. Note requirement for Architect's approval invoked under paragraph MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP regarding finish of material and equipment, which are visible or subject to corrosive or atmospheric conditions.
- E. Properly prepare Work under this Division to be finish painted under Division 9.

### 3.29 LUBRICATION

- A. Lubricate all equipment at completion of Work. Furnish Commissioner with a written lubrication schedule for all equipment as specified in Division 1 and Division 23.

### 3.30 EXPANSION PROVISIONS

- A. Installation of piping must allow for expansion using offsets, loops, swing joints, expansion joints, etc. as necessary to prevent undue strain. Take-offs from mains to runouts shall not have less than three elbow swing.
- B. Mains and risers with loops or offsets shall be securely anchored to structure so as to impart expansion towards loops or offsets. Anchors shall be constructed of heavy forged wrought iron, secured to pipe and to structure. Provide vibration isolation as required.
- C. Provide pipe alignment guides as required to guide expanding pipe to move freely from anchor points toward expansion joints, offsets, etc.

### 3.31 CLEANING

- A. Cleaning shall be performed prior to commissioning.
- B. Completely cover all plumbing fixtures and all motors and other moving machinery to prevent entry of dirt and water during construction. Effectively cap all openings into ducts and pipes to keep foreign matter out during construction.
- C. Protect all finished surfaces of fixtures with heavy paper pasted thereon, or by other means, throughout the period of construction.
- D. Ductwork:
  - 1 Ducts shall be thoroughly cleaned so that no dirt or dust shall be discharged from diffusers, registers or grilles, when system is operated.
  - 2 Provide temporary connections for cleaning. Provide cheesecloth for openings during cleaning.
  - 3 Replace filters prior to final inspection and testing.



4 Piping

- a. Furnish pipe cleaning chemicals, chemical feed equipment, materials and labor necessary to clean pipe.
- b. Permanently install necessary chemical injection fittings complete with stop valves.
- c. After all piping systems have been pressure tested and approved for tightness, clean and flush piping as specified and as required by codes.
- d. Maintain continuous blowdown and make-up, as required during flushing operation.
- e. Equipment
- f. After completion of project, clean exterior surface of all equipment, including concrete residue, dirt, paint residue, etc.
- g. Plumbing fixtures - clean and polish fixtures immediately prior to final inspection.

END OF SECTION 23 0000

SECTION 230013 – HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK

ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

1.01 SCOPE FOR ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK

- A. The "General Conditions" apply to the work of this Section.
- B. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall remove asbestos containing materials as needed to perform the other work of this Contract when discovered during the course of work. When required, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall replace the ACM with non-asbestos containing materials. An allowance of **\$5,000.00** for the **HVAC Contractor** is herein established for this incidental work when so ordered and authorized by the Commissioner.
- C. ALL WORK SHALL BE DONE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE PROVISIONS OF THE RULES AND REGULATIONS OF THE ASBESTOS CONTROL PROGRAM AS PROMULGATED BY TITLE 15 CHAPTER I OF RCNY AND NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF LABOR INDUSTRIAL CODE RULE 56 CITED AS 12 NYCRR, PART 56 WHICHEVER IS MORE STRINGENT AS PER LATEST AMENDMENTS TO THESE LAWS AND AS MODIFIED HEREIN BY THESE SPECIFICATIONS.
- D. ALL DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAMINATED MATERIAL SHALL BE PER LOCAL LAW 70/85.
- E. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR'S ATTENTION IS DIRECTED TO THE FACT THAT CERTAIN METHODS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT ARE PROTECTED BY PATENTS. TO DATE, PATENTS HAVE BEEN ISSUED WITH RESPECT TO "NEGATIVE PRESSURE ENCLOSURE" OR "NEGATIVE-AIR" OR "REDUCED PRESSURE" AND "GLOVE BAG".
- F. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR SHALL BE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR AND SHALL HOLD THE DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION AND THE CITY HARMLESS FROM ANY AND ALL DAMAGES, LOSSES AND EXPENSES RESULTING FROM ANY INFRINGEMENT BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR OF ANY PATENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE PATENTS DESCRIBED ABOVE, USED BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR DURING PERFORMANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.
- G. "Asbestos" shall mean any hydrated mineral silicate separable into commercially usable fibers, including but not limited to chrysotile (serpentine), amosite (cumingtonite-grunerite), crocidolite (riebeckite), tremolite, anthrophyllite and actinolite.

HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- H. Prior to starting, the Asbestos abatement contractor must notify the Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction if he/she anticipates any difficulty in performing the Work as required by these Specifications. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to prepare and submit all filings, notifications, etc. required by all City, State and Federal regulatory agencies having jurisdiction.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for submitting the Asbestos Project Notification Form (ACP-7 Form) to the Department of Environmental Protection, Asbestos Control Program, as per Title 15, Chapter 1 of RCNY and to the NYSDOL as per Industrial Code Rule 56.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for preparing, and submitting Asbestos Variance Application (ACP-9). If a Variance is required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Asbestos Project Designer, as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required variance.

The HVAC contractor is responsible for preparing and submitting an Asbestos Abatement Permit and/or Work Place Safety Plans (WPSP) that may be required for the completion of the Contract or incidental work. If such plans are required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Licensed Design Professional as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required plans.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the submission of all required documents to the NYCDEP to acquire the appropriate Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout (ACP-20) and/or Asbestos Project Completion Forms (ACP-21) on a timely basis for the completion of the incidental work encountered under this contract.

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be required to attend an on-site job meeting with the Construction Project Manager prior to the start of work to examine conditions and plan the sequence of operations, etc.

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall have a NYSDOL/NYCDEP Asbestos Supervisor onsite to oversee the work and conduct a final visual inspection as required by both Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY and NYSDOL Industrial Code Rule 56.

- I. All work shall be done during regular working hours unless the Asbestos abatement contractor requests authorization to work in other than regular working hours and such authorization is granted by the Commissioner. (Regular work hours are those hours during which any given facility, in which work is to be done, is customarily open and functioning, normally between the hours of 8:00 A.M. and 4:00 P.M. Monday - Friday.) If such work schedule is authorized by the Commissioner, the work shall be done at no additional cost to the City.

- J. The Commissioner may order that work be done in other than regular working hours as herein by defined and this order may require the Asbestos abatement contractor to pay premium or overtime wages to complete the work. If the Commissioner orders work in other than regular working hours, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall multiply the unit price for that portion of the work requiring premium wages by 1.50 when computing payment in accordance with Paragraph 1.09. All requests for premium payment must be supported by certified payroll sheets and field sheets approved by the Construction Project Manager.

**1.02 QUALIFICATIONS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR**

- A. Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements set forth in subparagraphs (1) through (5) below. The asbestos abatement contractor must, submit documentation demonstrating compliance with all listed requirements. Such documentation shall include without limitation, all required licenses, certificates, and documentation.
1. The asbestos abatement contractor must, whether an individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture or other legal entity, must demonstrate for the three year period prior to the work, that it has been licensed by the New York State Department of Labor, as an "Asbestos abatement contractor".
  2. The asbestos abatement contractor must, for the three year period prior to the work, have been in the business of providing asbestos abatement services as a routine part of its daily operations.
  3. The asbestos abatement contractor proposing to do asbestos abatement work must be thoroughly experienced in such work and must provide evidence of having successfully performed and completed in a timely fashion at least five (5) asbestos abatement projects of similar size and complexity. The aggregate cost of these projects must be at least \$250,000.00 in each of the three years.
  4. For each project submitted to meet the experience requirements set forth above, the asbestos abatement contractor must submit the following information for the project; name and location of the project; name title and telephone number of the owner or the owner's representative who is familiar with the asbestos abatement contractor's work, brief description of the work completed as a prime or sub-asbestos abatement contractor; amount of contract or subcontract and the date of completion.
  5. The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate that it has the financial resources, supervisory personnel and equipment necessary to carry out the work and to comply with the required performance schedule, taking into consideration other business commitments. The asbestos

HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

abatement contractor must submit such documentation as may be required by the Department of Design and Construction to demonstrate that it has the requisite capacity to perform the required services of this contract.

- B. Insurance Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must provide asbestos liability insurance in the following amount: 1 million dollars per occurrence, 2 million dollars aggregate (combined single limit). The City of New York shall be named as an additional insured on such insurance policy.
- C. Throughout the specifications, reference is made to codes and standards which establish qualities and types of workmanship and materials, and which establish methods for testing and reporting on the pertinent characteristics thereof.

**1.03 ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will visit the subject location within one (1) working day of notification to ascertain actual work required. If the project is identified as being "urgent", then work shall commence no later than 48 hours from the time of notification. In this event, the asbestos abatement contractor shall immediately notify when applicable EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL Asbestos Control Bureau and NYCDEP Asbestos Control Program of start of the work and file the necessary Asbestos Notifications and any applicable Variance Applications with the regulatory agencies cited above.

In the event that the project is not classified as "urgent" the Asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL and NYCDEP by submitting the requisite asbestos project notification forms, postmarked 10 days before activity begins if 260 linear feet or more and/or 160 square feet or more of asbestos containing material will be disturbed.

The following information must be included in the notification:

- A. Name and address of building City or operator;
- B. Project description:
  - 1. Size - square feet, number of linear feet, etc;
  - 2. Age - date of construction and renovations (if known);
  - 3. Use - i.e., office, school, industrial, etc.
  - 4. Scope - repair, demolition, cleaning, etc.
- C. Amount of asbestos involved in work and an explanation of techniques used to determine the amount;

- D. Building location/address, including Block and Lot numbers;
- E. Work schedule including the starting and completion dates;
- F. Abatement methods to be employed;
- G. Procedures for removal of asbestos-containing material;
- H. Name, title and authority of governmental representative sponsoring project.

**1.04 WORK INCLUDED IN UNIT PRICE**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be paid a basic unit price of **\$25.00** per square feet for the removal and disposal of asbestos containing material and replacement of the same with non-asbestos containing materials.

Unit price shall include all costs necessary to do the work of this Contract, including but not limited to: labor, materials, equipment, utilities, disposal, insurance, overhead and profit.

**1.05 AIR MONITORING – ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR**

- A. "Air Sampling" shall mean the process of measuring the fiber content of a known volume of air collected during a specific period of time. The procedure utilized for asbestos follows the NIOSH Standard Analytical Method 7400 or the provisional transmission electron microscopy methods developed by the USEPA and/or National Institute of Standard and Technology which are utilized for lower detectability and specific fiber identification.
- B. Air monitoring of Asbestos abatement contractor's personnel will be performed in conformance with OSHA requirements, (All costs associated with this work are deemed included in the unit price.).
- C. Qualifications of Testing Laboratory:

The industrial hygiene laboratory shall be a current proficient participant in the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) PAT Program. The laboratory identification number shall be submitted and approved by the City. The laboratory shall be accredited by the AIHA and New York State Department of Health Environmental Laboratory Approval Program (ELAP).

Note: Work area air testing and analysis before, during and upon completion of work (clearance testing) will be performed by a Third Party Air Monitor under separate Contract with the City.

**1.06 THIRD PARTY MONITORING AND LABORATORY**

- A. The NYCDDC, at its own expense, will employ the services of an independent Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and Laboratory. The Third Party Air Monitor will perform air sampling activities and project monitoring at the Work Site.
- B. The Laboratory will perform analysis of air samples utilizing Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) and/or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM).
- C. The Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and the designated Project Monitor shall have access to all areas of the asbestos removal project at all times and shall continuously inspect and monitor the performance of the Asbestos abatement contractor to verify that said performance complies with this Specification. The Third-Party Air Monitor shall be on site throughout the entire abatement operation.
- D. The NYCDDC will be responsible for costs incurred with the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and laboratory work. Any subsequent additional testing required due to limits exceeded during initial testing shall be paid for by the Asbestos abatement contractor.

**1.07 PAYMENT REQUEST DOCUMENTATION**

- B. The following information shall be included for each payment request:
  - 1. Description of work performed.
  - 2. Linear footage and pipe sizes involved.
  - 3. Square footage for boiler & breaching insulation removed.
  - 4. Square footage of non pipe and boiler areas removed, patched, enclosed, sealed, or painted.
  - 5. Square footage of encapsulation, sealing, patching, and painting involved.
  - 6. Total cost associated with compliance with the assigned task.
  - 7. Architectural, Electrical, HVAC, Plumbing, etc. work incidental to the Asbestos Abatement Work.
  - 8. A certified copy (in form 4312-39) to the Comptroller or Financial Officer of the New York City to the effect that the financial statement is true.
  - 9. A signed copy (in form 6506q-6) of certificate of compliance with non-discriminatory provisions of the Contract.

HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

10. Attach a copy of valid workmen compensation insurance.
  11. Valid asbestos insurance per occurrence.
  12. General liability insurance when required.
- C. Each payment request shall include a grand total for all work completed that billing period, the landfill waste manifests and a copy of waste transporter permit. The Department of Design and Construction will inspect the work performed, review the cost and approve or disapprove requests for payment.
- D. EXPOSURE LOG: With this final payment, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a listing of the names and social security numbers of all employees actively engaged in the abatement work of this Contract. This list shall include a summary showing each part of the abatement work in which the employee was engaged and the dates thereof.

**1.08 QUANTITY CALCULATIONS**

In order to determine the square footage involved for the various pipe sizes of pipe insulation that might be encountered, the following table is to be used.

<u>PIPE INSULATION SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>PIPE SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>SQUARE FOOTAGE PER LINEAR FOOT</u>
2-1/2"	1/2"	0.65
2-3/4"	3/4"	0.72
3"	1"	0.79
3-1/4"	1-1/4"	0.85
3-1/2"	1-1/2"	0.92
4"	2"	1.05
4-1/2"	2-1/2"	1.18
5"	3"	1.31
6"	3-1/4"	1.57
7"	3-1/2"	1.83
8"	4"	2.09
9"	5"	2.36
10"	6"	2.62
12"	8"	3.14
14"	10"	3.67
16"	12"	4.19
18"	14"	4.71

**1.09 METHOD OF PAYMENT**

Payment shall be made in accordance with Items A through R below. Payment shall be calculated based on the actual quantity of the item performed by the asbestos abatement contractor, times the unit price specified below. Credits may apply to certain times, as specified below.

- A. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING PIPE INSULATION:** Actual linear footage, multiplied by the square footage factor listed for the respective pipe size in Section 1.08, multiplied by the unit price in Section 1.04.

EXAMPLE: 100 lin.ft. of 1/2" pipe and 100 lin.ft. of 6" pipe, including elbows, tees. Flanges, etc.

$$100 \times 0.65 = 65 \text{ sq.ft.} \quad 65 \times \text{unit price} = \text{Payment}$$

$$100 \times 2.62 = 262 \text{ sq.ft.} \quad 262 \times \text{unit price} = \text{Payment}$$

- B. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER INSULATION:** (all types including Silicate Block and including the removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

EXAMPLE: Item B. removal and replacement of 1000 S.F. of boiler insulation (incl. Silicate block)

$$1000 \text{ S.F.} \times (1.5) \times \text{the Unit Price} = \text{Payment}$$

- C. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF TANK INSULATION:** (all types including removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

- D. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER UPTAKE, & BREACHING INSULATION:** (all types including stiffening angles and wire lath) Payment shall be made at 2.0 times the unit price per square foot.

- E. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF DUCT INSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot.

- F. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF SOFT ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (Including sprayed-on fire proofing and sound proofing) Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot of surface area. Area of irregular surfaces must be calculated and confirmed with DDC representative.

- G. ACOUSTIC PLASTER REPAIR AND/OR ENCAPSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.

HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

- H. **PATCHING OR REPAIR** of items listed in A through F will be paid at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- I. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF WATERPROOFING ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (including friable and non-friable waterproofing material from interior and exterior walls, floors, foundations, penetrations, louvers, vents and openings other than windows, doors and skylights) Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.
- J. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL WIRING INSULATION:** (including friable and non-friable wiring insulation) Payment shall be made at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- K. **PAINTING:** Payment shall be made at 0.05 times the unit price per square foot.
- L. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING PLASTER:** from ceilings and walls, including any wire lath and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.80 times the unit price per square foot.
- M. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING FLOOR TILES, CEILING TILES, TRANSITE PANELS:** (including any adhesive, glue, mastic and/or underlayment) and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.40 times the unit price per square foot. If multiple layers are discovered, each additional layer shall be paid at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot.
- N. **ADDITIONAL CLEAN UP/HOUSEKEEPING OF WORK AREA:** (excluding pre-cleaning of work area required by regulations) HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of asbestos contaminated surface. Payment shall be made at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot. When GLOVE BAG is employed to remove ACM, cost of HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of floor area up to 3 feet on each side of glove-bag shall be included in unit price and no extra payment will be made.
- O. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING ROOFING MATERIAL:** including mastic, flashing and sealant compound and provide temporary asbestos-free roof covering consisting of one layer of rolled roofing paper sealed with asphaltic roofing compound. Payment shall be made at 0.8 times the unit price per square foot. Credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price will be taken for each square foot of temporary roof covering which the Asbestos abatement contractor is directed not to install.
- P. **PICK-UP AND DISPOSAL OF GROSS DEBRIS:** (excluding any waste generated from abatement under Item A-R) at a rate of \$150 per cubic yard for asbestos contaminated waste and \$75 per cubic yard for non-asbestos contaminated waste. This cost includes all labor and material cost associated with work.

- Q. **REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING BRICK, BLOCK, MORTAR, CEMENT OR CONCRETE:** along with all surfacing materials including wire lath and/or other supporting structures and disposal as ACM waste. Payment shall be made at a rate of \$25.00 per cubic foot of material removed.
- R. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING WINDOW/DOOR CAULKING:** including friable and non-friable caulking, weather-stripping, glazing, sealants or other waterproofing materials applied to windows, doors, skylights, etc. Payment shall be made at the rate of \$400.00 per opening regardless of size or configuration. This cost includes labor, consumable materials, set-up/breakdown, removal and disposal, as required.

**Note 1: CREDIT:** For items listed in A through F, a credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price, times the respective multiplier (for each item) will be taken for each square foot of insulation which the asbestos abatement contractor is not directed to reapply.

**Note 2: MINIMUM PAYMENT:** The minimum payment per call at any individual job sites or various job sites during the same day will be eight hundred dollars (\$800.00).

**Note 3:** All payments shall be made as described in paragraph 1.09 herein.

**Note 4: WORKING HIGHER THAN 12 FEET ABOVE FLOOR LEVEL OR WORK REQUIRING COMPLEX SCAFFOLDING OR CONSTRUCTION WORK PLATFORMS:** Provisions are made in this Contract to compensate the Asbestos abatement contractor for work performed in locations that are difficult to access due to work at elevations that are significantly higher than the normal work level. The unit price for these items will be paid at 1.20 times the unit price described in Paragraphs 1.09, A through R for those portions of the work that are more than twelve (12) feet above the grade for that would be judged as the normal working level.

#### 1.10 GUARANTEE

- A. Work performed in compliance with each task shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date the completed work is accepted by the Department of Design and Construction.
- B. The Commissioner of The Department of Design and Construction will notify the Asbestos abatement contractor in writing regarding defects in work under the guarantee.

#### 1.11 OCCUPANCY OF SITE NOT EXCLUSIVE

Attention is specifically drawn to the fact that contractors, performing the work of other Contracts, may be brought upon any of the work sites of this Contract. Therefore, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall not have exclusive rights to any site of his work and shall fully cooperate and coordinate his work with the work of other contractors who may

be brought upon any site of the work of this Contract. This paragraph applies to those areas outside the regulated Work Area as defined by Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY.

1.12 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-Construction Submittals:

1. Attend a pre-construction meeting scheduled by the City of New York Department of Design and Construction. This meeting shall also be attended by a designated representative of the City of New York third party air monitoring firm, facility manager and the Construction Project Manager. At this meeting, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present three copies of the following items:
  - a. Asbestos abatement contractor's scope of work, work plan and schedule.
  - b. Asbestos project notifications, approved variances and plans to Government Agencies.
  - c. Copies of Permits, clearance and licenses if required.
  - d. Schedules: the Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to the Construction Project Manager a copy of the following schedules for approval. Once approved, schedules shall be maintained and updated as received. Asbestos abatement contractor shall post a copy of all schedules at the site:
    - (1) A construction schedule stating critical dates of the project including, but not limited to, mobilization, Work Area preparation, demolition, gross removal, fine cleaning, encapsulation, inspections, clearance monitoring, and phase of refinishing and final inspections. The schedule shall be updated biweekly, at a minimum.
    - (2) A schedule of staffing stating number of workers per shift per activity, name and number of supervisor(s) per shift, shifts per day, and total days to be worked.
    - (3) Submit all changes in schedule or staffing to the Construction Project Manager prior to implementation.
  - e. Written description of emergency procedures to be followed in case of injury or fire. This section must include evacuation procedures, source of medical assistance (name and telephone number to nearest

HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

hospital) and procedures to be used for access by medical personnel (examples: first aid squad and physician). NOTE: Necessary Emergency Procedures Shall Take Priority Over All Other Requirements of These Specifications.

- f. Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for encapsulants, sealants, firestopping foam, cleaners/disinfectants, spray adhesive and any and all potentially hazardous materials that may be employed on the project. No work involving the aforementioned will be allowed to proceed until SDS are reviewed.
- g. Worker Training and Medical Surveillance: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a list of the persons who will be employed by him /her to perform the removal work. Present evidence that workers have received proper training required by the regulations and the medical examinations required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101.
- h. Logs: Specimen copies of daily progress log, visitor's log, and disposal log.
  - (1) The Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a permanently bound log book of minimum 8-1/2" x 11" size at the entrance to the Worker and Waste Decontamination enclosure system as hereinafter specified. Log book shall contain on title page the project name, name, address and phone number of the Asbestos abatement contractor; name, address and phone number of Asbestos abatement contractor and City's third party air monitoring firm; emergency numbers including, but not limited to local Fire/Rescue Department. Log book shall contain a list of personnel approved for entry into the Work Area.
  - (2) All entries into the log shall be made in non-washable, permanent ink and such pen shall be strung to or otherwise attached to the log to prevent removal from the log-in area. Under no circumstances shall pencil entries be permitted. Any significant events occurring during the abatement project shall be entered into the log. Upon completion of the job, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit the logbook containing a day-to-day record of personnel log entries countersigned by the Construction Project Manager every day.
- i. Worker's Acknowledgments: Submit statements signed by each employee that the employee has received training in the proper handling of ACM, understands the health implications and risks

HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

involved; and understands the use and limitations of the respiratory equipment to be used.

B. During Construction Submittals:

1. Security and safety logs showing names of person entering workspace, date and time of entry and exit, record of any accident, emergency evacuation, and any other safety and/or health incident.
2. Progress logs showing the number of workers, supervisors, hours of work and tasks completed shall be submitted daily to the Construction Project Manager.
3. Floor plans indicating Asbestos abatement contractor's current work progress shall be submitted for review by the Construction Project Manager.
4. All Asbestos abatement contractors' air monitoring and inspection results.

C. Project Closeout Submittals:

Upon completion of the project and as a condition of acceptance, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present two copies of the following items, bound and indexed:

1. Lien Waivers from Asbestos abatement contractor, Sub-Asbestos abatement contractors and Suppliers,
2. Daily OSHA air monitoring results,
3. All Waste Manifests (Asbestos and Construction Debris), seals and disposal logs,
4. Field Sign-In/Sign-Out Logs for every shift,
5. Copies of all Building Department Forms and Permits,
6. A Letter of Compliance stating that all the work on this project was performed in accordance with the Specifications and all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations,
7. All Warranties as stated in the Specifications,
  - a. Fully executed disposal certificates and transportation manifest.
8. Project Record: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain a project record for all small and large asbestos projects. During the project, the

## HVAC CONTRACTOR WORK ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT

project record shall be kept on site at all times. Upon completion of the project, the project record shall be maintained by the building owner. The project record shall be submitted to DDC as part of the close out documents. The project record shall consist of:

- a. Copies of licenses of all asbestos abatement contractors involved in the project;
- b. Copies of NYCDEP and NYSDOL supervisor and handler certificates for all workers engaged in the project;
- c. Copies of all project notifications and reports filed with NYCDEP, NYSDOL and USEPA for the project, with any amendments or variances;
- d. Copies of all asbestos abatement permits, including associated approved plans and work place safety plan;
- e. A copy of the air sampling log and all air sampling results;
- f. A copy of the abatement asbestos abatement contractor's daily log book;
- g. Copies of all asbestos waste manifests;
- h. A copy of all Project Monitor's Reports (ACP-15).
- i. A copy of each ATR-1 Form completed for the asbestos project (if required).
- j. A copy of each Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout Report (ACP-20) if required.
- k. A copy of the Asbestos Project Completion Form (ACP-21).

### 1.13 PROTECTION OF FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT

Cover all furniture and equipment that cannot be removed from Work Areas. Movable furniture and equipment will be removed from Work Areas by the Asbestos abatement contractor prior to start of work. At the conclusion of the work (after final air testing), the Asbestos abatement contractor will remove all plastic covering on walls, floors, furniture, equipment and reinstall furniture and equipment. He shall remove and store all sheaths, curtains and drapes, and reinstall same following final clean up.

1.14 UTILITIES

A. General:

All temporary facilities shall be subject to the approval of the Commissioner. Prior to starting work at any site, locations and/or sketches (if required) of temporary facilities must be submitted to the Construction Project Manager for the required approval.

B. Water:

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all water needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in buildings under their jurisdiction. However, it is the responsibility of the Asbestos abatement contractor to ensure that hot water is provided for showering in the decontamination unit. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall furnish, install and maintain any needed equipment to meet these requirements at his own expense.

C. Electricity:

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all electricity needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in a building, under their jurisdiction. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for routing the electric power to the abatement Work Area.

All temporary lighting and temporary electrical service for Work Area shall be in weatherproof enclosures and be ground fault protected.

D. In leased spaces, arrangements for water supplies and electricity must be made with the landlord. However, all such arrangements must be made through and are subject to approval of the Department of Design and Construction. Utilities will be provided at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor. However, it is the Asbestos abatement contractor's (or the HVAC contractor's) responsibility to furnish and install a suitable distribution system to the Work Area. This system will be provided at no cost to the City.

1.15 FEES

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for any and all fees or charges imposed by Local, State or Federal Law, Rule and Regulation applicable to the work specified herein, including fees or charges which may be imposed subsequent to the date of the Bid opening.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 23 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  2. Dielectric fittings.
  3. Grout.
  4. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  5. Concrete bases.
  6. Supports and anchorages.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAgl, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
- E. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- F. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

### 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, non-staining, non-corrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction



loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Pressed Joints: Press fitting technology, a mechanical solder less method of pipe and tube joining using engineered press fittings with sealing element. Join pipes per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.



### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.5 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, 6 inches high unless otherwise noted and not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.7 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.



- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 23 05 00



## SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1, and in compliance with ASHRAE 90.1 2007
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multi-speed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.



- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

#### 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation. To meet NEMA MG1 Provide AEGIS™ Shaft Grounding Ring Kit on inverter duty and/or NEMA Premium® Efficient motors with class F, G or H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

#### 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. ECM motors
  - 2. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 3. Split phase.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: ECM or Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 05 13



## SECTION 23 05 19 - METERS AND GAGES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - 2. Thermowells.
  - 3. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - 4. Gage attachments.
  - 5. Pete's Plug

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product certificates.
- D. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 LEED related scope of work

- A. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
- B. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
- C. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
- D. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
  - 2. Ernst Flow Industries.
  - 3. Marsh Bellofram.
  - 4. Terrice, H. O. Co.
  - 5. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 6. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F and deg C.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle , with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch , with ASME B1.1 screw threads.



- G. Stem: 0.25 in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
  - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
  - 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CuNi.
  - 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Stainless Steel
  - 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
  - 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
  - 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
  - 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ashcroft Inc.
    - b. Ernst Flow Industries.
    - c. Marsh Bellofram.
    - d. Terrice, H. O. Co.
    - e. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  - 3. Case: Liquid-filled, Sealed; cast aluminum; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  - 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  - 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
  - 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 9. Window: Glass.
  - 10. Ring: Stainless steel.
  - 11. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.



2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass ball, Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.5 PETE'S PLUG

- A. Pete's Plug II consisting of two quick closing valves, brass body and nordel core construction suitable for 500 psig at 275°F, sizes 1/4", 3/8" and 1/2" complete with protective cap and cap retaining strap as manufactured by Peterson Products Company.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- B. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- C. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- D. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- E. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- H. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hot water converter.
- I. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Steam inlet at steam-to-hot water converter
  - 2. Suction and discharge of each pump.
- J. Install Pete's Plug at following locations
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of air handling unit coils
  - 2. Tie-in point to central chilled water supply and return piping
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of air handling unit coils

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

END OF SECTION 23 05 19

SECTION 23 05 23 - VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves
2. Bronze ball valves
3. Bronze swing check valves
4. Iron swing check valves
5. Bronze globe valves
6. Iron globe valves

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

C. LEED related scope of work

1. 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:



1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Brass
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass
  - j. Port: Full.

2.3 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 250, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Powell Valves.



2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 CWP Rating: 500 psig
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Solid wedge.
- g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.4 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.5 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 250, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:



- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 500 psig
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

**B. Class 250, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - b. Crispin Valve.
  - c. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 CWP Rating: 400 psig
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126 gray iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Seat: Bronze.

**2.6 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES**

**A. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
  - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

**2.7 IRON GLOBE VALVES**

**A. Class 250, Iron Globe Valves:**



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.8 HIGH PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. Class 300, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Bray Controls; a division of Bray International.
  - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corp.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Flowseal.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - g. Hammond Valve.
  - h. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
  - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
  - b. CWP Rating: 720 psig at 100 deg F
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
  - f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
  - g. Disc: Carbon steel.
  - h. Service: Bidirectional.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install swing check valves for proper direction of flow and in horizontal position with hinge pin level.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, valves.
  - 2. Throttling Service: Globe or ball valves.
  - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

### 3.5 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 3 and Smaller:



1. Bronze and Brass Valves: Valves up to NPS 1 may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze or nonmetallic disc.
3. Ball Valves: One or Two piece, full port, brass with bronze trim.
4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze or nonmetallic disc.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze or nonmetallic disc.

### 3.6 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

#### A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with brass trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, RS.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.

#### B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Shall be flanged ends.
2. High-Performance Butterfly Valves: Class 300
3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 25.
4. Iron Gate Valves: Class 250, OS&Y.
5. Iron Globe Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 : Class 250

END OF SECTION 23 05 23



**SECTION 23 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

**A. Section Includes:**

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Equipment supports.

**1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**A. Structural Performance:** Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:** For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:** Include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.**

**1.4 LEED related scope of work**

- A. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings**
- B. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)**
- C. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements**
- D. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements**

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications:** Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications:** Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.



PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 INSULATION COUPLINGS

- A. Klo-Shure one-piece, snap lock insulation coupling, eliminate insulation compression, meets 25/50 flame spread / smoke developed index for strut mounted and clevis hangers as appropriate.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used. Confirm acceptance with contracting officer and structural engineer.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- C. Structural metal shapes attached to structure.



- D. Fastener systems type, anchors and insert shall be approved by project prior to installation.
- 2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS
- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.
- 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
    - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and nongaseous.
    - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger



and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:

- 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
  - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
  - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
  - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
- 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.



2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1 inches.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hanger and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  4. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.



- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
  8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29



## SECTION 23 05 48 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Isolation pads.
  2. Restrained spring isolators.
  3. Elastomeric hangers.
  4. Spring hangers.
  5. Rubber expansion Joints
  6. Flexible hoses

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
1. Basic Wind Speed: As determined by project structural engineer
  2. Building Classification Category: As determined by project structural engineer
  3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. (48.8 kg/sq. m) multiplied by the maximum area of the HVAC component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation calculations and details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the licensed professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:



1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
  2. Kinetics Noise Control.
  3. Mason Industries.
  4. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Pads (MWP): Arranged in multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a non-slip pattern sandwiching stainless steel shim plates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment. Minimum 5/16 inch thick pads, 12.5% strain, bridge bearing quality with durometer (Shore A scale ) of 50.
1. Resilient Material: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
  2. If the isolator is bolted to the structure, a neoprene vibration isolation washer and sleeve (Uniroyal Type 620/660, or as approved) shall be installed under the bolt head between the steel washer and the base plate.
- C. Neoprene Mounts (ND): Neoprene mountings shall have a minimum static deflection of 0.35"(9mm). All metal surfaces shall be neoprene covered and have friction pads both top and bottom. Bolt holes shall be provided on the bottom and a tapped hole and cap screw on top. Steel rails shall be used above the mountings under equipment such as small vent sets to compensate for the overhang. Mountings shall be type ND or rails type DNR as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc.
- D. Split Seals(SS) Split seals shall consist of pipe halves with minimum 3/4"(20mm) thick neoprene sponge cemented to the inner faces. The seal shall be tightened around the pipe to eliminate clearance between the inner sponge face and the piping. Concrete may be packed around the seal to make it integral with the floor, wall or ceiling if the seal is not in place prior to the construction of the building member. Seals shall project a minimum of 1"(25mm) past either face of the wall. Where temperatures exceed 240°F (115°C), 10 lb. density fiberglass may be used in lieu of the sponge. Seals shall be Type SWS as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc
- E. Spring Isolators (SI): Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
  2. Restraint: Seismic stops as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
- F. Elastomeric Hangers (NH): Double-deflection type, fitted with molded, oil-resistant elastomeric isolator elements bonded to steel housings with threaded connections for hanger rods. Color-code or otherwise identify to indicate capacity range.
1. The diameter of the clear hole in the hanger box shall be at least 3/4 inch larger than the diameter of the hanger rod and permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30 degree arc. When installed, the hanger box shall be allowed to rotate through a full 360 degrees



- without encountering any obstructions. Neoprene shall be bridge-bearing quality with a maximum durometer (Shore A scale) of 50.
2. Neoprene shall be bridge-bearing quality with a maximum durometer (Shore A scale) of 50.
  3. Unless otherwise specified, the static deflection of DDNH hangers shall be 0.25 inches with a strain not exceeding 12.5%.
- G. Spring Hangers (SPNH): Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  7. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.
- H. Flexible Stainless Steel Hoses (FSS)
1. Flexible stainless steel hose shall have stainless steel braid and carbon steel fittings. Sizes 3" and larger shall be flanged. Smaller sizes may have male nipples. Minimum lengths shall be as tabulated:
  2. Flanged
    - a. (3", 4") x12"
  3. Male Nipples
    - a. (1/2, 3/4", 1", 1-1/4", 1-1/2" and 2") x12"
    - b. 2-1/2" x18"
  4. At equipment, hoses shall be installed on the equipment side of the shut-off valves horizontal and parallel to the equipment shafts wherever possible. Hoses shall be type FFL or type MN as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc.
  5. At acoustic joint with three resilient hangers quiet either side of acoustic joint.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 VIBRATION-CONTROL INSTALLATION

##### A. General

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
2. Level vibration isolated equipment under rated design operating conditions while maintaining the isolation criteria. Isolators shall be plumb and aligned to preclude misalignment or undesired contact during operation

##### B. Equipment Restraints:



1. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
- C. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- D. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- E. Drilled-in Anchors:
  1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid pre-stressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
  2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
  3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
  4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
  5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform inspections.
- B. Inspections:
  1. After the entire installation is complete, and under full operational load, the isolators shall be adjusted so that the load is transferred from the block to the isolators. Ensure all debris from beneath the equipment the equipment and verify there are no short circuits of the isolation. The equipment shall be free in all directions.
  2. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
  3. Measure isolator deflection.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.
- C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.
- D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

### 3.4 HVAC VIBRATION-CONTROL DEVICE SCHEDULE

- A. Supported or Suspended Equipment



Item / Equipment	Location & Mounting	Isolation Type	Min. Static Deflection
AC units AC-1	Mezz. mechanical room, floor mounted	SI	1 inch
AC Units AC-2, 3	Ceiling Hung	SPNH	1 inch
Fans RF-1	Mezz. mechanical room, floor mounted	SPNH	1 inch
Outside Air Fan OAF-1	Ceiling Hung	SPNH	1 inch
Water Cooled Condensing Unit ACC-1	Mezz mechanical room, floor mounted	MWP	1 inch
Piping (Refrigerant)	Refrigerant	ND	0.25 inch

END OF SECTION 23 05 48

SECTION 23 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.

1.2 SUBMITTAL

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. LEED related scope of work

1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Not Acceptable.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.



## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Red
- C. Background Color: White
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets
- H. Adhesive: Not Acceptable.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing. Do not use pipe labels or plastic tapes for bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F
- C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 3/4 inches high.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed in basement and equipment spaces and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.



2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
5. Spaced at maximum intervals of 15 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

Service	Background Color	Letter Color	Designation
Heating HWS	Yellow	Black	HWS
Heating HWR	Yellow	Black	HWR
Condenser Water Supply	Green	White	CWS
Condenser Water Return	Green	White	CWR
Non-Potable Water	Green	White	Non-Potable

END OF SECTION 23 05 53



SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING (TAB) OF MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section specifies administrative and procedure requirements regarding mechanical work. Additional requirements are specified in various sections of Division 23 and also may be required during the execution of work due to project conditions.
- B. Work Included: The work of this section shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1 Perform balancing of air and water distribution/circulating systems, and adjustment of terminal devices such as radiators, fan coil unity, air outlets etc. for HVAC systems.
  - 2 Perform balancing of air handlers, exhaust fans, pumps, heat exchangers, coils and related equipment.
  - 3 Installing Contractor shall furnish non-testing, adjusting and balancing labor, including standby electrician, materials, instruments and power required for testing.
  - 4 Test equipment and systems which normally operate during certain seasons of the year during the appropriate season. Perform tests on individual equipment, systems and their controls. Whenever the equipment or system under test is interrelated and depends upon the operation of other equipment, systems and controls for proper performance, the latter shall be operated simultaneously with the equipment or system being tested.
  - 5 Completely balance fans and duct systems by the adjustment of sheaves, dampers, registers and other volume and diverting control devices, to obtain the air quantities indicated on the design drawings. The Installing Contractor shall replace sheaves if required to meet design conditions.
  - 6 Completely balance pumps and piping systems by the adjustment of plug cocks, globe valves or other control devices to obtain flow quantities indicated on the design drawings. Installing Contractor shall replace or have pump manufacturer machine impeller the proper diameter to produce field design conditions.
  - 7 Perform balancing of air distribution systems and adjusting of terminal devices, including:
    - a. Adjust and set dampers, deflecting vanes, discharge vanes and accessories to achieve proper air distribution and patterns in the supply and exhaust air systems including terminal devices.
    - b. Adjust and set belt driven fans to achieve design total delivered air quantities.
    - c. Perform air distribution duct systems leakage tests.



- 8 Perform balancing of hydronic systems, adjust and set balancing valves and other flow devices to achieve proper water distribution in the circulating water systems, and record fluid flow at each piece of equipment.
  - 9 Inspect the function and verify the operation of temperature control devices associated with the equipment and systems being balanced. Note deviations from specification requirements.
  - 10 Check installation of vibration isolators and test for design ratings.
  - 11 Prepare and submit reports and other data as specified.
  - 12 Provide instruments required for testing, adjusting and balancing operations. Retain possession of instruments and remove from site at completion of services.
  - 13 Refer to other sections of Division 23 for related requirements.
- C. Related Work Specified Elsewhere

- 1 Section 230500 – Common Work Results for HVAC

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

### A. Terminology

- 1 The organization performing the services described in this section will also be referred to as "Balancing Contractor".
- 2 The words "Installing Contractor" used in this section refer to the Contractors or Subcontractors responsible for the furnishing and installation of the work specified in other sections of Division 23.

## 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

### A. LEED related scope of work

1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The organization which performs the service shall be independent and be a current member in good standing, certified to perform services required for the project, of Associated Air Balance Council (AABC).
- B. Submit proof of having balanced and tested at least three projects of similar size and scope.
- C. Employment of a Testing, Adjusting and Balancing (TAB) Organization: Engage a qualified independent organization to perform the specified services; pay costs for these



services. Employment of the organization shall in no way relieve Contractor's obligation to perform Work of the Contract.

- D. The work performed by Balancing Contractor shall be under the direct supervision of a Licensed Professional Engineer, a full-time employee of Balancing Contractor. Technicians performing the work must be properly trained, experienced and full-time employees of Balancing Contractor.
- E. Within 30 days after award of contract, submit to Commissioner the name of the organization proposed to perform the services. Should separate firms perform services for air and hydronic portions, specify in writing the firm which will have managerial responsibilities for coordination of entire testing and balancing process.
- F. Comply with applicable procedures and standards of the certification sponsoring association; either:
  - 1 "National Standards for Total Systems Balance", latest edition, by AABC.
  - 2 Calibration and maintenance of instruments shall be in accordance with requirements of the standards. Instruments used in the performance of the Work must have been calibrated within 6 months preceding the date of usage. Calibration histories for each instrument shall be made available for examination.
  - 3 Accuracy of measurements shall comply with requirements of the standards.
- G. Air Distribution Duct Leakage Test Verification
  - 1 Installing Contractor shall perform leakage tests on duct systems. Verify and record the results of each test on standard AABC test forms and submit copies of same to the Commissioner for review.
  - 2 Mark tested sections of ductwork with the date and initials of the balancing technician. Perform tests before duct sections are concealed and before systems are balanced.
  - 3 Verify and record the results of leakage tests, both successful and unsuccessful.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit the following in accordance with the requirements specified under Submittals in Section 230500.
  - 1 Submit copies of documentation to confirm compliance with Quality Assurance provisions:
    - a. Organization supervisor and personnel training and qualifications.
    - b. Specimen copy of each of the report forms proposed for use.
  - 2 At least 15 days prior to starting field work, submit copies of a complete list of instruments proposed to be used, organized in appropriate categories, with data sheets for each, showing:
    - a. Manufacturer and model number.



- b. Description and use when needed to further identify the instrument.
  - c. Size or capacity range.
  - d. Latest calibration date.
- 3 Commissioner will review submittals for compliance with Contract Documents, and will return one set marked to indicate:
- a. Discrepancies noted between data shown and Contract Documents.
  - b. Additional, or more accurate, instruments required.
  - c. Requests for recalibration of specific instruments.
- 4 Submit copies of written reports tri-monthly, during the course of construction, of potential or developing problems and delays relating to the work being provided where such problems may adversely affect the proper balancing of the equipment or systems. The last report shall be no later than 1 week before TAB work is to begin.
- 5 Submit written reports for review upon completion of each major phase of balancing work.
- 6 Submit reports of delayed testing promptly after execution of those services.
- 7 Form of Final Reports
- a. Each final reporting form must bear the signature of the person who recorded data and the seal and signature of the TAB supervisor of the reporting organization.
  - b. TAB services, the firm having managerial responsibility shall make the submittals.
  - c. Identify instruments used, and last date of calibration of each.
  - d. Air-Balance Report for LEED Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.2, "Air Balancing."

#### 1.6 JOB CONDITIONS

##### A. Procedures

- 1 Report and review the requirements of the work with Commissioner before starting any field balancing work.
- 2 Periodically visit the site, a total of three visits as schedule by project contracting officer, during installation of the work. Should any potential or developing problems be discovered relating to materials, equipment or methods being used in the work, and where such problems may adversely affect the testing and adjusting work, immediately report these findings in writing to the Commissioner with recommendations for correction.

##### B. TAB Preparations



- 1 Before the TAB Contractor performs the final testing, adjusting and balancing work, the Installing Contractor shall verify the following:
  - a. Ductwork systems are completely and satisfactorily installed and leak tested.
  - b. Piping systems are completely and satisfactorily installed and leak tested.
  - c. Equipment and apparatus fulfill the requirements of the Specifications and that equipment has been properly installed and checked for proper operating characteristics such as proper rotation and running amperage of fan and pump motors to prevent damage to equipment by overload.
  - d. Systems have been completely installed and operating and the automatic temperature controls have had their final adjustments.
  - e. New, clean filters have been installed in required systems.
  - f. Water systems have been completely filled and vented, and strainers cleaned proper to balancing, and that expansion tanks are at prior water level and makeup water valves are operating properly.

C. Coordination and Cooperation

- 1 Installing Contractors responsible for Work under Division 23 shall provide services outlined and described in other related Division 23 sections.
- 2 Enlist the aid of Installing Contractors or equipment suppliers, at no cost to Commissioner whenever such aid is necessary for the timely and proper performance of the testing and balancing work.
- 3 Cooperate with Installing Contractors to effect smooth coordination of the balancing work with the project schedule.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a National Certification Guarantee from the AABC as applicable for the work performed under this contract.
- B. After completion of the work specified under this Section, provide an extended warranty encompassing one full heating season and one full cooling season, during which time any balancing device which had been adjusted earlier as part of this work shall be rechecked and reset when such additional work is deemed necessary by the Commissioner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 AIR SYSTEM BALANCING AND TESTING

- A. Measure air quantities in main ducts by pitot tube and manometer traverse of the entire cross sectional area of the duct. Calibrate manometer to read 2 significant figures in



velocity pressure ranges. Where necessary for proper balancing, make similar measurements in branch ducts. Seal openings in ducts for pitot tube insertion with approved plugs. Determine outlet and inlet air quantities in accordance with outlet and inlet manufacturer's recommendations.

- 1 A main duct is defined as either of the following:
  - a. A duct serving 2 or more branch ducts.
  - b. A duct emanating from a fan discharge or plenum and terminating at one or more outlets.
- 2 The intent of this operation is to measure by traverse the total air quantity supplied by the fan and to verify the distribution of air to zones.
- B. Submit data in support of supply fan deliveries by the following 4 methods:
  - 1 By summation of the air quantity readings at outlets.
  - 2 By duct traverse of main supply ducts.
  - 3 By a rotating vane traverse across a filter or coil bank.
  - 4 By plotting RPM and static pressure readings on the fan curve. Air density corrections must be indicated.
- C. For return air and exhaust fans, summation and duct traversing shall be sufficient.
- D. Inspect fan scrolls and remove objects or debris. Inspect coils and remove debris or obstructions. Verify that fire dampers are open.
- E. The supply air systems shall be completely balanced prior to the final balancing of the water systems.
- F. Upon completion of air and water balancing, duct dampers, plug valves and other throttling devices shall be marked in the final adjusted position.
- G. Volume adjusters may be used to balance air quantities at outlets and inlets, providing final adjustments do not produce objectionable drafts or sound levels. Air quantity adjustments by outlet deflectors will not be permitted.
- H. For systems variable frequency drive, perform balancing with the system operating at design speed. Confirm if variable frequency drive is programmed to limit maximum fan rpm to fan class rpm.
- I. For systems handling outdoor air, balance system at the normal minimum outside air condition.
- J. Adjust individual outlets under procedures recommended by the manufacturers of the outlets, or as otherwise approved by Commissioner. Set outlets for the air pattern required. Adjust and set main supply air dampers for the design air quantities indicated. Make changes in air patterns or settings necessary to achieve correct air balance and to minimize drafts. Mechanical Contractor shall provide blanking plates as required.



- K. Measured air quantities shall agree with design air quantities within limits acceptable to the Commissioner. The measurements recorded in the Balancing Report for the total CFM of branches, and the grand total shall agree with the measured air volume of the fan, including an air quantity not greater than the specified maximum leakage.
- L. Before balancing, building shall be completely enclosed with doors, windows and louvers installed and systems completed and in operating condition. Schedule balancing completion at least one week prior to the completion of the building.
- M. Obtain copies of fan pressure-volume-power noise-rating-efficiency characteristics at rated speed. Prepare line drawings of systems with identifying designations for each section of the distribution system and outlets.
- N. Set fans at rated speeds for design volumes and pressures. Pressure for supply fans shall include design static pressure across dirty filter. Verify that coils are in factory clean condition. Confirm electrical ratings at these conditions. Simultaneously operate supply and exhaust systems serving common areas on 100 percent outside air or full recirculation throughout balancing period.
- O. For round duct over 6 inches (150 mm) diameter make a 10 point pitot tube traverse with 2 sampling points in each of 5 equal annular areas of duct cross-section. For rectangular ducts, take readings at the center point of each rectangle with not less than 16 and a maximum of 64 readings. Center distances between rectangular areas shall be 6 inches (150 mm) maximum. Take readings as far down-stream of fittings as is practicable up to an equivalent of 7 duct diameters.
- P. Measure fan and motor speeds with a direct reading or stroboscopic tachometer. Measure amperage and voltage with direct connected or clamp-on instruments.
- Q. Measure flow at air outlets with an Anemotherm, Shortridge Hood, Velometer, or approved equal instrument as per manufacturer's instructions.
- R. Determine actual volume delivery of fans by measuring both fan performance and air flow.
- 1. Measure and record fan performance data on Fan Data Sheet. Plot operating point on fan pressure-volume curve for both design clean and dirty filter conditions. Indicate impact of increased air flow for clean filter condition based on field tests. Plot bhp on power curve.
- 2. Measure total system flow in main supply duct by means of pitot tube traverse.
- 3. If volumes determined by each method are within 5 percent of one another, continue test. If in excess of 5 percent, notify Commissioner and have manufacturer check and correct fan; then repeat pitot tube traverse.
- 4. If measured volumes are within 5 percent of one another but at other than design volume, readjust fan speed for design volume delivery.
- S. After adjusting fans, proceed with balancing of main interior systems. Measure and adjust outside air quantities. Adjust maximum and minimum air volumes through outdoor, return and exhaust air combination for both summer and winter cycles in conjunction with automatic controls linkage stops on damper motors. Record and submit



outside, return and mixed air temperatures for both cycles after final adjustments.

- T. When requested, test outlets and terminal units for performance by means of smoke, air velocity pattern, air temperature pattern and noise level.
- U. Test fire and smoke dampers for ease of operation by removing fusible link. After test, replace fusible link and reset damper.
- V. Submit original design drawings including shop drawing changes of duct systems indicating terminal outlets identified by number. Data sheets shall list outlets denoted by the same numbers, including the outlet's size, "K" factor, location, CFM and jet velocity.

### 3.2 AIR BALANCING DATA

- A. Balance systems with fan pressure 0 inches to 6 inches (0-150 mm) W.C. to the following tolerances:
  - 1 Fans: Design volume (with clean filters) plus 5 percent minus 0 percent
  - 2 Terminals: Design volume plus 5 percent minus 0 percent
  - 3 Leakage Class: 6
- B. Test Data: Submit to the Commissioner the following test data, arrange by system and area served:
  - 1 Fan or Unit Data
    - a. Manufacturer, model, and serial number
    - b. CFM, design (dirty filter)
    - c. CFM, actual (clean filter)
    - d. CFM, design (outdoor, return, exhaust)
    - e. CFM, actual (outdoor, return, exhaust)
    - f. RPM, design
    - g. RPM, actual
    - h. Inlet static pressure (clean filter)
    - i. Discharge static pressure
    - j. Total static pressure
    - k. External static pressure
    - l. Filter pressure drop
    - m. Pressure drop across each unit component
    - n. Heat transfer coil pressure drop



- o. Fan curves showing variation of CFM with static pressure at operating RPM and motor loading

2 Motor Data (Rated and Actual)

- a. Manufacturer, model, and serial number
- b. Horsepower. Actual BHP, MHP
- c. Phase
- d. Frequency
- e. NEMA code letter
- f. Rated volts
- g. Actual volts
- h. Rated amperes
- i. Actual amperes
- j. Locked rotor amperes
- k. Starter Data
- l. Manufacturer and model number
- m. Heater size/phase
- n. Line voltage
- o. Ampere rating
- p. Control voltage
- q. Frequency

3 Air Terminal Data

- a. Sketch showing air outlet and inlet locations; assign numbers to terminals.
- b. Air terminal manufacturer and model numbers.
- c. Size
- d. Actual free area
- e. Manufacturer's test factor
- f. Measured velocity
- g. CFM, design



- h. CFM, actual
- i. CFM, percentage above or below design

4 Outdoor and Exhaust Air Data

- a. Size of opening
- b. Actual free area
- c. Manufacturer's test factor
- d. Measured velocity
- e. Outdoor air temperature
- f. CFM, design (outdoor, exhaust)
- g. CFM, actual (outdoor, exhaust)
- h. Exhaust air temperature

5 Duct Velocity Traverse Data

- a. Fan or Unit No.
  - a. Traverse location.
  - b. Design and actual CFM.
  - c. Duct dimensions and area.
  - d. Design and actual average velocity.
  - e. Duct static pressure at test holes, in w.g.
  - f. Traverse measurements in FPM (show grid pattern).

3.3 WATER SYSTEM BALANCING AND TESTING

- A. Schedule balancing for completion at least one week prior to the completion of the building.
- B. Obtain copies of approved shop drawings indicating pump GPM/horsepower/head/NPSH/efficiency characteristics at rated speed for pumps.
- C. Obtain copies of approved shop drawings indicating GPM or lbs./hr. vs. pressure drop curves for equipment.
- D. Check for proper liquid level and air pressure in diaphragm or compression tanks.
- E. Check for proper installation of air vents at high points, drains at low points and verify operation.
- F. Before balancing, check rotation of pumps. Check alignment of pump and motor shafts.
- G. Verify chemical and/or cleaning of systems, strainers and traps.



- H. Adjust pump, piping and balancing bypass valves for rated flow and pressure drop with coils, secondary heat exchangers, etc.
- I. Open line valves to full open position, close coil bypass stop valves (if installed) and set control valves to full flow. Automatic 3-way valves shall have bypass port closed.
- J. For each pump, test and record pump shutoff head and pump wide open head. Compare with submitted pump curve. If the shutoff head differs from that published, draw a new curve parallel to the published curve. Notify the Commissioner before proceeding. If pump operating curve does not precisely intercept the installed system design curve at full load GPM, inform the Installing Contractor to replace or machine the impeller to produce the required results. The Installing Contractor shall be required to change pump impellers as required to meet actual installed operating head conditions.
- K. Run pump at rated speed and adjust to obtain design GPM and pressure drop. Measure pressure drop across pump using differential pressure gauge.
- L. Measure pump speed with a direct reading or stroboscopic tachometer. Measure amperage and voltage with direct connected or clamp-on instruments. Compare with manufacturer's published data.
- M. Adjust flow through chillers, boilers, condensers and cooling towers to design GPM and pressure drop using suitable instrumentation, taps and submitted manufacturer's data.
- N. Adjust flow to each hydronic coil or terminal unit, etc. using suitable instrumentation or a differential pressure gauge as required.
- O. Balance bypass valves on coils and systems (if installed).
- P. Recheck pump pressure drop and GPM using pump curves.
- Q. Venturies and calibrated orifices with portable or permanent type flow meters, where specified, shall be used to balance water flow. Where the above equipment is not specified, obtain water balance by measurement of pressure differential across the various coils or elements. Balancing by measurement of temperature differential will be allowed only where specifically approved by the Commissioner. Perform balancing by temperature differential only after air balance is complete. Set automatic control valves for full flow conditions during balancing procedure.
- R. Pump flow capacities shall be determined by venturies, orifices where available, and differential pressure measurements. Adjust water circuits by use of balancing valves, cocks, and fittings. Mark balancing valves, cocks, and fittings permanently after balance is complete.
- S. Upon completion of the water balance, reconcile the total heat transfer through coils by recoiling the entering and leaving water temperatures and the entering and leaving air dry bulb and wet bulb temperatures.
- T. Upon completion of balancing adjust differential bypasses and three-way valve bypasses for the same pressure drop for full bypass as on full flow.
- U. Installing contractor shall provide antifreeze solution for piping to be tested in winter.



3.4 WATER BALANCING DATA

- A. Coordinate balancing schedule with two week notice with base building.
- B. Balance system to the following tolerances:
  - 1 Condenser Water: Plus 5 percent, -0 percent
  - 2 Heating Hot Water: Plus 5 percent, -0 percent
- C. Test Data: Submit to the Commissioner and include in the Instruction Manual the following test data, arrange by system:
  - 1 Fluid Data
    - a. Fluid Type
    - b. GPM, design
    - c. GPM, actual
    - d. Pressure drop, design
    - e. Pressure Drop, actual
    - f. Temperature, entering
    - g. Temperature, leaving

END OF SECTION 23 05 93



SECTION 23 07 00 - HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:
  - a. Flexible elastomeric.
  - b. Mineral fiber.
2. Fire-rated insulation systems.
3. Insulating cements.
4. Adhesives.
5. Mastics.
6. Sealants.
7. Factory-applied jackets.
8. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
9. Field-applied jackets.
10. Tapes.
11. Securements.
12. Corner angles.

B. Related Sections:

1. LEED related scope of work
  - a. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - b. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - c. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - d. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements
2. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittal: Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.



5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
8. Detail field application for each equipment type.

D. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following
    - a. Cell-U-Foam Corporation; Ultra-CUF.
    - b. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas Super K.
  2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
  3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.



4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
  5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
  6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
  7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I, II with factory-applied vinyl jacket and III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
    - e. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ and with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ and with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
    - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
    - f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
    - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000 Pipe Insulation.



- d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
- e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

- 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- 3. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
  - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
  - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
  - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
  - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by a NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
  - b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
  - c. Nelson Firestop Products; Nelson FSB Flameshield Blanket.
  - d. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
  - e. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
  - f. Unifrax Corporation; FyreWrap.
  - g. Vesuvius; PYROSCAT FP FASTR Duct Wrap.

## 2.3 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Insulco, Division of MFS, Inc.; SmoothKote.



- b. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; PK No. 127, and Quik-Cote.
- c. Rock Wool Manufacturing Company; Delta One Shot.

#### 2.4 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aeroseal.
    - b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. RBX Corporation; Rubatex Contact Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
    - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
    - c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
    - d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
    - e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following



- a. Dow Chemical Company (The); 739, Dow Silicone.
  - b. Johns-Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
  - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
  - d. Speedline Corporation; Speedline Vinyl Adhesive.
2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.5 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

- a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
- b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
- c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
- d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.
- e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
- f. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:

- a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-10.
- b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 35-00.
- c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-05/15.
- d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 550.
- e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
- f. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.



## 2.6 SEALANTS

### A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
  - f. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
2. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-70.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45/30-46.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
6. Color: White or gray.
7. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
  - b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
  - c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
  - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  - e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:



- a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
  5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. inch, in a Leno weave, for duct, equipment, and pipe.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

## 2.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto PVC Corporation; LoSmoke.



- d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
  2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  3. Color: White.
  4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
  5. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.
- D. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005, Temper H-14.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    - b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Surefit.
    - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
  2. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
  3. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  4. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil- thick Polysurlyn.
  5. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 2.5-mil- thick Polysurlyn.
  6. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - a. Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - b. Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - c. Tee covers.
    - d. Flange and union covers.
    - e. End caps.
    - f. Beveled collars.
    - g. Valve covers.
    - h. Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Polyguard; Alumaguard 60.

## 2.10 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.



1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
- b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
- c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
- d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.

3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.

4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 2 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
- b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
- c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
- d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.

3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.

4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 2 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.

7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
- b. Compac Corp.; 120.
- c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 488 AWF.
- d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.

3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.

4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.

5. Elongation: 5 percent.

6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.11 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wing or closed seal.



1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Products; Bands.
- b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
- c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
- 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.

d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

2. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 1) GEMCO.
- 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy or 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. C & F Wire.
- b. Childers Products.
- c. PABCO Metals Corporation.
- d. RPR Products, Inc.

## 2.12 CORNER ANGLES

A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.



4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches on center.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation,



install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.

3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

**B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations:** Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

**C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations:** Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

**D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated):** Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

**E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations:** Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

**F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:**

1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION INSTALLATION

**A. Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels:** Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.



4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
    - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
    - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
    - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
    - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
  6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
  7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
  8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
  9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
  10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.**
1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:**
1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch-diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
  2. Fabricate boxes from aluminum at least 0.040 inch thick.



3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.



- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.
- E. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- F. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- G. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.



2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

#### A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

#### B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

#### C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

#### D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.



- E. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
  6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- F. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.



1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
  - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

#### A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.



4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Firestops and Smoke-seals"

### 3.9 FINISHES

- A. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
  1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
    - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Commissioner. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:



1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Commissioner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to two location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
2. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Commissioner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to two location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.
3. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Commissioner, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, three locations of threaded strainers, three locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. All insulation R-value and thickness shall comply with performance requirements of latest edition of Energy Conservation Code of NYC. The following minimum requirements are based on ASHRAE 90.1 2007.

1. All indoor supply and return ducts shall be insulated with minimum R-value = 3.5 (h.ft<sup>2</sup>°F) / Btu
2. All outdoor supply and return ducts shall be insulated with minimum R-value = 6.0 (h.ft<sup>2</sup>°F) / Btu

B. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air,
2. Indoor, exposed outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in non-conditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in non-conditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

C. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.



### 3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. All insulation thickness shall comply with performance requirements of latest edition of Energy Conservation Code of NYC. Insulation type shall be as scheduled below:
1. Concealed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket.
  2. Concealed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket.
  3. Concealed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket.
  4. Concealed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber blanket.
  5. Exposed, Supply-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation in unconditioned space: Mineral-fiber board.
  6. Exposed, Return-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation in unconditioned space: Mineral-fiber board.
  7. Exposed, Outdoor-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board.
  8. Exposed, Exhaust-Air Duct and Plenum Insulation: Mineral-fiber board.

### 3.13 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment in paragraphs below that is not factory insulated.
- C. Heat-Exchanger: (Water-to-Water for Heating Service) Insulation: Mineral-fiber pipe and tank, 2 inches thick.
- D. Dual-service heating and cooling pump insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Cellular Glass: 3 inches thick.
  2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches, thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Heating-Hot-Water Pump Insulation: Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Heating-Hot-Water Expansion/Compression Tank Insulation and air separator insulation shall be one of following:
1. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches thick.
  2. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-1/2 inch thick.
  3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1-1/2 inch thick.

### 3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. All insulation R-value and thickness shall comply with performance requirements of latest edition of NYC Energy Conservation Code. The following minimum requirements are based on ASHRAE 90.1 2007.

Minimum Piping Insulation Thickness



Fluid Operating Temp Range	Conductivity Btu-in/(h.ft <sup>2</sup> .°F)	Mean Rating Temp	Nominal Pipe Size			
			<1	1 to <1.5	1.5 to <4	4 to <8
<b>Heating Systems ( Steam, Steam Condensate and Hot Water)</b>						
201-250		150	1.5	1.5	2	2
141-200		125	1	1	1.5	1.5
105-140		100	0.5	0.5	1	1
<b>Cooling Systems (Chilled Water, Brine, and Refrigerant)</b>						
40-60	0.22-0.28	100	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0
<40	0.22-0.28	100	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0

- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

### 3.15 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condenser Water and Brine, above 40 Deg F: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I
- B. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and below: Insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I

### 3.16 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
1. None.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
1. None.
- D. Equipment, Concealed:
1. None.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches:
1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.016 inch
- F. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches:
1. Aluminum, 1-1/4-Inch- Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch thick.



G. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

H. Piping, Exposed:

1. None.

END OF SECTION 23 07 00



**SECTION 23 08 00 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the project:
  - 1. The Contract Drawings
  - 2. The Specifications
  - 3. The General Conditions
  - 4. The Addendum
  - 5. The City of New York Standard Construction Contract.
- B. The OPR and BOD documentation are included by reference for information only.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

**1.3 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Commissioning: Commissioning is a systematic process of verifying that all building systems, including the mechanical and electrical systems, have been installed in the prescribed manner, are functionally checked and capable of being operated and maintained to perform with the design intent and have documentation to support proper installation and operation. The Commissioning Agent (CxA) shall provide the City of New York with an unbiased, objective view of the system's installation, operation and performance. This process does not eliminate or reduce the responsibility of each Contractor to provide a complete design or installing subcontractors to provide a finished product. Commissioning is intended to enhance the quality of each system installation, startup and transfer to beneficial use by the City of New York.
- B. Commissioning during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following specific objectives, according to the Contract Documents:
  - 1. Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that they receive adequate operational checkout by installing subcontractors.
  - 2. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems as per the written procedures.
  - 3. Verify that Operation & Maintenance documentation is complete and transferred to City of New York.
  - 4. Verify that proper orientation program has been implemented for the City of New York's operating personnel.
  - 5. Verify a contract is in place for a post occupancy review with O&M staff within 10 months after Substantial Completion.



- C. The Commissioning process shall be a team effort and encompass, as well as coordinate, the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, system installation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing, balancing and verification and performance checkouts.
- D. The CxA will work closely with the construction team, cooperating on and coordinating all Cx activities with the Commissioner, Contractor, subcontractors, manufacturers and equipment suppliers.

The Cx process shall not reduce the responsibility of the Commissioner and or the Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for definitions.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for CxA's role.
- B. Refer to DDC General Conditions for specific submittal requirements.
- C. In addition, provide the following:
  - 1. Certificates of readiness
  - 2. Certificates of completion of installation, pre-start, and startup activities.
  - 3. O&M manuals
  - 4. Field / factory test reports
- D. Control Drawings Submittal
  - 1. The control drawings shall have a key to all abbreviations.
  - 2. The control drawings shall contain graphic schematic depictions of the systems and each component.
  - 3. The schematics will include the system and component layout of any equipment that the control system monitors, enables or controls, even if the equipment is primarily controlled by packaged or integral controls.
  - 4. Provide a full points list with at least the following included for each point:
    - a. Controlled system
    - b. Point abbreviation
    - c. Point description
    - d. Display unit
    - e. Control point or set point (Yes / No)
    - f. Monitoring point (Yes / No)
    - g. Intermediate point (Yes / No)
    - h. Calculated point (Yes / No)



1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test Equipment Calibration Requirements: Subcontractors will comply with test manufacturer's calibration procedures and intervals. Recalibrate test instruments immediately after instruments have been repaired resulting from being dropped or damaged. Affix calibration tags to test instruments. Furnish calibration records to CxA upon request.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to coordination during the commissioning process.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup, initial checkout and functional performance testing shall be provided by the respective subcontractor for the equipment being tested as outlined in the DDC General Conditions, except for equipment specific to and used by respective subcontractor in their commissioning responsibilities. A sufficient quantity of two-way radios shall be provided by each subcontractor, as necessary.
- B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (specific to a piece of equipment and only available from vendor) required for testing shall be included.
- C. Test equipment and software required by any equipment manufacturer for programming and/or start-up, whether specified or not, shall be provided by the manufacturer of the equipment. Manufacturer shall provide the test equipment, demonstrate its use, and assist in the commissioning process as needed. Test equipment (and software) shall become the property of the City of New York upon completion of the commissioning process.
- D. If required and necessary, data logging equipment and software required for testing will be provided by the CxA, but shall not become the property of the City of New York.
- E. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply: Temperature sensors and digital thermometers shall have a certified calibration within the past year to accuracy of 0.5°F and a resolution of + or - 0.1°F. Pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of + or - 2.0% of the value range being measured (not full range of meter) and have been calibrated within the last year.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 GENERAL DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. With assistance from the installers, the CxA will prepare Pre-Functional/ Installation Checklists for commissioned components, equipment, and systems
- B. Red-lined Drawings:
1. The subcontractor will verify all equipment, systems, instrumentation, wiring and components are shown correctly on red-lined drawings.
  2. Preliminary red-lined drawings will be made available to the Commissioning Team for use prior to the start of Functional Performance Testing.



3. Changes, as a result of Functional Testing, must be incorporated into the final as-built drawings, which will be created from the red-lined drawings.
4. The subcontractor, as defined in the Contract Documents, will create the as-built drawings.

**C. Operation and Maintenance Data:**

1. Subcontractor will provide a copy of O&M literature within 45 days of each submittal acceptance for use during the commissioning process for all commissioned equipment and systems.
2. The CxA will review the O&M literature once for conformance to project requirements.
3. The CxA will receive a copy of the final approved O&M literature once corrections have been made by the subcontractor.

**D. Testing, Demonstration and Orientation:**

1. Subcontractor will provide demonstration and operator's orientation program as required by the contract document.
2. A complete orientation program and schedule must be submitted by the subcontractor to the CxA four weeks (4) prior to any such event.
3. Agenda for each orientation session shall be submitted to the CxA at least one (1) week prior to the session.
4. The CxA shall be notified at least 72 hours in advance of scheduled tests so that testing may be observed by the CxA and Commissioner. A copy of the test record shall be provided to the CxA, City of New York, and Commissioner.
5. Engage a Factory-Authorized service representative to demonstrate City of New York's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specific equipment.
6. Instruct City of New York's service personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, trouble shooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
7. Review and update data in O&M Manuals.

**3.2 SUBCONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

**A. Subcontractors performing Mechanical, Controls and TAB work. The commissioning responsibilities applicable to each of respective subcontractors are as follows (all references apply to commissioned equipment/systems only):**

1. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
2. Attend construction phase controls coordination meetings.
3. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meetings.
4. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component service orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
5. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
6. Include requirements for submittal data, operation and maintenance data, and instruction in each purchase order or sub-contract written.
7. Prepare preliminary schedule for Mechanical system orientations and inspections, operation and maintenance manual submissions, instruction sessions, pipe and duct system testing, flushing, and cleaning, equipment start-up, testing and balancing and task



- completion for the City of New York. Distribute preliminary schedule to commissioning team members.
8. Update schedule as required throughout the construction period.
  9. During the startup and initial checkout process, execute the related portions of the Prefunctional/installation checklists for all commissioned equipment.
  10. Assist the CxA in all verification and functional performance tests.
  11. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.
  12. Gather operation and maintenance literature on all equipment, and assemble in binders as required by the specifications. Submit to CxA (45) days after submittal acceptance.
  13. Coordinate with the CxA to provide (72) hour advance notice so that the witnessing of equipment and system start-up and testing can begin.
  14. Notify the CxA a minimum of (2) weeks in advance of the time for start of the testing and balancing work. Attend the initial testing and balancing meeting for review of the official testing and balancing procedures.
  15. Participate in, and schedule vendors and subcontractors to participate in the operator's orientation sessions.
  16. Provide written notification to the Commissioner and CxA Authority that the following work has been completed in accordance with the contract documents, and that the equipment, systems, and sub-system are operating as required.
    - a. HVAC&R equipment including all fans, air handling units, piping, ductwork, dampers, terminals, and all other equipment furnished under this Division.
    - b. Controls system used for equipment monitoring and manipulation
    - c. Fire stopping in the fire rated construction, including fire and smoke damper installation, caulking, gasketing and sealing of smoke barriers.
    - d. Fire detection and smoke detection devices furnished under other divisions of the specification.
  17. The equipment supplier shall document the performance of his equipment.
  18. Subcontractor performing work
    - a. Attend initial commissioning coordination meeting scheduled by the Commissioning Authority.
    - b. Submit the site specific testing and balancing plan to the CxA and Commissioner for review and acceptance.
    - c. Attend the testing and balancing review meeting scheduled by the CxA. Be prepared to discuss the procedures that shall be followed in testing, adjusting, and balancing the HVAC&R system.
    - d. At the completion of the testing and balancing work, and the submittal of the final testing and balancing report, notify the subcontractor performing HVAC&R work and the Commissioner.
    - e. Participate in verification of the testing and balancing report, which will consist of repeating measurements contained in the testing and balancing reports. Assist in diagnostic purposes when directed.



**19. Equipment Suppliers**

- a. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed start-up procedures and specific responsibilities of the City of New York, to keep warranties in force.
- b. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with subcontractors.
- c. Provide information requested by CxA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.

**3.3 CITY OF NEW YORK'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for City of New York's Responsibilities.

**3.4 CxA RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section "General Commissioning Requirements" for CxA's Responsibilities.

**3.5 TESTING PREPARATION**

- A. Certify in writing to the CxA that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify in writing to the CxA that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify in writing that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Place systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

**3.6 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION**

- A. Air and water testing, balancing and equipment performance verification shall be accomplished by an independent test and balance firm. The CxA shall spot check this work to verify accuracy of results.
- B. Prior to performance of Testing, Adjusting and Balancing work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- C. Notify the CxA at least ten (10) days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.
- D. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.



1. The CxA will notify respective subcontractor ten (10) days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
2. The respective subcontractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
3. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

### 3.7 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include verification of dynamic operation of the system.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the subcontractors performing HVAC&R, testing and balancing, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control work shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct to alter set points when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the City of New York. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

### 3.8 HVAC&R SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

- A. Equipment Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in individual Division 23 sections. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and certifications to the CxA.
- B. HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 23 Sections. Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- C. Pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic tests, and chemical treatment: Test requirements are specified in Division 23 piping Sections. Subcontractor performing HVAC&R work shall prepare a pipe system cleaning, flushing, and hydrostatic testing plan. Provide cleaning,



flushing, testing, and treating plan and final reports to the CxA. Plan shall include but not limited to the following:

1. Sequence of testing and testing procedures for each section of pipe to be tested, identified by pipe zone or sector identification marker. Markers shall be keyed to Drawings for each pipe sector, showing the physical location of each designated pipe test section. Drawings keyed to pipe zones or sectors shall be formatted to allow each section of piping to be physically located and identified when referred to in pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic testing, and chemical treatment plan.
  2. Description of equipment for flushing operations.
  3. Minimum flushing water velocity.
  4. Tracking checklist for managing and ensuring that all pipe sections have been cleaned, flushed, hydrostatically tested, and chemically treated.
- D. Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of chillers, cooling towers, refrigerant compressors and condensers, heat pumps, and other refrigeration systems. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.
- E. HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air, steam, and hydronic distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.
- F. Vibration and Sound Tests: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of vibration isolation and seismic controls.
- G. Vibration Analysis and Sound Level Testing: Subcontractor to prepare a vibration analysis and sound level testing plan for identified rotating equipment. Contractor to coordinate witnessing of testing with CxA.
- H. The work included in the commissioning process involves a complete and thorough evaluation of the operation and performance of all components, systems and sub-systems. The following equipment and systems shall be evaluated:
1. Water cooled Split Variable Refrigeration System
  2. Split System Variable Refrigerant Indoor AC System
  3. Air Conditioning Unit
  4. Heat Recovery Unit
  5. Ventilation Fans
  6. Dirt and Air Separators
  7. Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

### 3.9 APPROVAL

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for approval procedures.

### 3.10 DEFERRED TESTING

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions for Deferred Testing procedures.



**3.11 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. The Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall conform to Contract Document requirements.
- B. Refer to the DDC General Conditions for CxA's role in the Operation and Maintenance Manual contribution, review and approval process.
- C. An updated as-built version of the control drawings and sequences of operation shall be included in the final controls O&M manual submittal.

**3.12 CITY OF NEW YORK'S OPERATING PERSONNEL ORIENTATION**

- A. Refer to the DDC General Conditions for requirements for training.
- B. The respective subcontractor shall have the following instruction responsibilities:
  - 1. Provide the CxA with an instruction plan two weeks before the planned instruction.
  - 2. Provide designated City of New York personnel with comprehensive orientation and instruction in the understanding of the systems and the operation and service of each piece of HVAC equipment including, but not limited to, all HVAC equipment (ex. pumps, heat exchangers, chillers, heat rejection equipment, air conditioning units, air handling units, fans, terminal units, controls and water treatment systems, etc.)
  - 3. Instruction shall normally start with classroom sessions followed by hands-on instruction on each piece of equipment, which shall illustrate the various modes of operation, including startup, shutdown, fire/smoke alarm, power failure, etc.
  - 4. During any demonstration, should the system fail to perform in accordance with the requirements of the O&M manual or sequence of operations, the system will be repaired or adjusted as necessary and the demonstration repeated.
  - 5. The appropriate trade or manufacturer's representative shall provide the instructions on each major piece of equipment. This person may be the start-up technician for the piece of equipment, the installer or manufacturer's representative. Practical building operating expertise as well as in-depth knowledge of all modes of operation of the specific piece of equipment is required. More than one party may be required to execute the instruction.
  - 6. The subcontractor's shall attend instruction sessions other than their respective instruction sessions, as requested, to discuss the interaction of various systems as it relates to the equipment being covered in the instruction session.
  - 7. The instruction sessions shall follow the outline in the Table of Contents of the operation and maintenance manual and illustrate whenever possible the use of the O&M manuals for reference.
  - 8. Instruction shall include:
    - a. Use of the printed installation, operation and service instruction material included in the O&M manuals.
    - b. Discussion of relevant health and safety issues and concerns.
    - c. Discussion of warranties and guarantees.
    - d. Common troubleshooting problems and solutions.
    - e. Explanatory information included in the O&M manuals and the location of all plans and manuals in the facility.
    - f. Discussion of any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.





- 1) Specific hardware configuration of installed systems in this building and specific instruction for operating the installed system, including HVAC systems, lighting controls and any interface with security and communication systems.
  - 2) Security levels, alarms, system start-up, shut-down, power outage and restart routines, changing set points and alarms and other typical changed parameters, overrides, freeze protection, manual operation of equipment, optional control strategies that can be considered, energy savings strategies and set points that if changed will adversely affect energy consumption, energy accounting, procedures for obtaining vendor assistance, etc.
  - 3) All trending and monitoring features (values, change of state, totalization, etc.), including setting up, executing, downloading, viewing both tabular and graphically and printing trends. Employees will actually set-up trends in the presence of the instructor.
  - 4) Every display screen shall be completely discussed, allowing time for questions.
  - 5) Use of keypad or plug-in laptop computer at the zone level.
  - 6) Use of remote access to the system via phone lines or networks.
  - 7) Setting up and changing an air terminal unit controller.
  - 8) Graphics generation.
  - 9) Point database entry and modifications.
  - 10) Understanding of field control panel operating programming (when applicable).
- c. Instruction Session III, Operational Q&A: The third instruction session shall be conducted on-site six months after occupancy and consist of 8 hours of instruction. The session will be structured to address specific topics that employees need to discuss and to answer questions concerning operation of the system.
- D. Subcontractor Performing Test, Adjust and Balance Work: The respective subcontractor shall have the following instruction responsibilities:
1. Meet with facility staff after completion of Test, Adjust and Balance work and instruct them on the following:
    - a. Review the final Test, Adjust and Balance report, explaining the layout and meanings of each data type.
    - b. Discuss any outstanding deficient items in control, ducting or design that may affect the proper delivery of air or water.
    - c. Identify and discuss any terminal units, duct runs, diffusers, coils, fans and pumps that are not meeting their design capacity.
    - d. Discuss any temporary settings for any areas that are not finished, and plans to finish the areas.
    - e. Other salient information that may be useful for facility operations, relative to Test, Adjust and Balance work.

\*\*\*\*\* END OF SECTION 23 08 00 \*\*\*\*\*



**SECTION 23 09 00 - AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM**

**PART 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**1.1 GENERAL**

- A. **Description of Work:** Provide all labor, materials, equipment and services required to furnish an automatic temperature control system that conforms to the plans and specifications and meets the requirements of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems serving the building.
- B. The Mechanical Contractor shall obtain services of an experienced Automatic Temperature Controls contractor (ATC) that is regularly engaged in the installation and maintenance of ATC systems. The ATC contractor shall provide all necessary information and required field supervision for a complete and operable automatic temperature control system.
- C. The ATC contractor shall be responsible for a complete system of electronic automatic temperature controls. The ATC contractor shall provide all material, components, devices, thermostats, safety devices, control panels, control dampers, controllers, transformers, actuators, sensing devices, time clocks, relays, control wiring diagrams (line and low voltage), interlocking wiring, smoke detectors, labor, etc. indicated, required or specified.
- D. The temperature control system shall be electric / electronic and include electronic sensors and electric actuators unless noted otherwise. Include all work required for a complete operational system as defined in the entire set of drawings and specifications, including but not limited to associated specifications for mechanical and electrical work, and all contract drawings.
- E. The ATC contractor shall furnish all line voltage and low voltage wiring, conduit, panels, and accessories for a complete operational control system. The ATC contractor shall be responsible for all electrical work associated with the automatic temperature control system, any interface to any other systems including but not limited to HVAC and plumbing systems, and as shown in the contract documents. All line and low voltage shall be in accordance with Division 26 requirements. All final electrical connections to each stand-alone controller is the responsibility of this contractor.
- F. The ATC contractor shall furnish all wells for water monitoring devices, flow switches, and alarms to be installed by the mechanical contractor.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings



2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Materials and equipment shall be the catalogued products of manufacturers regularly engaged in production and installation of automatic temperature control systems and shall be manufacturer's latest standard design that complies with the specification requirements.
- B. ATC contractor shall have single source responsibility for the complete installation and documented verification for proper operation of the control system that shall include as a minimum, point to point checkout, sensor calibration, verification of programmed sequences. Supplier shall have an in-place support facility with technical staff, spare parts inventory, all necessary test and diagnostic equipment and a maintained service organization consisting of competent servicemen, for a period of not less than three years.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit for approval shop drawings, bill of material, product data sheets, points list, sequence of operations, valve and damper schedules, program flow charts and all product samples required prior to the commencement of any field installation work. Indicate at the beginning of each submittal, all substitutions and deviations from requirements of Contract Documents. Shop drawing submittals shall be complete full size drawings, 11" x 17" minimum, and include sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents.

### 1.5 OWNER'S MANUALS

- A. Submit two (2) draft copies of Owner's manual for review. After review by authorized representative, the contractor shall incorporate review comments and shall submit four (4) interim final copies. Upon completion of project, acceptance of project by the Commissioner, submit six (6) copies of final "as built" manuals and one (1) reproducible copy (3-mil sepia Mylar). The Owner's manual shall include the same information that was furnished with the manuals turned over for the base building and shall match the format.

### 1.6 WORK PERFORMANCE SCHEDULE

- A. A time-phased schedule for delivery, installation, and acceptance of components for the complete system shall be prepared. Submit this schedule to the Commissioner. Submit updates and changes to this schedule promptly to the Commissioner.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. The Contractor shall warranty the ATC system to be free from defects in workmanship and material for a period of one (1) year from the date of acceptance by the Commissioner. During the warranty period, the Contractor shall furnish all labor to repair or replace all items or components that fail due to defects in workmanship or



material.

## 1.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. The Contractor shall provide competent instructors to give full instruction to designated personnel in the adjustment, operation and maintenance of the system installed rather than a general training course. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. All training shall be held during normal work hours of 8:00 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. weekdays. Provide 4 hours of demonstration.

## 1.9 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. This contractor shall provide a complete set of "as-built" or record drawings. The drawings shall be prepared and delivered to the architect in an acceptable AutoCAD format and shall indicate all work installed exactly in accordance with the original design.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS/INSTALLERS

- A. The automatic temperature control system and all components shall be Johnson Controls, Honeywell or Siemens.

### 2.2 AUTOMATIC CONTROLS

- A. Furnish and install as herein specified a complete automatic temperature control system of the DDC electronic type. All temperature control under this contract is to be fully modulating type, except where noted otherwise. The system shall be complete in all respects including sensors, valves, dampers, relays, etc. to provide the functions as hereinafter described, regardless of whether or not said sensors, relay etc., are specifically mentioned hereinafter. The system shall be installed complete in all respects by competent mechanics, regularly employed by the manufacturer.
- B. Operator Interface Panel
1. The ATC contractor shall be responsible for the installation of primary and secondary LAN's required to support the network for the complete ATC system.
  2. Provide a master supervisory control panel for operator's interface to be mounted on the main ATC panel. Panel shall present data clearly in text or graphic format with a menu driven-driven user interface to manage and control the HVAC system.
  3. Operator interface panel shall be provided for command entry, information management, network alarm annunciation/management and database management functions. All DDC controllers shall be connected to the operator interface panel for monitoring and global control. All real-time control functions shall be resident in the DDC controllers to facilitate greater fault tolerance and reliability.
  4. The operator interface panel shall have an embedded Web server to allow remote user access to all of the data available in the control system with a standard Web browser.



5. Communication services shall provide automatic reporting of alarms and events by e-mail, fax or Short Message Services (SMS) with user acknowledgement.
6. Distributed applications shall provide the ability to control complex systems by coordinating the activities of multiple controllers.
7. Onboard trend and event logging shall provide information useful to analyzing the control system's performance.
8. Panel shall have a provision for local printer connection for hard copy documents of trends and events.

C. DDC Control Panel

1. Spare Capacity - All DDC Control Panels shall be installed with spare points (minimum 2 of each type) and spare memory capacity for future connections. Provide all hardware software, processors, power supplies, communication controllers, etc. required to ensure adding a point to the spare point location only requires the addition of the appropriate sensor/actuator and field wiring/tubing.
2. Provide all necessary hardware for a complete operating system as required. All hardware shall reside in each Control Panel. DDC Control Panels shall not be dependent upon any higher level computer or another controller for operation.
  - a. DDC Control Panel shall, at a minimum, be provided with:
    - (1) Appropriate NEMA rated enclosure.
    - (2) A stand-alone, multi-tasking, multi-user, real-time digital control microprocessor module.
    - (3) Memory module to accommodate all Primary Control Panel software requirements, including but not limited to, its own operating system and databases, including control processes, energy management applications, alarm management applications, historical/trend data for points specified, maintenance support applications, custom processes, operator I/O, dial-up communications.
    - (4) Power supplies as required for all associated modules, sensors, actuators, etc.
    - (5) Input/output point modules as required including spare capacity.
    - (6) Software modules as required for all sequences of operation, logic sequences and energy management routines. Relay logic is not acceptable.
    - (7) A portable operator terminal connection port to allow the temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems, printers or terminals.
    - (8) Monitoring of all industry standard types of analog and digital inputs and outputs.
  - b. Each DDC Control Panel shall continuously perform self-diagnostics on all hardware and network communications.
  - c. Each DDC Control Panel shall provide battery backup to support the real-time clock and all memory and programs for a minimum of 72 hours.
  - d. Each DDC Control Panel shall support firmware upgrades without the need to replace hardware.



- e. Each controller shall support its associated secondary network(s).
- f. Control panels shall provide at least two RS-232C serial data communication ports for operation of operator I/O devices such as industry standard printers, operator terminals, modems and portable laptop operator's terminals. Primary control panels shall allow temporary use of portable devices without interrupting the normal operation of permanently connected modems, printers or terminals.
- g. Isolation shall be provided at all primary control panel terminations, as well as all field point terminations to suppress induced voltage transients consistent with IEEE Standards 587-1980.

### 3. DDC Control Panel Software

- a. Provide all necessary software for a complete operating system as required. All software shall reside in each DDC Control Panel. DDC Control Panels shall not be dependent upon any higher level computer or another controller for operation.
- b. All points, panels and programs shall be identified by a point descriptor. The same names shall be displayed at DDC Control Panel (via portable terminal).
- c. All digital points shall have a user-defined, two-state status indication.
- d. Each Primary Control Panel shall, at a minimum, be provided with software for:
  - (1) Two-position control, proportional control, proportional plus integral control, proportional, integral, plus derivative control algorithms, all with automatic control loop tuning.
  - (2) Limiting the number of times each piece of equipment may be cycled within any one-hour period.
  - (3) The system shall provide protection against excessive demand situations during start-up periods by automatically introducing time delays between successive start commands to heavy electrical loads. Upon the resumption of power, each DDC Controller shall analyze the status of all controlled equipment, Compare it with normal occupancy scheduling and turn equipment on or off as necessary to resume normal operations.
  - (4) Interactive HELP function to assist operators connected via POTs and modems.
  - (5) Comment lines for all programs.
  - (6) Distributed independent alarm analysis and filtering. Reporting of selected alarms during system shutdown and start-up shall be automatically inhibited. A minimum of six priority levels shall be provided for each point.
  - (7) Automatically accumulate and store run-time hours for all digital points.
- e. Primary Control Panels shall be able to assign password access and control priorities. The logon password (at any PC portable operator terminal) shall enable the operator to monitor, adjust and/or control only



the systems, programs, primary control panel, and/or secondary control panels that the operator is authorized for. Passwords and priority shall be fully programmable and adjustable.

- f. DDC Controllers shall automatically accumulate and store run-time hours for all digital input and output points.
- g. DDC Controllers shall count events such as the number of times a pump or fan system is cycled on and off. Event totalization shall be performed on a daily, weekly and monthly basis for all points.

## 2.3 FIELD DEVICES

### A. General

- 1. All devices and equipment shall be approved for installation.

### B. TEMPERATURE SENSORS

- 1. All temperature sensors shall use RTD with sensor accuracy of +/- .5 deg F. Provide Minco, Vaisala, Mamac or equal.
- 2. Single Point Duct Temperature Sensor
  - a. These shall consist of a sensing element, junction box for wiring connections, and a gasket to prevent air leakage or vibration noise. The temperature range as required for resolution is indicated above. The sensor probe shall be stainless steel.
  - b. Sensing element - RTD or thermistor +/- 0.5 deg F accuracy at calibration point.
- 3. Averaging Duct Temperature Sensor
  - a. These shall consist of an averaging element, junction box for wiring connections and gasket to prevent air leakage. Provide sensor lengths and quantities to result in one foot of sensing element for each, two square feet of coil/duct face area. Temperature range shall be as required for resolution as indicated above.
  - b. Sensing element - RTD or thermistor +/- 0.5 deg F accuracy at calibration point.
- 4. Liquid Immersion Temperature Sensor
  - a. These shall include brass or stainless steel thermowell, sensor and connection head for wiring connections;
  - b. Sensing element - RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.4 deg F accuracy at calibration point. The temperature range shall be as required for resolution of 0.3 deg F;
  - c. Refer to Cornell's metering specification for temperature sensors that are used for metering.
- 5. OA Sensors
  - a. These shall consist of a sensor, sun shield, utility box, and watertight gasket to prevent water seepage. The temperature range shall be as



- required for the resolution indicated above;
- b. Sensing element - RTD, thermistor, or integrated circuit, +/- 0.4 deg F accuracy at calibration point;
  - c. On major/critical systems, one shall be provided for each;
  - d. Sensors shall be located on a north wall of the building and installed with stand-offs. On 100% OA systems and lab buildings, locate sensor in outside air plenum.
  - e. Provide one sensor per mechanical room or building-level controller.

**C. Humidity Sensors**

1. Units shall be suitable for duct mounting. Units shall be two-wire transmitters utilizing bulk polymer resistance change or thin film capacitance change humidity sensor. Units shall produce linear continuous output of 4-20 mA for % RH. Sensors shall have the following minimum performance and application criteria:
  - a. Input Range: 0 to 100% RH;
  - b. Accuracy (% RH): +/- 2% (when used for enthalpy calculation, dewpoint calculation, or humidifier control) or +/- 3% (monitoring only) between 20-90% RH at 77 deg F, including hysteresis, linearity, and repeatability;
  - c. Sensor Operating Range: As required by the application;
  - d. Long Term Stability: Less than 1% drift per year.
  - e. Calibration: Traceable to NIST
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Vaisala;
  - b. Mamac.

**D. Combined CO2 & Temperature Sensors:**

1. Carbon dioxide wall mount transmitter shall incorporate a silicon-based CARBOCAP® NDIR sensor. Accuracy at 77 deg F  $\leq \pm(30 \text{ ppm} + 2\% \text{ of reading})$ . Measurement range of 0...2000 PPM for 0 to 100% RH (non-condensing) and +23 to 113 deg F. Can be calibrated for other ranges: 0-5000 ppm, 0-10,000 ppm, 0-20,000 ppm. Temperature coefficient no larger than 0.15%FS/ deg C. Analog outputs must be jumper selectable; 0...20 mA, 4...20 mA, or 0...10V. Power supply must be 24 VDC/VAC. Long term stability shall be  $< +100 \text{ ppm/5yrs}$ . Must be capable of calibration check in place using certified gases or portable meter. Factory recommended calibration frequency of once per five (5) years.
2. Vaisala Model GMW116

**E. Water Differential Pressure Sensor**

1. Water differential pressure sensor shall be industrial grade, factory calibrated for operating range, rated for system pressure. Provide standard 3/8 stainless steel, 5 valve manifold and pressure gages for supply and return pressures. Provide Rosemont OR equal.



**F. PRESSURE SENSORS**

1. **Air Differential Pressure Transmitters:**
  - a. Applications: Duct static pressure, air flow VP, filter DP, Fan DP, etc.;
  - b. Provide the smallest range feasible for the application. Provide zero and span adjustments;
  - c. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1% of full scale for static and 0.25% for air velocity;
  - d. Acceptable Manufacturers (Airflow): Air Monitor, Paragon;
  - e. Acceptable Manufacturers (Filter DP): Dwyer;
  - f. Acceptable Manufacturers (General and Static Pressure): Mamac, Setra.
2. **Liquid Differential Pressure Transmitters:**
  - a. Pressure transmitters shall gauge pressure in the form of a linear 4 to 20 mA or 0-10 VDC signal. Sensor shall be installed with a valve manifold and pressure/temperature test ports in lieu of pressure gauges. DP transmitter shall be rated for 150 PSIG static pressure;
  - b. Span shall be no greater than 2 times the working differential pressure of the system to allow the highest possible resolution;
  - c. Pressure transmitters shall meet the following performance criteria:
    - (i) External span and zero adjustments;
    - (ii) 1% accuracy over the entire span;
    - (iii) Wetted parts: Stainless steel with a silicone fluid-filled diaphragm;
    - (iv) Repeatability: Plus or minus 0.5% at maximum span.
  - d. Install all transmitters with a three-valve manifold for venting, draining, and calibration;
  - e. Acceptable Manufacturers (Gauge and Differential Pressure): Mamac, Setra.
3. **Air Differential Pressure Switch:**
  - a. Cleveland Controls, Inc., Model AFS-405 shall be used. The switches shall be installed in accordance with the installation instructions contained in Cleveland Controls Bulletin AFS-3152, as revised. All switches shall be mounted in accessible and, to the extent possible, vibration-free locations (i.e., not on duct work).
4. **Liquid Differential Pressure Switch:**
  - a. Barksdale Model EPD1HAA40 or Penn P74 differential pressure switches shall be provided. All switches shall be mounted in accessible and, to the extent possible, vibration-free locations. Do not use differential pressure switches for run status on pumps. Current sensors shall be used on constant volume pumps. Drive contacts shall be used for pumps with VSDs.



G. Air Flow (For AHU/Duct Flow Stations):

1. Use a pitot-tube averaging grid of a material compatible with the environment. Fan inlet grids shall be used where possible to measure fan flow;
2. Accuracy: +/- 0.25%;
3. Stability: +/- 0.5% of full scale per year or less;
4. Auto-zero capability by venting ports to atmosphere;
5. All fan inlet style flow elements shall be provided by the fan vendor and shall not block or affect fan efficiency;
6. Acceptable Manufacturers: Air Monitor, Paragon;
7. Field calibrate to +/- 5% of field-measured airflow.

H. Current Switches (CS)

1. For Constant Speed Motors:
  - a. CS shall be provided for status indication of constant speed motors;
  - b. Switch shall indicate loss of status when current falls below an adjustable trip point;
  - c. CS shall include LED indication of status;
  - d. Acceptable Manufacturer: Veris Industries (H708/ H908 series).
2. For Variable Speed Motors/ VFD:
  - a. Typically, status indication that indicates VSD or bypass operation shall be derived from contacts on the VSD. The VSD must be specified to include this option;
  - b. Otherwise, a current switch shall be provided for status indication. The switch shall be microprocessor based and suitable for use on a VSD;
  - c. Self-adjusting trip setpoint;
  - d. Factory programmed to detect belt loss undercurrent conditions;
  - e. CS shall include LED indication of status;
  - f. Acceptable Manufacturer: Hawkeye.
3. Static pressure transmitter shall be Setra C-C-264 or equal.

I. BINARY SENSORS

1. Water differential pressure switches shall Merciod or equal.
2. Air differential pressure switches shall be diaphragm type, die-cast aluminum housing, adjustable setpoint, with a SPDT switch. Rating shall be a minimum of 5 amps at 120 VAC. Switch pressure range shall be suited for the application. Provide Dwyer or equal.
3. Low temperature detector (ltd) shall be automatic reset, DPDT type. Ltd shall be installed in a serpentine fashion across the coil in the air stream in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Element shall be arranged to lock out the associated fan should the temperature at any point along the sensing element fall below 35 °f for an adjustable time period.



4. Current sensing relays shall be split core, two wire, loop powered and sized for expected amperage. Unit shall be UL listed. Provide status LED's for current sensed below setpoint, current sensed above setpoint and loop power failure. The unit shall automatically range itself and have solid state outputs.

J. SINGLE POINT LEAK DETECTOR

1. Provide Liebert LT-410 or equal. The alarm module shall indicate that water has contacted the sensors by actuating two output relays. The relays shall remain activated until the module is reset.

K. AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES

1. Water Coil Control valves
  - a. General - Modulating water valves will generally be ball valves with an equal percentage characteristic. Modulating water valves shall typically be sized for 50-100% of the typical controlled circuit pressure drop at 70% wide open CV.
  - b. Water and glycol control valves shall be rated to remain closed (zero leakage) against 120% of the full shutoff head of the pumps, when the control signal is set to "fully closed";
  - c. Valves shall all be two-way;
  - d. V-port ball valve;
  - e. 1/4 turn;
  - f. Packing: EPDM O-rings, lubricated;
  - g. Stem: Chrome plated brass or stainless steel;
  - h. Seat: Fiberglass reinforced Teflon;
  - i. Actuator: Electric, one motor only;
  - j. Flow characteristics: Equal percentage;
  - k. Ball and Stem shall be chrome plated brass or stainless steel;
  - l. Fail positions shall generally be as follows: Heating: Normally open; Cooling: normally closed.
  - m. Acceptable Manufacturers: Belimo, Valve Solutions, Fisher.

2. DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE CONTROL VALVES

- A. Provide for all water systems where modulating water flow conditions are required to prevent excessive pump pressure build-up. Provide a valve for each water system. Valve to be globe type, Powers or equal. Provide valves 2" and smaller with screwed end bodies and provide valves 2-1/2" and larger with flanged ends.

3. BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Furnish automatic butterfly valves for isolation requirements as shown on the drawings or required here in. Butterfly valves shall have body ratings in accordance with the piping specifications. Valves shall be high



performance, fully lugged with carbon steel body ANSI 150/300 as required by pipe specifications. Valves shall be bubble tight with 316 stainless steel disc, stainless steel shaft and reinforced teflon seat. Actuators shall be electric fail in place, with factory mounted open/close position limit switches. Provide waterproof enclosure and crankcase heater for actuator and accessories mounted outside. Provide manual override hand wheels for each valve. Valves shall be Jamesbury, Mccanalock, Keystone or equal. Butterfly valves will only be approved for cooling tower bypass and two position isolation (open or close) applications

4. AC UNIT ISOLATION VALVES

- A. Furnish automatic ball valves for isolation requirements as shown on the drawings of required herein. Ball valves shall have body ratings in accordance with the piping specifications. Actuators shall be fail in place, electric with manual override hand wheel. Size actuator close off rating for maximum system differential pressure. Provide Belimo or equal.

L. Control Dampers

1. Dampers shall be applicable for the rated pressure and velocity service. Damper structural rating shall exceed extreme anticipated conditions like fan deadhead.
2. Modulating dampers shall be carefully selected to control in a smooth and stable fashion across the range of anticipated conditions. Except where size dictates a single blade, dampers shall always be opposed blade. When a large section of damper is to be connected to a single jackshaft, size limitations shall be followed. This will prevent excessive damper area or, more importantly, length from being connected to a single jackshaft. Typically, the manufacturer's recommendation shall be sufficient for specifying a limit to the size of a damper bank that may have field fabricated jackshaft connections.
3. Whenever possible, dampers shall have external crankshafts to allow the connection of the damper actuator outside of the air stream. This will allow for easier access to the actuators for maintenance.
4. OA control dampers shall be low leakage dampers with damper seals.
5. Output to modulating control dampers shall be analog.
6. Acceptable Manufacturers: Ruskin, Nailor, Greenheck, approved equal.

M. DAMPER ACTUATORS

1. General: Size actuators and linkages to operate their appropriate dampers or valves with sufficient reserve torque or force to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and adequate close off rating as required.
2. Damper actuators shall be electronic type, 24 VAC with spring return. Size actuator for torque requirements of damper. Provide limit switches to protect motor against burnout. Damper motor shall be Belimo, Johnson Controls, Honeywell.



3. For AHU/ duct mounted dampers:
  - a. All Actuators shall be electronic.
  - b. Electronic Actuators: Shall be designed for a minimum of 60,000 full cycles at full torque and be UL 873 listed. Provide stroke indicator. Actuators shall have a positive positioning circuit and selectable inputs. Full stroke shall be within 90 seconds. Where fail positions are required, provide spring return on the actuator with adequate close off force.
  - c. Acceptable Manufacturers: Belimo and Johnson Controls.
4. For terminal unit dampers:
  - a. Electronic Actuators: Shall be designed for a minimum of 60,000 full cycles at full torque. Provide stroke indicator. Output to modulating damper actuators may be analog or floating.

#### N. ELECTRIC THERMOSTATS

1. Furnish and install all line voltage thermostats for unit heaters, cabinet unit heaters, and/or radiation. Thermostat contacts shall be rated for maximum heater amperage and shall be snap acting, SPDT.
2. Thermostat shall have a concealed setpoint adjustment.
3. Thermostat shall have concealed thermometer temperature indication.

#### O. FIELD EQUIPMENT CABINETS

1. All transformers, electric relays, static pressure sensors, velocity pressure sensors, manual override switches, etc., shall be mounted in an NEMA 3R enclosure and factory wired to terminal strips.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

##### A. Installation Criteria

1. Space mounted devices are to be identical in appearance. All devices shall be mounted under the same style cover.
2. Room sensors and thermostats shall not be located on outside walls.
3. Provide all relays, switches, sources of electricity and all other auxiliaries, accessories and connections necessary to make a complete operable system in accordance with the sequences specified.
4. Install controls so that adjustments and calibrations can be readily made. Controls are to be installed by the control equipment manufacturer.
5. Mount surface-mounted control devices, tubing and raceways on brackets to clear the final finished surface on insulation.
6. Conceal control conduit and wiring in all spaces except in the Mechanical Equipment Rooms and in unfinished spaces. Install in parallel banks with all changes in directions made at 90 degree angles.

7. Install control valves horizontally with the power unit up. Installation of control valves will be by the mechanical contractor.
8. Unless otherwise noted, install wall-mounted sensors, thermostats and humidistats to meet ADA requirements. Submit device samples, locations, mounting heights and details for approval for all devices.
9. All relays, electrical wiring, panels, outputs, etc. to make a complete operational system, shall be provided and installed by this section. See sequences of operation for details.

**B. Design Criteria**

1. The Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) shall be programmed to start and stop the HVAC equipment based on occupancy schedules as coordinated with the Commissioner. The ATC shall also provide equipment interlocks as required.
2. Fire Alarm Interface for Fans
  - a. The Fire Alarm System shall provide outputs to notify the ATC of fire alarms.
  - b. All fan systems shall be stopped from the FAS. When the fan system stops, all associated dampers shall close.
  - c. All return and exhaust fans shall be stopped from the FAS. When the fan stops, all associated dampers shall close.

**3.2 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION WIRING AND MATERIALS**

- A.** The ATC Contractor shall be responsible for all electrical control work associated with the ATC, HVAC and plumbing systems, which is not specified as work of others.
1. Perform all wiring in accordance with all local and national codes including the NEC.
  2. Install all line voltage wiring, concealed or exposed, in conduit in accordance with the Division 26 specifications, NEC and local building code. Utilize #14 A.W.G. THWN conductors minimum throughout for power wiring (120 VAC or greater) except in conjunction with a manual starter.
  3. All low voltage electrical control wiring may be run in plenum rated cable above accessible hung ceilings. Plenum cable shall be run parallel to building lines and supported from the building structure (not from duct, pipe or associated hangers) with bridle rings.
  4. Provide extension of 120 volt, 20 amp circuits and circuit breakers from emergency power panels for entire system, as required.
  5. Provide all miscellaneous field device mounting and interconnecting control wiring for all mechanical systems.
  6. All control and power wiring associated with the control of all automatic, fire/smoke or smoke dampers shall be installed in conduit, regardless of voltage. All control and power wiring for relays associated with the control of any automatic, fire/smoke or smoke damper shall be installed in conduit, regardless of voltage.
  7. Provide electrical wall box and conduit sleeve for all wall mounted devices.
  8. Fire stopping shall be provided for all penetrations of conduit, etc. through fire rated walls and floors and other fire rated separations.
  9. Where conduit is required, it shall be steel electric metallic tubing (EMT), except



that it shall be galvanized intermediate steel conduit where located within 8'-0" of the floor in mechanical spaces (or is otherwise exposed to mechanical damage), or is intended for embodiment in concrete.

10. Wires and cables shall have characteristics - in compliance with Articles 725 and/or 800 (as applicable) of the National Electrical Code - as described elsewhere in the specifications or drawings for this project, and shall be UL listed in accordance therewith.

### 3.3 TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE

#### A. Acceptance Testing

1. Submit for approval, a detailed acceptance test procedure designed to demonstrate compliance with contractual requirements.
2. Demonstrate system performance to Commissioner for final system acceptance.

### PART 4 - SEQUENCES OF OPERATION

#### 4.2 AIR CONDITIONING UNITS (AC-1 AND ASSOCIATED RETURN FAN RF-1)

##### A. GENERAL:

1. Service: Performance Hall (AC-1, RF-1)
2. The ATC contractor shall furnish and install all DDC controls for the AC for control as described in this sequence.

##### B. SYSTEM OFF:

1. Supply Fan: Off.
2. Return Fan: Off
3. Outside Air Damper: Closed.
4. Return Air Damper: Open.
5. Hot Water Coil Circulator: Off
6. Condenser Water Valve: Closed
7. Condenser Pump: Off

##### C. SYSTEM START:

1. The air conditioning unit shall be started based upon an occupancy schedule or manual command.
2. When the air-conditioning unit is indexed to operate, the outdoor air damper shall open, condenser pump shall run.

##### D. SYSTEM RUN:

1. Supply Fan: Fan shall run continuously
2. Return Fan: Fan shall run continuously
3. Hot Water Coil Circulator:
  - (i) The hot water coil is served by circulator P-3. The circulator is variable speed with 0-10 VDC or 4-20 mA input to vary the circulator speed and regulate flow through the coil.
  - (ii) The hot water coil circulator (P-3) speed shall be varied to regulate the flow to maintain space setpoint conditions



- 4.
5. Modulate the hot water coil circulator and DX cooling coil (unit manufacturer controls) in sequence to maintain space setpoint temperature.
6. Modulate outdoor air based on demand control ventilation remote mounted CO2 sensor
7. The system shall be able to be placed into the occupied mode by an override button on the space temperature sensor. The duration of the override period shall be adjustable through the room thermostat.

E. SYSTEM STOP:

1. When the air-conditioning unit is indexed to shut down, the supply and return fan and condenser pumps shall stop and all controls shall be indexed to their "System Off" conditions.

F. SAFETIES AND ALARMS:

1. Low Temperature: Manual reset low limit thermostat, mounted upstream of the cooling coil, shall stop the supply fan, index all controls to their "System Off" mode should the coil discharge air temperature fall below 5 deg F.
2. Low Suction: Low suction pressure switches shall stop the supply and return fan when duct pressure exceeds design. Dampers valves shall be indexed to their "System Off" conditions. The fan shall remain off until the pressure switch is manually reset.
3. Condenser Water Flow: Lack of condenser water flow shall shut down the unit.
4. Emergency Shutdown:
  - a. Duct smoke detector(s) shall stop the supply fan and annunciate an alarm when products of combustion are detected in the air stream.

G. FAILURE MODES:

1. Fan Failure: If the supply or return fan fails to operate, the fan shall shut down and system shall be indexed to their "System Off" conditions.
2. Dampers: Outdoor and Relief air dampers shall be provided with spring return actuators to fail to their "System Off" positions.
3. Hot Water Valves: Hot water valve shall be provided with spring return actuators to fail to the open position.
4. Condenser Water Valves: Condenser water mixing valve shall be provided with spring return actuators to fail to open position for flow through to the AC unit.

4.3 AIR CONDITIONING UNIT (ACC-1 and associated unit AC-2)

1. Water source variable refrigerant heat pump system ACC-1 and associated evaporator units shall be standalone system and under control of manufacturer provided system controls.
2. Contractor to install all manufacturers provided field and control device and provide all control power and control wiring.
3. Provide schedule and set-point programming of the manufacturer's unit controller.
4. Provide interlock between AC-2 and associated OA motorized damper for AC-2

4.4 OUTDOOR AIR FAN

1. Provide interlock between OAF-1 and indoor AC units AC-2, 3, 4.
2. The OAF-1 fan is off during unoccupied mode.
3. During occupied mode OAF-1 shall run when any of the AC units AC-2, 3, 4 are



- on and shall be off only when all AC units AC-2, 3, 4 is off.
4. Duct mounted static pressure sensor shall modulate OAF-1 variable frequency drive to maintain setpoint condition.
- 4.5 **BOOSTER COIL HW-1**
1. The duct mounted booster coil is served by circulator P-4. The circulator is variable speed with 0-10 VDC or 4-20 mA input to vary the circulator speed and regulate flow through the coil.
  2. The duct mounted booster coil circulator (P-4) speed shall be varied to regulate the flow to maintain discharge temperature of 40 deg F
- 4.6 **AIR CONDITIONING UNIT (ACC-2 and associated indoor units AC-3,4,5,6,7,8)**
1. Variable refrigerant heat pump system ACC-2 and associated evaporator units and associated heat recovery heat exchanger shall be standalone system and under control of manufacturer provided system controls.
  2. Contractor to install all manufacturers provided field and control device and provide all control power and control wiring.
  3. Provide schedule and set-point programming of the manufacturer's unit controller.
  4. Provide interlock between AC-3,4 and associated OA motorized damper integral with airflow measuring station for AC-3,4.
  5. The airflow measuring transmitter shall modulate the damper to maintain airflow at setpoint condition
- 4.7 **CONDENSER WATER PUMP P-2**
1. On receipt of demand signal from AC-1, ACC-1 or ACC-2 the condenser water system controller shall either maintain motorized shut-off valve shall open and pump P-2 energized.
  2. The self-sensing pump P-2 with integral variable speed drive shall maintain constant pump head to maintain design flow through AC-2 and heat exchanger HX-1 respectively.
- 4.8 **VRV HEAT PUMP CONDENSER WATER LOOP**
1. The VRV condenser water loop serves water source heat pump ACC-1 and ACC-2.
  2. Pump P-1 shall be energized during occupied mode or on receipt of demand signal during unoccupied mode.
  3. Self-regulating pump shall maintain constant head to maintain design flow through ACC-1 and ACC-2 respectively
  4. The loop temperature sensor shall modulate 3-port mixing wall to maintain loop temperature between minimum of 70°F to maximum of 100°F.
- 4.9 **TOILET EXHAUST FAN (TX-1)**
- A. The exhaust fan shall be operated based on occupancy schedule via programmable time clock.
- 4.10 **ELECTRICAL ROOM COOLING (AC-8)**



- A. The air conditioning unit shall be operated thermostatically controlled to setpoint conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 09 00



## SECTION 23 21 13 - HYDRONIC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
1. Hot-water heating piping.
  2. Condenser water piping
  3. Blowdown-drain piping.
  4. Air-vent piping.
  5. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping
  6. Di-electric fitting
  7. Air Control Devices: Air Vents and Air Separators
- B. See Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 125 psig at 200 deg F.
  2. Condenser Water Piping: 150 psig at 100 deg F
  3. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
  4. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
  5. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

#### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
1. Pressure-seal fittings.



2. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
3. Air control devices.
4. Chemical treatment.
5. Hydronic specialties.

**B. LEED Submittal**

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. ASME Compliance:** Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing:** ASTM B 88, Type L ASTM B 88, Type M.
- B. DWV Copper Tubing:** ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- C. Wrought-Copper Fittings:** ASME B16.22.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
    - c. Victaulic Company of America.
- D. Wrought-Copper Unions:** ASME B16.22.

**2.2 JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:** Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.



- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAG-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- E. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

### 2.3 PRESSURE SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturer;
  - 1. Copper Press Fittings: Viega, 17545 Daleview Dr., Lakewood, OH 44107, 877.620.0016
  - 2. Ridge Tool Co., 400 Clark Street, Elyria, OH 44035, 800.519.3456
- B. Press Fittings: Copper press fittings shall conform to the material and sizing requirements of ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. O-rings for copper press fittings shall be EPDM.
- C. Copper press fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The tubing shall be fully inserted into the fitting and the tubing marked at the shoulder of the fitting. The fitting alignment shall be checked against the mark on the tubing to assure the tubing is fully engaged (inserted) in the fitting. The joints shall be pressed using the tool approved by the manufacturer.

### 2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper-alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; AquaSpec Commercial Products Division.
  - 3. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.



D. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Calpico, Inc.
  - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
  - c. Approved equal
3. Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and non-corrosive thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

2.5 VALVES

- A. Gate, Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in 230900 Section "Automatic Temperature Controls"
- C. Valves with brass construction shall be dezincification resistant metal
- D. Bronze, Globe Style Multi-Turn Balancing Valves: (*Note: Quarter turn balance valves are not acceptable*)
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Tour & Anderson; available through Victaulic Company of America
    - b. Nibco
    - c. Armstrong, Inc,
  2. Body: Dezincification resistant (DZR) brass body, bonnet and trim.
  3. Stem, Disc Nut and Disc Ring: DZR metal or stainless steel.
  4. Handwheel: Polymer
  5. Disc "O" Ring: EPDM.
  6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
  7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
  8. Handle Style: Handwheel with memory stop to retain set position.
  9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
  10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.6 AIR CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:



1. Taco
2. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
3. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.

B. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

C. Automatic Air Vents (Commercial)

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

D. Vortex Air Separator

1. Furnish and install as shown on plans, an air separator with tangential inlet nozzles. The vortex air separator shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section VIII, Div 1 of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. The unit shall be fitted with an NPT vent connection (for connection to a compression tank or an air vent).
2. An additional NPT tapping shall be provided on the bottom of the air separator to facilitate blow-down.
3. The air separator shall be equipped with a system strainer with a free area of not less than four (4) times the cross sectional area of the connecting piping. The strainer should be able to be removed for routine cleaning.
4. Sizes up to 3 inches shall be cast iron body and equipped with stainless steel strainers. Sizes 4 to 8 inches and larger shall be cast iron body, carbon steel strainers and ANSI flanges.
5. Manufacturers: Armstrong, Taco

2.7 HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40 mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.



4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

**B. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:**

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

**A. Heating hot-water, condenser water and make-up piping aboveground, all sizes shall be:**

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing and pressure-seal (Viega Pro-press) joint is the preferred method of assembly.
2. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, and pressure-seal (Viega Pro-press) joint is the preferred method of assembly.

**B. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.**

**C. Air-Vent Piping:**

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type L, annealed-temper copper tubing with press fittings, soldered or flared joints.

**3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Install shut-off duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; and pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with



ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using (mechanically formed fittings are not acceptable) tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Section 230523, " Valves for HVAC Piping."



- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install strainers on inlet side of each control valve, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.
- T. Identify piping as specified in Section 230553, "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Section 230529, "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes in conformance with MSS SP-69:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
  - 7. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
- D. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.



### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Pressed Joints: Follow pressure sealed systems manufacturer's recommendation
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- F. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install piping from boiler air outlet.
- C. Install diaphragm expansion tank and dirt and air separator with automatic vent where noted on plans
- D. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated, in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain, to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- E. Install backflow prevention device on fill connection to boiler system, hydronic system and where noted on plans.



### 3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Section 230519, "Meters and Gages."

### 3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, un-insulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
  - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
  - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
  - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
  - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
  - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
  - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."



5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
  6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
1. Open manual valves fully.
  2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
  3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
  4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
  5. Set temperature controls so all heat exchangers are calling for full flow.
  6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as water cooled AC unit and heat pumps, etc. to specified values.

END OF SECTION 23 21 13

SECTION 232123 HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. Furnish and install variable speed pump control systems as required to provide a complete and satisfactory installation.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Variable Speed Pump Package
  - 1. Vertical Inline pump
  - 2. Variable Frequency Drives
  - 3. TEFC motor
  - 4. Integral Controls Platform

- B. Inline Wet Rotor Pumps

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. HI – The Hydraulic Institute
- B. ANSI – American National Standards Institute
- C. NEMA – National Electrical Manufacturers Association
- D. UL – Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
- E. ETL – Electrical Testing Laboratories
- F. CSA – Canadian Standards Association
- G. NEC – National Electrical Code
- H. ISO – International Standards Organization
- I. IEC – International Electrochemical Commission
- J. IEEE – Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers

1.4 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings



2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall include the following:
1. System summary sheet
  2. Sequence of operation
  3. Shop drawing indicating dimensions, required clearances and location and size of each field connection.
  4. Power and control wiring diagrams
  5. System profile analysis including variable speed pump curves and system curve. The analysis shall also include job specific load profile and staging points.
- B. Submittals must be specific to this project. Generic submittals will not be accepted.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The pump control package shall be fully assembled by the manufacturer. The manufacturer shall be responsible for the complete pump control package, including system interface with pumps and VFDs, as well as the successful operation of all components supplied by the pump control system manufacturer.
- B. All functions of the variable speed pump control system shall be thoroughly field tested prior to actual start-up. This test shall be conducted with motors connected to AFD output and it shall test all inputs, outputs and program execution specific to this application.
- C. Pump control package shall be listed by Underwriter's Laboratories and bear the UL label.

## 1.7 DELIVERY STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Requirements:
1. Deliver materials and components in manufacturer's original packaging with identification labels intact and in sizes to suit project.
  2. Include manufacturer's name, job number, pump location, and pump model and series numbers on identification labels.
- B. Storage and Handling Requirements: Store materials off ground and protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer. Storage must be weather tight, rain proof, and dust proof.
1. Exercise care to avoid damage during unloading and storing.
  2. Leave pump port protection plates in place until pumps are ready to connect to piping.
  3. Do not place cable slings around pump shaft or integrated control enclosure.
  4. Once installed the contractor must keep a dust proof cover over the drive, motor, and integral controller.



1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's warranty: The entire package shall carry a 18 month parts warranty. The drive will carry a parts and labor warranty. The motor will carry a 12 month parts and labor warranty but must be delivered to a local authorized motor warranty shop by the installing contractor. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to and not intended to limit other rights Owner may have under Contract Conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with these specifications, the following manufacturers shall be acceptable:
1. Taco, Inc. – Taco Model Viridian (VR) Series (basis of design)
  2. Bell and Gossett
  3. Pre-Approved Equal.
- B. The above manufacturers are approved for this project. This approval does not relieve the manufacturer from strict compliance with this specification regardless of the manufacturer's own standards. Other manufacturers and or models seeking prior approval must send a detailed Engineering proposal with drawings to the Engineer. Prior approval will be written; no verbal approvals will be given.

2.2 IN LINE WET ROTOR PUMPS

- A. Pumps shall be Taco Model Viridian (VR) Series (basis of design) or approved equal. The pumps shall be single stage, canned-rotor type, in-line design. The capacities and characteristics shall be as called for in the plans / schedules.
- B. Pump casing shall be constructed of EN-GJL-250 or ASTM-A 48 Class 35 cast iron. The pump casing / volute shall be rated for 175psi working pressure for all jobs. The pump flanges shall be matched to suit the working pressure of the piping components on the job, with ANSI Class 125 flanges.
- C. All casings shall be flanged connections.
- D. The impeller and shaft shall be Class 304 stainless steel.
- E. The pump and motor form an integral unit without a mechanical seal. The bearings are lubricated by the pumped liquid. No petroleum lubricated bearings will be accepted.
- F. The pumps shall be able to operate as single or parallel variable speed pumps, where the speed is regulated by an on-board electronic device. The onboard electronics shall allow these pumps to run in parallel, standby or alternating modes.
- G. The commissioning and set up of the pump shall be accessed through a web interface (data exchange) and use HTML 1.1 web language. The pump shall provide a port for a RJ-45 cable connection.



- H. The electronics shall provide constant pressure control ( $\Delta p-c$ ), variable differential pressure control ( $\Delta p-v$ ) as the factory default, proportional pressure control, constant curve duty (uncontrolled pump), RPM regulation and power limitation control.
- I. The pump electronics shall come standard with 2 external digital inputs and 1 external digital output to be available for additional mechanical room control.
- J. The wiring / electronics enclosure shall be class 2, IP44.
- K. Pumps should meet UL 778, 1004-1, 508C, CAN/CSA C22.2 #108, #100, #107.1, EMC (89/366 EEC): EN 61000, LVD (73/23/EC): EN 60335-1, EN 60335-2-51, and machine safety (98/37/EC): EN ISO 12100.
- L. The pumps shall be electronically protected, be rated for continuous duty and have a built-in startup circuit. The pump electronics shall provide overcurrent, line surge and current limit protection, thermal monitoring, heat sink status and over temperature protection.
- M. The pump shall be capable of being monitored 24/7 via integrated internet link.
- N. The pump must be driven by an electrically commutated electrical motor (ECM) with permanent magnet rotor. The rotor magnets shall be time stable, non-toxic ceramic magnets (Sr-Fe). The electrically commutated electrical motor shall be driven by a frequency converter with an integrated PFC filter.
- O. The applicable fluid temperature range is 14°- 230°F (-10 – 110°C).

### 2.3 LOADMATCH CIRCULATORS

- A. The LoadMatch distribution system shall include circulators, twin tees. The manufacturer shall provide a complete system including circulators and twin tees.
- B. Load Match Circulators
  1. Circulators shall be Taco Model LoadMatch® circulator or approved equal.
  2. The circulator shall be water lubricated, direct drive, requiring no seals, couplers or bearing assembly. Ceramic shaft and carbon bearing construction shall be capable of running without fluid for 10 days without damage to shaft or bearings.
  3. The circulator shall be repairable in-line without removal of the circulator from the piping using a stainless steel replaceable cartridge. Cartridge shall be provided with a 3 year warranty.
  4. The circulator shall incorporate a removable integral spring loaded flow check to eliminate fluid circulation when the pump is off.
  5. The circulator shall incorporate an integral condensate baffle to eliminate condensation on the motor housing when supplying chilled water down to 40°F. Alternative manufacturing processes that delay the effect of condensation versus preventing it shall not be allowed. Specifically extra coating on the windings is not acceptable.
  6. Circulator shall be rated for 200 psi working pressure at 220°F fluid temperature.
  7. An integral variable speed drive (VSD) shall accept a 0-10 Vdc or 4-20 mA modulating control signal to control the speed of the circulator motor. VSD shall incorporate an exercise sequence to run the pump for 20 seconds if there has been no run signal for 72 hours.



8. Circulator shall bear UL label.
  9. The manufacturer shall guarantee system operation for one full heating season and one full cooling season, to the extent that the HVAC system shall deliver the heating and cooling capacities as specified. The value of the guarantee shall be equal to the value of retrofitting the system to a two-pipe system.
- C. Twin Tee
1. Tee fittings for terminal unit tie in to system distribution piping shall be Taco Twin Tee.
  2. Twin tee fittings shall be made of ductile iron or bronze and shall be rated for 200 psi.
  3. The fitting shall be manufactured with two system connections and two terminal unit connections. The system connections shall be offered in three types: sweat, threaded, and grooved. Terminal unit connections shall all be threaded.
  4. The fitting shall include an internal baffle that prevents short circuiting of the terminal unit fluid from inlet to outlet.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

##### A. General

1. All pumps, other than circulators, shall be fitted with a multi-purpose or balancing valve or other means of providing system balance.
2. All pumps shall be fitted with instrument test port on inlet and outlet ports unless otherwise indicated.

##### B. Installation

1. Contractor shall install pump in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pipe connections to pumps shall be made in such a manner so as not to exert any stress on pump housings. Pumps may be suspended direct in the pipes provided the piping can support the pump. If necessary to meet this requirement, provide additional pipe supports and flex connectors.
2. The pump shaft shall be installed horizontally. The pump may be installed in horizontal or vertical pipes as long as the pump shaft is parallel to the ground.
3. Arrows on the pump housing indicate the liquid flow direction through the pump. The liquid flow direction can be horizontal or vertical, depending on the pump motor and wiring box (as a group). Motor/wiring box may be turned to various positions and is described in the manufacturer's instructions.
4. For indoor use only.
5. Pumps shall NOT be run dry to check rotation.
6. The applicable fluid temperature range is 14°- 230°F (-10 – 110°C).
7. Control wiring for remote mounted switches and sensor/transmitters shall be the responsibility of the controls contractor. All wiring shall be performed per manufacturer's instructions and all applicable codes.

END OF SECTION 232123



**SECTION 23 23 00 - REFRIGERANT PIPING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes removal of existing refrigerant containing equipment, refrigerant recovery and refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

**1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410 A:
  - 1. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 325 psig
  - 2. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 325 psig
- B. All work shall be performed in compliance with provisions of section 608 of 1990 US Clean Air Act and Title CFR 40, Part 82, Subpart F. and in accordance with New York City Fire Code and all other applicable NY state and Federal regulation.

**1.3 BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES**

- A. The following BMPs are recommended for management and recycle of refrigerant/CFCs:
  - 1. Use only EPA approved refrigerant handling machines when recharging or removing refrigerants.
  - 2. Employ certified technicians for refrigerant recovery.

**1.4 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. A. Materials shall conform to the latest edition of reference specifications and industry standards specified herein and applicable, and to pertinent codes and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Certify brazing procedures, brazers, and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX, for shop and jobsite brazing of piping work.



- B. **Manufacturer's Qualifications:** Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of pipes and pipe fittings of types and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 3 years.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. **Product Data:** For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop based on manufacturer's test data.
- B. **Shop Drawings:** Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
- C. **Technician Certification:** Submit qualification for refrigerant technician in accordance with requirements of Title 40 CFR. Part 82, Subpart F, Article 82.161. The technician shall have current Universal certification for servicing all types of equipment.
- D. **Equipment Certification:** Submit certification for refrigerant recovery equipment in accordance with requirements of Title 40 CFR. Part 82, Subpart F, Article 82.162.
- E. **Field quality-control test reports.**
- F. **Operation and maintenance data.**

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."**
- B. **Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."**

## 1.8 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. **Provide factory-applied plastic end caps on each length of pipe and tube. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage and handling as required to prevent pipe-end damage and eliminate dirt and moisture from inside of pipe and tube.**
- B. **Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.**

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. **Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.**
- B. **Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.**



- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

## 2.2 REFRIGERANTS

- A. Manufacturers: Furnished by refrigerant manufacturer.
- B. Refrigerant: R-410 A

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed** joints.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.



- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- N. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.
- O. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers with fire-stop.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Braze Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 5/8 : Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch .



2. NPS 1 : Maximum span, 72 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

### 3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 microns Hg. If vacuum holds for 12 hours at ambient temperatures of 60°F , system is ready for charging.
  3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.7 REFRIGERANT HANDLING

- A. Contractor shall follow provisions outlined in section 608 of the 1990 US Clean Air Act and Title 40 CFR, Part 82, Subpart F for safe handling and disposal of Class I and Class II refrigerants to include but not limited to:
  1. Refrigerant technician certification
  2. Refrigerant recovery equipment certification
  3. Appliance or equipment evacuation vacuum levels
  4. Hazardous materials manifest reporting and record keeping.
  5. Safe disposal of refrigerants



- B. In event of accidental release of refrigerant the contractor shall follow the procedures for reporting release of hazardous materials in accordance with NYC Fire Code, section 606.13, other applicable NY State and Federal Regulations.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  1. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  2. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  3. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.

### 3.9 REPORTING

- A. Contractor shall prepare a Certificate of Test in accordance with New York City Mechanical Code, Section 1108.4

END OF SECTION 23 23 00



## SECTION 23 31 13 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. LEED related scope of work
  - a. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - b. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - c. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - d. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements
2. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Mechanical Systems" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2007.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:



1. Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
2. Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2010, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
3. Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 7.2.4 - "Ventilation System Start-Up."
4. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.

**C. Shop Drawings:**

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

**D. Delegated-Design Submittal:**

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

**E. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:**

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.



- e. Access panels.
- f. Perimeter moldings.

F. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-Up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, "Transverse (Girth) Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-5, "Longitudinal Seams - Rectangular Ducts," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

#### 2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. All round and /or flat oval ducts shall be factory fabricated spiral duct and fittings. All spiral duct and fittings shall be manufactured by same company who has been in business for at least 10 years. Duct construction shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction



Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Lindab Inc.
- b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- c. SEMCO Incorporated.
- d. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Branch connections shall be made with 90° conical and 45° straight taps as shown on the drawings. All branch connections shall be made as a separate fitting. Factory or field installation of taps into spiral duct shall not be allowed without written approval of the engineer. Manufacturer's published individual fitting performances shall be on file with the design engineer ten (10) days prior to bid.

C. All elbows shall be fabricated with a centerline radius of 1.5 times the diameter. 90° and 45° elbows in diameters 3" round through 12" round shall be stamped or pleated elbows. All other elbows shall be of the gored type, fabricated in accordance with the following: 2 gores less than 36°, 3 gores for 37° thru 71°F and 5 gores for 72° thru 90°.

D. Circumferential and longitudinal seams of all fittings shall be a continuous weld or spot welded and sealed with mastic. All welds shall be painted to prevent corrosion.

E. All field joints for round ducts up to and including 36" diameter and oval ducts up to and including 41" major axis shall be made with a 2" slip-fit or slip coupling. Diameters 38" round and larger shall be provided with AccuFlange®, Spiralmate® or equal, flanged connections. AccuFlange, or equal, flanged connections may also be used in lieu of slip connections on smaller sizes. Access doors shall be supplied by the duct manufacturer at all fire and/or smoke dampers. All flanges and access doors shall be factory installed. Shipments of loose flanges, access doors, or taps for field installation into spiral duct will not be allowed.

F. All flat oval duct shall be reinforced with trapeze type reinforcement, as recommended by the manufacturer, to limit wall deflection to 3/4" and reinforcement deflection to 1/4".

G. Metal gauges for single wall round and flat oval duct shall be as follows:

1. Spiral Duct for positive pressure & negative pressure

Diameter	Galvanized Sheet Steel Metal Gauges			
	+ 4 in wg	+10" wg	- 4 in wg	-10" wg
3" thru 16"	26	26	24	22

2. Solid spiral seam inner shall be 24 for duct sizes up to 20 inches and 20 gauge for larger ducts.



## 2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: **G90**
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches

## 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Liner shall be limited to ductwork indicated on plans.
- B. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    - b. Johns Manville.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:



- a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
  - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
    - a. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-19, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s).
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
  - a. Fan discharges.
  - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.



9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
  - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  2. Tape Width: **4 inches**
  3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
  10. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.



1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Non-corrosive Environments: Electro galvanized steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for MRI Room: Aluminum rods with stainless steel nuts in MRI rooms within shielded zones.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 (Table 4-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel and Aluminum Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials. Stainless steel screws and fasteners for duct within shielded zone in MRI Rooms
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
  3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or stainless steel



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
  - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
  - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
  - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.



5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 4-1 "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 DUCT CLEANINESS

- A. All ductwork openings shall be taped closed with polyethylene when delivered to site. All installed hung ducts openings shall be protected from construction dust. All open end return duct opening shall be protected until ready for use.
- B. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
  1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  4. Coils and related components.
  5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- C. Provide temporary MERV 11 construction filters and run continuously for 48 hours to clean system of construction debris or dust.



### 3.7 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Mechanical Systems."

### 3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

#### A. Supply, Return or Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Conditioning Units, Return Fans and Exhaust Fans
  - a. Material: Galvanized Steel
  - b. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - c. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6
  - e. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6

#### B. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
- 2. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.

#### C. Liner:

- 1. Supply and Return: Fibrous glass, Type I, thickness minimum 1 inch unless otherwise noted on plans.
- 2. Supply and Return Serving Venue Hall: Fibrous glass, Type I, thickness minimum 2 inch unless otherwise noted on plans.
- 3. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, thickness minimum 1-1/2 inch unless otherwise noted on plans.

#### D. Elbow Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- 2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-3, "Round Duct Elbows."
  - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-



1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.

1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5

- b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

E. Branch Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-6, "Branch Connections."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
- 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-5, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are not permitted.
  - a. Velocity 1500 fpm or Lower: Conical tap.
  - b. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Flexible ducts.
9. Duct accessory hardware.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. LEED related scope of work

1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittal:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2007, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
  - a. Special fittings.
  - b. Manual volume damper installations.
  - c. Control damper installations.
  - d. Fire-damper and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors.
  - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Operation and maintenance data.



#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and for exposed ducts.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

##### 2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 3. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 6. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 2000 fpm
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg
- E. Frame: 0.063-inch- thick extruded aluminum, with welded corners and mounting flange.



- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center-pivoted, maximum 6-inch width, 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized steel
  - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
  - 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
  - 3. Electric actuators.
  - 4. Chain pulls.
  - 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
    - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20-gage minimum.
  - 6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
  - 7. Screen Material: Stainless steel
  - 8. Screen Type: Bird
  - 9. 90-degree stops.

### 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

#### A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - d. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - e. Ruskin Company.
- 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream .
- 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
- 4. Frames:
  - a. Hat-shaped, galvanized -steel channels, 0.064-inch minimum thickness.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.



c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

- a. Multiple or single blade.
- b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
- c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
- d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

7. Bearings:

- a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
- b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

**B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
- d. Nailor Industries Inc.
- e. Ruskin Company.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream .

3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.

4. Frames:

- a. Hat-shaped, aluminum sheet channels, 0.10-inch minimum thickness.
- b. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

5. Blades:

- a. Multiple or single blade.
- b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
- c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
- d. Roll formed Aluminum blades, 0.10 inch thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.

7. Bearings:

- a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
- b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.



## 2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  4. Ruskin Company.
- B. Frames:
1. Hat shaped.
  2. Galvanized-steel channels, 0.064 inch thick.
  3. Mitered and welded corners.
- C. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches.
  2. Opposed-blade design.
  3. Galvanized steel.
  4. 0.064 inch thick.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene edging.
- D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- E. Bearings:
1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  4. Ruskin Company.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 4000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.



- E. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.
  - 2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

## 2.6 COMBINATION FIRE SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 4. Ruskin Company.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum UL555S rating of 2000-fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame: Damper frame shall be 16 ga. galvanized steel formed into a 5" x 1" structural hat channel. Top and bottom frame members on dampers less than 17" high shall be low profile design to maximize the free area of these smaller dampers. Frame shall be 4-piece construction with 1 1/2" (minimum) integral overlapping gusset reinforcements in each corner to assure square corners and provide maximum resistance to racking.
- F. Blades: Damper blades shall be 16 ga. galvanized steel strengthened by three longitudinal 1" deep Vee grooves running the entire length of each blade. Each blade shall be symmetrical relative to its axle pivot point, presenting identical performance characteristics with air flowing in either direction through the damper. Provide symmetrical blades of varying size as required to completely fill the damper opening. Each blade stop (at top and bottom of damper frame) shall occupy no more than 1/2" of the damper opening area to allow for maximum free area and to minimize pressure loss across the damper
- G. Seals:



- H. Blade Edge: Blade seals shall be extruded silicone rubber permanently bonded to the appropriate blade edges.
- I. Jamb: Flexible stainless steel compression type.
- J. Linkage: Concealed in jamb.
- K. 6. Axles: Minimum ½ inch dia. plated steel. Frame: Galvanized steel (in gauges required by manufacturer's UL listing).
- L. Sleeves: Damper shall be supplied as a single assembly with an integral factory sleeve.
- M. Retaining Angles: Damper shall be supplied with factory retaining angles sized to provide installation overlap in accordance with the manufacturer's UL listing.
- N. Bearings: Axle bearings shall be sintered bronze sleeve type rotating in polished extruded holes in the damper frame.
- O. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 250 deg F rated fusible links.
- P. Leakage rating: Class II
- Q. Actuators: Type Electric, 120V AC, 2-position
- R. Mounting: External

## 2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - 4. SEMCO Incorporated.
  - 5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 2-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

## 2.8 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Pottorff; a division of PCI Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  - 3. Young Regulator Company.



- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Brass.
- D. Cable: Stainless steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed, 3/4 inches deep.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

## 2.9 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:

- 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
- 2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
- 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
- 5. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- 6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."

- 1. Door:
  - a. Double wall, rectangular.
  - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
  - c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
  - d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
  - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
  - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.

- C. Pressure Relief Access Door:

- 1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
- 2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
- 3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
- 4. Factory set at 10-inch wg
- 5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
- 6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
- 7. Latches: Cam.
- 8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.



9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.10 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip [3-1/2 inches] [5-3/4 inches] wide attached to 2 strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
  1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
  2. Minimum Tensile Strength: 500 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.
- G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
  1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
  7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

## 2.11 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Non-insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
- C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F.
- D. Flexible Duct Connectors:
  - 1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

## 2.12 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft or control dampers where noted on plans.



- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
  - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
  - 4. At drain pans and seals.
  - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors; and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 7. Elsewhere as indicated.
- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- J. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
- K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- M. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 6-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- P. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.



3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00



SECTION 23 34 16 - HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Centrifugal Inline Fans

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan performance ratings on actual Project site elevations above sea level.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 REFERENCES:

- A. AMCA 99, "Standards Handbook"
- B. ANSI/AMCA Standard 204-96, "Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans"
- C. ANSI/AMCA Standard 210-99, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating"
- D. AMCA Publication 211-05, "Certified Ratings Program - Product Rating Manual for Fan Air Performance"
- E. AMCA Standard 300-96, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans"
- F. AMCA Publication 311-05, "Certified Ratings Program - Product Rating Manual For Fan Sound Performance"
- G. AMBA - Method of Evaluating Load Ratings of Bearings ANSI-11 (r1999).
- H. OSHA guideline 1910.212 - General requirements for Machine Guarding. ([www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov))
- I. OSHA guideline 1926.300 - General requirements for safe operation and maintenance of hand and power tools. ([www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov))



- J. OSHA guideline 1910.219 - General requirements for guarding safe use of mechanical power transmission apparatus. ([www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov))
- K. UL Standard 705, "Power Ventilators"

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA 1.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.



- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

#### 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company.
  - 3. Twin City
- B. Description: In-line, belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.
- C. Housing:
  - 1. Construction material: Galvanized
  - 2. Square design constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel and shall include square duct mounting collars
  - 3. Housing and bearing supports shall be constructed of heavy gauge bolted and welded steel construction to prevent vibration and to rigidly support the shaft and bearing assembly.
  - 4. Insulated with 1 inch thickness for noise reduction and condensation control.
- D. Housing Supports and Drive Frame:
  - 1. Housing supports are constructed of structural steel with formed flanges
  - 2. Drive frame is welded steel which supports shafts, bearings and reinforcement for housing for belt drive units.
  - 3. Drive frame supports the motor for direct drive units
- E. Motors
  - 1. Motor enclosures: Open drip-proof



2. Motors are permanently lubricated, heavy duty ball bearing type to match with the fan load and pre-wired to the specific voltage and phase.

**F. Drive Assembly for Belt-Driven Units:**

1. Motor mounted on pivoted motor plate with adjusting screws to adjust belt tension
2. Belts, pulleys, and keys oversized for a minimum of 150 percent of driven horsepower
3. Belts: Static free and oil resistant
4. Pulleys: Cast type, keyed, and securely attached to wheel and motor shafts
5. Motor pulleys are adjustable for final system balancing
6. Readily accessible for maintenance

**G. Fan Wheels:**

1. Backward inclined, non-overloading, aluminum construction, statically and dynamically balanced to AMCA Standard 204-05
2. The wheel cone and fan inlet will be matched and shall have precise running tolerances for maximum performance and operating efficiency
3. Single thickness blades are securely riveted or welded to a heavy gauge back plate and wheel cone.

**H. Disconnect Switches**

1. NEMA rated: NEMA 1 indoors, NEMA 3R outdoors
2. Positive electrical shut-off
3. Wired from fan motor to junction box

**I. Duct Collars**

1. Two sided access panels, permit easy access to all internal components
2. Located perpendicular to the motor mounting panel

**J. Dampers**

1. Types: Gravity for constant volume application, motorized for variable volume application
2. Galvanized frames with pre-punched mounting holes
3. Balanced for minimal resistance to flow

**K. Accessories:**

1. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
2. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm) mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
3. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
4. Vibration Isolators:
  - a. Type: Spring and Neoprene
  - b. Static Deflection: 1 inch minimum
5. Spark Arrestance Class: C



## 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fans level and plumb.
- B. Support floor-mounting units using spring isolators having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Control for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Secure vibration controls to support steel.
- C. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and spring hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration Control for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label fans according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install line-sized piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain.
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."



3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and those connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  5. Adjust belt tension.
  6. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  7. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  8. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Mechanical Systems" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
  9. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

END OF SECTION 23 34 16



## SECTION 23 37 13 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Ceiling Diffusers
  - 2. Ceiling Linear Slot Diffusers
  - 3. Supply Grille
  - 4. Ceiling Twist Diffuser
  - 5. Return or Transfer Grille
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.
- C. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS CD-1

- A. Architectural square panel ceiling diffusers shall be the TITUS Model OMNI (steel) diffuser of the sizes and mounting types shown on the plans and outlet schedule. The OMNI diffuser shall have a 22-gauge steel face panel that captures a secondary 22-gauge panel. The face panel is removable by means of four hanger brackets. The exposed surface of the face panel shall be smooth, flat, and free of visible fasteners.
- B. The face panel shall project  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch below the outside border of the diffuser backpan. Panels projecting more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch below the outside border are not acceptable. The back of the face panel shall have an aerodynamically shaped, rolled edge to ensure a tight horizontal discharge pattern. A single metal thickness on the edges of the face panel will not be accepted. Ceiling diffusers with a 24 x 24-inch full face shall have no less than an 18 x 18-inch face panel size.



Ceiling diffusers with a 12 x 12-inch full face shall have no less than a 9 x 9-inch face panel size.

- C. The backpan shall be one-piece precision die-stamped and shall include an integrally drawn inlet (welded-in inlets and corner joints are not acceptable). The diffuser backpan shall be constructed of 22-gauge steel (OMNI) or aluminum (OMNI-AA). The diffuser neck shall have a minimum of 1¼-inch depth available for duct connection.
- D. The finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315°F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H. The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.
- E. Include insulation blanket. The insulation will be R-6, foil-backed, and provide an additional 1-inch gap around the neck to install insulated flex duct.
- F. The manufacturer shall provide published performance data for the square panel diffuser. The diffuser shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 70-1991.

## 2.2 CEILING LINEAR SLOT OUTLETS (LS-1)

- A. Provide all materials and equipment required for a complete installation of all linear and modular slot air distribution systems as shown on the architectural and mechanical drawings and/or indicated in the architectural or mechanical specifications. The systems shall be complete in every respect and shall include all required appurtenances. Mechanical contractor shall furnish and install all plenums, hoods, blank-offs and associated sheet metal components including all duct connections thereto.
- B. Provide all continuous linear slot and modular slot diffusers as shown on the drawings. The slot diffusers shall integrate into the ceiling system. Where curved linear slot diffusers are indicated, they shall be stretched formed to the exact radii required. Rolled or segmented linear slot diffusers will not be accepted.
- C. The linear slot diffusers shall have a single slot unless shown otherwise and shall be capable of being used for supply air, return air, exhaust air or any combination thereof.
- D. The linear slot diffusers shall be capable of supporting the ceiling system. Linear diffusers supported by screws in the flanges or from air plenums are unacceptable. For lay-in ceiling, provide hanger wire support clips that are integral with the linear slot diffusers allowing the linear slot diffusers to be supported from the building structure with ceiling wire. For hard ceilings, provide clips that are integral with the linear slot diffusers allowing the diffusers to be secured directly to the ceiling framing without the requirement for hanger supports. Provide spline clips to secure joints and ceiling tees to the diffusers.
- E. Provide ends and corners as required. Ends shall be butt type, field installed, or mitered picture frame type factory installed, as indicated herein or shown on the drawings. Corners shall be mitered one piece unit.

- F. Pattern controllers shall be one piece extruded aluminum, 24 inches long maximum, positioned between spring loaded spacers. Pattern controllers shall allow the airstream to be directed flat against the ceiling in either direction or downward as well as allowing throw reduction every two feet along the entire length of the linear slot diffusers. The airstream shall be maintained at the ceiling plane and shall not dump when volume is reduced. Only extruded aluminum pattern controllers are acceptable. Where shown or noted pattern controllers shall be designed to allow the airstream to be jetted into the occupied space and be adjustable to vector the airstream as required.
- G. Material shall be minimum wall thickness 0.062 inches extruded aluminum. Spring steel retainers shall be used under the spacers to hold the slot diffusers assembly tightly together and allow the slot diffusers to be disassembled easily for field trimming. Materials other than extruded aluminum and spring steel will not be accepted.
- H. Flanges exposed to view shall be painted factory standard white. All other surfaces shall be painted flat black. Provide paint samples if requested.
- I. Model numbers are indicated on the plan schedules.
- J. All slot diffusers shall be manufactured by the same manufacturer of the plenums and hoods. No exceptions will be allowed. Plenum lengths and entry collar sizes shall be as indicated on the plan schedules.
- K. Plenums shall be minimum 24-gauge galvanized steel and lined inside with black matte fiberglass insulation. Hoods shall be 51 percent free area and constructed of 24-gauge perforated sheet metal painted flat black.
- L. Where shown on the drawings or otherwise indicated, provide a friction type volume damper located in the entry collar of the supply air plenum, accessible through the slot diffuser.
- M. Air test and balance of linear and modular slot diffusers systems shall be by this section and be in accordance with the testing and balancing portion section of the specifications. Position all FlowBar pattern controllers in their normal operation positions and perform all air testing and balancing of all slot diffuser systems in full accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- N. All slot diffusers shall be performance tested with air plenums as a composite assembly in full accordance with ASHRAE, and/or ARI standards. If requested, the contractor shall provide for a visit by the mechanical consulting engineer to the product testing laboratory to verify performance data and testing procedures. All cost associated thereto shall be provided at the expense of the contractor.
- O. Diffusers shall be selected to achieve a throw to room length ratio which meets the requirements of the ASHRAE 2001 Fundamentals Handbook, Chapter 32, Table 4, at both maximum design flow rate, and for VAV systems, at the minimum flow rate expected during partial occupancy. Diffusers shall be selected to achieve a minimum of 70 percent ADPI over the range of expected loads in the space. The diffusers' reported performance shall be based on tests conducted in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 70-91. ADPI performance on at least one unit size of the selected diffuser shall have been tested in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 113-90, to validate conformance and applicability to the ASHRAE table.



- P. TITUS FlowBar system is the basis of the specification. Comparable products may be submitted as a substitution provided they are in full compliance with all sections of this specification and meet performance requirement. The contractor should note that if the substitution adds costs to any other sections of this specification, or causes the architect and/or engineer to incur redesign costs, the contractor shall be fully responsible for the reimbursement of all these costs.

### 2.3 SUPPLY GRILLE (SG-1)

- A. Steel supply grilles shall be TITUS Model 300R (double deflection) or approved equal of the sizes and mounting types shown on the plans and outlet schedule. The deflection blades shall be available parallel to the short dimension of the grille. Construction shall be of steel with a 1¼-inch wide border on all sides. Screw holes shall be countersunk for a neat appearance. Corners shall be welded with full penetration resistance welds.
- B. Deflection blades shall be contoured to a specifically designed and tested cross-section to meet published test performance data. Blades shall be spaced on ¾-inch centers. Blades shall have steel friction pivots on both ends to allow individual blade adjustment without loosening or rattling. Plastic blade pivots are not acceptable.
- C. Optional opposed-blade volume damper shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel. Damper must be operable from the face of the grille.
- D. The grille finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315°F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H. The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.
- E. The manufacturer shall provide published performance data for the grille. The grille shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 70-1991.

### 2.4 ADJSUTABLE TWIST DIFFUSER

- A. Furnish and install Price model RDA high induction, variable discharge radial twist outlets of the sizes and mounting styles shown on the plans and air distribution schedule. Diffuser shall consist of a low height radial outlet element with circular face / circular face in a metal panel for Lay-in applications. The underside of the radial vanes shall be flush with the surrounding ceiling surface. The diffuser pattern shall be field adjustable from horizontal to vertically downward using a vertically mobile guide-ring for pattern adjustment. Means of adjustment shall be manual / controlled by integral servomotor. The diffuser shall be aluminum construction with a powder coat finish. Color shall be black matte finish
- B. Features shall be as follows:
1. Turbulent, mixing air flow.
  2. Strong, stable air jet at low air flow rates.
  3. Adjustable discharge pattern from horizontal to vertical down.
  4. Suitable for mounting heights from 8 to 40 feet, depending on size and volume flow rate.
  5. Angle of vertical projection is adjustable to suit room height and heat load.
  6. Discharge pattern is manually adjustable; optional servomotor adjustment is available.
  7. Radial vanes are flush with surrounding ceiling.



8. Radial outlet is removable from room side.

- C. Price Model RDA (basis of design) or approved equal. Acoustic performance to match or exceed basis of design performance.

## 2.5 RETURN OR TRANSFER GRILLE (RG /TG)

- A. Steel return grilles shall be TITUS AeroBlade Series Model 25R (½-inch blade spacing) for the sizes and mounting types as shown on the plans and outlet schedule. The fixed deflection blades shall be available parallel to the short dimension of the grille. Construction shall be of steel with a ¼-inch wide border on all sides and a minimum border gauge of 20. Corners shall be assembled with full penetration resistance welds with a reinforcing patch for extra strength.
- B. Coordinate blade orientation ( parallel to short or long dimension) with Architect.
- C. Blades shall be accurately formed to a proven curvature that has been certified according to current industry standards in a certified laboratory. Blades shall have a minimum gauge of 20 with a fixed deflection angle of 30°.
- D. Optional opposed-blade volume damper shall be constructed of heavy gauge steel. Damper must be operable from the face of the grille.
- E. The grille finish shall be #26 white. The finish shall be an anodic acrylic paint, baked at 315°F for 30 minutes. The pencil hardness must be HB to H. The paint must pass a 100-hour ASTM B117 Corrosive Environments Salt Spray Test without creepage, blistering or deterioration of film. The paint must pass a 250-hour ASTM D870 Water Immersion Test. The paint must also pass the ASTM D2794 Reverse Impact Cracking Test with a 50-inch pound force applied.
- F. The manufacturer shall provide published performance data for the grille. The grille shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 70-1991.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.



- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13

SECTION 23 41 00 - NOISE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Provide noise control systems for equipment, piping and ductwork including:
  - 1. Sound attenuating units.
  - 2. Duct lining
  - 3. Duct and pipe lagging.
  - 4. Ductwork enclosure for soundproofing
  - 5. Soundproofing of construction.
- B. Acoustic performance of equipment systems and air distribution devices:
  - 1. It is the intent of this specification that noise levels from HVAC equipment (air-conditioning and/or ventilating equipment, ducts, grills, diffusers, mixing boxes, fan coil units, pumps, cooling towers, etc.) will not exceed the Noise Criteria Curves (NC) described in Paragraph 3 of this Section. Noise Criteria Curves establish a one number rating for evaluating the acceptability of a sound pressure spectrum according to the average person's hearing. Noise Criteria Curves and their related sound pressure equivalents for each frequency as described in the 1987 ASHRAE Handbook Systems Volume.
  - 2. These NC levels should be used as a guide in the event of product substitutions and shop drawing modifications. The NC levels shall also serve as a gauge by which the results of workmanship and care of installation will be judged from an acoustical standpoint, since a poor installation can lead to the generation of noise.
  - 3. Noise Criteria for occupied spaces and in particular Auditorium for this project shall be NC 30 or better due to mechanical equipment with anticipated 10 dB room noise attenuation.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Provide noise control to avoid excessive noise in the building due to the operation of machinery or equipment, or due to interconnected piping, ductwork or conduit.
- B. Acoustical Testing/Quality Assurance:



1. The contractor shall cooperate with regard to sound tests (ARI 575, ANSI S1.13) which may be conducted by the Owner or his representative to verify that noise criteria are met. See Section 15990 for Vibration Testing and Noise Level Testing by Contractor.
2. The contractor shall notify the Architect of any changes which will affect the acoustical performance.

#### 1.4 WORKMANSHIP

- A. Workmanship is critical in achieving the objective of noise control and it is critical that all noise control work must be installed in good workmanship like manner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOUND ATTENUATORS

- A. Galvanized steel casing and inner faces, all internal components shall be spot-welded. Seams shall be lock formed, mastic filled and be airtight.
- B. Filler material shall be of inorganic mineral or glass fiber under a minimum 5% compression. Filler material shall also be inert, vermin and moisture proof. Flame spread classification of 10-25, fuel contributed 0-15, smoke development 0-20, in accordance with NFPA 255, UL No. 723.
- C. Acoustical performance shall be established by ASTM E-477-96 procedures. Dynamic insertion loss, air generated noise and aerodynamic performance test results, both in positive and negative flow, with pressure drop ratings shall be supplied that meets or exceeds requirements established later in this Specification.
- D. Manufacturers:
  1. Industrial Acoustics Company
  2. Vibro-Acoustics
  3. United McGill Corporation
  4. The AeroSonics Corporation

#### 2.2 SOUND-LININGS

- A. Acoustical performance shall be established by ASTM C423-90 procedures. Sound Absorption Coefficients with Type "A" mounting per ASTM E795 shall be supplied that meets or exceeds requirements established later in this Specification.
- B. Duct acoustical lining shall be roll form, 1-1/2inch thick roll-form fiberglass insulation with a surface acrylic EPA registered anti-microbial coating that will not support biological growth, and meets ASTM G21 and G22 specifications as called out in the drawings or specifications.
- C. Duct lining shall be adhered by minimum 50% covering of a fire retardant adhesive in combination with non-ferrous mechanical fasteners.
- D. All transverse and longitudinal abutting edges of duct lining shall be sealed and lapped 3" with a heavy coat of adhesive.

E. Provide metal nosing over transversely-oriented liner edges facing the air stream.

F. Manufacturers:

1. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Company
2. Johns Manville Insulation Division
3. CertainTeed Corporation

### 2.3 DUCT AND PIPE LAGGING

A. Acoustical performance shall be established by ASTM E413 and E90 procedures. Insertion loss, Transmission loss and STC data shall be supplied that meets or exceeds requirements established later in this Specification.

B. Where indicated on the drawings, duct/pipe shall be wrapped with a minimum 2" thick glass or mineral fiber blanket with a minimum 3.0 lb/ft<sup>3</sup> density, and a mass loaded vinyl sheet covered with an aluminum foil jacket. Complete system shall provide a minimum STC-23 as measured in an independent accredited acoustical laboratory in accordance with ASTM E90 and E413. Insertion Loss data indicating an IL Insertion Loss value of 25 at 500 Hz. shall also be submitted.

C. Manufactures:

1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
2. Childers Products Company
3. Acoustical Duct & Pipe Lag from Sound Seal, a division of United Process, Inc.
4. The Proudfoot Company, Inc.

### 2.4 SPLIT SEALS

A. Split Seals consist of pipe halves with minimum 3/4"(20mm) thick neoprene sponge cemented to the inner faces. The seal shall be tightened around the pipe to eliminate clearance between the inner sponge face and the piping. Concrete may be packed around the seal to make it integral with the floor, wall or ceiling if the seal is not in place prior to the construction of the building member. Seals shall project a minimum of 1"(25mm) past either face of the wall. Where temperatures exceed 240°F (115°C), 10 lb. density fiberglass may be used in lieu of the sponge. Seals shall be Type SWS as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL:

- A. No electrical conduit, fixture, ceiling suspension wires or other elements of the building construction shall be attached to or abutted against the duct and piping systems.
- B. Where ducts or piping penetrate walls, ceilings and floors of the occupied spaces, or ceiling void partitions or acoustically rated elements whether shown on the drawings or not, acoustically seal the penetration.

- C. Contain rough-in of piping within stud wall cavities no less than 1/4-inch from the plane of the studs and 1 inch from gypsum board or other wall sheathing.

### 3.2 SOUND PROOFING OF CONSTRUCTION

- A. Required for penetrations of ductwork, pipes, and conduits through walls, floors and ceilings of mechanical rooms, electrical rooms with transformers, and Sound-Critical Spaces such as Dance Studio and Theater, as well as those walls, floors, and ceilings indicated on the architectural drawings.
- B. The Contractor shall ensure that the sound control performance of structures be maintained in accordance with the drawings and specifications. All penetrations shall be installed in a manner that results in complete air tightness through structure. If a condition occurs where penetration of the structure by a duct, pipe, conduit, etc., is not shown clearly on the drawings (or described in the specifications), the Contractor shall ask immediately for clarification of the method necessary to install the particular item.
- C. Penetrations of Single-Wythe Masonry and Concrete Constructions
  - 1. Ductwork:
    - a. Install a metal sleeve at the penetration. Size the sleeve to allow for 1" Armaflex lining and normal duct clearances. Line the sleeve with 1" thick Armaflex II Sheet Insulation (or equal).
    - b. Install duct through lined sleeve and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
    - c. Do not rigidly secure duct to wall with angles.
  - 2. Pipe/Conduit diameter = 1" or larger:
    - a. Install a metal sleeve at the penetration. Size the sleeve to allow for 1/2" Armaflex lining and normal pipe clearances. Line the sleeve with 1/2" thick Armaflex II Sheet Insulation (or equal). Alternately use acoustic split seals.
    - b. Install pipe/conduit through lined sleeve and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
    - c. Do not rigidly secure pipe/conduit to wall with angles.
    - d. Provide flex connection on one side of seal if crossing acoustic joint.
  - 3. Pipe/Conduit diameter < 1":
    - a. Wrap pipe/conduit with 1/2" thick Armstrong Self-Seal Armaflex 2000 Pipe Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
    - b. Grout tightly to the Armaflex cover on the pipe/conduit.
    - c. Trim Armaflex to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
- D. Penetrations of Single Stud Drywall Constructions
  - 1. Ductwork:
    - a. Wrap with 1" thick Armstrong Armaflex II Sheet Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
    - b. Install drywall tight to the Armaflex wrap.



- c. Trim Armaflex to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
2. Pipe diameter = 1" or larger:
  - a. Wrap with 1/2" thick Armstrong Self-Seal Armaflex 2000 Pipe Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
  - b. Install a metal pipe sleeve around the Armaflex wrap.
  - c. Install the drywall around the sleeve and spackle tightly to full thickness of partition.
  - d. Trim Armaflex and sleeve to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
3. Pipe diameter < 1":
  - a. Wrap with 1/2" thick Armstrong Self-Seal Armaflex 2000 Pipe Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
  - b. Install the drywall tight to the Armaflex wrap.
  - c. Trim Armaflex to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
4. Multiple Duct/Pipe Penetrations
  - a. Where a series of duct, conduits or pipes are penetrating the wall/floor/ceiling, each duct/conduit/pipe shall be separated by minimum 4" in all directions.
  - b. Multiple duct/pipe/conduit penetrations at one location (i.e., one large opening for a series of pipe runs) is not recommended.
5. Penetrations of Double-Wythe Masonry/Concrete and/or Double Stud Drywall and/or Combination Constructions
  - a. Use same techniques described above EXCEPT do not bridge the two studs or wythes with solid members such as sleeves or stud frames. Each sleeve or frame must be completely separate for each individual wythe or stud.
6. Provide flex connections for duct / pipe on one side of seal if crossing acoustic joint.

### 3.3 DUCTWORK ENCLOSURE FOR SOUNDPROOFING

- A. Where indicated on drawings, duct shall be enclosed on all four sides (or air-tight to the slab above) with a separate 2-1/2" steel stud filled with 2" thick, 3 pound density fiberglass and covered with 2 thicknesses of 5/8" thick gypsum wallboard. Wherever possible, joints between the base and face layers shall be staggered by a minimum of 6 inches. All gypsum board joints on both the base and face layers shall be taped. Use acoustical caulking to seal all interfaces with structure. Treatment shall be applied to elbows, transitions, branch-takeoffs, etc. that are included in the applicable duct section.
- B. Where access is required, approved sheetrock covered metal access panels shall be installed with perimeter gaskets.
- C. Where enclosure intersects a metal deck, insure that the gypsum wallboard is cut to the shape of the flutes and caulked air-tight.



**3.4 SOUND LININGS:**

- A. Provide sound linings on all supply and return ductwork within mechanical rooms but not less than 15 ft (25ft) from each fan.
- B. Sound lined boots at return and exhaust registers.
- C. Provide sound linings minimum 10ft downstream of all terminal devices.
- D. Provide 2 inch thick sound linings for all ductwork serving Performance Hall.

**3.5 SERVICES PENETRATIONS**

- A. Pipe and ductwork: Where pipe and ductwork penetrates acoustical partitions, provide acoustic seal around the piping and ductwork.
- B. Electrical Box Sealant: Backs of electrical boxes, light fittings etc., in acoustically rated constructions shall be sealed airtight by sheet caulking.

**3.6 SILENCER INSTALLATION**

- A. Silencer manufacturer's basic installation requirements shall not be compromised.
- B. Where silencers penetrate acoustical partitions, provide acoustic seal around the silencer.

**3.7 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS:**

- A. All isolated equipment to be connected with long lengths of flexible steel conduit from junction box, type depending on environment.

END OF SECTION 23 41 00



SECTION 235700 - HEAT EXCHANGERS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes plate heat exchangers.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
1. Structural members to which heat exchangers will be attached.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Plate and frame where indicated shall be constructed to section VIII Div 1 of the ANSI/ASME Unfired Pressure Vessels Code including latest addenda.
- B. The plate and frame heat exchanger shall be affixed with ASME Code stamp and hydrostatically tested at 1½ times the design pressure.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site under provisions of Division 1.
- B. Store and protect products under provisions of Division 1.
- C. Protect internals from entry of foreign material by temporary caps on flanged openings.
- D. Provide one set of wrenches for disassembly of plate type heat exchangers under provisions of General Conditions and Division 1 as applicable.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BRAZED PLATE HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. GEA Heat Exchangers
  2. FlatPlate, Inc.
  3. Taco
  4. Tranter PHE, Inc.
- B. Configuration: Brazed assembly consisting of two end plates, one with threaded or grooved nozzles and pattern-embossed plates.



- C. End-Plate Material: Type 316 stainless steel.
- D. Threaded Nozzles: Type 316 stainless steel.
- E. Plate Material: Type 316 stainless steel.
- F. Brazing Material: Copper
- G. Mounting bracket: Manufacturer Standard.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 HEAT-EXCHANGER INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment as indicated on the Drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's printed recommendations.
- B. Provide proper vacuum breaker and/or vent as required. Provide relief valve.
- C. Locate when floor mounted on concrete housekeeping pad. Provide manufacturer's mounting bracket..
- D. Install piping so heat exchangers do not support the weight of any piping.
- E. Pipe drain valves to nearest floor drain.

#### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connections shall be counter flow arrangement.
- B. Install shutoff valves at heat-exchanger inlet and outlet connections.
- C. Install relief valves on heat-exchanger heated-fluid connection and install pipe relief valves, full size of valve connection, to floor drain.
- D. Install hose end valve to drain shell.
- E. Install strainers with stainless steel 60 mesh screen in the fluid inlet side of plate and frame heat exchanger to prevent from blockage.

END OF SECTION 235700



SECTION 23 81 19 - WATER COOLED AIR-CONDITIONING UNIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged air-conditioning units with refrigerant compressors, water-cooled condensers, and controls; intended for indoor installations.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each unit indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.
- C. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit EA 4: Documentation required by Credit EA 4 indicating that equipment and refrigerants comply.
  2. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-20107, Section 6 - "Systems and Equipment."

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace self-contained air-conditioning units that fail in materials and workmanship within three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Self-Contained Air-Conditioners
    - a. Mammoth
    - b. Govenair
    - c. Carrier Racan



2.2 PACKAGED UNITS

- A. General: Provide factory-fabricated air handling units with capacity as indicated on the schedule. The units consist of factory-assembled components as shown on drawings, including but not limited to fan and motor assemblies, plenums, filters, drain pans, wiring, controls and other accessories as outlined in the schedule, enclosed in a single or multiple-piece casing as shown on the mechanical drawings. Units shall be stand-alone controlled, except where noted, with all control devices provided and wired for single point power connection by the manufacturer unless otherwise outlined in the schedule. Units shall have overall dimensions as indicated and fit into the space available with adequate clearance for service as determined by the Engineer. Tags and decals to aid in service or indicate caution areas shall be provided. Electrical wiring diagrams and installation, operation and maintenance (IOM) manuals shall be attached to the control panel access doors within each unit. Units shall be UL or ETL listed. Units shall be shipped in one piece or shall be split for shipment to accommodate freight as required, as shown on mechanical drawings.
- B. Unit Base and Floor: Unit perimeter base shall be completely welded and constructed from 4" structural tubing, and shall accommodate concrete pad installation as shown on drawings (Note: bolted or riveted bases are not acceptable). Unit base shall be internally insulated with 4" , R13.3 fiberglass. Unit base floor shall be constructed from 4-break formed steel panels, made from 14 gauge hot rolled steel (HRS). Floor panels shall be welded to each other, creating "I" beams at each floor panel junction. Floor panel junctions shall be located at 14" increments (maximum) or less, in order to provide floor rigidity and support as required for internal components. Unit floor panels shall be welded to perimeter base frame steel tubing. Unit floor shall be factory covered with top coat industrial grade membrane to ensure air and water tightness as well as walk-on grip. Floor membrane shall be high performance, sprayed, plural-component pure polyurea elastomer, based on amine-terminated polyether resins, amine chain extenders and prepolymers. Floor membrane shall be flexible, tough, resilient monolithic membrane with good water and chemical resistance, and shall resist to temperatures up to 250°F. Floor membrane materials shall be free of solvents and VOC's, shall be suitable for use in compartments handling conditioned air, and shall comply with the requirements for the Standard for Heating and Cooling Equipment, ANSI/UL 1995, third edition, dated 02/18/2005, section 5.10 and section 18. Unit base under liners shall be made of 24 gauge galvanized steel. Base frame construction shall include 2-stage thermal break, using gasket between base floor framing and under liners underneath, and floor membrane on top. Single wall floor construction with glued and pinned insulation and no sub-floor is not acceptable; non-insulated floor construction is not acceptable. Floor constructions which are not air and water tight are not acceptable. Entire base frame is to be painted with a phenolic coating for long term corrosion resistance. Base frame shall be attached to the unit at the factory. When rigging, base frame deflection shall be less than 1/360 of the unit length. All major components shall be supported by the base without sagging or pulsating.
- C. Unit Casing: Unit wall and roof rigid frame shall consist of 16 ga. pre-painted galvanized formed steel corner posts and 16 ga. G90 galvanized formed steel (1" x 2") intermediate frame posts, providing stable construction allowing for removal of any panel without affecting unit structural integrity. Units without framed type of construction are not acceptable. Exterior casing panels shall be attached to the gasketed (1" x 2" [25mm x 51mm]) steel frame with corrosion resistant fasteners. Air handling unit casing shall be of the "no-through-metal" design. Casing shall incorporate insulating thermal breaks as required so that, when fully assembled, there is no path of continuous unbroken metal to metal conduction from inner to outer surfaces. Provide necessary support to limit casing deflection to L/200 of the narrowest panel dimension.



If panels cannot meet this deflection, additional internal reinforcing is required. Units shall be designed for outdoor or indoor installation as indicated on schedule. Indoor units weatherized for outdoor use are not acceptable. All panel seams shall be caulked and sealed for an airtight unit. Leakage rates shall be less than 1% at design static pressure or 9" W.C. whichever is greater.

- D. **Double Wall Construction:** Units shall entirely be made of double wall construction. Single wall construction with coated insulation is not acceptable. Exposed insulation edges in the air stream are not acceptable. Unit panels shall be made of 18 ga. galvanized steel outer liners and 24 ga. galvanized steel inner liners.
- E. **Insulation:** Unit wall and roof panels shall be insulated with 3" thick, R12.9, 2.5 lb/cu. ft. non-compressed mineral wool insulation. Insulation shall meet the erosion requirements of UL 181 facing the air stream and fire hazard classification of 25/50 (per ASTM-84 and UL 723 and CAN/ULC S102-M88). All insulation edges shall be encapsulated within the panels. All perforated sections shall have insulation with black acrylic coating.
- F. **Access Doors:** Full size access door(s) allowing for periodic maintenance and inspections shall be provided for all serviceable components as shown on the plans. Removable panels are not acceptable. Doors shall be solid double wall insulated construction. Insulation shall be the same as unit panels. Both the inner and outer liners shall be made of the same material as unit cabinet outer liner construction. The door hinge assembly shall be die cast zinc with stainless steel pivot mechanism, completely adjustable. Hinges shall allow doors to open at 180° with no shear effect on the hinge side of the perimeter gasket. The door frame shall be extruded aluminum with a built in thermal break barrier and full perimeter gasket. The door gasket shall employ a double seal comprising of an adhesive neoprene compressible foam gasket on the outer door panel and an "automotive style" neoprene bulb gasket fixed onto the inner door frame for out-swing doors, "rippled" foam for in-swing doors. There shall be a minimum of two heavy duty cast; UV rated; nylon handles per door. Door handles shall be operable from both inside and outside of the unit. On all access doors where moving parts could cause injury, an ETL, UL 1995, and OSHA approved tool operated safety latch shall be provided.
- G. **Supply Fans:** The supply fans shall be Fan Wall System and consist of multiple, direct driven, arrangement multiple plenum fans constructed per AMCA requirements for the duty specified (Class I). All fans shall be selected to deliver the specified airflow quantity at the specified operating Total Static Pressure and specified fan/motor speed. The Fan Wall Array shall be selected to operate at a system Total Static Pressure that does not exceed 90% of the specified fan's peak static pressure producing capability at the specified fan/motor speed. Each fan/motor "cube" shall include an 11-gauge, A60 Galvanized steel intake wall, 14-gauge spun steel inlet funnel, and an 11-gauge G90 Galvanized steel motor support plate and structure. The fan intake wall, inlet funnel, and motor support structure shall be powder coated for superior corrosion resistance. All motors shall be standard pedestal mounted type, ODP, T-frame motors selected at the specified operating voltage, 1750 RPM, and efficiency as specified or as scheduled elsewhere. All motors shall include isolated bearings or shaft grounding. Each fan/motor cartridge shall be dynamically balanced to meet AMCA standard 204-96, category BV-5, to meet or exceed Grade 2.5 residual unbalance. The FWT array shall be provided with acoustical silencers. The silencers shall not increase the fan total static pressure, nor shall it increase the airway tunnel length of the Air Handling Unit when compared to the same FWT unit without the silencer array.
- H. **Supply Fan Motor:** The motor shall be heavy duty, open drip-proof (ODP), T-frame, 3-phase, 1800 RPM. Motor shall meet or exceed the efficiencies required by the Energy Policy Act



(EPA) 10/24/97. The motor shall be mounted on an adjustable heavy duty-sliding base. Motor shall have class F insulation, NEMA B design and have a 1.15 service factor.

- I. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD): A VFD varies the speed of the fan in order to vary the airflow through the unit. The VFD shall be mounted within the unit casing, separate from the air tunnel in a control panel. The louvered control panel door is ventilated with a fan for cooling. All wiring shall be factory installed. The VFD is factory installed.
- J. Bypass Switch (VFD) (3-position): The bypass switch utilizes 3 contactors. The output & bypass contactors are mechanically interlocked. A 4 position switch shall control the following modes of VFD operation:
  1. VFD; Switch shall connect the input and output of the drive. Motor speed will be controlled by the drive. Bypass shall be open.
  2. BYPASS; The input and output to the drive shall be open. The motor will be run directly on line. Fan will operate a design RPM. An auxiliary low voltage contact shall be made to the BMS.
  3. TEST; The input to the drive shall be closed in order to power the drive for testing. The drive output shall be open and the motor run on bypass. The fan shall operate at design RPM. A low voltage contact shall be made to signal the BMS.
  4. OFF
- K. INPUT LINE REACTORS: Mammoth supplied VFDs are solid state, with a Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) output waveform utilizing insulated gate bipolar transistors. Drive efficiency is 97% or better at full speed and full load. A 30 character Hand-Off-Auto alphanumeric display for: output frequency (Hz), speed (RPM), motor current, calculated % motor torque, calculated motor power (kW), elapsed time meter (resettable), and kWh and MWh meter (resettable). VFDs shall have an integral Line Reactor(s) to reduce the harmonics to the power line and to increase the fundamental power factor.
- L. Compressors (Hermetic Scroll): The compressor shall utilize an orbiting scroll with axial and radial compliance for compression. The compressor shall be a high efficiency, suction gas cooled, single speed, hermetic type, with three Teflon bearings and a cast iron motor frame. The compressor shall be mounted outside of the air stream in an insulated compartment on rubber-in-shear isolators. The compressor shall have an oil level sight glass, oil level adjustment fitting, high and low pressure taps and discharge line service valve w/access port. The compressor shall have a discharge check valve with an internal floating valve to silently prevent reverse rotation. The compressor shall have a quick acting discharge temperature probe, four motor winding temp sensors with a solid state module for compressor overload protection. Other safety devices include a crankcase heater, high and low pressure freeze protections. Each compressor shall have a separate and independent refrigeration circuit. The refrigerant circuit components shall include the compressor, a shell and tube condenser with integral liquid sub-cooling, a liquid line service/charging valve, a filter dryer and a sight glass.
  1. This unit is shipped without a refrigerant charge due to factory split shipment (or requires capability to be field split). After reassembly, the unit(s) will require pump down (evacuation) and refrigerant charging. Factory shall provide dry nitrogen "holding" charge only. Refrigerant, additional copper piping and insulation for field connections shall be supplied by others. Filter/drier shall be shipped loose for field installation.



2. Compressor sound package provided
- M. **Electronic Hot Gas Bypass Valves:** An Electronic Hot Gas Bypass Valve (EHGBV) shall allow the unit controller to modulate leaving air temperature between compressor stages (lead compressor). The leaving air temperature can typically be controlled to within 1°F. The EHGBV shall be installed in the lead-compressor circuit. The valve position is actuated with a stepper motor. The stepper motor/valve shall have 6386 steps. A control board shall be supplied to interface between the stepper motor and an analog signal from the unit controller. The unit controller shall send an analog signal of either 0 to 10 volts or 4 to 20 milliamps to the control board. The control board shall in turn control the stepper motor thus controlling opening of the hot gas valve proportional to the input from the unit controller.
- N. **Condenser:** Condenser(s) shall be mounted on a frame of 11 gauge hot rolled steel. Shell and tube condenser(s) shall be removable header type with mechanically cleanable tubes made to ASME standards. Condenser shall be constructed with 3/4 inch heavy walled copper water tubes, steel tube sheets, steel heads, and high quality gaskets. Epoxy coated tube sheets and heads shall provide corrosion resistance. Condenser shall be designed for 600-psig shell (refrigerant) side pressure, 300 psig fluid (water) side pressure, and high pump down capacities to act as a receiver. Water system has been tested at the factory standard of 375 psig. Each condenser shall be equipped with a high-pressure relief valve with a .50" SAE flare connection.
- O. **Condenser Head Pressure Control Valves:** An actuator driven modulating water regulating valve shall be used on each compressor/condenser circuit to control head pressure. As the head pressure increases (detected by factory supplied refrigerant pressure transducers), the actuators shall modulate open in order to allow the flow through the valve and condensers to increase. As the head pressure decreases (detected by factory supplied refrigerant pressure transducers), the actuators shall modulate semi-closed in order to allow the flow through the valve and condensers to decrease. Upon loss of head pressure, the actuators will modulate completely closed in order to isolate the associated condenser from water flow. Valve is designed for a maximum 400-psig waterside pressure.
- P. **Unit Head Pressure Control Valve:** An actuator driven modulating water regulating valve shall be used on the main water supply to control head pressure. As the average head pressure increases (detected by factory supplied refrigerant pressure transducers), the actuator shall modulate open in order to allow the flow through the valve and condensers to increase. As the average head pressure decreases (detected by factory supplied refrigerant pressure transducers), the actuators shall modulate semi-closed in order to allow the flow through the valve and condensers to decrease. Upon loss of head pressure through all circuits, the actuator will modulate completely closed in order to isolate the associated condenser from water flow. Valve is designed for a maximum 300-psig waterside pressure. Head pressure regulating valves shall not be utilized on units containing a waterside economizer coil (WiSE) as both of these options will have adverse effects on its counterpart.
- Q. **Evaporator (DX) Coil:** The direct expansion evaporator coils shall consist of 0.50" OD, 0.017" wall thickness seamless copper tubes expanded into 0.006" thick aluminum fins, heavy gauge seamless copper headers, and 16-gauge stainless steel casings. The evaporator coil shall be provided with a distributor with side port for hot gas bypass and thermostatic expansion valve with adjustable superheat, "Schraeder" type flared access fitting and external equalizer line. The coil shall be leak tested under warm water with nitrogen at 400 psig to ensure reliability.
- R. **Condensate Drain Pan:** The drain pan shall be 16-gauge, type 304 stainless steel. Coil drain pan shall have a depth of 2" with insulation beneath it to prevent condensation. Drain pan shall slope in two directions towards condensate drain connection (CDC), such that no standing water



is left in the pan. The CDC shall be 1.25" MPT and located at the casing edge, at the lowest point of drain pan. Drain trap piping shall be field supplied and installed external to the unit.

- S. Condensate Overflow Switch: A condensate overflow switch shall be mounted in the unit condensate drain pan. If the switch senses a high water level in the drain pan, it shall shut down mechanical cooling and illuminate the light on the remote status panel.
- T. Hot Water Coil: The coil shall be 0.50" OD, 0.017" wall thickness seamless copper tubes mechanically expanded into 0.006" thick aluminum fins. The coil casing shall be constructed of 16 gauge galvanized steel. Coil headers shall be copper. Header connections shall be male, solder type fittings. Headers are equipped with vent and drain connections. The coil shall be leak tested under warm water with nitrogen at 400-PSIG to ensure reliability. Coil shall be rated @ 300 psig. Water system has been tested at the factory standard of 375-psig. Water piping, control valves and valve actuators shall be supplied and installed by others.
- U. Filter Rack: Face (front) loading holding frames for high efficiency media shall be constructed of 16 gauge galvanized steel. They are equipped with polyurethane foam gaskets, fasteners and filter centering dimples. Installation and removal does not require tools or hardware. "Holding clips" are provided for service/replacement of pre-filter without disturbing the final filter. Installation and removal of filter media does not require tools or hardware.
- V. Include 2 inch thick MERV-7 rated and 2 inch pleated MERV-13 rated filters. Provide one set of spare filters.
- W. Magnahelic Filter Gage: An air filter gage shall measure pressure drop across the air filters and indicate when the filter media requires replacing. The gage transmits the effect of changes in air pressure from a diaphragm to an indicating pointer by means of magnetic linkage without the use of gears or other direct mechanical linkages. Gage shall have a range of 0" - 2" WC (or 0" - 3" WC), with accuracy of 2%.
- X. Unit Control Panel: The unit shall have a factory mounted control panel with a hinged access door(s). The panel shall contain a terminal block for single point power connection, transformers, fuses, and motor contactors. All wiring shall meet ETL requirements. The unit shall be ETL approved and have the ETL label. All other controls as described below shall be factory mounted and wired except where noted. The control panel includes the following:
  - 1. A power terminal block.
  - 2. A transformer with 115-volt secondary and fuse for control power.
  - 3. A 24-volt control transformer and fuse.
  - 4. Necessary relays.
  - 5. A 115-volt terminal strip.
  - 6. A 24-volt control terminal strip containing wired terminals for all controls, numbered in accordance with the wiring diagram.
  - 7. An isolated 24-volt field-wiring terminal strip.
  - 8. An electrical print pocket, which in addition to the electrical, print shall contain a startup form and maintenance instructions.
  - 9. Separately fused legs for fan, compressors and accessories.
  - 10. The above components are in addition to electrical components associated with other sections that shall be incorporated in the main control panel to facilitate maintenance and trouble shooting.
- Y. Control Package: Factory wired, including contactor, high- and low-pressure cutouts, internal-winding thermostat for compressor, control-circuit transformer, and non-cycling reset relay.



1. Unit controller shall support BacNet MSTP/IP protocol to allow to tie-in with building management system (BMS) for monitoring , set-point adjustments and control
2. Time-Delay Relay: Five-minute delay to prevent compressor cycling.
3. Adjustable Programmable Thermostat: 24 Volts, 365 day clock with holiday programming, automatic daylight savings time, and occupancy input to control standby set-points, backlit screen schedule, remote sensor and thermostat guard. Thermostat shall control
  - a. Fan wall supply fan array
  - b. Compressor.
  - c. Hot-water coil valve.
4. System Selector Switch: Off-heat-auto-cool.
5. Fan Control Switch: Auto-on.
6. Microprocessor Control Panel: Controls unit functions, including refrigeration and safety controls; and the following:
  - a. Supply fan.
  - b. Supply-fan motor speed.
  - c. Compressors.
  - d. Condenser water pump.
  - e. Modulating, hot-water coil valve.
  - f. Time-of-day control to cycle unit on and off.
  - g. Night-heat, morning warm-up cycle.
  - h. Economizer control
  - i. Demand control ventilation with CO2 sensor located in space and modulating OA damper.

### PART 3 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

- A. GENERAL:
- B. Service: Performance Hall(AC-1, RF-1)
- C. The ATC contractor shall furnish and install all DDC controls for the AC for control as described in this sequence.
- D. SYSTEM OFF:
  1. Supply Fan: Off.
  2. Return Fan: Off
  3. Outside Air Damper: Closed.
  4. Return Air Damper: Open.
  5. Hot Water Valve: Closed
  6. Condenser Water Valve: Closed
  7. Condenser Pump: Off
- E. SYSTEM START:
  1. The air conditioning unit shall be started based upon an occupancy schedule or manual command.



2. When the air-conditioning unit is indexed to operate, the outdoor air damper shall open, condenser pump shall run.

F. SYSTEM RUN:

1. Supply Fan: Fan shall run continuously
2. Return Fan: Fan shall run continuously
3. Modulate the hot water coil valve and DX cooling coil (unit manufacturer controls) in sequence to maintain space setpoint temperature.
4. Modulate outdoor air based on demand control ventilation remote mounted CO2 sensor
5. The system shall be able to be placed into the occupied mode by an override button on the space temperature sensor. The duration of the override period shall be adjustable through the room thermostat.

G. SYSTEM STOP:

1. When the air-conditioning unit is indexed to shut down, the supply and return fan and condenser pumps shall stop and all controls shall be indexed to their "System Off" conditions.

H. SAFETIES AND ALARMS:

1. Low Temperature: Manual reset low limit thermostat, mounted upstream of the cooling coil, shall stop the supply fan, index all controls to their "System Off" mode should the coil discharge air temperature fall below 5 deg F.
2. Low Suction: Low suction pressure switches shall stop the supply and return fan when duct pressure exceeds design. Dampers valves shall be indexed to their "System Off" conditions. The fan shall remain off until the pressure switch is manually reset.
3. Condenser Pump: Condenser pump failure shall shut down the unit.
4. Emergency Shutdown:
  - a. Duct smoke detector(s) shall stop the supply fan and annunciate an alarm when products of combustion are detected in the air stream.

I. FAILURE MODES:

1. Fan Failure: If the supply or return fan fails to operate, the fan shall shut down and system shall be indexed to their "System Off" conditions.
2. Dampers: Outdoor air dampers shall be provided with spring return actuators to fail to their "System Off" positions.
3. Hot Water Valves: Hot water valve shall be provided with spring return actuators to fail to the open position.
4. Condenser Water Valves: Condenser water mixing valve shall be provided with spring return actuators to fail to open position for flow through to the AC unit.

## PART 4 - EXECUTION

### 4.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Anchor units to structure.
- B. Mount cabinet on rubber-in-shear pads for mounting under base of unit

### 4.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect supply and return coil connections with shut off-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.



- B. Connect supply and return condenser connections with shut off-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
- C. Install piping adjacent to unit to allow service and maintenance.

**4.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. **Manufacturer's Field Service:** Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. **Leak Test:** After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- C. **Operational Test:** After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new components, and retest.
- D. **Commissioning:** Test all functional sequences
- E. **Test and adjust controls and safeties.** Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

END OF SECTION 23 81 19



SECTION 23 8127 - WATER COOLED VRV SPLIT AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. A variable capacity, heat recovery/heat pump air conditioning variable refrigerant volume type split system. The system shall consist of multiple evaporators using PID control, connected to a single condenser unit or multiple condenser units. The condenser shall be a direct expansion (DX), water-cooled, heat recovery/heat pump multi-zone split air-conditioning system, with inverter driven variable speed compressor(s), using R-410A refrigerant. The condenser shall be a unified heat pump and heat recovery system to allow for future system reconfiguration. The condensing unit may connect an indoor evaporator capacity up to 130% to that of the condensing unit capacity. All indoor units are each capable of operating separately with individual temperature control. A dedicated hot gas pipe shall be required to ensure optimum heating operation performance. Two-pipe, heat recovery systems requiring separation of the gas and liquid refrigerant are not acceptable.
- B. The condensing unit shall be interconnected to concealed ducted, wall mount, ceiling cassette type, console type indoor unit and shall range, in capacity from 7,500 Btu/h to 96,000 Btu/h in accordance with manufacturer's engineering data book detailing each available indoor unit. The indoor units shall be connected to the condensing unit utilizing manufacture's specified piping joints and headers to ensure correct refrigerant flow and balancing. T style joints are not acceptable
- C. Operation of the system shall permit either individual cooling or heating of each indoor unit simultaneously or all of the indoor units associated with each branch of the cool/heat selector box. Each indoor unit or group of indoor units shall be able to provide set temperature independently via a local remote controller, an Intelligent Controller, an Intelligent Manager or a BMS interface.
- D. Branch selector boxes shall be located as shown on the drawing. The branch selector boxes shall have the capacity to control up to 216 MBH (cooling) downstream of the branch selector box. Each branch of the branch selector box shall consist of five electronic expansion valves, refrigerant control piping and electronics to facilitate communications between the box and main processor and between the box and indoor units. The branch selector box shall control the operational mode of the subordinate indoor units. The use of five EEV's ensures continuous heating during defrost, no heating impact during changeover and reduced sound levels. The use of solenoid valves for changeover and pressure equalization shall not be acceptable due to refrigerant noise.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. LEED related scope of work
- 1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings



2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each unit indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.
- C. LEED Submittals:
  1. Product Data for Credit EA 4: Documentation required by Credit EA 4 indicating that equipment and refrigerants comply.
  2. Product Data for Prerequisite EQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2010, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The units shall be tested by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL), in accordance with ANSI/UL 1995 – Heating and Cooling Equipment and bear the Listed Mark.
- B. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC).
- C. The system will be produced in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility, which are standards set by the International Standard Organization (ISO). The system shall be factory tested for safety and function.
- D. The condensing unit will be factory charged with R-410A.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Unit shall be stored and handled according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

### 1.6 STANDARD LIMITED WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer warrants to the customer who is the original owner and user of the products specified above ("Customer") that under normal use and maintenance for comfort cooling and conditioning applications such products (the "Products") will be free from defects in material or workmanship. This warranty applies to parts only and is limited in duration to one (1) year from the earlier to occur of (a) the date of original installation, whether or not actual use begins on that date, or (b) eighteen (18) months from the date of shipment by manufacturer. Customer shall present proof of the original date of receipt and of installation of the Product in order to establish the effective date of this warranty. Otherwise the effective date will be deemed to be the date of manufacture plus sixty (60) days. Repaired or replacement parts are warranted for the balance of the warranty period applicable to the original part following the date on which the repaired or replacement part is provided to the Customer.



1.7 COMPRESSOR WARRANTY

- A. For its compressors only, manufacturer provides the above warranty (which is applicable to parts only) for a seven (7) year period. This extended warranty for compressors is limited in duration to seven (7) years from the earlier to occur of (a) the date of original installation, whether or not actual use begins on that date, or (b) eighteen (18) months from the date of shipment by manufacturer, and applies to the compressor and compressor parts only. The effective date of this extended warranty shall be established as above.

1.8 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. The system must be installed by a manufacturer's factory trained contractor/dealer. The mechanical contractor's installation price shall be based on the systems installation requirements. The mechanical contractor bids with complete knowledge of the HVAC system requirements. Untrained contractors who wish to bid this project may contact manufacturer's representative to arrange training prior to bid day.

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Daikin (Basis of design)
  2. Mitsubishi
  3. LG Electronics

2.2 CONDENSING UNIT

- A. General: The condensing unit is designed specifically for use with VRV-WIII series components.
1. The condensing unit shall be factory assembled and pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls. The refrigeration circuit of the condensing unit shall consist of Daikin scroll compressors, motors, brazed plate heat exchanger, electronic expansion valves, solenoid valves, 4-way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, shut off valves, oil separators, service ports and liquid receivers.
  2. Discharge pressure gas line, liquid and suction lines must be individually insulated between the condensing and indoor units.
  3. The connection ratio of indoor units to condensing unit shall be permitted up to 130%.
  4. Each condensing system shall be able to support the connection of up to 32 indoor units, dependent on the model of the condensing unit.
  5. System shall have an operable flow rate range of 13.2-40.0 gpm per module for standard operation.



6. System shall have an operating inlet water temperature range of 50°F-113°F for standard operation. The sound pressure level standard shall be that value as listed in the manufacturer's engineering manual for the specified models at 3 feet from the front of the unit scheduled on plan.

Model Number	Sound Pressure Level dB(A)
RWEYQ72PTJU	50
RWEYQ84PTJU	51
RWEYQ144PTJU	53

7. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost, thus eliminating the need for reprogramming.
8. Each condensing unit shall have a 240VAC, 0.3mA-0.5A control circuit output for water pump or isolation valve operation. This circuit shall be configured at commissioning to operate based on system or compressor operation.
9. Each condensing unit shall incorporate normally open, 15VDC and 1.0mA rated contacts for integration of a mandatory flow proving device.
10. Each condensing unit shall incorporate contacts for electrical demand shedding from a central BMS, utility control or demand meter.
11. The condensing unit shall be modular in design and should allow for side-by-side installation with minimum spacing.
12. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit; high pressure sensor and switch, low pressure sensor, control circuit fuses, crankcase heater, fusible plug, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protector for compressor motor, over current protection for the inverter and anti-recycling timer.
13. To ensure the liquid refrigerant does not flash when supplying to the various indoor units, the circuit shall be provided with a sub-cooling feature.
14. Oil recovery cycle shall be automatic occurring 2 hours after start of operation and then every 8 hours of operation.

**B. Unit Cabinet:**

1. The condensing unit shall be corrosion resistant. The unit shall be constructed from rust-proofed, mild steel panels coated with a baked enamel finish.

**C. Condenser Heat Exchanger:**

1. The condenser heat exchanger shall be a stainless brazed plate type designed for closed loop/dry cooler applications. Coaxial type heat exchangers shall not be acceptable.
2. The heat exchanger shall use 1-1/4" FPT inlet piping.
3. The heat exchanger shall use 1-1/4" FPT outlet piping.
4. The heat exchanger shall use 1/2" FPS drain piping.



5. The heat exchanger shall have a maximum system water pressure of 285 psi (equivalent to 640ft of head).
- D. Compressor:
  1. The inverter scroll compressors shall be variable speed (PWM inverter) controlled which is capable of changing the speed to follow the variations in total cooling and heating load as determined by the suction gas pressure as measured in the condensing unit. In addition, samplings of evaporator and condenser temperatures shall be made so that the high/low pressures detected are read every 20 seconds and calculated. With each reading, the compressor capacity shall be controlled to eliminate deviation from target value.
  2. The inverter driven compressor in each condensing unit shall be of highly efficient reluctance DC (digitally commutating), hermetically sealed scroll "G-type" with a maximum speed of 6,450 rpm.
  3. Neodymium magnets shall be adopted in the rotor construction to yield a higher torque and efficiency in the compressor instead of the normal ferrite magnet type. At complete stop of the compressor, the neodymium magnets will position the rotor into the optimum position for a low torque start.
  4. The capacity control range shall be as low as 8% to 100%.
  5. Each compressor shall be equipped with a crankcase heater, high pressure safety switch, and internal thermal overload protector.
  6. Oil separators shall be standard with the equipment together with an intelligent oil management system.
  7. The compressor shall be spring mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.
  8. Units sized 6-7 ton shall contain 1 compressor, 12-14 ton units shall contain 2 compressors and 18-21 ton units shall contain 3 compressors. In the event of compressor failure the remaining compressors shall continue to operate and provide heating or cooling as required at a proportionally reduced capacity. The microprocessor and associated controls shall be designed to specifically address this condition.
  9. In the case of multiple condenser modules, conjoined operation hours of the compressors shall be balanced by means of the Duty Cycling Function, ensuring sequential starting of each module at each start/stop cycle or every 8 hours.
- E. Electrical:
  1. The power supply to the outdoor unit shall be 208/230 volts, 3 phase, 60 hertz +/- 10%. The electrical characteristic shall be as scheduled on plans.
  2. The control voltage between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be 18VDC non-shielded, non-polarity stranded 2 conductor cable.
  3. The control wiring shall be a two-wire multiplex transmission system, making it possible to connect multiple indoor units to one outdoor unit with one 2-cable wire, thus simplifying the wiring operation.

### 2.3 BRANCH SELECTOR BOX HEAT RECOVERY SYSTEM



- A. General: The branch selector boxes shall be designed specifically for use with the heat recovery system components.
1. These selector boxes shall be factory assembled, wired, and piped.
  2. These branch controllers must be run tested at the factory.
  3. These selector boxes must be mounted indoors.
  4. When simultaneously heating and cooling, the units in heating mode shall energize their sub-cooling electronic expansion valve.
  5. The branch selector box shall be suitable for the number of connectable indoor units indicated on plans.
- B. Unit Cabinet:
1. These units shall have a galvanized steel plate casing.
  2. Each cabinet shall house 5 electronic expansion valves for refrigerant control per branch.
  3. The cabinet shall contain one subcooling heat exchanger per branch.
  4. The unit shall have sound absorption thermal insulation material made of flame and heat resistant foamed polyethylene.
  5. Nominal sound pressure levels shall be as shown below 43 dBA
- C. Refrigerant Valves:
1. The unit shall be furnished with 5 electronic expansion valves per branch to control the direction of refrigerant flow. The use of solenoid valves for changeover and pressure equalization shall not be acceptable due to refrigerant noise.
  2. The refrigerant connections must be of the braze type.
  3. Multiple indoor units may be connected to a branch selector box with the use of a manufacturer's recommended joint provided they are within the capacity range of the branch selector.
- D. Condensate Removal:
1. The unit shall not require provisions for condensate removal.
- E. Electrical:
1. The unit electrical power shall be 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz.
  2. The unit shall be capable of operation within the limits of 187 volts to 255 volts.
  3. The minimum circuit amps (MCA) shall be 0.1 and the maximum overcurrent protection amps (MOP) shall be 15.
  4. The control voltage between the indoor and condensing unit shall be 16VDC non-shielded 2 conductor cable.



- 2.4 FXMQ\_M – CONCEALED CEILING DUCTED UNIT (Med. Static) (Basis of design)
- A. General: Daikin indoor unit FXMQ\_M shall be a built-in ceiling concealed fan coil unit, operable with refrigerant R-410A, equipped with an electronic expansion valve, for installation into the ceiling cavity. It is constructed of a galvanized steel casing. It shall be available in capacities from 72,000 Btu/h to 96,000 Btu/h. to be connected to unit model RWEYQ / heat pump model. It shall be a horizontal discharge air with horizontal return air configuration. All models feature a low height cabinet making them applicable to ceiling pockets that tend to be shallow. Computerized PID control shall be used to control superheat to deliver a comfortable room temperature condition. The unit shall be equipped with a programmed drying mechanism that dehumidifies while limiting changes in room temperature when used with Daikin remote control BRC1E71. The indoor units sound pressure shall be 48 dB(A) at low speed measured 5 feet below the ducted unit.
- B. Performance: Each unit's performance is based on nominal operating conditions as scheduled on plans:
- C. Indoor Unit:
1. The Daikin indoor unit FXMQ\_M shall be completely factory assembled and tested. Included in the unit is factory wiring, piping, electronic proportional expansion valve, control circuit board, fan motor thermal protector, flare connections, self-diagnostics, auto-restart function, 3-minute fused time delay, and test run switch. The unit shall have an adjustable external static pressure switch.
  2. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes will be charged with dehydrated air prior to shipment from the factory.
  3. Both refrigerant lines shall be insulated from the outdoor unit.
  4. The indoor units shall be equipped with a return air thermistor.
  5. The indoor unit will be separately powered with 208~230V/1-phase/60Hz.
  6. The voltage range will be 253 volts maximum and 187 volts minimum.
- D. Unit Cabinet:
1. The cabinet shall be located into the ceiling and ducted to the supply and return openings.
  2. The cabinet shall be constructed with sound absorbing foamed polystyrene and polyethylene insulation.
- E. Fan:
1. The fan shall be direct-drive Sirocco type fan, statically and dynamically balanced impeller with high and low fan speeds available.
  2. The fan motor shall operate on 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz, with a motor output of 0.51 HP.
  3. The airflow rate shall be available in high and low settings.
  4. The fan motor shall be thermally protected.
  5. The fan motor shall be equipped as standard with adjustable external static pressure (ESP) settings.
  6. Fan motor external static pressure for nominal airflow as scheduled on plans:
- F. Coil:



1. Coils shall be of the direct expansion type constructed from copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins to form a mechanical bond.
  2. The coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and high heat exchange, rifled bore tube design to ensure highly efficient performance.
  3. The coil shall be a 3 row cross fin copper evaporator coil with 13 fpi design completely factory tested.
  4. The refrigerant connections shall be flare connections and the condensate will be 1-5/16 inch outside diameter PVC.
  5. A thermistor will be located on the liquid and gas line.
- G. Electrical:
1. A separate power supply will be required of 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The acceptable voltage range shall be 187 to 253 volts.
  2. Transmission (control) wiring between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be a maximum of 3,280 feet (total 6,560 feet).
  3. Transmission (control) wiring between the indoor unit and remote controller shall be a maximum distance of 1,640 feet.
- H. Control:
1. The unit shall have controls provided by Daikin to perform input functions necessary to operate the system.
  2. The unit shall be compatible with interfacing with a BMS system via optional BACnet gateways.
  3. Provide low profile thermistor button sensor to connect to indoor AC unit local controller. Refer to paragraph 2.10 of this specification
  4. The unit shall be compatible with a Daikin intelligent Touch advanced multi-zone controller. Consult with Daikin prior to applying controls.
- I. Accessories shall include:
1. A high efficiency disposable MERV 13 air filter kit including filters
  2. One set of spare filters

## 2.5 FXAQ – WALL MOUNTED UNIT (Basis of design)

- A. General: Daikin indoor unit FXAQ shall be a wall mounted fan coil unit, operable with refrigerant R-410A, equipped with an electronic expansion valve, for installation onto a wall within a conditioned space. This compact design with finished white casing shall be available in capacities from 7,500 Btu/h to 24,000 Btu/h. to be connected to unit model RWEYQ / heat pump model. Computerized PID control shall be used to control superheat to deliver a comfortable room temperature condition. The unit shall be equipped with a programmed drying mechanism that dehumidifies while limiting changes in room temperature when used with Daikin remote control BRC1E71. A mildew-proof, polystyrene condensate drain pan and resin net mold resistant filter shall be included as standard equipment. The indoor units sound pressure shall range from 31 dB(A) to 41 dB(A) at low speed measured at 3.3 feet below and from the unit.
- B. Performance: Each unit's performance is based on nominal operating conditions:
- C. Indoor Unit:



1. The Daikin indoor unit FXAQ shall be completely factory assembled and tested. Included in the unit is factory wiring, piping, electronic proportional expansion valve, control circuit board, fan motor thermal protector, flare connections, condensate drain pan, self-diagnostics, auto-restart function, 3-minute fused time delay, and test run switch. The unit shall have an auto-swing louver which ensures efficient air distribution, which closes automatically when the unit stops. The remote controller shall be able to set five (5) steps of discharge angle. The front grille shall be easily removed for washing. The discharge angle shall automatically set at the same angle as the previous operation upon restart. The drain pipe can be fitted to from either left or right sides.
  2. Indoor unit and refrigerant pipes will be charged with dehydrated air prior to shipment from the factory.
  3. Both refrigerant lines shall be insulated from the outdoor unit.
  4. Return air shall be through a resin net mold resistant filter.
  5. The indoor units shall be equipped with a condensate pan.
  6. The indoor units shall be equipped with a return air thermistor.
  7. The indoor unit will be separately powered with 208~230V/1-phase/60Hz.
  8. The voltage range will be 253 volts maximum and 187 volts minimum.
- D. Unit Cabinet:
1. The cabinet shall be affixed to a factory supplied wall mounting template and located in the conditioned space.
  2. The cabinet shall be constructed with sound absorbing foamed polystyrene and polyethylene insulation.
- E. Fan:
1. The fan shall be a direct-drive cross-flow fan, statically and dynamically balanced impeller with high and low fan speeds available.
  2. The fan motor shall operate on 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz with a motor output range 0.054 to 0.058 HP.
  3. The airflow rate shall be available in high and low settings.
  4. The fan motor shall be thermally protected.
- F. Coil:
1. Coils shall be of the direct expansion type constructed from copper tubes expanded into aluminum fins to form a mechanical bond.
  2. The coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and high heat exchange, rifled bore tube design to ensure highly efficient performance.
  3. The coil shall be a 2-row cross fin copper evaporator coil with 14 fpi design completely factory tested.
  4. The refrigerant connections shall be flare connections and the condensate will be 11/16 inch outside diameter PVC.
  5. A thermistor will be located on the liquid and gas line.
  6. A condensate pan shall be located in the unit.
- G. Electrical:
1. A separate power supply will be required of 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The acceptable voltage range shall be 187 to 253 volts.
  2. Transmission (control) wiring between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be a maximum of 3,280 feet (total 6,560 feet).



3. Transmission (control) wiring between the indoor unit and remote controller shall be a maximum distance of 1,640 feet.

H. Control:

1. The unit shall have controls provided by Daikin to perform input functions necessary to operate the system.
2. The unit shall be compatible with interfacing with a BMS system via optional BACnet gateways.
3. The unit shall be compatible with a Daikin intelligent Touch advanced multi-zone controller.
4. Low profile thermistor button sensor to connect to indoor AC unit local controller.

I. Accessories shall include:

1. A condensate pumps (DACA-CP1-1).VRV INDOOR UNITS

## 2.6 SIMPLIFIED REMOTE CONTROLLER(BRC2A71) (Basis of design)

- A. The Simplified Remote Controller can provide control for all VRV indoor units. The remote controller wiring consists of a non-polar two-wire connection to the indoor unit at terminals P1/P2. The Simplified Remote Controller is wall mounted and can be adjusted to maintain the optimal operation of the connected indoor unit(s). The Simplified Remote Controller does not require addressing.
- B. The Simplified Remote Controller can be used in conjunction with the BRC1E71 (Navigation Remote Controller) or another Simplified Remote Controller to control the same indoor unit group. No more than 2 remote controllers can be placed in the same group.
- C. Mounting: The Simplified Remote Controller shall be mounted into a standard 2" x 2" junction box.
- D. Display Features:
  1. The Simplified Remote Controller shall be approximately 4.75" x 2.75" in size with a 1" x 1.75" LCD display.
  2. The controller shall display Operation Mode, Setpoint, and Fan Speed.
  3. The controller shall be able to display temperature setpoint in one degree increments with a range of 60-90°F (16-32°C).
  4. On/Off status shall be displayed with an LED.
  5. Error codes will be displayed in the event of system abnormality/error with a two digit code.
    - a. A blinking LED will also signal system abnormality/error
- E. Basic Operation:
  1. Capable of controlling a group of up to 16 indoor units.
  2. Controller shall control the following group operations:
    - a. On/Off, Operation Mode (Cool, Heat, Fan, Dry and Auto\* (\*with VRV Heat Recovery System))
    - b. Independent Cooling and Heating setpoints in the Occupied mode



- c. Independent Cooling Setup and Heating Setback setpoints in the Unoccupied mode,
- d. Set fan speed
- e. The controller shall be able to limit the user adjustable setpoint ranges individually for cooling and heating in the occupied period
- f. Indoor unit group assignment
- g. Function key lockout (Mode / Fan Speed) via Optional Controller Face Plates (BRC2A71RU / BRC2A71R)

## 2.7 NAVIGATION REMOTE CONTROLLER (BRC1E71) (Basis of design)

- A. The NAV Remote Controller can provide control for all VRV indoor units. The remote controller wiring consist of a non-polar two-wire connection to the indoor unit at terminals P1/P2. The NAV Remote Controller is wall mounted and can be adjusted to maintain the optimal operation of the connected indoor unit(s). The NAV Remote Controller does not require addressing.
- B. The NAV Remote Controller can be used in conjunction with the BRC2A71 (Simplified Remote Controller) or another NAV Remote Controller to control the same indoor unit group. No more than 2 remote controllers can be placed in the same group.
- C. Mounting: The NAV Remote Controller shall be mounted into a standard 2" x 4" junction box.
- D. Display Features:
  - 1. The NAV Remote Controller shall be approximately 4.75" x 4.75" in size with a backlit 2.75" x 1.75" LCD display.
  - 2. Display information shall be selectable from English, French, or Spanish.
  - 3. Feature Backlit LCD Display with contrast adjustment and auto off after 30 seconds.
  - 4. The controller shall display Operation Mode, Setpoint, and Fan Speed.
  - 5. System Status icons in large font.
    - a. The controller shall display temperature setpoint in one degree increments with a range of 60-90°F (0-32°C)
  - 6. Detailed display will reflect room temperature (0-176oF/-17-80oC range in one degree increment).
    - a. Display of temperature information shall be configurable for Fahrenheit or Celsius
  - 7. On/Off status shall be displayed with an LED.
  - 8. Error codes will be displayed in the event of system abnormality/error with a two digit code.
    - a. A blinking LED will also signal system abnormality/error
  - 9. The following system temperatures can be displayed to assist service personnel in troubleshooting:
    - a. Return Air Temperature
    - b. Liquid Line Temperature
    - c. Gas Line Temperature
    - d. Discharge Air Temperature (depending on unit),
    - e. Remote Controller Sensor Temperature
    - f. Temperature used for Indoor Unit Control



**E. Basic Operation:**

1. Capable of controlling a group of up to 16 indoor units.
2. Controller shall control the following group operations:
  - a. On/Off, Operation Mode (Cool, Heat, Fan, Dry and Auto\* (\*with VRV Heat Recovery & Heat Pump Systems))
  - b. Independent Cooling and Heating setpoints in the occupied mode
  - c. Independent Cooling Setup and Heating Setback setpoints in the unoccupied mode
  - d. Fan Speed
  - e. Airflow direction (dependent on indoor unit type).
  - f. The controller shall be able to limit the user adjustable setpoint ranges individually for cooling and heating in the occupied period
  - g. Lock out key settings
  - h. Indoor unit group assignment

**F. Programmability:**

1. Controller shall support schedule settings with selectable weekly pattern options.
  - a. 7-day
  - b. Weekday + Weekend
  - c. Weekday + Saturday + Sunday
  - d. The schedule shall support unit On/Off
  - e. Independently settable Cooling and/or Heating setpoints when unit is on (occupied)
  - f. Setup (Cooling) and Setback (Heating) setpoints when unit is off (unoccupied)
  - g. A maximum of 5 operations can be schedulable per day
  - h. Time setting in 1-minute increments
2. The Controller shall support auto-changeover mode for both heat pump and heat recovery systems allowing the optimal room temperature to be maintained by automatically switching the indoor unit's mode between Cool and Heat according to the room temperature and temperature setpoint.
  - a. Changeover to cooling mode shall occur at cooling setpoint + 1°F (0.5°C)
  - b. Changeover to heating mode shall occur at heating setpoint - 1°F (0.5°C)
3. The Controller shall support an Auto Off Timer for temporarily enabling indoor unit operation during the unoccupied period.
  - a. When the Off Timer is enabled and when the unit is manually turned on at the remote controller
  - b. The controller shall shut off the unit after a set time period
  - c. The time period shall be configurable in the controller menu with a range of 30-180 minutes in 10 minute increments
4. The room temperature shall be capable of being sensed at either the NAV Remote Controller, the Indoor Unit return air temperature sensor (default), or Remote Temperature Sensor (KRCS01-1B) configured through the NAV Remote Controller field settings.

**2.8 PERFORMANCE**

- A. The condensing unit shall perform as scheduled on plans
- B. Performance shall be rated in accordance with AHRI1230



- C. All tested values surpass the minimum efficiency levels regulated in the DOE Code of Federal Regulation 10 CFR Ch. II § 431.97.
- D. There is no minimum efficiency defined in 10 CFR Ch. II § 431.97 for Water Cooled Packaged equipment greater than 135,000 Btu/hr.

## 2.9 FEATURES AND BENEFITS

- A. Voltage Platform – Heat recovery/heat pump condensing units shall be available in 208-230V/3/60 configurations.
- B. Advanced Zoning – A single system shall provide for up to 32 zones.
- C. Independent Control – Each indoor unit shall use a dedicated electronic expansion valve for independent control.
- D. VFD Inverter Control – Each condensing unit shall use a high efficiency, variable speed “inverter” compressor for superior part load performance.
- E. Compressor capacity shall be modulated automatically to maintain a constant suction pressure, while varying the refrigerant volume for the needs of the cooling or heating loads.
- F. Indoor units shall use PID control to control superheat to deliver a comfortable room temperature condition.
- G. Flexible Design –
- H. Systems shall be capable of up to 390ft of linear piping between the condensing unit and furthest located indoor unit.
- I. Systems shall be capable of up to 980ft of total “one-way” piping in the piping network.
- J. Systems shall have a vertical (height) separation of up to 164ft between the condensing unit and the indoor units.
- K. The condensing unit shall connect an indoor unit evaporator capacity up to 130% of the condensing unit capacity.
- L. Simple Wiring – Systems shall use 2 wire, multi-stranded, non-shielded and non-polarized daisy chain control wiring.
- M. Energy Efficiency – System shall have equivalent or better performance than high efficiency air cooled or water cooled chiller systems.
- N. Outside Air – Systems shall provide outside air integration capability.
- O. Advanced Diagnostics – Systems shall include a self diagnostic, auto-check function to detect a malfunction and display the type and location.
- P. Each condensing unit shall have the capability to control water pump or isolation valve operation.
- Q. Each condensing unit shall incorporate contacts for integration of a mandatory flow proving device.
- R. Each condensing unit shall incorporate contacts for electrical demand shedding.



- S. Advanced Controls – Each system shall have at least one remote controller capable of controlling up to 16 indoor units.
- T. Each system shall be capable of integrating with open protocol BACnet and LonWorks building management systems.
- U. Low Sound Levels – Each system shall use indoor units with quiet operation as low as 28 dB(A) and condensing units as low as 50 dB(A).

## 2.10 REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. The system shall be capable of refrigerant piping up to 390 actual feet from the condensing unit to the furthest indoor unit, a total combined liquid line length of 980 feet of piping between the condensing and fan coil units with 164 feet maximum vertical difference, without any oil traps.
- B. Manufacturer's recommended piping joints and headers shall be used to ensure proper refrigerant balance and flow for optimum system capacity and performance. T style joints shall not be acceptable as this will negatively impact proper refrigerant balance and flow for optimum system capacity and performance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. The system must be installed by a factory trained contractor/dealer. The mechanical contractor's installation price shall be based on the systems installation requirements. The mechanical contractor bids with complete knowledge of the HVAC system requirements.
- B. Install indoor evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure. Provide neoprene hanger for isolation. Refer to specification section 230548 "Vibration Control for HVAC Equipment and piping".
- C. Install outdoor compressor-condenser components on restrained, spring isolators secured to steel dunnage. Refer to specification section 230548 "Vibration Control for HVAC Equipment and piping".

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.
- B. Connect drain piping and route to nearest indirect drain.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.



- B. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- C. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new components, and retest.
- D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

END OF SECTION 238127

## SECTION 238415 - VARIABLE-FREQUENCY DRIVES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes separately enclosed, factory assembled complete Variable Frequency motor Drive (VFD) consisting of a pulse width modulated (PWM) inverter designed for use with a standard NEMA Design B induction motor.
- B. The drive manufacturer shall supply the drive and all necessary options as herein specified. The manufacturer shall have been engaged in the production of this type of equipment for a minimum of twenty years. VFD's that are manufactured by a third party and "brand labeled" shall not be acceptable. All VFDs installed on this project shall be from the same manufacturer.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Referenced Standards:
  - 1. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
    - a. Standard 519-1992, IEEE Guide for Harmonic Content and Control.
  - 2. Underwriters laboratories
    - a. UL508C
  - 3. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
    - a. ICS 7.0, AC Adjustable Speed Drives
  - 4. IEC 16800 Parts 1 and 2
  - 5. National Electric Code (NEC)
    - a. NEC 430.120, Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems
  - 6. International Building Code (IBC)
    - a. IBC 2006 Seismic – referencing ASC 7-05 and ICC AC-156
- B. Qualifications:



1. VFDs and options shall be UL listed as a complete assembly. VFD's that require the customer to supply external fuses for the VFD to be UL listed are not acceptable. VFDs with red label UL stickers, requiring additional branch circuit protection are not acceptable. The base VFD shall be UL listed for 100 KAIC without the need for input fuses.
2. CE Mark – The VFD shall conform to the European Union ElectroMagnetic Compatibility directive, a requirement for CE marking. The VFD shall meet product standard EN 61800-3 for the First Environment restricted level.
3. The entire VFD enclosure, including the bypass shall be seismically certified and labeled as such in accordance with the 2006 International Building Code (IBC):
  - a. VFD manufacturer shall provide Seismic Certification and Installation requirements at time of submittal.
  - b. Seismic importance factor of 1.5 rating is required, and shall be based upon actual shake test data as defined by ICC AC-156.
  - c. Seismic ratings based upon calculations alone are not acceptable. Certification of Seismic rating must be based on testing done in all three axis of motion.
4. Acceptable Manufactures
  - a. ABB ACH Series.
  - b. Alternate manufacturer's requests must be submitted in writing to the Engineer for approval at least 20 working days prior to bid. Approval does not relieve the supplier of specification requirements.
5. The VFD manufacturer shall have available a comprehensive, HVAC Drive Computer Based Training (CBT) product. The CBT product shall include detailed, interactive sections covering VFD unpacking, proper mechanical and electrical installation, and programming. The CBT product shall allow the user to provide just-in-time training to new personnel or refresher training for maintenance and repair personnel on the user's site. The CBT product shall be repeatable, precise and shall include record keeping capability. The CBT product shall record answers to simulations and tests by student ID number. The CBT product must be professionally produced and have interactive sections, student tests, and include video clips of proper wiring and installation.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall include the following information:
  1. Outline dimensions, conduit entry locations and weight.
  2. Customer connection and power wiring diagrams.
  3. Complete technical product description include a complete list of options provided. Any portions of this specification not meet must be clearly indicated or the supplier and contractor shall be liable to provide all additional components required to meet this specification.
  4. Compliance to IEEE 519 – harmonic analysis for particular jobsite including total harmonic voltage distortion and total harmonic current distortion (TDD).
    - a. The VFD manufacturer shall provide calculations; specific to this installation, showing total harmonic voltage distortion is less than 5%. Input filters shall

be sized and provided as required by the VFD manufacturer to ensure compliance with IEEE standard 519. All VFD's shall include a minimum of 5% impedance reactors, no exceptions.

1.5 DRIVE SCHEDULE

1. Refer to equipment schedule on plans.

1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. CE: Conformance Europeene (European Compliance).
- C. CPT: Control power transformer.
- D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- E. IGBT: Insulated-gate bipolar transistor.
- F. LAN: Local area network.
- G. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- H. MCP: Motor-circuit protector.
- I. NC: Normally closed.
- J. NO: Normally open.
- K. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- L. PCC: Point of common coupling.
- M. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- N. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
- O. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- P. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion.
- Q. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
- R. VFD: Variable-frequency drive



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB.
  2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  3. Yaskawa Electric America, Inc; Drives Division.
  4. Danfoss Inc.; Danfoss Drives Div.
  5. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  6. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  7. Toshiba International Corporation.

### 2.2 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

- A. The VFD package as specified herein shall be enclosed in a UL Listed Type enclosure, exceeding NEMA enclosure design criteria (enclosures with only NEMA ratings are not acceptable), completely assembled and tested by the manufacturer in an ISO9001 facility. The VFD tolerated voltage window shall allow the VFD to operate from a line of +30% nominal, and -35% nominal voltage as a minimum.
1. Environmental operating conditions: VFDs shall be capable of continuous operation at 0 to 50° C (32 to 122° F) ambient temperature as per VFD manufacturers documented/submittal data or VFD must be oversized to meet these temperature requirements. Not acceptable are VFD's that can only operate at 40° C intermittently (average during a 24 hour period) and therefore must be oversized. Altitude 0 to 3300 feet above sea level, less than 95% humidity, non-condensing. All circuit boards shall have conformal coating.
  2. Enclosure shall be rated UL Type 1 and shall be UL listed as a plenum rated VFD. VFD's without these ratings are not acceptable. NEMA only type 1 enclosures are not acceptable (must be UL Type 1).
- B. All VFDs shall have the following standard features:
1. All VFDs shall have the same customer interface, including digital display, and keypad, regardless of horsepower rating. The keypad shall be removable, capable of remote mounting and allow for uploading and downloading of parameter settings as an aid for start-up of multiple VFDs.
  2. The keypad shall include Hand-Off-Auto selections and manual speed control. The drive shall incorporate "bumpless transfer" of speed reference when switching between "Hand" and "Auto" modes. There shall be fault reset and "Help" buttons on the keypad. The Help button shall include "on-line" assistance for programming and troubleshooting.
  3. There shall be a built-in time clock in the VFD keypad. The clock shall have a battery back up with 10 years minimum life span. The clock shall be used to date



and time stamp faults and record operating parameters at the time of fault. If the battery fails, the VFD shall automatically revert to hours of operation since initial power up. Capacitor back-up is not acceptable. The clock shall also be programmable to control start/stop functions, constant speeds, PID parameter sets and output Form-C relays. The VFD shall have a digital input that allows an override to the time clock (when in the off mode) for a programmable time frame. There shall be four (4) separate, independent timer functions that have both weekday and weekend settings.

4. The VFD's shall utilize pre-programmed application macro's specifically designed to facilitate start-up. The Application Macros shall provide one command to reprogram all parameters and customer interfaces for a particular application to reduce programming time. The VFD shall have two user macros to allow the end-user to create and save custom settings.
5. The VFD shall have cooling fans that are designed for easy replacement. The fans shall be designed for replacement without requiring removing the VFD from the wall or removal of circuit boards. The VFD cooling fans shall operate only when required. To extend the fan and bearing operating life, the VFD shall cycle the cooling fans on and off as required.
6. The VFD shall be capable of starting into a coasting load (forward or reverse) up to full speed and accelerate or decelerate to set point without tripping or component damage (flying start).
7. The VFD shall have the ability to automatically restart after an over-current, over-voltage, under-voltage, or loss of input signal protective trip. The number of restart attempts, trial time, and time between attempts shall be programmable.
8. The overload rating of the drive shall be 110% of its normal duty current rating for 1 minute every 10 minutes, 130% overload for 2 seconds. The minimum FLA rating shall meet or exceed the values in the NEC/UL table 430.250 for 4-pole motors.
9. The VFD shall have internal 5% impedance reactors to reduce the harmonics to the power line and to add protection from AC line transients. The 5% impedance may be from dual (positive and negative DC bus) reactors, or 5% AC line reactors. VFD's with only one DC reactor shall add an AC line reactor.
10. The input current rating of the VFD shall be no more than 3% greater than the output current rating. VFD's with higher input current ratings require the upstream wiring, protection devices, and source transformers to be oversized per NEC 430.120. Input and output current ratings must be shown on the VFD nameplate.
11. The VFD shall inThe VFD shall have internal 5% impedance reactors to reduce the harmonics to the power line and to add protection from AC line transients. The 5% impedance may be from dual (positive and negative DC bus) reactors, or 5% AC line reactors. VFD's with only one DC reactor shall add an AC line reactor.
12. Include a coordinated AC transient surge protection system consisting of 4-120 joule rated MOV's (phase to phase and phase to ground), a capacitor clamp, and 5% impedance reactors.
13. The VFD shall provide a programmable loss-of-load (broken belt / broken coupling) Form-C relay output. The drive shall be programmable to signal the loss-of-load condition via a keypad warning, Form-C relay output, and / or over the serial



communications bus. The loss-of-load condition sensing algorithm shall include a programmable time delay that will allow for motor acceleration from zero speed without signaling a false loss-of-load condition.

14. The VFD shall have user programmable underload and overload curve functions to allow user defined indications of broken belt or mechanical failure / jam condition causing motor overload
15. The VFD shall include multiple "two zone" PID algorithms that allow the VFD to maintain PID control from two separate feedback signals (4-20mA, 0-10V, and / or serial communications). The two zone control PID algorithm will control motor speed based on a minimum, maximum, or average of the two feedback signals. All of the VFD PID controllers shall include the ability for "two zone" control.
16. If the input reference (4-20mA or 2-10V) is lost, the VFD shall give the user the option of either (1) stopping and displaying a fault, (2) running at a programmable preset speed, (3) hold the VFD speed based on the last good reference received, or (4) cause a warning to be issued, as selected by the user. The drive shall be programmable to signal this condition via a keypad warning, Form-C relay output and / or over the serial communication bus.
17. The VFD shall have programmable "Sleep" and "Wake up" functions to allow the drive to be started and stopped from the level of a process feedback signal.

C. All VFDs to have the following adjustments:

1. Three (3) programmable critical frequency lockout ranges to prevent the VFD from operating the load continuously at an unstable speed. The lockout range must be fully adjustable, from 0 to full speed.
2. Two (2) PID Set point controllers shall be standard in the drive, allowing pressure or flow signals to be connected to the VFD, using the microprocessor in the VFD for the closed-loop control. The VFD shall have 250 ma of 24 VDC auxiliary power and be capable of loop powering a transmitter supplied by others. The PID set point shall be adjustable from the VFD keypad, analog inputs, or over the communications bus. There shall be two independent parameter sets for the PID controller and the capability to switch between the parameter sets via a digital input, serial communications or from the keypad. The independent parameter sets are typically used for night setback, switching between summer and winter set points, etc.
3. There shall be an independent, second PID loop that can utilize the second analog input and modulate one of the analog outputs to maintain the set point of an independent process (ie. valves, dampers, etc.). All set points, process variables, etc. to be accessible from the serial communication network.
4. Two (2) programmable analog inputs shall accept current or voltage signals.
5. Two (2) programmable analog outputs (0-20ma or 4-20 ma). The outputs may be programmed to output proportional to Frequency, Motor Speed, Output Voltage, Output Current, Motor Torque, Motor Power (kW), DC Bus voltage, Active Reference, Active Feedback, and other data.
6. Six (6) programmable digital inputs for maximum flexibility in interfacing with external devices. All digital inputs shall be programmable to initiate upon an application or removal of 24VDC or 24VAC.



7. Three (3) programmable, digital Form-C relay outputs. The relay outputs shall include programmable on and off delay times and adjustable hysteresis. The relays shall be rated for maximum switching current 8 amps at 24 VDC and 0.4 A at 250 VAC; Maximum voltage 300 VDC and 250 VAC; continuous current rating of 2 amps RMS. Outputs shall be true Form-C type contacts; open collector outputs are not acceptable.
  8. Run permissive circuit - There shall be a run permissive circuit for damper or valve control. Regardless of the source of a run command (keypad, input contact closure, time-clock control, or serial communications), the VFD shall provide a dry contact closure that will signal the damper to open (VFD motor does not operate). When the damper is fully open, a normally open dry contact (end-switch) shall close. The closed end-switch is wired to a VFD digital input and allows VFD motor operation. Two separate safety interlock inputs shall be provided. When either safety is opened, the motor shall be commanded to coast to stop and the damper shall be commanded to close. The keypad shall display "start enable 1 (or 2) missing". The safety input status shall also be transmitted over the serial communications bus.
  9. The VFD control shall include a programmable time delay for VFD start and a keypad indication that this time delay is active. A Form C relay output provides a contact closure to signal the VAV boxes open. This will allow VAV boxes to be driven open before the motor operates. The time delay shall be field programmable from 0 – 120 seconds. Start delay shall be active regardless of the start command source (keypad command, input contact closure, time-clock control, or serial communications), and when switching from drive to bypass.
  10. Seven (7) programmable preset speeds.
  11. Two independently adjustable accel and decel ramps with 1 – 1800 seconds adjustable time ramps.
  12. The VFD shall include a motor flux optimization circuit that will automatically reduce applied motor voltage to the motor to optimize energy consumption and reduce audible motor noise. The VFD shall have selectable software for optimization of motor noise, energy consumption, and motor speed control.
  13. The VFD shall include a carrier frequency control circuit that reduces the carrier frequency based on actual VFD temperature that allows higher carrier frequency settings without derating the VFD.
  14. The VFD shall include password protection against parameter changes.
- D. The Keypad shall include a backlit LCD display. The display shall be in complete English words for programming and fault diagnostics (alpha-numeric codes are not acceptable). All VFD faults shall be displayed in English words. The keypad shall include a minimum of 14 assistants including:
1. Start-up assistant
  2. Parameter assistants
    - a. PID assistant
    - b. Reference assistant
    - c. I/O assistant
    - d. Serial communications assistant



- e. Option module assistant
  - f. Panel display assistant
  - g. Low noise set-up assistant
3. Maintenance assistant
  4. Troubleshooting assistant
  5. Drive optimizer assistants
- E. All applicable operating values shall be capable of being displayed in engineering (user) units. A minimum of three operating values from the list below shall be capable of being displayed at all times. The display shall be in complete English words (alpha-numeric codes are not acceptable):
1. Output Frequency
  2. Motor Speed (RPM, %, or Engineering units)
  3. Motor Current
  4. Motor Torque
  5. Motor Power (kW)
  6. DC Bus Voltage
  7. Output Voltage
- F. The VFD shall include a fireman's override input. Upon receipt of a contact closure from the fire / smoke control station, the VFD shall operate in one of two modes: 1) Operate at a programmed predetermined fixed speed ranging from -500Hz (reverse) to 500Hz (forward). 2) Operate in a specific fireman's override PID algorithm that automatically adjusts motor speed based on override set point and feedback. The mode shall override all other inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands), except customer defined safety run interlocks, and force the motor to run in one of the two modes above. "Override Mode" shall be displayed on the keypad. Upon removal of the override signal, the VFD shall resume normal operation, without the need to cycle the normal digital input run command.
- G. Serial Communications – addressable for drive and separately for the bypass
1. The VFD shall have an EIA-485 port as standard. The standard protocols shall be Modbus, Johnson Controls N2, Siemens Building Technologies FLN, and BACnet. [Optional protocols for LonWorks, Profibus, EtherNet, BACnet IP, and DeviceNet shall be available.] Each individual drive shall have the protocol in the base VFD. The use of third party gateways and multiplexers is not acceptable. All protocols shall be "certified" by the governing authority (i.e. BTL Listing for BACnet). Use of non-certified protocols is not allowed.
  2. The BACnet connection shall be an EIA-485, MS/TP interface operating at 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, or 76.8 Kbps. The connection shall be tested by the BACnet Testing Labs (BTL) and be BTL Listed. The BACnet interface shall conform to the BACnet standard device type of an Applications Specific Controller (B-ASC). The interface shall support all BIBBs defined by the BACnet standard profile for a B-ASC including, but not limited to:



- a. Data Sharing – Read Property – B.
  - b. Data Sharing – Write Property – B.
  - c. Device Management – Dynamic Device Binding (Who-Is; I-Am).
  - d. Device Management – Dynamic Object Binding (Who-Has; I-Have).
  - e. Device Management – Communication Control – B.
3. If additional hardware is required to obtain the BACnet interface, the VFD manufacturer shall supply one BACnet gateway per drive. Multiple VFDs sharing one gateway shall not be acceptable.
  4. Serial communication capabilities shall include, but not be limited to; run-stop control, speed set adjustment, proportional/integral/derivative PID control adjustments, current limit, accel/decel time adjustments, and lock and unlock the keypad. The drive shall have the capability of allowing the DDC to monitor feedback such as process variable feedback, output speed / frequency, current (in amps), % torque, power (kW), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and drive temperature. The DDC shall also be capable of monitoring the VFD relay output status, digital input status, and all analog input and analog output values. All diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote VFD fault reset shall be possible.
  5. Serial communication in bypass shall include, but not be limited to; bypass run-stop control, the ability to force the unit to bypass, and the ability to lock and unlock the keypad. The bypass shall have the capability of allowing the DDC to monitor feedback such as, current (in amps), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and bypass logic board temperature. The DDC shall also be capable of monitoring the bypass relay output status, and all digital input status. All bypass diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote bypass fault reset shall be possible.
  6. The VFD / bypass shall allow the DDC to control the drive and bypass digital and analog outputs via the serial interface. This control shall be independent of any VFD function. The analog outputs may be used for modulating chilled water valves or cooling tower bypass valves. The drive and bypass' digital (Form-C relay) outputs may be used to actuate a damper, open a valve or control any other device that requires a maintained contact for operation. In addition, all of the drive and bypass' digital inputs shall be capable of being monitored by the DDC system. This allows for remote monitoring of which (of up to 4) safeties are open.
  7. The VFD shall include an independent PID loop for customer use. The independent PID loop may be used for cooling tower bypass value control, chilled water value / hot water valve control, etc. Both the VFD PID control loop and the independent PID control loop shall continue functioning even if the serial communications connection is lost. As default, the VFD shall keep the last good set point command and last good DO & AO commands in memory in the event the serial communications connection is lost and continue controlling the process.
- H. EMI / RFI filters. All VFD's shall include EMI/RFI filters. The onboard filters shall allow the VFD assembly to be CE Marked and the VFD shall meet product standard EN 61800-3 for the First Environment restricted level with up to 100 feet of motor cable. No Exceptions. Certified test reports shall be provided with the submittals confirming compliance to EN 61800-3, First Environment.



- I. All VFD's through 75HP at 480 V shall be protected from input and output power mis-wiring. The VFD shall sense this condition and display an alarm on the keypad. The VFD shall not sustain damage from this power mis-wiring condition.
- J. **OPTIONAL FEATURES** – Optional features to be furnished and mounted by the drive manufacturer. All optional features shall be UL Listed by the drive manufacturer as a complete assembly and carry a UL508 label.
  1. A complete factory wired and tested bypass system consisting of an output contactor and bypass contactor per section 2.01K below.
  2. Door interlocked, padlockable circuit breaker that will disconnect all input power from the drive and all internally mounted options. Circuit breaker option shall be available with or without systems requiring bypass.
- K. **BYPASS CONTROLLER**
  1. A complete factory wired and tested bypass system consisting of a door interlocked, pad-lockable circuit breaker, output contactor, bypass contactor, and fast acting VFD input fuses are required. UL Listed motor overload protection shall be provided in both drive and bypass modes.
  2. The bypass enclosure door and VFD enclosure must be mechanically interlocked such that the disconnecting device must be in the "Off" position before either enclosure may be accessed.
  3. The VFD and bypass package shall have a UL listed short circuit current rating (SCCR) of 100,000 amps and this rating shall be indicated on the UL data label.
  4. The drive and bypass package shall be seismic certified and labeled to the IBC:
    - a. Seismic importance factor of 1.5 rating is required, and shall be based upon actual shake table test data as defined by ICC AC-156.
  5. Drive Isolation Fuses - To ensure maximum possible bypass operation, fast acting fuses, exclusive to the VFD, shall be provided to allow the VFD to disconnect from the line prior to clearing upstream branch circuit protection. This maintains bypass operation capability in the event of a VFD failure. Bypass designs which have no such fuses, or that incorporate fuses common to both the VFD and the bypass, will not be accepted.
  6. The system (VFD and Bypass) tolerated voltage window shall allow the system to operate from a line of +30%, -35% nominal voltage range. The system shall incorporate circuitry that will allow the drive or bypass contactor to remain "sealed in" over this voltage tolerance at a minimum.
  7. The bypass shall maintain positive contactor control through the voltage tolerance window of nominal voltage +30%, -35%. This feature is designed to avoid contactor coil failure during brown out / low line conditions and allow for input single phase operation when in the VFD mode. Designs that will not allow input single phase operation in the VFD mode are not acceptable.
  8. Motor protection from single phase power conditions - the bypass system must be able to detect a single phase input power condition while running in bypass, disengage the motor in a controlled fashion, and give a single phase input power



- indication. Bypass systems not incorporating single phase protection in bypass mode are not acceptable.
9. The bypass system shall NOT depend on the VFD for bypass operation. The bypass system shall be designed for stand alone operation and shall be completely functional in both Hand and Automatic modes even if the VFD has been removed from the system for repair / replacement. Serial communications shall remain functional even with the VFD removed.
  10. Serial communications – the bypass shall be capable of being monitored and / or controlled via serial communications. On-board communications protocols shall include ModBus; Johnson Controls N2; Siemens Building Technologies FLN (P1); and BACnet.
  11. Serial communication capabilities shall include, but not be limited to; bypass run-stop control; the ability to force the unit to bypass; and the ability to lock and unlock the keypad. The bypass shall have the capability of allowing the DDC to monitor feedback such as, current (in amps), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and bypass logic board temperature. The DDC shall also be capable of monitoring the bypass relay output status, and all digital input status. All bypass diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote bypass fault reset shall be possible. The following additional status indications and settings shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus and / or via a Form-C relay output – keypad “Hand” or “Auto” selected, bypass selected, and broken belt indication. The DDC system shall also be able to monitor if the motor is running in the VFD mode or bypass mode over serial communications. A minimum of 50 field serial communications points shall be capable of being monitored in the bypass mode.
  12. The bypass serial communications shall allow control of the bypass’ digital outputs via the serial interface. This control shall be independent of any bypass function or operating state. The bypass’ digital (relay) outputs may be used to actuate a damper, open a valve or control any other device that requires a maintained contact for operation. In addition, all of the bypass’ digital inputs shall be capable of being monitored by the DDC system.
  13. There shall be an adjustable motor current sensing circuit for the bypass and VFD modes to provide proof of flow (broken belt) indication. The condition shall be indicated on the keypad display, transmitted over the building automation protocol and / or via a Form-C relay output contact closure. The broken belt indication shall be programmable to be a system (drive and bypass) indication. The broken belt condition sensing algorithm shall be programmable to cause only a warning or a fault and / or system shutdown.
  14. The digital inputs for the system shall accept 24VAC or 24VDC. The bypass shall incorporate an internally sourced power supply and not require an external control power source. The bypass power board shall supply 250 ma of 24 VDC for use by others to power external devices.
  15. There shall be a run permissive circuit for damper or valve control. Regardless of the source of a run command (keypad command, time-clock control, digital input, or serial communications) the bypass shall provide a dry contact closure that will signal the damper to open (motor does not operate). When the damper is fully open, a



- normally open dry contact (end-switch) shall close. The closed end-switch is wired to a bypass system input and allows motor operation. Up to four separate safety interlock inputs shall be provided. When any safety is opened, the motor shall be commanded to coast to stop, and the damper shall be commanded to close. This feature will also operate in Fireman's override / smoke control mode.
16. The bypass control shall monitor the status of the VFD and bypass contactors and indicate when there is a welded contactor contact or open contactor coil. This failed contactor condition shall be indicated on the bypass LCD display, programmed to fire a Form-C relay output, and / or over the serial communications protocol.
  17. The bypass control shall include a programmable time delay for bypass start and keypad indication that this time delay is in process. A Form C relay output provides a contact closure to signal the VAV boxes open. This will allow VAV boxes to be driven open before the motor operates at full speed in the bypass mode. The time delay shall be field programmable from 0 – 120 seconds.
  18. There shall be a keypad adjustment to select manual or automatic transfer bypass. The user shall be able to select via keypad programming which drive faults will result in an automatic transfer to the bypass mode and which faults require a manual transfer to bypass. The user may select whether the system shall automatically transfer from drive to bypass mode on the following drive fault conditions:
    - a. Over current
    - b. Over voltage
    - c. Under voltage
    - d. Loss of analog input
  19. The following operators shall be provided:
    - a. Bypass Hand-Off-Auto
    - b. Drive mode selector
    - c. Bypass mode selector
    - d. Bypass fault reset
  20. The bypass shall include a two line, 20 character LCD display. The display shall allow the user to access and view:
    - a. Energy savings – in US dollars
    - b. Bypass motor amps
    - c. Bypass input voltage– average and individual phase voltage
    - d. Bypass power (kW)
    - e. Bypass faults and fault logs
    - f. Bypass warnings
    - g. Bypass operating time (resettable)
    - h. Bypass energy (kilowatt hours – resettable)
    - i. I/O status
    - j. Parameter settings / programming
    - k. Printed circuit board temperature
  21. The following indicating lights (LED type) or keypad display indications shall be provided. A test mode or push to test feature shall be provided.
    - a. Power-on (Ready)
    - b. Run enable
    - c. Drive mode selected



- d. Bypass mode selected
  - e. Drive running
  - f. Bypass running
  - g. Drive fault
  - h. Bypass fault
  - i. Bypass H-O-A mode
  - j. Automatic transfer to bypass selected
  - k. Safety open
  - l. Damper opening
  - m. damper end-switch made
22. The Bypass controller shall have six programmable digital inputs, and five programmable Form-C relay outputs. This I/O allows for a total System (VFD and Bypass) I/O count of 24 points as standard. The bypass I/O shall be available to the BAS / DDC system even with the VFD removed.
23. The on-board Form-C relay outputs in the bypass shall be programmable for any of the following indications.
- a. System started
  - b. System running
  - c. Bypass override enabled
  - d. Drive fault
  - e. Bypass fault
  - f. Bypass H-O-A position
  - g. Motor proof-of-flow (broken belt)
  - h. Overload
  - i. Bypass selected
  - j. Bypass run
  - k. System started (damper opening)
  - l. Bypass alarm
  - m. Over temperature
24. The bypass shall provide a separate terminal strip for connection of freeze, fire, smoke contacts, and external start command. All external safety interlocks shall remain fully functional whether the system is in VFD or Bypass mode. The remote start/stop contact shall operate in VFD and bypass modes. The terminal strip shall allow for independent connection of up to four (4) unique safety inputs.
25. The bypass shall include a supervisory control mode. In this bypass mode, the bypass shall monitor the value of the VFD's analog input (feedback). This feedback value is used to control the bypass contactor on and off state. The supervisory mode shall allow the user to maintain hysteresis control over applications such as booster pumps even with the VFD out of service.
26. The user shall be able to select the text to be displayed on the keypad when an external safety opens. Example text display indications include "FireStat", "FreezStat", "Over pressure" and "Low suction". The user shall also be able to determine which of the four (4) safety contacts is open over the serial communications connection.
27. Smoke Control Override Mode (Override 1) – The bypass shall include a dedicated digital input that will transfer the motor from VFD mode to Bypass mode upon receipt of a dry contact closure from the Fire / Smoke Control System. The Smoke



Control Override Mode action is not programmable and will always function as described in the bypass User's Manual documentation. In this mode, the system will ignore low priority safeties and acknowledge high priority safeties as required by UL 864/UUKL. All keypad control, serial communications control, and normal customer start / stop control inputs will be disregarded. This Smoke Control Mode shall be designed to meet the intent of UL864/UUKL.

28. Class 10, 20, or 30 (programmable) electronic motor overload protection shall be included.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Installation shall be the responsibility of the mechanical contractor. The contractor shall install the drive in accordance with the recommendations of the VFD manufacturer as outlined in the VFD installation manual.
- B. Power wiring shall be completed by the electrical contractor, to NEC code 430.122 wiring requirements based on the VFD input current. Caution: VFDs supplied without internal reactors have substantially higher input current ratings, which may require larger input power wiring and branch circuit protection. The contractor shall complete all wiring in accordance with the recommendations of the VFD manufacturer as outlined in the installation manual.

#### **3.2 START-UP**

- A. Certified factory start-up shall be provided for each drive by a factory authorized service center. A certified start-up form shall be filled out for each drive with a copy provided to the owner, and a copy kept on file at the manufacturer.

#### **3.3 PRODUCT SUPPORT**

- A. Factory trained application engineering and service personnel that are thoroughly familiar with the VFD products offered shall be locally available at both the specifying and installation locations. A toll free 24/365 technical support line shall be available.
- B. A computer based training CD or 8-hour professionally generated video (VCR format) shall be provided to the owner at the time of project closeout. The training shall include installation, programming and operation of the VFD, bypass and serial communication.

#### **3.4 WARRANTY**

- A. The VFD Product Warranty shall be 24 months from the date of certified start-up, not to exceed 30 months from the date of shipment. The warranty shall include all parts, labor, travel time and expenses. A toll free 24/365 technical support line shall be available.

END OF SECTION 238415

FMS# PV028-ISS  
ISSUE PROJECT ROOM  
INTERIOR FIT OUT

**CONTRACT #4 – ELECTRICAL WORK**

**SECTION 260013 – ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR WORK**  
**ALLOWANCE FOR INCIDENTAL ASBESTOS ABATEMENT**

**1.01 SCOPE FOR ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK**

- A. The "General Conditions" apply to the work of this Section.
- B. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall remove asbestos containing materials as needed to perform the other work of this Contract when discovered during the course of work. When required, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall replace the ACM with non-asbestos containing materials. An allowance of **\$5,000.00** for the **Electrical Contractor** is herein established for this incidental work when so ordered and authorized by the Commissioner.
- C. ALL WORK SHALL BE DONE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE APPLICABLE PROVISIONS OF THE RULES AND REGULATIONS OF THE ASBESTOS CONTROL PROGRAM AS PROMULGATED BY TITLE 15 CHAPTER I OF RCNY AND NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF LABOR INDUSTRIAL CODE RULE 56 CITED AS 12 NYCRR, PART 56 WHICHEVER IS MORE STRINGENT AS PER LATEST AMENDMENTS TO THESE LAWS AND AS MODIFIED HEREIN BY THESE SPECIFICATIONS.
- D. ALL DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAMINATED MATERIAL SHALL BE PER LOCAL LAW 70/85.
- E. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR'S ATTENTION IS DIRECTED TO THE FACT THAT CERTAIN METHODS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT ARE PROTECTED BY PATENTS. TO DATE, PATENTS HAVE BEEN ISSUED WITH RESPECT TO "NEGATIVE PRESSURE ENCLOSURE" OR "NEGATIVE-AIR" OR "REDUCED PRESSURE" AND "GLOVE BAG".
- F. THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR SHALL BE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR AND SHALL HOLD THE DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION AND THE CITY HARMLESS FROM ANY AND ALL DAMAGES, LOSSES AND EXPENSES RESULTING FROM ANY INFRINGEMENT BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR OF ANY PATENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE PATENTS DESCRIBED ABOVE, USED BY THE ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR DURING PERFORMANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.
- G. "Asbestos" shall mean any hydrated mineral silicate separable into commercially usable fibers, including but not limited to chrysotile (serpentine), amosite (cumingtonite-grunerite), crocidolite (riebeckite), tremolite, anthrophyllite and actinolite.

- H. Prior to starting, the Asbestos abatement contractor must notify the Commissioner of the Department of Design and Construction if he/she anticipates any difficulty in performing the Work as required by these Specifications. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to prepare and submit all filings, notifications, etc. required by all City, State and Federal regulatory agencies having jurisdiction.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for submitting the Asbestos Project Notification Form (ACP-7 Form) to the Department of Environmental Protection, Asbestos Control Program, as per Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY and to the NYSDOL as per Industrial Code Rule 56.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for preparing, and submitting Asbestos Variance Application (ACP-9). If a Variance is required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Asbestos Project Designer, as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required variance.

The Electrical contractor is responsible for preparing and submitting an Asbestos Abatement Permit and/or Work Place Safety Plans (WPSP) that may be required for the completion of the Contract or incidental work. If such plans are required, the Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible to retain a NYSDOL Licensed Design Professional as defined in Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY to prepare and submit the required plans.

The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for the submission of all required documents to the NYCDEP to acquire the appropriate Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout (ACP-20) and/or Asbestos Project Completion Forms (ACP-21) on a timely basis for the completion of the incidental work encountered under this contract.

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be required to attend an on-site job meeting with the Construction Project Manager prior to the start of work to examine conditions and plan the sequence of operations, etc.

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall have a NYSDOL/NYCDEP Asbestos Supervisor onsite to oversee the work and conduct a final visual inspection as required by both Title 15, Chapter 1 of the RCNY and NYSDOL Industrial Code Rule 56.

- I. All work shall be done during regular working hours unless the Asbestos abatement contractor requests authorization to work in other than regular working hours and such authorization is granted by the Commissioner. (Regular work hours are those hours during which any given facility, in which work is to be done, is customarily open and functioning, normally between the hours of 8:00 A.M. and 4:00 P.M. Monday - Friday.) If such work schedule is authorized by the Commissioner, the work shall be done at no additional cost to the City.

- J. The Commissioner may order that work be done in other than regular working hours as herein by defined and this order may require the Asbestos abatement contractor to pay premium or overtime wages to complete the work. If the Commissioner orders work in other than regular working hours, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall multiply the unit price for that portion of the work requiring premium wages by 1.50 when computing payment in accordance with Paragraph 1.09. All requests for premium payment must be supported by certified payroll sheets and field sheets approved by the Construction Project Manager.

## 1.02 QUALIFICATIONS OF ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR

- A. Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate compliance with the special experience requirements set forth in subparagraphs (1) through (5) below. The asbestos abatement contractor must, submit documentation demonstrating compliance with all listed requirements. Such documentation shall include without limitation, all required licenses, certificates, and documentation.
1. The asbestos abatement contractor must, whether an individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture or other legal entity, must demonstrate for the three year period prior to the work, that it has been licensed by the New York State Department of Labor, as an "Asbestos abatement contractor".
  2. The asbestos abatement contractor must, for the three year period prior to the work, have been in the business of providing asbestos abatement services as a routine part of its daily operations.
  3. The asbestos abatement contractor proposing to do asbestos abatement work must be thoroughly experienced in such work and must provide evidence of having successfully performed and completed in a timely fashion at least five (5) asbestos abatement projects of similar size and complexity. The aggregate cost of these projects must be at least \$250,000.00 in each of the three years.
  4. For each project submitted to meet the experience requirements set forth above, the asbestos abatement contractor must submit the following information for the project; name and location of the project; name title and telephone number of the owner or the owner's representative who is familiar with the asbestos abatement contractor's work, brief description of the work completed as a prime or sub-asbestos abatement contractor; amount of contract or subcontract and the date of completion.
  5. The asbestos abatement contractor must demonstrate that it has the financial resources, supervisory personnel and equipment necessary to carry out the work and to comply with the required performance schedule, taking into consideration other business commitments. The asbestos

abatement contractor must submit such documentation as may be required by the Department of Design and Construction to demonstrate that it has the requisite capacity to perform the required services of this contract.

- B. Insurance Requirements: The asbestos abatement contractor must provide asbestos liability insurance in the following amount: 1 million dollars per occurrence, 2 million dollars aggregate (combined single limit). The City of New York shall be named as an additional insured on such insurance policy.
- C. Throughout the specifications, reference is made to codes and standards which establish qualities and types of workmanship and materials, and which establish methods for testing and reporting on the pertinent characteristics thereof.

### 1.03 ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

The Asbestos abatement contractor will visit the subject location within one (1) working day of notification to ascertain actual work required. If the project is identified as being "urgent", then work shall commence no later than 48 hours from the time of notification. In this event, the asbestos abatement contractor shall immediately notify when applicable EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL Asbestos Control Bureau and NYCDEP Asbestos Control Program of start of the work and file the necessary Asbestos Notifications and any applicable Variance Applications with the regulatory agencies cited above.

In the event that the project is not classified as "urgent" the Asbestos abatement contractor shall notify the EPA NESHAPS Coordinator, NYSDOL and NYCDEP by submitting the requisite asbestos project notification forms, postmarked 10 days before activity begins if 260 linear feet or more and/or 160 square feet or more of asbestos containing material will be disturbed.

The following information must be included in the notification:

- A. Name and address of building City or operator;
- B. Project description:
  - 1. Size - square feet, number of linear feet, etc;
  - 2. Age - date of construction and renovations (if known);
  - 3. Use - i.e., office, school, industrial, etc.
  - 4. Scope - repair, demolition, cleaning, etc.
- C. Amount of asbestos involved in work and an explanation of techniques used to determine the amount;

- D. Building location/address, including Block and Lot numbers;
- E. Work schedule including the starting and completion dates;
- F. Abatement methods to be employed;
- G. Procedures for removal of asbestos-containing material;
- H. Name, title and authority of governmental representative sponsoring project.

**1.04 WORK INCLUDED IN UNIT PRICE**

The Asbestos abatement contractor will be paid a basic unit price of **\$25.00** per square feet for the removal and disposal of asbestos containing material and replacement of the same with non-asbestos containing materials.

Unit price shall include all costs necessary to do the work of this Contract, including but not limited to: labor, materials, equipment, utilities, disposal, insurance, overhead and profit.

**1.05 AIR MONITORING – ASBESTOS ABATEMENT CONTRACTOR**

- A. "Air Sampling" shall mean the process of measuring the fiber content of a known volume of air collected during a specific period of time. The procedure utilized for asbestos follows the NIOSH Standard Analytical Method 7400 or the provisional transmission electron microscopy methods developed by the USEPA and/or National Institute of Standard and Technology which are utilized for lower detectability and specific fiber identification.
- B. Air monitoring of Asbestos abatement contractor's personnel will be performed in conformance with OSHA requirements, (All costs associated with this work are deemed included in the unit price.).
- C. Qualifications of Testing Laboratory:

The industrial hygiene laboratory shall be a current proficient participant in the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) PAT Program. The laboratory identification number shall be submitted and approved by the City. The laboratory shall be accredited by the AIHA and New York State Department of Health Environmental Laboratory Approval Program (ELAP).

Note: Work area air testing and analysis before, during and upon completion of work (clearance testing) will be performed by a Third Party Air Monitor under separate Contract with the City.

**1.06 THIRD PARTY MONITORING AND LABORATORY**

- A. The NYCDDC, at its own expense, will employ the services of an independent Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and Laboratory. The Third Party Air Monitor will perform air sampling activities and project monitoring at the Work Site.
- B. The Laboratory will perform analysis of air samples utilizing Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) and/or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM).
- C. The Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and the designated Project Monitor shall have access to all areas of the asbestos removal project at all times and shall continuously inspect and monitor the performance of the Asbestos abatement contractor to verify that said performance complies with this Specification. The Third-Party Air Monitor shall be on site throughout the entire abatement operation.
- D. The NYCDDC will be responsible for costs incurred with the Third Party Air Monitoring Firm and laboratory work. Any subsequent additional testing required due to limits exceeded during initial testing shall be paid for by the Asbestos abatement contractor.

**1.07 PAYMENT REQUEST DOCUMENTATION**

- B. The following information shall be included for each payment request:
  - 1. Description of work performed.
  - 2. Linear footage and pipe sizes involved.
  - 3. Square footage for boiler & breaching insulation removed.
  - 4. Square footage of non pipe and boiler areas removed, patched, enclosed, sealed, or painted.
  - 5. Square footage of encapsulation, sealing, patching, and painting involved.
  - 6. Total cost associated with compliance with the assigned task.
  - 7. Architectural, Electrical, HVAC, Plumbing, etc. work incidental to the Asbestos Abatement Work.
  - 8. A certified copy (in form 4312-39) to the Comptroller or Financial Officer of the New York City to the effect that the financial statement is true.
  - 9. A signed copy (in form 6506q-6) of certificate of compliance with non-discriminatory provisions of the Contract.

10. Attach a copy of valid workmen compensation insurance.
  11. Valid asbestos insurance per occurrence.
  12. General liability insurance when required.
- C. Each payment request shall include a grand total for all work completed that billing period, the landfill waste manifests and a copy of waste transporter permit. The Department of Design and Construction will inspect the work performed, review the cost and approve or disapprove requests for payment.
- D. EXPOSURE LOG: With this final payment, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a listing of the names and social security numbers of all employees actively engaged in the abatement work of this Contract. This list shall include a summary showing each part of the abatement work in which the employee was engaged and the dates thereof.

#### 1.08 QUANTITY CALCULATIONS

In order to determine the square footage involved for the various pipe sizes of pipe insulation that might be encountered, the following table is to be used.

<u>PIPE INSULATION SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>PIPE SIZE O.D.</u>	<u>SQUARE FOOTAGE PER LINEAR FOOT</u>
2-1/2"	1/2"	0.65
2-3/4"	3/4"	0.72
3"	1"	0.79
3-1/4"	1-1/4"	0.85
3-1/2"	1-1/2"	0.92
4"	2"	1.05
4-1/2"	2-1/2"	1.18
5"	3"	1.31
6"	3-1/4"	1.57
7"	3-1/2"	1.83
8"	4"	2.09
9"	5"	2.36
10"	6"	2.62
12"	8"	3.14
14"	10"	3.67
16"	12"	4.19
18"	14"	4.71

**1.09 METHOD OF PAYMENT**

Payment shall be made in accordance with Items A through R below. Payment shall be calculated based on the actual quantity of the item performed by the asbestos abatement contractor, times the unit price specified below. Credits may apply to certain times, as specified below.

- A. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING PIPE INSULATION:** Actual linear footage, multiplied by the square footage factor listed for the respective pipe size in Section 1.08, multiplied by the unit price in Section 1.04.

EXAMPLE: 100 lin.ft. of 1/2" pipe and 100 lin.ft. of 6" pipe, including elbows, tees. Flanges, etc.

100 X 0.65 = 65 sq.ft.      65 x unit price = Payment

100 X 2.62 = 262 sq.ft.      262 x unit price = Payment

- B. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER INSULATION:** (all types including Silicate Block and including the removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.

EXAMPLE: Item B. removal and replacement of 1000 S.F. of boiler insulation (incl. Silicate block)

1000 S.F. X (1.5) X the Unit Price = Payment

- C. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF TANK INSULATION:** (all types including removal/replacement of metal jacketing) Payment shall be made at 1.5 times the unit price per square foot.
- D. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF BOILER UPTAKE, & BREACHING INSULATION:** (all types including stiffening angles and wire lath) Payment shall be made at 2.0 times the unit price per square foot.
- E. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF DUCT INSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot.
- F. REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF SOFT ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (Including sprayed-on fire proofing and sound proofing) Payment shall be made at 1.0 times the unit price per square foot of surface area. Area of irregular surfaces must be calculated and confirmed with DDC representative.
- G. ACOUSTIC PLASTER REPAIR AND/OR ENCAPSULATION:** Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.

- H. **PATCHING OR REPAIR** of items listed in A through F will be paid at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- I. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF WATERPROOFING ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL:** (including friable and non-friable waterproofing material from interior and exterior walls, floors, foundations, penetrations, louvers, vents and openings other than windows, doors and skylights) Payment shall be made at 0.5 times the unit price per square foot.
- J. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL AND REPLACEMENT OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL WIRING INSULATION:** (including friable and non-friable wiring insulation) Payment shall be made at 0.33 times the unit price per square foot.
- K. **PAINTING:** Payment shall be made at 0.05 times the unit price per square foot.
- L. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING PLASTER:** from ceilings and walls, including any wire lath and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.80 times the unit price per square foot.
- M. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING FLOOR TILES, CEILING TILES, TRANSITE PANELS:** (including any adhesive, glue, mastic and/or underlayment) and disposal as asbestos containing waste. Payment shall be made at 0.40 times the unit price per square foot. If multiple layers are discovered, each additional layer shall be paid at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot.
- N. **ADDITIONAL CLEAN UP/HOUSEKEEPING OF WORK AREA:** (excluding pre-cleaning of work area required by regulations) HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of asbestos contaminated surface. Payment shall be made at 0.20 times the unit price per square foot. When GLOVE BAG is employed to remove ACM, cost of HEPA vacuuming and wet cleaning of floor area up to 3 feet on each side of glove-bag shall be included in unit price and no extra payment will be made.
- O. **REMOVAL, DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING ROOFING MATERIAL:** including mastic, flashing and sealant compound and provide temporary asbestos-free roof covering consisting of one layer of rolled roofing paper sealed with asphaltic roofing compound. Payment shall be made at 0.8 times the unit price per square foot. Credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price will be taken for each square foot of temporary roof covering which the Asbestos abatement contractor is directed not to install.
- P. **PICK-UP AND DISPOSAL OF GROSS DEBRIS:** (excluding any waste generated from abatement under Item A-R) at a rate of \$150 per cubic yard for asbestos contaminated waste and \$75 per cubic yard for non-asbestos contaminated waste. This cost includes all labor and material cost associated with work.

Q. **REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING BRICK, BLOCK, MORTAR, CEMENT OR CONCRETE:** along with all surfacing materials including wire lath and/or other supporting structures and disposal as ACM waste. Payment shall be made at a rate of \$25.00 per cubic foot of material removed.

R. **REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING WINDOW/DOOR CAULKING:** including friable and non-friable caulking, weather-stripping, glazing, sealants or other waterproofing materials applied to windows, doors, skylights, etc. Payment shall be made at the rate of \$400.00 per opening regardless of size or configuration. This cost includes labor, consumable materials, set-up/breakdown, removal and disposal, as required.

**Note 1: CREDIT:** For items listed in A through F, a credit at a rate of 0.33 times the unit price, times the respective multiplier (for each item) will be taken for each square foot of insulation which the asbestos abatement contractor is not directed to reapply.

**Note 2: MINIMUM PAYMENT:** The minimum payment per call at any individual job sites or various job sites during the same day will be eight hundred dollars (\$800.00).

**Note 3:** All payments shall be made as described in paragraph 1.09 herein.

**Note 4: WORKING HIGHER THAN 12 FEET ABOVE FLOOR LEVEL OR WORK REQUIRING COMPLEX SCAFFOLDING OR CONSTRUCTION WORK PLATFORMS:** Provisions are made in this Contract to compensate the Asbestos abatement contractor for work performed in locations that are difficult to access due to work at elevations that are significantly higher than the normal work level. The unit price for these items will be paid at 1.20 times the unit price described in Paragraphs 1.09, A through R for those portions of the work that are more than twelve (12) feet above the grade for that would be judged as the normal working level.

#### 1.10 GUARANTEE

- A. Work performed in compliance with each task shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date the completed work is accepted by the Department of Design and Construction.
- B. The Commissioner of The Department of Design and Construction will notify the Asbestos abatement contractor in writing regarding defects in work under the guarantee.

#### 1.11 OCCUPANCY OF SITE NOT EXCLUSIVE

Attention is specifically drawn to the fact that contractors, performing the work of other Contracts, may be brought upon any of the work sites of this Contract. Therefore, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall not have exclusive rights to any site of his work and shall fully cooperate and coordinate his work with the work of other contractors who may

be brought upon any site of the work of this Contract. This paragraph applies to those areas outside the regulated Work Area as defined by Title 15, Chapter I of RCNY.

1.12 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-Construction Submittals:

1. Attend a pre-construction meeting scheduled by the City of New York Department of Design and Construction. This meeting shall also be attended by a designated representative of the City of New York third party air monitoring firm, facility manager and the Construction Project Manager. At this meeting, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present three copies of the following items:
  - a. Asbestos abatement contractor's scope of work, work plan and schedule.
  - b. Asbestos project notifications, approved variances and plans to Government Agencies.
  - c. Copies of Permits, clearance and licenses if required.
  - d. Schedules: the Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide to the Construction Project Manager a copy of the following schedules for approval. Once approved, schedules shall be maintained and updated as received. Asbestos abatement contractor shall post a copy of all schedules at the site:
    - (1) A construction schedule stating critical dates of the project including, but not limited to, mobilization, Work Area preparation, demolition, gross removal, fine cleaning, encapsulation, inspections, clearance monitoring, and phase of refinishing and final inspections. The schedule shall be updated biweekly, at a minimum.
    - (2) A schedule of staffing stating number of workers per shift per activity, name and number of supervisor(s) per shift, shifts per day, and total days to be worked.
    - (3) Submit all changes in schedule or staffing to the Construction Project Manager prior to implementation.
  - e. Written description of emergency procedures to be followed in case of injury or fire. This section must include evacuation procedures, source of medical assistance (name and telephone number to nearest

hospital) and procedures to be used for access by medical personnel (examples: first aid squad and physician). NOTE: Necessary Emergency Procedures Shall Take Priority Over All Other Requirements of These Specifications.

- f. Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for encapsulants, sealants, firestopping foam, cleaners/disinfectants, spray adhesive and any and all potentially hazardous materials that may be employed on the project. No work involving the aforementioned will be allowed to proceed until SDS are reviewed.
- g. Worker Training and Medical Surveillance: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit a list of the persons who will be employed by him /her to perform the removal work. Present evidence that workers have received proper training required by the regulations and the medical examinations required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101.
- h. Logs: Specimen copies of daily progress log, visitor's log, and disposal log.

(1) The Asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a permanently bound log book of minimum 8-1/2" x 11" size at the entrance to the Worker and Waste Decontamination enclosure system as hereinafter specified. Log book shall contain on title page the project name, name, address and phone number of the Asbestos abatement contractor; name, address and phone number of Asbestos abatement contractor and City's third party air monitoring firm; emergency numbers including, but not limited to local Fire/Rescue Department. Log book shall contain a list of personnel approved for entry into the Work Area.

(2) All entries into the log shall be made in non-washable, permanent ink and such pen shall be strung to or otherwise attached to the log to prevent removal from the log-in area. Under no circumstances shall pencil entries be permitted. Any significant events occurring during the abatement project shall be entered into the log. Upon completion of the job, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall submit the logbook containing a day-to-day record of personnel log entries countersigned by the Construction Project Manager every day.

- i. Worker's Acknowledgments: Submit statements signed by each employee that the employee has received training in the proper handling of ACM, understands the health implications and risks

involved; and understands the use and limitations of the respiratory equipment to be used.

B. During Construction Submittals:

1. Security and safety logs showing names of person entering workspace, date and time of entry and exit, record of any accident, emergency evacuation, and any other safety and/or health incident.
2. Progress logs showing the number of workers, supervisors, hours of work and tasks completed shall be submitted daily to the Construction Project Manager.
3. Floor plans indicating Asbestos abatement contractor's current work progress shall be submitted for review by the Construction Project Manager.
4. All Asbestos abatement contractors' air monitoring and inspection results.

C. Project Closeout Submittals:

Upon completion of the project and as a condition of acceptance, the Asbestos abatement contractor shall present two copies of the following items, bound and indexed:

1. Lien Waivers from Asbestos abatement contractor, Sub-Asbestos abatement contractors and Suppliers,
2. Daily OSHA air monitoring results,
3. All Waste Manifests (Asbestos and Construction Debris), seals and disposal logs,
4. Field Sign-In/Sign-Out Logs for every shift,
5. Copies of all Building Department Forms and Permits,
6. A Letter of Compliance stating that all the work on this project was performed in accordance with the Specifications and all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations,
7. All Warranties as stated in the Specifications,
  - a. Fully executed disposal certificates and transportation manifest.
8. Project Record: The Asbestos abatement contractor shall maintain a project record for all small and large asbestos projects. During the project, the

project record shall be kept on site at all times. Upon completion of the project, the project record shall be maintained by the building owner. The project record shall be submitted to DDC as part of the close out documents. The project record shall consist of:

- a. Copies of licenses of all asbestos abatement contractors involved in the project;
- b. Copies of NYCDEP and NYSDOL supervisor and handler certificates for all workers engaged in the project;
- c. Copies of all project notifications and reports filed with NYCDEP, NYSDOL and USEPA for the project, with any amendments or variances;
- d. Copies of all asbestos abatement permits, including associated approved plans and work place safety plan;
- e. A copy of the air sampling log and all air sampling results;
- f. A copy of the abatement asbestos abatement contractor's daily log book;
- g. Copies of all asbestos waste manifests;
- h. A copy of all Project Monitor's Reports (ACP-15).
- i. A copy of each ATR-1 Form completed for the asbestos project (if required).
- j. A copy of each Asbestos Project Conditional Closeout Report (ACP-20) if required.
- k. A copy of the Asbestos Project Completion Form (ACP-21).

### **1.13 PROTECTION OF FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT**

Cover all furniture and equipment that cannot be removed from Work Areas. Movable furniture and equipment will be removed from Work Areas by the Asbestos abatement contractor prior to start of work. At the conclusion of the work (after final air testing), the Asbestos abatement contractor will remove all plastic covering on walls, floors, furniture, equipment and reinstall furniture and equipment. He shall remove and store all sheaths, curtains and drapes, and reinstall same following final clean up.

**1.14 UTILITIES**

**A. General:**

All temporary facilities shall be subject to the approval of the Commissioner. Prior to starting work at any site, locations and/or sketches (if required) of temporary facilities must be submitted to the Construction Project Manager for the required approval.

**B. Water:**

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all water needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in buildings under their jurisdiction. However, it is the responsibility of the Asbestos abatement contractor to ensure that hot water is provided for showering in the decontamination unit. The Asbestos abatement contractor shall furnish, install and maintain any needed equipment to meet these requirements at his own expense.

**C. Electricity:**

The Department of Design and Construction will furnish all electricity needed for construction, at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor in a building, under their jurisdiction. The Asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for routing the electric power to the abatement Work Area.

All temporary lighting and temporary electrical service for Work Area shall be in weatherproof enclosures and be ground fault protected.

**D.** In leased spaces, arrangements for water supplies and electricity must be made with the landlord. However, all such arrangements must be made through and are subject to approval of the Department of Design and Construction. Utilities will be provided at no cost to the Asbestos abatement contractor. However, it is the Asbestos abatement contractor's (or the Electrical contractor's) responsibility to furnish and install a suitable distribution system to the Work Area. This system will be provided at no cost to the City.

**1.15 FEES**

The Asbestos abatement contractor shall be responsible for any and all fees or charges imposed by Local, State or Federal Law, Rule and Regulation applicable to the work specified herein, including fees or charges which may be imposed subsequent to the date of the Bid opening.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
  - 2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 3. Sleeve seals.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Common electrical installation requirements.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. LEED Building submittal requirements:
  - 1. Provide for all field-applied adhesives, sealants (used as fillers), and paints: Material Safety Data Sheets, for all applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings applied on the interior of the building. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).



- 1.5
- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
    - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
    - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
    - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
    - 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
  - B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. LEED Building Requirements:
  - 1. General Requirements: The City of New York requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the project's environmental goals, which include achieving a LEED™ Green Building rating. Specific project goals which may impact this area of work are listed in the applicable paragraphs of this specification section. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in the sections below and in related sections of the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions, or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their Subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED building criteria.
  - 2. Performance Criteria: All field applied adhesives, sealants (used as fillers), prime painting, and finished painting shall comply with the low VOC requirements called out in Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, & Architectural Coatings, and Section 09900 - Interior Paint.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Link-Seal
    - b. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - c. Calpico, Inc.
    - d. Metraflex Co.
    - e. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  3. Pressure Plates: Glass reinforced nylon. Include two for each sealing element.
  4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Zinc dichromate/organic carbon steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

### 2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.



3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways or cables penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealers."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Firestops and Smoke-seals."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.



- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

#### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

**END OF SECTION 260500**

**SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.
- B. LEED related scope of work
1. 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing



Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
  2. General Cable Corporation.
  3. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
  4. Southwire Company.
- B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN.

#### 2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.



5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG, No. 10 AWG, and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG, No. 10 AWG, and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- H. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.



- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) of slack.

### 3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Provide sleeve for fire-stopping
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - 1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
  - 2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.



- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealers."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations.
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly/

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:



1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.
    - a. Packaged air cooled chiller
    - b. All new transformers
  2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
    - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 260519**



## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
  - 1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
    - a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
    - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.



1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

### 2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- C. Water Heater: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a



separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
- B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
  - 2. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm.
  - 3. Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Commissioner promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

**END OF SECTION 260526**

**SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.
- C. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
  - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.



2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
4. Equipment supports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases, wall and roof penetrations

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
- B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.



- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Hilti Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
  - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 3) Hilti Inc.
      - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
  - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
  - 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Reference Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.



7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION 260529**

**SECTION 260531 – NOISE CONTROL ELECTRICAL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Provide vibration isolation and noise control for equipment, electrical conduits, etc.:
  - 1. Conduit penetrations
  - 2. Soundproofing of construction.
- B. Acoustic performance of equipment systems and air distribution devices:
  - 1. It is the intent of this specification that noise levels from electrical equipment (such as transformers) will not exceed the Noise Criteria Curves (NC) described in Paragraph 3 of this Section. Noise Criteria Curves establish a one number rating for evaluating the acceptability of a sound pressure spectrum according to the average person's hearing. Noise Criteria Curves and their related sound pressure equivalents for each frequency as described in the 1987 ASHRAE Handbook Systems Volume.
  - 2. These NC levels should be used as a guide in the event of product substitutions and shop drawing modifications. The NC levels shall also serve as a gauge by which the results of workmanship and care of installation will be judged from an acoustical standpoint, since a poor installation can lead to the generation of noise.
  - 3. Noise Criteria for occupied spaces for this project shall be set as follows:
 

Location	Noise Criteria
Performance Space	NC 30
Control Room	NC 30
Green Room	NC 30
  - 4. The following are less critical spaces for sound:



Location	Noise Criteria
Public Circulation Spaces	NC35-40
Dressing Rooms	NC35
Administrative Offices	NC30-35
Dimmer / Rack rooms	NC 40

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### A. Design Criteria:

1. Provide noise control to avoid excessive noise in the building due to the operation of machinery or equipment, or due to interconnected piping, ductwork or conduit.

### 1.4 WORKMANSHIP

- #### A. Workmanship is critical in achieving the objective of noise control and it is critical that all noise control work must be installed in good workmanship like manner.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- #### A. Comply with General Conditions requirements for shop drawings, product data & samples as applicable.
- #### B. Include with all vibration isolation submittals data for equipment to be isolated, including weights, operational forces, dimensions, equipment power (kW), RPM, etc.
- #### C. Submit for approval prior to installation of equipment.
- #### D. Manufacturer's model number and type of each isolator, the identification mark for equipment or pipeline to which it is to be applied, and the number of isolators to be furnished for each equipment or pipeline.
- #### E. For Steel Spring Mounts or Hangers: Free height minimum static deflection, deflected height, solid height, actual loading, diameter of spring coil, the ratio of spring height under actual load to spring diameter and structural calculations showing the capability of isolators to support load.
- #### F. For Neoprene Isolators: Free height minimum static deflection, deflected height and actual loading.
- #### G. Submit detailed shop drawings showing the intended locations and construction features of all types of vibration systems. Show details necessary to convey complete understanding of the work to be performed.

- H. Submit certification from isolation manufacturer that isolation is installed according to manufacturer's printed instructions and as specified.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 NEOPRENE MOUNTINGS

- A. Neoprene mountings shall have a minimum static deflection of 0.35"(9mm). All metal surfaces shall be neoprene covered and have friction pads both top and bottom. Bolt holes shall be provided on the bottom and a tapped hole and cap screw on top. Steel rails shall be used above the mountings under equipment such as small vent sets to compensate for the overhang. Mountings shall be type ND or rails type DNR as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc. or approved equal.

### 2.2 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Spring Hangers : Combination coil-spring and elastomeric-insert hanger with spring and insert in compression.
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
- B. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

### 2.3 SPLIT SEALS

- A. Split Seals consist of raceways / cable trays halves with minimum 3/4"(20mm) thick neoprene sponge cemented to the inner faces. The seal shall be tightened around the raceways / cable trays to eliminate clearance between the inner sponge face and the piping. Concrete may be packed around the seal to make it integral with the floor, wall or ceiling if the seal is not in place prior to the construction of the building member. Seals shall project a minimum of 1"(25mm) past either face of the wall. Where temperatures exceed 240°F (115°C), 10 lb. density fiberglass may be used in lieu of the sponge. Seals shall be Type SWS as manufactured by Mason Industries, Inc. or approved equal.



2.4 GROMMETS

- A. Grommets shall be 60 durometer, shore A, SBR. RubberMill, Western Rubber or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL:

- A. No electrical conduit, fixture, ceiling suspension wires or other elements of the building construction shall be attached to or abutted against the duct and piping systems.
- B. Where conduit penetrate walls, ceilings and floors of the noise critical performance spaces, or ceiling void partitions or acoustically rated elements whether shown on the drawings or not, acoustically seal the penetration.
- C. Contain rough-in of piping within stud wall cavities no less than 1/4-inch from the plane of the studs and 1 inch from gypsum board or other wall sheathing.

3.2 SOUND PROOFING OF CONSTRUCTION

- A. Required for penetrations of conduits through walls, floors and ceilings of mechanical rooms, electrical rooms with transformers, audio and video equipment racks, and Sound-Critical Spaces as called out in Acoustical Performance Section 1.01 of this Specification, as well as those walls, floors, and ceilings indicated on the drawings.
- B. The Contractor shall ensure that the sound control performance of structures be maintained in accordance with the drawings and specifications. All penetrations shall be installed in a manner that results in complete air tightness through structure. If a condition occurs where penetration of the structure by a duct, raceways / cable trays, conduit, etc., is not shown clearly on the drawings (or described in the specifications), the Contractor shall ask immediately for clarification of the method necessary to install the particular item.
- C. Penetrations of Single-Wythe Masonry and Concrete Constructions
  1. Conduit diameter = 1" or larger:
    - a. Install a metal sleeve at the penetration. Size the sleeve to allow for 1/2" Armaflex lining and normal raceways / cable trays clearances. Line the sleeve with 1/2" thick Armaflex II Sheet Insulation (or equal).
    - b. Install raceways / cable trays/conduit through lined sleeve and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
    - c. Do not rigidly secure raceways / cable trays/conduit to wall with angles.
  2. Conduit diameter < 1":



- a. Wrap raceways / cable trays/conduit with 1/2" thick Armstrong Self-Seal Armaflex 2000 Pipe Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
  - b. Grout tightly to the Armaflex cover on the pipe/conduit.
  - c. Trim Armaflex to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
3. Use of spilt seals in lieu of Armaflex wrap where approved by acoustic consultant.
  4. Provide flexible connection on noisy side of if crossing acoustic joint with neoprene mounts on both side of acoustic joint.
- D. Penetrations of Single Stud Drywall Constructions
1. Conduit diameter = 1" or larger:
    - a. Wrap with 1/2" thick Armstrong Self-Seal Armaflex 2000 Pipe Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
    - b. Install a metal pipe sleeve around the Armaflex wrap.
    - c. Install the drywall around the sleeve and spackle tightly to full thickness of partition.
    - d. Trim Armaflex and sleeve to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
  2. Conduit diameter < 1":
    - a. Wrap with 1/2" thick Armstrong Self-Seal Armaflex 2000 Pipe Insulation (or equal). Extend wrapping a minimum of 2" beyond the width of the partition on either side.
    - b. Install the drywall tight to the Armaflex wrap.
    - c. Trim Armaflex to the width of the partition, and seal airtight with acoustical sealant or fire-rated acoustical sealant (3M Corporation CP 25 or equal) if partition is fire-rated.
  3. Multiple Conduit / Cable Tray Penetrations
    - a. Where a series of duct, conduits or pipes are penetrating the wall/floor/ceiling, each duct/conduit/pipe shall be separated by minimum 4" in all directions.
    - b. Multiple duct/pipe/conduit penetrations at one location (i.e., one large opening for a series of pipe runs) is not recommended.
  4. Penetrations of Double-Wythe Masonry/Concrete and/or Double Stud Drywall and/or Combination Constructions



- a. Use same techniques described above EXCEPT do not bridge the two studs or wythes with solid members such as sleeves or stud frames. Each sleeve or frame must be completely separate for each individual wythe or stud.
5. Use of spilt seals in lieu of Armaflex wrap where approved by acoustic consultant.

### 3.3 SERVICES PENETRATIONS

- A. Conduit: Where pipe and ductwork penetrates acoustical partitions, provide acoustic seal around the piping and ductwork.
- B. Electrical Box Sealant: Backs of electrical boxes, light fittings etc., in acoustically rated constructions shall be sealed airtight by sheet caulking.
- C. Services crossing acoustic isolation joints (AIJS)
  1. All building services which cross the Acoustic Isolation Joints shall incorporate resilient details and/or resilient supports in order to maintain the performance of the isolation system. The requirement is to minimize the transmission of acoustic energy across the joint.
  2. Services which do not serve the space on the inner (quiet) side of the acoustic isolation joint shall not be routed across the AIJ surrounding that space. Detailing of any other services crossing Acoustic Isolation Joints (AIJ) shall be agreed with the Acoustic Consultant prior to installation.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS:

- A. All isolated equipment and control panels to be connected with long lengths of flexible steel conduit from junction box, type depending on environment.

### 3.5 EQUIPMENT ISOLATION

- A. Provide spring and neoprene hangers for transformers supported from ceiling slab structure.
- B. Provide neoprene mountings for all wall transformers, electrical cabinets and equipment racks, racks, and all equipment and all control panels with motors and internal transformers.

**END OF SECTION 260531**

**SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- E. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:
    - a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
    - b. Frame and cover design.
    - c. Grounding details.
    - d. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
    - e. Joint details.



C. Samples for Initial Selection: For wireways and surface raceways with factory-applied texture and color finishes.

1. Size: 3/4"

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required for wireways and surface raceways, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Size: 3/4"

E. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:

1. Structural members in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.

F. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

a. The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

G. Source quality-control test reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Alflex Inc.
  3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
  4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
  5. Electri-Flex Co.
  6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
  7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
  8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
  9. Wheatland Tube Company.
- B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- C. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- D. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
  2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- E. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
- F. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.
- G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- H. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight) and EMT: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
  2. Fittings for EMT: Steel, [set-screw or compression type.
  3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- I. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.
- J. EMT: ANSI C80.3.



2.2 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - 2. Hoffman.
  - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric.
- B. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged or screw cover type.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.3 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in standard color.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - b. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
    - c. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.

2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
  - 3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
  - 4. Hoffman.
  - 5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
  - 6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
  - 7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
  - 8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
  - 9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
  - 10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
  - 11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - 12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
  - 13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.



- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast or sheet metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.
- E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- F. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- G. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- H. Cabinets:
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - 1. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A licensed professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - 2. Testing machine pressure gauges shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit.
  - 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
  - 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.
  - 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  - 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.



6. Application of Boxes for Underground Wiring:
- a. Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  - a. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
6. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT.
7. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: EMT.
8. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
9. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel in damp or wet locations.
10. Raceways for all AV systems wiring: EMT.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."



- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
- H. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
- I. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
  - 1. 3/4-Inch (19-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
  - 2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
  - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
  - 4. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change.
  - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.
- J. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  - 2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- K. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
- L. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- M. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.



3.3 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection for fire-stopping.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
  - 1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
  - 2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealers" for materials and installation.
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with fire-stop materials.
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible, boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.



3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground, exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway material and size. Position raceway in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide fire-stopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 260533**

**SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Identification for raceways.
  - 2. Identification of power and control cables.
  - 3. Identification for conductors.
  - 4. Underground-line warning tape.
  - 5. Warning labels and signs.
  - 6. Instruction signs.
  - 7. Equipment identification labels.
  - 8. Miscellaneous identification products.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.



- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POWER RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- C. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- D. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
  - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

### 2.2 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.



2.3 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.

2.4 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

- A. 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

2.5 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- C. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
  - 1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - 3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- D. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

2.6 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
  - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
- B. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).



- C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.
- C. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- D. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.
- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
  - 4. Color: Black.
- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
  - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
  - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
  - 5. Color: Black.



2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- E. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- G. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- H. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label. Install labels at 10-foot (3-m) maximum intervals.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:



1. Emergency Power.
  2. Power.
- C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
    - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
    - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.
      - 2) Phase B: Red.
      - 3) Phase C: Blue.
    - c. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- D. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- E. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

- F. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
  2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
  3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.



- G. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- H. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- I. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
  - 1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Indoor Equipment: Adhesive film label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
    - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
    - d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
  - 2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. New panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. New enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. New access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. New transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    - e. New emergency system boxes and enclosures.
    - f. New enclosed switches.
    - g. New enclosed circuit breakers.
    - h. New power transfer equipment.
    - i. New contactors.

**END OF SECTION 260553**



SECTION 26 08 00 - COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The followings documents apply to all required work for the project:
1. Contract drawings
  2. Specifications
  3. General Conditions
  4. Addendum
  5. City of New York Standard construction Contract.
- B. The OPR and BOD documentation are included by reference for information only.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes commissioning process requirements for Electrical systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DESCRIPTION

- A. Commissioning: Commissioning is a systematic process of ensuring that all building systems, including the mechanical and electrical systems, have been installed in the prescribed manner, are functionally checked and capable of being operated and maintained to perform with the design intent and have documentation to support proper installation and operation. The Commissioning Agent (CxA) shall provide the City of New York with an unbiased, objective view of the system's installation, operation and performance. This process does not eliminate or reduce the responsibility of each system contractor to provide a complete design or installing subcontractors to provide a finished product. Commissioning is intended to enhance the quality of each system installation, startup and transfer to beneficial use by the City of New York.
- B. Commissioning during the construction phase is intended to achieve the following specific objectives, according to the Contract Documents:
1. Verify that applicable equipment and systems are installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations and to industry accepted minimum standards and that they receive adequate operational checkout by installing contractors.
  2. Verify and document proper performance of equipment and systems.
  3. Verify that Operation & Maintenance documentation is complete and transferred to City of New York.
  4. Verify that proper orientation program has been implemented for the City of New York's operating personnel.
  5. Verify a contract is in place for a post occupancy review with O&M staff within 10 months after Substantial Completion.



- C. The Commissioning process shall be a team effort and encompass, as well as coordinate, the traditionally separate functions of system documentation, system installation, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing, balancing and verification and performance checkouts.
- D. The CxA will work closely with the construction team, cooperating on and coordinating all Cx activities with the Commissioner, Contractor, subcontractors, manufacturers and equipment suppliers.
- E. The Cx process shall not reduce the responsibility of the Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for definitions.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for specific submittal requirements :
- B. In addition, provide the following:
  - 1. Certificates of readiness
  - 2. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.
  - 3. O&M manuals
  - 4. Field / factory Test reports

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test Equipment Calibration Requirements: Subcontractors will comply with test equipment manufacturer's calibration procedures and intervals. Recalibrate test instruments immediately after instruments have been repaired resulting from being dropped or damaged. Affix calibration tags to test instruments. Furnish calibration records to CxA upon request.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" pertaining to coordination during the commissioning process.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. All standard testing equipment required to perform startup, initial checkout and functional performance testing shall be provided by the subcontractor for the equipment being tested. For example, the Contractor shall ultimately be responsible for all standard testing equipment for the electrical systems and control systems in Division 26. A sufficient quantity of two-way radios shall be provided by each subcontractor.



- B. Special equipment, tools and instruments (specific to a piece of equipment and only available from vendor) required for testing shall be included in the base bid price to the City of New York and left on site, except for stand-alone data logging equipment that may be used by the CxA.
- C. Test equipment and software required by any equipment manufacturer for programming and/or start-up, whether specified or not, shall be provided by the manufacturer of the equipment. Manufacturer shall provide the test equipment, demonstrate its use, and assist in the commissioning process as needed. Proprietary test equipment (and software) shall become the property of the City of New York upon completion of the commissioning process.
- D. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 GENERAL DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. With assistance from the installing subcontractors, the CxA will prepare Installation Check Sheets for all commissioned components, equipment, and systems
- B. Red-lined Drawings:
  - 1. The subcontractor will verify all equipment, systems, instrumentation, wiring and components are shown correctly on red-lined drawings.
  - 2. Preliminary red-lined drawings must be made available to the Commissioning Team for use prior to the start of Functional Performance Testing.
  - 3. Changes, as a result of Functional Testing, must be incorporated into the final as-built drawings, which will be created from the red-lined drawings.
  - 4. The contracted party, as defined in the Contract Documents will create the as-built drawings.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. Subcontractor will provide a copy of O&M literature within 45 days of each submittal acceptance for use during the commissioning process for all commissioned equipment and systems.
  - 2. The CxA will review the O&M literature once for conformance to project requirements.
  - 3. The CxA will receive a copy of the final approved O&M literature once corrections have been made by the subcontractor.
- D. Demonstration and Instruction:
  - 1. Subcontractor will provide demonstration and operator's instruction as required by the contract document.
  - 2. A complete instruction plan and schedule must be submitted by the subcontractor to the CxA four weeks (4) prior to any such event.
  - 3. Agenda for each instruction session shall be submitted to the CxA at least one (1) week prior to the session.



4. The CxA shall be notified at least seventy-two (72) hours in advance of scheduled tests so that testing may be observed by the Commissioner. A copy of the test record shall be provided to the CxA, City of New York, and Commissioner.
5. Engage a Factory-authorized service representative to demonstrate City of New York's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specific equipment.
6. Instruct City of New York's service personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, trouble shooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
7. Review and update data in O&M Manuals.

### 3.2 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning tests as per the written procedures and at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meetings.
- C. Participate in Electrical systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- D. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- E. Include requirements for submittal data, operation and maintenance data, and instruction in each purchase order or sub-contract written.
- F. Prepare preliminary schedule for Electrical system orientations and inspections, operation and maintenance manual submissions, instruction sessions, equipment start-up and task completion for the City of New York. Distribute preliminary schedule to commissioning team members.
- G. Update schedule as required throughout the construction period.
- H. During the startup and initial checkout process, execute the related portions of the prefunctional checklists for all commissioned equipment.
- I. Perform all verification and functional performance tests in the presence of the CxA as required.
- J. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.
- K. Gather operation and maintenance literature on all equipment, and assemble in binders as required by the specifications. Submit to CxA forty five (45) days after submittal acceptance.
- L. Coordinate with the CxA to provide seventy-two (72) hour advance notice so that the witnessing of equipment and system start-up and testing can begin.
- M. Notify the CxA a minimum of two weeks in advance for start of the testing work.
- N. Participate in, and schedule vendors and respective subcontractors to participate in the operator's orientation sessions.



- O. Provide written notification to the Commissioner and CxA that the following work has been completed in accordance with the contract documents, and that the equipment, systems, and sub-system are operating as required.
  - 1. Electrical equipment including switchgear, panel boards, motor control centers, lighting, receptacles, and all other equipment furnished under this Division.
  - 2. Lighting and Lighting Control systems.
  - 3. Emergency Lighting Inverter System.
  - 4. Electrical Power Battery Storage System
  - 5. Photovoltaic System
- P. The equipment supplier shall document the performance of his equipment.
- Q. Equipment Suppliers
  - 1. Provide all requested submittal data, including detailed start-up procedures and specific responsibilities of the City of New York, to keep warranties in force.
  - 2. Assist in equipment testing per agreements with subcontractors.
  - 3. Provide information requested by CxA regarding equipment sequence of operation and testing procedures.

### 3.3 CITY OF NEW YORK'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for City of New York's Responsibilities.

### 3.4 COMMISSIONER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for Commissioner's Responsibilities.

### 3.5 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for CxA's Responsibilities.

### 3.6 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify in writing to the CxA that Electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, meggered, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify in writing to the CxA that Electrical instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify in writing that testing procedures have been completed and that testing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.



- D. Place systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

### 3.7 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of Electrical testing shall include the entire Electrical installation, from the incoming power equipment throughout the distribution system. Testing shall include measuring, but not limited to resistance, voltage, and amperage of system(s) and devices.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The Contractor and other contracted subcontractors, including subcontractor performing fire alarm work shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment with guidance from CxA.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Electrical system, document the deficiency and report it to the Commissioner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- I. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.



**3.8 ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES**

- A. Equipment Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 26. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, infrared camera and certifications to the CxA.
- B. Electrical Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 26. Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- C. Electrical Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, load banks, infrared cameras, instrumentation, tools and equipment to test performance of designated systems and devices at the direction of the CxA. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested
- D. Variable Frequency Drive System Testing: Contractor to prepare a variable frequency drive system testing plan to include tuning to minimize vibration. Contractor to coordinate witnessing of testing with CxA.
- E. Vibration and Sound Tests: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of vibration isolation and seismic controls.
- F. The work included in the commissioning process involves a complete and thorough evaluation of the operation and performance of all components, systems and sub-systems. The scope of commissioning work shall include but not limited to the following equipment and systems :
  - 1. Electrical equipment including switchgear, panel boards, transformers, motor control centers, lighting and lighting controls, grounding, and all other equipment furnished under this Division.

**3.9 DEFICIENCIES/NON-CONFORMANCE, COST OF RETESTING, FAILURE DUE TO MANUFACTURER DEFECT**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for requirements pertaining to deficiencies and non-conformance, requirements for retesting, or failure due to manufacturer defect.

**3.10 APPROVAL**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" pertaining to approval Procedures.

**3.11 DEFERRED TESTING**

- A. Refer to DDC General Conditions Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" pertaining to deferred testing.



**3.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. The Operation and Maintenance Manuals shall conform to Contract Documents requirements.
- B. Refer to section for the Commissioner and CxA roles in the Operation and Maintenance Manual contribution, review, and approval process.

**3.13 CITY OF NEW YORK'S OPERATING PERSONNEL INSTRUCTION**

- A. Contractor. The Contractor shall have the following instruction responsibilities:
  - 1. Provide the CxA with an instruction plan four weeks before the planned instruction.
  - 2. Provide the City of New York's personnel with comprehensive instruction in the understanding of the systems and the operation and maintenance of each major piece of commissioned electrical equipment or system.
  - 3. Instruction shall be recorded by the CxA and start with classroom sessions, if necessary, followed by hands on instruction on each piece of equipment, which shall illustrate the various modes of operation, including startup, shutdown, fire/smoke alarm, power failure, etc.
  - 4. During any demonstration, should the system fail to perform in accordance with the requirements of the O&M manual or sequence of operations, the system will be repaired or adjusted as necessary and the demonstration repeated.
  - 5. The appropriate trade or manufacturer's representative shall provide the instructions on each major piece of equipment. This person may be the start-up technician for the piece of equipment, the installing contractor or manufacturer's representative. Practical building operating expertise as well as in-depth knowledge of all modes of operation of the specific piece of equipment is required. More than one party may be required to execute the instruction.
  - 6. The instruction sessions shall follow the outline in the Table of Contents of the operation and maintenance manual and illustrate whenever possible the use of the O&M manuals for reference.
  - 7. Instruction shall include:
    - a. Use the printed installation, operation and maintenance instruction material included in the O&M manuals.
    - b. Include a review of the written O&M instructions emphasizing safe and proper operating requirements, preventative maintenance, special tools needed and spare parts inventory suggestions. The instruction shall include start-up, operation in all modes possible, shut-down, seasonal changeover and any emergency procedures.
    - c. Discuss relevant health and safety issues and concerns.
    - d. Discuss warranties and guarantees.
    - e. Cover common troubleshooting problems and solutions.
    - f. Explain information included in the O&M manuals and the location of all plans and manuals in the facility.



- g. Discuss any peculiarities of equipment installation or operation.
8. Hands-on instruction shall include start-up, operation in all modes possible, including manual, shut-down and any emergency procedures and preventative maintenance of all pieces of equipment.
9. The Contractor shall fully explain and demonstrate the operation, function and overrides of any local packaged controls, not controlled by the central control system.
10. Instruction shall occur after functional testing is complete, unless approved otherwise by the Commissioner.

**\*\*\*\*\*END OF SECTION 26 08 00\*\*\*\*\***



SECTION 260923  
Architectural Lighting Controls

PART 1 - GENERAL

The following describes the design intent of the lighting control systems for Issue Project Room. This is an integral component of these contract documents and specifications, for use by controls manufacturers and contractor in preparing bids, providing shop drawings and performing the installation and initial testing and calibration. It will also serve the commissioning agent for evaluation of the initial testing and calibration, and will be the starting point for the final calibrations and fine tuning of the system. Finally, it provides the owner and facilities manager with an explanation of why and how the system is expected to operate.

This project must comply with the *New York City Energy Conservation Construction Code* using the alternative reference code ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 – 2007

General Systems:

The lighting controls for Issue Project Room will employ strategies intended to reduce energy consumption while providing flexibility to the occupants. These strategies include:

- 1) Manual-“ON” activation in frequently occupied spaces, coupled with either an vacancy / occupancy sensor off or time clock off

Requirements for egress, emergency and exit lighting will be followed by the Electrical Engineer

Room Type Descriptions:

Entry, Reception, Intermediate Space, Bar Area, and Box Office:

Manual-ON and DIM activation for all lighting zones coupled with time clock OFF after hours. Per owner confirmation, DMX interface for theatrical lighting control system protocol to be provided and coordinated by EE/AV/Contractor. All spaces will be controlled from touchscreen located within box office.

Restrooms:

Auto ON/OFF via occupancy sensor for lighting in each stall and restroom corridor.

Offices:

Manual-ON activation for lighting zones coupled with vacancy sensor OFF, occupant controlled individual task lights on desks.

Green Room:

Manual-ON and DIM activation for all lighting zones coupled with vacancy sensor OFF

Back of House:

Manual-ON activation coupled with vacancy sensor OFF



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

Performance Space and West Gallery:

All Fixture zones to have DMX compatibility or interface and be controlled by Theatrical lighting control system. DMX interface for theatrical lighting control system protocol to be provided and coordinated by EE/AV/Contractor.

PART 2 – MANUFACTURERS (NOT USED)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - 6. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.



- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration Isolation for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals to include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.



- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407 or NEMA PB 1 as applicable.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
  - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
  - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C) to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
    - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
  - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
  - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Commissioner's representative or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Commissioner's representative no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Commissioner's representative's written permission.
  - 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.



1.8

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

## 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
  - 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
  - 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  - 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Surface-mounted cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
  - 3. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
  - 4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Top or Bottom.



D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
3. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.

E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

F. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following:

1. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.



3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- F. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

#### 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replaceable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Instantaneous trip.
    - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
  4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
  5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
  6. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  8. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:



- a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
  - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - e. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - f. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
  - g. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - h. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
  - i. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
  - j. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
  - k. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
1. Fuses, and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses."
  2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories: Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.1.



- B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness.
1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
  2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
  5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Mount top of trim so that top-most circuit breaker, in the on position, is no higher than 79 inches (2000mm) above finished floor.
- F. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- J. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Commissioner's representative's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."



3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment:
      - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 262416**

SECTION 262713 - ELECTRICITY METERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes equipment for electricity metering by utility company.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.
  - 1. Dimensioned plans and sections or elevation layouts.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data. In addition to items specified in DDC General Conditions, include the following:
  - 1. Application and operating software documentation.
  - 2. Software licenses.
  - 3. Software service agreement.
  - 4. Hard copies of manufacturer's operating specifications, design user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy Submittal.



1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, store, and handle modular meter center according to NECA 400.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by City of New York or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Commissioner and City of New York no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Commissioner's and City of New York written permission.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Electrical Service Connections: Coordinate with utility companies and components they furnish as follows:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of utilities providing electrical power services.
  - 2. Coordinate installation and connection of utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT FOR ELECTRICITY METERING BY UTILITY COMPANY

- A. Meters will be furnished by utility company.
- B. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
- C. Meter Sockets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
- D. Meter Sockets: Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings shall meet indicated circuit ratings.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.



- b. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  - c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  - d. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
2. Comply with requirements of utility company for meter center.
  3. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure.
  4. Minimum Short-Circuit Rating: 22,000A symmetrical at rated voltage, as required by the Utility Company.
  5. Main Disconnect Device: Circuit breaker, series-combination rated for use with downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers.
  6. Main Disconnect Device: Fusible switch, series-combination rated by circuit-breaker manufacturer to protect downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers.
  7. Tenant Feeder Circuit Breakers: Series-combination-rated molded-case units, rated to protect circuit breakers in downstream tenant and to house loadcenters and panelboards that have 10,000-A interrupting capacity.
    - a. Identification: Complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" with legend identifying tenant's address.
    - b. Physical Protection: Tamper resistant, with hasp for padlock.
  8. Meter Socket: Rating coordinated with indicated tenant feeder circuit rating.
  9. Surge Protection: For main disconnect device, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Transient-Voltage Suppression for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT FOR ELECTRICITY METERING BY COMMISSONER

- A. Provide Con Edison approved combination fusible boltswitch 3P-800AS/800AF, 240V, 200kAIC symmetrical and meter socket 10PMS208. Basis of design is NAV-TECH Trans "S", model TS/SW-800-240 or as approved equal. Coordinate for top or bottom entry.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with equipment installation requirements in NECA 1.
- B. Install meters furnished by utility company. Install raceways and equipment according to utility company's written requirements. Provide empty conduits for metering leads and extend grounding connections as required by utility company.
- C. Install modular meter center according to NECA 400 switchboard installation requirements.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."



1. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive type, with text as required by NFPA 70.
2. Equipment Identification Labels: Adhesive film labels with clear protective overlay. For residential meters, provide an additional card holder suitable for printed, weather-resistant card with occupant's name.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. **Manufacturer's Field Service:** Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

#### B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Connect a load of known kilowatt rating, 1.5kW minimum, to a circuit supplied by metered feeder.
2. Turn off circuits supplied by metered feeder and secure them in off condition.
3. Run test load continuously for eight hours minimum, or longer, to obtain a measurable meter indication. Use test-load placement and setting that ensures continuous, safe operation.
4. Check and record meter reading at end of test period and compare with actual electricity used, based on test-load rating, duration of test, and sample measurements of supply voltage at test-load connection. Record test results.

#### C. Electricity metering will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

#### D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262713



## **SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  - 2. Wall-box motion sensors.
  - 3. Isolated-ground receptacles.
  - 4. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
  - 5. Solid-state fan speed controls.
  - 6. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
  - 7. Pendant cord-connector devices.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.



- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.

#### 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described in subparagraphs below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Service/Power Poles: One for every 10, but no fewer than one.
  - 2. Floor Service Outlet Assemblies: One for every 10, but no fewer than one.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
  - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
  - 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
  - 3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).



4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

## 2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
    - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).
- B. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Hubbell; CR 5253IG.
    - b. Leviton; 5362-IG.
    - c. Pass & Seymour; IG6300.
  2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

## 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; GF20.
    - b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; IG5362BLS.
    - b. Hubbell; IG5362SA.
    - c. Leviton; 5380-IG.
  2. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw



terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

#### 2.4 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.
1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
  2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

#### 2.5 SNAP SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
    - b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
    - c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).
- C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
    - b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
    - c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.
  2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."
- D. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 1995.
    - b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
    - c. Leviton; 1257.



d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.

## 2.6 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting].
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
  - 4. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant thermoplastic with lockable cover.

## 2.7 FINISHES

- A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by the Commissioner, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
  - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
  - 3. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:



1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
  - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
  - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
  - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

**D. Device Installation:**

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

**E. Receptacle Orientation:**

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

**F. Device Plates:** Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and re-mount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

**G. Dimmers:**

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

**H. Arrangement of Devices:** Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.

- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

**END OF SECTION 262726**

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in enclosed switches and switchboards.
  - 2. Plug fuses rated 125-V ac and less for use in plug-fuse-type enclosed switches and fuseholders.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  - 1. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  - 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  - 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
  - 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals to include the following:
  - 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
  - 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  - 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.



4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
  - 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
  - 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.



## 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Feeders: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 2. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
- B. Plug Fuses:
  - 1. Motor Branch Circuits: Edison-base type, single-element time delay.
  - 2. Other Branch Circuits: Edison-base type, single-element time delay.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).



- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

**END OF SECTION 262813**

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

**SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 4. Enclosures.

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

**1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."



- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  - 5. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
  
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
  
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
  
- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  
- E. Field quality-control reports.
  - 1. Test procedures used.
  - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
  
- F. Manufacturer's field service report.
  
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals to include
  - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by City of New York or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without City of New York's written permission.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

#### 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.



1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 800 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with cartridge fuse interiors to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
  1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

### 2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
  4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.



C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

### 2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
6. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
7. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
8. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

#### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:



1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
  - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
  - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION 262816**



## SECTION 263353 - EMERGENCY LIGHTING INVERTER

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SCOPE

- A. Dual-Lite Spectron LSN (Life Safety Network) Series Inverter System or equal shall be furnished to provide a reliable source of power, and shall operate during a utility line deficiency without any interruptions of power supplied to the load. The transfer from utility power to battery power shall utilize a true no break system, [digitally generated sine wave, pulse width modulated output system] to maintain a zero transfer time. The system shall be capable of powering any combination of electronic, power factor corrected, and self-ballasted fluorescent, incandescent or HID lighting, building management systems, motors, security systems and any other critical voltage or frequency-sensitive electronic loads. The system shall operate from 5-100% loading, and be rated to deliver its full KVA rating, at unity power factor, for a minimum of 90 minutes. A boost-tap transformer circuit shall be utilized to provide regulated output, during brownouts within +/-5% of incoming line voltage, without transferring to battery. Upon return of the normal AC utility line power, the system shall recharge the batteries within 24 hours without any interruptions of power supplied to the load. Upon an inverter failure, the load shall automatically be connected to the AC utility line.

#### 1.2 CODE & STANDARDS

- A. Inverter System shall be listed to meet these standards.
- B. Applicable codes and standards include:
1. UL 924 Standard for emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
  2. ANSI C62.41: ANSI C62.45 (Cat. A & B)
  3. FCC class A
  4. Complies with NEC, OSHA and Life Safety Code

#### 1.3 LEED RELATED SCOPE OF WORK

1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

### PART 2 - PRODUCT

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. The Central Emergency Inverter System specified herein shall be the Dual-Lite Spectron LSN Series Inverter System manufactured by Dual-Lite, Christiansburg, Virginia.



- B. Lithonia Lighting
- C. Emergi-Lite
- D. Crucial Power Products
- E. Approved equal

## 2.2 CATEGORY AND TYPE

- A. Furnish and install a CELI that will supply a minimum of 3.5 KW, at 60Hz for a period of 1.5 hours upon interruption, brownout, or failure of the monitored AC utility line.

## 2.3 OPERATION

- A. The system's operation is fully automatic. It uses a linear transformer, with boost tap and surge protection devices. The inverter shall be of the Pulse Width Modulated (PWM) design, and shall provide true "no break" power to the load at all times.
- B. During normal operation, the charger maintains the battery bank at full capacity. The three on-board microprocessors continuously monitor charger settings and system's overall readiness. The system consists of circuitry including an automatic, multi-rate, software controlled charger; continuous self-diagnostics monitoring 265 various parameters, and programmable system testing capabilities. The system shall incorporate 30 individual alarms and 9 system logs. All Logs and Alarms are automatically recorded and readily displayed through the microprocessor controlled User Interface Display (UID). The system shall also include a RS232 Serial port for remote communications.
- C. The system's automatic overload and short circuit protection in normal and emergency operations shall consist of 150% momentary surge capability, 120% overload for 5 minutes, and 110% overload for 10 minutes. The system protection shall also include a low battery voltage disconnect, AC-input circuit breaker, a DC input fuse and switch, and an AC output fuse. The system shall supply a digitally generated sinusoidal output waveform (PWM) with less than 5% total harmonic distortion at rated linear load. A boost tap transfer protection circuit will maintain the desired output voltage during low voltage "brownout" situations, without continuously switching to batteries; thereby preserving battery capacity.

## 2.4 INPUT VOLTAGE

- A. The available input voltage(s) to the systems shall be 120 volts, +10% to -15%, single phase, with a frequency of 60Hz.

## 2.5 OUTPUT VOLTAGE

- A. The available output voltage(s) of the system shall be 120 volts, +/- 5%, single phase sine wave, with a frequency of 60Hz + 0.05Hz on inverter. The output frequency when on utility power shall be as supplied by the utility.



## 2.6 ALARMS

- A. The system shall have audible and visual alarms with automatic logging of the 25 most recent events. The system's alarm acknowledgement feature shall enable the user to silence only the current audible alarm(s) without silencing other alarms, or clearing the alarming condition until the fault has been addressed. Alarms shall monitor as a minimum; low, near low, and high battery voltage, high AC input voltage, high and low AC output voltage, output volt-amp overload, low run time left; high ambient, heat-sink, transformer, and battery temperatures, temperature probe failure, system test failure, and circuit breaker tripped.

## 2.7 MANUAL AND PROGRAMMABLE TESTING

- A. The system shall incorporate a manual test function and three automatic test modes. The user shall be able to perform a system test at anytime. The system shall also perform a programmable, self-diagnostic test of its subsystems to ensure reliability, including a weekly, monthly, and annual test. Automatic recording of the last 20 test events shall be kept in their own separate Test Results Log.

## 2.8 BATTERY CHARGER

- A. The charger shall be software controlled, temperature compensated, three-step float type charger. The charger shall charge the batteries continuously during normal standby condition. Following a power failure the charger will start in constant current mode until battery voltage reaches Equalize. Equalize voltage will be maintained until charging current drops to 0.5 amps or 0.3% of the battery Amp/hour rating; battery voltage will then be allowed to drop down to Float. Recharge time shall not exceed 24 hours.

## 2.9 BATTERIES

- A. The batteries will provide sufficient power to maintain the output voltage of the inverter for a period of 1.5 hours, without dropping below 87.5% of nominal battery voltage. The standard batteries shall be enclosed in a cabinet that permits easy maintenance without requiring removal. The following types shall be available:
  - 1. Sealed Lead Calcium VRLA (G):  
Optional, supplied in cabinets. Requires no addition of water over the life of the battery. 20-year design life expectancy at 77°F (25°C).

## 2.10 SERVICE AND WARRANTY PLANS

- A. The following plan(s) shall be offered to assure standard 2-year limited warranty.
  - 1. **FACTORY START UP (FS):** Factory Start Up is designed to insure proper operation and installation of the Spectron LSN Inverter System. It provides for a highly trained Factory Authorized Technician to administer an on site point-by-point visual check of the system. Included is a check of all internal electrical connections, AC and Battery connections, system voltages and all system parameters. The system is then powered up and all systems parameters are tested, calibrated and recorded. The technician will also perform a Battery Discharge Test to insure proper battery capacity. If any malfunctions are



detected, depending on the availability of parts, the technician will remedy them while on site, or make arrangements to do so. The Technician will instruct on site personnel on the operations of the equipment. Warranty of the equipment will commence on the Start Up date providing all other Warranty terms have been met.

## 2.11 MECHANICAL

- A. The system shall be contained in a code gauge, NEMA 1 steel cabinet, finished in a scratch resistant, powder coat finish, with a key lock, and conduit knockouts at the top and sides, with front opening doors with air filters. Cabinets shall be designed to allow stacking to minimize the overall system's footprint. The system shall include a plenum to expel heated air from inside the unit. All components must be front accessible. All components shall have a modular design and a quick disconnect means to facilitate field service.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WIRING

- A. All wiring shall be installed in conduit and shall be sized as required for voltage drop purposes to assure proper operation of connected loads. Input and output wiring shall enter the cabinet in separate conduits.

### 3.2 SYSTEM OPERATION

- A. The system shall allow connection of both "normally on" and "normally off" (optional) loads. Connected loads shall be carried via the transfer circuit by the utility during normal operation or by the system inverter during utility failures without interruption.

### 3.3 CONNECTED LOADS

- A. The system shall be designed to maintain the normal operation and performance integrity of all connected loads, including voltage and frequency sensitive equipment, by providing true "no break," digitally generated sinusoidal output. Refer to plans for type and location of loads served by the system.

### 3.4 FACTORY START-UP

- A. Provides a factory service representative to perform the initial start-up of the system. Refer to Section for additional information.

### 3.5 DRAWINGS AND MANUALS

- A. Drawings and manuals supplied with each system shall include:
  - 1. Complete set(s) of shop drawings showing physical dimensions, mounting information and wiring diagrams.



2. Installation/Users manual(s) with complete instructions for locating, mounting, interconnection, and wiring of the system with operating and preventive maintenance procedures.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. The system shall be installed in accordance with all appropriate manufacturers' installation instructions and in compliance with all appropriate codes.

### 3.7 WARRANTY

- A. The system shall be guaranteed, under normal and proper use, against defects in workmanship and materials for a period of two years from the date of shipment. Batteries supplied as part of the systems shall be covered under a separate pro-rata warranty as described below.
  1. Sealed Lead Calcium, 20-year life expectancy (Type G) - One year full replacement warranty plus an additional fourteen years pro-rata.
  2. Note: Batteries must be installed on the system's energized charging circuit within 90 days from date of shipment to maintain the validity of the Warranty.

**END OF SECTION 263353**

SECTION 263360 - ULTRA-K ISOLATION TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This specification describes the design of a copper wound, multi-shielded, three phase, K-factor rated, high efficiency, power conditioning isolation transformer. The power conditioning transformer specified must be a continuous duty rated, 600 volt class, convection cooled, dry type, isolation transformer to support harmonic rich non-linear loads while maintaining safe operating temperatures and shall include superior transverse and common mode noise attenuation. The power conditioning transformer shall meet NEMA TP 1-2002 dry type transformer efficiency standards. In addition, the transformer shall be designed to achieve NEMA TP 1-2002 Table 4-2 efficiencies under a K-13 non-linear load at or between 35% to 50% of its rating as outlined in section 2.4 J of this specification.

A. LEED related scope of work

1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

1.2 STANDARDS

The power conditioning system shall be designed in accordance with applicable portions of the following standards:

- A. NEMA TP 1-2002 Dry Type Distribution Transformer Efficiency Standards
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI C57.110 & C62.41-1991)
- C. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE 519-1992)
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70, National Electrical Code (NEC)
- E. Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 94 (FIPS Pub 94)
- F. UL Listed to Standard 1561
- G. C-UL listed to CSA Standard C22.2, No. 47-M90

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer Requirements:

1. The manufacturer shall be ISO 9001:2008 "Quality Assurance Certified" and shall upon request furnish certification documents with minimum 3-year experience in design and fabrication K-rated, shielded, power conditioning isolation transformers.

B. Product Data:



1. The manufacturer shall supply documentation for the installation of the system, including wiring diagrams and cabinet outlines showing dimensions, weights, BTUs, input/output connection locations and required clearances.
2. Factory test results and design data shall be provided to show compliance with the requirements.
3. The supplier shall furnish (6) equipment submittal copies. Submittals shall be specific for the equipment furnished and shall include as-built information.
4. **Seismic Qualification Certificates:** For transformer equipment, from manufacturer.
  - a. **Basis for Certification:** Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - b. **Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit:** Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - c. **Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.**

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Seismic Performance:** Transformers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified[ and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event]."

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Power Quality Specialist Qualifications:** A registered professional electrical engineer or engineering technician, currently certified by the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies, NICET Level 4, minimum, experienced in performance testing transformer installations and in performing power quality surveys similar to that required in "Performance Testing" Article.
- B. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. **Testing Agency's Field Supervisor:** Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- C. **Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:** Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. **UL Compliance:** Listed and labeled under UL 1778 by an NRTL.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Manufacturers

1. Controlled Power Company ( basis of design Ultra-K, Series 600K)
2. GE Industrial Solutions
3. Square D
4. Approved Equal.



## 2.2 Input Specifications

- A. The nominal AC input voltage rating of the power conditioner shall be 208VAC 3 phase with sufficient margin to sustain a constant input of +10% without saturation.
- B. The nominal operating frequency shall be 60 hertz  $\pm$  3 hertz.
- C. The power conditioning transformer primary shall be configured in a three phase delta. Transformers below 500kVA shall include full capacity taps at 2½ % increments, two (2) above and four (4) below the nominal voltage tap).
- D. When energized, the current inrush shall not exceed a maximum of 10 times the full load input current for a 1/2 cycle.

## 2.3 Output Specifications

- A. The nominal AC output voltage rating of the power conditioning transformer shall be 208/120VAC wye derived, 60 hertz.
- B. The output impedance of the power conditioning transformer shall be 3% - 4% typical.
- C. The power conditioning transformer shall be K-13 rated in accordance with:  $K = \sum I_h(\text{pu})^2 h^2$
- D. The power conditioning transformer shall provide a continuous duty, full load output power of 30 KVA

## 2.4 Performance Specifications

- A. The output voltage of the power conditioning transformer shall be maintained within  $\pm$ 2.5% or less of nominal, from no load to full load.
- B. The overload rating of the power conditioning transformer shall be 500% for 10 seconds, and 1,000% for one cycle.
- C. The power conditioning transformer shall add no more than 1% total harmonic distortion to the output waveform under a linear load.
- D. Output voltage shall remain sinusoidal with no flat topping when high crest factor (3.0 : 1), non-linear loads are present at the output.
- E. The audible noise of the power conditioning transformer shall be no greater than:  
50 dB for 15 KVA to 112 KVA units measured at 1 meter.
- F. The power conditioning transformer shall incorporate a solid copper foil, triple electrostatic shield to minimize inner winding capacitance, transient and noise coupling between primary and secondary windings.



- G. Transformer shall be triple-shielded and capable of 146dB common mode noise attenuation.
- H. Transformer shall be capable of transverse mode noise attenuation of 3 dB down at 10kHz, decaying 20 dB per decade.
- I. The power conditioning transformer shall have an efficiency of 98% typical and shall meet NEMA TP 1-2002 dry type transformer efficiency standards on models 15kVA and above.
- J. The power conditioning transformer shall be designed to achieve NEMA TP 1-2002 Table 4-2 efficiencies listed below under a K-13 non-linear load at or between 35% to 50% load and at an operating temperature of 75 degrees C.

## 2.5 Main Transformer Construction

- A. The transformer windings shall be all copper conductor construction, with separate primary and secondary, isolated windings. The transformer shall conform to NEC article 250, that specifies a separately derived power source. The neutral conductor shall be provided at 2 times the ampacity of the phase conductor.
- B. Terminals shall be provided for isolated three phase output conductors, neutral conductor and ground.
- C. Output neutral shall be bonded to ground via a removable jumper wire or bus bar.
- D. All leads, wires and terminals shall be labeled to correspond with the circuit wiring diagram.
- E. Basic Impulse level shall be no less than 10,000 Volts.
- F. Mean Time Between Failure (MTBF) shall be no less than 200,000 hours.
- G. Grain oriented, M6 grade, silicon transformer steel shall be utilized to provide maximum efficiency. Flux density shall not exceed 15k gauss. Core losses shall be limited to 0.6% or less of the KVA rating.
- H. Class N, 200°C insulation system shall be utilized throughout with a maximum temperature rise above ambient of 115°C under a linear load, not to exceed 130°C under non-linear loading per UL 1561.
- I. The transformer shall be designed for natural convection cooling.

## 2.6 Cabinet Construction



- A. The cabinet shall be a NEMA type 2 general purpose, floor mounted, indoor enclosure. Dimensions shall not exceed (see TABLE 1 dimensions below).
- B. Cabinets shall be manufactured from 14 gauge steel with base sub-structure suitable for fork lifting.
- C. The cabinet shall have a baked on powder coat paint finish with proper pre-treatment.
- D. Input and output power connections shall be hardwired to copper stand off bus located behind the front panel of the transformer cabinet. Input and output locations shall be available on either side of transformer cabinet.

TABLE 1 – Dimensions

kVA	Cabinet Dimensions (inches)
30	30H x 20D x 20W

## 2.7 Environment

- A. Temperature: The power conditioning system shall be required to operate without overheating in an ambient temperature range of -20°C to +40°C.
- B. Humidity: The power conditioning system shall operate in a relative humidity of 0 to 95% non-condensing.
- C. Altitude: The power conditioning system shall operate up to 5000 feet above sea level without de-rating.

## 2.8 Warranty

Manufacturer shall guarantee the power conditioning transformer to be free from defects in material and workmanship for a period of 2 years following shipment from the factory.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.



- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 2.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
- B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions, seismic codes applicable to Project.

## 2.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 2.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- C. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
- E. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.
- F. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.



1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
2. Perform 2 follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at 4 months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.

G. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

#### 2.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
- B. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

#### 2.6 CLEANING

- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 263360

## SECTION 26 5113

## Architectural Luminaires, Lamps, Ballasts

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. The following documents apply to all required work for the Project: (1) the Contract Drawings, (2) the Specifications, (3) the General Conditions, (4) the Addendum and (5) the Contract [City of New York Standard Construction Contract].
- B. Contract Drawings, conditions of Contract (including General Conditions, Addendum to the General Conditions, Special Conditions, Division 01 Specification Sections and all other Contract Documents) apply to the work of this Section.
- C. Related Sections: Division 26, and Section 26 09 23 "Architectural Lighting Control Systems" are related to this Section.
- D. Related Appendices: Catalogue Extracts and Control Intent Narrative are included as appendices to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Included in the Work of this Section are labor, materials, and appurtenances required to complete the Work of this Section, as specified herein, as required by job conditions, or as indicated on drawings. The scope of this section includes general requirements for luminaires and their components, coordination, definitions, quality assurances, submittals, mockups, samples and general responsibility for a complete job.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. In this specification, the term "Commissioner" includes the Architect, Interior Designer, Landscape Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's representative and/or the Lighting Specifier, together or individually as they shall decide.
- B. The term "luminaires" refers to lighting fixtures with their lamps and all other components.
- C. The use of the word "Approved" shall not extend the Commissioner's responsibilities beyond that as defined in the General Condition.



#### GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide labor, materials, and equipment for the installation of indoor luminaires, lighting equipment, control wiring, and lamps as shown on the drawings and specified herein and in Related Sections. Luminaires shall be controlled and securely attached to supports.
- B. Refer to architectural drawings for dimensions and details. Check and verify dimensions and details on drawings before proceeding with the Work. Report any inconsistencies or discrepancies at once to the Commissioner. Should it appear that the Work intended is not sufficiently detailed or explained on the drawings or in the specifications, apply to the Commissioner for further drawings or explanations, as may be necessary. Conform to these explanations in the work. If any question arises about the true meaning of the drawings or specifications, refer the matter to the Commissioner, whose decision is final and conclusive. Under no circumstances shall any request for extra compensation be honored where the basis of claim is such a clarification by the Commissioner. In no case submit a bid, or proceed on any Work with uncertainty. The intention of this specification and the accompanying or applicable drawings is to provide a job complete in every respect. Contractor is responsible for this result.
- C. Recycling and Disposal: Existing luminaires shall be removed as directed by scope of work. Proper disposal of components, including but not limited to fluorescent lamps and to ballasts containing PCBs, shall be conducted according to relevant Federal, State, Local, and EPA regulations or guidelines. Contractor shall provide City of New York with verification of proper disposal. Electronic ballasts shall be recycled as electronic equipment, or as otherwise required by relevant codes or local laws.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Luminaire locations as indicated on the electrical drawings are generalized and approximate. Carefully verify locations with Commissioner's drawings, reflected ceiling plans and other reference data prior to installation. Check for adequacy of headroom and non-interference with other equipment, such as ducts, pipes or openings. Bring conflicts to the Commissioner's attention before proceeding with the Work. Although the location of equipment included in the Work of this Section may be shown on the Contract Drawings in a certain place, actual construction may disclose that the location for the Work does not make its position easily and quickly accessible. In such cases, call the Commissioner's attention to this situation before installing this Work, and comply with Commissioner's installation instructions.

- B. Clearly indicate the Work to be performed by other trades' contractors, and the materials that are adjacent to or abutting the Work of this Section. Coordinate as required. Give ample notice of special openings required for placing equipment in the building, in order to avoid cutting of completed Work. Furnish the materials and labor for Work included under this Section in ample time, and in sufficient quantities so that all of the Work may be installed in proper sequence to avoid unnecessary cutting of the floors and walls. Schedule the Work to prevent Work of this Section being damaged by other construction operations. Remove and replace Work so damaged at no cost to City of New York. Coordinate and schedule the Work of this Section with the Work of other Sections, Utility Companies and the Telephone Company so that there shall be no delay in the proper installation and completion of any part of each respective Work. Construction Work shall proceed in its natural sequence without unnecessary delay caused by the Work of this Section.
- C. Contractor shall coordinate with other contractors regarding attachment to or openings in the materials of other trades such as pre-cast concrete, ornamental metals, or wood panels for recessed junction boxes, ballast containers, and other equipment.
- D. Contractor shall arrange the installation in proper relation to other Work and with architectural finishes so that it shall harmonize in service and appearance and so that there shall be no interference with the Work of others, including interference in location or level.
- E. Where a catalog number and a narrative or pictorial descriptions are provided, the written description shall take precedence and prevail.
- F. Where Work of this Section is to be flush or concealed, install it to assure that it does not project visually or physically beyond the finished lines of floors, ceilings or walls.
- G. Verify ceiling conditions and furnish appropriate mounting details for each luminaire. Such mounting details shall be approved by Commissioner.
- H. Contractor for Work of the Section shall take responsibility to become familiarized with all equipment listed in the luminaire schedule and shall be responsible for the successful completion of the entire lighting installation.
- I. Contractor of the Work of this section shall verify compatibility of supply voltage indicated on electrical drawings with voltage specified for each luminaire prior to release. Bring any and all discrepancies to Commissioner's attention.



1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCES

A. Special Experience Requirement (SER)

1. Installer: The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in size, scope and type to the required work, based on architectural style, construction method and materials and age of building for this particular project. One such prior project of the three must have involved a landmarked building, as officially designated by the City, State or federal government and one other project shall have custom neon tube lighting.
2. Manufacturer: The manufacturer providing the material or equipment specified in this section must, for the past five (5) years, have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of material or equipment similar in type to that required for this Project. Such similar material or equipment provided by the manufacturer must have been in satisfactory service for not less than five (5) years. Neon Lighting (for underside of exterior canopy) is to be fabricated by a qualified professional with at least five (5) previous jobs of similar complexity.

B. Contractor shall comply with the General Requirements related to Quality Control, in addition to the provisions herein.

C. Manufacturers: Manufacturers listed in the fixture schedule shall be assumed capable of supplying the listed fixtures unless exceptions are set forth in their quotations. Any such exceptions shall immediately be brought to the attention of the Commissioner. Acceptable manufacturers are listed in the luminaire schedule. Acceptable manufacturers shall be capable of providing proof of satisfactory production of luminaires of the type and quality shown for a period of at least five years. See Paragraph 2.1.

D. Statement of Application:

1. By commencing the Work of this Section, the Contractor assumes overall responsibility, as a part of the warranty of the Work, to assure that assemblies, components and parts shown or required within the Work of this Section, comply with the Contract Documents.
2. Warranty: In addition to any warranties required by the General Requirements, the Contractor of the Work of this section shall:
  - a. For a period of one year after City of New York's initial acceptance and establishment of the beginning date of the warranty period, and at no additional cost, Contractor shall promptly provide and install replacements for luminaires or



components thereof which in the opinion of City of New York are defective in materials or workmanship under normal operating conditions, except for lamps; or Contractor shall repair installed equipment at the job site to City of New York's satisfaction. For any time during the warranty period that luminaires are not fully functional due to defects in materials or workmanship, Contractor shall provide or pay for and install and remove suitable and adequate temporary luminaires.

- b. Contractor shall not be held responsible for acts of vandalism or for abnormal or accidental abuse of the luminaires or their components occurring after the beginning of the warranty period, nor shall Contractor be held responsible for deleterious effects caused by maintenance procedures performed without the concurrence of Contractor.

E. Equipment Compatibility:

Provide similar luminaires, ballasts and other components fabricated by one manufacturer, to simplify maintenance and replacement of equipment. Under no circumstances shall lamps of the same type, even if different wattages, be supplied by more than one manufacturer.

1. Fixture details shown may be modified by the manufacturer provided all of the following conditions have been met:
  - a. Fixture performance is equal or improved.
  - b. Structural, mechanical, electrical, safety, and maintenance characteristics are equal or improved.
  - c. Cost to the City of New York is reduced or equal.
  - d. Modifications have been reviewed by the Commissioner and a written response was forwarded to the contractor.

F. Regulatory Agencies:

1. Provide luminaires constructed, wired and installed in compliance with the current edition of applicable city, state and national codes. Provide luminaires conforming to or exceeding Underwriters Laboratories (UL) standards, and to provisions of applicable codes which exceed those standards.
2. For any category of luminaire tested by any of the following agencies, provide luminaires listed and labeled by an independent Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) such as UL, ETL, CSA, MET
3. In addition, provide luminaires which conform to additional regulations necessary to obtain approval for use of specified luminaires in locations shown. Use only electrical components listed by the above agencies.



4. In the case of international projects, the contractor will provide a copy of CE (European Conformity) certification and any other specified test results as required by the local inspection agency in writing on a per fixture basis during the submittal review process.
- G. Recognized Standards: In addition to standards that may be referenced in Division 1 Specification Sections, luminaires shall comply with the applicable standards of the following organizations.
- H. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).
  1. National Electrical Code (NEC).
  2. Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association (CBM).
  3. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA).
  4. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
  5. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
  6. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
  7. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)
  8. National Electrical Safety Code (IEEE C2)
  9. European Conformity (CE) – for international projects only;

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

### A. General:

1. For standard catalog items with no modifications, submit catalog cut sheets prepared by the manufacturer which clearly show all elements to be supplied and all corresponding product data (including lamping; ballast manufacturer and model number; voltage; accessories or options and any miscellaneous items detailed in the written description of the specification.) If cut sheet shows more than one (1) fixture type, all non-applicable information shall be crossed out.
2. For custom fixtures, modified fixtures or linear fluorescent or LED or neon fixtures mounted in continuous rows, submit a layout drawing prepared by the manufacturer showing all details of construction, lengths of runs, lamping layout, suspension installation hardware or components, power locations, power supplies, remote ballasts, remote transformers, finishes and list of materials. Drawings must be to scale. Contractor shall provide manufacturer with field dimensions where required. If scallop shields, wallwash reflectors or baffles are required, drawings shall indicate relative position to wall or adjacent vertical surface.
3. When components are indicated as contractor supplied or specified (i.e. remote



transformers, ballast housings, NEMA enclosures, etc., contractor is to provide submittals for such components in conjunction with the fixture submittal.

4. Manufacturer shall provide submittals with fixture installation instruction sheets.
- B. Submittal Schedule (Note: All days, week or months listed are "calendar" days, weeks or months, and not working days, weeks or months):
1. List of Intended Manufacturers: Within fifteen (15) calendar days of the City of New York's Notice to Proceed, Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner a List of Intended Manufacturers, with estimated fabrication lead times. "Lead times" shall be measured in weeks, beginning from the manufacturer's receipt of approved shop drawings and release, and ending at shipment. Commissioner shall indicate if any manufacturers are unacceptable.
  2. Acknowledgments and standard shop drawings: Within twenty (20) days after receipt of the Commissioner's response to the list of Intended Manufacturers, Contractor shall submit to the Commissioner copies of purchase orders and manufacturers' acknowledgments for all luminaires specified, conforming to Commissioner's responses. The purchase orders and the manufacturer's acknowledgments need not list prices, but shall contain a guaranteed fabrication lead time, in weeks, as defined above. These fabrication times shall be adequate for the timely completion of the job. At the same time, but not less than twenty four (24) weeks before standard manufactured luminaires are required on the site, Contractor shall submit to Commissioner shop drawings for all standard luminaires or those with minor modifications.
  3. Custom Shop Drawings: In order to allow for mockups and independent testing for all custom luminaires or those with major modifications, Contractor shall submit complete shop drawings to the Commissioner within sixty (60) days after the City of New York's Notice to Proceed, but not less than eleven (11) months prior to the time they are required on the site.
  4. Release for fabrication: Within twenty (20) days after receipt of shop drawings marked "No Exceptions Taken" or "Make Corrections Noted", Contractor shall release luminaires for fabrication and forward to the Commissioner verification that the luminaires have been released for fabrication, a guaranteed shipment date for each specified luminaire, as well as forward finish or component samples, tests, or any outstanding data required for approval.
  5. Operable luminaire samples and mockups as indicated in the fixture schedule shall be received by the Commissioner or designated parties, or installed on the site, within forty



five (45) days after Contractor's receipt of shop drawings marked "No Exceptions Taken" or "Make Corrections Noted".

6. Re-submissions: Within fourteen (14) days after Contractor's receipt of shop drawings marked "Revise and Resubmit" or "Rejected", Contractor shall resubmit revised shop drawings to the Commissioner, in accordance with the General Requirements regarding re-submissions.
7. Contractor shall notify the Commissioner of any potential scheduling problems, or of any submittals that have not been returned to the Contractor which are required to maintain the installation schedule. Such notification shall be in a timely manner and well in advance of the time such delay might affect the fabrication schedule or appropriate delivery of luminaires.
8. Request for Final Layout: At the same time that shop drawings are submitted, the Contractor shall request verification of final layouts and control zones for all luminaires. Contractor shall also submit templates for labeling of all controls. Layout adjustments shall be considered no-cost clarification as long as the quantity or value of luminaires does not increase. Labeling templates shall be returned by the Commissioner within thirty (30) calendar days. If control template information is not available from the City of New York, the contractor shall furnish blank control station faceplates. The Commissioner shall coordinate the faceplate labeling information with the City of New York and shall provide the same to the contractor. Custom engraved (or labeled) faceplates shall be requested from the manufacturer so that they arrive prior to the final release of the space to the City of New York and subsequent beginning of the warranty period. Blank faceplates shall be replaced with custom labeled faceplates at no additional cost to the City of New York.

**C. Shop Drawings:**

1. Submit shop drawings for each type of luminaire, arranged in order of lighting type designation except where specified luminaires are standard, unmodified, "off-the-shelf" units, fully described by catalogue cuts. If allowed by Commissioner, such catalogue cuts may be substituted for shop drawings. Submit catalogue cuts of lamps to be provided for each luminaire. Submit shop drawings in the quantity and format called for in the General Requirements.
2. Shop drawings shall show all luminaire components, including but not limited to lampholders, reflectors, louvers, lenses, fuses, junction boxes, ballasts and lamps. Shop drawings shall show materials, finishes, metal gauges, overall and detailed dimensions,

sizes, electrical and mechanical connections, fasteners, welds, joints, any exposed hardware, and conditions, or provisions for the work of others, and similar information. Indicate complete details of the luminaire, including manufacturer's name and catalogue numbers for sockets, ballasts, light shields, switches and type of wiring, and targeting and locking devices for adjustable luminaires. Indicate that lamp type specified is acceptable for luminaire design. Indicate type and extent of approved inert insulating materials to prevent electrolytic corrosion at junctions of dissimilar metals. Include pertinent mounting details including hung ceiling construction. Standard catalogue cuts shall be supplemented by additional drawings if information or descriptions listed above are not included in the cuts. Photometric documentation and finish samples shall be provided upon request. Samples shall be provided if indicated in the luminaire schedule. No luminaires will be approved without the previous described submission of data. Submissions may be modified by the Commissioner before approval. Luminaires or other materials shall not be fabricated, shipped, stored or installed unless prior written approval from the Commissioner has been received.

3. Submit lamp layouts for continuous luminaires or coves, indicating overall field measurements and proposed lamp lengths, and condition of joints, corners, and ends.
  4. Submit catalogue cuts for all lamps, ballasts and emergency battery backup ballasts.
- D. Data: Submit independent laboratory photometric data in the directed number of copies and in format as directed by Commissioner. Photometric data shall be submitted for standard, "off-the-shelf" units at the time the manufacturer's cuts are submitted. Photometric testing and reporting shall conform to IESNA procedures.
- E. Manufacturer's Catalogue Sheets shall indicate input watts and electrical characteristics, ambient temperature rating, noise level rating, mounting methods and UL or ETL listing for use with required lamp and ballast (if any).

## 1.7 SAMPLES

- A. After shop drawings, data and any other required submissions have been approved, submit to Commissioner samples of each of the following components:
1. Samples demonstrating the finishes of any custom metal, paint color or finish requested by Commissioner. Sample size to be a minimum of four inches (100mm) square. Place labels on the back side of finish samples only.
  2. Material samples of any transmitting media, such as plastic, glass, perforated metal and the like. Sample size to be a minimum of twelve (12) inches square, to allow adequate space for label.



3. Each incandescent, compact fluorescent or H.I.D. downlight reflector cone that differs in size or finish, if requested during shop drawing review.
  4. Any other luminaires or components requested in the luminaire descriptions or schedule.
- B. Submit two (2) samples unless otherwise indicated. If luminaire samples are requested, supply a completely operable luminaire with the specified lamp and a 10'-0" (3m) cord and plug for standard 120 volt service. For 277 volt luminaires, also supply a completely wired or plug-wired step-up transformer to convert from 120 to 277 volts, with a 120 volt cord and plug. Provide component parts as specifically requested.
  - C. Where a sample is submitted or requested, do not fabricate that luminaire type until the sample is approved. Submit and resubmit a sample as required, until samples are approved.
  - D. The purpose of the sample is to review manufacturing techniques, detailing, lamping, and scale. Minor modifications, if any, shall be considered part of these Specifications and shall be accomplished at no additional cost to the City of New York.
  - E. Submit complete and operable sample luminaires for any proposed substitution or value engineering proposal as indicated above. Acceptance of substitution samples received after substitution period shall not be binding on the Commissioner.
  - F. Provide samples as called for in the General Requirements. Tag samples with the name of the project, referenced specification, paragraph or drawing number, the luminaire type number and any other identifying data. Ship the samples to two separate addresses as specified by Commissioner. After review, the samples shall be shipped to the Commissioner at the project site for use as standards. All transportation charges for samples shall be paid by Contractor. Make luminaires supplied under the Work of this Section identical with approved samples. Do not install any sample luminaires in the project.
  - G. If sample submissions are not approved, samples shall be returned to Contractor, at Contractor's expense. Upon receipt of sample disapproval, immediately make a new submission of samples meeting the contract requirements, as called for in the General Requirements.

#### 1.8 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Luminaires and their component elements shall be delivered to the job site factory-assembled and wired to the greatest extent practical, in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings, samples, certificates and catalogue cuts, and shall be handled in a careful manner to avoid damage.



- B. Exposed finishes shall be protected during manufacture, transport, storage and handling. Delivered materials shall be identical to the approved samples. Materials which become damaged shall be repaired and/or replaced as directed.
- C. Luminaires shall be stored under cover, above the ground, in clean, dry areas, and shall be tagged and/or marked as to type and location.
- D. Delivered luminaires shall include wiring, sockets, ballasts, shielding, channels, lenses and other parts and appurtenances necessary for luminaire installation of each luminaire type.
- E. Protect luminaires that are to be integrated into, or finally located after completion of exhibit construction work.

#### 1.9 MOCK-UP

- A. As a part of the Work of this Section, when specifically called for in the Luminaire Schedule, and at no additional cost to City of New York, temporarily install, connect and adjust a reasonable number of luminaires, three (3) unless otherwise stated. Install completely operable luminaires with all lamps, ballasts, etc., of each type listed in the Luminaire Schedule where a mock-up is specified, to verify specified requirements. Place the mock-up luminaires where and when directed by Commissioner. Remove and store mock-up luminaires, when approved, as necessary to complete the work, at Contractor's expense.
  - 1. The mock-up installation shall closely conform to the conditions of the actual installation as to: height, distance from ceiling, number and type of lamps, material, color, etc. The contractor shall submit a written description of each proposed mock-up with drawings in order to obtain the Commissioner's approval prior to commencement of each mock-up.
  - 2. The purpose of the mock-up will be to study the general appearance and performance of the intended lighting systems. At that time, certain minimal test variations may be requested as to lamp location, lamp type, reflector shape, color, etc. Final modifications, if any, shall be considered as part of these Specifications and shall be accomplished with no additional cost to the City of New York.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MARKING OF LUMINAIRES

Plainly mark luminaires equipped with ballasts for operation of specific lamps, (e.g., "Use Rapid



Start Lamps Only" or "Use T8 Lamps Only"). Similarly, mark other luminaires according to proper lamp type. Clearly mark ballasts that have multi-level outputs as such, and indicate proper terminals for the various outputs. Provide markings that are clear and that are located to be readily visible to service personnel, but invisible from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

## 2.2 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- 2.2.1 Provide luminaires completely factory-assembled and wired and equipped with necessary sockets, ballasts, wiring, shielding, reflectors, channels, lenses, and other parts and appurtenances necessary. Deliver to project site ready for installation and to complete the luminaire installation.
- 2.2.2 Use only completely concealed hardware, unless otherwise noted. Latching of luminaire door frames shall be unobtrusive. Make luminaire free from light leaks by the inherent design of the luminaire body and frame. Bond gaskets, when used, to the luminaire metal. Gasket incandescent luminaires with overlapping trim. Weld ballast support studs, socket saddle studs and reflector support studs to luminaire body. Make flexible leads enter luminaires at sides, unless otherwise noted.
- 2.2.3 Minimum gauges sheet steel: 20 gauge NYC for recessed fluorescent, unless thicker gauge required by regulating agency; 18 gauge for incandescent, unless otherwise specified.
- 2.2.4 Construct luminaires with the minimum number of joints. Make unexposed joints by approved method such as welding, brazing, screwing or bolting. Soldered joints are not acceptable.
- 2.2.5 Provide metallic cast or extruded parts of luminaires that are close grained, sound, and free from imperfections or discoloration. Provide cast or extruded parts that are rigid, true to pattern, and of ample weight and thickness. Provide cast or extruded parts that are properly fitted, filed, ground, and buffed to provide finished surfaces and joints free of imperfections. Make thickness on cast parts not less than 1/8 inch (3mm).

- 2.2.6 Provide housings that make electrical components easily accessible and replaceable, without removing the luminaire body from its mounting, for luminaires employing discharge lamps (fluorescent, H.I.D.).
- 2.2.7 Provide luminaires indicated as "continuous" on drawings or specifications with finished end-to-end or wall-to-wall appearance. Utilize fluorescent lamps of 36" and 48" (907mm and 1212mm) lengths only, unless otherwise specified. Do not overlap single rows of lamps, unless otherwise specified. Maximize lighted length to nearest whole foot (304mm), with equally spaced unlighted portions at each end, not to exceed 6" (152mm) each. Provide continuous louvers and/or lenses into unlighted ends and at corners.
- 2.2.8 Wiring:
- 2.2.8.1 Provide luminaire wiring between lampholders and associated operating and starting equipment in compliance with UL 1570 and NEC.
- 2.2.8.2 Make connections of wires to terminals of lampholders and other accessories in a neat and workman-like manner and which are electrically and mechanically secure, with no loose strands protruding. Provide a number of wires extending to or from the terminals of a lampholder or other accessory that does not exceed the number which the accessory is designed to accommodate.
- 2.2.8.3 Provide wiring channels and wireways free from projections and rough or sharp edges throughout. At points or edges over which conductors shall pass and may be subject to injury or wear, grind to make a smooth contact surface with the conductors. Install insulated bushings at points of entrances and exit of flexible wiring.

## 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Apply luminaire finishes after fabrication in a manner that assures a durable wear-resistant surfacing. Prior to finishing, hot clean the surfaces by accepted chemical means, and treat them with corrosion inhibiting (phosphating) treatment to assure positive paint-adhesion. Give exposed metal surfaces (brass, bronze, aluminum and others) and finished castings except chromium-plated or stainless steel parts an even coat of high grade methacrylate lacquer, or transparent epoxy. Anodize exposed aluminum surfaces for corrosion resistance. Make sheet steel luminaire housing, and iron and steel parts which have not received phosphating treatment, or which are to be utilized in exterior applications corrosion resistant by zinc or cadmium plating or hot-dip zinc galvanizing after completion of all forming, welding, or drilling operations.



- B. Electroplate parts operated under temperatures injurious to hot-dipped galvanizing.
- C. Cadmium plate screws, bolts, nuts and other fastening or latching hardware.



- D. Except where otherwise indicated provide luminaires with a final synthetic, high-temperature baked enamel coating of color and finish as specified or directed. Unless otherwise specified, provide white baked enamel "reflective" surfaces, with a minimum reflectance of 86%. Unless otherwise specified, provide potentially visible non-reflective surfaces with a matte-black baked enamel finish. Prior to painting give all parts proper etched surface preparation to assure paint adherence and durability.

## 2.5 BALLASTS

### A. General:

1. Provide identical ballasts within each luminaire type. Provide ballasts that are suitable for and UL-listed for the electrical characteristics of the supply circuits to which they are to be connected, and which are suitable for operating the specified lamps.
2. Unless otherwise specified, provide ballasts of same type and same manufacturer, for ease of stocking and replacement. Use multiple lamp ballasts to the greatest extent possible.
3. Rigidly mount ballasts, unless specifically indicated to the contrary, to the luminaire housing, with ballast surfaces and housing in complete contact for efficient conduction of ballast heat. Permanently affix ballast mounting screws to the luminaire housing.
4. Ballast shall not contain polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), and shall be labeled "No PCBs".
5. Provide only luminaires whose design, fabrication, and assembly prevent overheating or cycling of lamps and ballasts under any condition of use.
6. Ballast shall start lamps at a minimum starting temperature of 50° F (10° C). For luminaires located where ambient temperature may fall below 50° F (10° C), provide low temperature ballasts having a minimum starting temperature of "minus 20° F" ("minus 25° C"), unless a different temperature is called for elsewhere in these specifications.
7. Provide ballasts having the quietest sound-rating available for the lamps specified and clearly showing their respective sound ratings. Replace ballasts found by Commissioner to be unduly noisy, without charge, prior to acceptance of the job. Inform Commissioner in writing if ballasts with a sound rating other than "A" are to be provided.
8. Provide ballast of the highest available power factor type.



9. Electronic ballasts shall meet the requirements of the Federal Communications Commission Rules and Regulations, Part 18, Part C (RF Lighting Devices) Non-consumer equipment, regarding radio frequency interference (RFI) (radiated) and electromagnetic interference (EMI) (power line conducted).
10. Submit ballast details with luminaire shop drawings.

**B. Fluorescent Ballasts (General):**

1. Provide energy efficient fluorescent ballasts conforming where relevant to UL 935 "Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts," ANSI C82.11 "Ballasts for Fluorescent Lamps - Specification," ANSI C82.2 "Methods of Measurement of Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts," ANSI NFPA/70, and Public Law 100-357 National Appliance Energy Conservation Amendment of 1988 and be CSA certified where applicable.
2. Provide electronic solid-state high frequency (20 kHz or greater) fluorescent ballasts, unless otherwise specified.
3. Ballast shall be a NEMA Premium electronic ballast (do not substitute).
4. Ballasts shall be designed to operate on the voltage system to which they are connected and designated by the ballast manufacturer as suitable and UL listed for operating the specified lamps.
5. Ballasts shall operate from 50 or 60 Hz input source of 120, 277, or Universal (120-277) Volts, and sustained variations of  $\pm 10\%$  (Voltage & Frequency) with no damage to the ballasts.
6. Total line current harmonic distortion (THD) shall not exceed 20%.
7. Ballast shall be of high power factor type, with a Power Factor of 0.90 or greater.
8. Lamp current crest factor (ratio of peak to RMS current) shall not exceed 1.7 for full output lamps, in accordance with ANSI C 82.11.
9. Ballast shall be Class P thermally protected and for use indoors or in type I outdoor application.
10. Ballasts shall tolerate operation in ambient temperatures up to 105° F (40° C) without damage.
11. Ballast shall have an "A" sound rating for all interior applications.
12. Ballast shall withstand line transients as defined in ANSI/C62.41-1991, Location Category A2.
13. Manufacturer shall have been manufacturing electronic ballasts for at least 3 years.
14. T8 lamps shall only be operated on ballasts designed for operation of T8 lamps.

15. Unless otherwise specified, T8 ballasts shall have a light output (ballast factor) of 0.85-0.90 ( $\pm 0.025$ ) when tested with a compatible full-wattage lamp.
16. Ballast shall regulate light output properly within a range of  $\pm 10\%$  of center voltage (i.e., 120 V or 277 V).
17. Ballast shall have a frequency of operation of 20 KHz or greater, and incorporate adequate 60 Hz filtering in order to operate with less than 5% flicker (maximum 0.20 Flicker Index) with any triphosphor lamp suitable for the ballast. The 60 Hz envelope shall not exceed 0.6 of the peak light output.
18. Ballasts shall be compatible with specified occupancy sensors and all other lighting control systems.
19. Ballast shall operate lamps in parallel, allowing remaining lamp(s) to maintain full light output if one or more lamps fail.
20. Instant Start Electronic Solid State Fluorescent Ballasts: Supply instant-start electronic solid-state fluorescent ballasts unless specified otherwise. Instant start ballast shall not reduce rated lamp life by more than 25% compared with rapid start operation, when operating lamps 3 hours per start. Efficiency: Lamp-ballast mean efficacy for 4-foot T-8 high performance HPX lamps (defined elsewhere) shall meet or exceed 109 mean lumens/input watts for one, two or three-lamp ballasts.
21. Program Rapid-Start Electronic Solid-State Fluorescent Ballasts: Provide programmed rapid start electronic solid-state fluorescent ballasts when specifically called for. Cathode voltage for program rapid start lamps during starting shall be between 3.4 and 4.5 volts across a dummy load and between 2.5 and 5.0 volts during operation per ANSI C.82. Lamp-ballast mean efficacy for 4-foot T-8 high performance HPX lamps (defined elsewhere) shall meet or exceed 107 mean lumens/input watts for one, two or three-lamp ballasts.

C. Dimmable Electronic Fluorescent Ballasts:

If dimming ballasts are called for in the Specifications, provide NEMA Premium electronic solid state dimming ballasts which meet or exceed the requirements of Paragraphs A and B above, including the requirements for Programmed Rapid Start Electronic Solid State Fluorescent Ballasts. Dimming ballasts shall also meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Unless otherwise specified, ballast shall dim smoothly and continuously from 100% to 3% for T8 and Compact Fluorescent Lamps and 100% to 1% of full light output for T5 lamps. Lamps shall not visibly flicker at lowest setting.



2. Light output (ballast factor) shall be not less than 0.85 at 100% output setting, tested with a 32 watt T8 lamp.
3. The absolute magnitude of the THD, as measured at full output, shall not exceed 20% throughout the dimming range.
4. Lamp current crest factor shall not exceed 1.7 throughout the dimming range.
5. Ballast shall maintain full lamp filament heat when lamp is dimmed.
6. Dimming ballast shall be able to operate at full light output, in case of failure of control system or when ballast is not connected to an external control system.
7. Ballast shall be compatible with the lighting control system, and certified as such by Contractor and Manufacturer.
8. Acceptable Manufacturers: Lutron "Hi-Lume" Lutron "Eco-10", Universal "Address Pro"

D. Compact Fluorescent Ballasts:

1. General:

In addition to the relevant requirements of Paragraphs A and B above, compact fluorescent ballasts shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

- a. The term "related hardware," as used in this specification section, refers to starters, thermal protection devices, and power-factor correction devices, as applicable.
  - b. Ballast and related hardware shall operate the specified lamps in accordance with ANSI C82.1 and C78, as applicable, and in accordance with the specified lamp manufacturer's recommendations where no ANSI standards exist.
  - c. Ballasts and related hardware shall have a warranty of two (2) years.
  - d. Installation shall conform to applicable manufacturers' recommendations for enclosed or open operation of both lamps and ballasts, as applicable.
  - e. Installation shall follow manufacturer's instructions regarding input current for each ballast when calculating or evaluating circuit loading.
  - f. Ballasts and related hardware shall withstand line transients as defined in IEEE publication 587, Category A.
2. Electronic Solid State Rapid Start Ballasts, for use as specified with compact fluorescent lamps without integral starters:

Provide electronic solid state rapid start ballasts unless otherwise called for, or unavailable for the specific wattage or luminaire. Provide ballasts that meet or exceed the relevant



requirements of Paragraphs A and B, above, and the general requirements for compact fluorescent ballasts. Ballasts shall also meet or exceed the following criteria:

- a. Ballast shall be specifically designed to operate the lamps specified.
  - b. Ballasts shall have a frequency of operation of 20 KHz or greater and incorporate adequate 60 Hz filtering in order to operate with less than 5% flicker (maximum 0.20 Flicker index) with any triphosphor lamp suitable for the ballasts.
  - c. Ballasts shall be of high power factor type, with a Power Factor of 0.90 or greater.
  - d. Total line current harmonic distortion (THD) shall not exceed 20%.
  - e. Light output (ballast factor) shall be no less than 0.85 when tested with the specified lamp.
  - f. Acceptable Manufacturers: Energy Savings, ETTA, Robertson, Hatch, Lightolier, Advance.
3. Electronic Dimming Ballasts, for use as specified with compact fluorescent lamps without integral starters:

If compact fluorescent dimming ballasts are called for in the Specifications, provide dimming ballasts that meet or exceed the relevant requirements of Paragraphs A, B, and C above, as well as the requirements for electronic rapid start compact fluorescent ballasts, above. Ballasts shall also meet or exceed the following criteria:

- a. Ballast shall be of high frequency solid state type for adjustable light output control of specified fluorescent lamps.
- b. Unless otherwise specified, ballast shall dim smoothly and continuously from 100% to 5% of full light output. Lamps shall not visibly flicker at lowest setting.
- c. Light output (ballast factor) shall be not less than 0.85 at 100% output setting, tested with the specified lamp.
- d. The absolute magnitude of the THD, as measured at full output, shall not exceed 20% throughout the dimming range.
- e. Lamp current crest factor shall not exceed 1.7 throughout the dimming range.
- f. Ballast shall maintain full lamp filament heat when lamp is dimmed.
- g. Dimming ballast shall be able to operate at full light output, in case of failure of control system or when ballast is not connected to an external control system.
- h. Ballast shall be compatible with the lighting control system, and certified as such by Contractor and manufacturer.
- i. Acceptable Manufacturers: Lutron "Hi-Lume", ETTA Dimming, Lightolier.



4. Preheat Electromagnetic Ballasts for use with Compact Fluorescent Lamps:

In addition to the requirements of Paragraph A, above, and the general requirements for compact fluorescent ballasts, electromagnetic preheat compact fluorescent ballasts shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

- a. Ballast shall be specifically designed to operate the specified lamps.
  - b. Ballast shall be combined with lamp manufacturer's recommended starter (ignitor).
  - c. Ballast shall be of high power factor type or power factor corrected, with an effective Power Factor of 0.80 or greater.
  - d. Acceptable Manufacturers: Universal, Advance, Keystone
5. SELF-BALLASTED CFL LAMPS CAN MEET TITLE-24 AND EPA "ENERGY STAR" CRITERIA IF THEY USE A "SELF-BALLASTED PIN BASE LAMP", I.E., ARE FITTED WITH A GU24 BASE RATHER THAN A MEDIUM SCREW BASE. CFL BALLASTS ARE ALSO AVAILABLE WITH A GU24 BASE THAT ACCEPT A STANDARD REPLACABLE BI-PIN CFL. SYLVANIA MAKES A FEW STYLES. HOWEVER, GE, AND PHILIPS DO NOT CURRENTLY MAKE THEM WITH THAT BASE AS OF 2008. SATCO IS NEXT CLOSEST TO A US MANUFACTURER. BULBRITE, WESTINGHOUSE AND MAXLITE ALSO MAKE THEM.

E. Fluorescent Emergency Ballasts:

If fluorescent emergency ballasts are called for in the Specifications, provide emergency ballasts which meet or exceed the requirements of Paragraphs A and B above. Ballasts shall also meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. The emergency ballast shall include a high-temperature, maintenance-free nickel-cadmium battery, charger and electronic circuitry.
2. Emergency ballast shall be compatible with 1, 2, 3, or 4-lamp electronic, standard, energy saving, and dimming linear fluorescent AC ballasts. The emergency ballast shall also be compatible with twin (TT), quad (DTT), and triple tube (TTT) compact fluorescent lamps.
3. The emergency ballast shall not interfere with normal operation of luminaire.
4. A solid-state charging indicator light to monitor the charger and battery, a double-pole test switch, and installation hardware shall be provided.
5. The emergency ballast shall be capable of operating (1 or 2) fluorescent lamp(s) at XX lumens initial light output in the emergency mode for a minimum of 90 minutes.



6. The emergency ballast must be fed from the same branch circuit as the AC ballast.
7. The emergency ballast shall be UL listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote (half of the distance of the recommended distance of the standard ballast) from the fixture.
8. The emergency ballast shall be suitable for wet, damp, or hazardous location luminaires.
9. The emergency ballast shall have a warranty of (5) years from date of purchase.

## 2.6 TRANSFORMERS FOR LOW-VOLTAGE LUMINAIRES

### A. General:

1. Each transformer controlled by a dimmer shall have a suitable choke to eliminate noise during dimming.
2. Secondary wiring shall meet all requirements of this Division and of all applicable local codes. Additionally, secondary wiring shall be sized so that the total average voltage drop on the transformer secondary side does not exceed 3%.
3. Lamp operating voltage, as measured at the lamp socket, shall be between 11.5-12.1 volt for nominal 12 volt lamps, and between 23.0-24.2 volt for nominal 24 volt lamps. Contractor shall demonstrate that voltage is within this range if requested by the Commissioner.

### B. Where a remote transformer is required for interior installations, provide a UL listed remote low voltage power supply which meets or exceeds the following requirements, in addition to those of Paragraph A above.

1. Power supply shall contain a toroidal transformer, primary circuit breaker, and thermal protection.
2. Power supply shall be UL listed, suitable for surface or recessed mounting in both walls and ceilings, and require zero clearance to combustible materials.
3. Acceptable Manufacturers: Q-TRAN "QT" Series. or approved equal

## 2.7 LAMP HOLDERS

- A. Provide incandescent and H.I.D. lamp sockets with porcelain housings over copper screw shells, with medium base sockets rated at 660W. Plastic or metal sheet sockets are not approved.
- B. Provide fluorescent luminaire sockets that are white, constructed of heat resistant plastic.

Fluorescent lamp sockets operating with an open circuit voltage in excess of 300 volts shall



be of the safety type which open the supply circuit when the lamp is removed from the sockets. Lampholders shall comply with UL 542 and ANSI C81.

- C. Only "knife edge" type lamp holders shall be used in luminaires utilizing electronic solid state dimmable ballasts to operate 48" and 36" (1212mm and 907mm) fluorescent lamps. Additionally, provide jumper wire between two sides of each individual socket in luminaires utilizing dimmable electronic ballasts
- D. Rigidly and securely attach lampholding sockets to the luminaire enclosure.
- E. Provide sockets suitable for specified lamps, and set to position the lamps in optically correct spacing and relationship to lenses, reflectors, filters, and baffles.
- F. Where fluorescent lamps are to be used "bare," without diffusers or lenses, provide at least two approved lamp retaining clips per fluorescent lamp, for safety.

## 2.8 LAMPS

### A. General:

- 1. Provide electric lamps as required, during construction, including lamps for luminaires furnished by others.
- 2. Provide a complete set of new lamps, as described in this Section and specified the Luminaire Schedule below, in each luminaire, at the completion of the Work, leaving luminaires and lighting equipment completely lamped and/or in normal operating condition. Provide spares in accordance with the paragraph titled "Spares", below.
- 3. The following lamp manufacturers are approved unless otherwise specified: GE, Osram/Sylvania, Philips, Venture.
- 4. Submit catalogue cuts of all lamps to be used in the Work, along with the shop drawing submittal.

### B. Incandescent:

#### 1. General:

- a. Provide tubular Quartz-Halogen lamps with frosted bulb, unless otherwise indicated.
- b. General service lamps with "A" or "PS" bulbs located in service areas shall be rated at 2500 hours or greater lamp life.
- c. Unless otherwise noted, lamps which contain a series connected diode either as an integral part of the lamp, or as a "button" inserted into the socket are unacceptable.
- d. Lamps filled with Krypton are unacceptable.



- e. Provide new lamps in all cases, i.e. new lamps which have not been operated prior to City of New York occupancy for more than 10 hours.
- 2. Quartz-Halogen "IR" lamps:
  - a. When "IR" or "HIR" is indicated in the lamp column of the luminaire schedule, provide Quartz-Halogen lamps with a multi-layer dichroic coating on the Quartz capsule to reflect infrared radiation back onto the filament, yielding a higher efficacy and longer life than with standard Quartz-Halogen technology.
  - b. Lamps shall meet or exceed the following efficacy requirements:

Bulb	Nominal Wattage	Init. Lumen Output	Efficacy (L/W)
PAR30	50	770	15.4
PAR38	50	850	17.0
PAR38	60	1,100	18.3
PAR38	100	2,050	20.5
T3	350	10,000	28.5
T3	900	32,000	35.5

- c. Acceptable Manufacturers: GE "Halogen-IR"; Philips "ProAccent".
- 3. MR16 lamps:
  - a. All MR16 lamps shall be provided with a cover glass, unless otherwise noted.
  - b. Unless otherwise noted, provide MR16 lamps with a multi-layer dichroic reflector which allows infrared radiation to escape out the back of the lamp, while reflecting visible light forward. The dichroic reflector coating shall be stabilized so that there is no perceptible color shift over lamp life due to a degradation of the dichroic coating.
  - c. When "TAL" is indicated in the lamp column of the luminaire schedule, provide MR16 lamps with GE "Turn and Lock" base, and luminaires equipped with suitable sockets for this lamp.
  - d. Acceptable Manufacturers: GE, Philips, Osram/Sylvania, Ushio
- C. Fluorescent:
  - 1. For fluorescent luminaires, unless specified otherwise, provide T8, Rapid Start lamps of the "High Performance extended life (HPX)" type, as described below. Lamps provided shall conform to ANSI C78. Lamp phosphors shall be of a composition which includes rare earth phosphors and which results in a CRI of not less than 80 with a correlated color temperature of 3500K (NEMA RE 835).
  - 2. Provide new lamps in all cases, i.e. new fluorescent lamps which have not been operated during construction for more than 500 hours.



3. Lamps shall only be operated on ballasts specifically designed for the lamp.
4. Lamp/ballast combinations shall also comply with the minimum lamp/ballast efficacy requirements of the "Ballasts" paragraph, above.
5. Lamps shall be of the low-mercury type and TCLP-compliant: E.g., GE "Ecolux", Osram/Sylvania "Ecologic", or Philips "Alto".
6. Overall average of mercury content in all mercury -containing fluorescent lamps shall be less than 80 picograms per lumen-hour.
7. HPX T8 Lamps shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - a. Lamp shall be T8, nominal 1" (26mm) diameter tube, and shall have at least the wattage, initial lumen output, and efficacy (mean lamp lumens/nominal wattage) shown below:

Lamp Length	Nominal Wattage	Mean Lumen Output	Mean Efficacy (mean L/W)
3'-0" (907mm)	25	2200	88
4'-0" (1212mm)	27-32	2585 - 2950	92

- b. Rated lamp life shall be "extended" to at least 24,000 (30,000) hours, per IES LM 40-87, operating in rapid start mode.
  - c. Lamp lumen depreciation (LLD) shall result in a mean lumen value of at least 92% of the initial lamp lumens at 20,000 hours of rated lamp life (in rapid start mode).
  - d. Mortality curves shall show that less than 13% of lamps are burned out at 70% of rated life (in rapid start mode, at 3 operating hours per start).
  - e. Acceptable product lines: GE "Ultra", Philips Advantage, Osram/Sylvania "XP" and "XPS".
- D. Solid State Lighting / Light Emitting Diode (LED) Lamps and Luminaires:
1. General:
    - a. Luminaire manufacturer shall have a minimum of five (5) years experience in the manufacture and design of LED products and systems and no less than one hundred (100) North American installations.
    - b. Unless otherwise specified, all LED luminaires and power/data supplies shall be provided by a single manufacturer to ensure compatibility.
    - c. All components, peripheral devices and control software are to be provided by and shall be the responsibility of a single entity. All components shall perform



successfully as a complete system and shall operate as described in Lighting Designer's Control Narrative documents or Section 26 06 50.16, Lighting Fixture Schedule.

- d. Provide submittals as described in Part 1 above.
- e. Provide two (2) samples of each separate manufacturer and type of LED luminaire. Follow procedure for submitting samples as described in Part 1 above.
- f. Include all components necessary for a complete installation. Provide all power supplies, synchronizers, data cables, and data terminators for a complete working system.
- g. All LED sources used in the LED luminaire shall be of proven quality from established and reputable LED manufacturers and shall have been fabricated after 2007. Acceptable LED lamp manufacturers unless otherwise noted are:
  - (i) Cree, Inc.
  - (ii) Philips Lighting
  - (iii) Nichia Corporation
  - (iv) Norlux
  - (v) Opto Technology, Inc.
  - (vi) Osram Optronics Semiconductors
  - (vii) Xacato
  - (viii) Bridgelux
  - (ix) Citizen Electronics

2. Replacement and Spares:

- a. Manufacturer shall provide written guarantee of the following:
  - (i) Manufacturer will keep record of original bin for each LED module and have replacement modules from the same bin available for three (3) years after date of installation.
  - (ii) Manufacturer will keep an inventory of replacement parts (source assembly, power and control components).
  - (iii) Manufacturer's LED system will not become obsolete for ten (10) years: Manufacturer will provide exact replacement parts, or provide upgraded parts that are designed to fit into the original luminaire and provide equivalent



distribution and lumen output to the original, without any negative consequences.

- b. All parts of system shall be replaceable in field. Manufacturer shall provide written guarantee of the following:
    - (i) Manufacturer has in place a written recycling and re-use program, and will accept returned product and/or components for recycling or re-use.
    - (ii) Manufacturer will properly dispose of non-recyclable components that are deemed harmful to the environment.
  - c. System shall carry a full warranty for five (5) years.
3. Products and Components – Performance
- a. LED luminaires and components shall be UL listed or UL classified.
  - b. LED luminaires and components shall be CE certified.
  - c. All LED luminaires shall be subjected to the following JEDEC Reliability Tests for Lead-free Semiconductors: HTOL, RTOL, LTOL, PTMCL, TMSK, Mechanical Shock, Variable Vibration Frequency, SHR, Autoclave.
  - d. To ensure luminaire quality, luminaire shall have been tested under accelerated life test conditions including an operating temperature span of 360 degrees F, and cyclic loading up to 60G.
  - e. All products included in system shall use Mil-Std 810F, Random Vibration 7.698g as a minimum standard. In installations subject to vibration, luminaire shall be installed with vibration isolation hardware to sufficiently dampen vibrations.
  - f. All LED components shall be mercury and lead-free.
  - g. All manufacturing processes and materials shall conform to the requirements of the European Union's Restriction on the Use of Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronics Equipment (RoHS) Directive, 2002/95/EC.
  - h. LEDs shall comply with ANSI/NEMA/ANSI C78.377-2008 – Specifications for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products. Color shall remain stable throughout the life of the lamp. Color shall match approved sample.
  - i. LEDs shall comply with IESNA LM-80 – Standards for Lumen Maintenance of LED Lighting Products
  - j. White LEDs shall have a rated source life of 50,000 hours under normal operating conditions. RGB LEDs shall have a rated source life of 100,000 hours. LED “rated source life” is defined as the time when a minimum of 70% of initial lumen output remains.



- k. Luminaire assembly shall include a method of dissipating heat so as to not degrade life of source, electronic equipment, or lenses. LED luminaire housing shall be designed to transfer heat from the LED board to the outside environment. Luminaire housing shall have no negative impact on life of components.
- l. Manufacturer shall supply in writing a range of permissible operating temperatures in which system will perform optimally.
- m. High power LED luminaires shall be thermally protected using one or more of the following thermal management techniques: metal core board, gap pad, and/or internal monitoring firmware
- n. LEDs shall be adequately protected from moisture or dust in interior applications.
- o. For wet and damp use, the LED-based luminaire itself shall be sealed, rated, and tested for appropriate environmental conditions, not accomplished by using an additional housing or enclosure. Such protection shall have no negative impact on rated life of source or components, or if so, such reductions shall be explicitly brought to the attention of the designer.
- p. All hardwired connections to LED luminaires shall be reverse polarity protected and provide high voltage protection in the event connections are reversed or shorted during the installation process.
- q. The LED luminaire shall be operated at constant and carefully regulated current levels. LEDs shall not be overdriven beyond their specified nominal voltage and current.
- r. RGB LED luminaires shall utilize an equal combination of high brightness red, blue and green LEDs, unless otherwise noted, to provide up to 16.7 million additive RGB colors and shall be capable of at least 8-bit control.
- s. Manufacturer shall be able to provide supporting documentation of the product meeting third party regulatory compliance.
- t. Manufacturer shall ensure that products undergo and successfully meet appropriate design and manufacturability testing including Design FMEA, Process FMEA, Environmental Engineering Considerations and Laboratory Tests, IEC standards and UL/CE testing.
- u. All LED luminaires (100% of each lot) shall undergo a minimum twenty-four (24) hour burn-in during manufacturing, prior to shipping.
- v. Manufacturer shall provide Luminaire Efficacy (lm/W), total luminous flux (lumens), luminous intensity (candelas) chromaticity coordinates, CCT and CRI.



optical performance, polar diagrams, and relevant luminance and illuminance photometric data. Provide data in IES file format in accordance with IES LM-79-2008, based on test results from an independent Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory.

- w. Power / data supply shall have the following:
  - (i) Supply outputs shall have current limiting protection.
  - (ii) Supply shall provide miswiring protection.
  - (iii) Supply shall have power factor correction.
  - (iv) Supply shall provide connections that are conduit-ready or clamp-style connections in the case of low-voltage wiring.
  - (v) Supply shall come with a housing that meets a minimum IP20 rating for dry location installation unless located in a damp or wet location.
  - (vi) Supply shall be UL listed for Class 1 or Class 2 wiring
- 4. LED Control and Communication – Performance
  - a. LED luminaires shall be network controllable via digital control.
  - b. The LED system shall use integral and differential non-linear control.
  - c. Constant data transmission rates shall be employed, resulting in the output being independent of distance of cable between power supply and light source within the specified length.
  - d. LED system shall have a selectable means of external control via a datanetwork.
  - e. Each LED luminaire and/or node shall have the capability to be set to a unique and individual address. Address shall be selectable through on board switches or by an external hardware or software method.
  - f. The LED system shall be scalable, with every LED luminaire/address in the system capable of being controlled by a single, centralized controller.

## 2.9 REFLECTORS

### A. Aluminum Reflectors:

1. Provide reflectors and reflecting cones or baffles fabricated from aluminum reflector sheet no less than minimum thickness listed below for each application, or in accordance with the current UL standard 1570 for ballast covers, whichever is thicker. Reflector shall be absolutely free of tooling marks including spinning lines, and free of marks or indentation caused by riveting or other assembly techniques. No rivets, springs, or other hardware shall be visible after installation.

Cones	0.0500" (1.27mm)
Wall wash kicker panels in cones	0.0400" (1.01mm)
Reflectors (non-structural)	0.0235" (0.59mm)
Louvers/Baffles	0.0200" (0.50mm)

2. Provide reflectors and baffles of first-quality polished, buffed and anodized finish, "Alzak" or approved equal, and with specular or semi-specular finish color to be clear, unless specified otherwise. Provide reflector and baffles which produce no apparent brightness nor a lamp image, nor may any part of the lamp be visible from 50° above nadir to 90° above nadir (vertical). That is the reflector shall have a maximum 50° cutoff angle and a minimum 40° shielding angle.
3. Provide other aluminum reflectors where required, and formed and finished as noted on drawings and elsewhere in the specifications. Provide only reflectors free from blemishes, scratches, or indentations which would distort their reflective function and finished by means of the "Alzak" process, or approved equal, unless otherwise noted. No rivets, springs, or other hardware shall be visible after installation.
4. For luminaires employing triphosphor lamps, provide reflectors, cones, or baffles with low iridescent coating on all surfaces seen from normal viewing angles.
5. Anodized aluminum reflectors shall have the following characteristics:

Type	Min. Weight of coating (mg/in <sup>2</sup> ) (mg/cm <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>(a)</sup>		Min. Total Hemispherical Reflectance <sup>(b)</sup>	Min. Specular Component <sup>(b)</sup>	Min. Visual Clarity <sup>(c)</sup>	Min. Diffuseness at 15° <sup>(c)</sup>
Specular	2	0.31	86	70	90	0.03
Specular (low-iridescent)	5	0.77	85	46	80	0.05
Semi-specular (low-iridescent)	5	0.77	82	10	35	0.40

(a) Anodizing process. Coating of aluminum oxide: Reference ASTM Test Method B-137.

(b) Reference ASTM Test Method E-903-82 (testing utilizing a TR1 or TR2 Total Reflectometer is also acceptable pending issuance of ASTM standard).

(c) Reference ASTM Test Method E-430-78 (1983).

**B. Painted Reflectors:**

1. Reflectors shall be completely formed before application of primer and enamel color coat or coats.



2. When requested by Commissioner, submit a sufficient quantity of flat steel panels having the identical primer and color coat or coats applied in the same manner as proposed for the contract items.
3. Tests will be required only in case of dispute about reflector characteristics. Tests may be required at any time before or during Contractor's warranty period. Contractor will pay the cost of tests, if required. Reflectors which do not meet the criteria expressed here will be replaced at Contractor's expense, with reflectors meeting specified requirements.
4. Tests:
  - a. Painted reflectors shall have an initial reflection factor not less than 86% in the visible range of 400-700 nanometers as per ASTM Method E-424-71 as determined by independent laboratory test of fading, tested in the following manner: One half of sample shall be covered and remaining half shall be exposed to a 150 watt sunlamp placed 1/2" (12.7mm) above reflective surface for 72 hours. Comparison of exposed and unexposed sides shall show no visible fading or deterioration in appearance or reflectance.
  - b. The percentage of Specular Gloss shall be a minimum of 80% as determined by ASTM Method D-532-T, Procedure A.
  - c.

#### 2.10 LENSES / FACEPLATES / TRIM

- A. Where plastic lens is indicated, provide lens of 100% virgin acrylic (polymethyl methacrylate), nominal 0.125" (3mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated. Lens is to be strain-free, uniform in appearance, and destaticized.
- B. Where clear acrylic lens is indicated, provide lens with a minimum visible light transmittance of 92%, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where prismatic acrylic lens is indicated, lens shall be composed of 3/16" (4.7mm) square non-convex prismatic cones of maximum 0.080" (2mm) depth and aligned 45° to the length and width of the lens panel, unless otherwise specified. Lens shall be a minimum of 7.5 oz. per square foot (2289g/m<sup>2</sup>). Lens shall have minimum 80% visible light transmittance.
- D. Where diffuse acrylic lens is indicated, lens shall be diffuse frosted white, high transmission acrylic with a minimum 73% visible light transmittance unless otherwise indicated. Provide nominal 0.125" (3mm) thick lens unless otherwise specified.
- E. Where acrylic "overlay" is indicated, lens shall be supported by other rigid luminaire members, such as louvers or shelves. Lens shall be white or clear, as specified, with a

minimum 79% visible light transmission for white lenses, and a minimum 83% transmission for clear lenses. Provide 0.040" (1mm) thick lens unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Make lenses, louvers, or other light diffusing elements contained in frames removable, but positively held within the frames so that hinging or other motion of the frame will not cause the diffusing element to drop out.
- G. For recessed luminaires with trim that is removable or open for access to the interior of the luminaire, and serves as a ceiling trim, provide trim that is positively held to the luminaire body by adjustable means that permit the trim to be drawn up to the ceiling as tight as necessary to insure complete contact of faceplate with ceiling surrounding the luminaire.

## 2.11 RATED LOCATION LUMINAIRES

### A. General:

1. Provide luminaires designed and manufactured specifically for "rated" (e.g., damp, wet, shower, hazardous) location service. Components, including nuts, bolts, rivets, springs, and similar parts shall be made of materials of effective corrosion resistance, or of materials which have been subjected to finishing treatment which will assure such resistance.
2. Luminaires not otherwise protected with lenses or louvers shall be protected with securely fastened bird screens when used in exterior locations.
3. Provide anodized aluminum for aluminum parts of exterior luminaires that are not specified as requiring a painted finish.
4. All luminaires shall be constructed according to UL procedures, and listed by UL or ETL for the appropriate category.
5. All luminaires or equipment located wholly or partly out of doors shall be considered subject to severe marine type corrosive conditions and shall be suitably manufactured and installed.

### B. Damp Location:

1. In addition to the requirements of Paragraph A, above, damp location luminaires shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - a. Provide metal parts of luminaires, which are specified as requiring painting, for use in outdoor or damp locations, which are painted with suitable weather and moisture resisting qualities.



- b. Provide luminaires for use outdoors, or in areas designated as damp locations, which are suitably and effectively gasketed to prevent access of moisture into electrical components or enclosing diffusers, lenses or globes.
- c. Luminaires shall be UL or ETL listed for damp locations.

C. Wet Location:

1. In addition to the requirements of Paragraph A, above, wet location luminaires shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
  - a. Any exposed luminaires shall be UL or ETL rated for wet locations.
  - b. Provide luminaires for use outdoors, or in areas designated as wet locations, which are suitably and effectively gasketed to prevent access of moisture into electrical components or enclosing diffusers, lenses or globes.

## 2.12 LUMINAIRE DESCRIPTIONS

A. General:

1. Provide luminaires which conform to the above standards and criteria, as indicated on the drawings, and as indicated below.
2. Contractor is responsible for verifying mounting conditions and trim for all luminaire types.
3. Contractor shall verify all voltages, and verify which luminaires require ducted or plenum air supply or return capability or are to be static.
4. Catalogue or series numbers, when shown herein, are intended to provide assistance in establishing general type or category of luminaires. Contractor shall provide a luminaire that meets the complete performance descriptions, as well as information provided by detail drawings. Standard catalogue cuts, when included, are for general assistance. Written luminaire descriptions below, and on electrical drawings, are the primary basis for luminaire specification.
5. The terminology "Or Approved Equal" if and only if used on the Luminaire Schedule, means the following: The contractor may submit products fabricated by alternative manufacturers to those listed, under the terms of the substitution clauses outlined in this Section. The products must meet the specifications in every way. The Commissioner is free to accept or reject any alternatives, without a detailed explanation.
6. Bring any discrepancies between drawing and specifications to the attention of the Commissioner before submitting bids. If such discrepancies are not resolved prior to the end of the bid period, the more costly alternative will be considered as included in



the bid price. See Paragraph 2.1 above regarding definition of Acceptable Manufacturers.

7. All finishes are to be factory applied, including colored flanges and trims.

B. Spare Parts / Extra Stock:

1. Spare parts stock shall be furnished by the Contractor to the City of New York upon completion of the work. Quantities shall be included in main order to prevent additional cost to the City of New York. All boxes shall be clearly labeled regarding contents, relevant fixture type, and description. All spare parts shall be turned over to the City of New York's authorized representative, and a receipt in duplicate, signed by the site representative shall be delivered to the City of New York's authorized representative.
2. The following spare parts shall be furnished as a minimum. Additional spare parts shall be furnished as required by mention elsewhere in this specification, other sections of these Specifications, or the Contract Drawings:

Lamps	10% (but not less than six of each type of lamp)
Ballasts / Transformers	5% (but not less than one of each type of ballast/transformer)
Lenses, baffles	10% (but not less than one of each type lens or baffle)
Color filters	Three of each unique size or shape

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Install luminaires complete with lamps, as indicated, and with equipment, materials, parts, attachments, devices, aligner and filler clips, hardware, hangers, cables, supports, channels, frames and brackets necessary to make a safe, complete, and fully operative installation.
- B. Verify and provide luminaires that are appropriate for the ceiling and mounting conditions of the project.
- C. Coordinate with other trades as appropriate to properly interface installation of luminaires with other work.
- D. Reject and do not install blemished, damaged, or unsatisfactory luminaires. Replace imperfect or unsatisfactory luminaires, if installed, as directed by Commissioner.



- E. Set luminaires, when installed, to be true, and free of light leaks, warps, dents, or other irregularities. No light leaks are permitted at the ceiling line or from any visible part or joint of the luminaires. Install luminaires plumb, square, and level with ceiling and walls, in alignment with adjacent luminaires, and secure in accordance with manufacturers' directions and approved shop drawings. Install all adjacent and continuous luminaires straight and trued, aligned in both plan and elevation. Supply and install alignment rods or joint straps as required to achieve this effect.
- F. Provide finish for exposed parts or trims as specified. If not indicated, provide a finish as directed by Commissioner.
- G. Do not install reflector cones, aperture plates, lenses, diffusers, louvers, and decorative elements of luminaires until completion of wet work, plastering, painting and general clean-up in the area of the luminaires.
- H. Mount luminaires at heights and locations indicated on the Contract Drawings, or as required by Commissioner. Mounting heights specified or indicated are to be to the bottom of each luminaire for suspended and ceiling-mounted luminaires, and to the center of each luminaire for wall-mounted luminaires, unless otherwise noted. Obtain approval of the exact mounting for luminaires on the job before installation is commenced and, where applicable, after coordinating with the type, style, and pattern of the ceiling being installed.
- I. Conform to the requirements of NFPA 70, and all other relevant codes. Supports shall be suitable for local seismic zone.
- J. In Mechanical Equipment Rooms, luminaires shall be hung from ceilings after piping and equipment therein has been installed. Exact locations for such luminaires shall be determined at the job site during the course of the Work, in Coordination with the Mechanical Work.
- K. Adequately protect the housing of recessed luminaires during installation by internal blocking or framing to prevent distortion of sides, or dislocation of threaded lugs, which, upon completion, shall be in perfect alignment and match the corresponding holes in frames or rims. Holding screws shall be inserted freely without forcing, and shall remain easily removable for servicing.
- L. Ground non-current-carrying parts of electrical equipment in accordance with UL and NEC provisions.
- M. Upon completion of installation of luminaires, and after building circuits have been energized, apply electrical energy to demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements. Where possible, correct malfunctioning units at the site, then re-test to

demonstrate compliance. Otherwise, remove and replace with new units, and proceed with re-testing. Dates and times for all field tests shall be established by the Commissioner.

Coordinate all test requirements with the Commissioner.

1. For normal and emergency building lighting, upon completion of the installation, conduct an operating test to show that the equipment operates in accordance with the requirements of this and other relevant sections.
  2. Test all wiring with an insulation testing instrument, both before and after connection of luminaires and equipment. The minimum resistance shall be 250,000 ohms.
- N. Upon completion of the installation, the luminaires and lighting equipment shall be in first class operating order and free from defects in condition and finish. At time of final inspection, all luminaires and equipment shall be clean, fully lamped, and be complete with required lenses or diffusers, reflectors, side panels, louvers, or other components necessary for the function of the luminaires. Any reflectors, lenses, diffusers, side panels or other parts damaged prior to the final inspection shall be replaced by Contractor prior to inspection.
- O. At the time of substantial completion and prior to field tests, replace lamps in interior luminaires which have been operating as work lights, or which are observed to be noticeably dimmed after Contractor's use and testing, as judged by the Commissioner.
- P. Luminaires and lamps that are part of the Work of this section shall not be used for work lights during construction, except in Mechanical Equipment rooms. Contractor shall provide adequate portable or temporary lighting for construction.
- Q. Vibration Isolation: Mount and support all luminaires in such a manner to isolate the luminaire from structure-borne vibration, including but not limited to vibration caused by fans, motors, moveable tracks, moveable partitions, portable carts, vehicles, etc. Incandescent and tungsten halogen lamps are particularly sensitive to such vibration.

### 3.2 ACCESSIBILITY

Install equipment such as junction and pull boxes, luminaire housings, transformers, ballasts, switches and controls, and other apparatus that shall be reached from time to time for operation and maintenance, to be easily accessible and appropriate for mounting and ceiling conditions.

### 3.3 SUPPORTS

- A. Luminaires shall be securely fastened as per manufacturer's instructions. Provide plaster frames or mounting frames for luminaires that require them. Such frames shall be appropriate for the ceiling construction in which they are installed.



- B. Provide necessary hardware with luminaires, such as stems, plates, plaster frames, hangers and similar items, for safe support of the luminaire. Provide plaster frames made of non-ferrous metal, or of steel that has been suitably rustproofed after fabrication, as described above.
- C. Provide supports for luminaires that are adequate to support the weight of the luminaires.
- D. Provide hanging devices which, if visible from normal viewing angles, exactly match luminaire finishes specified, unless otherwise noted.
- E. Where necessary to meet fire resistance requirements of Building Code authorities, provide enclosures housing recessed luminaires that are constructed to provide required fire resistance rating.
- F. Provide attachment devices including brackets and cast metal shapes with the requisite rigidity and strength to maintain continuous alignment of installed luminaires. Attach luminaires to ceiling support members, and do not depend upon lathing, plaster or ceiling tile for alignment or support.
- G. Provide luminaires mounted in suspended ceilings that are supported by saddle hangers or the bars attached to runners or between crossbars of ceiling systems. Provide mounting splines or other positive means of maintaining alignment and rigidity.
- H. Provide supporting members that are surface passivated, and which are primed or paint-dipped to resist corrosion.
- I. Provide fastening devices of a positive locking type, which do not require special tools to apply or remove them. Do not use tie wires in place of fastening devices.
- J. Contractor is responsible for the necessary suspension system. Contractor shall ascertain the structural reliability of supports provided under other Sections of the specification.
- K. Attach reflectors to housings by means of safety chains, which shall prevent reflectors from falling. No part of the chain may be visible after installation, when viewed from any angle up to 50 degrees from the vertical.
- L. Provide pendant or surface mounted luminaires with required mounting devices and accessories, including hickey, stud-extensions, ball aligners, canopies, and stems. Uniformly maintain the luminaire heights shown on the Contract Drawings or established in the field. The allowable tolerances in individual luminaire mounting shall not exceed 1/4 inch (7mm) and may not vary more than 1/2 inch (14mm) from the mounting height shown on the drawings. Install luminaires hung in continuous runs absolutely level, and in line with each other. Hanging devices shall comply with code requirements.
- M. Provide an approved ceiling canopy for each stem, exactly matching specified finishes.

- N. Place stems to be vertical and plumb.
- O. Provide at least two rigid supports for individually mounted fluorescent luminaires. Where luminaires are ganged, provide supports at 8 ft. (2438mm) intervals, unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Recessed and semi-recessed luminaires:
  - 1. Support rods or wires shall be provided with a minimum of four rods or wires per luminaire and located not more than six inches (152mm) from each corner of each luminaire.
  - 2. Do not support luminaires by ceiling acoustical panels.
  - 3. Where luminaires of sizes less than the ceiling grid are indicated to be centered in the acoustical panel, support such luminaires independently or with at least two 3/4 inch (19mm) metal channels spanning and wired to the ceiling tees.
  - 4. Provide rods or wires for luminaire support under this section of the specifications.

#### 3.4 AIMING AND ADJUSTMENT:

- A. Provide manpower and tools for final focusing and adjustment, under the Commissioner's supervision, of all adjustable luminaires after regular working hours (i.e., after dark in daylighted areas) whenever necessary, at no additional cost to City of New York. All fixtures shall be locked into place so that the aiming is not disturbed during future re-lamping.
- B. The Contractor shall request preliminary aiming diagrams during the shop drawing submittals. If the Commissioner chooses to submit them, the Contractor shall pre-aim those luminaires during installation or prior to final aiming.
- C. If colored or diffusing filters are specified, the Contractor shall supply up to four (4) theatrical gels for each fixture type, in colors to be selected by the Commissioner after installation. The Contractor shall place alternate gels over the fixtures as requested by the Commissioner. When the final colors are selected, the Contractor shall order the filters from the manufacturer, and install them. Note that the time between ordering and shipping may be approximately twelve weeks.
- D. When extra lenses, louvers or shields are specified, the Contractor shall change accessories until the Commissioner makes a final selection.
- E. The Contractor shall note final aiming and locked positions, and include that information in the O&M manual.



### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Immediately prior to occupancy, clean reflector cones, reflectors, aperture plates, lenses, louvers, lamps and decorative elements. As per manufacturer's instructions, destaticize lenses after cleaning, installing them to leave no finger or dirtmarks.
- B. Upon completion of the luminaire installation and at the time of final inspection, luminaires shall be clean, and free from marks, dust, spotting or other defects. Replace any broken or defective parts prior to final inspection. Replace or make good all defects revealed by final inspection.
- C. Protect installed luminaires from damage during the remainder of construction period.

### 3.6 COMMISSIONING

- A. For any luminaire, ballast, or lighting control system, the contractor is responsible for a complete and operational system which is satisfactory to the City of New York, building manager and occupants.
- B. The City of New York shall provide for or engage a commissioning agent to verify that all components and system as a whole meets design intent. This includes evaluation and verification of all adjustable features, such as aiming angles, time clock settings, sensitivity settings, high end trim, fine tuning, customized settings, etc. Contractor shall provide manpower and equipment after normal working hours to correct and adjust system, working with or without direct supervision of commissioning agent until reasonable satisfaction has been achieved.
- C. The Contractor shall provide the City of New York with Spares, as described in Part 2 above.
- D. The Contractor shall provide the City of New York with maintenance manual and operational submittals, as called for in Part 1 above, under the conditions of the relevant General Requirements. After approval by the Commissioner, this manual will be kept on site for reference use by facility maintenance personnel. Transfer of the document will include a thorough walk-through and demonstration of equipment by contractor for facility personnel, and the designer/specifier. Commissioner shall schedule transfer. The Contractor shall assemble and submit, in bound 8.5"x11" (216mm x 279mm) format, an Operation and Maintenance Manual that includes the following:



1. A chart clearly documenting the luminaire, lamp and ballast actually installed for each luminaire type, with product designations sufficient for reordering new product and components to match those installed.
  2. A current list of lighting distributors, manufacturers and manufacturer's representatives, (for the purposes of replacement, reordering or trouble-shooting). This list shall be keyed to the list of luminaires, lamps and ballasts, so that the City of New York has a name, address and phone number of at least two (2) contacts for each product or component.
  3. Shop drawings, technical data sheets, product technical documents, installation instructions, cut sheets, operating instructions, calibration instructions, and troubleshooting guides in the installation, including but not limited to lamps, ballasts and lighting control devices.
  4. Color-coded as-built drawings showing all lamp and ballast types, to facilitate replacement.
- E. **Owner Training:** At the City of New York's convenience, the Contractor shall provide a minimum of four (4) hours, not to exceed eight (8) hours, of expertise and training concerning the installation, characteristics, operations and maintenance of the Contractor's work of this Section. Such training shall take place after the Contractor has provided the City of New York's with the maintenance and operational submittals mentioned above. Include technical data sheets and parts ordering information. In addition, the Contractor shall provide the City of New York with a chart clearly documenting the luminaire, lamp and ballast actually installed for each luminaire type, with product designations sufficient for reordering new products or components. For the purposes of replacement, reordering or trouble-shooting, the Contractor shall provide the City of New York with a current list of lighting distributors, manufacturers and manufacturer's representatives. This list shall be keyed to the list of luminaires, lamps and ballasts, so that the City of New York has a name, address and phone number of at least two (2) contacts for each product or component.
- F. The Contractor shall video-tape the training session, and provide the City of New York with two (2) copies in video-tape, or CD. Alternative electronic formats may be provided if mutually agreed upon.

**END OF SECTION 26 5113**



**SECTION 26 52 00  
AUDIOVISUAL ELECTRICAL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Audiovisual drawings.
- B. Electrical drawings.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. In accordance with the contract documents provide all material, labor, equipment and services necessary to furnish, install, commission, warranty, and maintain the Audiovisual Systems.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 26 Section 05 00 – Common Work Results for Electrical
  - 2. Division 26 Section 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
  - 3. Division 26 Section 05 29 – Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems
  - 4. Division 27 Section 41 16 – Integrated Audio-Video Systems & Equipment
  - 5. Division 11 Section 52 32 – Projection Screens & Lifts

**1.3 SCOPE OF WORK**

- A. Furnish and install complete sound and video system electrical power and isolated ground systems including but not limited to: all necessary raceway, electrical conductors, control cabinets, circuit breakers and all necessary apparatus and equipment, labor and services required to provide a system of high quality in excellent working order as specified herein and as indicated by relevant drawings.
- B. Furnish and install complete audiovisual system conduits, raceways, terminal cabinets, pull boxes, floor boxes, loudspeaker backcans, cable trays, junction boxes, wireways, and wireway ladders.
- C. Contractor to coordinate with Audiovisual Contractor on wiring routing and methods, conduit/junction box locations for audiovisual equipment, and routing of audio, video, control, and power cables/conduits to Audiovisual System Equipment Racks.
- D. Review of Audiovisual infrastructure design (conduit, backboxes, electrical power, data connectivity) and provide comments to Consultant regarding any size and location issues or discrepancies with the design intent.



**1.4 CODES:**

- A. Work shall be performed in accordance with all applicable requirements of all governing codes, rules and regulations including the following minimum standards, whether statutory or not:
1. Uniform Building Code (UBC)
  2. National Electric Code (NEC).
  3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
  4. City, and other local codes and requirements

**1.5 STANDARDS:**

- A. Equipment and materials specified shall conform to the current edition of the following standards where applicable:
1. UL - Underwriters' Laboratories
  2. ASTM - American Society for Testing Materials
  3. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturer's Association
  4. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
  5. ETL - Electrical Testing Laboratories
  6. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers
  7. EIA - Electronic Industries Association
  8. ISO - International Standards Organization
  9. Sound System Engineering, 2nd Ed., Davis and Davis, Howard W. Sams Co., 1987.

**1.6 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 1 General Provisions.
1. Shop Drawings: Prior to Assembly and Installation
  2. Run sheets or field wiring drawings: Clearly show wire pull routing, call out wire types and assign wire numbers to every wire in the drawings.

**1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Refer to Section 26 05 00.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 AV CABLE CONTAINMENT**

- A. Provide conduit, raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and junction boxes for all AV systems in dedicated pathways under specification 26 05 33.
- B. All empty conduit shall be deburred, cleaned, capped, and furnished with pull strings.
- C. Electrical Isolated Ground Receptacles
1. Isolated Ground 120VAC, 20 AMP, isolated ground duplex receptacles with dual earth connections.
  2. See Section 26 27 26 for general requirements.



2.2

**CABLE PASS**

- A. BECKSON Screw-out Deck Plate #DP80-B or approved equal.

Beckson Marine, Inc.  
165 Holland Ave Bridgeport, CT 06605  
Tel: 203-333-1412 Fax: 203-384-6954

Suncor Stainless, Inc.  
70 Armstrong Road  
Plymouth, MA 02360  
Tel: 508-732-9191

West Marine, Inc.  
PO Box 50070  
Watsonville, CA 95077  
Tel: 831-728-2700

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1

**INSTALLATION**

- A. Install per Section 26 05 33.
- B. The method of installation of boxes and the passage of conduit through acoustically sensitive walls shall be coordinated with the acoustical consultant. Electrical junction boxes recessed into acoustically sensitive walls shall have their backs fully sealed with airtight putty or adhesive applied outlet pads. Junction boxes placed back-to-back on acoustically sensitive walls shall not share the same stud cavity.
1. Acoustically sensitive walls are: Main Performance Space Walls.
- C. Electrical Power and Grounding System
1. Provide a separate panelboard of circuit breakers to serve the audio and audiovisual equipment, and other isolated ground receptacles throughout the building.
  2. Bond the neutral conductor from each of these panels to the master ground at the service entrance. These panels will be called the Audiovisual Technical Power Panels.
  3. Provide the Audiovisual Technical Power Panels with a ground busbar that is totally isolated from the enclosure, raceway, and neutral conductor.
  4. Provide a connection from the master ground at the service entrance to the isolated ground busbar in the Audiovisual Technical Power Panels using a No. 4 insulated conductor run with the service conductors or in a conduit by itself. The wire will not connect to any raceway or enclosure.
  5. All branch circuits and outlets from the Audiovisual Technical Power Panels must use isolated ground (IG) receptacles.
  6. Each branch circuit shall be individually wired from the Audiovisual Technical Power Panels using three appropriately sized conductors. These are the hot, neutral, and ground conductors.



7. Conduits carrying AC from the Audiovisual Technical Power Panels to the duplex receptacles in the sound equipment rack(s) **MUST NOT** contact the rack. Use short PVC sections between the EMT and the equipment racks to provide this isolation. Or, use insulated bushings and clamps as required. Outlet boxes containing IG duplex outlets **MUST NOT** contact the rack. Use insulated standoffs.

**END OF SECTION 26 52 00**



SECTION 26 55 61 – THEATRICAL SYSTEMS ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Includes but not limited to:

1. Section includes general requirements for provision of electrical services and materials, and raceway and outlet box system suitable to accommodate installation of the Theatrical Systems, including Theatrical Audio Video (AV) Systems, Theatrical Lighting Dimming and Control, and Theatrical Rigging.
2. Coordinate Theatrical Systems-related electrical materials installation with Theatrical and AV Systems drawings.
3. Provide Theatrical Systems-related electrical materials and methods in accordance with all requirements and related sections of Division 26 and as detailed herein.
4. Provide all Theatrical Systems junction boxes, pull boxes, terminal cabinets, cable trays, conduit, enclosures, standard outlet and device back boxes, and other electrical materials and hardware for a complete Theatrical Systems electrical infrastructure as specified herein and in quantities and location as shown on the drawings.
5. Provide all disconnects, panelboards and company switches for Theatrical Systems Equipment as specified herein and in quantities as shown on Electrical drawings.
6. Provide test reports and verification that wiring installations comply with applicable standards and the requirements set forth in the Division 11 Theatrical Systems documents and by the equipment manufacturers.

B. Theatrical Audio Video systems

1. Provide all conduit, pull strings, standard backboxes, cable trays, pull boxes and terminal cabinets required for the AV Systems low-voltage infrastructure.
2. Install, terminate and test all AV Systems low-voltage cable as furnished under Sections 115232, 265200 and 274116. Wire shall be terminated under the direct supervision of the AV Systems contractor.
3. Provide and terminate all AC power wiring and receptacles required for the Theatrical AV Systems isolated technical ground system and general power system.
4. Install all Theatrical AV Systems equipment as furnished by the Sections 115232, 265200 and 274116 AV Systems Contractor. All Theatrical AV systems and equipment shall be installed under the direct supervision of the AV Systems Contractor.



- a. The Electrical Contractor shall provide a separate trained crew of electricians dedicated to the installation of the Theatrical AV Systems equipment and cabling.
  - b. The Electrical Contractor shall not begin pulling Theatrical AV systems wiring through the empty conduit until all conduit, pull boxes, etc. for each given run (point-to-point) are completely installed by others and ready for such wire and cable installation.
  - c. The Electrical Contractor's foreman shall undertake a field inspection of the conduit system and pull boxes, reporting any missing conduit, sharp edges, missing bushings or drag lines, blocked runs and so forth, prior to attempting installation of wire and cable.
- C. Theatrical lighting dimming and control
1. Provide all conduit, wire, and wire pulling for theatrical lighting systems.
  2. Provide terminations for theatrical lighting systems racks and devices, low voltage termination will be terminated under the direct supervision of the Theatrical lighting contractor.
  3. Provide and terminate wiring and receptacle outlets required for the Theatrical Lighting System as called out on drawings.
- D. LEED related scope of work
1. Division 1, Section 018114 – Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  2. Division 1, Section 018113 – Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

## 1.2 PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT FURNISHED UNDER THIS SECTION

- A. Theatrical Audio Video systems
1. Install all Theatrical Audio Video Systems equipment as furnished under Sections 115232, 265200 and 274116.
  2. Terminate all Theatrical Audio Video System AC power receptacles and devices within equipment racks (including receptacles, isolated ground bus bars, etc.), as furnished under Section 115232, 265200 and 274116.
  3. Install all Theatrical Audio Video Systems specialty panel and device back boxes furnished by 115232, 265200 and 274116, where noted. Provide all required conduit, electrical hardware, and mounting brackets.
- B. Theatrical lighting system



1. Receive, store and install dimmed and switched power distribution equipment and associated control equipment furnished under Section 115232, 265200 and 274116.
2. Receive, store and install all power and control distribution and connection devices furnished under Section 115232, 265200 and 274116.
3. Install terminal boxes and flexible multi-cable drops to pipe grids, etc.
4. Install all head-end control equipment furnished under Section 115232, 265200 and 274116 under the direct supervision of the equipment manufacturer.

### 1.3 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULING

- A. The installation of the theatrical system wiring devices shall not occur until all painting in the area has been completed.
- B. Computer grade network components, rack processors and modules, and any other equipment sensitive to construction debris and dust shall not be installed until all debris and dust has been removed. Typical "office" cleanliness shall be required in rooms in which computer grade equipment is to be installed.
- C. Computer grade network components, rack processors and modules, and any other valuable equipment shall not be installed until equipment rooms are secure.
- D. The unpacking and installation of computer control consoles and peripheral devices shall not occur until the control room is secure and climate controlled.

### 1.4 SYSTEM START UP AND COMMISSIONING

- A. Test and "ring out" all 120V system socket-outlet devices to ensure that all systems components are wired properly and functional at the time of commissioning.
- B. Provide personnel at the time of commissioning to supervise the inspection / testing of theatre systems related electrical equipment. This includes distribution boards, circuit breaker panels, relay panels, and all mains voltage devices installed under this section.
- C. Provide the appropriate test equipment for the commissioning of theatre systems related electrical equipment.
- D. Provide access (ladders, lifts, scaffolding, etc) to all theatre systems related electrical equipment for inspection at the time of commissioning.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS



## 2.1 RACEWAYS

### A. Conduit and Fittings

1. Provide electrical metallic tubing (EMT) conduit for all Theatrical Systems wiring with the following exceptions:
  - a. Provide rigid steel conduit (GRS) for Theatrical Audio Video Systems wiring installed in poured concrete and masonry, and where specifically required.
  - b. PVC conduit is NOT acceptable, except within concrete slab.
  - c. Compression-type conduit connectors and couplings, rated for maximum continuity (conduit-to-box and conduit-to-conduit), shall be used for all Theatrical Audio Video Systems metallic conduit.

### B. Cable Trays

1. General
  - a. Provide cable trays, tray supports, and splicing hardware to accommodate cable runs as shown on theatre equipment drawings. Refer to sections 115232, 265200 and 274116.
  - b. Trays to be adequately mounted so that there is no visible deflection between supported sections.
2. Theatrical Audio Video Systems
  - a. Provide 16-gauge steel cable tray, 18"w x 6"d, with three barriers for four wiring compartments. Cable tray interiors to be smooth and free of nicks, burrs, or any protrusions.
  - b. Length as required to carry Theatrical Audio Video Systems cabling from the terminal cabinets to the top or bottom of the equipment racks, or as indicated. Refer to Section 115232, 265200 and 274116 AV drawings.
  - c. Cable trays shall be electrically and mechanically connected (bonded) to the building electrical safety ground and isolated from the AV Systems equipment racks in order to maintain the integrity of the AV Systems technical isolated technical ground system.
  - d. Cable tray shall be by B-Line, Chalfant Series-6, or equal.

## 2.2 BOXES

### A. Pull and Junction Boxes

1. Pull and junction boxes shall be as specified under Section 260533, BOXES ENCLOSURES AND CABINETS: Pull and Junction Boxes.

### B. Outlet Boxes

1. Outlet boxes shall be as specified under Section 260533, BOXES ENCLOSURES AND CABINETS: with the following additional requirements:
  - a. Recessed outlet boxes:



- 1) Provide outlet boxes as standard steel gang boxes for devices of 2-1/2" minimum depth.
  - a) Provide plaster rings of appropriate size (per Sections 115232, 265200 and 274116), and depth (per site conditions).
  - b) 3" x 2" gangable steel switch boxes ("GEM" boxes) shall not be acceptable as single or multiple-gang recessed back boxes.
- b. Surface-mounted outlet boxes:
  - 1) Provide surface-mounted outlet boxes as Wiremold-type boxes or weatherproof cast metal boxes ("bell boxes"), of 2-5/8" depth. Single-gang "bell boxes" of 2-5/8" depth shall be acceptable.
  - 2) Any surface mount back box which allows the receptacle cover plate to overhang the edge of the box presents a safety hazard and shall not be acceptable.
2. Theatrical AV Panel Back Boxes
  - a. Provide standard NEMA Type 1 screw cover back boxes for "C" Series AV panels, unless noted otherwise.
  - b. Back Box sizes and mounting conditions are as indicated on the Sections 115232, 265200 and 274116 Theatrical Audio Video Systems drawings and specification.
  - c. All surface mount AV panel and device back boxes to be finished flat black, unless noted otherwise.

### 2.3 THEATRICAL SYSTEMS CONTROL CABLE

#### A. General

1. Provide only wire types specified in Electrical Documents and verified by Theatrical Systems Manufacturer's shop drawings. No substitutions allowed without written approval of the Commissioner and Theatrical Systems Manufacturers.
2. Wire types provided in Electrical documents represent the information available at the time of bid and are provided for development of conduit size requirement and bidding purposes. Determination of the final wire type is dependent on the proprietary systems of the successful 115232, 265200 and 274116 manufacturer. Do not purchase or install any Theatrical Systems control cable until shop drawings for these systems are approved.
3. All wire to be installed in conduit unless otherwise noted or by specific written agreement by Electrical Engineer. Should an exception be made allowing cable to be run outside of conduit, contractor shall provide appropriate plenum rated cable for approval by Engineer and Theatrical Systems Manufacturers.
4. Network cable runs shall be continuous. Cable splicing will not be acceptable.



- a. All network cable runs must be confirmed. Lengths exceeding 75M shall be identified and run with fiber optic cable.

## 2.4 WIRING DEVICES

- A. Provide Theatrical systems receptacles and other required wiring devices, complete with associated hardware and wall plates, as specified below. Verify cover plate finish color with The Commissioner.
  1. Theatrical AV System isolated ground receptacle
    - a. AV System isolated ground receptacles shall be colored orange.
    - b. Provide cover plate labeled "SOUND SYSTEM ISOLATED GROUND" with labeling identifying panelboard and breaker number feeding receptacle.
    - c. Edison/Straight Blade Receptacle Types
      - 1) Duplex 20 Amp 120V isolated ground Edison receptacles shall be standard NEMA 5-20R configuration, 2-pole, 3-wire.
        - a) Receptacles shall be Hubbell IG5362, or approved equal.
  2. Provide Theatrical Lighting system receptacles and other required wiring devices, complete with associated hardware and wall plates, as specified below and shown on Electrical drawings.
    - a. Theatrical lighting system power receptacles
      - 1) Quad receptacles shall be standard NEMA 5-20R configuration, 20A/120V 2-pole, 3-wire.
      - 2) Receptacle shall be colored gray.
      - 3) Receptacle shall be fed from Lighting Systems power panel board as shown on drawings.
      - 4) Receptacles shall be Hubbell or equal.

## 2.5 COMPANY SWITCHES AND RECEPTACLES

- A. Theatrical Systems Company Switch disconnect(s) shall be provided by Lighting System Integrator as described herein and as shown on Electrical drawings.
- B. Theatrical lighting company switch
  1. Company Switch shall be suitable for 120/208V operation.
  2. Company Switch shall be installed and wired by this Electrical Contractor as required.

## PART 3 EXECUTION



### 3.1 THEATRICAL LIGHTING SYSTEMS CONTROL CABLE

- A. Theatrical Lighting Systems Ethernet network shall be Category 5E UTP /100Base TX cabling installed in accordance with all applicable standards including but not limited to IEEE 802.3u standard.
  - 1. Cable runs between hubs shall not exceed 75 meters. Contractor shall verify run lengths prior to installation.
  - 2. No splices. No exceptions.
  - 3. Contractor shall provide field installation reports verifying that cable installations comply with specifications.
- B. Termination of all control cabling shall be undertaken only under the direct supervision of Theatrical Lighting Manufacturer's authorized field service personnel.

### 3.2 THEATRICAL AUDIO VIDEO SYSTEMS RACEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. General: proceed as directed under all related sections of Division 26, and as directed below. Should any requirements conflict, the most stringent condition shall apply.
- B. Rigid Conduit, Steel Electrical Metallic Tubing.
  - 1. All Theatrical Audio Video Systems empty conduit has been sized according to the wire and cable manufacturer's guidelines, based on full use of the maximum "40% fill" area of each conduit, per the NEC.
  - 2. Provide ¾" minimum conduit size.
  - 3. Provide a complete, continuous and clean conduit system, as indicated on the drawings, including all conduits, conduit supporting means, all electrical boxes and enclosures, etc., and all connections to terminal cabinets, pull boxes, and AV panels and receptacles.
  - 4. Provide separate and independent conduit systems for Theatrical Audio Video Systems wire and cable of the following different wiring/conduit groups, as shown on the drawings, without exception:
    - a. Group A - Microphone & Line Level Audio
    - b. Group B - Video & RF Level
    - c. Group C - Communication & Control Level
    - d. Group D - Loudspeaker Level
    - e. Group E - Spare (empty conduit only)
  - 5. Maintain minimum separation required between Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit groups, and between all Theatrical Audio Video Systems, production lighting system control, and AC power conduit as indicated in the separation schedules below.



6. All conduit must be clean and free of burrs, nicks, etc. Ream all conduit ends to prevent damage to cables.
7. Provide a pull box for any conduit run which is greater than 100' or which requires more than two 90-degree bends.
8. Provide nylon pull cord in all conduit runs, point to point.
9. All conduit and boxes shall be bonded to the building safety ground as required.
10. All conduit shall be electrically isolated from Theatrical Audio Video Systems equipment racks to maintain the integrity of the sound system technical isolated ground system. Mechanical conduit connections to equipment racks shall be made with non-conductive fittings.
11. The following conduit installation precautions shall be taken to prevent and guard against electro-magnetic interference (EMI), radio frequency interference (RFI), and electro-static interference:
  - a. AV conduit shall not be run through any electrical distribution or transformer rooms, lighting dimmer rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, backstage or engineering "shops," telephone or communication rooms, and computer rooms. No exceptions.
  - b. Do not install AV conduit near devices and conduit for incandescent light dimmers, high-density architectural or theatrical dimming systems, and fluorescent or vapor lamp fixtures (including separate lamps and remoted ballasts).
  - c. Do not install AV conduit directly parallel and adjacent to any AC power conduit. No exceptions.
  - d. Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduits may only cross AC power conduit at 90-degrees. No exceptions.
  - e. Minimum Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit separation distances shall be considered most important for all conduit runs over fifty (50) feet. In some instances Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit and other conduit may, by necessity, need to be installed closer than the distances indicated on the Theatrical Audio Video Systems Conduit Separation Schedule. In these cases, the length of closely spaced conduit shall be kept to an absolute minimum, and the frequency of these close spacings in a single run of conduit shall be kept to an absolute minimum. In particular, AV Systems conduit shall not run parallel to any AC power conduit.
  - f. Note: For example, if "Group A – Microphone & Line Level Audio" conduit is installed in close proximity to AC power feeder conduit in five locations of 10' each over a total run of 200', the resulting 50' of potential interference in the microphone conduit shall be considered unacceptable.
12. When it is physically impossible to maintain the minimum conduit separation distances for Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit, the following special measures shall be taken to ensure adequate shielding from electro-magnetic and radio frequency interference:



- a. For below grade slab conduit runs where the distance between any Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit (only) is less than the specified minimum, rigid steel (GRS) conduit shall be substituted for the full run of each affected Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit.
- b. For below grade slab conduit runs where the distance between any Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit and any AC Power conduit is less than the specified minimum, rigid steel (GRS) conduit shall be substituted for the full run of each affected Theatrical Audio Video Systems conduit and AC power conduit which is less than the minimum.

### 3.3 THEATRICAL AUDIO VIDEO SYSTEMS PULL BOXES

- A. Provide NEMA Type 1 Theatrical Audio Video Systems pull boxes as necessary in accordance with the NEC and as indicated on the drawings. Pull boxes shall be provided in accessible areas with removable screw cover.
- B. Theatrical Audio Video Systems pull boxes may be provided as follows:
  1. Provide separate, individual pull boxes for each AV Systems wiring/conduit group.
  2. Provide one pull box with full size, removable barriers for each AV Systems wiring/conduit group.
  3. Pull boxes shall be sized to accommodate the quantity of conduits indicated, per NEC requirements.
  4. Pull boxes shall be installed so as to allow complete pulls of AV Systems wire and cable without break or splice.

### 3.4 THEATRICAL AUDIO VIDEO SYSTEMS ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

- A. General: Proceed as directed under all related sections of Division 26, and as directed below.
  1. Provide a coordinated system of labeling and identification for the AV system empty conduit and outlet box system.
  2. Individual pull cords in conduits shall be clearly and securely tagged at each end with an indelible legend indicating the conduit group and destination of the specific run.

### 3.5 THEATRICAL AUDIO VIDEO SYSTEMS ISOLATED TECHNICAL GROUND

- A. All components of the AV Systems shall be connected to an independent isolated technical ground. The AV Systems isolated technical ground shall originate separately at the building main service ground and connect through the isolation transformer directly to an insulated ground bus in the main AC power distribution panel.



- B. The AV Systems isolated technical ground and the building safety ground must only be connected at this one point.
- C. The isolated technical ground must not be connected to conduit, neutral, water pipes or other ground sources. Establishing the AV Systems isolated technical ground by connection to steel frame structural members will not be acceptable.
- D. The AV Systems isolated technical ground shall be established in a star configuration which radiates out from the distribution panel to insulated ground busses located at each technical power panelboard and then to uninsulated busses bonded to each equipment rack and to individual isolated ground power receptacles.
- E. All AV Systems isolated technical ground conductors must be insulated, stranded copper cable sized to provide an impedance of 0.1 ohms or less between any point in the system and the main service entrance ground. Provide 3/0 AWG stranded copper welding cable for all isolated ground busbar conductors.
- F. All cable splices must be fully insulated.
- G. All conductors must be contained within metallic conduit.
- H. Each AV Systems equipment rack will be bonded to an internal uninsulated copper busbar provided by Division 11. Where more than one rack forms a group, the busbar from each rack shall be bonded together at one central rack and then connected to the isolated ground conductor to maintain the star configuration. Physically ganging equipment racks together shall not be an acceptable method of bonding to the AV Systems isolated technical ground.
- I. All conduits and raceways entering equipment racks must be insulated from the racks with insulated couplings. All equipment racks must be insulated from the floor and situated so as to not come in contact with any ground items during normal operations.
- J. When the Theatrical Audio Video Systems isolated technical ground is complete, the Division 26 contractor must prove that it is not grounded at any other point than the main service entry panel. With the power to the system switched off, the contractor shall disconnect the isolated technical ground from the technical ground busbar at the main distribution panel. At this point, an open circuit (greater than 1-megaohm) must be measurable between the AV Systems isolated technical ground and the building safety ground.
- K. Isolated Ground Receptacles
  - 1. All power receptacles for AV Systems use shall be isolated ground type with an insulated ground wire. Color of receptacle shall be orange. Type as specified herein or as determined by Electrical Engineer.
  - 2. Power receptacles within racks shall have insulated ground conductors connected to the AV Systems isolated technical ground bus in each rack.



- 3. Individual isolated ground power receptacles shall have insulated ground conductors connected to the AV Systems isolated technical ground bus in the branch circuit panelboard from which they are fed.

**3.6 THEATRICAL AUDIO SYSTEMS EMERGENCY MUTING FROM LIFE SAFETY SYSTEM**

- A. Provide relay contact closure from the life safety system to the Theatrical AV Systems equipment rack. Relay closure shall cause all loudspeaker circuits and other selected audio circuits to be on during "normal" conditions, and muted during "emergency" conditions.
- B. Provide all wiring from the main life safety control center to the equipment racks located in the Theatre control room. Provide relay and switching devices and all incidental materials in order to provide the AV Contractor with a normally open dry contact closure for connection to the loudspeaker mute circuits. Refer to Theatrical AV Systems Drawings.

**3.7 THEATRICAL AUDIO VIDEO SYSTEMS CONDUIT ADJACENCY SCHEDULES**

- A. Conduits serving Theatrical AV Systems wiring groups, as defined herein and on the Theatrical AV System drawings, shall be separated from conduits serving other uses according to the following schedule:

B.

<b>Wiring Group in Conduit</b>	<b>Group A</b>	<b>Group B</b>	<b>Group C</b>	<b>Group D</b>	<b>Group E</b>
Electronic Dimmer-Controlled Lighting or Other Electronically Switched Power Services	36"	12"	12"	6"	36"
Convenience Outlet Power Service	12"	6"	6"	Adjacent	12"
All Other Power Services	18"	6"	6"	Adjacent	18"

END OF SECTION 26 55 61



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

*ISSUE PROJECT ROOM*

Theatrical Systems Electrical Requirements  
265561 - 12



**SECTION 26 61 11**

**PERFORMANCE DIMMING AND CONTROL**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**1.2 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Materials, components, modifications, assemblies, equipment and services as specified herein. These include, but are not limited to:
  - 1. Verification of site dimensions and conditions
  - 2. Submittal as required by the Contract Documents
  - 3. Engineering of equipment and systems as required by the Contract Documents
  - 4. Manufacture of equipment and systems as required by the Contract Documents
  - 5. Scheduling, sequencing and coordination with other trades
  - 6. Installation and supervision for equipment and systems specified herein and elsewhere in the Contract Documents
  - 7. Testing and demonstration of equipment and systems as specified herein and elsewhere in the Contract Documents
- B. Distributed Dimming Strips
- C. House / Work light control system
- D. Data communications devices
- E. Performance lighting distribution and control faceplates

**1.3 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the manufacture of Performance Lighting Dimming and Control System and accessories required for visual masking, and theatrical effect in the following spaces:
  - 1. Issue Project Room
- B. The extent of performance dimming and control is indicated by drawings and schedules.

**1.4 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Division 11: Equipment



B. Division 26: Electrical

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Publication: National Electrical Code, NFPA 70.
- B. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL) Standards:
  - 1. UL498, Electrical Attachment Plugs and Receptacles
  - 2. UL508, Electrical Industrial Control Equipment
  - 3. UL891, Dead-front Electrical Switchboards
  - 4. UL1573, Stage and Studio Lighting
- C. ANSI E1.20 – 2006 Entertainment Technology--Remote Device Management over USITT DMX512.
- D. ANSI E1.24 – 2006 Entertainment Technology--Dimensional Requirements for Stage Pin Connectors.
- E. E1.17 – 2006 Entertainment Technology - Architecture for Control Networks.
- F. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.:
  - 1. Standard: 802.3
  - 2. Standard: 802.11 b or g

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. All submittals shall be in accordance with General and Special Conditions. All submittals shall be submitted in a timely manner, allowing sufficient time for adequate review and possible re-submittal without jeopardizing the project schedule.
- B. Shop drawings
  - 1. Shop drawings shall be submitted within ninety (90) days of award of contract, unless otherwise indicated in DDC General Conditions
  - 2. Drawings for fabrication and installation of all products; Drawings will show all information necessary to explain fully the design features, appearance, function, fabrication, installation and use of system components in all phases of operation.
  - 3. Fabrication Installation, and Erection shall not commence until shop drawings have been approved by the Commissioner and the Theatre Consultant
  - 4. All sheets in the submittal shall be of the same size
  - 5. Submittals shall include a title sheet listing all sheets in the submittal.



6. Submittal shall include a complete bill of materials showing all items being supplied by the manufacturer and or supplier.
- C. Commissioning Documentation:
  1. Certificates from the manufacturer's field engineer stating the installed system is operating properly and complies with manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. Schedules of all tested and certified Ethernet cable run lengths.
- D. Record Drawings and Maintenance Manuals.
  1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals shall include:
    - a. Contact information for pertinent manufacturers
    - b. Safety and Operational Instructions
    - c. Complete parts and subassembly list
    - d. Software version information
    - e. Wiring diagrams and termination schedules
    - f. Periodic Maintenance Schedule
    - g. A maintenance procedure for finishes
    - h. Certificates of compliance with applicable codes
    - i. Records of final testing and log
    - j. Spare parts list and source information
    - k. Provide the above in Universal electronic format files; PDF file type is preferred, as full size printable sheets. Submit files on standard USB 2.0 flash drive, clearly labeled including project name, project commissioner, theatre consultant, contractor name, date of submittal
- E. Include diagrams depicting the system layout and interconnections. Reduced size, 11" x 17" preferred, hardcopy prints.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver equipment and controls securely wrapped in factory fabricated wooden or fiberboard containers.
- B. Handle equipment and controls carefully to prevent breakage, denting and scoring finish. Do not install damaged equipment and controls; replace and return damaged units to equipment manufacturer.
- C. Storage and Protection: All equipment shall be stored in a secure, environmentally controlled location. No equipment shall be placed until that location is substantially completed, free from construction dust and "broom clean". Store in original cartons and protect from dirt, physical damage, weather, and construction traffic.
- D. Acceptance at Site: Contractor shall accept and inventory all equipment upon delivery and provide copies of the inventory to the commissioner.



## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Contractor is to verify all dimensions as they relate to requirements of the specification and manufacturer's requirements, and is to notify the Commissioner of any variations, which would affect the installation and safe operation of the systems.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. The manufacturer of the stage lighting and control equipment shall warranty the Electrical Distribution, Dimming and Control equipment to be free from defects of material or workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of acceptance. During the period of this warranty, equipment, which proves to be defective, shall be repaired or replaced within thirty (30) days at no charge to the City of New York. Unauthorized local repairs of the equipment during the warranty period shall relieve the manufacturer of its responsibilities under the warranty.

## 1.10 WARRANTY SERVICE

- A. Extra Materials:
  - 1. Provide one (1) of each type of control electronics module.
  - 2. Provide one (1) spare module for each type of power module provided.
- B. Warranty Service: Provide warranty service for a period of one (1) year after final acceptance of the installation. This service shall cover parts and labor. This service consists of at least two (2) half-yearly visits to the site for checking and adjusting of equipment. Perform the first visit six (6) months after the system has been accepted.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS AND CONTRACTORS

- A. The manufacturer providing the material or equipment specified in this section must, for the past five (5) years, have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of material or equipment similar in type to that required for this Project. Such similar material or equipment provided by the manufacturer must have been in satisfactory service for not less than five (5) years.
- B. The contractor or subcontractor performing the work of this section must, within the last five (5) consecutive years prior to the bid opening, have successfully completed in a timely fashion at least three (3) projects similar in scope and type to the required work.
- C. In addition, the contractor or subcontractor must be licensed or approved by the manufacturer.
- D. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide the dimming and control systems from components (except where otherwise stated) that are the products of one of the approved manufacturers:
  - 1. Electronic Theatre Controls, Middleton, WI ([www.etconnect.com](http://www.etconnect.com))
  - 2. Strand Lighting, Dallas, TX ([www.strandlighting.com](http://www.strandlighting.com))



3. ADB Lighting Technologies, Zaventem, Belgium ([www.adblighting.com](http://www.adblighting.com))
  4. Or approved equal
- E. Contractors: Subject to compliance with the requirements, the following are acceptable contractors:
1. Barbizon ([www.barbizon.com](http://www.barbizon.com))
  2. 4Wall ([www.4wall.com](http://www.4wall.com))
  3. Shadowstone ([www.shadowstone.com](http://www.shadowstone.com))
  4. Young Equipment Sales ([www.younequipmentsales.com](http://www.younequipmentsales.com))
  5. Or approved equal

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE DIMMER STRIP

### A. General

1. The dimming system shall be fully digital and designed specifically for entertainment lighting applications, and shall consist of portable or permanently mounted dimmer strips as specified on the system drawings and this specification.
2. The dimming system shall have the ability to switch between forward and reverse phase dimming control on a dimmer by dimmer basis without the use of any external devices.
3. System setup and preset data shall, as standard, be fully user programmable.

### B. Mechanical.

1. Each dimmer strip shall be formed of cold-rolled steel sections. Exterior surfaces shall be finished in fine-textured, scratch-resistant powder coat paint. Interior surfaces shall have a corrosion-resistant finish.
2. Dimmer strips shall be 6 inches (152.4 mm) high X 4 inches (101.6 mm) deep by 72 inches (1,828.8 mm) long and weigh 38.5 lbs (17.5kg)
3. The dimming system shall meet or exceed FCC 'Class A' standards for RFI/EMI emissions.
4. A variety of hangers shall be available to mount the dimmer strips to rigging systems, walls or catwalks. Two (2) standard C-clamps per unit shall be provided.
5. The system shall be ETL and cETL marked.

### C. Installation.

1. The dimmer strip shall be factory pre-wired and dressed. The contractor shall provide and terminate feed wiring on screw terminals fitted within the raceway.
2. All terminations and internal wiring shall be accessible via a removable front cover panel. The Processor Module shall be accessible for programming at all time.



3. Mounting brackets for wall mount and attachments for a wide range of rigging systems shall be provided as specified.
- D. Electrical.
1. The power efficiency of each dimmer channel shall be greater than 97% at full load. Voltage drop shall not exceed 2.5 volts.
  2. The system ground shall be made at a grounding lug in the raceway termination area.
  3. All equipment shall be ETL listed.
- E. System Electronics Module.
1. Each self-contained dimming system shall include a processor with six push buttons and an LCD display, used to set the DMX512 device address, execute self-test diagnostics and to select special operating modes. Functions provided shall include:
    - a. DMX Address - Used to display and update the DMX512 start address for that unit.
    - b. Systems Status - Used to display dimmer status, number of dimmers present, and the installed firmware version.
    - c. Dimmer Status - Used to display dimmers operational level, temperature, line voltage, connected load and dimmer status.
    - d. Dimmer Options - Used to display and change dimmer modes (Reverse Phase Control, Forward Phase Control, Non-Dim and LED), set the output voltage, transition time setup, dimmer curves and preheat options.
    - e. System Configuration - Used to display and select DMX512 hold times, power-up presets and power-up hold settings.
    - f. Select Preset - Used to select a preset.
    - g. Edit Presets - Used to select and record presets numbers and dimmer levels.
    - h. Menu Configuration - Used to configure LCD backlight and contrast settings as well as the processor password.
- F. Processor Control and Communications.
1. The control electronics shall provide the following control and communication inputs as standard
    - a. One optically isolated DMX512 control input and feed thru.
- G. Dimmers
1. The dimmers shall use IGBTs (Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistors) to regulate and control load voltage. Dimmers using hard-switching semiconductor devices, such as SCRs, triacs or other thyristors, shall not be acceptable. The dimmers shall not use filter chokes to control the rate of rise in the load current waveform.
  2. Each dimmer strip shall contain three dual dimmer modules with each module containing two dimmers. Each dimmer module shall be fully rated at 2.4kW. The 2.4kW rating of the module may be split evenly across both dimmers at 1.2kW, used on a single dimmer at



2.4kW or any combination of loads on either dimmer that does not exceed 2.4kW per module.

3. Dimmer electronics shall be completely solid state.
4. The dimmers shall be immune from damage caused by output short-circuits between load and neutral or load and ground.

H. Dimmer Performance.

1. The insertion loss (voltage drop across the complete dimmer at full load current while producing a full output sine wave) shall be less than three volts RMS. Insertion loss at reduced dimmer loading shall not vary significantly from that produced with a full rated load. Dimmers with insertion loss greater than three volts RMS at full rated load shall not be acceptable.
2. The dimmers shall use Digital Power Envelope Processing to regulate dimmer output to within +/- 0.5 volts RMS of the assigned setting. Regulating response shall occur in the same power line cycle as the disturbance when the dimmer is in Reverse Phase Control (RPC) mode.
3. Dimmer Modules shall automatically switch from Reverse Phase Control (RPC) mode to Forward Phase Control (FPC) mode when inductive loads are detected. In RPC mode the dimmer is on from the beginning of the half-cycle until the desired output voltage is reached. In FPC mode, the dimmer turns on within the half-cycle and stays on until the end of the half-cycle. Use of RPC mode, when load type and other conditions permit, reduces the level of lamp filament noise.
4. The system shall also support a low harmonics mode that shall reduce harmonic currents present on the feed neutral conductor by automatically switching the dimmers in the system to an optimum configuration of FPC and RPC operation. The reduction in neutral current shall be a minimum of 33% with a maximum of 100%, depending upon load sizes and their associated levels.
5. Dimmer output voltage transition time shall be measured in "fall time". The actual "fall time" generated shall not be affected by the size of the load present. Dimmers shall provide a minimum fall time of 1000  $\mu$ S under normal load current regardless of load in either Reverse Phase Control (RPC) mode or Forward Phase Control (FPC) mode
6. The dimmer shall comply with the industry standard Square Law dimming curve within a tolerance of +/- 0.5 Volts RMS for all incandescent loads.
7. Each dimmer shall have an associated Focus push button that provides local on/off/level control for focusing, maintenance and other purposes. If the level set for a dimmer is zero, tapping the Focus button shall set the dimmer output to full. Pressing and holding the Focus button shall ramp the dimmer output up to any intermediate level. When a non-zero level is received from the control console, the dimmer shall return to normal operation. Tapping the Focus button a second time shall also return the dimmer to normal operation. If a dimmer already has a non-zero level from the control console, the Focus button flashes the dimmer to full output.



- 8. Each dimmer will detect operating conditions and take active measures to protect itself (and the load). Protective measures shall include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Each dimmer shall detect excessive heat sink operating temperatures and notify the operator via the LCD display. If heat continues to rise, the dimmer will shut down and flash its LEDs.
  - b. Each dimmer shall detect load current in excess of its own rating. An overload will cause a dimmer to shut down and flash its locally mounted LEDs.

I. Signage

- 1. Provide signage on the back of the dimmer stick with the following attributes:
  - a. Material 1/8" black Lamiacoid.
  - b. Finish: black with white fill.
  - c. Engraving: 3/8" high characters with non-yellowing white fill.
  - d. Indicate the following on the sign:

Project:	Project Name
Theatre Consultant:	ARUP
Manufacturer:	Company Name
	City, State, and Service Telephone Number.

J. Quantities

- 1. Provide total of fifteen (15) Dimmer Strip units

2.3 HOUSE/WORK LIGHT CONTROL SYSTEM

A. General:

- 1. Provide an integrated House/Work Light Control system. The system is capable of controlling performance, and house lighting dimmers and work lighting relays through local and master control stations.
- 2. System controls dimmers over DMX-512 data communications protocol.
- 3. House/Work Light Controls and Control Console have simultaneous "pile on" control of dimmers and relays as shown on the Drawings.
- 4. System is programmable using a personal computer.
- 5. User interface is through pushbutton and or LCD touchscreen control stations, or through portable touchscreen devices that connect to the system via port in the performance space or control rack.

B. Standard Operating Features:

- 1. Control system allows cross fading between presets within each of multiple rooms.
- 2. Presets can mirror between stations.



3. System parameters are user configurable. These parameters include but are not limited to current date, current time, dimmer type, high level limit, control station name, preset names, presets, mirror designation, lockout modes, dimmer assignments per channel, preset master names, station numbers, channel levels, and station names.
4. System accepts dry closures from external sources. Closures shall be momentary alternate action turning channels or presets on or off.
5. Fade times on each preset are adjustable from 0 - 999 seconds.
6. Preset masters are available to control groups of presets throughout the system.
7. Preset masters shall also provide "template" ability whereby station activation or control parameters maybe changed.
8. System provides disk storage of configuration and lighting data.
9. Provide Architectural lighting program to City of New York for future changes to system configuration.

## 2.4 BUTTON AND FADER STATIONS

### A. Mechanical

1. Button stations shall operate using up to ten programmable buttons.
2. All button stations shall be available with white, cream, ivory, gray or black faceplates, and buttons.
  - a. Manufacturer's standard colors shall conform to the RAL CLASSIC Standard.
3. Stations shall have indicator lights at each button or fader.
  - a. Indicators shall be comprised of red, green and blue LED's
  - b. Indicator color and state (steady On, Blink, Off) shall be configured in software, and shall operate relative to the button or fader it is associated with.
4. All faceplates shall be designed for flush or surface mounting.
5. Station faceplates shall be constructed of ABS plastic and shall use no visible means of attachment.
6. Station faceplates shall be indelibly marked for each button or fader function.
7. The manufacturer shall supply back boxes for flush mounted half gang stations and for all surface mounted stations.
8. All Button stations shall be shall be designed to accept the infrared signal from a remote hand held IR transmitter.
  - a. The stations shall have a 60° reception angle and shall operate reliably within a 45' distance.



9. IR Transmitters shall be available in five or ten button configurations.
  - a. IR transmitters shall be mounted in a hand-held black plastic controller.
  - b. Transmitter dimensions shall be 1.875" wide, 6.625" long and 0.60" deep.

B. Electrical

1. Control station wiring shall be an Echelon® Link power network.
  - a. Link power shall utilize low-voltage Class II unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit).
  - b. Network wiring may be bus, loop, home run, star or any combination of these.
  - c. Wiring termination connectors shall be provided with all stations.
2. Button Stations shall offer the following Regular markings
  - a. UL and cUL LISTED
  - b. CE Market
  - c. RHoS and WEE Compliant

C. Functional

1. The control system shall be designed to allow control of lighting and associated systems via Button, Button/Fader, and Interface or Astronomical time clock controls. System shall allow the programming of presets, sequences, macros and time clock events.
  - a. System presets shall be programmable via Button stations, Touchscreen stations, and the system software.
    - 1) Presets shall have a discrete fade time, programmable from 0 to 999 seconds with a resolution of one millisecond.
    - 2) Presets shall be selectable via button, fader, IR transmitter, time clock event, macro activation or switch interface stations.
  - b. System macros and sequences shall be programmable via the system software.
    - 1) Macro and sequence steps shall provide user selectable steps, and allow the application of conditional logic.
    - 2) Macro and sequences shall be activated by button, time clock event or the system software.
  - c. System time clock events shall be programmable via the system software, the processor user interface, or the internal web server.
    - 1) Time clock events shall be assigned to system day types. Standard day types include: any day, weekday, weekend, Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. System shall support programming of additional custom or special day types.



- 2) Time clock events shall be activated based on sunrise, sunset, time of day or periodic event. System shall automatically compensate for regions using a fully configurable daylight saving time.
2. Control components shall be designed to operate default or custom system functions. Components shall operate default functions unless re-assigned via system software-based configuration program.
    - a. Optional button functions include: preset selection, manual mode activation, record mode activation, station lockout, raise, lower, macro activation, or room join/separate.
    - b. Optional fader functions include manual master control, individual zone control, fade rate control or preset master control.
  3. Stations (Button and Button/Fader) shall allow programming of station and component electronic lockout levels via the system software.

D. Fader Stations

1. Mechanical

- a. Fader Stations shall operate using up to sixteen programmable faders and twelve programmable buttons.
- b. All fader stations shall be available with white, cream, ivory, gray or black faceplates, fader knobs, and buttons.
  - 1) Manufacturer's standard colors shall conform to the RAL CLASSIC Standard.
- c. Fader stations shall utilize standard 45-millimeter slide potentiometers.
- d. Stations shall have indicator lights at each button or fader.
  - 1) Indicators shall be comprised of red, green and blue LED's
  - 2) Indicator color and state (steady On, Blink, Off) shall be configured in software, and shall operate relative to the button or fader it is associated with.
- e. All faceplates shall be designed for flush or surface mounting.
- f. Station faceplates shall be constructed of ABS plastic and shall use no visible means of attachment.
- g. Station faceplates shall be indelibly marked for each button or fader function.
- h. The manufacturer shall supply back boxes for flush mounted half gang stations and for all surface mounted stations.
- i. Fader stations shall be designed to accept the infrared signal from a remote hand held IR transmitter.
  - 1) The stations shall have a 60° reception angle and shall operate reliably within a 45' distance.
- j. IR Transmitters shall be available in five or ten button configurations.
  - 1) IR transmitters shall be mounted in a hand-held black plastic controller.
  - 2) Transmitter dimensions shall be 1.875" wide, 6.625" long and 0.60" deep.



2. Electrical

- a. The control station wiring shall be an Echelon® Link power network.
  - 1) Link power shall utilize low-voltage Class II unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit).
  - 2) Touchscreen and Interface stations shall also require (2) #16 AWG stranded wires for 24Vdc operating power. 24Vdc wiring shall be topology free.
  - 3) Network wiring may be bus, loop, home run, star or any combination of these.
  - 4) Wiring termination connectors shall be provided with all stations.
- b. Fader Stations shall offer the following Regular markings
  - 1) UL and cUL LISTED
  - 2) CE Market
  - 3) RHoS and WEE Compliant

3. Functional

- a. The control system shall be designed to allow control of lighting and associated systems via Button, Button/Fader, and Interface, or Astronomical time clock controls. System shall allow the programming of presets, sequences, macros and time clock events.
  - 1) System presets shall be programmable via Button, Button/Fader, Touchscreen, or The system software.
    - a) Presets shall have a discrete fade time, programmable from zero to 1,000 hours with a resolution of one millisecond.
    - b) Presets shall be selectable via button, fader, IR transmitter, time clock event, macro activation or switch interface stations.
  - 2) System macros and sequences shall be programmable via system software.
    - a) Macro and sequence steps shall provide user selectable steps, and allow the application of conditional logic.
    - b) Macro and sequences shall be activated by button, time clock event or the system software.



- 1) System time clock events shall be programmable via The system system software, the processor user interface, or the internal web server.
  - a) Time clock events shall be assigned to system day types. Standard day types include: any day, weekday, weekend, Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. System shall support programming of additional custom or special day types.
  - b) Time clock events shall be activated based on sunrise, sunset, time of day or periodic event. System shall automatically compensate for regions using a fully configurable daylight saving time.
- b. Control components shall be designed to operate default or custom system functions. Components shall operate default functions unless re-assigned via the software-based configuration program.
  - 1) Optional button functions include: preset selection, manual mode activation, record mode activation, station lockout, raise, lower, macro activation, or room join/separate.
  - 2) Optional fader functions include manual master control, individual zone control, fade rate control or preset master control.
- c. Stations (Button and Button/Fader) shall allow programming of station and component electronic lockout levels via System software.

E. Portable Plug-in Stations

1. Mechanical

- a. The connector stations shall provide an interface to portable stations.
- b. All connector stations shall be available with white, cream, ivory, gray or black faceplates.
- c. Manufacturer's standard colors shall conform to the RAL CLASSIC Standard.
- d. All faceplates shall be designed for flush or surface mounting.
- e. Station faceplates shall be constructed of ABS plastic and shall use no visible means of attachment.
- f. Station faceplates shall be indelibly marked with station function.
- g. The manufacturer shall supply back boxes for all surface mounted stations.

2. Electrical

- a. The control station wiring shall be an Echelon® Link power network.
  - 1) Link power shall utilize low-voltage Class II unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit).
  - 2) Portable plug-in stations shall also require (2) #16 AWG stranded wires for 24Vdc operating power. 24Vdc wiring shall be topology free.



- 3) Network wiring may be bus, loop, home run, star or any combination of these.
  - 4) Wiring termination connectors shall be provided with all stations.
  - b. Portable Plug-in Stations shall offer the following Regular markings
    - 1) UL and cUL LISTED
    - 2) CE Market
    - 3) RHoS and WEE Compliant
3. Functional
- a. The control system shall be designed to allow control of lighting and associated systems via Button, Button/Fader, and Interface or Astronomical time clock controls. System shall allow the programming of presets, sequences, macros and time clock events.
    - 1) System presets shall be programmable via Button, Button/Fader, Touchscreen, or system software.
      - a) Presets shall have a discrete fade time, programmable from zero to 1,000 hours with a resolution of one millisecond.
      - b) Presets shall be selectable via button, fader, IR transmitter, time clock event, macro activation or switch interface stations.
    - 2) System macros and sequences shall be programmable via system software.
      - a) Macro and sequence steps shall provide user selectable steps, and allow the application of conditional logic.
      - b) Macro and sequences shall be activated by button, time clock event or system software.
    - 3) System time clock events shall be programmable via system software, the processor user interface, or the internal web server.
      - a) Time clock events shall be assigned to system day types. Standard day types include: any day, weekday, weekend, Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. System shall support programming of additional custom or special day types.
      - b) Time clock events shall be activated based on sunrise, sunset, time of day or periodic event. System shall automatically compensate for regions using a fully configurable daylight saving time.
  - b. Control components shall be designed to operate default or custom system functions. Components shall operate default functions unless re-assigned via the software-based configuration program.



- 1) Optional button functions include: preset selection, manual mode activation, record mode activation, station lockout, raise, lower, macro activation, or room join/separate.
- 2) Optional fader functions include manual master control, individual zone control, fade rate control or preset master control.

F. Locking Covers

1. Mechanical

- a. Locking covers shall be available in Sliding Locking for flush mount applications and Hinged Locking for flush and surface mount applications
- b. Sliding Locking Covers shall:
  - 1) Be available with white, cream, ivory, gray or black faceplates.
  - 2) Be constructed of Extruded Aluminum with ABS plastic end caps
  - 3) Provide a smoked Plexiglas window to allow for viewing control status and use of IR remote without opening cover
- c. Hinged locking covers shall:
  - 1) Be available in standard black powder coat finish
  - 2) Be constructed of 18 gauge steel and finished in standard black powder coat paint, or custom color as specified.
  - 3) Provide a clear Plexiglas window to allow for viewing control status and use of IR remote without opening cover
  - 4) Use internal Hinge that is not accessible when the cover is closed
- d. Standard colors shall conform to the RAL CLASSIC Standard.
- e. Locking covers of the same type shall be keyed alike
- f. The manufacturer shall supply back boxes for all hinged locking covers.

2. Functional

- a. All locking covers shall utilize 90-degree locking mechanisms
  - 1) Keys shall be held captive in locks when covers are unlocked.
- b. Locking covers shall allow for easy viewing of system status without opening the cover
- c. Locking covers shall support IR remote activation of configured system functions without opening door

2.5 DIGITAL ROOM CONTROLLERS

A. General

1. Digital Room Controllers for lighting and pluggable loads shall be the Echo Room Controller by ETC, Inc., or equal.



B. Mechanical

1. Room Controllers shall be constructed by 16AWG steel and finished in a black fine-texture powder paint.
2. The Room Controller shall be no larger than 9" x 12" x 3.5" for four (4) zone models or 14" x 12" x 3.5" for eight (8) zone models.
3. Room Controllers shall support wall and ceiling mounting, including installation in Plenum air return spaces.
4. A removable with dead front cover shall be mechanically fastened using by four (4) screws.
  - a. An optional cover with support for mounting an EchoConnect Time Clock shall also be available.
5. An internal safety cover made of bent 16AWG steel shall prevent access to all line voltage (class1) wiring and components without limiting access to low voltage terminations, changing settings during commissioning, or manual control of relays.
6. Room Controllers shall support onboard configuration without the use of software.
  - a. A 16 position rotary switch shall assign zones to a space. Spaces one (1) thru sixteen (16) shall be available.
  - b. A sixteen (16) position rotary switch shall assign a starting zone number of the room controller. Additional zones will be assigned sequentially thereafter.
  - c. The Room controller shall support an input for use in UL 924 Emergency Systems.
    - 1) A dry contact input shall provide triggering of an emergency condition.
    - 2) A three (3) position switch shall set the input as Normally Open (NO) Normally Closed (NC), or Off.
    - 3) Load shedding shall be supported via a two position switch per zone that includes or excludes each zone from the UL924 input.
  - d. The Room Controller shall support a Demand Response input to automatically reduce overall power consumption.
    - 1) A dry contact input shall be supported to trigger the demand response condition.
    - 2) A single rotary dial shall be available for each to set the maximum trim level when the input is active.
  - e. The Room Controller shall support a dry contact input to trigger an AV preset input:
    - 1) A two (2) position switch shall provide selection of momentary or maintained.
  - f. Room controllers shall provide station bus power for six control station. The Station power:
    - 1) A two (2) position switch shall allow the internal station bus power supply to be disabled when multiple controllers or external power supplies are used.



- g. All configuration buttons shall be fully accessible when the Controller is mounted and the front panel is removed.
- 7. MicroSD shall be supported for the purpose of software upgrades.
- 8. Room Controllers shall provide the following LED indicators:
  - a. UL924 Active (green)
  - b. Demand Response Active (green)
  - c. A/V input active (green)
  - d. Station Power Supply Active (green)

C. Electrical

- 1. Power Input shall support 120-277 Volts AC 47-63Hz for control electronics and each independent zone.
- 2. A voltage barrier shall be available to separate normal and emergency circuits or lighting and plug loads when combined in a single controller. The barrier shall be constructed of 94-V-0 plastic.
- 3. All Room Controllers shall provide a 20 Ampere, fully rated, normally open relay for each output.
- 4. 0-10V dimming output shall support 0-10V sink control rated for 100mA per output.
- 5. Room Controllers shall support EchoConnect control communications using Class II wiring:
  - a. The control network shall utilize unshielded twisted pair, Belden 8471 or equivalent wire, plus one (1) #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit). Use of Category 5, or better, control network wiring shall also be supported when utilizing appropriate termination kits available from the manufacturer.
  - b. The control network shall be topology free supporting wiring in bus, loop, star or any combination of these.
- 6. Room Controllers shall provide 24VDC power output via two 16-26awg screw terminals for power of accessories.
- 7. Room Controllers shall be designed and tested to withstand discharges up to 15,000 volts (IEC 801-2) without impairment of performance.
- 8. Room Controllers shall provide a three (3) position terminal for power input to the control electronics. The control power input shall accept 6-14AWG wire and be clearly marked Line, Neutral and Earth Ground.
- 9. Each relay shall provide three screw terminals line voltage power connection. Each terminal shall accept 6-14awg wire and be clearly labeled Input, Output and Thru. Controllers that do not support a single power input to multiple discrete relays, in any combination, shall not be deemed acceptable.
- 10. Room Controllers shall provide wiring connections for a control station bus utilizing 16-26AWG screw terminal connections for signal +, signal-, and ESD ground.



11. Room controllers shall support 0-10 volt dimming control via terminals 16-26AWG terminals for 0-10V+ and 0-10V common wiring connections two (2).
12. Room Controllers shall support communication with up to 16 EchoConnect stations and/or responsive controls and fifteen (15) additional Room Controllers, Echo Control Processors or compatible Echo Power Control Panels with an appropriate station power supply.
13. Room Controllers shall be UL and cUL LISTED and conform to UL 508 and UL 2043 (Plenum rated) standards.

**D. Functional**

1. Room Controllers shall support automatic configuration to the most energy-efficient control scheme based on other devices installed in the same room or space.
  - a. Room Controllers shall support operation in Auto-on/Auto-off, Manual-on/Auto-off and Manual-on/Manual-off modes based on the connected control devices without the need for manual configuration.
2. Upon loss of power, Room Controllers shall return to their last state when power returns.
3. Room Controllers shall be available in four (4) or eight (8) zone configurations with a 20 Ampere, fully-rated, relay output and 0-10V dimming per zone.
4. Room controllers shall be UL924 approved for emergency lighting circuits and shall activate only the selected outputs. Excluded loads shall be shed and not produce output during emergency conditions.
5. Room controllers shall activate a designated AV preset upon receiving a contact closure from the A/V system. The contact closure shall support normally open (NO) maintained, normally closed (NC) maintained or momentary toggle functionality.
6. Room controllers shall support Demand Response input via contact closure. Upon input the controller shall reduce maximum output to 70% of peak usage. 0-10V outputs shall support Demand response maximum level threshold adjustment using a rotary fader, and shall be assignable per circuit while measuring usage.
7. Room Controllers shall support commissioning without the use of software or specialty configuration tools. Controllers that require software for configuration shall not be acceptable.

**2.6 DIGITAL ZONE CONTROLLERS AND PLUG LOAD CONTROLLERS**

**A. General**

1. Digital Zone Controllers for lighting and pluggable loads shall be the Echo Series SmartSpace, Dimming, Relay, and/or Phase-Adaptive Dimming Lighting Controller by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., or equal.

**B. Mechanical**



1. Zone Controllers shall mount to a 1/2" electrical junction box knock out using a thread nipple and retaining nut.
2. Zone Controllers shall be constructed of 94-V-0 plastic that fully encloses all high voltage components.
3. Zone Controllers shall support onboard configuration using a single button and led indicator per channel.
4. All buttons shall be fully accessible when the Controller is mounted.
5. Zone Controllers shall have an LED indicator per channel to display status.
6. All Zone Controllers shall provide one (1) #14 AWG white wire for neutral input, one (1) #12 AWG black wire for 120-277VAC power Input and one (1) #12 AWG red wire for switched output.
7. Two (2) zone controllers shall also provide one (1) #12 AWG red/white wire for zone two (2) switched output.
8. All Zone Controllers shall provide wiring connections to the EchoConnect control bus utilizing #18 AWG white and black wires and a #18 AWG green/yellow ESD drain wire.
9. 0-10 volt Dimming Controllers and SmartSpace Controllers shall also provide two (2) stranded #22 AWG violet and grey wires for 0-10V dimming output.
10. Two (2) zone controllers shall also provide two #22 AWG violet/white and grey/white wires for zone two (2) 0-10V output.
11. SmartSpace Controllers shall also provide two (2) #22 AWG red and black wires for 24V DC power output and one (1) #22 AWG yellow wire for sensor input.
12. Single Zone Controllers shall be 3.50"W x 2.00"H x 2.20"D.
13. Dual Zone Controllers shall be 3.50"W x 2.00"H x .50"D.

C. Electrical

1. Zone Controllers shall support a range input from 120 through 277 VAC.
2. All Zone Controllers shall provide fully rated 20A normally open relay switching.
3. 0-10V Dimming Controllers and SmartSpace Controllers shall support 0-10V sink @100mA for dimming of LED drivers and ballasts.
4. SmartSpace Zone Controllers shall support wired occupancy sensor connections.
  - a. The Lighting Controller shall supply 100mA of 24VDC power for wired sensor power.
  - b. The Lighting Controller shall support dry contact input for wired occupancy or photo sensor status.



5. Zone Controllers shall utilize Class II EchoConnect control communications.
  - a. The control network shall utilize unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one (1) #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit). Use of Category 5, or better, control network wiring shall also be supported.
  - b. The control network wiring may be bus, loop, home run, star or any combination of these.
6. Zone Controllers shall be designed and tested to withstand discharges without impairment of performance when subjected to discharges of 15,000 volts per IEC 801-2.
7. Zone Controllers shall support communication with sixteen (16) EchoConnect stations or Sensors and fifteen (15) additional Zone Controllers, Echo Control Processors or compatible Echo Power Control Panels.
8. Zone Controllers shall be UL and cUL LISTED to conform to UL 508 and UL 2043 (Plenum rated) standards.

**D. Functional**

1. Zone Controllers shall support automatic configuration to the most energy-efficient control scheme based on other devices installed in the same room or space.
  - a. Zone Controllers shall support operation in Auto-on/Auto-off, Manual-on/Auto-off and Manual-on/Manual-off modes based on the connected control devices.
2. Upon loss of power, Zone Controllers shall return to their last state when normal power resumes.
3. Relay Controllers shall be available in single or dual relay configurations with fully rated 20A relays.
4. 0-10V Dimming Controllers shall be available in single or dual zone configurations with fully rated 20A outputs and 0-10V dimming per channel rate for 100mA per channel.
5. SmartSpace Controllers shall be available in single or dual zone configurations with fully rated 20A outputs and 0-10V dimming per channel rate for 100mA per channel. Additional support for 24VDC output rated at 100mA and a local connection for a contact closure based occupancy or photo sensor shall be provided
6. Zone Controllers shall support commissioning without the use of software or specialty configuration tools. Controllers that require software for configuration shall not be acceptable.

**2.7 SYSTEM EXPANSION MODULE**

**A. General**

1. The system expansion modules shall be the Echo Expansion Bridge (EEB) by ETC, Inc., or equal.
2. The Expansion Bridge shall allow for the following features:



- a. Connection of a third party wireless access point to allow for wireless (Wi-Fi) connection of the EchoAccess Mobile App to the Echo Control System.
- b. Combination of up to four (4) Echo segments to create a larger integrated Echo system.
- c. Communication with a Unison Paradigm Architectural Control Processor (ACP) to allow for control interaction and indication of the comprehensive control system.

B. Mechanical

1. The Echo Expansion Bridge shall be DIN-rail mounted on DIN43880 and EN60715 (35/7.5) compatible rail.
2. The Bridge shall be constructed of injection-molded, black ABS plastic that fully encloses all electrical components.
3. The Bridge shall have a backlit display for identification, status reporting and configuration.
4. The Bridge shall have buttons for up, down, back and enter for use with the backlit display.
5. The Bridge shall have a hard reset button accessible on the front panel.
6. The Bridge shall have LED indicators:
  - a. Power Status (blue)
  - b. Network Status (green)

C. Electrical

1. The Expansion Bridge shall have an RJ45 Ethernet port for connection to a network that supports additional lighting control products.
2. The Bridge shall have four (4) EchoConnect connection terminals.
  - a. Control wiring utilizing low-voltage, Class II unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one (1) #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit).
  - b. Control wiring shall be topology free. It may be point-to-point, bus, loop, home run or any combination of these. Control products that require daisy-chain wiring shall not be acceptable.
3. The station shall use two (2) #16 AWG stranded wires for 24vDC operating power when not utilizing Power over Ethernet (PoE).
4. The Bridge shall support a MicroSD card for firmware maintenance.
5. The Bridge shall be UL/ cUL LISTED and CE marked.
6. The Bridge shall be FCC compliant.

D. Network



1. Communications physical layer shall comply with IEEE 802.3i for 10BASE-T, 802.3u for 100BASE-TX and 802.3af for PoE specifications.
2. All network cabling shall be Category 5 (or better), conforming to TIA-568A/B, and shall be installed by a qualified network installer.
3. Switches shall comply with PoE IEEE802.3af, unless a separate in-line power supply is provided.

**E. Environmental**

1. The ambient operating temperature shall be 32°F to 122°F.
2. The operating humidity shall be 5% to 95% non-condensing.

**F. Functional**

1. Connection to EchoAccess Mobile Application:
  - a. The Expansion Bridge shall facilitate communication from an Echo control system to a wireless access point.
  - b. The EchoAccess Mobile Application shall connect to the wireless access point and send control and configuration commands to the Expansion Bridge for communication to all connected Echo Products.
2. Creation of larger Echo control systems:
  - a. The Expansion Bridge shall allow up to four (4) Echo control segments to be merged together.
  - b. Each Echo segment must contain an EchoConnect Station Power Supply.
  - c. The following system maximums shall be supported per bridge:
    - 1) Sixty-four (64) Stations, Sensors and Control Interfaces
    - 2) Sixty-four (64) Power Control and Output Products
    - 3) Sixteen (16) Control Spaces
    - 4) Sixteen (16) Control Zones per Space
  - d. Connection to a Unison Paradigm Architectural Control Processor (ACP):
    - 1) The Expansion Bridge shall communicate to a Paradigm ACP using an Ethernet Network.
    - 2) Up to sixteen (16) Bridges shall be able to connect to a single ACP.
    - 3) Up to one hundred twenty-eight (128) Bridges shall be able to connect to a single Paradigm Projects.
    - 4) Paradigm systems shall be able to control and indicate status of the following Echo control properties:



- a) Echo Zones
- b) Echo Presets
- c) Echo Space Combine
- d) Echo Space Lockout

## 2.8 SYSTEM CONNECTION INTERFACE

### A. General

- 1. The system connection module shall be the Echo-Echoflex Interface (EEI) by ETC, Inc., or equal.

### B. Mechanical

- 1. The interface shall be DIN-rail mounted on DIN43880 and EN60715 (35/7.5) rail.
- 2. The interface shall be constructed of injection-molded black ABS plastic that fully encloses all electrical components.
- 3. The interface shall support the following user interface items:
  - a. Ten (10) segment green LED bar graph to display current Echoflex output levels.
  - b. Bi-color LED to display current Echoflex input state.
  - c. ON and OFF buttons to manually set output and input states.
  - d. Eight (8) LEDs for index select indication of inputs or outputs.
  - e. Index select button to allow for individual selection of each input and output.
  - f. Learn/Teach button to allow user to link Echoflex inputs and outputs to the interface.
  - g. Bi-color LED to allow indication of Echoflex learn/teach modes, and clear.
  - h. Clear button to allow user to clear Echoflex inputs/outputs from the interface.
  - i. Space wheel to allow user to set the control space of the interface.
  - j. Mode button to allow user to set preset, and zones of inputs and outputs.
  - k. Amber LED to give indication of preset and zone programming status.
  - l. Two position jumper to select use of internal or external antenna.

### C. Electrical

- 1. The interface shall connect to the wired Echo control system via EchoConnect wiring.
  - a. Wiring shall utilize low-voltage, Class II unshielded twisted pair, type Belden 8471 or equivalent, and one #14 ESD drain wire (when not installed in grounded metal conduit).
  - b. Control wiring shall be topology free. It may be point-to-point, bus, loop, home run or any combination of these. Control products that require daisy-chain wiring shall not be acceptable.
- 2. The interface shall use two (2) #16 AWG stranded wires for 24vDC operating power.
- 3. The interface shall utilize a 902 MHz UHF RF radio. Systems that use other frequencies radios shall not be acceptable.



4. The interface shall support a MicroSD card for firmware maintenance.
  5. The interface shall be UL/ cUL LISTED and CE marked.
- D. Environmental
1. The ambient operating temperature shall be 32°F to 122°F.
  2. The operating humidity shall be 5% to 95% non-condensing.
- E. Functional
1. The interface shall allow for the following features:
    - a. Detection of up to four (4) commands from Echoflex products for translation to Echo present control. The following commands shall be supported:
      - 1) Switch on and off state
      - 2) Occupancy/vacancy sensor state
      - 3) Photo Sensor state
      - 4) Power Sensor state
      - 5) Keycard Station state
  2. Echoflex input commands shall be able to be mapped to specific Echo presets.
  3. Translation of up to four (4) Echo control zones to Echoflex product commands. The following commands shall be supported:
    - a. Echoflex zone set to level
    - b. Echoflex zone off
    - c. Query of Echoflex level for indication of Echo zone

## 2.9 WIRELESS SWITCH STATIONS

- A. General
1. The Lighting Switch Stations shall be the Echoflex Solutions Decorator or Resonate Wave Switch Stations by Electronic Theatre Controls, Inc., or equal.
- B. Mechanical
1. Switch Stations shall be decorator style plastic switches.
  2. Switch Stations shall be available in single and dual switch configurations.
  3. It shall be possible to attach multiple switch stations together using surface mounting plates available from the manufacturer or standard electrical gang boxes.



4. Mounting Plates shall be available from the manufacturer for surface mounting using screws or peel-and-stick attachment.
  5. All Switch Stations shall be available with white, cream, ivory, black, light almond and brown switches.
    - a. Manufacturer's standard colors shall conform to the RAL CLASSIC Standard.
  6. All faceplates shall be designed for flush or surface mounting.
  7. Switch Station faceplates shall be constructed of ABS plastic and be available with or without visible means of attachment.
  8. Switch Stations shall have a fully enclosed electronics assembly.
  9. The SmartClick Switch Station shall be 2.75"W x 4.50"H x 0.76"D.
- C. Electrical
1. Switch Stations shall use EnOcean battery free wireless radios.
  2. Switch Stations shall utilize 315 MHz UHF RF radios. Systems that use other frequencies radios shall not be acceptable.
  3. Switch Stations shall utilize kinetic energy harvesting that does not require any batteries or external power input.
  4. Switch Stations shall have a range of at least fifty (50) feet through walls up to three hundred (300) feet in open space.
    - a. Auxiliary signal repeaters shall be available to increase range.
  5. The Switch Station shall comply with FCC Part 15.231 and IC RSS-210.
- D. Functional
1. Switch Stations shall be able to switch relay loads on and off when used with compatible relay controller loads on and off.
  2. Switch Stations shall be able to dim loads up and down when used with compatible power controllers.
  3. Switch Stations shall support DMX scene recall when used with compatible DMX Scene Controllers. Systems that do not support DMX Scene Controllers shall not be acceptable.
  4. Up to thirty (30) Switch Stations shall be supported with a single power controller. Systems that do not support at least thirty (30) stations shall not be acceptable
  5. Switch Stations shall provide SmartClick programming for configuration of connected power controllers directly from the Switch Station. Control systems that only provide default functions, that or require software for configuration shall not be acceptable.



## 2.10 ARCHITECTURAL CONTROL PROCESSOR MODULES

### A. Mechanical

1. The Architectural Control Processor (ACP) assembly shall be designed for use in related system control enclosures.
2. The processor shall utilize microprocessor based, solid state technology to provide multi-scene lighting and building control.
3. ACP module electronics shall be contained in a plug-in assembly.
  - a. The module shall be housed in a formed steel body and contain no discrete wire connections.
    - 1) No tools shall be required for module removal or insertion.
4. The ACP shall be convection cooled.
5. User Interface
  - a. The ACP shall utilize a backlit liquid crystal display capable of graphics and eight lines of text.
  - b. The ACP shall provide an alpha-numeric keypad for data entry and navigation.
  - c. The ACP shall provide a touch-sensitive control wheel for navigation.
  - d. The ACP shall provide shortcut buttons to assist in navigation, selection, and data entry.
  - e. The ACP keypad, buttons, and wheel shall be backlit for use in low-light conditions.
    - 1) The backlight shall have a user selectable time out, including no time out.
6. The ACP shall provide a front-panel RJ45 receptacle for Ethernet connection to the processor for configuration, live control, and web-browser-based system access.
  - a. The RJ-45 receptacle shall be secured behind the locking door.
7. The ACP shall provide a Secure Digital (SD) Removable Media slot on the front panel for transfer of configuration data.
  - a. The SD slot shall be secured behind the locking door.
8. The ACP shall provide a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port on the front panel for transfer of configuration data.
  - a. The USB port shall be secured behind the locking door.
9. Architectural Lighting System configuration and program information shall be stored in flash memory, which does not require battery backup.
  - a. The ACP shall provide a Compact Flash (CF) Card as backup flash memory and storage.
  - b. The CF Card is located in the back of the ACP, and can be accessed only by removing the ACP.
  - c. The ACP data can be exchanged by inserting the CF card into another ACP.



B. Electrical

1. The ACP shall require no discrete wiring connections; all wiring shall be terminated into Dimming or Control Enclosure.
2. The ACP shall require low-voltage power supplied by the Dimming or Control enclosure.
3. The ACP shall be hot-swap capable.
4. The ACP shall support Echelon LonTalk with LinkPower communications with control stations and other remote devices, including button stations, button/fader stations, Touchscreen stations, sensors, and third party LonMARK compliant products.
  - a. The LinkPower network shall utilize polarity-independent, low-voltage Class II twisted pair wiring, type Belden 8471 (unshielded) or Belden 8719 (shielded) or equivalent. One # 14 AWG drain wire will be required for system not using grounded metal conduit. Touchscreen stations, interface stations and portable stations connectors will also require (2) #16 AWG wires.
  - b. The LinkPower network shall be topology free. Network wiring may be bus, loop, home run, star or any combination of these.
  - c. Link power wiring shall permit a total wire run of 1640 ft. without a repeater. Repeater option modules shall be available to increase wiring maximums in increments of 1640 ft. (500m).
  - d. Link power wiring between stations shall not exceed 1313 ft.
5. The ACP shall support 10/100BaseTX, auto MDI/MDIX, 802.3af compliant Ethernet networking using TCP/IP, ESTA BSR E1.17 Advanced Control Networks (ACN) and ESTA BSR E1.31 (sACN) Protocols for internal communication and integration with third-party equipment.
6. The ACP shall support EIA-RS232 serial protocol for bi-directional command and communication with third-party equipment.
7. The ACP shall support two discrete ESTA DMX512A ports, configurable as input or output ports.\*
  - a. \*When used in a Dimming Enclosure, the second port is always an output port.
8. The ACP shall provide four onboard dry contact closure inputs for integration with third-party products.
9. The ACP shall provide four onboard contact closure outputs, rated at 1A@30VDC, for integration with third-party equipment.

C. Functional

1. Capacity
  - a. Shall support 1024 channels of control
  - b. Shall support 2 physical DMX ports, each of which may be configured as an input or output



2. System
  - a. Runtime application shall utilize support Net3 system interoperability
  - b. System shall support the use of Network Time Protocol for real time clock synchronization
  - c. System shall support remote firmware upload an over Ethernet connection from a connected PC running the Light Designer software or another connected processor.
  - d. System shall support local firmware upload from removable media (SD Card, USB Flash Drive)
  
3. Diagnostics
  - a. Shall output an Event log
  - b. Standard log shall store a fixed-length history of recent activity
  - c. Separate critical log shall only store important messages (such as boot-up settings)
  
4. Configuration Data
  - a. Configuration Data can be uploaded over an Ethernet connection from a PC running Light Designer application
  - b. Configuration Data can be retrieved from another processor
  - c. The processor shall make its configuration data available for retrieval by another Processor as a backup/recovery mechanism
  - d. Configuration Data shall be stored on solid-state media that can be removed to facilitate transfer between Processor units
  - e. Configuration Data may be loaded to and from removable media access provided on front panel
  - f. Configuration Data for the entire System shall be available for download from any single Processor
  - g. Shall store configuration data for Dimming enclosure processors and shall make available for download
  
5. Scalability
  - a. Adding additional Processors to a System shall proportionately increase its overall capabilities up to a maximum project size
  - b. The maximum number of Processors configured as a project shall be at least 12. The use of a Central Control Processor shall allow for larger system sizes up to 72 processors
  - c. Multiple Processors shall utilize the Ethernet network to remain time synchronized and share control information
  - d. Multiple Processors shall utilize the Ethernet network to maintain configuration data synchronization as modifications are made
  - e. Failure of a single Processor shall not prohibit continuing operation of the remaining Processors
  - f. It shall be possible for multiple Systems to coexist on the same physical network with logical isolation between Systems
  
6. Local User Interface
  - a. Shall provide access to Processor setup (IP address)



- b. Shall provide access to Processor status and diagnostics
  - c. Where the Processor is installed within a Dimming enclosure, shall provide access to Dimming enclosure setup, status and diagnostics
  - d. Shall provide control functionality for Control Channels, Zones, Fixtures, Groups, Presets, Macros, Walls and Sequences within the current configuration.
  - e. Shall provide functionality to schedule astronomical and real time events (add/edit/delete)
  - f. Shall allow for display of local DMX information
  - g. Shall allow for transfer of log files to local removable media
  - h. Shall allow to perform firmware upgrades for connected Dimming enclosures
  - i. Shall allow for transfer of configuration to and from Dimming enclosures using removable media
  - j. Shall allow for transfer of configuration to and from LCD Stations using removable media
  - k. Shall allow for binding of Stations
7. Access Controls
- a. There shall be 2 user accounts - Administrator, and User with separate password protection
  - b. Account and password settings shall be local to each Processor
  - c. Access Controls shall be applied to certain areas of the Local User Interface and Web Interface
8. Web User Interface
- a. Shall be an internal web server accessible via Ethernet port
  - b. Shall support common web browsers on Windows and Mac platforms
  - c. Shall provide functionality to Activate and Deactivate Presets
  - d. Shall provide functionality to schedule timed events (add/delete)
  - e. Shall display status information
  - f. Shall display log files
  - g. Shall allow for configuration of Processor settings (date, time)
  - h. Shall allow for upload and download of configuration data
  - i. There shall be links to other web-enabled devices in the System, including other Processors
9. Stations
- a. Stations shall be connected to the Processor via a LinkPower network or Ethernet
  - b. Station discovery and binding shall be accomplished from the Local User Interface or Light Designer
10. Net3 and ACN Devices
- a. Processors shall provide DMX-Net3 gateway functionality
  - b. Net3 devices shall be connected to and controlled from the Processor via Ethernet
  - c. It shall be possible to send and receive Macro triggers defined within the System configuration via Net3
  - d. There shall be support for a maximum of 1024 Streaming ACN outputs configured to a maximum of 12 universes per Processor



11. Operation

- a. When contained in an dimming enclosure, a snapshot of the dimming enclosure output data shall be stored in persistent memory so that hardware can access it for immediate output on boot
- b. DMX output refresh rate shall be configurable
- c. There shall be support for 16-bit DMX Attributes
- d. DMX inputs may be patched to DMX and Streaming ACN outputs as external sources
- e. Streaming ACN inputs shall be patched to DMX outputs (gateway) as external sources
- f. Where there are multiple external sources then priority and Highest Takes Precedence (HTP) shall be used to perform arbitration
- g. External and internal sources shall be arbitrated based on user-selection of standard or custom rules
- h. On Preset Record, the values of Attributes within the Preset shall be updated to reflect the current output
- i. The total output may be the combination of many different Presets running concurrently
- j. There shall be no hard limit on number of concurrent cross fades
- k. Multiple Presets controlling the same Attribute shall first interact based on priority and second based on Latest Takes Precedence (LTP) or Highest Takes Precedence (HTP)
- l. LTP and HTP operation shall be supported simultaneously and interact (at the same priority) using HTP
- m. Settings due to LTP Presets may be automatically discarded from operation when overridden
- n. It shall be possible to specify that a Preset or Attribute Control will persist when overridden
- o. A Preset may be designated as an HTP Override and shall cause HTP values to be discarded
- p. It shall be possible to modify the rate of a Preset (Cross fades, Effects) from a Control within the System
- q. Each Preset shall have a status that can be Activated, Deactivated or Altered
- r. Preset status may be set based on matching levels in the current output as an option
- s. On startup the System shall be capable of automatically executing timed events within the previous 24 hours to synchronize its initial output state with the current time of day

12. Serial Input/Output

- a. RS232 shall support 8-bit word length, parity selection and 1 or 2 stop bits
- b. RS232 shall support baud rates from 4800 to 115,200 bps
- c. Serial input and output messages are fully customizable
- d. Serial output messages can be generated by any Control or Event



## 2.11 DATA COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Provide a fully functioning Performance lighting Ethernet and distributed DMX system. The system shall be installed in conformance with ANSI E1.11 – 2008, ANSI E1.17 - 2010 and IEEE 802.3 standards and the control console manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Coordinate the wireless Ethernet protocols with other areas of theatrical production (Sound, Rigging and Automation, and Administration) to ensure that the theatrical lighting system has its own dedicated secured channel and doesn't broadcast SSID information that would allow the system to be compromised. Set up MAC address filtering if nearby networks require it.
- C. Provide network diagnostic tools (software) to enable users to view network activity and diagnose data problems.
- D. Ethernet Switches/Patch Panels:
  - 1. Provide switches and patch panels of a high quality from a company with three (3) or more years of experience manufacturing this equipment.
  - 2. All ENet switches shall be Power-over-Ethernet, dual speed units capable of operating standard and fast Ethernet protocols.
  - 3. Label switches and patch panels with the locations of the field boxes and as labeled in the box schedules.
  - 4. Provide proper quantity of Category 5e patch cables to patch all field devices to hubs/switches.
  - 5. All wireless switches must comply with latest IEEE 802.3 b/g standards and are to be installed using best industry practices.
  - 6. Provide web-browsable switches that can be accessed through any commercially available web browser.
  - 7. Provide rack mounted power filtration / line regulation / battery backup unit (as specified herein) for each hub/switch.
  - 8. Provide a total of two (2).
  - 9. Acceptable manufacturers:
    - a. Cisco Systems, Inc. ([www.cisco.com](http://www.cisco.com))
    - b. Netgear, Inc. ([www.netgear.com](http://www.netgear.com))
    - c. Hewlett-Packard Enterprise ([www.hpe.com](http://www.hpe.com))
    - d. Or approved equal

## 2.12 DISTRIBUTION AND CONTROL FACEPLATES AND BACKBOXES

- A. General:
  - 1. For mounted conditions faceplate and back box dimensions are equal.



2. Remove sharp edges and burrs on faceplates.
3. In all cases faceplate screw color is to match faceplate color.

**B. Control Faceplates:**

1. Material: 1/8" aluminum.
2. Finish shall be "Black" or "Custom" as indicated on the drawings. Custom finish is to be determined by the Commissioner.
  - a. Black finish: 120 grit, horizontally brushed black anodized.
  - b. Special finish: Powder coat painted finish to match Commissioner's sample
3. Reinforce faceplate as needed to minimize deflection.
4. Legends: Engraved and paint filled as shown or as directed.
5. Faceplate shall fit into standard sized gang wall box for recessed installation.
6. Provide painted steel backbox sized to faceplate dimensions for surface installation.
7. Control faceplates shall accept EtherCON connectors.

**2.13 CONTROL ENCLOSURES**

**A. Mechanical**

1. The External Processing enclosure shall be a surface mounted panel constructed of 18 gauge formed steel panels with a hinged, lockable full-height door containing an integral electrostatic air filter.
  - a. The enclosure door shall have an opening to allow limited access to the control module face panel.
  - b. Enclosures shall be convection cooled without the use of fans.
2. Control Enclosures shall be sized to accept one or two Control Processors and one or two Station Power Modules, including various options and accessories.
  - a. The Control Enclosure for a single control processor shall support a single Station Power Supply module; The Control Enclosure for 2 control processors shall support a quantity of 2 modules.
3. All enclosure components shall be properly treated and finished.
  - a. Exterior surfaces shall be finished in fine textured, scratch resistant, powder based epoxy paint.
4. Enclosure(s) shall also be available in a 19" rack mounted (RM) version.
  - a. Rack-mounted version shall have an independent enclosure suspension kit, with a full height, locking door/cover attached to the kit.
  - b. Rack-mounted version shall have an opening to access the control module face panel, and openings to view indicators on option modules.



5. Enclosure dimensions and weights (without modules) shall not exceed:
  - a. 15" W x 9" H, 10" D, 15 lb.
  - b. RM - 19" W 11"H 10" D, 20 lb.
  - c. 15" W x 14" H x 10" D, 20 lb.
  - d. RM - 19" W x 16" H x 10" D, 25 lb.
6. Top, bottom, and side knockouts shall facilitate conduit entry.
7. Enclosures shall be designed to allow easy insertion and removal of all control and option modules without the use of tools.
  - a. Supports shall be provided for precise alignment of modules into power and signal connector blocks.
  - b. With modules removed, enclosures shall provide clear front access to all power and control wire terminations.
8. Option Modules
  - a. Ethernet Switch
    - 1) The Control Enclosure shall support an optional 5-port Ethernet Switch, with at least 4 ports supplying Power over Ethernet (PoE).
    - 2) The Ethernet Switch module shall be 100BaseTX, auto MDI/MDIX, 802.3af PSE compliant.
    - 3) The Ethernet Switch module shall contain power, status, and activity indicators. All indicators shall be visible when the enclosure door is open for both rack and wall mounted units.
  - b. Redundant Power Supply (RRPS)
    - 1) The Control Enclosure shall support an optional redundant power supply which shall automatically provide power to the control electronics upon failure or removal of the primary power supply.
    - 2) The redundant power supply shall assert itself seamlessly without a loss of power to the control electronics.
    - 3) The redundant power supply shall seamlessly remove itself when the primary power supply is reengaged.
    - 4) The redundant power supply shall provide visible indication that it is active.
  - c. Station Bus Repeaters
    - 1) The Control Enclosure shall support an optional module to expand the station bus length an additional 1,300 feet, and the station count an additional 30 stations (60 maximum per processor/enclosure)
    - 2) Wall-mount and 19" Rack-Mount versions shall also be available to support mid-span insertion away from the Control Enclosure.
  - d. Station Bus Dual Repeaters



- 1) The Control Enclosure shall support an optional module to expand the station bus length to two additional 1,300 foot segments (a total of 3,900 feet from a single enclosure, and the station count to 60 stations (60 maximum per processor/enclosure).
- 2) Wall-mount and 19" Rack-Mount versions shall also be available to support mid-span insertion away from the Control Enclosure.

9. Accessories

a. Battery Pack

- 1) The Control Enclosure shall support an optional, long-term back-up power source for the control electronics.
- 2) The long-term back-up power source shall automatically engage upon the loss of normal power, seamlessly transitioning the supply power for the control electronics power to itself.
- 3) The long-term back-up power source shall supply power to the control electronics for at least 90 minutes.
- 4) The long-term back-up power supply shall detect the return of normal power, and seamlessly return the control electronics to normal power.
- 5) A test switch/indicator shall be available without opening the rack door or removal of any modules/components.

B. Electrical

1. External Processing enclosures shall be available in 100, 120, 230 and 240 volt, single-phase configurations.
2. External Processing enclosures shall be completely pre-wired by the manufacturer. The contractor shall provide input and control wiring.
3. External Processing enclosures shall be designed to support the following wire terminations:
  - a. AC (single phase)
  - b. Echelon link power (Belden 8471 or equivalent)
  - c. 24Vdc (2- 16AWG Wire)
  - d. DMX512A Port A (In or Out) (Belden 9729 or equivalent)
  - e. DMX512A Port B (In or Out) (Belden 9729 or equivalent)
  - f. RS232 Serial In/Out (Belden 9729 or equivalent)
  - g. Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) Category 5 Ethernet
  - h. Contact Closure In (14AWG to 26AWG Wire)
  - i. Contact Closure Out (14AWG to 26AWG Wire)
    - 1) Contact Closure Out shall provide 1A @ 30vDC
4. Station Power Modules



- a. Station power supply modules shall provide LinkPower for at 32 stations and 1.5A@24VDC of Auxiliary (AUX) power.
  - b. Station power repeater modules shall provide LinkPower for 30 stations and 1.5A@24VDC of Auxiliary (AUX) power.
  - c. Station power module shall support over-current/short protection for LinkPower and Auxiliary LinkPower shall support fault detection on each leg of the balanced data bus.
5. All control wire connections shall be terminated via factory provided connectors.
- C. Thermal
1. Ambient room temperature: 0-40°C / 32-104°F
  2. Ambient humidity: 10-90% non-condensing
- D. Equipment rack
1. Provide one (1) equipment rack in order to mount control system equipment.
  2. Rack shall be compatible with and designed for the installed module units.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas where performance dimming and controls are to be installed and to verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation and comply with manufacturer's requirements and those specified in this section.
- B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install performance dimming and controls where shown, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and with recognized industry practice to ensure that performance lighting equipment complies with applicable requirements of NEC and UL standards and with the applicable portions of NECA's "Standard of Installation".
- B. All load circuit conductors shall be continuous from the dimmer room to the back box without splices or connectors.
- C. All data wiring shall be continuous from termination point to termination point. No splices or connectors allowed.

#### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Provide or facilitate the following tests or inspections. Correct deficiencies and retest deficient items.
- B. Visual and Mechanical Inspections: Include the following:



1. Inspect each outlet, dimmer and other loose items of equipment for defects, finish failure, corrosion, physical damage, labeling, and nameplate.
  2. Exercise and perform operational tests on mechanical parts and operable devices according to manufacturer's instructions or routine functional operation.
  3. Check tightness of electrical connections with torque wrench calibrated within the previous six (6) months. Use manufacturer's recommended torque values.
  4. Verify proper protective device setting and fuse types and ratings.
- C. Electrical Tests: Perform according to manufacturer's instructions. Exercise caution testing devices containing solid state components.
1. Operational and continuity tests of dimming circuits. Perform an outlet by outlet operational test of the dimming circuits to determine proper wiring and exact correspondence between the dimmer numbers and the outlet labels.
  2. Operational tests of Ethernet runs: Test each Ethernet wiring run for proper operation in conformance with the IEEE standard. Document the length of each run.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service:
1. Provide the services of a qualified service representative, employed regularly and full time by the manufacturer of the control system(s), to check the installation of the control system(s) and ensure its proper operation. Do not energize any part of the control system until their check is complete and the service representative is present to observe the turn-on procedure.
  2. Provide manufacturer's technician to configure house/work lighting control system as directed prior to system commissioning. One (1) set of changes to the initial operating configuration may be required subsequent to commissioning. One (1) set of changes will be required following acceptance.
- E. System Commissioning:
1. Upon completing installation, other tests, and manufacturer's check-out, schedule an inspection and operating test with the Commissioner and Theatre Consultant. Facilitate such tests as may be required to ensure that all equipment is in compliance with the intent of the specification.
  2. Comply with the following conditions required for commissioning:
    - a. Provide documentation to Theatre Consultant certifying all Ethernet outlets adhere to IEEE standards.
    - b. All handover and loose equipment provided under this section to be on site and available for testing.
    - c. All architectural lighting fixtures wired to the dimming system to be installed and lamped.
    - d. Provide full and uninterrupted access to stage, auditorium, and technical areas required for commissioning tests. Blackouts of lighting will be required.
    - e. Contractor's project representative to be present during tests as required.



- f. Provide Manufacturer technicians for final programming of all systems.
  - g. Manufacturer's factory field technician to be present during tests and inspections.
  - h. Provide personnel to operate equipment and perform adjustments as necessary.
  - i. Provide access equipment as required.
3. Contractor is required to facilitate the Consultant/Commissioner commissioning of the Dimming and Control system. This commissioning will include but is not limited to the following items.
- a. Verify that loose and installed equipment quantities are as contracted.
  - b. Inspect all system components individually for conformance to specification.
  - c. Test each branch circuit for operation, correct circuit identification, and proper arrangement of hot, neutral, and ground conductors.
  - d. Spot test selected branch circuits at maximum load.
  - e. Verify operation of all worklight and houselighting fixtures. Test operation of all worklight and houselight control devices. Verify that logical operation of controls is as specified.
  - f. Verify operation of all portable control and portable display devices from all associated receptacle locations.
  - g. Using a DMX source, verify operation of DMX distribution network.
  - h. Confirm the proper operation of the lighting Ethernet system.
  - i. Review operation, maintenance, and instruction manuals. Review warranty certificate.
  - j. Confirm that user training has/will occur per specification.

**3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove paint spatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair scratches and mars of finish to match original finish. Clean devices and equipment internally and externally using methods and materials as recommended by manufacturers.

**3.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION**

- A. The manufacturer of the dimming system shall provide a minimum of eight (8) hours of training in the operation of the control console, architectural control system and other related systems specified herein. These sessions shall consist of two (2) – four (4) hour sessions at times separate from the check-out of the systems. Training time to be arranged with the staff of the facility and shall take place over the first two (2) months after building acceptance. These training sessions cannot be completed consecutively and should be separated by no less than one (1) month or as directed by users.

**3.6 EQUIPMENT LIST**

- A. Provide pricing broken down in packages as shown below:

<u>Qty.</u>	<u>Equipment</u>
15	Distributed Dimming Strips - (6) 1.2kW IGBT
1	House/Work Light Control System (located in equipment rack)
15	Performance Control Faceplates (refer to TL-121.00 and TL-122.00)
1	Two-button station (refer to TL-121.00 and TL-122.00)



1	Touch panel connector (refer to TL-121.00 and TL-122.00)
3	DMX Node distribution (located in equipment rack)
1	ENET Switch (located in equipment rack)
1	Unlimited Power Supply (located in equipment rack)
1	Brush grommet Panel (located in equipment rack)
1	DMX Controlled relay cabinet

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 27 05 00  
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section covers general work of all Sections under Division 27. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and supplemental Conditions and DDC General Conditions sections, apply to this section.
- B. The Contractor shall comply with all requirements mandated under the NY State General Services contracts for Signal Wiring and Cabling. The Contractor will comply with all applicable governmental regulations and with all local ordinances.
- C. The work covered by this Section consists of furnishing all materials, accessories, connectors, supports, electrical protection, equipment, tools, setup, preparation, labor, supervision, incidentals, transportation, storage and related items and appurtenances, and performing all operations necessary to complete the telecommunications work as indicated in the project drawings and specified herein. Completely install, connect, and test all systems, equipment, devices, etc. shown or noted or required to final connections and leave ready for satisfactory operation. Provide any minor items omitted from the design, but obviously necessary to accomplish the above intent.
- D. Any item not specifically shown on the drawings or called for in the specifications, but normally required to conform to the intent, are to be considered as part of the Contract.
- E. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for pathways and cables.
  - 2. Sleeve seals.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Common communications installation requirements.

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. All products shall be installed new, best of their respective kinds, free from defects, listed by Underwriter's Laboratories for the intended use, and bearing their label.
- B. Any given item of equipment or material shall be the product of one manufacturer throughout the facility. Multiple manufacturers of any one item will not be permitted, unless specifically noted otherwise.
- C. Obtain from the manufacturers detailed instructions for installation of that manufacturers' products.
- D. Ensure that all components meet all regulatory requirements for the respective component being used.



- E. All products, services and materials provided and performed under the scope of this Specification shall conform to the manufacturer's requirements.
- F. Contractor is solely responsible for quality control of the Work and must comply with the Quality Control requirements specified herein.
- G. All materials shall be new and unused and free from defects. All materials shall meet all applicable codes provided a standard has been established for the material in question.
- H. All products and materials to be clean, free of defects, and free of damage and corrosion.
- I. Installation Qualifications:
  - 1. In order to provide proper coordination, uniform quality and system integrity, the equipment and installation specified within this Specification shall be provided and installed by a single contractor with a proven track record in the field of the specified system. Personnel shall be competent and qualified by experience and training for the installation.

### **1.3 CODES, REGULATIONS AND STANDARDS**

- A. The installation shall comply fully with all government authorities, laws and ordinances, regulations and codes applicable to the installation
- B. Should any change in plans or specifications be required to comply with governmental regulations, the Contractor shall notify the Commissioner at the time of submitting the Shop Drawings.
- C. Local electrical and building codes may differ with national codes. Follow the most stringent code or recommendations. Where there are instances of ambiguity refer to the Commissioner for interpretation.
- D. All equipment shall be equal to or exceed the minimum requirements of NEMA, IEEE, ISO, ASME, NEC, ANSI and Underwriters' Laboratories.
- E. Comply with the following Standards and Codes:
  - 1. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI) Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, current edition.
  - 2. American National Standards Institute / Telecommunications Industry Association (ANSI/TIA)
    - a. ANSI/TIA -568-C.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard
    - b. TIA/EIA-569 Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
    - c. TIA/EIA-606 Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure
    - d. J-STD-607-B Telecommunications Grounding and Bonding for Customer Premises



3. Federal Communications Commission Title 47
  - a. FCC Part 15
  - b. FCC Part 68
4. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers IEEE 802.3
5. NEMA VE 1 Metallic Cable Tray Systems
6. ISO/IEC 11801 International Organization for Standardization
7. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
8. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
9. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
  - a. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code (NEC)
  - b. NFPA 75 Protection of Electronic Computer / Data Processing Equipment
  - c. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code
10. Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration
11. OSHA Standards 29 CFR 1926 and 1910
12. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
  - a. UL Listed
  - b. UL Approved

#### **1.4 GLOSSARY**

A.	ANSI	American National Standards Institute
B.	ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials
C.	BICSI	Building Industry Consulting Services International
D.	dBm	Decibels with reference to one milliwatt
E.	EIA	Electronic Industries Association
F.	EMI	Electromagnetic Interference
G.	FCC	Federal Communications Commission
H.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
I.	MHz	Megahertz
J.	NEC	National Electric Code



K.	NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturer's Association
L.	NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
M.	NRTL	National Recognized Testing Laboratories
N.	OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
O.	RF	Radio Frequency
P.	RCDD	Registered Communications Distribution Designer
Q.	TIA	Telecommunications Industry Association
R.	TGB	Telecommunications Grounding Busbar
S.	TMGB	Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar
T.	UL	Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.
U.	UTP	Unshielded Twisted Pair

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General Procedures
  - 1. All submittals shall comply with the requirements of Division 01.
  - 2. Forward all submittals in related groups. Individual or incomplete submittals are not acceptable.
  - 3. Labeling shall be approved by Commissioner prior to testing of cables.
  - 4. Identify each item by manufacturer, brand, trade name, number, size, rating, or whatever other data is necessary to properly identify and check materials and equipment.
  - 5. Identify each submittal item by reference to Specification Section paragraph in which item is specified, or Drawing and Detail number
  - 6. Prepare details not less than ¼ inch = 1 foot scale.
  - 7. Contents: Each submittal shall contain the following information:
    - a. Project name and address
    - b. Number of submittal
    - c. Date of submittal
    - d. Name and address of contractor
    - e. Table of contents
    - f. Product name and manufacturer



- g. Page number(s)
- h. Page number(s) of the corresponding Specification or Drawing number(s) of the corresponding Contract Documents.

**B. List of Submittals**

1. Pre-Construction Submittals:

- a. Product data sheets
- b. Shop drawings
- c. Factory tests
- d. Proof of certification as a certified installer for the system(s) to be installed
- e. Proof of project registration with system manufacturer(s) for extended warranty
- f. Manufacturer product and application wiring for approval

2. During Construction:

- a. Installation/commissioning schedules
- b. Pull schedules
- c. Field test reports

3. Commissioning:

- a. Commissioning plans
- b. Method statements
- c. Testing and commissioning schedules

4. Post Construction:

- a. As-built drawings (both hard copy and electronic copy)
- b. Warranties

**C. Product Data Sheets**

- 1. Product Data Sheets shall include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles and finishes. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- 2. Certify that the data sheets depict the components to be installed to make up the complete system as described in the Contract Documents.



3. Contents: The product data sheet submittal shall consist of the following:
  - a. Cover Sheet
  - b. Project name and address
  - c. Number of submittal
  - d. Date of submittal
  - e. Name and address of the Communications Contractor
  - f. Table of Contents
  - g. Product name and manufacturer
  - h. Page number(s)
  - i. Page number(s) of the corresponding Specification or drawing number(s) of the corresponding Contract Documents.
  - j. Manufacturers' technical specifications and data sheets of all items specified herein. Submit pertinent pages only.
  - k. Identify clearly the particular product being submitted; do not use highlighters. Use appropriate markings and arrows.
  - l. Identify any options or accessories that are applicable to the project.
  - m. Show compliance with specified standards.
  - n. Show compliance with any parameters required by this specification.
  - o. Show compliance with specified testing agency listings; show the limitations of their labels or seals, if any.
  - p. Show any special coordination requirements for the product.
4. Preparation and Transmittal
  - a. Submit all product data sheet submittals including resubmittals as one submittal.

**D. Samples**

1. Submit samples of cables and outlets fully labeled and other accessories to be installed under these Contract Documents.
2. Provide samples physically identical with proposed material or product.
3. Where selection is required, provide full set of all options.
4. Where non-specified products are proposed, provide full set of all options.

**E. Shop Drawings and Calculations**



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/06/2017

1. Contents: Each shop drawing submittal shall consist of the following:
2. Title Block:
  - a. Project name and address
  - b. Number of submittal
  - c. Date of submittal
  - d. Name and address of the Communications Contractor
  - e. Drawing scale
3. Diagrams showing evidence of compliance with Contract Documents and coordination with other trades.
4. Associated wiring diagrams of all equipment, with types and model numbers specified under these Contract Documents.
5. Submit drawings (to scale) showing:
  - a. Point-to-point wiring diagrams for all cables installed under this work
  - b. Detailed plan views and elevations of all telecommunications spaces showing racks, termination blocks and cable paths
  - c. Equipment and wall elevations, mounting locations and dimensions and labeling of equipment
  - d. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - e. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
  - f. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.
  - g. Drawings to show evidence of coordination with other trades
  - h. Sample reports showing the proposed format for cable test reports
  - i. Fully dimensioned housing and mounting drawings, including information on finishes.
  - j. Specific notation of field measurements at accurate scale.
  - k. Identification of specific products and materials used.
  - l. Cross-reference all related Contract Documents (drawings, detail numbers, Specifications sections, etc.)
  - m. Compliance with specified standards.



- n. Dimensions at accurate scale.
- 6. Submit calculations for:
  - a. Confirmation of pathways sizing
  - b. WLAN coverage
  - c. Grounding
  - d. Seismic restraint components
- 7. Preparation and Transmittal
  - a. Do not reproduce Contract Documents as shop drawings.
  - b. Provide space for action marking adjacent to the title block.
- F. Submit all shop drawings submittals for each system, subsystem, or unit of work as one submittal. Pull Schedules
  - 1. Contents: The schedules shall include, but are not limited to:
    - a. Cover Sheet
    - b. Project name and address
    - c. Number of pull schedule submittal.
    - d. Date of pull schedule submittal.
    - e. Name and address of the Communications Contractor.
  - 2. Schedule fields shall reflect labeling fields.
  - 3. Schedule fields shall include, as appropriate:
    - a. Sequential line number
    - b. Outlet labeling
    - c. Cable labeling
    - d. Cable Length
    - e. Jack labeling
    - f. Patch Panel/Termination Frame label
    - g. Position/port numbers
    - h. Rack labeling
- G. Factory and Field Test Reports
  - 1. Contents: Each field test submittal shall consist of the following:



- a. Cover Sheet
  - b. Project name and address
  - c. Number of submittal
  - d. Date of submittal
  - e. Name and address of the Communications Contractor
  - f. Table of Contents
  - g. Component (cable, system, equipment, etc) type and number
  - h. Page number(s)
  - i. Page number(s) of the corresponding Specification or Drawing number(s) of the corresponding Contract Drawings.
2. Component test results as specified.
  3. Preparation and Transmittal
    - a. During construction submit hard copies printed in a summary format showing one line item per cable tested for all cables. Each line must show the full cable label, test type, cable length, date and time tested and the test result, sorted by cable label. Submit hard copies of the full test result printout for the cables of the furthest two and closest two outlets. Submit a soft copy of the complete test results of all cables tested.
    - b. Submit test results no later than five days after the date of testing.
    - c. Post construction submit hard copies of both the summary and full test format for all cables installed, sorted by cable label. Submit a soft copy consisting of the complete test results.
    - d. Submit manufacturer's test record for each reel of cable delivered to the project copies of such data are to be kept for inclusion in the documentation and made available to the Commissioner upon request
- H. As-Builts (Record Documents)
1. Contents: Each submittal shall consist of the following:
    - a. Title Block
    - b. Project name and address
    - c. Number of submittal
    - d. Installation schedule, including all cross-connection and patching schedule
    - e. Date of submittal



- f. Name and address of the Communications Contractor
  - g. Drawing scale
  - h. Floor plans indicating outlet locations and labels.
2. The as-built drawings shall include, but are not limited to block diagrams, frame and cable labeling, cable termination points, equipment room layouts and frame installation details. The as-builts shall include all field changes made up to construction completion:
- a. Field directed changes to pull schedule.
  - b. Station cable routing changes.
  - c. Riser cable routing or location changes.
  - d. Associated detail drawings.
3. (2) sets of Operation and Maintenance Manuals including wiring diagrams, parts lists, shop drawings and manufacturers' information on all equipment and cables provide by the Contractor. Manuals shall be provided in a high quality, 3-ring binder and completely indexed. Submit manuals to the Commissioner not more than 1 week after project completion.
4. Preparation and Transmittal
- a. Prepare one single package submittal for both base building and fit out package.
  - b. Prepare as-built packages in an AutoCAD Format.
  - c. Space for action markings shall be adjacent to the title block.
  - d. Provide (2) copies of Record Drawings and (1) electronic copy minimum AutoCAD 2010 format on CD
  - e. Voice cable cross connect schedule (cut sheet) showing detailed identification of cross-connects between riser (house pairs) and horizontal cable runs
- I. Qualifications
- 1. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
  - 2. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For floor-mounted cabinets, brackets, mounts, cable trays, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
    - a. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - b. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.



Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.

- c. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements
- J. Resubmittals will be reviewed for compliance with comments made on the original submittal only and should be marked with a resubmittal number and dated.

## **1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS, DEVIATIONS AND CHANGES**

### **A. Substitutions**

- 1. Substitutions for the main system components shall be equivalent products from one of the manufacturers included in the list of approved manufacturers.
- 2. The systems specified in this document shall be an end-to-end solution that is sourced from a single manufacturer or partnered manufacturers.
- 3. Any proposed substitution in whole or part, must be submitted for review and approval.
- 4. Any proposed substitutions shall conform to the Contract Documents. Supply proof acceptable to the Commissioner in the form of a written guarantee that the substituted product(s) meet or exceed the Specifications. The substitution must be accepted in writing by the Commissioner.

### **B. Deviations**

- 1. Any deviations or changes involving extra work are not permissible without prior review and written approval by the Commissioner.

## **1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect from loss or damage. Replace lost or damaged materials and equipment with new at no increase in Contract Sum.

## **1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

## **1.9 COORDINATION**

- A. Carefully check space requirements and the physical confines of the area of work to insure that all material can be installed in the spaces allotted thereto, including conduits and cable supports.
- B. Transmit to the Commissioner in a timely manner all information required for coordinating and related work to be provided in ample time for installation.
- C. Contractor shall note that the construction schedule may dictate that work must be carried out simultaneously on more than one floor.



- D. Attend weekly construction meetings, at the project site or other location, as requested by the Commissioner.
- E. The Contractor shall, without extra charge, make reasonable modifications (coordinated with the Commissioner) in the layout as needed to meet field conditions, prevent conflict with work of other trades, or for proper compliance with the design intent.
- F. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Commissioner with sufficient lead-time to ensure access to secure spaces, and to schedule work to avoid disturbing existing functional spaces - preferably by performing disruptive work at night/early morning hours.
- G. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of communications equipment:
  - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
  - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
  - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
  - 4. So connecting pathways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- H. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- I. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for communications items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- J. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Firestopping".

#### **1.10 CERTIFICATION AND WARRANTY**

- A. All work and all items of equipment and materials shall be warranted for a minimum period of one year from the date of acceptance of the work. Where a manufacturer's warranty is longer than one year, the Contractor shall offer the extended warranty. The Contractor shall, upon notification of any defective items, repair or replace such items within 24 hours without additional cost, all to the satisfaction of the Commissioner.
- B. Furnish a warranty in accordance with DDC General Conditions.
- C. Furnish a manufacturer's "Permanent Link" performance warranty for all EIA/TIA 568-B category 6 workstation cables for a minimum period of 25 years from the date of acceptance of the work. Where a manufacturer's warranty is longer than 25 years, the Contractor shall offer the longer warranty. The "Permanent Link" Performance Warranty shall be issued and signed by the component manufacturer and shall list City of New York as the holder of the warranty. The "Permanent Link" Performance Warranty shall cover labor and material for all "Link" components. Describe your ability of offer such a manufacturer's extended warranty.



## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SLEEVES FOR PATHWAYS AND CABLES**

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral water-stop, unless otherwise indicated.

### **2.2 SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Approved equal.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of pathway or cable.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic, or Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

### **2.3 GROUT**

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.



- C. **Headroom Maintenance:** If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. **Equipment:** Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both communications equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. **Right of Way:** Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.
- F. **Cutting, patching, painting and restoration of any existing surfaces damaged performing the work under the scope.**

### **3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS**

- A. **Communications penetrations occur when pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.**
- B. **Concrete Slabs and Walls:** Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. **Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.**
- D. **Fire-Rated Assemblies:** Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. **Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.**
- F. **Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.**
- G. **Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.**
- H. **Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry**
  - 1. **Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.**
- I. **Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:** Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. **Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations:** Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pathway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal pathway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. **Roof-Penetration Sleeves:** Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.



- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### **3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION**

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### **3.4 IDENTIFICATIONS**

- A. Refer to Division 27 Section "Identification for Communications Systems"
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems"

### **3.5 GROUNDING**

- A. Refer to Division 27 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems"
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems"

### **3.6 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for communications installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Firestopping."

**END OF SECTION 27 05 00**



**SECTION 27 05 53  
IDENTIFICATION FOR TELECOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. The work shall consist of but not limited to:
  - 1. Provide the material and labor to label all components of the Premises Distribution Systems which includes but not limited to:
    - a. All copper and fiber optic backbone cables, and associated termination frames and panels.
    - b. All horizontal (station) cabling for copper and fiber, and associated termination patch panels, and outlet faceplates and connectors.
    - c. All other equipment and pathways related to Division 27, as described in TIA 606-A standard.
- B. Provide all required records for Class 1 Administration as described by of TIA 606-A standard.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 27 Section "Common Work Results For Communications"
  - 2. Division 27 Section "Telecommunications Cabinets, Racks, Frames and Enclosures"
  - 3. Division 27 Section "Communications Backbone Cabling."
  - 4. Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Submit actual Label samples. Failure to include actual label samples with the submittal package for this Section shall lead to rejection of the submittal.
- C. Submit labels on project record documents (as builds) reflecting the actual labels installed.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A.



#### 1.4 CLASS OF ADMINISTRATION

- A. The labeling scheme used shall meet all the requirements of a Class 1 facility as defined by ANSI/TIA/EIA 606-A, Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
- B. Type, format, wording, printing, and placement of labels shall be coordinated with Commissioner's existing administration plan. Items and/or issues not addressed in an established administration plan shall be addressed in accordance with TIA/EIA 606-A Standard (e.g. cable tray, conduits, junction boxes, grounding systems, etc).
- C. All annexes to the ANSI/TIA/EIA 606-A standard shall be followed, unless approved by the Commissioner, in writing.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the labeling scheme for the communications systems with the Commissioner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Comply with requirements of TIA/EIA-606-A and UL969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements of Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems".
- C. The identification for the communications systems shall meet all the requirements of a Class 3 facility as defined by ANSI/TIA/EIA 606-A, Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
- D. Identify all the components of the communications systems.
- E. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
- G. Type, format, wording, printing, and placement of labels shall be coordinated the established administration plan and shall be addressed in accordance with TIA/EIA 606-A Standard (e.g. cable tray, conduits, junction boxes, grounding systems, etc).
- H. Labeling System
  - 1. PC-based software, WINDOWS compatible, capable of supporting alpha numeric characters and Windows True Type Fonts.
  - 2. Compatible with laser printers.
  - 3. Label sizes supported:
    - a. Minimum: 0.8" W x 0.2" H.



- b. Maximum: 3.0" W x 12.0" H.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems".
- B. See Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for additional identification requirements. See Evaluations for discussion of TIA/EIA standard as it applies to this Section. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 1 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- C. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels; comply with TIA/EIA-606-A.
- D. See Evaluations for discussion about TIA/EIA standard as it applies to this Section. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 1 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- E. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- F. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- G. Cable and Wire Identification:
1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
  3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
  4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    - a. Individually number the wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or



- b. cabinet to a building-mounted device with name and number of particular device as shown.
  - c. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- H. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA 606-A, for the following:
- 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

**END OF SECTION ERROR! REFERENCE SOURCE NOT FOUND.**



**SECTION 271116  
TELECOMMUNICATIONS CABINETS, RACKS, FRAMES AND ENCLOSURES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This section encompasses requirements related to all communications spaces: Telecom Enclosure (TE1).
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Telecommunications mounting elements.
  - 2. Grounding.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications"
  - 2. Division 27 Section "Telecommunications Backbone Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
  - 3. Division 27 Section "Telecommunications Horizontal Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
  - 4. Division 28 Section "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Equipment racks and cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
  - 3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.



- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- D. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

#### 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install equipment frames and cable trays until spaces are enclosed and weather-tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and work above ceilings is complete.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with the telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
  - 1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Commissioner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
  - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
  - 3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. Cable Support: NRTL labeled. Cable support brackets shall be designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable. Cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 70 and UL 2043 for fire-resistant and low-smoke-producing characteristics.
  - 2. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - 3. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - 4. Straps and other devices.
- B. Ladder racks: Refer to Division 27 Section "Horizontal Cabling"
- C. Sleeves for Pathways and Cables: Refer to Division 27 Section "Common Work Results for Communications"



- D. Conduit and Boxes: Refer to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

## 2.2 TELECOMMUNICATIONS ENCLOSURE

- A. Termination racks for the mounting of fiber and copper patch panels, network equipment, and associated patch cords.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Middle Atlantic Products
  2. Or approved equal.
- C. SR Series Pivoting Rack:
1. EIA compliant 19" pivoting equipment rack, minimum of 42RU space for equipment in the vertical plane. Refer to drawings for the size.
  2. Fan knockouts on top and bottom shall allow installation of up to four 4-1/2" fans.
  3. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310 standard, 19-inch (480-mm) panel mounting.
  4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
  5. Front doors shall be reinforced 16-gauge steel, LVFD-40 (vented, 68% open area)
  6. All racks and cabinets shall be seismically rated and braced according to IBC 1621. The installation shall be signed and sealed by a professional engineer.
  7. Provide all mounting components and accessories to securely fix racks to floor.
  8. UL listed - 7N69.
  9. Load carrying capacity of at least 500 lb.
  10. Isolated-grounding kit for each frame.
  11. Horizontal cable managers:
    - a. 19-inch (480 mm) rack mountable, 1RU and 2RU high.
    - b. Provide front and rear cable organizers with minimum 5 support rings of 3.5-inch (89 mm) width protrusion minimum.
    - c. Snap on/off protective covers front and rear.

## 2.3 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNIT (PDU)

- A. Manufacturers



1. APC
2. Approved equal
- B. General PDU Requirements:
  1. cUL and UL listed
  2. Each cabinet and rack housing network equipment shall be provided with two (2) PDUs.
  3. Input Requirements:
    - a. Input Voltage: 208 volts 3PH
    - b. Maximum Line Current per phase: 20 amperes
    - c. Load Capacity 5700 VA
    - d. Input Connections: NEMA L21-20P
    - e. Cord Length: 10 feet
  4. Output Requirements:
    - a. Output Voltage: 120V
    - b. Output Connections: (42) NEMA 5-20R
  5. Maximum Height: 6 ft.

## 2.4 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:
  1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
  2. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide (6 mm thick by 100 mm wide) with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart.
  3. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- C. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## 2.5 LABELING

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.



### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and housing when so directed by service provider. The expansion project will reuse existing incoming service infrastructure.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.
- D. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
- E. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

#### **3.2 FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping". Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping".
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

#### **3.3 GROUNDING**

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

#### **3.4 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems".
- B. See Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for additional identification requirements. See Evaluations for discussion of TIA/EIA standard as it applies to this Section. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 1 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.
  - 1. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

**END OF SECTION 271116**



**SECTION 271323  
TELECOMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pathways.
  - 2. Fiber optic and UTP cable.
  - 3. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
  - 4. Cabling identification products.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. 270500 "Common work results for Communications"
  - 2. 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems"
  - 3. 271116 "Telecommunications Cabinets, Racks and Enclosures"

**1.2 BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION**

- A. Backbone cabling system will provide interconnections between the incoming service demark and the Telecom Enclosure (TC) in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers.
- B. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-C.0, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Commissioner.
  - 2. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
  - 3. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:
    - a. Patch panels.



- b. Patch cords.
- 4. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
- 5. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Maintenance data.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- E. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PATHWAYS**

- A. All pathways for communications systems shall comply with TIA/EIA-569-A and BICSI Telecom Distribution Manual.
- B. Comply with the requirements of Division 26 Sections "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems", "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".



- C. Refer to section 27 15 00 for additional pathway information.

## **2.2 UTP CABLE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  2. CommScope, Inc.
  3. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT.
  4. Siemon.
  5. Approved equal.
- B. Description: 100-ohm, 25-pair UTP, covered with a gray thermoplastic jacket.
1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
  2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
  3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 3.
  4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    - a. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR, complying with UL 1666.

## **2.3 FIBER OPTIC CABLE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Corning.
  2. CommScope, Inc.
  3. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT.
  4. Siemon.
  5. Approved equal.
- B. Description: multi-mode inside plant optical fiber, OM3 type, with fiber counts as indicated on drawings, with mechanical and transmission performance specifications that meet or exceed ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.3
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.0
  2. Comply with TIA/EIA-598-C.3



3. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
  - a. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR, complying with UL 1666.

#### **2.4 UTP CABLE HARDWARE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Panduit Corp.
  2. Siemon Co.
  3. CommScope.
  4. Approved equal.
- B. General Requirements for Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.2, for connecting hardware.
- C. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 3. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- D. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
  1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

#### **2.5 FIBER OPTIC CABLE HARDWARE**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Corning.
  2. Panduit Corp.
  3. Siemon.
  4. CommScope.
  5. Approved equal.
- B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.3.
- C. Multi mode fiber optic connectors shall as a minimum conform to the following specifications:
  1. Duplex LC multi mode connector



2. Manufacturer recommended connector for optimal performance with approved cable type
3. Durability: < 0.2dB change, 500 re-matings, FOTP-21
4. Reflectance loss: -20dB minimum
5. Insertion loss of mated pair at 1310 nm and 1550 nm to be less than 0.7 dB at acceptance for every connector
6. Optimally keyed, allowing reproducible mating conditions each time a connection is made between connector and coupler
7. Fitted with color-coded strain relief boots to ensure durable and robust connections
8. Fitted with a tight fitting, polymer cap over the connector to prevent ingress of dirt and dust until the connector is fitted to a coupler
9. All connectors to be straight-pull and side-pull resistant, preventing accidental optical disconnect; comply with FOTP-21

## 2.6 FIBER OPTIC PATCH CORDS

- A. Install and connect equipment in the racks. Contractor shall include patch cords duplex multi-mode fiber for 25% of multi-mode strands installed and for additional cords. Coordinate patch cord length for a neat installation.
- B. Description: Optical fiber patch cords for use with patch panels.
- C. Specifications:
  1. Fiber type: multi-mode, tight buffer construction.
  2. Patch cord outside diameter: 3.0mm
  3. Patch cord minimum length: 3m
  4. Connectors of same specifications as the one used in the patch panels.
  5. Cords shall meet or exceed the minimum mechanical and optical characteristics for optical fiber patch cords as specified in ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.3.
- D. Configuration: 2-strand, Duplex construction; to match optical patch panel connector type.
- E. Acceptable manufacturers:
  1. Corning.
  2. Panduit Corp.



3. Siemon Co.
4. CommScope.
5. Approved Equal

## **2.7 GROUNDING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems." for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## **2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A, TIA-598, and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Refer to section 27 05 53.

## **2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
- C. Field test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-C.0.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES**

- A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

### **3.2 WIRING METHODS**

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.



- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS**

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A.
- B. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings." Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
- C. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- D. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- E. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- F. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
  - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
  - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
  - 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
  - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.
  - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- G. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

### **3.4 INSTALLATION OF CABLES**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.0.
  - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6 "Cable Termination Practices."
  - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain un-terminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.



5. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  6. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
  8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4 "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. UTP Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
  2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Fiber Optic Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.0.
  2. Do not exceed minimum bend radius recommended by the manufacturer at all times
  3. Use innerduct at any times the fiber cables are mixed with other media type in the same pathway.
- E. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
  2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
  3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- F. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.



- G. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
  2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
  3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
  4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
    - d. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
    - e. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).



### 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping." Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A "Firestopping."
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

### 3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Administration Class: 1.
  - 2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. See Evaluations for discussion about TIA/EIA standard as it applies to this Section. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 1 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- C. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations.
- D. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- F. Cable and Wire Identification:



1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
  3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
  4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    - a. Individually number the wiring conductors connected to terminal strips and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device with name and number of particular device.
    - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
  5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware.
- G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA 606-A, for the following:
1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

### **3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Visually inspect UTP jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-C.0.
  2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
  3. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
  4. Test fiber optic cable in accordance with TIA/EIA-568-C.3.
- B. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.



**Department of  
Design and  
Construction**

FMS No. - PV028-ISS  
Issue Date - 12/05/2016

- C. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - 1. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 271323**



## SECTION 271500

### TELECOMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pathways.
2. UTP cabling.
3. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
4. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
5. Cabling identification products.
6. Cabling administration system.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 27 Section "Common Work Results For Communications".
2. Division 27 Section "Telecommunications Cabinets, Racks and Enclosures".
3. Division 27 Section "Identification for Communications Systems".

##### 1.2 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware (Cabling Subsystem 1) provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the Telecom Enclosure (TE1). This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
- B. TIA/EIA-568-C.0 specifies that the cable lengths are dependent on the application and upon the media chosen. All Ethernet applications are limited to 100 m on UTP media; therefore the maximum permanent link length is 95 m (295'). Analog phone, fax and ISDN applications are allowed to exceed this limitation.
- C. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
- D. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.



### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2 when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by the Commissioner.
  - 2. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
  - 3. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
    - a. Cross-connects.
    - b. Patch panels.
    - c. Patch cords.
  - 4. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
  - 5. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
    - a. Samples: For workstation outlets, jacks, jack assemblies, and faceplates for color selection and evaluation of technical features.
    - b. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
    - c. Source quality-control reports.
    - d. Field quality-control reports.
    - e. Maintenance data.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.



1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- E. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PATHWAYS**

- A. All pathways for communications systems shall comply with TIA/EIA-569-A and BICSI Telecom Distribution Manual.
- B. Comply with the requirements of Division 26 Sections "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems", "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems".
- C. Cable Support:
  1. Provide all fittings and accessories required to protect, support and install a cable tray support system.
  2. NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  3. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  4. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  5. Straps and other devices.
- D. Cable Trays:
  1. Wire basket style tray for distribution of backbone and horizontal cabling. Provide all fittings and accessories required to protect, support and install the cable tray system. Provide cable drop outs to maintain proper bend radius for cables leaving the tray.
  2. Cable Tray Material: Metal, suitable for indoors, and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inches (0.012 mm) thick.
  3. Cable tray size as shown on the floor plans. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).



4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Legrand - Cablofil
  - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - c. GS Metals Corp.
  - d. Wiremold
  - e. Approved equal
5. Provide all fittings and accessories required to protect, support and install a ladder rack support system.
6. Provide cable runaway radius drop at cable transitions from tray to racks.
7. Provide grounding clamps and #6 AWG ground wire.

## 2.2 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  2. Simon Co. (The).
  3. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
  4. Approved equal.
- B. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket.
  1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
  2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.0 for performance specifications.
  3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6.
  4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
    - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.



**2.3 UTP CABLE HARDWARE**

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Panduit Corp.
  2. Siemon Co. (The).
  3. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
  4. Approved equal.
- B. **General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware:** Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. **Connecting Blocks:** 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
1. **Number of Terminals per Field:** One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- D. **Patch Panel:** Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
1. **Number of Jacks per Field:** One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- E. **Jacks and Jack Assemblies:** Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
- F. **Patch Cords:** Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch (1200 mm), 72-inch (1800-mm), 96-inch (2400 mm), and 120" (3600 mmm) lengths; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end.
1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
  2. Provide one patch cord for each outlet plus 25% spare at each end.
  3. Provide station cords in 96"(90%) and 120"(10%) lengths
  4. Provide various lengths of patch cords at the CC end as to assure a neat installation.
  5. Provide unit prices for each length of patch cords to be used for additional patch cords as needed.



## 2.4 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

- A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- B. Workstation Outlets: Two and Four -port-connector assemblies mounted in single faceplate. Refer to detail drawings for configurations.
  - 1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."
  - 2. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."
  - 3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP work area cords.
    - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
  - 4. Factory labeled by silk-screening or engraving for stainless steel faceplates.
  - 5. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
  - 6. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

## 2.5 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Telecommunications Grounding Bus Bar
  - 1. The TGB must be a predrilled copper busbar with holes for use with standard-sized lugs, have a minimum dimensions of 6.3 mm (0.25 in) thick by 51 mm (2 in) wide, and variable length. It must be listed by an NRTL.
  - 2. Hole patterns on the Busbars shall accommodate two-hole lugs per the recommendation of BICSI and ANSI-J-STD-607-A standards.
  - 3. Insulators shall electrically isolate Busbars from the wall, or other mounting surfaces, thereby controlling the current path.
  - 4. Provide required stainless steel hardware to fasten the two-hole ground lugs to the Busbar.
- D. Grounding Conductors
  - 1. Telecommunications grounding connectors shall have a minimum size of 6/0 AWG.



2. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone shall be size 2/0 AWG.
3. All Telecommunication grounding conductors shall be copper conductors, calculated so that no more than 40 V can be present along its entire length.

## **2.6 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS**

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Identification for Communications Systems".
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems".

## **2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 WIRING METHODS**

- A. Cabling and its installation shall comply with authority having jurisdiction (AHJ) and applicable regulations.
- B. The cable shall not be subjected to pulling tension exceeding the pulling strength rating of the cable.
- C. The cable bend radius shall be greater than or equal to the minimum bend radius requirement during and after installation.
- D. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
  2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- E. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.



- F. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- G. Maintain compatibility with the environmental conditions by means of enhanced cabling components, protection, separation, and isolation applicable to each area; refer to Annex F of ANSI/TIA-568-C.0.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
- B. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings." Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
- C. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- D. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- E. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- F. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
  - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
  - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
  - 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
  - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.
  - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- G. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
  - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-C.0.
  - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."



3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
  4. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
  5. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:
    - a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
    - b. Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.
  6. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
  7. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  8. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  9. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  10. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  11. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
  12. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
  13. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. UTP Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2. and TIA/EIA-568-C.0
  2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Open-Cable Installation:



1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
  2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
  3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- F. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
  2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
    - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).



3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
  - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
  - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - d. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

### 3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 A WG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.



- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Administration Class: 1.
  - 2. Color-code cross-connect fields. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 1 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- D. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of TIA/EIA-606-A. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by the Commissioner.
- F. Cable and Wire Identification:
  - 1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
  - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
  - 4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
    - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or



cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.

- b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
5. Identification within Connector Fields in Communications Rooms and Communications Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- G. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.
  1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
2. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
4. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
  - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
5. UTP Performance Tests:
  - a. Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
    - 1) Wire map.
    - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).



- 3) Insertion loss.
  - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
  - 5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
  - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
  - 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
  - 8) Return loss.
  - 9) Propagation delay.
  - 10) Delay skew.
6. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.
- a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
  - b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.
- B. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the maintenance personnel in cable-plant management operations, including moves adds and changes, and keeping records of cabling assignments and revisions when extending wiring to establish new workstation outlets.

**END OF SECTION 271500**



**SECTION 27 41 16  
INTEGRATED AUDIO-VIDEO SYSTEMS & EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 CONDITIONS & REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Refer to Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms, Conditions of Contract, and Division 1, General Requirements. All of the provisions listed or specified therein apply to work under this section.

**1.2 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Scope of Work: This specification section defines the audio and audiovisual systems to be installed at Issue Project Room in Brooklyn, NY.

B. Definition Of Terms:

1. The term "shall" is mandatory; the term "will" is informative; the term "should" is advisory; and the term "provide" means furnish and install.
2. The term "custom" indicates systems or components that shall be fabricated by the Contractor based on these specifications and drawings.
3. The term "A/R" indicates components and quantities as required.
4. The term "NIC" refers to work or equipment that is not in contract covered in this section.
5. The term "future" indicates equipment that will be added to the systems by the City of New York or Commissioner at a later date. Provisions shall be made for this equipment.
6. The term "or equal" indicates equal in materials, size, color, design, function, efficiency of specified, and conforming with base bid manufacturer/model.

C. Section Includes:

1. Supply and install a turnkey audiovisual system, to include equipment and materials, whether specifically mentioned herein or not, to ensure a complete and operating system.
2. Generate submittal information for the complete fabrication, installation and wiring of the system. Provide the on-site installation and wiring, and provide ongoing supervision and coordination during implementation.
3. Design, engineer and provide complete, all means of support, suspension, attachment, fastening, bracing, and restraint (hereinafter "support") of the Work of this Section. Provide engineering of such support by parties licensed to perform work of this type in the Project jurisdiction.
4. Provide for the initial adjustment of the systems as herein prescribed and provide test equipment for the system checkout and acceptance tests. Prior to the systems acceptance tests, submit an initial testing and tuning report showing methods and results for tests performed.
5. Provide on the job training in the operation and maintenance of the systems for personnel designated by the City of New York.
6. Provide one-year warranty from date of system acceptance for systems installed.

D. Related Documents:

1. Refer to Architectural Drawings for architectural integration details of audiovisual equipment.



2. Refer to Communications and Electrical drawings and specifications for related work.
3. Refer to 26 52 00 for Audiovisual Electrical for infrastructure related to Audiovisual systems.
4. Refer to Section 11 52 32 for Projection Screens
5. Refer to Audiovisual Drawings for AV device layouts and locations, conduit sizes, and functional block diagrams.

### 1.3

#### **SUBMITTALS**

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with the Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Section.
- B. Bid Submittal
  1. Provide in accordance with the items in this section.
  2. Schedule of Values: Provide a Schedule of Values and quantities for equipment to be supplied. Each piece of equipment shall be individually priced. Equipment costs shall reflect required modifications and accessories. Equipment schedules in Part 4 should be used for bid submission.
  3. Non Equipment Costs: Furnish the total non-equipment and Service cost schedule and separately a list of non-equipment costs for each area or system, by the following categories:
    - a. Engineering: Including required design, drawings, run sheets, instruction manuals, etc.
    - b. Pre Installatibn: Including fabrication, modification, assembly, rack wiring, etc., performed on the Contractor's premises.
    - c. Installation: Including on-site installation and wiring, coordination and supervision, testing, checkout, training, etc., performed on the premises.
    - d. Software Development: Including required design, testing, debugging, documentation, etc.
    - e. Documentation: Including equipment manuals, as-built drawings, software instruction manuals and program listings, user instruction panels, etc.
    - f. Training: Including training sessions with staff as noted in this specification.
    - g. General and Administrative: Including G & A expenses, shipping, insurance, and guarantees.
    - h. Project Management: Including project schedule management, and resource management.
    - i. Warranty and first year's service: See section 1.7 for warranty and first year's service requirements.
    - j. Taxes: Including applicable Local, State, and Federal taxes.
  4. Extended Warranties, Software Support and Service Contract:
    - a. See section 1.7
    - b. The cost for these shall not be commingled with the costs for the systems base bid.
    - c. Submit separate costs for hourly "on call" service, both in house and in shop.
  5. System Enhancements: Submit recommendations that will enhance the performance of the system, or reduce costs without loss of performance, in the bid submission. Suggestions that are of value to the City of New York will be taken into consideration in the evaluation of the bid returns. Such proposals shall be made as "alternates", with the appropriate cost modifications shown separate and apart from the costs of the system "as specified".
  6. Sub Contract Information:



- a. Identify sub-contractors and their responsibilities and qualifications in the bid submission.
  - b. The supervision of such sub contracted work cannot be intermittent. Provide continuous supervision of subcontractors during the installation.
7. Key Personnel: Provide information on the Project Manager, Field Installation Supervisor and other relevant personnel who will be assigned to the project. Provide name and credentials of Crestron DigitalMedia Certified Engineer (DMC-E)
8. Schedule of Implementation:
- a. Submit a scheduling plan with the bid return indicating the various pertinent terminal dates after award of contract for completion of design, pre installation work, on site installation work, and testing and acceptance.
  - b. Obtain projected dates when the relevant areas will be available for the on site installation.
  - c. Investigate potential contract, union, and scheduling questions, and guarantee compliance with requirements and regulations in effect on the job site.
  - d. It is possible that certain portions of the work described herein will be ready for use prior to the completion of the entire scope of this specification. The City of New York reserves the right to use substantially completed systems without obligation to the Contractor and without implying acceptance of the systems or equipment so used.
- C. Conduit Backboxes and Electrical Systems Verification Letter
1. Within 30 days of contract award, the AV contractor shall review all relevant information pertaining to the AV systems low-voltage conduit, backboxes, and line-voltage electrical work to be performed by Division 26. A formal memo, outlining acceptance (or desired changes) of the contract drawing shall be provided. Failure to provide this memo indicates acceptance of, and liability for, the conduit, backboxes and electrical systems as indicated in the contract drawings.
- D. Structural Backing and Support
1. For all AV equipment requiring anchorage per applicable code, the contractor is responsible for the anchorage, additional structural support to the main structure if required, the anchorage design and detailing, and for obtaining appropriate approval for the anchorage. Submit calculations and details prepared and sealed by an engineer licensed in the Project jurisdiction for review by A/E of Record.
- E. Systems Submittal 1 – Prior to Fabrication
1. Panels, plates, and designation strips, including details and samples relating to terminology, engraving, finish and color.
  2. Custom designed consoles, tables, carts, support bases, and shelves.
  3. Schematic drawings of custom circuitry.
  4. Unusual equipment modifications.
- F. Systems Submittal 2 - Prior to Assembly and Installation
1. System functional block drawings: For video, audio, and control systems, include equipment names and model numbers (e.g., "Program Amplifier Crown CTs-8200"). Clearly label each item of equipment shown on the drawing with the manufacturer's terminal number or input/output designation (e.g., "Mic 1 In", or "Record Out Left").



2. Equipment List, using Schedule of Values provided here as a template.
3. Equipment rack and patch panel assignment drawings: Provide scaled equipment rack elevations and full scale patch bay drawings with proposed labeling. Labeling on the functional diagrams, rack elevations, patch panels, and on the equipment controls shall be consistent and uniform.
4. Provide full-scale drawings of custom plates and panels indicating exact lettering, critical dimensions, and finish.
5. Run sheets or field wiring drawings: Clearly show at each terminal point the type of connector to be used and include typical wiring details of each connector. Note where shields are connected and where they will float to ensure the integrity of the grounding system. Call out wire types and color codes where appropriate. Assign wire numbers and patchbay locations to every wire and patch point in the drawing.
6. Equipment modification drawings: Include details of modifications that change or void manufacturer warranties.
7. Mounting details: Provide stamped and signed by an Engineer licensed in the Project jurisdiction for work of this type. Show loads, type and strength of connections, sizes, dimensions, materials, etc. Show calculations on drawings or in bound volume for review by Authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Final schematic drawings of custom circuitry: Include receptacle pin numbers and component callouts. Show details of custom resistive combining networks, filters, or pads that may be required in the assembly. Show point to point wiring drawings for control system modules and interfaces and for switches and relays in audio, video, or control systems.
9. Test Equipment: Provide a list of test equipment, including manufacturer, description, and model number, of equipment that is expected to be employed in the test and adjustment of the systems specified.

**G. Substantial Completion Submittal:**

1. Notification: Provide written notification to the City of New York and General Contractor when initial checkout is complete, normal settings are documented, as-built and operational documentation are complete, and systems are available for final acceptance tests.
2. Submit equipment manufacturer's operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of equipment.
3. Submit "as built" drawings for systems and items indicated as "Custom".
4. Submit System Operation and Maintenance Manual:
  - a. Describe in the "Operation" section, typical procedures necessary to activate each system to provide for the functional requirements as listed under the System Description. Include normal settings for equalizer, amplifier, signal processing, and user operated controls (as established during system check out) in tabular or pictorial form.
  - b. Provide in the "Maintenance" section, a recommended maintenance schedule with reference to the applicable pages in the manufacturer's maintenance manuals. Where inadequate information is provided by the manufacturer, provide the information necessary for proper maintenance.
  - c. List of Replacement Parts: Provide a list of necessary and recommended replacement parts for a normal maintenance period of one year.
  - d. Assume the reader of this manual to be technically competent, but unfamiliar with this particular facility.



5. Processing Software: Provide copy of any / all processing equipment programs, project specific programming and screen printouts if available.

#### 1.4 **QUALITY ASSURANCE**

##### A. Contractor Qualifications:

1. Contractor shall be a firm with at least three (3) years experience in the fabrication, assembly, and installation of Audiovisual systems of similar magnitude and quality as specified herein. Specific experience shall be in presentation classroom/conference room systems, audio and video post production systems, and radio station systems. Provide documentation of experience with the bid submission. Provide subcontractors if required to meet these guidelines.
2. Firm shall outline the general scope of past projects, normal staffing levels, and union status of shop and field installation personnel.
3. Firm shall list any projects of each type listed above of similar scope successfully completed, indicating the location, type of system installed, total contract amount, date completed, and include persons and telephone number to contact.
4. Firm shall submit confirmation of current state or local contracting licenses, as required to perform the work under this section.

B. All materials and equipment supplied by the Contractor shall be new and shall meet or exceed the latest published specification of the manufacturer in all respects. The Contractor shall supply the latest model, available at the time of bidding, of each piece of equipment.

C. The materials and completed Work of this Section shall conform to the applicable requirements of all current local and state codes, and of the following reference codes:

1. Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and all amendments thereto
2. National Electrical Code, ANSI C1, as amended by all state and local codes
3. Uniform Building Code
4. California Building Code
5. All Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ)

D. Manufacturers Warranties: To maintain certain manufacturers' warranties, said equipment must be installed, aligned, and serviced by those installers authorized by said manufacturer to perform those duties. If the Contractor is not authorized by said manufacturer, it is his sole responsibility to make the appropriate arrangements and bear all cost and consequences thereof. The system warranty shall be for a minimum of 360 calendar days from the date of final system(s) acceptance

#### 1.5 **DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING**

A. Bear costs of shipping to the site, and of unusual storage requirements. Make appropriate arrangements, and coordinate with authorized personnel at the site, for the proper acceptance, handling, protection, and storage of equipment so delivered.

B. The City of New York may furnish equipment that shall be installed by the contractor. The Contractor shall inform the City of New York of the appropriate receiving location, if not the job site. The Contractor shall bear all costs of receiving, storage, and future shipping after receipt.



1.6 **WARRANTY & MAINTENANCE SUPPORT**

A. **Warranty**

1. Basic warranty provided by the Audiovisual Integrator shall include repair or replacement for one year from Final Acceptance on all Audiovisual equipment provided (including products having manufacturer's warranty of less than one year) and all Audiovisual integrator workmanship. Basic warranty shall be provided at no cost. Consumable items such as lamps, batteries, tapes, etc. are not covered by Basic Warranty. Manufacturers' warranties on Audiovisual Equipment of more than one year shall remain in force beyond the Audiovisual Integrator's Basic Warranty Period.
2. During the Basic Warranty period the Audiovisual Integrator shall:
  - a. Provide telephone support within 4 hours of a call requesting service.
  - b. Provide on-site support within 24 hours of a call requesting service not corrected by telephone support.
  - c. Repair or replace faulty items within 72 hours of on-site service or within manufacturers' specific repair program, whichever is quicker.
3. Audiovisual Integrator shall not involve the City of New York with removing, re-installing equipment, shipping or receiving equipment being repaired under Basic Warranty, nor shall the City of New York be responsible for any shipping or freight charges associated with any item under warranty.
4. Audiovisual Consultant and the City of New York shall be copied with all paperwork related to any and all warranty work during Basic Warranty period.
5. The Basic Warranty period will commence no sooner than the date of first beneficial use by the City of New York and no later than the date of contract closeout.

B. **Preventive Maintenance**

1. Within the term of the one-year Basic Warranty period the Audiovisual Integrator shall provide, at no additional cost, periodic Preventative Maintenance on the installed Audiovisual Systems to ensure proper ongoing maintenance and operation.
2. A minimum of (4) four Preventive Maintenance visits shall be provided.
3. Preventative Maintenance shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - a. Adjustments to video projectors and lens cleaning; checking projector lamp life and replacing lamps and filter kits (using spare lamps provided under this contract) if usage exceeds 85% of projector manufacturers' lifecycle rating or blowing out filters if lamp/filter kit is not due for replacing.
  - b. Cleaning out DVD carriage and laser head.
  - c. Checking audio system settings.
  - d. Any other maintenance and adjustments necessary to ensure that the Audiovisual System is in proper working order.
4. Any problems or issues noted by the users or Commissioner shall be documented and completely resolved at each of the scheduled visits.
5. Preventative Maintenance Schedule:
  - a. 90 days (+/- 15) after the commencement of the Warranty Period
  - b. 180 days (+/- 15) after the commencement of the Warranty Period



- c. 270 days (+/- 15) after the commencement of the Warranty Period
  - d. 20 days (+/- 10) before the end of the Warranty Period
- C. Extended Warranty
- 1. The Audiovisual Integrator shall provide an optional (to be procured under separate contract) Extended Warranty that covers the terms in both the Basic Warranty and Preventive Maintenance section but will extend those services beyond the first year coverage.
  - 2. The Audiovisual Integrator shall provide price-break pricing for extending in the second, third, fourth, and fifth consecutive years of system operation as well as a per annum renewal for extending after the initial year of coverage.
- D. Software Support
- 1. The Bidder shall also offer an optional (to be procured under separate contract) annual Software Maintenance contract. This shall cover all software provided as part of this systems and/or written for this system, and shall include both routine upgrades to applications and operating systems, as well as any modifications to software that may be required by the City of New York. The Software Maintenance contract shall commence immediately after expiration of the warranty period and continue for three years. Maintenance visits will be four times per year and shall be scheduled to coincide with the periodic system maintenance of the system.

1.7 **SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. The AV system will include the following systems:

System or Room Description/Name

Issue Project Room AV Infrastructure

- B. Issue Project Room AV Infrastructure
- 1. Modes of Operation:
    - a. Events: The main performance space of Issue Project Room will be used for a variety performance types, including amplified and unamplified music, dance, film/video and installations. Flexibility is a priority. IPR will be providing equipment at a later date, and the current scope is limited to providing cabling and connection points for several forms of analog and digital media. Infrastructure provided includes patching in an equipment rack in the back-of-house area, cabling from the rack to multiple panels in the main performance space, and a cable tray at high level for additional cabling with a cable pass into the back-of-house area. Pipes are provided at high level for mounting AV equipment when needed.
    - b. Recordings: The main performance space will occasionally be used for recordings. On these occasions, the green room may be used as a control room. A cable pass and connectivity will be provided in this room for recording purposes.



- c. **Show Relay/Archival Playback:** The main lobby space will be used to playback audio and visual media from the Issue Project Room archives and provide show relay during performances. For this purpose, additional AV connectivity is provided in the lobby.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 CABLE SPECIFICATIONS**

- A. It is the Contractor's responsibility to engineer all cabling in accordance with manufacturer recommendations, performance specifications, and design criteria herein. Design criteria specify minimum requirements; full engineering is required by the Contractor.
- B. Unless otherwise called for in these specifications and drawing the following cables, or their approved equals, shall be used in these systems:

Signal	Length	Cable Description	Part Number
Unspecified / Tie, Audio Cable	< 500 ft	Single pair, twisted, shielded, 24 AWG stranded, 110 ohm	Belden 1800B
Unspecified / Tie, Coax Cable	< 300 ft	Coaxial, RG-6/U, 75 ohm, solid, foil & braid shield	Belden 1694A
Unspecified/Tie, VGA Cable	<50 ft	Foil & braid shield composite of: (3) Coaxial, 26 AWG, 75 ohm; (2) STP; (7) Conductors	Extron MHRVGA
Unspecified / Tie, UTP Cable	< 300 ft	Cat 6a UTP	Siemon 9C6R4-A5-(xx)-AR1A
Unspecified / Tie, Fiber Cable	< 10000 ft	8-Strand, 125 μm, 1310/1550 nm, broadcast rating, single-mode fiber	OCC DX008D-SLX9KR
LAN	< 300 ft	Cat 6a UTP	Siemon 9C6R4-A5-(xx)-R1A
Relay Control Cable	< 500 ft	Single Pair, Twisted Sheilded, 22 AWG Stranded	Belden 9451



- C. Where plenum rated cables are required, the plenum rated equivalents of the above shall be used. Where plenum-rated cable is used, provide plenum-rated and approved tie-wraps and supports (Thomas & Betts #TYV525M, or approved equal).
- D. Cut cables (except video, camera and RGBS cables that must be cut to an electrical length) to the length dictated by the run. For equipment mounted in drawers or on slides, provide the interconnecting cables with a service loop of appropriate length.
- E. Install no cable with a bend radius less than that recommended by the cable manufacturer.
- F. Clearly identify all cable with permanent, indelible labels corresponding to the drawing function within 6" of the cable connector or termination. Provide strain relief for cables. Provide connectors with metal shell/casing.
- G. Where cable is un-terminated, terminated on connectors without connection, or left in floor pockets, provide a minimum of 3' of free cable, coiled, unless otherwise noted. Use spiral wrap to group similar cable types.

## 2.2

### CONNECTORS

- A. Unless otherwise detailed herein, the following connectors or their approved equals shall be used.
  - 1. Audio (input): XLR (female) type, with locking tab, such as Switchcraft Y3FD.
  - 2. Audio (output): XLR (male) type, such as Switchcraft Y3MPC.
  - 3. Multimic Audio (input/output): 90-pin (female) type, such as ELCO 8016 090.
  - 4. Fiber: LC. Neutrik OpticalCON NO2-4FDW-1
  - 5. UTP Connectors: Refer to Section 271500 – Communications Horizontal Cabling.
  - 6. Video connectors of BNC (Coaxial) and RCA shall be:
    - a. Dual crimp or compression style nickel plated brass connector utilizing a gold plated center contact.
    - b. Connector and pin appropriately selected based on the specified cable as part of a manufacturer's approved assembly.
    - c. Crimp or compression tool and die sets utilized shall be approved by the manufacturer for the assembly.
    - d. Color coded via strain relief boot, isolation bushing or O-ring to designate video type. Color designations shall be as follows:
      - e.
      - f. RGBHV
        - 1) R: Red
        - 2) G: Green
        - 3) B: Blue
        - 4) H: Black
        - 5) V: White
    - g. YPbPr



- 1) Y: Green
- 2) Pb: Blue
- 3) Pr: Red

- h. SDI/HD-SDI: Orange
- i. Acceptable manufacturers: ADC, Extron, Tyco, Kings, Bomar, Canare, or Trompeter.

### 2.3

#### **CUSTOM WALL/FLOORBOX PLATES**

- A. The AV Contractor shall be responsible for developing panel details for all custom plates. Prior to fabrication he shall submit detailed drawings and samples as necessary of plate layouts and legends for Commissioner and Consultant approval. See drawings for preliminary faceplate details.
- B. All plates shall be equivalent in type, color and finish to other plates in the same room, unless otherwise specified by the Commissioner or City of New York.
- C. All wall mounted plates shall be painted as per the Commissioner unless otherwise noted.
- D. Unless otherwise noted, all customized floorbox plates shall be 0.125-inch thick brushed and anodized aluminum with 45-degree chamfered edges.
- E. Mounting screws shall be matching stainless or black Allen flat-head screws with lock washers.
- F. Custom-fabricate to size indicated on drawings.
- G. Black or white filled engraving, whichever provides the highest contrast to the plate color and finish.
- H. Typeface shall be 14 pt Helvetica Bold.
- I. Clearly engrave wall-mounted receptacle plates with alphanumeric identification of input type (i.e., mic, line, speaker, video etc) and corresponding audio or video patch field designation.
- J. Detailed shop drawings of device plates and panels showing all finishes, dimensions, labeling, number schemes, and cutout information shall be submitted prior to fabrication.
- K. Blank cover plates shall be provided at all wall, floor, and ceiling boxes that do not have device plates installed.
- L. On all non-connectorized plates, provide a grommeted hole in a blank plate. Acceptable: ProCo Plateworks/Captain NEMA or comparable by RCI, Wireworks, Whirlwind, Panel Authority, PanelCrafters, or custom by Audiovisual Integrator

### 2.4

#### **AV EQUIPMENT RACKS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Middle Atlantic, 300 Fairfield Road, Fairfield, NJ 07004, U.S.A
- B. Refer to drawings for indicative rack sizes and equipment list for model numbers.
- C. Standard EIA specifications: nominal 19-inches wide, number of spaces as indicated or required.



- D. Material shall be brushed and anodized Aluminum no thinner than 0.125 of an inch.
- E. Finish black anodized.
- F. White filled engraving.
- G. Typeface shall be 14 pt Helvetica Bold.
- H. Provide panel stiffeners as required to prevent panel deformation during normal plugging and switching operations.
- I. Mounting screws shall be matching stainless or black Allen flat-head screws with lock washers.
- J. Detailed shop drawings of device plates and panels showing all finishes, dimensions, labeling, number schemes, and cutout information shall be submitted prior to fabrication.

## **2.5 CUSTOM FABRICATION**

- A. **Electrical Power Connections:** Electrical power junction boxes and circuits will be provided by others. Provide required interconnections to the power system from these junction boxes to the equipment and equipment racks.
- B. **Remote Control Panels and Receptacle Plates.** Fabricate with 1/8 inch thick #6061 T6 aluminum material. Finish brushed with 150 grit paper. Anodized finish to be approved by the Commissioner.
- C. **Equipment Rack:** Provide power receptacle strips, with "U" ground outlets. Power receptacle strips shall be mounted on the rear interior of the rack space on the left side as viewed from the rear. Insulate power receptacle strips from the rack. Power receptacle strips shall be SGL Waber Company or approved equal. Provide UL-approved incandescent work light mounted on the upper left interior panel of each equipment rack.
- D. **Labeling:** Provide permanently mounted 1/32" thick by 1/4" high black lamicoide or anodized, brushed aluminum labels with 1/8" engraved lettering for each piece of equipment and every user-adjustable control and input on the audiovisual equipment.
- E. **Rack Mount Adapters and Security Covers:** Provide the appropriate factory or custom rack mount adapters for equipment installed in the audiovisual equipment rack, whether specifically itemized or not. Provide security covers for any adjustable signal processors.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 COORDINATION**

- A. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination with the Commissioner and the City of New York. Coordinate with the Millworker for any audiovisual items to be built or mounted into millwork, and contracting team for scheduling.

### **3.2 WORKMANSHIP**

- A. Cable integrity and associated terminations shall be thoroughly inspected, fully tested and guaranteed as free from defects, transpositions, opens-shorts, tight kinks, and damaged jacket insulation.



- B. Labor must be thoroughly competent and skilled, and work shall be executed in strict accordance with the best practices of the trade.

### **3.3 FABRICATION & INSTALLATION**

- A. All installation practices shall be in accordance with, but not limited to, these specifications and drawings. Installation shall be performed in accordance with the applicable standards, requirements, and recommendations of authorities having jurisdiction. Installation shall be performed in accordance with Manufacturer recommendations or best practices.
- B. If, in the opinion of the Contractor, an installation practice is desired or required, which is contrary to these specifications or drawings, a written request for modification shall be made to the Consultant. Modifications shall not commence without written approval from the Consultant.
- C. Provide intelligible, permanent identification on or adjacent to all patching jacks, connectors, receptacles, terminal blocks, meters, indicators, switches, equalizers, mixers, amplifiers, etc. The identification shall clearly indicate the function, or circuit.
- D. The Contractor must take such precautions as are necessary to guard against electromagnetic and electrostatic hum, to supply adequate ventilation, and to install the equipment to provide maximum safety to the operator.
- E. Care shall be exercised in wiring so as to avoid damage to the cables and to the equipment. All joints and connections shall be made with rosin-core solder or with mechanical connectors approved by the Consultant.
- F. All wire and cable shall be continuous and splice free for the entire length of run between designated connections or terminations.
- G. When connecting stranded wire to compression screw terminals do not tin the wire ends. When inserting wires into compression terminals take proper care to insert only the stripped portion.

### **3.4 EQUIPMENT RACK FABRICATION**

- A. Wire all racks completely in the shop. No internal rack wiring shall be done on the job site
- B. Provide horizontal lacing bars, as required.
- C. Install all rack-mounted equipment and devices in equipment racks in a logical, functional manner, demonstrative of signal flow within the respective system arranged for easy accessibility and convenient maintenance.
- D. Install equipment in racks with ventilating panels and forced ventilation as required to provide adequate ventilation and according to equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
- E. Provide cable adequate management in the rear of the rack for unobstructed visual inspection and easy maintenance of individual equipment items.
- F. Provide A.C. outlets within each rack, and appropriately circuited, with one (1) outlet per blank space.



- G. Provide adequate internal 120 volt incandescent illumination for each rack, with switch control.
- H. Provide at least one (1) each dedicated a.c. service outlet per rack.
- I. Ensure that all panel mounting holes are pre-tapped and free of debris.
- J. All non-AC wiring shall be run within the rack in plastic wiring duct with snap-in slot design, such as Panduit Type E, or equal; and provide snap on duct cover. All wiring between racks shall be fully protected in conduit, or enclosed cable trays.
- K. Locate freestanding racks as shown and provide access to rear without need for moving racks.
- L. Provide full height solid copper bus bar bonded to rack.
- M. Adjacent equipment racks for the audiovisual system shall be firmly attached to each other, both mechanically and electrically, in order to provide a good ground connection between adjacent racks.
- N. Equipment racks of the audiovisual system shall be totally isolated from equipment racks of other systems.
- O. All power supplies shall be located, oriented, and connected electrically to minimize hum and RFI interference. Further, all plug-in type power supplies shall be firmly attached using mechanical fasteners to its associated power receptacle to insure accidental removal and/or connection loss.
- P. As appropriate, bundle audiovisual cabling from collector box or cable tray to rack in plastic cable socks for a tidy run from the conduit termination junction box to rack.

### 3.5

#### CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. All cables regardless of length shall be marked with wrap-around number or letter cable markers at both ends. Unmarked cables shall not be allowed anywhere within the audiovisual system. Marking codes used on cables shall correspond to codes shown on drawings and run sheets. Clear heat shrink shall protect numbers.
- B. All inter-rack cabling shall be neatly strapped, dressed, and adequately supported.
- C. For all cables interfacing with racks, cabinets, consoles, or equipment modules requiring terminal blocks, boards, strips, or connectors these shall be either of the "christmas tree" solder block type or insulation displacement punch down type as manufactured by ADC or Siemon. No audio cables shall run directly to the audio patch panel jacks. Each audio patch panel shall be furnished with an audio terminal block and all audio cables to and from the audio patch panel shall terminate on this block.
- D. All cables shall be grouped and separately contained according to the signals being carried. In order to reduce signal contamination, separate groups shall be formed for the following cables:
  - 1. Power cables
  - 2. UTP tie lines
  - 3. Coaxial tie lines
  - 4. Shielded, twisted pair (audio) tie lines
  - 5. Note: Fiber tie lines should by default be contained according to cable group 2, but may be contained in any available pathways.



- E. All power cables, control cables, and high level cables shall be run vertically on one side of an equipment rack as viewed from the rear. All other cables shall be run vertically on the other side of an equipment rack, as viewed from the rear.

### **3.6 EQUIPMENT LABELING**

- A. In addition to permanently labeling each cable and termination device, each panel shall have permanent label corresponding to the drawing function.

### **3.7 PATCH PANEL ASSIGNMENTS & DESIGNATIONS**

- A. All patch panels shall be wired so that signal "sources" (outputs from) appear on the upper row of a row pair; and all "loads" (inputs to) appear on the lower row of a row pair
- B. All audio and video patch panel designation strips shall utilize alphanumeric identifications and descriptive information. The jack position in each horizontal row shall be numbered sequentially from left to right. The horizontal jack rows shall be lettered sequentially from top to bottom. The alphanumeric identification of each jack shall be included on the functional block drawings, as well as on reproductions of these drawings that shall be mounted in an appropriate location near the patch bays.

### **3.8 PENETRATIONS**

- A. Conduit and Sleeve Openings: Shall be waterproofed and fireproofed in compliance with applicable codes and regulations.
- B. Firestopping: Fire-stop openings and penetrations through fire and smoke rated wall and floor assemblies in accordance with Section 078400 - Firestopping.
  - 1. Fire-stop System Inside of Conduits:
    - a. Use only dielectric, water resistant, non-hardening, permanently pliable/re-enterable putty along with appropriate damming or backer materials.
    - b. Use sealant capable of being removed and reinstalled.
    - c. Sealant shall adhere to penetrants and common construction materials and be capable of allowing normal wire/cable movement without being displaced.
    - d. Add fire-stop pillows rated for sealing existing cable tray penetrations through firewall.
    - e. Patch openings remaining around and inside conduit, sleeves, and cable penetrations to maintain integrity of fire rated assembly.

### **3.9 GROUNDING**

- A. In order to mitigate electromagnetic and RF interference from improper grounding and to achieve maximum signal-to-noise ratios, the grounding procedures shall be as detailed below.
- B. Grounding techniques as described herein referring to twisted pair conductors with an overall shield shall apply to signal paths between two active electronic devices with power supplies. This differentiates tie lines and microphone lines.
- C. A copper conductor installed in a raceway by Contractor having a maximum of 0.1 Ohms total resistance shall connect the primary system ground bar to the Technical System Ground.



- D. Secondary system grounding conductors shall be provided from all racks, audio consoles, and ungrounded audio equipment in each area to the primary system grounding point for the area. Each of these grounding conductors shall have a maximum of 0.1 Ohms total resistance.
- E. Under no conditions shall the AC neutral conductor in a receptacle outlet be used for a system ground.
- F. Audio Cable Shields: All audio cable shields shall be dc-grounded at one point only. Isolation transformers and buffering amplifiers shall be used for inter-rack lines as specified herein. There are no exceptions. For internal rack wiring this requires that the shield be connected at one end only.
- G. Video Receptacles: All video receptacles that are provided and installed by the Contractor shall be insulated from the mounting panel, outlet box, or wire-way. Unless otherwise detailed herein, this shall be accomplished by using insulated-from-panel type receptacles.
- H. When interconnecting video lines between devices that are powered from different ac power sources, the Contractor shall use ground-loop isolation devices as specified herein.
- I. The Contractor shall ensure that the power for all video sources be on the same electrical phase.
- J. All composite, component, and Y/C video lines to external devices exceeding 20 feet or being powered from different power panels shall have suitable line drivers and isolation as specified herein.
- K. All RGB video lines to external devices exceeding 100 feet or being powered from different power panels shall have suitable line drivers and isolation as specified herein.
- L. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to follow good engineering practices. At no time shall there be a compromise in safety or any exception to the NEC and local codes.
- M. Ground case of power strips/channels in equipment racks to the racks and insulate from power system ground.
- N. Provide a separate ground lead from each amplifier chassis and from each of the other items of equipment normally requiring grounding to the rack ground buss.
- O. Cable shields shall only be grounded by a single path to Isolated Ground.
- P. Shields shall be tied to Isolated Ground at the driving or transmitting end of a run or circuit only, unless otherwise noted.

**3.10 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Audio Tie Lines
  - 1. Each audio tie line shall be capable of microphone, line level, and AES3 signal transmission from start point to end point meeting the performance criteria herein.
- B. Digital Video
  - 1. Coaxial video ties shall be capable of HD-SDI (3 Gbps) signal from start point to end point.



**3.11 CLEANUP AND REPAIR**

- A. Upon completion of the installation, the Contractor shall remove all his refuse and rubbish from and about the premises, and shall leave the relevant areas and equipment clean and in an operational state. The Contractor shall be responsible for repairing any damage caused to the premises by the Contractor's installation activities, at no cost to the City of New York.

**PART 4 - SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

**4.1 ISSUE PROJECT ROOM AV INFRASTRUCTURE**

Item	Qty	Manufacturer (or approved equal)	Model
Audio Patchbay 48 I/O (TT)	4	Bittree (Alt. Switchcraft or Whirlwind)	B96DC-FNIIS/E90 M2OU7B
Speaker Feed-through Panel 20x	1	Custom	Custom
Fiber Feed-through Panel 8x	1	Custom	Custom
Cat6 Feed-through Panel 16x	2	Custom	Custom
Coaxial/VGA Feed-through (24 Coax, 4 VGA)	1	Custom	Custom
Power Conditioner	2	Furman (Alt. Middle Atlantic or SurgeX)	PC-PRO 20A
Equipment Rack	2	Middle Atlantic (Alt. Chief or APC)	ERK-4025
Equipment Rack Casters	2	Middle Atlantic (Alt. Chief or APC)	CBS-ERK-25
Cabling/Coverplates/Labor & Installation	lot	By Electrical	
Conduit, cable pass, cable tray and back boxes	lot	By Electrical	

**END OF SECTION 27 41 16**



## SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL ADDRESSABLE ALARM SYSTEM

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. The requirements of the Contract Documents, including the General and Supplementary General Condition and Division 1 - General Requirements shall apply to the work of this section.
- B. All exceptions taken to these Specifications, all variances from these Specification and all substitutions of operating capabilities or equipment called for in this Specification shall be listed in writing and forwarded to the Commissioner. Any such exception, variances or substitutions that were not listed and are identified in the submittal, shall be grounds for immediate disapproval without comment.
- C. LEED related scope of work
  - 1. Division 1, Section 018114 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Limits for Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
  - 2. Division 1, Section 018113 - Sustainable Design Requirements (LEED Building)
  - 3. Division 1, Section 017419 - Construction Waste Requirements
  - 4. Division 1, Section 018119 - Construction IAQ Requirements

#### 1.2 SCOPE

- A. The work covered by this Section of the Specification shall include all labor, equipment, materials and services to furnish and install a Fire Alarm Control Panel with One-way Voice Communication as required by the 2008 New York City Building Code for Group A3 occupancies. It shall be complete with all necessary hardware, software and memory specifically tailored for this installation. It shall be possible to permanently modify the software on site by using a plug-in programmer. The system shall consist of, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1. Fire alarm control panel.
  - 2. Remote annunciator panel.
  - 3. Addressable smoke detectors
  - 4. Addressable duct smoke detectors for supply fans over 2,000cfm (Air handling systems



shutdown control).

5. Central station alarm connection control.
6. Emergency battery packs. (See Part 2, 2.5, para. 15 for more information)
7. Addressable Manual pull stations
8. Strobe units and horn/strobe units
9. Smoke Purge Panel

### 1.3 APPLICABLE CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. All equipment shall be UL listed for its intended use.
- B. NFPA Standards 72 – National Fire Alarm Code
- C. NFPA Standards 13 - Installation of sprinkler systems
- D. The 2008 National Electric Code with NYC Amendments.
- E. All other local codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. 2008 NYC Building Code.
- G. All Equipment shall be MEA/BSA Approved or OTCR Tested.

### 1.4 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Secure permits and approvals prior to installation.
- B. Prior to commencement and after completion of work notify Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- C. Submit letter of approval for installation before requesting acceptance of system.

### 1.5 RELATED WORK

- A. The Contractor shall coordinate work in this Section with all related trades. Work and/or equipment provided in other Sections and related to the fire alarm system shall include, but not be limited to:
  1. Sprinkler waterflow and supervisory switches shall be furnished and installed by the plumbing contractor, but wired and connected by the electrical contractor.



2. Duct smoke detectors shall be furnished, wired and connected by the electrical contractor. The HVAC contractor shall furnish necessary duct opening to install the duct smoke detectors.

B. Selection of a central station agency, its equipment, its fees and fees for leased telephone lines are the responsibility of the Commissioner or his representative.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide list of all types of equipment and components provided.

B. Provide description of operation of the system, similar to that provided in Part 2 of this Section of the Specifications, to include any and all exceptions, variances or substitutions listed. Any such exceptions, variances or substitutions which were not listed or identified in the submittal, shall be grounds for immediate disapproval without comment.

C. Provide manufacturer's printed product data, catalog cuts and description of any special installation procedures.

D. Provide samples of various items when requested.

E. Provide shop drawings as follows:

1. Drawing of the Fire Alarm Control Panel.

2. Single line riser diagram showing all equipment and type, number and size of all conductors.

3. Floor Plan indicating location of all devices and Fire Alarm Control Panel.

4. Fire Alarm Control Panel Battery calculations.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer shall guarantee the system equipment for a period of one (1) year from date of final acceptance of the system.

B. The contractor shall guarantee all wiring and raceways to be free from inherent mechanical or electrical defects for one (1) year from date of final acceptance of the system.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS



- A. The catalog numbers used are those of Edwards Systems Technology (EST), and constitute the type and quality of equipment to be furnished.
- B. If equipment of another manufacturer is to be submitted for approval as equal, the contractor shall list all exceptions taken to these Specifications, all variances from these Specification and all substitutions of operating capabilities or equipment called for in these Specifications and forward said list to the Commissioner. Any such exceptions, variances or substitutions which were not listed and identified in the submittal, shall be grounds for immediate disapproval without comment. Final determination of compliance with this Specification shall rest with the Commissioner, who, at his discretion, may require proof of performance.
- C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. EST, by General Electric.
  - 2. Simplex-Grinnell.
  - 3. Mircom.
  - 4. Faraday.
  - 5. Notifier, by Honeywell.
  - 6. Wheelock, Inc., by Cooper.
  - 7. Kidde, a UTC Fire and Security Co.
  - 8. Or as approved equal.

## 2.2 CIRCUITING GUIDELINES

- A. Where it is necessary to interface Waterflow and Tamper switches, provide intelligent input modules to supervise Class B zone wiring.
- B. For conventional zone annunciation at the control panel zones shall be as shown on the zoning schedule, but shall be typically as follows:
  - 1. Sprinkler Waterflow Switches: Provide one (1) alarm zone for each waterflow switch or floor.
  - 2. Duct Smoke Detectors at Floor Return Ducts: Provide one (1) alarm zone for each floor.
  - 3. Duct Smoke Detectors at HVAC Air Handling Units: Provide one (1) alarm



zone for each air handling unit.

- C. Each of the following types of devices or equipment shall be provided with supervised circuits as shown on the drawings but shall be typically as follows:
  - 1. Sprinkler Valve Supervisory Switches: Provide one (1) supervisory module circuit for each sprinkler valve supervisory switch or floor.

## 2.3 FIRE ALARM CONTROL PANEL SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

- A. Refer to fire alarm drawing, FA-001, for Fire Alarm Riser Diagram and sequence of operation.

## 2.4 SUPPORT FOR INSTALLER AND OWNER MAINTENANCE

- A. Provide internal system diagnostics and maintenance user interface controls to display/report the power, communication, and general status of specific panel components, detectors, and modules.
- B. Provide loop controller diagnostics to identify common alarm, trouble, ground fault, and map faults. Map faults include wire changes, device type changes by location, device additions/deletions and conventional open, short, and ground conditions. Ground faults on the circuit wiring of remote module shall be identified by device address.
- C. Allow the user to report history for alarm, supervisory, monitor, trouble, smoke verification, watchdog, and restore activity. Include Facility Name, Licensee, Project Program Compilation date, Compiler Version, Project Revision Number, and the time and date of the History Report.
- D. Allow the user to disable/enable devices, zones, actions, timers and sequences. Protect the disable function with a password.
- E. Allow the service user to enter time and date, reconfigure an external port for download programming, initiate auto programming and change passwords. Protect these functions with a password.
- F. THE END-USER SHALL RETAIN COMPLETE RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP TO ALL SOFTWARE RUNNING IN THE SYSTEM AT ALL TIMES. The fire alarm equipment vendor shall provide useable hard and soft copies of the software database to the End-User at the time of final system acceptance. The database provided shall be useable by any authorized and certified distributor of the product line, and shall include all applicable passwords necessary for total and unrestricted use and modification of the database. The extent of hardcopy database documentation to be provided shall be defined by the Commissioner prior to final system acceptance.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT



**A. Fire Alarm Control Panel**

1. The fire alarm control panel shall be Edwards Systems Technology (EST) type EST3 series and shall incorporate all control electronics, relays, and necessary modules and components in a surface mounted cabinet (or approved equal). All under one label "UL listed and approved" for the use of fire alarm systems in this area of the United States of America. The operating controls and microphones shall be located behind a locked door with viewing window. All control modules shall be labeled, and all zone locations shall be identified. The cabinet shall be steel, with a gray finish. The assembly shall contain a base panel, system power supply and battery charger with optional modules suitable to meet the requirements of these specifications.
2. System circuits shall be configured as follows: Addressable analog loops Class B wiring.
3. The system shall be supervised, site programmable, and of modular design with expansion modules to serve up to 96 detectors and 94 remote addressable modules.
4. The system shall store all basic system functionality and job specific data in non-volatile memory. The system shall survive a complete power failure intact.
5. The system shall have built-in automatic system programming to automatically address and map all system devices and provide a minimum default single stage alarm system operation with support reset common controls.
6. The system shall allow down loading of a job specific custom program created by system application software. It shall support programming of any input point to any output point. The system shall support the use of Bar Code readers to assist custom programming functions. It shall allow authorized customization of fundamental system operations using initiating events to start actions, timers, sequences and logical algorithms.
7. The system shall support distributed processor intelligent detectors with the following operational attributes; integral multiple differential sensors, automatic device mapping, electronic addressing, environmental compensation, pre-alarm, dirty detector identification, automatic day/night sensitivity adjustment, dual normal/alarm LEDs, relay bases, and isolator bases.
8. The system shall use full digital communications to supervise all addressable loop devices for placement, correct location, and operation. It shall allow swapping of "same type" devices without the need of addressing and impose the "location" parameters on replacement device. It shall initiate and maintain a trouble if a device is added to a loop and clear the trouble when the new device is mapped and defined into the system.



9. The system shall have a UL Listed Detector Sensitivity test feature, which will be a function of the smoke detectors and performed automatically every 4 hours.
10. The system shall support 100% of all remote devices in alarm and provide support for a 100% compliment of detector isolator bases.
11. All panel modules shall be supervised for placement and return trouble if damaged or removed.
12. The system shall have a CPU watchdog circuit to initiate trouble should the CPU fail.
13. The system program shall meet the requirements of this project, current codes and standards, and satisfy the local Authority Having Jurisdiction.
14. Passwords shall protect any changes to system operations.
15. The power supply shall be a high efficiency switch mode type with line monitoring to automatically switch to batteries for power failure or brown out conditions. The automatic battery charger shall have low battery discharge protection. The power supply shall provide internal power and 24 Vdc at 4A continuous. Auxiliary power shall be 24 Vdc at 500 mA. All outputs shall be power limited. The battery shall be sized to support the system for 24 minutes of supervisory and trouble signal current plus general alarm for 15 minutes. The battery shall be sized to support the voice/alarm communications system for a minimum of six (6) hours at full-demand operation. External battery cabinet may be required.
16. The LCD Display Module shall be of membrane style construction with a 4 line by 20 character Liquid Crystal Display. The LCD shall use supertwist technology and backlighting for high contrast visual clarity. In the normal mode display the time, the total number of active events and the total number of disable points. In the alarm mode display the total number of events and the type of event on display. Reserve 40 characters of display space for user custom messages. The module shall have visual indicators for the following common control functions; AC Power, alarm, supervisory, monitor, trouble, disable, ground fault, CPU fail, and test. There shall be common control keys and visual indicators for; reset, alarm silence, trouble silence, drill, and one custom programmable key/indicator. Provide four pairs of display control keys for selection of event display by type (alarm, supervisory, monitor and trouble) and forward / backward scrolling through event listings. The operation of these keys shall be integrated with the related common control indicators to flash the indicators when undisplayed events are available for display and turn on steady when all events have been displayed. Allow the first event of the highest priority to capture the LCD for display so that arriving fire fighters can view the first alarm event "hands free". Provide system function keys; status, reports, enable, disable, activate, restore, program, and test. The module shall have a numeric



keypad, zero through nine with delete and enter keys.

17. The Main Control Module shall control and monitor all local or remote peripherals. It shall support the LCD Display Module, power supply, remote LCD and zone display annunciators, printers, and support communication interface standard protocol (CSI) devices such as color computer annunciators and color graphic displays. The system shall provide one loop controller circuit, two notification appliance circuits, and common form 'C' contacts for alarm, supervisory, and trouble. Contact ratings shall be 24Vdc at 1A.
18. The panel shall be provided with a digital alarm communicator transmitter:
  - a. A digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) module to transmit alarm, supervisory and trouble signals to a Central Monitoring Station (CMS). The DACT shall support dual telephone lines, 20 PPS 4/2 communications, and configured for dual tone multi-frequency (DTMF) or pulse modes. It shall be possible to delay AC power failure reports, auto test call, and site program using a touch tone phone and password.
  - b. For the link to a Central Monitoring Station service, provide a 3/4 inch (DN 21) empty rigid conduit from the fire alarm control panel to the telephone frame room. Also provide a 2 #12 THWN in 3/4 inch (DN 21) conduit run from a 20 amp fuse cutout in the Fire Signaling System cutout panel to the telephone frame room. Terminate both runs as directed.

## 2.6 COMPONENTS

### A. Intelligent Devices -- General

1. Each remote device shall have a microprocessor with non-volatile memory to support its functionality and serviceability. Each device shall store as required for its functionality the following data: device serial number, device address, device type, personality code, date of manufacture, hours in use, number of alarms and troubles, time and date of last alarm, amount of environmental compensation left/used, last maintenance date, job/project number, current detector sensitivity values, diagnostic information (trouble codes) and algorithms required to process sensor data and perform communications with the loop controller.

### B. Photoelectric Smoke Detector, SIGA-PS (For Duct Applications and Machine or Electrical rooms).

1. Provide intelligent photoelectric smoke detectors SIGA-PS. The analog photoelectric detector shall utilize a light scattering type photoelectric smoke sensor to sense changes in air samples from its surroundings. The integral microprocessor shall dynamically examine values from the sensor and initiate an



alarm based on the analysis of data. Systems using central intelligence for alarm decisions shall not be acceptable. The detector shall continually monitor any changes in sensitivity due to the environmental affects of dirt, smoke, temperature, aging and humidity. The information shall be stored in the integral processor and transferred to the analog loop controller for retrieval using a laptop PC or the SIGA-PRO Signature Program/Service Tool. The photo detector shall be rated for ceiling installation at a minimum of 30 ft (9.1m) centers and be suitable for wall mount applications. The photoelectric smoke detector shall be suitable for direct insertion into air ducts up to 3 ft (0.91m) high and 3 ft (0.91m) wide with air velocities up to 5,000 ft/min. (0-25.39 m/sec) without requiring specific duct detector housings or supply tubes.

- a. Temperature: 32oF to 120oF (0oC to 49oC)
- b. Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing.

2. Duct Detector Housing, SIGA-DH

- a. Provide smoke detector duct housing assemblies SIGA-DH to facilitate mounting an intelligent analog Photoelectric Detector SIGA-PS along with a standard, relay or isolator detector mounting base. Provide for variations in duct air velocity between 300 and 4000 feet per minute (300 to 1000 feet per minute for ion-photo-heat detector). Protect the measuring chamber from damage and insects. Provide an air exhaust tube and an air sampling inlet tube which extends into the duct air stream up to ten feet. Provide drilling templates and gaskets to facilitate locating and mounting the housing. Provide five one gang knockouts for mounting optional Signature Series modules. Finish the housing in baked red enamel. Provide Remote Alarm LED Indicators <SIGA-LED> and Remote Test Stations <SIGA-DTS> within 15 feet circuiting distance of its associated detector.

C. Intelligent Heat Detectors Signature Series Model SIGA-HFS

- a. The heat detector gathers analog information from their fixed temperature heat sensing elements and converts it into dig- ital signals. The detector's on-board microprocessor measures and analyzes these signals. It compares the information to historical readings and time patterns to make an alarm decision. Digital filters remove signal patterns as to alleviate unwanted alarms. The microprocessor in each detector provides four additional benefits - Self-diagnostics and History Log, Automatic Device Mapping, Stand-alone Operation and Fast, Stable Communication.
- b. 70 foot (21.3 meter) spacing.



- c. 15° F (9° C)/min rate-of-rise/135° F (57° C) ft. and 135° F (57° C) fixed temperature type.
- d. Intelligent detector c/w integral microprocessor.
- e. Non-volatile memory.
- f. Automatic device mapping.
- g. Electronic addressing.
- h. Identification of defective detectors.
- i. Twin RED/GREEN status LEDs.
- j. Standard, relay, fault isolator, and audible mounting bases.

D. Intelligent Modules -- General

- 1. It shall be possible to address each Intelligent Signature Series module without the use of DIP or rotary switches. Devices using DIP switches for addressing shall not be acceptable. The personality of multifunction modules shall be programmable at site to suit conditions and may be changed at any time using a personality code downloaded from the Analog Loop Controller. Modules requiring EPROM, PROM, ROM changes or DIP switch and/or jumper changes shall not be acceptable. The modules shall have a minimum of 2 diagnostic LEDs mounted behind a finished cover plate. A green LED shall flash to confirm communication with the loop controller. A red LED shall flash to display alarm status. The module shall be capable of storing up to 24 diagnostic codes which can be retrieved for troubleshooting assistance. Input and output circuit wiring shall be supervised for open and ground faults.
  - a. The module shall be suitable for operation in the following environment:
  - b. Temperature: 32oF to 120oF (0oC to 49oC)
  - c. Humidity: 0-93% RH, non-condensing
- 2. Single Input Module, SIGA-CT1
  - a. Provide intelligent single input modules SIGA-CT1. The Single Input Module shall provide one (1) supervised Class B input circuit capable of a minimum of 4 personalities, each with a distinct operation. The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 1/2" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 1/2" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers. The single input module shall support the following circuit



types:

- 1) Normally-Open Alarm Delayed Latching (Waterflow Switches)
- 2) Normally-Open Active Non-Latching (Monitor, Fans, Dampers, Doors, etc.)
- 3) Normally-Open Active Latching (Supervisory, Tamper Switches)

3. Dual Input Module, SIGA-CT2

- a. Provide intelligent dual input modules SIGA-CT2. The Dual Input Module shall provide two (2) supervised Class B input circuits each capable of a minimum of 4 personalities, each with a distinct operation. The module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 1/2" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 1/2" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers. The dual input module shall support the following circuit types:

- 1) Normally-Open Alarm Delayed Latching (Waterflow Switches)
- 2) Normally-Open Active Non-Latching (Monitor, Fans, Dampers, Doors, etc.)
- 3) Normally-Open Active Latching (Supervisory, Tamper Switches)

4. Control Relay Module, SIGA-CR

- a. Provide intelligent control relay modules SIGA-CR. The Control Relay Module shall provide one form "C" dry relay contact rated at 2 amps @ 24 Vdc to control external appliances or equipment shutdown. The control relay shall be rated for pilot duty and releasing systems. The position of the relay contact shall be confirmed by the system firmware. The control relay module shall be suitable for mounting on North American 2 1/2" (64mm) deep 1-gang boxes and 1 1/2" (38mm) deep 4" square boxes with 1-gang covers.

E. Horn / Strobes By EST

F. Fuse Cut Out/Fused Disconnect Switch:

- a. The primary source of power and the secondary source of power shall each be provided with a means of disconnect from the fire alarm system. Each disconnect shall consist of a fused disconnect switch, locked in the



ON position with key kept on premises accessible only to authorized personnel. Such disconnect shall be painted red and permanently identified as fire alarm circuit and labeled as to system/location served, with a means of interrupting the unfused neutral and all ungrounded conductors.

- b. The fire alarm system fused disconnect switch on the transformer secondary side shall comply with the requirements of the primary and secondary power source fused disconnect switches specified above.
- c. Fused cutouts shall be provided where multiple circuits are required to support the fire alarm system and related auxiliaries mounted in a fused cutout panel suitable for the number of circuits needed. The Contractor shall provide an individual cartridge fused cut-out panel with three (3) poles and a removable, solid copper, neutral bar in fuse gap for the FCS, remote Data Gathering Panels (DGPs), booster power supplies and other fire alarm equipment. Fused cut-outs shall be provided with silver sand fuses, current limiting type with an interrupting capacity rating of 200,000 amps (r.m.s. symmetrical). The fused cut-out panel shall bear an engraved white-core phenolic or bakelite identification nameplate stating in minimum one-quarter inch (1/4") high white letters on a red background "FIRE ALARM FUSED CUT-OUT". A four (4) wire feeder shall bring three phase 120/208 volt service to the fused cut-out.
- d. The size of the fuses shall be sized appropriately but be thirty (30) amperes minimum.
- e. The feeder shall be tapped off the main building service ahead of the main service switch but after the Current Transformers (Metering Transformers).

G. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes SIGA-278

- a. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Must be UL listed. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
  - 1) Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  - 2) Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic



enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

## 2.7 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Electrical wiring serving fire alarm systems shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Power conductors (above 75 volts) shall be:

- a. Copper: THHN, THWN/THHN, TFFN, TFN, FEP, RHH, RHW-2, XHH, or XHHW; minimum 600 volts; 90 C; for installation in rigid metallic conduit (RMC) intermediate metallic conduit (IMC) or electric metallic tubing (EMT).
- b. Cable type MI, listed for 2-hour fire resistance rating.

2. Low voltage conductors (75 volts and less) shall be:

- a. Copper: THHN, THWN/THHN, TFFN, TFN, FEP, RHH, RHW-2, XHH, XHHW; minimum 600 volts; 90 C; for installation in RMC, IMC or EMT.
- b. Minimum wire size No.18 AWG.
- c. Multi-conductor cables run in raceways, or exposed as described hereinafter, and shall be listed to UL 1424-05, Standard for Cables for Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits, with the listing agency certifying compliance with the following additional requirements:
  - 3) Type FPLP only; minimum insulation thickness 15 mils; minimum temperature 150 C; colored red.
  - 4) Red colored jacket overall; minimum thickness 25 mils.
  - 5) Cable marked as per UL 1424 must bear additional description "ALSO CLASSIFIED NYC CERT. FIRE ALARM CABLE" legible without removing jacket.

3. Installation of conductors and raceways shall be in accordance with the following:

- a. Power conductors shall not be installed in common raceways with low



- voltage conductors.
- b. Installations shall comply with applicable requirements of the electrical code, or if the requirements of this rule exceed those of the electrical code shall comply with the requirements of this rule.
  - c. Conductors other than MI cable shall be run in raceway, except as specifically described in item (c)(3)(iv) of this rule.
4. Multi-conductor cables may be installed without raceway protection where cables are protected by building construction. Where not protected by building construction, cables shall be located 8 feet (2438 mm) vertical or more above the finish floor and not subject to physical tampering or hazard. Locations within 8 feet (2438 mm) of the finished floor that are deemed as protected by building construction shall include raised floors, shafts, telephone and communication equipment rooms and closets, and rooms used exclusively for fire alarm system equipment.
  5. All wiring within mechanical and elevator equipment rooms shall be run in raceways.
  6. Raceways run within 8 feet (2438 mm) vertical of the finish floor in garage areas, loading docks, mechanical rooms, and elsewhere where subject to mechanical damage, shall be rigid galvanized steel conduit only.
  7. Where wiring is required to be run in raceways, install conductors in RMC, IMC, or EMT except that multi-conductor cables may also be run in surface metal raceway. Flexible metallic conduit, not exceeding 36 inches (914 mm) in length, shall be permitted for final connections to initiating and notification devices. Conductors for other electrical systems shall not be installed in raceways containing conductors serving a fire alarm system.
  8. Where allowed to be run without raceway protection, multi-conductor cables shall be installed as follows:
    - a. Cables shall not depend on ceiling media, pipes, ducts, conduits, or equipment for support. Support independently from the building structure.
    - b. Secure by cable ties, straps or similar fittings, so designed and installed as not to damage the cable. Secure in place at intervals not exceeding 60 inches (1524 mm) on centers and within 12 inches (305 mm) of every associated cabinet, box or fitting.
  9. Installation of raceways, boxes and cabinets shall comply with the following general requirements:



- a. Covers of boxes and cabinets shall be painted red and permanently identified as to their use.
  - b. Penetrations of fire-rated walls, floors or ceilings shall be fire stopped.
  - c. Within stairways, raceways shall not be installed within 8 feet (2438 mm) vertical of the finish floor.
  - d. Raceways or cables shall not penetrate top of any equipment box or cabinet.
10. All conduits supplying 120-volt power to the fire command station and/or fire alarm control unit and/or to outlying control cabinets, shall contain a green insulated grounding conductor sized in accordance with the electrical code (#10 AWG minimum). The grounding conductor shall be connected to the ground bus or other suitable grounding terminal in each box and cabinet in which it enters. At the fuse cutout panel supplying the fire alarm system, a grounding electrode conductor sized and installed in accordance with the electrical code (#10 AWG minimum) shall be provided.
11. For cabinets whose 120-volt supply is not derived from the main fire alarm system cutout panel, green insulated separate grounding electrode conductors, sized and installed as per the electrical code (#10 AWG minimum), shall be provided. In steel-framed buildings, a connection to local steel structure will be acceptable.
12. Splices and terminations of wires and cables shall be as follows:
- a. Permitted only in boxes or cabinets specifically approved for that purpose.
  - b. Utilize mechanical connections specifically approved by UL 486A-03, Wire Connectors or UL 486C-04, Splicing Wire Connectors for the conductors, or if soldered, first joined so as to be mechanically and electrically secure prior to soldering and insulating. Temperature rating of completed splices shall equal or exceed the temperature rating of the highest rated conductor.
13. Wiring for audible notification devices – speakers shall be arranged so that a loss of a portion of the wiring will not render more than 60 percent of the devices of each type inoperative, and the devices shall be so connected to the circuitry (i.e., by means of alternate “A” and “B” circuits) as to maintain at least partial audibility throughout.

## 2.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment according to system manufacturer's instructions to



eliminate shock hazard and to minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

- B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment rack or cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- C. Connect to grounding electrode specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" Install grounding electrodes of type, size, location, and quantity as indicated
- D. Ground equipment and conductor and cable shields. For audio circuits, minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. The entire system shall be installed in a workmanlike manner, in accordance with approved manufacturer's wiring diagram. The contractor shall furnish all conduit, wiring, outlet boxes, junction boxes, cabinets and similar devices necessary for the complete installation. All wiring shall be of the type recommended by the manufacturer, approved by the local Fire Department, and shall be installed in rigid, threaded conduit throughout.
- B. All penetration of floor slabs and fire walls shall be fire stopped in accordance with all local fire codes.
- C. End of Line Resistors shall be furnished as required for mounting as directed by the manufacturer.
- D. All wiring shall be color coded throughout, to National Electrical Code standards.
- E. The system shall be arranged to receive power from one three wire 120 Vac, 15 A supply. All low voltage operation shall be provided from the fire alarm control panel.
- F. Field Quality Control
  - 1. The system shall be installed and fully tested under the supervision of a trained manufacturer's representative. The system shall be demonstrated to perform all of the function as specified.

#### 3.2 TESTS

- A. Reports of any field testing during installation shall be forwarded to the Commissioner.



- B. Each individual system operation on a circuit by circuit basis shall be tested for its complete operation. The procedure for testing the entire fire alarm system shall be set forth with the consent of the code enforcement official, the Commissioner representative and the manufacturer.

### 3.3 DOCUMENTATION AND TRAINING

- A. The contractor shall compile and provide to the Commissioner three (3) complete manual on the completed system to include operating and maintenance instruction, catalog cuts of all equipment and components, as-built wiring diagrams and a manufacturer's suggested spare parts list.
- B. In addition to the above manuals, the contractor shall provide the services of the manufacturer's trained representative for a period of four (4) hours to instruct the Commissioners' designated personnel on the operation and maintenance of the entire system. An End-User Training Video shall be included as part of the system documentation in two formats - DVD and PC (Media Player compatible).

**END OF SECTION 283111**

FORMS ID: PV028-ISS



**THE CITY OF NEW YORK  
DEPARTMENT OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION  
DIVISION OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS**

100-30 THOMSON AVENUE      LONG ISLAND CITY, NEW YORK 11101-3045  
TELEPHONE (718) 391-1000      WEBSITE [www.nyc.gov/buildnyc](http://www.nyc.gov/buildnyc)

**Contract for Furnishing all Labor and Material Necessary and Required for:**

- CONTRACT NO. 1      GENERAL CONSTRUCTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 2      PLUMBING WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 3      HVAC + FIRE PROTECTION WORK
- CONTRACT NO. 4      ELECTRICAL WORK

**Issue Project Room Interior Fit Out  
Rebid**

**LOCATION:                      110 Livingston Street  
BOROUGH:                    Brooklyn 1120  
CITY OF NEW YORK**

Contractor \_\_\_\_\_  
dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

Entered in the Comptroller's Office

First Assistant Bookkeeper \_\_\_\_\_  
dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

